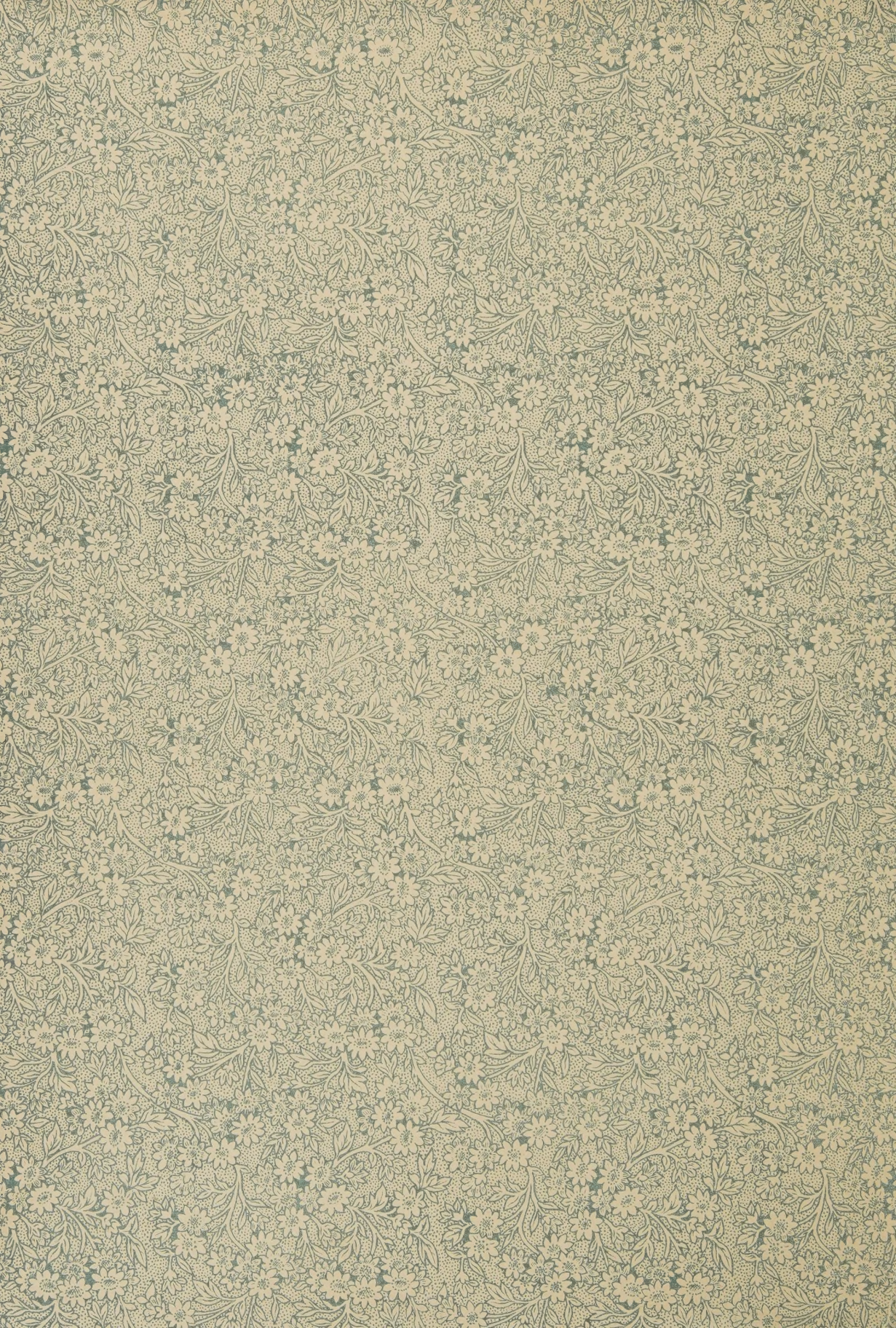
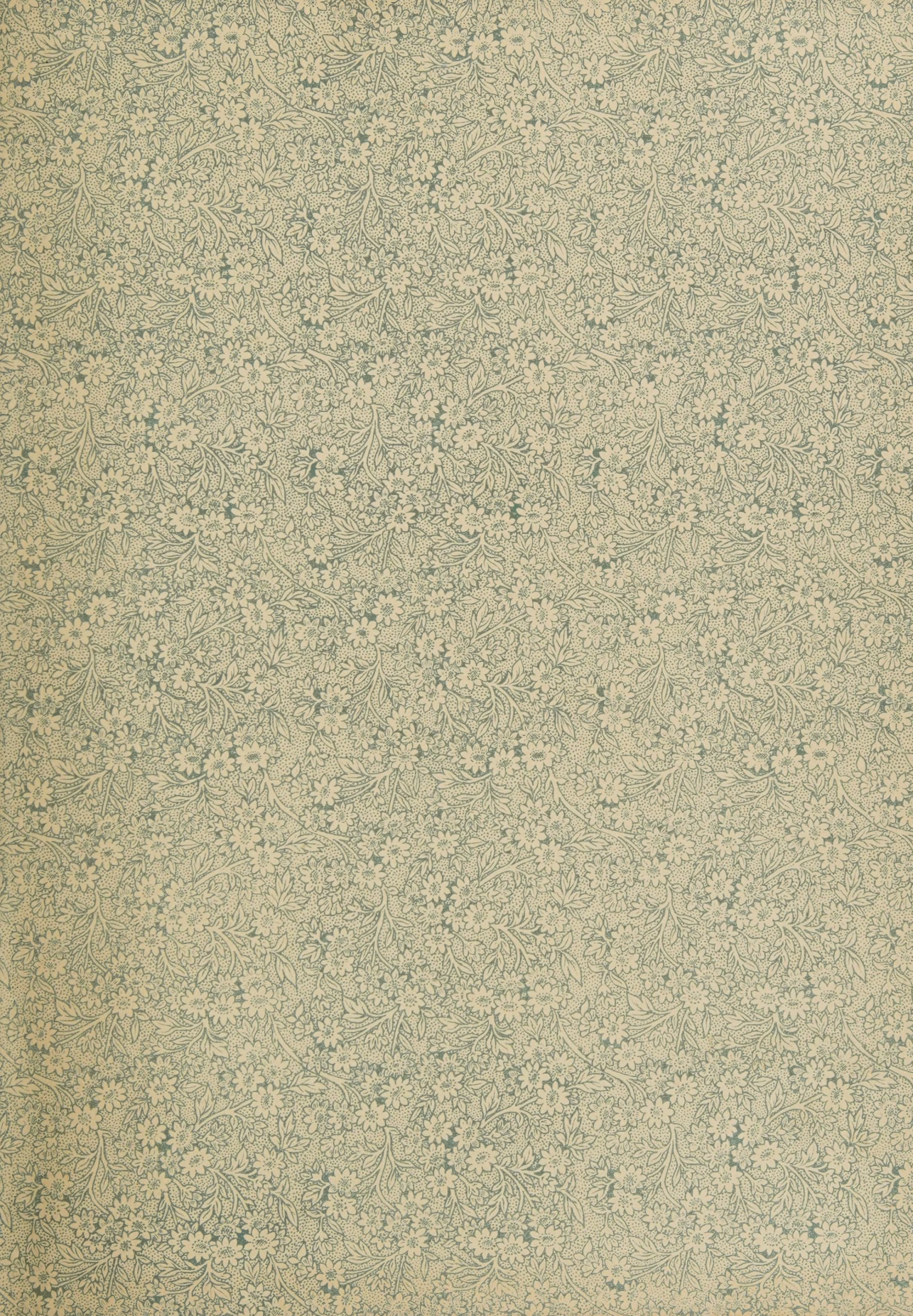


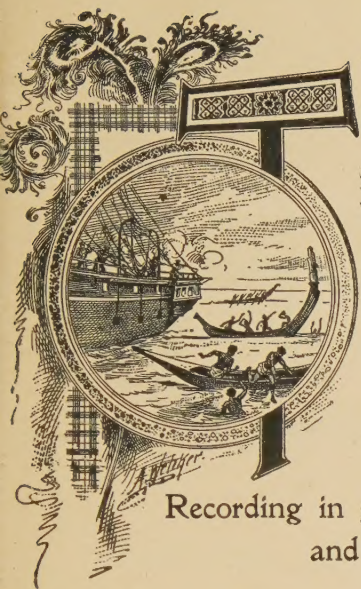
THE
GREATEST
EXPLORATIONS
OF THE
CENTURY











The Greatest Explorations of the Century

AN ALL-EMBRACING HISTORY OF A CENTURY
OF EXPLORATION AND DISCOVERY

Recording in graphic narrative the strange experiences, thrilling adventures,
and great achievements of the most famous travelers.

Treated under proper divisions and classifications,
and embracing, in expositional completeness,

All the Least Known Countries of the Globe.

A condensation of the world's best books of research
among savage men and animals of darkest lands,
being descriptive of peoples, customs, superstitions,
curious creatures, and

Wonderful Things Seen by Famous Explorers

IN TROPIC REGIONS, AND ARCTIC CLIMES.

The whole comprising an encyclopedia of geographical knowledge, representing the
civilization and heroic accomplishments of one hundred years.

BY

J. W. BUEL,

Author of "The Story of Man," "Exile Life in Siberia," "Beautiful Paris," "America's Wonderlands," "Sea and Land," "The Living World,"
"The Beautiful Story," "Manual of Self-Help," etc.

ILLUSTRATED WITH OVER TWO HUNDRED ENGRAVINGS
MADE FOR THIS WORK BY THE BEST AMERICAN ARTISTS.

MONARCH BOOK COMPANY

CHICAGO, ILL.

PHILADELPHIA, PA.



A decorative laurel wreath with leaves and berries, forming a semi-circular frame around the title.

A VIEW FROM THE THRESHOLD

THIS is the grandest age of all that have passed, and self-congratulation is pardonable at a time when the old century is putting off its armor to tell of achievements accomplished, and to consider the glowing outlook which lights like a flaming beacon the pathway that leads into the future. It is scarcely so important to review the progress of invention as it is to regard the reclamations that have been made, the wonderful extension of civilization, the great discoveries, the spread of Christianity, the opening up of benighted regions, and the general betterment of the race.

As the year nineteen hundred is at hand, it is interesting to note, by comparison, the remarkable gain in geographic knowledge which has been accomplished through heroism of the few and encouragement of the many. It is hard to realize that during the life of a centenarian the boundary of Christian civilization has been so greatly extended; that within this time South America has been explored, the great West of our own country opened to settlement, China has become known, Australia, and the whole of Oceanica largely developed, Siberia and, in fact, all Asia have yielded up their secrets before the investigations of bold travelers; the Arctic regions have been invaded almost to the Pole itself, and Africa, for ages a land of wonder and isolation, has become a continent of almost complete familiarity:

No other time in history has there been a greater need for a book of reliable information respecting the geography of the earth than now. The rapid increase of population, which is congested to the point of danger in Europe and the farther East, and the remarkable growth that has characterized the Western Hemisphere during the past fifty years, have aroused the fears of thoughtful persons that overcrowding must soon render the question of existence a serious

one. Already this danger-line has been reached in several countries, where famine has stalked and pestilence has raged, relieved only by the rapid means of transportation that permitted a quick transference of supplies and succor from lands of plenty to places of need. This reliance of one country upon another cannot continue after population has covered the earth to the point of satiety, which condition is fast approaching, and may be reached in the next hundred years.

A work which truthfully represents the present distribution of peoples, the territory wherein opportunities for further growth and commercial expansion are greatest, and the means now operating to divert the overflow to thinly settled countries, capable of absorbing the excess, is timely and a necessity. I have accordingly conscientiously prepared this book to meet that pronounced need, as well also to report, in an easily understood way, the latest discoveries, the fiercest contentions, and the state of progress noted at the close of our century in the world's development. But while pursuing this primary aim I have also been prompted by another object, viz.: the preparation of an encyclopædia of travel and discovery, comprehending the most remarkable natural wonders and combining therewith the adventures of the most famous travelers and explorers in Tropic lands and Arctic fields. In accomplishing this plan I have incidentally given descriptions of all the savage races of men, and the animal, bird, and reptile life that surrounds them, that the work may have a positive value and interest alike to young and old, and that it may be educational by affording knowledge not easily gained from other sources, of geography, natural history, and the barbarous tribes of the world.

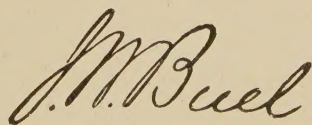
In the restless and ambitious disposition of mankind there is more than curiosity, or a misdirected desire for familiarity with remote or insular phases of nature, for there is also that more wisely considerate wish for such extended knowledge as not alone gratifies curiosity, but which stimulates and energizes an ambition to extend the domain of civilization, with its attendant resources and comforts.

In the preparation of a work so comprehensive in scope, it was necessary to give careful perusal to scores of standard publications, and to collate with critical discrimination from them all; for condensation was imperative, and yet every interesting or valuable incident found in the histories from which this is compiled, must needs find place in its appropriate narrative. I have therefore

wide thanks to acknowledge, and gratitude to give to the many authors who have preceded me with publications recording their respective observations upon several independent subjects which I have unified and treated as a whole herein. To the following authorities I am therefore very largely indebted for the facts and information used in this history compendium, which, as will be seen, constitute a valuable library: Nansen, who in 1895 approached nearer the Pole than any other explorer; Andrée the aeronaut, the fate of whose latest balloon expedition is not yet determined, Peary, who is organizing for another Arctic journey; McClintock, Kane, Franklin, Scoresby, Hall, Schwatka and Greely, Polar travelers; Waddell, and Landor, explorers in Tibet; Wallace, Moresby and D'Albertis, authors of many works on the Malay Archipelago; Squier, Prescott, and Humboldt, scientists and travelers, whose investigations of the ruins and antiquity of South America, and of the native races as well, have given us such thorough knowledge of that continent; and to the following missionaries, hunters, and explorers of Africa:—Cecil Rhodes, Livingstone, Baker, Speke, Cummings, DuChaillu and Stanley.

The matter of this book does not pretend to originality, save as an attempt to combine a very large number of books into one volume, so arranged as to give clearly the important adventures and discoveries of all the renowned travelers of the past several centuries. In this it may be properly classed as an original work and one of inestimable value, particularly to the young, since for them it must possess such interest as to lead them from the vicious literature of the day and inculcate a desire for wholesome reading, and an ambition to learn more of the wonders of the world, the rounds to that mystic ladder which reaches upward from nature unto nature's God.

This book is intended to occupy a place in the literature of travel, adventure, and exploration that is filled by encyclopædias of general knowledge, and its mission is not only to instruct, but also to inspire a lofty courage and generous ambition in the hearts of men, to the end that dark places may become lighted by the lamp of a wise intelligence, and the whole earth be reclaimed and made fruitful with the blessings of a perfect civilization.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, reading "J. M. Buell". The signature is written in a cursive style with a large, prominent initial "J" and "M".





THE MYSTERIOUS COUNTRY.

Tibet, the Marvelous Land.—Unlocking the door of mystery—Dangers of travel in Tibet—Marco Polo's visit to the far East—His descriptions of strange customs—Sorcerers of Tibet—Pilgrimage of a priest—The Pope of Lhasa—Description of the Lamaist capital—Observations of an India pundit—Wonders of the Holy City—The reincarnated Buddha—Strange fashion among women—The sacred Lama house—Mysteries and curiosities—Lama festivities—Sacred image from the snow-land—Temple of Little Jo—The school of black art—Extraordinary feats of jugglery—The doctrine of Buddhism—Secret ceremonies of Lama worship—Power of the soothsayers—The practice of polyandry—Six husbands to one wife—Stories of extraordinary magic—Miracle or necromancy—The secrecy of their ways not discoverable—Waddell's story of Lamaism—How Burton gained access to the Kaaba—Power of the Lama Priests—Shamanism, or devil worship—Savage prohibition of strangers—How some travelers have entered Lhasa—The wonderful mystery play—Personating devils—Seizure and torture of Mr. Landor—Story of terrible torment of an English correspondent—Hunting the wild Yak of Tartary—Praying wheels of the Lamas—Strange altars, and barbaric decorations—Something about the practice of polyandry

PAGE

33-49

THE QUEST FOR GOLD.

Land of the Golden Fleece.—The magic word "Gold!"—The mad pursuit for wealth—Horrors attending gold discoveries—Facts about Alaska—Explorations and discoveries—The fisheries and seal catches—Discovery of gold and development at Juneau—The excitement begun—The first nugget from Klondike—McCormick's lucky find—Mines of the Upper Yukon—The richest territory—How to reach the gold fields—Distance, and cost of transportation—Land and water routes—Dangers and hardships of the overland trail—Treachery of the fords—Sheep Camp—Over Chilkoot Pass—Boat traveling and portage—The Chilkoot tram-road—Lines of steamers—Character of country about Dawson—Sinking mines in the frozen earth—Wages and kinds of work—Supplies and packers—Stories of rich strikes—Stampedes to new camps—Unexampled opportunities—Gold, gold, abounding everywhere—Tales of successful miners—Scraping up a fortune—Distances between stations—Alaska mining laws—Prospects of the Alaska yield of gold—Theory of a gold belt around the Pole—Warm times in Dawson City—Extravagance and roystering in the gold city—Ball-rooms and bar-rooms—Gambling and dancing—Wild scenes and exciting incidents—Swiftwater Bill's last play—How "Shorty" dropped his bag—A typical dance hall—Big demand for women—Profits of the saloon business—Rapid development of Alaska

50-73

THE POLAR REGIONS.

	PAGE
The Spirit of Exploration. —Flaming spears of the Northern Lights—A way strewn with human bones—Greenland once a populous country—A summary of Polar expeditions—Many sad stories—The marooning of Hudson—Discoveries a hundred years ago—A story of starvation—Ross' search—Sketch of Sir John Franklin—Pathetic parting with his wife—Good-bye, and death—Loss of the Franklin expedition—Search for the lost explorers—Evidences of cannibalism—Dr. Kane's expedition and discoveries—Lady Franklin's efforts—Relics of Frobisher's expedition—Voyages of Captain Hall—Discovery of the Polar Sea—The De Long expedition—Sinking of the <i>Jeannette</i> —Schwatka's sledge journey—Dead men's bones in plenty.	74-85

LATEST VOYAGE IN QUEST OF THE POLE.

Arctic Discoveries of Nansen. —The first person to cross Greenland—Battles with icebergs and storms—A land of icy mountains and snowy plains—Manner of traveling—First meeting with natives—Abashed by naked forms—Immodest indoor costumes of Esquimaux—Interior view of a tent—Domestic manners, and oh ! what an odor—How man and wife caress each other—Kisses and castigations—Habits and appearance—Remarkable hospitality—Reception of Nansen upon his return . . .	86-90
---	-------

Nansen's Search for the Pole. —Remarkable interest taken in Nansen's proposals—The theories upon which he lectured—Building of the <i>Fram</i> —Aided by king and geographical societies—Departure for the land of mystery—The <i>Fram</i> nipped by the ice—The long Polar night—Leaving the ice-bound ship for a sledge journey—Proceeding with a single companion, he reaches the highest latitude ever gained by man—A thrilling adventure—Johansen attacked by a bear—The rare Ross gull—Walrus and bears plentiful—Besieged by foxes—The welcome to spring—Traveling by sledge and kayak—Nansen has to swim for his boat—Battle with a walrus—A surprising meeting with another explorer—Nansen's return to Norway	90-100
---	--------

The Peary Expeditions. —The feat of crossing northernmost Greenland—First woman to seek the Pole—Successful hunt for bears and reindeer—Overrun by Esquimaux—Huts for the winter—Overwhelmed by a snow-storm—Trouble with the dogs—Separation of the party—Hunting the musk-ox—Defining the northern limits of Greenland—The return to New York—Peary's second expedition—Observations of Astrup—Descriptions of life in North Greenland—Exhibition of a phonograph—Home life of the Esquimaux—Swapping of wives—Love for dogs—Animals of Arctic lands—Hunting the walrus—Distribution of labor—Chewing seal and bear hides—Happiness of the Esquimaux—Religion of the Esquimaux—Treating disease by incantation—Magicians and amulets—Last rites over the dead	100-107
--	---------

Andree's Balloon Expedition. —Thirst for the sensational—Dangerous feats to win reputation—Plans to reach the North Pole—Fancy of a balloon expedition—Purpose to cross the Atlantic—Experimenting with upper air currents—Preparations for the great balloon journey—Devices for controlling the balloon—Failure of the first effort—The final start for the Pole—The ascension—Telegrams to the king—What will be the result ?	108-112
---	---------

THE GREELY EXPEDITION.

CHAPTER I.

Frequent Disasters Attending Arctic Travels. —Mystery of the frozen North—Greely's ambition to become an explorer—His appointment to establish Polar stations—Departure of the expedition—A sail through Polar seas—The exile at Fort Conger—Scientific work of the expedition—Achievements of Lockwood and Brainard—Greely's report—A wonderful panorama—The American flag in highest latitudes—Remarkable discoveries—Rigors of the northern climate advancing south—Story of the march to Cape Sabine—Discipline in camp—Government's instructions to Greely	113-119
--	---------

CONTENTS.

ix

CHAPTER II.

	PAGE
The Beginning of Indescribable Sufferings. —Game abundant but not procurable—Efforts to recover beef cached at Cape Isabella—The march through snow and cold—Elison's imprudence—A night of terror—Elison begs to be left to die—Comradeship of rare fidelity—Stealing from his starving fellows—The shooting of Private Henry—Record of the dead by starvation—Death of Sergeant Rice—A story of horror—A night with the dead—Resort to cannibalism—Self-preservation excuses this awful resort	119-124

CHAPTER III.

Efforts to Find and Relieve Greely. —Failure of the Neptune expedition—Loss of the Proteus—The third relief expedition—Proffer of English aid—Arrival at Cape Sabine—Finding the camp—A scene of unexampled misery—A feeble cry discovers Greely—A wretched hovel and what it contained—Official report of the discovery—First sight of the starving party—Too weak to walk—Removal of the survivors—A terrible hurricane—An hour of prayer—Last offices to a dying comrade—Hands and feet frozen off—Condition of the hunter—Amputation and death—Greely's condition—The graves on the ridge—Ramming a way through the ice—Report of Commander Schley—How the bodies were prepared—Meeting between Greely and his wife—The return—Demonstrations in honor of the heroes	124-135
---	---------

WONDERS OF THE ARCTIC WORLD.

CHAPTER I.

Mysteries of the Land of Cold. —Goblins, ghouls, and sirens—Symmes' singular theories—Is the earth hollow, and habitable within?—Currents about the Pole—How the earth shifts on its axis—Changes of climate due to ice formations—Greenland once a warm country—Facts about Esquimau dogs—King of the pack—How to drive a dog-team—Secret of the whip—Similarity between dogs and wolves—Domestic customs of the Esquimaux—An exchange of wives—Personal decorations—Some other curious customs—How they construct and arrange their huts—A tunnel doorway—Producing fire without matches—Strange way of eating meat	136-142
--	---------

CHAPTER II.

Hunting in the Far Northland. —Pursuit of seals—Ingenuity and skill of Esquimau hunters—How seals are captured—Dangerous sport—On the ice and in kayaks—Captain Hall's capture of a seal—An exciting time—Hunting the Polar bear—A cruel killing—Savage contest with a female bear and cub—Another adventure—How a bear defended her cubs—Knocking the dogs about—An ugly visitor in camp—A bear robs a fisherman—Adventures with the walrus—Combats between bear and walrus—Domesticating the walrus—An exciting hunt—A terrific fight between hunters and bull walruses—How the walrus attacks—Danger in his powerful tusks—Description of Hall's battle with a walrus—Pictures of extraordinary ferocity—Facts about the reindeer—Habits of the wolverine—Enemies of the reindeer—Hunting the musk-ox—Battle with Arctic bulls—Daring of Esquimaux hunters—The Polar fox—Lemmings, mosquitoes, and gnats—Arctic hares—A traditional animal—Arctic birds—Voracity of the sea-eagle	142-159
---	---------

CHAPTER III.

Arctic Seas Teeming with Animal Life. —Varying color of the ocean—Rapacity of crustaceans—Wonders of the whale—Paradoxes of nature—Species, habits, and commercial value—Adventure with a whale—Dangers incurred hunting the spermaceti whale—The sea unicorn—A remarkable weapon—The dolphin and grampus—Curious facts about Arctic sharks—Vitality of the white shark	159-163
--	---------

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER IV.

	PAGE
Wonderful Beauties of Arctic Regions. —Nature wasting her sweetness on desert airs—Spectacle of a Polar sunset—Magical magnificence of the Arctic aurora—A sky of jet over a plain of snow—Mock moons and paraselenæ—Colored snow—Icebergs and remarkable formations—Gyrating ice mountains—Dangerous navigating Arctic seas—How icebergs are formed—Magnificent sights—Castles and palaces of marvelous splendor—The midnight sun flooding fields of ice—An original theory—The ice-blink and mirage—Amazing adventures on ice-floes—Tyson's party cast away on an ice-field—Pitiable spectacles—Killing dogs to stay hunger—A seal and bear hunt on the ice—New dangers follow—Almost reduced to cannibalism—A night of indescribable horror—Relief sighted	163-175

CHAPTER V.

The Terrors of an Arctic Night. —Five months of darkness—Wonders of the Polar skies—Disease caused by protracted night—Hydrophobia develops in dogs—Effects of eating snow—Severe cold and intense heat produce similar results—Esquimaux legend of the sun and moon—Strange beliefs of the Arctic natives	175-177
---	---------

CHAPTER VI.

Story of the DeLong Expedition. —Boyhood of the lost explorer—First trip to the far North—An ambition promoted by Mr. Bennett—Departure of the <i>Jeannette</i> —Caught in the ice—Drifting for nearly three years—Bears, seals, and birds—Fast in a relentless embrace—Preparing to leave the ship—Sinking of the <i>Jeannette</i> —Helpless on the wide sea—A dreadful march for life—Bombarded by chunks of ice—Singular discoveries on Bennett Island—Launching the small boats for a long journey—On the Siberian Islands—A herd of reindeer—Separation of the boats in a gale—Starvation and death—A terrible effort to secure relief—Melville's long search—Dead on Siberia's waste of snow—Discovery of the bodies of lost comrades—Bringing the dead back to America—So sleep the brave . .	177-186
---	---------

THE MALAY ARCHIPELAGO.

Summer Isles of the South Sea. —Composition of the great archipelago—Exuberance of nature—A land of pure delight—The flying frog—Hunting the orang-outang—Capture of a baby—A hunter in the grip of a mias—Adventures with the mias—How the mias fights the crocodile and python—The Lombock suicides—Running amuck—Punishment for infidelity—Land of terrible snakes—Killing a boa—Wonders of the sago palm—Hill Dyaks of Borneo—Birds of gorgeous plumage—Beauty of the native Papuans—Something about the women—Their scant dress is shocking—Unexampled honesty of the Papuans—City of Batavia—Rhinoceri and tigers of Java—Hunting the tiger—Marvelous ruins of an extinct people—New Guinea, the unexplored land—Explorations of the Dutch—New Guinea cannibals—Birds and animals of New Guinea—The monster-faced bat	187-198
--	---------

THE SOUTH AMERICAN TROPICS.

Marvels of Equatorial Climes. —Profusion of animal and vegetable life—Prodigality of nature a barrier to development—Effects of hot climate—Emanations from rapid decomposition—Size and character of tropical animals and reptiles—Remarkable facts concerning the sea—Unseen channels of the air—Why the sea is salt—Curious facts in physical geography—What causes rain—An ocean in the skies—The great equatorial currents—Effects on climate of the Gulf Stream—Streams in the atmosphere—Marvels of the trade-winds—Strange animals in Brazilian jungles—Reptiles of deadly beauty—The marvelous Surinam frog—Doldrums—Tornadoes of the tropics—Hurricanes and water-spouts—Formation of islands—Marvelous work of the coral worm—How islands become peopled—Archipelagoes and reefs—Distribution of animals—Mountains in the sky—Giant condor of the Cordilleras—Highest lake in the world—Sacred Titicaca—Legend of Manco Copac—Curious myths—Wonders of three dead cities—Roads and messengers of the Incas—Among the Amazon warriors—Primeval forests of the Amazon—A wonderful spider—Birds of gorgeous plumage—Savage animals and reptiles—Jaguars and Anacondas	199-216
--	---------

THE STORY OF AFRICA.

CHAPTER I.

The Birthplace of Man. —Glory of ancient Egypt—The oldest historic records of the country—Efforts to circumnavigate Africa—A mausoleum of civilizations—Broken cities and sand-covered monuments—Egyptian slavery—Horrible oppressions and terrible poverty—Wonders of the river Nile—How Egypt was formed—Africa well known to the ancients—The first circumnavigator	217-222
---	---------

CHAPTER II.

Treasure-Fields of the Dark Continent. —Periodic gold discoveries—Some singular things—Settlement of Cape Town—Discovery of the South African diamond fields—Formation of the Republic—Results of the gold discoveries—Output of the Rand—Government of Cecil Rhodes—A railroad from Cape Town to Egypt—Rapid development of Africa—Grand opportunities for African settlers—The contention between Dutch and English—Disputes and battles—Taxation laid on foreigners—Revolt in the Transvaal—Dr. Jameson's raid—The fight at Krugersdorp—The Matabele uprising—Fights with the Kaffirs—A land of rich opportunities	222-231
--	---------

CHAPTER III.

Livingstone's Travels in Africa. —Boyhood of the great missionary—Punished for reading books of travel—Recommended for the South African Mission—Marriage to Miss Moffat—Start for the Bechuanaland country—Study of the native languages—Founding a missionary station—Residence at Mabotsa—The land of lions—His first hunt—A thrilling adventure—He is shot! he is shot!—Livingstone is seized by a lion and shaken like a rat—How it feels to be bitten by a lion—Saved by a dog—A servant in the jaws of the beast—Chief Sechele's friendship—Practices of the rainmaker—A dreadful drought—A great hunt—Driving big game into the hopo—An exciting time—Crossing the Desert of Kalahari—Wonderful plants—A peculiar watermelon—Carrying water in ostrich egg-shells—Curious manner of filling them—From Mabotsa to Lake Ngami by ox team—A remarkable salt basin—Mirage on the desert—Discovery of Lake Ngami—Visit to Chief Sebituane—Oswell, the elephant hunter—Strange diseases of wild animals—Why old lions attack humans—Natural cowardice of the lion—Singular facts about lions—Oswell's horse seized by a lion—Some great adventures—Dragging down a buffalo—How the lion stalks and secures his prey—Courage of the Cape buffalo—Serpents of South Africa—Teaching the natives—Hippopotamus hunters—Roaring of lions—Prodigious quantities of big game—Singular birds—Reptiles and animals—Adventures with hippopotami—Facts about the animal	232-244
---	---------

CHAPTER IV.

Crocodile Haunts Along the Leeambye. —Savage character of the river saurians—Crocodiles watching for their prey—A native dragged below by a crocodile—Plenty of game but no hunters—Among the Balonda people—Remarkable customs and superstitions—Female chiefs without clothes—Shintetenders Livingstone a reception—A magic lantern exhibition—Excitement and fear produced by the picture of Abraham's sacrifice—Shinte decorates Livingstone—African courtesy—Magic of a tailless ox—Arrival at Loanda—Impressions of the natives at first sight of the ocean—Livingstone is prostrated by fever—Starts upon a journey across the continent—Relics of iron works and sugar refineries—Marriages and funerals among the Angolas—A curious insect—Ravages of African ants—Fatal superstitions—A religion of dread—Native fear of white men—Smiles like the grin of crocodiles—Remarkable customs of the Tamba people—Livingstone's narrow escape from a buffalo—Several awkward scenes of domestic entanglements—Capsized by a hippopotamus—A visit to Victoria Falls—Description of Africa's Niagara—Buffaloes gore a wounded animal—Bird companions of the rhinoceros—Adventure with a cow elephant and calf—Description of an interesting hunt—Charged by a herd of elephants—Cruel sacrifice of children—Curious superstitions—A fight—Peculiarities of the Batoka tribe—An adventure with three buffaloes—Ruins of an old fort—Sad death of Chief Sekweber	244-258
--	---------

CHAPTER V.

Livingstone's Second Expedition. —Efforts to destroy the slave trade—Departure for the Zambesi—Wonderful voracity of Africans—Laughing rats—Capture of a baby elephant—A feast off elephant's foot—Effects of rum on the natives—Wild dogs of Africa—Failure of the Mabotsa mission—A vicious bull hippopotamus—Woman seized by a crocodile—Return to Lake Nyassa—Sight of a white man	
---	--

affrights the natives—Death of Mrs. Livingstone—Exploration of the Rovuma River—Fight or pay toll—A strange animal—Terrible effects of slavery—Crocodiles gorging on dead bodies—Man seized by a crocodile—Bitter disappointments 258-266

CHAPTER VI.

Livingstone's Third Expedition.—Appointed to present a ship to the Sultan of Zanzibar—Departure by dhow for the Rovuma—Landing the animals—Terrible combat with a leopard—Story of a leopard's invasion—Murder of unmerchantable slaves—Strange customs and horrible scenes—A starving slave-gang in the yokes—Man carried off by a crocodile—African iron furnaces—Inhumanity and superstitions—Abandonment of children—Service of the honey-bird—Dangerous serpents—Famine and serious loss—Meeting with an avaricious chief—Politeness of the Tanganyika people—Exploration of the lake shores—Lions, elephants and antelopes—A wedding in Africa—Marriage as a means of making peace—Cropping the ears of subjects—A gateway of skulls—African pomp and splendor—The royal palanquin—Wild animals in peaceful congregation 266-278

CHAPTER VII.

On the Shores of Lake Bangweolo.—A woman enslaved for unfaithfulness—A lion brought to judgment—After death comes the ghost—A grave by the wayside—Memories of poor Mary—Discovery of Lake Bangweolo—Furious battle between natives—The killing of prisoners—Marching with yoked slaves—Stricken with pneumonia—Arrival at Ujiji—Writing for help that never came—A journey into the Manyuema country—Fetich worshipers of Bambarre—Rapacity of soldier-ants—Land of the tree-dwellers—Kindness of a woman leper—Completely miserable—A frog that sings like a bird—Fish that give milk—Making gre-gree charms from a woman's heart—Dreadfully lacerated feet—Disgusting customs of the Manyumas—Murder to procure meat—The head of a chief in a pot-house—Livingstone's adventure with sokos—Eating soko feet—Causes leading to cannibalism—Fights between sokos and leopards—Transmigration of human souls—How the soko attacks men—Strange things about the animal—Remarkable customs of the Manyuema—Incoherent entries in Livingstone's journal and their cause 278-289

CHAPTER VIII.

Among the Manyuema Cannibals.—Departure from Bambarre—Description of the cannibals—How human flesh tastes—On the banks of the Lualaba—An awful slaughter by slave dealers—Bloody scene at the market place—Livingstone to the rescue—Horrible feast off human bodies—Attacked by cannibals—Caught in the act of boiling a body—The American flag in Central Africa—Meeting between Livingstone and Stanley—Joint exploration of Lake Tanganyika—Singular ideas about the hereafter—How a cat killed a serpent—Ingenuity of African children—Livingstone's last journey—Fording streams and crossing morasses—Gloomy reflections—Livingstone dying on the march—Painful journey in a kitanda—Particulars of the great traveler's death—Faithfulness of his servants—A chief pays honors to the remains—Carrying the body through a hostile country—Burial in Westminster Abbey—Livingstone's greatness 290-300

SIR SAMUEL BAKER'S EXPEDITION.

CHAPTER IX.

Private Enterprise of a Famous Hunter.—Baker devotes his fortune to discovering the Nile's source—Accompanied by his young wife—Goes to school to learn Arabic—Recruiting a force at Khartoum—Outfitting for the expedition—A fatal buffalo hunt—Death of Sali Achmet from the toss of a bull—Unearthly looking devils—Among naked and ugly women—Novel contest with a hippopotamus—Long argument over a strange question—The Kytch people—Plenty of cattle, but no meat—Subsisting on rats, lizards, and snakes—A beautiful native girl—Son successor to the wives of his father—A fight between two vicious women—Bleeding cows and boiling the blood—Protection against mosquitoes—A people with leather tails 301-307

CHAPTER X.

PAGE

Crime and Cruelty at Gondokoro.—Houses of the Bari tribe—Burial in front yards and ornamenting the graves—Curious costumes of a fierce people—Pigmy cattle—Poisoned arrows and their frightful effects—Throwing victims over a cliff—Meeting with Speke and Grant—Birds that pick holes in animals—An adopted boy—Dreadful plot discovered—Horrible beating of poor women—Narrow escape of Fadeela—Departure from Gondokoro—A momentous hour 307-312

CHAPTER XI.

Through the Savage Country of Ellyria.—Annihilation threatened—A march under sore difficulties—Baker is besieged by curious natives—A disgusting feast—Conversation with a hump-back—A monkey creates excitement—Making friends with an old reprobate—Chief Legge's stinginess and voracity—Crammed with honey—Hunt in a game paradise—Reception by the Latookas—Another mutiny—Baker knocks out the leader—The Tarrangolle Apollos—A plentiful crop of human bones—Graves by the door—Weapons of the Latookas—First sight of a white man—Bokke grows impertinent and curious—A wild scene of a wilder people—Exciting funeral dance—A fat dancer—An atheistic native prince—Refuses to believe in a hereafter—Baker vanquished in argument—Elephant hunting—Some thrilling adventures—Pursued by an enraged elephant—A narrow escape—How the Arabs hunt elephants—Dangerous sports 312-324

CHAPTER XII.

The Makkarika Cannibals.—Bornu, the traveler—Love of dog and human flesh—How children are killed and eaten—Chasing women in the tree-tops—On the march to Obbo—An enthusiastic reception—Characteristics of the Obbo people—A royal sorcerer—A father of six score children—Katchiba's care of Mrs. Baker—A pumpkin-shell of beer—A king in goggles—Royalty riding pick-a-pack—Oh, 'my, what a hard fall!—The return to Latooka—Poison yams—Robbers who themselves were victims—Shooting baboons—A plague of small-pox—Death of Baker's riding animals—Using magic to cure disease—An African harpist—Baker's visit to chief Katchiba—Reports of a big lake—Hunting big game by night—Killing an elephant as large as Jumbo—Tunneling through the monster carcass—Adventure with a wild boar—Junction formed with a slave-trader—Departure for Kamrasi's country—Mrs. Baker violently thrown from an ox—A country flowing with milk and honey—The polite Fati-koans—Shaking hands with a whole village—A suspicious old king—Mrs. Baker sent to receive—The Unyoro natives—A royal old beggar—Abject homage of his wives and subjects—Urged to do his fighting—Childish disposition of the king 325-337

CHAPTER XIII.

March through the Kingdom of Unyoro.—Persistent importunities of Kamrasi—The king insists on having Mrs. Baker for wife—A satanic guard—An hour of sorest trial—Mrs. Baker in imminent peril—Seized with madness—Discovery of the Nile's source—A pæan of praise—In honor of the prince consort—Descent of Magungo's heights—Salt-making in Africa—A sail on Albert Lake—Capsized by a storm—Baker's greatest mistake—Shores covered with crocodiles—A trip up Somerset River—Efforts to buy Baker's help—A dreadful condition—Meeting with a spurious king—Carried before Kamrasi—A hard alternative—An old royal nuisance—Castor-oil plants as a remedy—An overdose of tartar-emetic—Consternation in camp—Kamrasi in running dress—Defeat of Rionga—Beating a man to death—Kamrasi in a panic—Richard kills a chief—Central Africa whiskey company—Thirst for strong drink 338-349

CHAPTER XIV.

Horriying Atrocieties of the Victors.—A dance in honor of Mrs. Baker—Ibrahim on a marauding expedition—Slave girl pleads for the life of her father—Man's inhumanity—Massacre ordered by the Turk—Attacked by Bari savages—Disappointments at Gondokoro—Visited by the plague—Bagging a lot of antelopes—Voyage down the Nile—Death of little Saat—Arrival at Khartoum—A dreadful sand storm—Net results of Baker's expedition 350-354

CHAPTER XV.

PAGE

Ismalia, or Baker's Second Expedition.—England orders suppression of the slave-trade—Slave market of Khartoum—Baker employed by the Khedive—An imposing flotilla—Attacked by a hippopotamus—Battle with a crocodile—Steamboating on dry land—Liberating slaves—In pursuit of ostriches—Hippopotamus kills an old man—Capture of a slaver—Matrimony by wholesale—Everybody got a lady—Difficulties multiply—Attacked by a vicious hippopotamus—A night of great excitement—Shooting to no avail—Biting a boat in two 354-362

CHAPTER XVI.

Serious Trouble with the Baris.—Arrival at Gondokoro—Implacable hostility of the natives—Dispute about grazing ground—An expedition against the rebels—An assault on the stockade—Soldiers mutilated by a crocodile—Shocking adventures—Girl eaten by crocodiles—Attack on a herd of elephants—Peace made over a feast—Wonderful strength of the elephant—A line of fortified posts—A famous old magician—Dispelling a rain cloud—In a nest of slave dealers—A display of force—An extraordinary scene—Naked women at the dance—The land desolated by war—Establishing a strong government—A visit from Kabba Rega—Walking like a giraffe—Personal appearance of the king—Charmed by a watch—Argument of a savage king—An exhibition of buffoonery—Torture by slave-hunters—A royal funeral—Burying subjects alive 362-374

CHAPTER XVII.

Value of Girls in Africa.—Releasing slaves from the pens—Needles in exchange for wives—Fortunate the man of many daughters—A Bari chief's idea of slavery—A wonderful entertainment—Effect produced by a looking-glass—Conjured by a photograph—A company of human devils—The Bonosoor guard—Poisoned by drinking cider—Destruction of Masindi—Cutting their way through—Enemies in the grass—Shelling the woods—Mowed down by Snider rifles—Impaled by spears—The wonderful alarm bird—Meeting with Rionga—Ceremony of blood brotherhood—Battle with Abou Saood—With the Makkarika cannibals—Making food of children—A great hunt—Game fleeing before the burning grass—Catching antelopes in a net—How the natives care for their children—Adventure with a lioness—A peaceful government—Without religion and yet honest—Preparations to return to England—Failure to accomplish his mission—How Africa is being redeemed 374-386

CHAPTER XVIII.

Hunting Big Game in Africa.—Baker falls in with a company of aggageers—A bull elephant discovered—Manœuvring for position—A terrific charge—An astounding exhibition of dexterity and daring—Ham-stringing the elephant with a sword—How the elephant and rhinoceros wage battle—A thrilling rhinoceros hunt—A stirring sight for a sportsman—In mad pursuit of a pair of rhinoceri—Furious disposition of the rhinoceros—The nerve required to hunt rhinoceri—A shot at long range—Running on three legs—Firing the grass in a game country—An exciting hunt—Preparing for a chase—Crack went a bullet against his side—One down another wounded—Rhinoceros charges Baker's horse—Bringing the savage animal to bay—Wounded but he escapes—Hippopotamus hunting on the Atbara—Baker's first adventure—Man bitten to death by a hippo—A terrible commotion in the water—Cracked his skull—Breakfast of hippo flesh—In pursuit of a herd—A bloody struggle—An exciting adventure—Harpooning a hippo—Measuring a monster bull—A long chase—Man bitten in twain by a hippo—Interesting facts about hippos—How the Howartis hunt—Playing a big fish—A singular method of hunting—An object of intense ferocity—The hippo charges—The Empire of Theodore—The Italians in Abyssinia 387-410

CHAPTER XIX.

Stanley's Travels in Africa.—Beunnett's surprising instructions—An order to draw for any amount—Outfitting an expedition to search for Livingstone—The preparations at Zanzibar—En route for Central Africa—First sight of big game—Curiosity of the Wasungu—First dog in Africa—Death from a tsetse fly bite—Some wonderful women—Tidings of Livingstone—A remarkable African city—The Sultana's revenge—Stanley's soldiers arrested—Exposed in the market place—In a sea of difficulties—Marching through swamps—Internal dissensions and a fight—An attempt to assassinate Stanley—Farquhar abandons the expedition—Threatening attitude of the Ugogo—An encounter with the natives—A handsome people in goat-skins 411-421

CONTENTS.

XV

CHAPTER XX.

PAGE

Central African Tribes.—Stanley's ethnographic studies—Peculiarities of the Wasagara—The wonderful Wagogo tribe—Materialistic beliefs—Punishments for crimes—Best agriculturists of Africa—A royal reception—Effort to conciliate a war chief 421-424

CHAPTER XXI.

The Lost Traveler Found.—Afflicted with hypochondria—Mirambo, the guerilla chief—Having fun with the sultan—Rum, quinine, and ammonia—A laughable scene—Suppressing a meeting by heroic means—Narrow escape from a crocodile—Hunts and adventures on the way—A frightened leopard—Monkeys and wild boars—Livingstone heard from—Voice of the spirit of Tanganyika—Stanley's meeting with Livingstone—A glass of champagne at Ujiji—Escaping the tribute gatherers—Joint exploration of Tanganyika Lake—Incidents of the return journey—Adventure with an elephant—The separation—Pomp and circumstance of war—Picturesque war costumes—Feelings aroused by Stanley's success—English jealousies—Burial of Livingstone in Westminster 424-434

CHAPTER XXII.

Stanley's Second Expedition.—Plan to complete Livingstone's work—Organization for the journey—Start from Bagamoyo—Death of Edward Pocock—Exploration of Victoria Lake—Shooting a monitor—Encounter with natives—Effects of a pistol shot—An invitation from King Mtesa—Arrival at the capital of Uganda—An amazing sight of African royalty—Mtesa welcomes Stanley—The most powerful of African potentates—Stanley's audience with the great king—Some astonishing stories of cruelty—Review of Mtesa's army—Shooting for the king's amusement—In the hands of the enemy—A lucky escape—Sinking boats by rifle shots 434-442

CHAPTER XXIII.

Lukongeh, the Royal Sorcerer.—The magic king of Ukerewe—His majesty on a drunk—How a king made a crocodile his servant—Legends of the Ukara islanders—A hippo that came to be milked—Mtesa's enormous army—War with the Wasoga—Manœuvres of Mtesa's army—Bearing of the king—War cries of the Waganda—A wonderful spectacle—Great naval battle—Toggerly of the chief priests—Attack and defeat—Stanley's strategy in aid of Mtesa—Departure for the West—Strange stories of the natives—Meeting with a bandit king—A thorough African gentleman—Ishmaels of Central Africa 442-451

CHAPTER XXIV.

Into Lands of the Unknown.—The *Lady Alice* afloat on Tanganyika—A village filled with dead bodies—The Wabembe cannibals—Strange facts about Tanganyika Lake—Determining the source of the Nile—Desertion, through fear of being eaten—Singular things about the Manyema—The white man a great curiosity—A paralyzing costume—A big time for the children—Cannibals and dwarfs—Dreadful orgies of the Manyemas—Tippo-Tib's wonderful tale—Woman shot by a dwarf's arrow—Mowing down the little devils—Capture of the dwarf king—Enormous snakes—Among the Uregga cannibals—A people who live like monkeys—Description of a strange animal—Skull decorations of a cannibal village—Human flesh the common dish—Circumcision a native rite—In a region of fable and darkness—Capture of a dwarf—Fighting and floating down the Congo—Effort to charm the strangers—Hospitable natives of Rubunga—Necklaces of human relics—A fight on the river—Setting nets to snare the expedition—King Chumbiri—Boy crushed by a great snake—Death of little Kalulu—Destruction of the magic book—Tragic death of Frank Pocock—A people singularly decorated—The rum traffic—Joy over dangers passed—Relief in an hour of peril—Stanley's third expedition—The shame of his purpose and crime of his action—Accident to Emin Bey at Zanzibar 451-473

PARADISE OF THE PACIFIC.

Wonders of the Ocean Archipelagoes.—Strange conceits of the early navigators—Hawaii, the beautiful—The killing of Captain Cook—Founding of the Hawaiian dynasty—Fetich worship of the natives—Both sides of the annexation question—Characteristics of the Aborigines—Bloody and licentious practices of the people—Spirits in slavery to gods of the volcanoes—Customs that indicate Hebrew relationship—A proposal to eat the king—Favorite sports of the Hawaiians—Dogs as food—Natural

productions of the islands—Honolulu, the capital city—Wonders of the active volcanoes—Séas of boiling lava and rivers of flame—Kilauea, the terrible—Pele, the goddess of fire—The lepers of Molokai—How the outcasts are cared for— Edenic Isles of Tahiti —Lost continent of the Pacific—Astonishing facts about Oceanica—Tahiti, the beautiful—Influence of the Bounty mutineers—Religious beliefs and observances—The law of caste—Beautiful women of Tahiti—Villages and productions—Bougainville attacked by slingers—Intermarriage among the Tahitians—Reverence for the Tahiti king—Revolting ceremonies—Licentious carnivals— Samoa and Fiji —Facts about the Samoans—Simple life, free from superstitions—Clothes of cocoanut fibre—Diseases that ravage the Fijians—How kava is prepared—Surprising dissimilarities of neighboring peoples—Savagery of Fijians—Remarkable customs—Murder and cannibalism—Astonishing legends—Fijians acquainted with Bible stories—How a flock of gulls killed an octopus— The Story of New Zealand —Scenery of the country—The wild race of Maoris—Cook's battle with natives—Scenes of cannibalism—Theory of Evolution entertained by New Zealanders—Sacredness of the tapu— The Great Island Continent —Paradoxical animals of Australia—First efforts to cross the desert—Fierce heat of the island—Strange reptiles and wonderful vegetable growths—Something about the Bushmen—Witchcraft and morals—Legend of the sleeping Titan—Colonization of Australia—Results of the gold discoveries.	PAGE 474-504
---	-----------------

ISLAND LANDS OF THE ORIENT.

People of the Philippines. —Singular incongruities of racial relationship—Wonderful palace ruins in Java—Effects of religion—Suicide of the Rajah's wives—A holocaust in the forest—Storms, earthquakes, and volcanic cataclysms—History of the Philippine islanders—Baptism of the king and queen of Cebu—A battle with the natives—Heroic death of Magellan—Defeat of the Spaniards—Other disasters of the expedition—Spanish atrocities in the Philippines—Among thieves—People of the Ladroné islands—Sack and burning of the capital of Cebu—A remarkable ceremony of propitiation—A brass band in the rice fields—Productions of the islands—The latest rebellion in the Philippines—Shameful burdens laid by Spain upon her colonies—Weyler's mailed hand—Desolation everywhere.	505-516.
--	----------

THE EMPIRE OF LITTLE GIANTS.

Resources of the Japanese. —Sudden prominence assumed by Japan—Whence came the people—Founding of the Empire—Authority of the Mikado—Extent of the Empire—The large cities—Dangerous volcanoes—History of terrible cataclysms—Sacred mountain of Fujisan—Rivers and lakes of Japan—Typhoons and earthquakes—One of the most terrible earthquakes of history—Conveyances in Japan—Village and rural life—Poverty of the farming class—Free schools—Hero worship of the Japanese—Tenets of Shintoism—How Buddhism displaced the original faith—Social life of the Japanese—Customs that shock our moral sense—Sale of daughters—Home life of the best classes—A courtly and amiable people—Ingenuity of the Japanese— War between China and Japan —Corea the bone of contention—Miserable character of the Coreans—Astonishing superstitions—Long standing hatred between China and Japan—Fighting qualities of the Japanese—The advance into Corea—The fight at Chemulpo—Battle on Ping Yang—Storming of Wei-hai-wei—Benefits of the war to China—A big indemnity— Kingdom of the Yellow Robe —Peculiarities of the Chinese—The Patriarchal idea of government—Obedience of children—Terrible punishment for crimes—A cruel and dishonest people—Manner of living and habits of the poor—Conceit of the Celestials—An astonishing funeral ceremony—The queue a badge of servitude—The great Chinese wall—Its effects upon the nation—European nations covetous of China.	517-537
--	---------

RUSSIA AND SIBERIA.

Country of the Czar. —Magnitude of the Russian Empire—The bleak barrens of Siberia—Animals of the country—Capturing wolves and bears—Hunting with the bullet-tipped whip—The Gilyak hunters—How bears are made to kill themselves—Their use in superstitious ceremonies—Festival of the bear—Visit to a convict's hut on the Tundras—My first meeting with wolves—An exile's story—Tale of a wayside inn—A governor's race for life—The leader calls his pack—Wolves devour the dead—Clubbing the most daring—A dreadful battle for life—Exile life in Siberia—Falsehoods about the country—Work in the mines—Great rivers, lakes, and opportunities—Building of the trans-Siberian railway—The Golden Horn —Around the world in forty days—War clouds in the East.	538-552
---	---------

THE WAR FOR LIFE AND LIBERTY.

PAGE

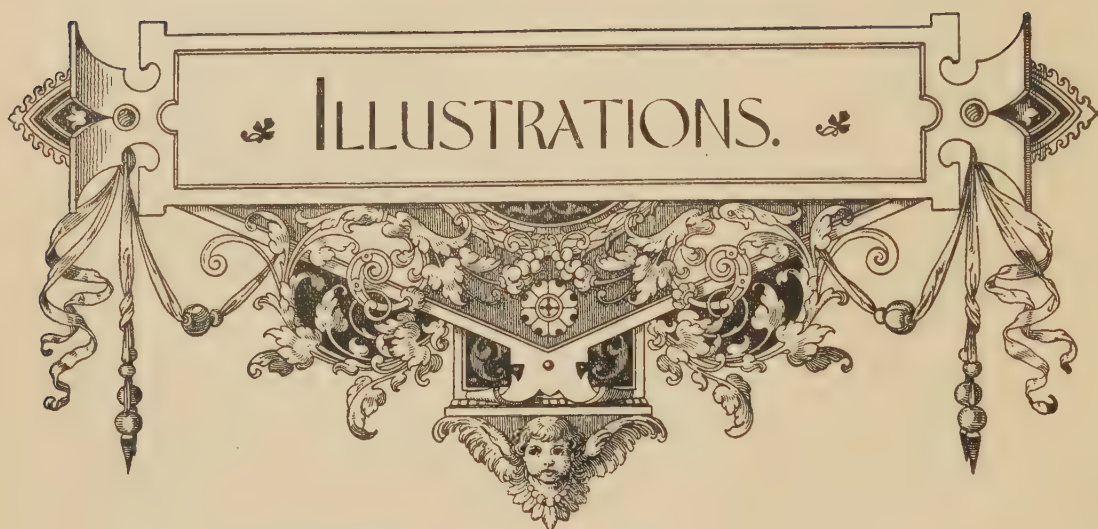
The Story of Poor Cuba.—A land of extraordinary fertility—Oppression of the natives by Columbus—Why is America indifferent?—Help extended to other countries—The President's message—Sympathy expressed and threats implied—The Revolution of 1868—Inhuman policy of concentration—Losses to American commerce—Spain's promises of autonomy—Responsibilities of the United States—Senate vote on the concurrent resolution on recognition—The ten years' war—Abuses and oppressions—Report of our consul-general—Causes that led to the rebellion—The Cuban election laws—The annual expenditures—The insurrection of 1879—The *Virginus* massacre—Interference by an English man-of-war—Uprisings since 1849—The full figure of the devil—To arms!—Beginning of the conflict—The provisional government—Death of Martí—Charging the trochas—Report of losses during the first year of the revolution—Conduct of the war by Campos—Advantages of the insurgents—Recall of Campos—Appointment of Weyler as Governor-General—The fury of hell let loose—Assassination of Maceo—Murder of Americans—Inhuman execution of Dr. Ruiz—His widow appeals to America for justice—Spain's refusal to consider our claims—Exile of Miss Cisneros—A story of lustful brutality—Rescue of the girl by an American correspondent—The *Competitor* prisoners—An outrage that goes unpunished—Cuba's passionate appeal for help—Summary of her sufferings—Why she deserves recognition—Senator Sherman's greatest speech—A terrible arraignment of Spain—Why President Grant did not recognize Cuba in 1875—A serious charge—Weyler's horrible amusements—Violation and murder of women—Crimes that would shame Satan—Why American blood boils with indignation—Sherman's appeal to God and justice—Platform of the Republican party promises aid to Cuba—Causes leading to the recall of Weyler—Rejection of Sagasta's offer of autonomy—Fearful decimation of the population of Cuba—Murder, riot and starvation—Extraordinary supineness of our government—The deterring influence of Wall Street—Loss to Spain during the war—Destruction of the Battleship *Maine*—De Lome's assault on President McKinley—Text of the insulting letter—The *Maine* sent to Havana—Peril of American citizens in Havana—Description of the explosion by an eye witness—Roar of the death blow—Heroism of the seamen—Last call for the living—A solemn funeral scene—Description of the *Maine*—Excitement and anger in the United States—Investigation demanded—The President's message—Appointment of a Board of Inquiry—Their sessions at Havana—Findings of the Board—Report of the Spanish Naval Committee—Excitement in Congress—Pressure upon the President—Preparations for war—The President's ultimatum and second message—Assembling the fleets

CHAPTER II.

Our War with Spain.—Story of the Queen Regent - Alphonso XII. and his disappointments—Beautiful Mercedes—Death of Alphonso II.—The posthumous king child—Rules of the Spanish Court that forbid the mother performing maternal duties to the king child—**The Declaration of War**—The platitudes of diplomacy—Slow approaches to hostility—Patience of the people greatly taxed—Futility of peaceful overtures—The false pride of Spain—Debate over the President's message—**Submission of an Ultimatum to Spain**—The diplomatic correspondence—Flagrant violations of comity—Immediate causes leading to the war—Confraternity of sections—Determination to avenge Spanish crimes—First prize of the war—Some great mistakes—A call for volunteers—**Bombardment of Matanzas**—Spain's preparations for war—Dangers of revolution and dethronement—Romances of the Spanish nation—Bull-fights and the Inquisition—Assembling the Spanish fleet—**The Battle of Manila**—Description of Dewey's astounding achievement—Thirteen of the enemy's vessels destroyed and all the fortifications silenced without the loss of an American—Some results of the great fight—Spain enthused by false reports—Alienation of European sympathies—Mob violence throughout Spain—Skirmishes on the Cuban coast—**The Tragedy in Cardenas Bay**—Death of Ensign Bagley—A fight off Cienfuegos—**Bombardment of San Juan**—Cervera's fleet chased into Santiago de Cuba harbor—War vessels and troops sent to the Philippines—**Marvelous Heroism of Lieutenant Hobson** . . . 583-603

CHAPTER III.

Battles in Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines—Effects of Hobson's intrepid act upon European sympathies—First issue of war bonds—Futility of naval bombardments—Invasion of Cuba begun—Annexation of Hawaii—Battles of Siboney and El Caney—Discovery of Cervera's fleet in Santiago Harbor—Destruction of Socapa Battery—The siege of Santiago—Desperate situation of the Spaniards—Beginning of the great sea battle—Heroism of Commodore Schley—Destruction of torpedo-boat destroyers by the "Gloucester"—The "Oregon's" fierce work—Capitulation of Cervera—Dewey, Schley and Hobson the heroes of the navy—The fight for Santiago—Bombardment of the city—The surrender of Toral—Deplorable condition of the citizens and soldiers—Garcia, offended, refuses to coöperate further with Shafter—The invasion of Porto Rico—Yellow fever at Santiago—First overtures for peace made by Spain—Engagement at Manila—A fierce fight in the night—Aguinaldo's ambitions—Resumption of peace negotiations—Conclusion of the war—Recapitulation of the results—Descriptions of Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines—What we gained by the war 603-624



	PAGE		PAGE
From Torrid Climes to the Frozen Zone	vi	Miles Canyon Rapids, Lewes River	62
Tibet Explorers Attacked by Devil Worshipers . xxii		White Horse Rapids	63
Hunting the Tibet Antelope	34	A Sledge Team <i>en route</i> to Dawson	64
A Lamaist Convent in Tibet	35	A Portage to Lake Bennett	65
The Dalai-Lama and Attendant	36	Descending the Shore of the Yukon	66
The Great Desert of Gobi, Tibet	37	Sketches on the Way to Dawson	67
A Cord Bridge in Tibet	38	Alaska Indians Milking Reindeer	68
A Lamaist Priest, with Bell	39	Latest Authentic Map of Alaska :	69
Male and Female Bourriats, Tibet	40	Rafting Supplies Down Lewes River	70
An Embassy to the Dalai-Lama	41	Descending Cooper River	71
Lamaist Priest Torturing Mr. Landor	42	A Steamer Leaving Seattle	73
Narrow Escape from a Yak	46	Skagway, from the Head of Lynn Canal	73
Prayer-Wheels Along a Street in Lhassa	47	Phosphorescent Illumination of the Sea	75
Altar in a Lama Temple	48	Indians Pursuing Moose	77
Scenes Along the Trail to Klondike	51	Map of the Region About the Pole	79
Fort St. Michael	52	A Runaway Dog Team	81
View of the Seal Rookery, Pribyloff Islands	53	Funeral of Captain Hall	84
Scene Near the Head of Lake Labarge	54	Dr. Fridtjof Nansen	87
At the Foot of Chilkoot Pass	55	Jacobshaven, Greenland	88
Teaming in Alaska	56	Arctic Explorers in Their Sleeping Bags	89
Miners and Indian Guides Fording a Stream	57	Reception of Dr. Nansen at Copenhagen	90
Tramway Over Chilkoot Pass	58	The <i>Fram</i> Lifting Under Ice Pressure	93
A Street in Skagway	59	Bidding Good-bye to the <i>Fram</i>	95
A Restaurant on the Way	59	Johansen's Narrow Escape from a Bear	97
Packers Fording Stewart River	61	Bear Corner	98

ILLUSTRATIONS.

xix

	PAGE		PAGE
Nansen Attacked by a Walrus	99	Red Bird of Paradise	195
Arrival of Nansen at Tromsø	101	Philippine Islanders	195
Bull Musk Ox	102	Arms and Utensils of the Papuans	196
Dr. Nansen Meeting Jackson	103	Hair Ornaments of the Papuans	197
Stalking Musk Oxen	104	Houses on the Coast of Ceram	197
Shooting Bears from the Steamer	105	The Monster-faced Bat	198
Arctic Beauties	106	Head of the Hypsignathus	198
Professor S. S. Andrée	108	New Hebrides Warrior	200
Car of the Andrée Balloon	109	Giant Lantern Fly	202
Departure for Gotenburg	110	Male and Female Pipa Frog	203
Ascension for the Perilous Journey	111	Hut made of Coconut Leaves	205
Andrée's Balloon Passing Over the Ice Fields	112	South African Cart	206
An Observatory in Arctic Lands	115	Condors Gathered at the Feast	207
Scene in the Arctic Ice Fields	116	Vision of Manco Capac	208
Abandonment of the <i>Lady Greely</i>	118	Pizarro in the Court of the Inca	210
The March to Cape Sabine	120	Indians of the San Juan	211
Midnight in the Polar World	123	Sacred Rock of Titicaca	212
<i>Albert</i> and <i>Thetis</i> Breaking an Ice-Pack	126	The Mygale Spider	213
The Midnight Sun	128	The Flying Dragon	214
Arched Iceberg Near Cape Sabine	131	Daring a Shark in his Own Element	215
The Aurora Borealis	134	Ferriage Across the Upper Amazon	216
An Esquimaux Family and Dogs	139	Map of the Transvaal, South Africa	219
Setting Fox Traps	141	Kimberly Diamond Mines	221
Seal Hunter Watching for the Quarry	143	Ferry Across the Vaal River	223
Battle with a Polar Bear	145	Johannesburg in 1889	224
Catching a Young Bear	147	A South African Belle and Uitlander	225
Fight with a Walrus	149	Main Street, Johannesburg, 1898	226
Attacked by a Herd of Walruses	151	Matabele Insurrection—Battle of Gwelo	227
Samoyeds with Reindeer Team	153	Matabele Insurrection—Battle of Colenbrander	
Wolverine About to Attack its Prey	154	Farm	229
Excitement in the Camp	156	Morning Market in Johannesburg	230
Hunting the Narwhal	161	Territorial Map of Africa, Showing European Pos-	
The Midnight Sun	167	sessions	231
<i>Lyson</i> Under a Breaking Iceberg	170	Perilous Encounter with a Lion	233
A Battle with the Storm	173	Natives of Mabotsa	234
Relief Sighted	174	Pigmies of the Kalahari Desert	236
An Esquimaux Dog	176	Livingstone on the Shores of Lake Ngami	238
Houses of Felt on Franz Joseph Land	178	Buffalo at Bay Before a Lion	239
The Jeannette Wrecked and Sinking	180	Hunting the Lion and Buffalo	241
Discovery of DeLong's Remains	184	Shooting a Boa Constrictor	242
Traveling Over the Ice Hummocks	186	Elephants and Hippopotami of the Zambesi	245
An Orang-Outang Family	188	Young Angola Woman	248
Orang-Outang Killing a Crocodile	189	Hippopotami Haunt on the Leeba	250
Orang-Outangs in the Forest	190	Victoria Falls of the Zambesi	253
Hunter Seized by an Orang-Outang	191	Elephants at the Bath	255
Types of the Natives of Borneo	192	Shooting Giraffes Near the Zambesi	257
Dyak Warriors	193	Slave Working Under a Task-master	259
Natives of Timor-laut	194	A Herd of Elephants Sporting	260

	PAGE		PAGE
Woman Seized by a Crocodile	262	Kabba Rega's Bonosooro Guard	377
Native Hunters Harpooning Crocodiles	265	Cutting a Way Through the Enemy	379
A Leopard Invades a Farmer's House	269	Driving Antelopes into the Net	383
Crocodiles of Nyassa Lake	271	Adventure with a Lioness	385
Natives of the Tanganyika District	273	A Sword-hunter Ham-stringing an Elephant	389
Conveying the Bride of Casembe	275	Bringing the Elephant to Bay	390
Inundation of Casembe	277	Battle Between an Elephant and Rhinoceros	391
Sick, Livingstone is Carried by his Servants	281	Hot Race After a Brace of Rhinoceri	393
A Manyema Village	285	Taher Slashing the Near Beast	395
A Fight with Sokos	287	A Moment of Extreme Peril	397
Soko Kidnapping a Girl	288	Rhinoceros Charging Baker's Horse	399
The Massacre at Nyangwe	291	A Clean Shot in the Open	401
Attacked by Manyema Cannibals	292	Abyssian Crocodile Hunters	402
Livingstone's Meeting with Stanley	293	A Howarti Harpooning a Hippo	404
Livingstone and Stanley on Lake Tanganyika	295	Hunting Hippos on the Atbara	406
Helped Into the Hut in which He Died	297	Dragging Behemoth on Shore	408
Chitambo's Village, where Livingstone Died	299	The March out of Bagawayo	412
On the Margin of the Lybian Desert	302	Wasting Cartridges on Hippos	414
Sali Achmet Killed by a Buffalo	303	Driving a Slave Gang	415
Baker's Expedition Ascending the Nile	305	Punishment Administered for Stealing	417
Blowing the War Horn in a Bari Village	308	Stanley's Expedition on the Move	419
Baker Leaving Gondokoro	311	A View of Uji	422
Driving Game in Ellyria	315	Stanley and Livingstone on Tanganyika	429
Baker Quelling the Mutiny	317	Look out for the Elephant !	430
A Funeral Dance of Latookas	320	Stanley Parting from Livingstone	432
Bangoro Arab Elephant Hunters	324	Burial of Edward Pocock	435
A Witch Doctor at his Magic Work	327	Stanley's Reception by King Mtesa	437
Village of Latooka	329	Conflict with the Islanders	441
Baker's Hut in Latooka	331	Natural Bridge on the Island	443
An Elephant Banquet Provided	333	Stanley's Conference with Mtesa's Minister	445
Village Scene in Obbo	334	Naval Battle in Victoria Lake	448
Ferry at the Village of Atada	335	Crossing a Stream in the Unyoro Country	450
Iron Smiths of Unyoro	336	A Wavuma Band	452
Baker's Reception by a Satanic Guard	339	Scene on a Bayou of Tanganyika	453
Elevated Huts Along the Albert N'Yanze	341	A Manyema Village	455
Scene on Somerset River	343	Descending the Livingstone River	457
An Audience with King Kamsasi	345	Raiding Tree-dwelling Dwarfs	458
Turks Marching out of Risoona	347	Hewing a Road on the Way to Uregga	460
Killing Prisoners before the King's Palace	351	Portage of the <i>Lady Alice</i>	462
Baker Ascending the Nile	355	Running a Gauntlet of Cannibals	464
Capturing a Crocodile	358	Boy in the Coils of a Python	467
Natives Harpooning Hippopotami	361	Kalulu Carried Over the Falls	468
A Hot Fight with Baris	364	A Portage of Boats Around the Falls	471
Slave Gang en route for Fashoda	367	Stanley Proceeding Up the Congo	473
Music Charmed Savages	369	Murder of Captain Cook by Hawaiians	475
Pursuit of a Rhinoceros	371	Hawaiian Girls Playing Cards	476
An Audience with Kabba Rega	372	Hawaiian Girls Bathing	478
Buying Elephant's Tusks	375	Hawaiian Girls on Horseback	479

	PAGE		PAGE
Central Street, Honolulu	480	Houses of Russian Peasants	544
Fiery Lake of Kilauea	481	The Governor's Race with a Pack of Wolves	546
Central Crater of Kilauea	482	An Exile's Cabin in the Forest	548
Basin of Mauna Loa	483	The Siberian Pony Express	549
Tahitians Dancing Before Bligh	486	Shackled Convicts in the Kara Mines	550
Bougainville Attacked by Slingers	488	After the Battle of Camajuani	554
Bligh Before the Queen of Tahiti	489	A Charge of Cuban Cavalry	555
View of Apia and the Harbor	491	Cubans Bringing in Spanish Prisoners	556
Samoans in Clothes of Palm Fiber	492	Transporting Soldiers to East Cuba	558
Samoan Girls Making Kava	493	Antonio Maceo	560
A Group of Fijians	494	Death of Henri Marti	562
A Fijian Sub-chief	495	Cubans Attacking a Spanish Post	563
Sea Gulls Fighting an Octopus	497	Spanish Cavalry Ambushed by Cubans	564
Pink Terrace of New Zealand	498	Cubans Destroying a Village	566
Cook's Party Attacked by New Zealanders	499	An Insurgent Rendezvous in Pinar del Rio	568
The Laughing Jackass	501	A War Correspondent's Visit to Gomez	570
Explorer King Among the Bushmen	502	Spanish Advance Post in Cuba	573
Corroboree Dance of Natives	503	Harbor and City of Havana at the time of the Destruction of the <i>Maine</i>	576
Australian Aboriginal	504	War Map of Cuba	578
Suicide of the Rajah's Wives	506	Destruction of the <i>Maine</i>	580
Eruption of Monte Cagua	508	Board of Inquiry in Session	582
Death of Magellan	510	The Queen Regent and King of Spain	585
Capture and Sack of Cebu	511	Roosevelt's Cavalry Regiment of Cowboys	587
Priests Sending Fruits to the Sea Spirit	512	The Queen-Regent of Spain Reading the Speech from the Throne to the Cortes	589
A Brass Band in a Rice Field	514	Bombardment of Matanzas	591
Islanders Slaughtered in Spanish Stockades	515	Scene in a Battleship's Turret During an En- gagement	593
Japanese Belles	518	Battle of Manila	595
Japanese Domestic	519	Spaniards of Madrid Reading Reports of Dewey's Victory	597
Japanese Nurse Girls	520	Fort at Harbor Entrance to Santiago de Cuba	599
Japanese Fruit Stand	521	Admiral Cervera Y Topete	600
A Jinrikisha	522	Transport Ships Leaving San Francisco with Troops for Manila	601
Japanese Coolies Carrying a Lady and Child	523	Lieutenant Hobson Blowing up the "Merrimac"	602
A Bullock Cart	524	Entrance to Harbor of Santiago	604
A Japanese Primary School	525	Troops Embarking for Santiago	605
Japanese Vegetable Hawker	526	Charge of the Rough Riders up San Juan Hill	607
Home Music of the Japanese	527	Shipping Siege Guns to Santiago	609
Bombardment of Wei-hai-wei	528	"Gloucester" Fighting Torpedo-boat destroyers	611
Japanese Girls Lunching	529	Plan of the Great Sea Fight off Santiago	612
Capture of Ping-Yang by the Japanese	530	Destruction of Cervera's Fleet	613
Map of the Seat of War	531	Assault of the 71st New York Volunteers	615
Floating City in the Harbor of Canton	532	The U. S. Fifth Artillery Shelling Santiago	616
A Chinese Execution	533	Spaniards Defending the Fortifications at El Caney	618
Chinese Women in a Pillory	534	Raising our Flag Over Santiago entrenchments	620
Chinese Ceremony of Lamentation	535	The "Monterey" en route for Manila	622
Entrance Gate to Peking from Chinese Tartary	536		
A Chinese Barber Shop	537		
Siberians Hunting the Bear with Whips	540		
Tents of Tschukschis on the Tundras	541		
On the Brink of a Chasm, Valley of the Yenesei	542		



Strange Peoples of Wonder Lands.



TIBET, THE MARVELOUS COUNTRY.



EXPLORATION of all the lands of the earth is almost complete, so far at least as to give us superficial knowledge of peoples, customs, and indigenous animals, and we are now able to institute comparisons and to form conclusions respecting the peculiarities of all countries. As the seat of antiquity, the seeming beginning of history, the protoplasm, so to speak, from which has evolved civilization as we find it to-day, had its origin in the far East, it is not surprising that in farther Asia the inquisitive traveler should discover the most astonishing reliques of very ancient populations. Dispute must always continue over the forever undemonstrable inquiry and enigma of the birth-place of man, but the question is no longer one for controversy as to where the greatest mysticism of belief and practice continues to exist.

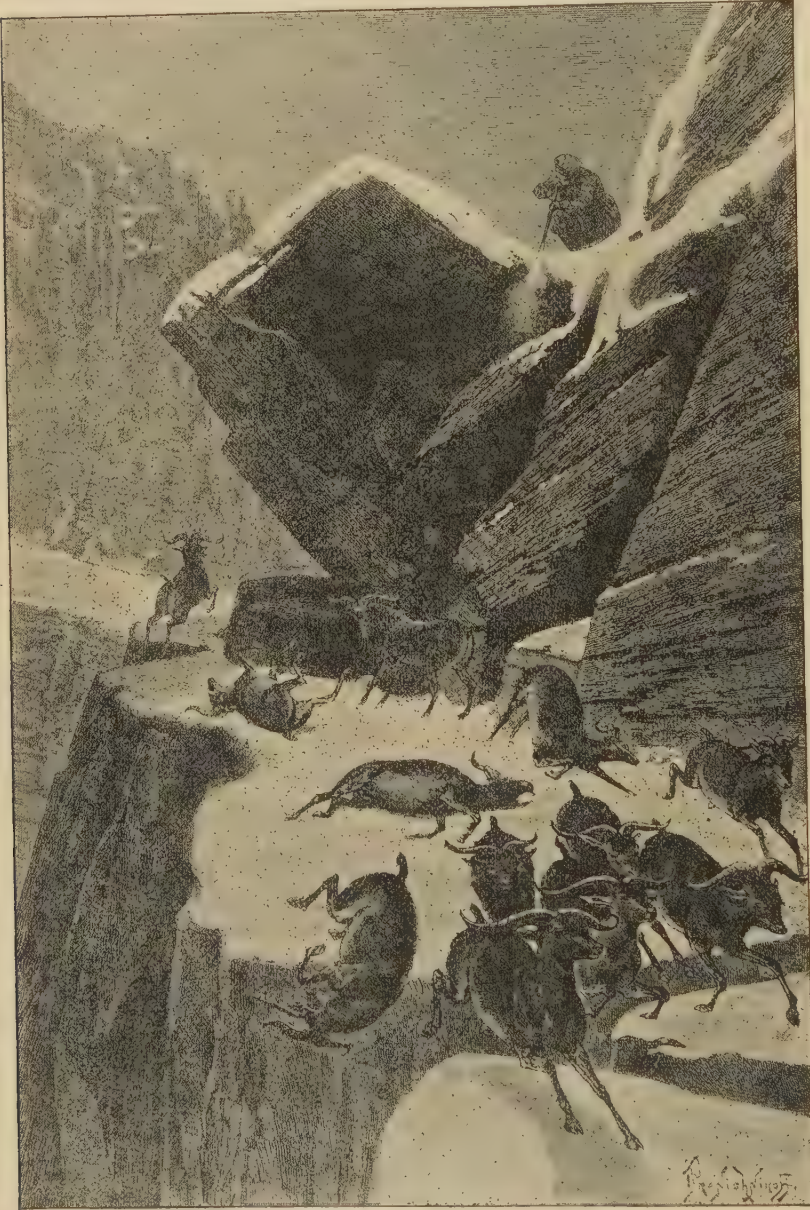
Egypt has largely surrendered her secrets to patient investigators; Central America's Hyrcanian roads have been explored; the arcanums of Assyrian civilizations have been invaded and their riddles read; and the tenebrious regions of benightment of all the world have been illuminated, save alone the great Asian mystery which has thus far remained impenetrable and almost impregnable. Tibet is the dark centre, the unsolved puzzle, the land of occultism and, therefore, of marvels; the haunt of mysteriousness, the one and sole country of the earth where the people have remained isolated and continued unchangeable during millenniums of the past.

The sum of human knowledge comprehends, to an appreciable extent, the exterior of Tibet, but the interior, the religious life of the people especially, is still in profound obscurity because of their implacable hatred of strangers, and their resistance to all efforts made by travelers to reach their sanctuaries or to observe their secret ceremonies. Many attempts have been made and numerous expedients resorted to by fearless investigators to explore the mysteries of Lamaism, but little has been accomplished, while not a few have sacrificed their lives to the vain undertaking. Attention has been particularly called to Tibet by the experience of an English traveler, Henry Savage Landor, who in the early part of 1897 succeeded, after great difficulties, in reaching Lhasa, the capital of Tibet, where he was seized and subjected to almost incredible tortures, as will hereafter be described. The little that is known of the country and its people is sufficiently interesting to justify the historic sketch and stories of thrilling incidents here given.

Thibet, or Tibet, as it is most generally written, is a large country belonging to the great Mongolian empire, and lies between India and Siberia, west of China proper, and east of Bokhara. Its topography is a mixture of arid plains, high table lands, sandy dunes, and bald mountains, in no place very productive except in the river valleys, which are few.

The wild animals found in Tibet are neither fierce nor numerous, comprising wild sheep, which are a species of mountain goat, on the belly of which grows a kind of tumor, from which musk is obtained; wild oxen, called the Great Tartar yak; the cheetah, hyena, bear, antelope, and a small species of deer, the latter being confined to the Himalayan range.

The first accounts given by any traveler who has visited Tibet were written by Marco Polo in the beginning of the fourteenth century, who relates many astonishing incidents of his journey, and gives us a very satisfactory understanding of the curious customs of the people. On account of the use of names of places which are no longer in existence, or have been changed during centuries of conquest, it is impossible now to follow Polo's descriptions with an accurate knowledge as to the cities he refers to. It is believed, however, that either the Ciandu, or Cam-baluc, of his accounts is



HUNTING THE TIBET ANTELOPE.

the Lhasa of to-day, the present capital of Tibet, of which he makes the following mention :

"Three days northeastward of Jangamur lay the city of Ciandu, where the great Kubla Khan built the most marvelous palace of marble and other stones to be found in the entire empire. This he had surrounded by an impregnable wall sixteen miles in circuit, a

portion of which was again divided, so as to form an enclosure, or park, which was stocked with deer and other game, and where hawks and gerfalcons were trained for hunting purposes. Within this wall the great Khan also maintained a herd of ten thousand white horses and as many mares, the latter being kept for the milk they yielded, and which none were permitted to drink except they were of the imperial lineage of Genghis Khan (founder of the Empire)."

Marco Polo also gives much attention to the sorcerers of the country, to whom he attributes most extraordinary powers, of being able to produce or withhold rain at will, to give good or bad luck, and of exercising an influence even after death. These sorcerers had

a custom of dressing and devouring criminals condemned to death by imperial judgment. In describing another palace of the Khans, at Cambaluc, Polo says: "Near this palace, towards the north, is a mount made by hand, a mile in compass, one hundred paces high, adorned with trees that are always green; unto this mountain the Emperor commanded trees to be brought from remote parts, lading elephants with them, for they are taken up with the roots and are transplanted in this mountain, and because this mountain is always green, it is called the Green Mountain." This particular description seems to indicate Lhasa, for that city is built around what is probably an artificial mound, on the apex of which are the Lamasery convents, surrounded by ever-green trees that are not native, but were brought from a distance, no other trees growing in the neighborhood. Another corres-



A LAMAIST CONVENT IN TIBET.

pondence is found in the fact that the mound referred to is still called "the Green Mountain." It is worthy also to notice in Polo's narrative the mention he makes of gold and silver bells that were so hung around the circumference of balls, set as ornaments upon monumental pyramids, that the softest winds imparted to them a swinging motion which caused a pleasant tinkling sound. These little bells may be seen to-day on the cornices of the Lamasery convents of Lhasa, while in several other respects Polo's descriptions may well apply to the Tibetan capital of to-day.

The next European traveler to visit Lhasa, after Marco Polo, was Friar Odorico, in the year 1330, who writes: "The folk of that country (Tibet) dwell in tents made of black felt. But the chief and royal city (Lhasa) is all built with walls of black and white, and all its streets are very well paved. In this city no one shall dare to shed the blood of any, whether man or beast, for the reverence they bear a certain idol that is there worshiped. In that city dwelleth the Abassi, *i. e.*, in their tongue, the pope, who is the head of all the idolaters, and who has the disposal of all their benefices, such as they are, after their manner." This *Abassi*, so called by Friar Odorico, is now known as the *Dalai-Lama*. It was not until 1661 that any other Europeans succeeded in reaching Lhasa, in which year two Jesuit fathers, D'Orville and Grueber, visited the place and remained for a month, becoming thus

**PILGRIMAGE OF
FRIAR ODORICO.**

able to give a correct description of the Patala palace, or residence of the Dalai-Lama, which they both wrote and illustrated. In 1708 a Capuchin mission was set up in Lhasa, at the head of which was Father Orazia, but it soon failed, and a subsequent one, in 1754, was expelled.

In 1812 Thomas Manning, an Englishman devoted to Chinese studies, not only reached Lhasa, but by a residence of five months in the city became sufficiently familiar with the language to hold an interview with the Dalai-Lama, but no use was made of the information thus acquired until 1876, when the narrative was published, which, however, was most disappointing. Many valuable facts that we have concerning the Lamas, and Lhasa, were contributed by Fathers Huc and Gabet, two Lazarist priests, who, after traveling through China, reached the Tibetan capital in January, 1846. It is to these travelers we are indebted for the following interesting description of the sacred city :

"The sun was about to set as we completed our descent of the innumerable zigzags of the mountain path. Issuing into a wide valley, we beheld on our right Lhasa, the famous metropolis of the Buddhist world. The multitude of aged trees which encircle the city as with a girdle of foliage, the lofty white houses, terminating in flat roofs surrounded by turrets, the numerous temples with their gilt canopies, the Buddhala (*Patala*), crowned by the palace of the Dalai-Lama—all unite to give Lhasa a majestic and imposing appearance."



THE DALAI-LAMA AND ATTENDANT.

Twenty years later, or in 1866, an India pundit named Nain Singh reached Lhasa and remained for one year, and subsequently made a second visit to the city, in 1874, for which he was rewarded by a pension and grant of land by the India Government, and a gold medal by the Royal Geographical Society. He reports that the Lamas, or Tibetan priests, whose rule is always grasping and oppressive, are sensible of the weakness of their system if brought into dispute; and to keep their subjects in ignorance, and under subjection to their remarkable superstitions, they violently oppose the admission of strangers

into the country, and under no circumstances permit any save of their own faith to enter their sanctuaries.

The meaning of the word *Lhasa* is "God Ground," but it is also called *Monhe dhot*, signifying "Eternal Sanctuary." The city is circular in form, and though containing a population of probably 75,000 souls, is so compactly built that its diameter is scarcely one mile. The houses are generally made of sun-dried brick, but the rich classes occupy large buildings of stone; but whatever the material used, all the houses are whitewashed, and the doors are framed in red and yellow, which give the city a picturesque appearance. In the suburbs are to be seen many houses constructed of the horns of sheep and oxen set in mortar, and in all of them may be found a gilt shrine supporting several images and sacred books, before which incense lamps are kept burning.

Lhasa is practically a cluster of immense monastic establishments, to which are attracted thousands of students from all parts of Tibet and Mongolia. It is not only the

seat of the supreme pontiff of Buddhism, but is a sacred city to which pilgrimages are made of such numbers that the streets are sometimes completely choked. These devotees come to adore the living reincarnated Buddha, to seek remission of their sins, to obtain promise of a happy transmigration after death, to secure holy relics, and for many other purposes connected with their superstitions. The crowds are especially great upon fête days and when religious festivals are held, which in some cases continue for a week, during which times bargaining and selling occupy more of the people's attention than their sacred duties. It is noticeable that the retail trade is largely in the hands of women, who, if not naturally comely, would be much less repulsive if they would renounce the fashion of daubing their faces with a dark-brown pigment, which, however, is used to discourage flirting.

Nain Singh gives us the following description of the great temple and convent of Labrang, which is at once the seat of the holy sanctuary, the great metropolitan convent, the palace of civil government and the council of administration: "The main building of the Labrang is three stories high. The entrance, facing eastward, forms a portico supported on six great timber columns, richly carved and gilt, while the walls are painted with the history of Sakya (one of the chief Buddhist gods). Great folding doors, covered with reliefs of bronze and iron, lead to the ante-hall, and from this by a second heavy gate to the court of the temple. On each side of the gate, two and two, stand colossi of the spirit-kings of the four points of heaven.

**THE SACRED
LAMA HOUSE.**

"At the west end steps ascend to a quadrangular chancel, on each side of which are three chapels, and at the extremity a rectangular apse or projection, and in it is the altar or graded throne, on which stands the great image of Sakya, seen through a lattice of silver gilt, the higher shelves or offsets of the altar being beset with small figures in



THE GREAT DESERT OF GOBI, TIBET.

precious metals of saints, and the lower ones with lamps, burning joss-sticks, platters holding offerings of butter and meal, flowers modeled in butter, etc. In the chair to the right is the elevated and stepped throne of the Grand Lama, laid with splendid cushions, succeeded by the nearly equal throne of the Teshu Lama, and then by the seats of other ecclesiastical potentates reborn and elected, in order.

"In a space shut in with silver lattice, on the south of the chancel steps, are seen fifteen great disks of silver, set with precious stones, on which are embossed fundamental Buddhist symbols, such as their system of cosmogony, the circle of transmigration, the births of Sakya, etc. The sanctuary, or chancel, towers above the rest of the building, and is covered

with a rectangular canopy of gilt metal, which rises to a ridge serrated with fantastic figures. This canopy rests on columns which are also gilt, and from its eaves and angles hang bells that tinkle with every breeze. This ancient temple contains a vast accumulation from the ages, of gold and silver vessels, lamps, reliquaries, and precious bric-a-brac of every kind, which is annually exposed to view in the spring festivities. The daily

offices in the Labrang are attended by crowds of worshippers, and a sacred way which leads around it is constantly traversed by devotees who perform the circuit as a work of merit, always in a particular direction. No woman is permitted to spend a night within these precincts."

Near the north end of Lhasa is another temple, dedicated to the deified Srong-dsangampo and his Chinese wife, whose bodies are therein entombed. Here is preserved the second paladia, or sacred image, which Srong's spouse brought with her to the Snow-land. This temple is called the *Little Jâ*, or *Jo*, and in it is maintained a school of magic, where the Lamas instruct students in the mysteries of life and the art of subjecting all things to the purified will.

In yet another temple, nearby, called the *Garmak-hia*, is a school of black art, of an order much lower than are the teachings in Little Jo. The priest-wizards herein are sorcerers who transmit their power

from father to son by practical and direct instruction, for they refuse to trust their secrets to writing. These teachers of magic perform feats of knife-swallowing, breathing fire, cutting off their own heads, and other tricks familiar to the Yogas of India, which are really nothing more than feats of skillful conjuring. Their performances are rendered much more impressive by the fantastically hideous costumes they adopt when



A CORD BRIDGE IN TIBET.

exercising their so-called occult powers, and by their howls and fierce cries in simulation of the Shamanist devil-dancers.

The two Great Lamas of Tibet are called respectively the *Dalai-Lama* and the *Pautsher-Lama*, both of whom are devoutly believed, by the orthodox, to be incarnations of two deities known as *Avalokitesvara* and *Amitabha*, beings who are supposed to have a dual existence, thus being able to appear at will as apparitional bodies on earth, while continuing to exist in the heavenly state of Narvana. Their power over their subjects, under the influence of such superstition, is of necessity incomputably great.

The doctrine of Buddhism is laid substantially upon a belief in the transmigration of souls; that all our sufferings of mind or body are the consequential punishments of sins committed during a previous existence, and escape from future woes in the next birth is only possible through the performance of good deeds and a liberal bestowal of gifts upon the priests. Says a learned writer on the subject: "While hoping for a better fate in their next birth, the oppressed people turn for succor and advice to the aid of astrology and witchcraft—a belief in which seems to underlie all religions, and is only just dying out among ourselves."

The most indomitable efforts of courageous travelers have failed to discover the secret ceremonies connected with the Lamaist worship. The doctrine of Buddhism, the beliefs of its votaries, and the philosophy of its teachings are well understood, but that particular sect of Buddhists confined to Tibet is so distinct from their co-religionists of China and India that there is nothing in common between them except the basic principles. Gatuma, founder of the faith, the Buddha, which word signifies *the learned and perfect one*, propounded a philosophy and taught principles almost identical with those of Jesus Christ. To him many miracles are credited, and his followers declare that he was immaculately conceived, but he never attempted to instruct or influence by any exhibitions of supernatural powers, and cautioned his adherents against placing faith in necromancers, soothsayers, and sorcerers, all of whom he regarded as false prophets. The Buddhists of Tibet have departed so far from the teachings and admonitions of Gatuma, that they have given themselves up to the control of priests who perpetuate their influence through practices of the black-art, which, it must be conceded, they have brought to a surprising state of perfection. But departure from their original faith is shown in other particulars no less emphatic. Gatuma exhorted to fidelity, chastity, charity, and self-denial, but the Tibetan Buddhists so little regard these counsels of the inspired one that the reverse obtains.

So singular are the Tibetans in their social, no less than in their religious practices, that in many particulars they are the antithesis of all other people. In all other barbaric countries, and even among most of the semi-civilized, polygamy is common, if not general, and women are in subjection to their husbands, who are both lords and masters. In every Oriental country except Tibet these customs prevail, and women are looked upon not only



A LAMAIST PRIEST, WITH BELL.

as inferior, but as soulless creatures, upon whose backs both stripes and heavy burdens are laid. In Tibet the reverse of these conditions has been noted for nearly one thousand years, and there has been little change except in some of the cities in that country where the slight influence of missionaries, Chinese, and visitors from foreign lands has affected some of the customs of the people. It is a remarkable fact that polyandry is common among the peasantry of Tibet; so general, indeed, as to be an institution as well established as it is

**THE PRACTICE OF
POLYANDRY.**

peculiar. It is not a very uncommon thing to see a woman in the agricultural districts with as many as six husbands, all living together with certainly as much amity as may be found in Mormon families. But these are undoubtedly marriages of convenience, with which neither love nor religion has any concern. In a great majority of cases the woman does not take a number of husbands because of any affectionate longings, but purely as a matter of business. If she has broad acres to cultivate, she has need of cultivators, and to obtain these she often buys



MALE AND FEMALE BOURIATS OF NORTH TIBET.

husbands, whose poverty or hard conditions render them amenable to such a proposition, and then they become practically her slaves. Nor is the Tibetan woman a devoted wife or a kind master, for she is generally as harsh and unfeeling as a true savage. It has also been noticed that women who have more than one husband seldom bear more than one or two children, and that their ideas of chastity are no better than a brute's, whose like instincts, in fact, they generally follow.

Another custom, no less curious than that of polyandry, is thus described by Marco Polo, writing of the people of the province of Carazan, Tibet: "When one of their women is once delivered she forsakes the bed, washes the child and dresses it, and then the husband lieth

down and keeps the child with him forty days, not suffering it to depart; is visited all this time by friends and neighbors to cheer and comfort him. The woman looks to the house and carries the husband his broths to the bed, and gives suck to the child by him." Surprise is equally great to learn that throughout Tibet, whether in city or country, the husband leaves his house upon the advent of visitors, who, if it be a man, is given all the privileges which the husband might have possessed, so that in fact the visitor, while in the house, takes the place of husband in all things.

The Tibetans are as ignorant as they are degraded, but the Lamas, as a rule, are men of extraordinary wisdom, which is made to avail them effectively in their rulership of the superstition besotted people. But while the Lamas may be, as claimed, proficient in chemistry and natural philosophy, they have a knowledge and have discovered laws not generally known to us, for many of their performances seem to surpass all tricks of legerdemain.

Travelers tell us of a cloth made from the skins of salamander that is indestructible, and of a mineral which the

priests obtain from a certain mountain of Tibet, which by being bruised and dried is converted into a kind of wool, which is then spun and woven into cloth. When it is desirable to cleanse these cloths it is only necessary to cast them into the fire for an hour when they may be taken out uninjured and white as snow. This claim of indestructible cloth is

no doubt based upon some necromantic art akin to the handling of fire, which the Lamas do without hurt to themselves, even to the placing of pieces of red-hot iron in their mouths, and standing in the midst of flames that will burn anything held in their hands but injure nothing on their bodies. Several travelers have told us of Lamas whom they have seen fill empty glasses with wine or milk at will without any apparent source of supply. Marco Polo also tells a like story thus: "Whenever the Great Khan sat at his table it was raised eight yards high, and in the midst of the hall, a good distance from the table, was a large cupboard of plate from which these sorcerers caused wine and milk to fill the goblets without any hand touching them."

Encyclopædic writers and other high authorities ascribe to the Lamas extraordinary powers which often appear to partake of the truly miraculous. Thus they have been known to lay in a state of suspended animation for as much as three months at a time, to submit themselves to be buried or subjected to any of the severest tests that can be imposed, to have needles thrust into their eyes, hot iron applied to their feet, knives stuck into their

STORIES OF MARVELOUS MAGIC.



AN EMBASSY TO THE DALAI-LAMA.

bodies, and to subsequently revive unharmed. These sorcerers, as we are pleased to call them, suspend life in order, as they claim, to allow their souls to make long pilgrimages to remote parts of the earth, and to visit even the planets, with which they pretend to a familiarity. It is necessary, however, to make such claims, since one of their chief offices is to commune with the spirit world and to prepare the way for reincarnation in a happier state of their credulous followers. It is, with all due respect to the Catholic church, something like saying mass for the repose of the dead, and the praying of souls out of purgatory.

Of the recent works published on Tibet, that of Major Waddell's is most complete and satisfactory, though the author confined his investigations almost wholly to the mummerly and mystery of the Buddhist fanatics. His story is full of interest, and its reliability is not to be questioned, as the author, whose

WADDELL'S STORY

OF THE LAMAS.

reputation as an Indian archæologist is well established, to qualify himself for his task, not only lived a long while among the Lamas, but acquired a

knowledge of their language, and, professing conversion to the faith purchased a temple and supported a number of Lamas, or priests. But while this daring expedient served to disclose to him a great many of the mysteries of the religious practices of the priests which no other alien was ever able to discover, he failed to explore all the mystic ceremonies, nor was he admitted to all the inner sanctuaries. Sir Richard Burton, it will be remembered, practiced a like deception in 1855, going first to Egypt, where he mastered the Arabic language, and then embracing Mohammedanism he made a pilgrimage to Mecca, where he was admitted,

HOW BURTON GAINED

ACCESS TO THE KAABA.

with other devotees, to the great Mosque and looked upon the sacred Kaaba, which is believed by pious Mohammedans to be the spot on which Adam first worshiped after his expulsion from Paradise. Within the Kaaba, which is a stone structure some

fifty feet square, is the holy black stone, suspended from an angle at a height convenient to be kissed. Burton had the audacity to carry his profanation of the Mosque and the Kaaba so far as to kiss the sacred stone, his insincerity being undiscovered, nor was it known that he was not an Arab, until after he had escaped from the country, which disguise saved his life. Major Waddell employed the same cunning that succeeded so well with Burton, and probably with equally satisfactory results, but he was not permitted to enter the holy of holies, no more than is a third degree Mason allowed to explore the secrets of Knight Templarism, for the Buddhism of Tibet is progressive by degrees, and the priesthood is therefore divided into sects as distinct as are the castes of India.

The number and influence of the Lama priesthood may be partially comprehended by knowing the fact that one son in every Tibetan family becomes a monk, to accommodate which the land is fairly filled with monasteries. That of Sera, in Lhasa, Waddell tells us, contains 5500 monks, while one in the country of the Khalkas, not far from the capital, supports no less than 14,000. As may be supposed, nearly all of these are little better than menials, whose labors, while professedly for the general good, are in truth for the benefit of their superiors in the priesthood. The new faith, which is hardly two centuries old, while being Buddhistic in principle, is really a form of Shamanism, for while based upon a belief in reincarnation, the practice and ceremonies are those of the devil-worshippers, which was indeed the most ancient religion of the Tartars. This form of worship embraces reliance in sorcery and propitiation of demons by sacrifice and frantic gestures. Whatever may be the claim of Lamaist priests, their customs prove that they are still bound by the weird superstitions of the old Tartars, whose priests have always been necromancers, and it may

be observed that their power has continued over the people largely, if not chiefly, by reason of the witchcraft which they practice.

It is not surprising that the Lamaists violently oppose the admission of strangers into their cities, and discourage the entrance of any westerner into their country. A religion that is based upon miracle and satanic sacrifices naturally seeks to avoid investigation. The Grand Lama, though seemingly isolated and exclusive, with fetishes for companions, is nevertheless a learned man, who keeps well informed as to events transpiring beyond the boundaries of his sacerdotal empire. He is cunning, resourceful, far-sighted, and knows that any considerable inflowing of foreigners would inevitably result in a spread of new beliefs and a corresponding impairment of that which supports his own power and precedence. He encourages the faith of his followers by wild ceremonies and savage incantations, which are best suited to inflame the impressionable minds of ignorant subjects, and preserves the faith in his own infallibility and divinity by exhibitions of magic, or by tricks of chemistry and natural philosophy, which the people accept as miracle.

**SAVAGE INHIBITION
OF STRANGERS.**

Several persons from Europe have traveled through Tibet, and probably a dozen or more have succeeded in entering Lhasa, the sacred city; but their purpose, if that of investigating Lamaism, was concealed under the pretence of being commercial agents, for any declaration of real intent would subject any investigator to the gravest danger. The peril of such an attempt was proved during the early part of 1897, in the case of Mr. Henry Savage Landor, of England, who traveled through Tibet as correspondent of the London *Daily Mail*, and who, after great privations and by disguising himself as a Hindu Buddhist, reached the sacred city, where for a while he remained undetected. Encouraged to pursue his investigations by the success of his expedient, Mr. Landor presumed so far upon his immunity as to attempt an investigation into the mysteries of the Lamasery of Sera, where he actually witnessed some of the most solemn and impressive ceremonies connected with the inner religious life of Tibetan Buddhism, which E. F. Knight, another explorer, who had the fortune to be a spectator of what is known as the Mystery Play, at the Lamasery of Himis, in Cashmere, under the protection of the British protectorate, thus describes:

"The principal motive of this Mystery Play appeared to be the lesson that the helpless, naked soul of man has its being in the midst of a vast and obscure space full of malignant demons—the earth, the air, the water crowded with them—perpetually seeking to destroy him, harassing him with tortures and terrors, and that against this infinite oppression of the powers of evil he can himself do nothing, but that occasionally the exorcisms or prayers of some good Lama or incarnation may come to his assistance and shield him, and even then only after a fierce and doubtful contest between the saint and the devils. . . . The musical instruments employed by the Lama orchestra included shawms and other huge brazen wind instruments, surnais, cymbals, gongs, tambourines, and rattles made of human bones. . . . The gongs and shawms sounded and the mummeries commenced. First came some priests with mitres on their heads, clad in rich robes, who swung censers, filling the courtyard with the odor of incense. After a stately dance to slow music these went out and then entered with wild antics figures in yellow robes and peaked hoods, looking something like victims destined for an *auto-da-fe*; flames and effigies of human skulls were on their breasts and other portions of their raiment. As their hoods fell back, hideous features as of leering satyrs were disclosed. Then the music became fast and furious, and troop after troop of different masks rushed on, some beating wooden

**THE WONDROUS
MYSTERY PLAY.**

tambourines, others swelling the din with rattles and bells. All of these masks were horrible, and the malice of infernal beings was well expressed on some of them. As they danced to the wild music with strange steps and gestures they howled in savage chorus. These, I believe, were intended to represent some of the ugly forms that meet the dead man's soul in space while it is winging its way from one sphere to the next. . . .

"A small black image representing a human corpse was placed within a magic triangle designed upon the pavement of the quadrangle. Figures painted black and white to simulate skeletons, some in chains, others bearing sickles or swords, engaged in a frantic dance around the corpse. They were apparently attempting to snatch it away or inflict some injury on it, but were deterred by the magic of the surrounding triangle and by the chanting and censer swinging of several holy men in mitres and purple copes, who stood beneath the temple porch."

This was the furious, tragic, and mysterious spectacle that Mr. Landor witnessed, probably the only white person who ever gained access to the Mystery Play within the sacred city of Lhassa. The sight was such an appalling one that

SEIZURE AND TORTURE Mr. Landor was unable to wholly suppress his surprise or restrain his excitement, and the first manifestation of astonishment, slight though it were, served to detect his presence to some of the sharp-eyed Lamas.

OF MR. LANDOR.

The devil-dancers paused at a signal from one of the priests, a hush followed the tumult of cymbal and trumpet, and in a moment there was a savage rush of devils and monks upon the stupefied Landor and his two servants. In a trice they were bound hands and feet, and carried amid a deafening la-la-looing to a dungeon cell in the Sera Lamasery. A trial, no doubt, succeeded, for it was not until the third day of his incarceration that he was visited by any one, and he began to fear that starvation was to be his punishment. At the expiration of the third day, a Lama came to inform him that the Grand Council had decreed he should suffer decapitation, and preparation was accordingly made to carry the sentence into execution. At the supreme moment, however, the Grand Lama, who is supreme ruler, or pontiff, decreed that death were an insufficient punishment for an invasion and profanation of the sacred mysteries of their religion, and ordered that the offenders should be subjected to torture. The two servants were unmercifully flogged with bamboo sticks, until they fainted under the infliction, but Mr. Landor's punishment was much more severe. He was first subjected to fire, as a purifier of the spirit, his hands, legs, and feet being horribly burned with torches while he was chained to the stone floor of his dungeon cell. Three days after this preliminary torment, Landor was compelled to walk on his blistered feet to the court where the Mystery Play had been performed, and there he was stretched and tortured on a rack that had evidently been made for the purpose of his punishment. The rack consisted of two strong parallel beams eight feet long, substantially connected by cross-pieces, with a large wheel at each end. The victim, when brought out, was laid upon the parallel beams, and fastened head and feet by ropes passing around the drums of the two wheels, which men turned by means of cranks, until the sufferer's arms and legs started from their sockets. After thus subjecting him to the most terrible of tortures Mr. Landor was taken back to his cell, where he was confined for one whole month, though not without some care from monks, who appeared to be sympathetic of his sufferings, and tried to mitigate them. But no amount of even skillful attention could remedy the injury that had been wrought, for Mr. Landor's spine was wrenched and his muscles so strained by the rack that he was rendered a hopeless cripple. At the end of forty days after his arrest, he was liberated and permitted to secure a conveyance to take him beyond the Indian frontier. Mr. Landor returned to



LAMAIST PRIESTS TORTURING MR. LANDOR.

England a physical wreck, to seek redress, through his government, from the Dalaï-Lama, or Arch-fanatic, of Tibet, which, if obtained, will serve to open the door to the mysteries of Lama Buddhism, but governments, however solicitous of their subjects, seldom interfere or demand satisfaction for such violations as Mr. Landor committed, the dangers of his profanation being well understood.

The government of Tibet is exclusively in the hands of the Lamas. The Tale-Lama is the political and religious head of all Tibet. When he dies, or, in Buddhist language, transmigrates, the chief Lamas elect a child to continue the indestructible personification of the living Buddha. After the Tale-Lama, comes the Nomekhan or spiritual superior. He is appointed by the Tale-Lama from among the class of chaberon Lamas and holds office for life. All government is dependent on the Nomekhan and four



COLONEL PRJEWALSKI'S NARROW ESCAPE.

ministers called Kalons. The country is divided into numerous principalities, each governed by a Hontouhkto Lama.

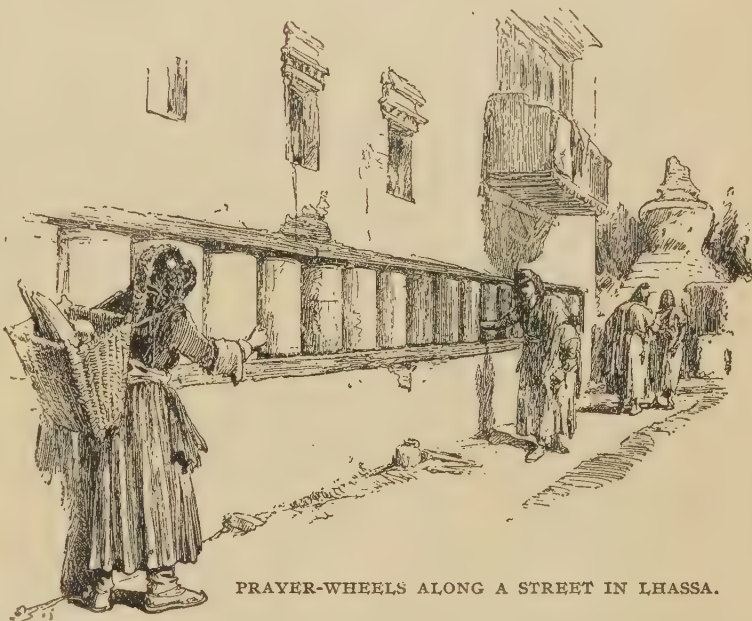
Tibet is a land of curious customs. Respectable women do not leave their houses without first smearing their faces with glue. The object of this is to repulse gallantry; a curious thing, but hardly so remarkable as is their form of salutation, which is made by thrusting out the tongue.

As previously stated, Tibet is the home of few wild animals, probably due to the inclemency and desert character of the country. The largest, as well as the most savage, is the yak, or Tartar ox, which is distinguished for its long woolly hair and large horns. The yak is usually found in herds of four to twenty, roaming over the snow-covered stretches of Southern Tartary, where it subsists by eating mosses, willows, and whatever vegetation is to be found in that generally arid country. A bull yak is indeed a terrible

HUNTING THE WILD OX OF TARTARY.

creature when its anger is once aroused, which, fortunately for the hunter, is difficult to provoke. In size it is nearly eleven feet in length by six feet in height, and when maddened its shaggy coat swells until the animal appears to almost rival an elephant. The eyes are also exceedingly fierce, and its whole demeanor is fearful in the extreme. If unmolested the yak is an inoffensive creature, though never very timid, generally appearing too stupid to realize the presence of an enemy. But when attacked it is equally insensible to its own danger, and nothing can divert its revengeful disposition, which is so furious that it hesitates not to rush to its own destruction. Every herd has a chief, which is invariably a bull, whose mastery is not acknowledged until he has vanquished all disputants upon the field of battle; henceforth he becomes guardian, and bravely takes the front whenever danger threatens.

Colonel Prjewalski, State Major of the Russian Army, with a suitable escort, made an extensive tour of Mongolia, spending three years, from November, 1870, until December, 1873, in Western China, Southern Siberia and Tibet, from whose reports many interesting facts are obtained. He shows the correspondence of beliefs and customs that prevail among the peoples of these three regions, who belong to the old Tartar race and are to-day practically the



PRAYER-WHEELS ALONG A STREET IN LHASSA.

same as were their ancestors during the time of Ghengis Khan. Prjewalski made no attempt to investigate the mysteries of Lamaism, but confined his efforts to exploration and to establishing confidence between the natives and Russians, his design being to promote commercial relations and to gain concessions for his government. The Bourriats, on the north of Tibet and of South Siberia, were his active allies in this undertaking, a number of whom composed a part of his expeditionary force. No small part of his report, therefore, is descriptive of the social, political, industrial, and communal life of these people, their manner of hunting, trapping, traveling, and nomadic characteristics which render them so curious and interesting to the civilized world, of which they are totally ignorant.

Mr. William Simpson, writing in the *London News* of August 3, 1895, gives us a description of some of the weird ceremonies and curious customs of the monks and peasants of Tibet as follows:

The Lamasery of Hemis is situated on the left bank of the Indus, about twenty miles above Leh, and is a place of note among the monasteries of Tibet. It so chanced that I paid a passing visit to it when traveling in that part of the world as far back as 1861. The most striking thing that I noticed was a long row of praying-wheels, or cylinders—for they are like barrels—in the courtyard of the place, so arranged that the monks, or anyone passing, could turn each with the hand while walking along. Two nights before my visit to Hemis, at Ghia, there was a praying-barrel turned

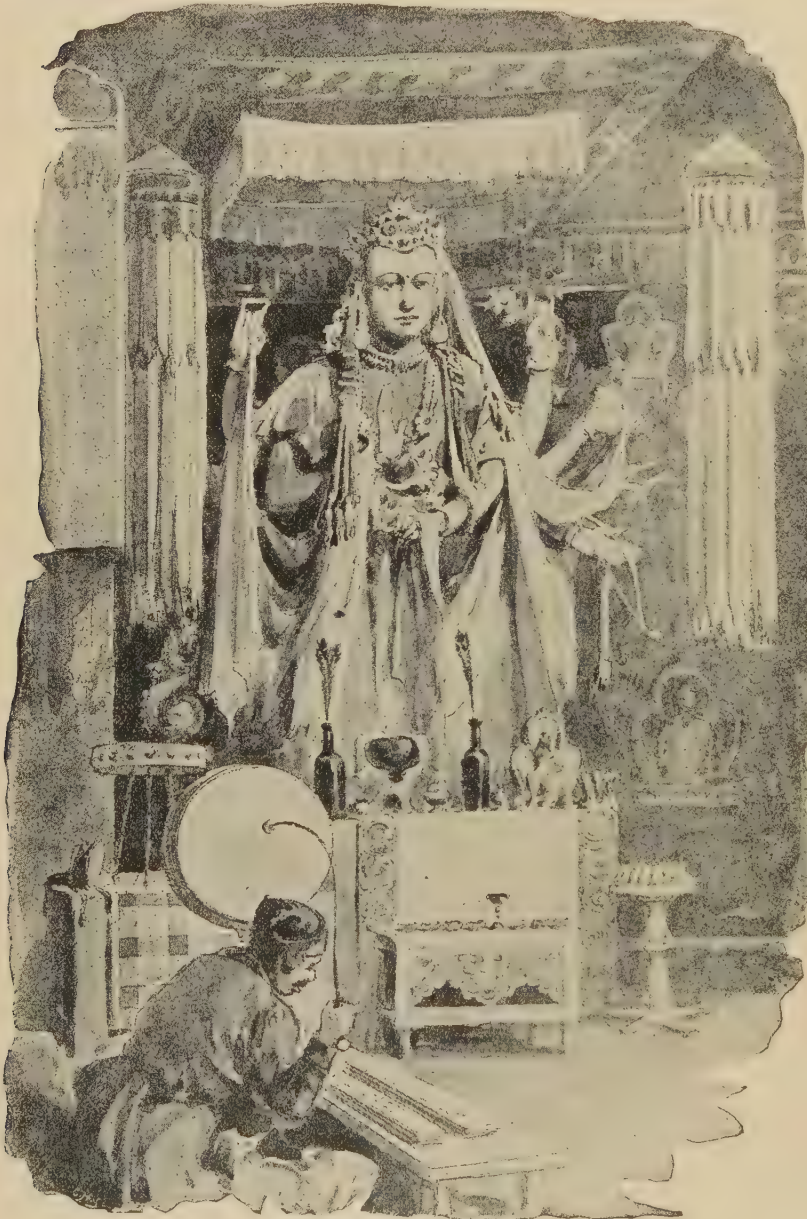
PRAYING-WHEELS
OF THE LAMAS.

by a water-wheel, making a clicking sound at each turn, which I could hear when I chanced to wake during the night, for my tent had been pitched within a few yards of it. In some of the monasteries there are very large ones, which the monks turn by means of a crank. There are small ones, made of brass, which the monks can carry in the hand, and whirl as they walk, or while conversing. In some parts of Tibet these barrels are turned by wind-mills. It was a form of these curious wheels, or barrels, that Carlyle christened "The Rotatory Calabash." Their

real character is now understood, but it would require a long article to give a full explanation; it may be sufficient here to say that the intention of their use is connected with "praise" rather than with "prayer."

They have very long and elaborate services in these Lamaseries, in which they twirl their *manies*, or praying-wheels, ring bells, beat drums, and blow through very long trumpets. The service lasts so long that they regale themselves with tea. This is a dreadful concoction, made with grease, and often a few vegetables are thrown in, forming something like soup. Behind the altar there is generally a colossal figure of some Buddhist saint, clothed with bright-colored garments, and strips of gaudy silk hanging round. On more than one altar I noticed seven small brass cups with what seemed to be water in them; these suggested some form of symbolism, but any attempt at discovering the meaning was prevented owing to want of familiarity with the language. It was amusing to find European bottles arranged upon some of the altars. In one Lamasery that I visited the Lamas pointed with pride to a bottle on the altar, with a brilliant label in gold and colors, on which there was a cat with the words "Old Tom."

The large number of monasteries in Tibet is a surprise to some travelers, but anyone who has made himself acquainted with India during the Buddhist period will be familiar with the existence of the same monastic system,



ALTAR IN LAMA TEMPLE AT LEH.

which filled that country with institutions of a similar kind. "The land glittered with the yellow robes"—yellow was the color worn by the Buddhist monks in India, as it is at the present day in Ceylon—and it was in these words that the triumphs of Buddhism, in its success over Brahminism, were at first described. Buddhist monasteries, with crowds of monks, were to be found all over India as late as the seventh century.

It is generally supposed that in the East many wives is the rule, but there seems to have existed an older custom of one wife and a number of husbands. This rule still exists in Tibet, and it has been suggested as a reason that might explain the abundance of monks. A family generally gives one of its sons as a Lama, because when the eldest son marries, the woman becomes the wife of all the brothers, and the Lamasery is supposed to be the means of reducing the quantity of husbands. This explanation fails, for it is well known that polyandry was an ancient practice in many parts of the world; and we know from the "Mahabharata" that it was at one time the custom in India. In that old epic we are told that the Five Pandu Brothers married one wife. This, it may be said, is only legendary, but legends generally adhere to the habits, and even the laws, of the region at the time they came into existence. We have another, and perhaps a more direct evidence, and that is that polyandry was the custom in Ceylon down to the early part of the present century. This peculiar marriage system was not confined to Tibet, and its existence there at the present day does not explain much. Tibet, like other mountain regions, has not been influenced to a great extent by the action of conquest or migration, and many of its rites and customs have long remained untouched by the usual causes of mutation. It is this condition of things which gives to that country in the present day a special interest to the archæologist and the student of folk-lore.

THE PRACTICE OF MANY HUSBANDS.

Tibet is now likely to become what may be called the newest "rage" for the more adventurous tourists. Already a number of men have lately traveled in that bleak and dangerous region. Rockhill and Littledale have passed through, adding thereby to our knowledge. Surgeon Waddell has sojourned among the Lamas in order to learn from them. Bonvalot, Younghusband, and Bower have made daring journeys across Tibet. With such achievements as examples it is easy to guess that others will follow, and we shall soon be as familiar with Tibet as we are with Charing Cross.



LAND OF THE GOLDEN FLEECE.



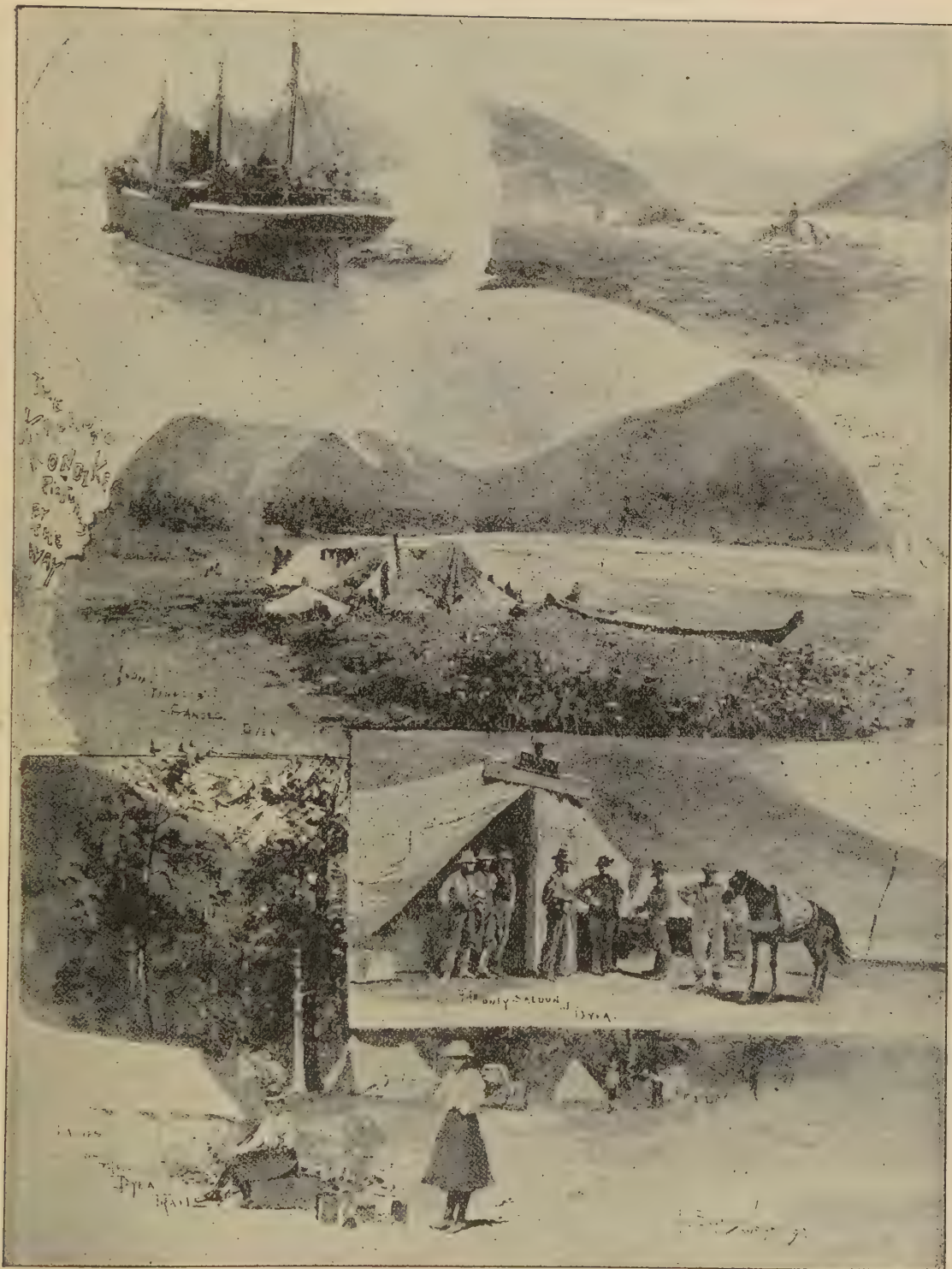
HEARTS throb and eyes flash at the exclamation, "Gold!" No other word is so startling, nothing else is so potential, for gold is at once the greatest benefaction and the direst curse known to mankind.

In the quest for this precious, this most wondrous metal, man meets no obstacle so great as to stay his progress; his moral sense is in abeyance before the temptations which its promise offers, and his physical being is exerted to its utmost capability to acquire it. This seductive *ignis-fatuus* is so irresistible that he follows it through fever fens, in marsh, swamp, and mire, to unexplored lands, where savagery holds carnival of crime, into tropics of disease and valleys of death, through Saharas of heat and over mountains where frozen desolation hushes the voice of nature, and chills everything save alone the pulse of ambition. And if by extraordinary chance he seizes the prize, the probability exists that possession increases his miseries and multiplies his disappointments, for wealth is a treacherous thing, which, if not wisely used, stings like a viper warmed into life by a sheltering bosom.

No excitement is so great or persistent as that created by a gold discovery, for the craze is so contagious that it soon possesses the world, and in its wake may always be found a long stretch of bones, and at the goal there quickly grows a Golgotha. Oh, the sufferings entailed by the California discovery of 1849! Oh, the horrors that followed the finding of a great nugget by Dr. Kerr in Australia in 1854! Oh, the incomputable miseries that resulted from the opening of the gold fields in the Black Hills in 1876! Oh, the plague of vexation and passion that beset those who have pursued the golden phantom through South Africa! And now the gilded spectre lures the seeker of illusive riches toward the frosted confines of the earth, where winter and night conjoin to hold the realm and guard its treasures; where Ithuriel's spear and Erebus' pall threaten those who venture to wrest the golden stores from their icy coffers.

The most recent discovery of gold was made in Alaska, a country formerly known as Russian America, purchased by the United States from Russia in 1867 for the sum of \$7,200,000. Before learning the circumstances of, and results following, the great Klondike strike, it will be valuable to the reader to know something of the geography of this large territorial acquisition, though comparatively little information can be given because three-fourths of the country still remains unexplored. The area of Alaska is about 566,000 square miles, the magnitude of which may be better understood when it is known that the area of Texas is 274,356 square miles, or but little more than half that of our new northwest possession.

The population of Alaska is, at this time, about 75,000 souls, though before the immigration of miners in 1897 the territory did not contain more than 30,000 souls, of which number there were not more than 1000 whites. The native population, of Indians, is



SKETCHES ON THE WAY TO THE GOLD FIELDS OF ALASKA.

decreasing, and it is probable that in a few years there will be none remaining who are of unmixed blood.

The northwest coast of Alaska was first explored by Behring, a Danish navigator, in 1741, where his vessel was wrecked by a storm, exposing him to such hardships that he died on the shore from the effects, December 8, of the same year. Subsequent exploration and survey showed that the total coast line of Alaska is 7860 miles, being almost twice the east coast line of the United States. Following Behring were several expeditions, seeking a northwest passage, by which voyages the shores of Alaska became well known, and the discovery of the great sealing grounds on Pribyloff Islands, which belong to the Aleutian group, led to the organization of what was known as the Russo-American Fur Company, which obtained a charter from the Russian Government in 1799, and after



FORT ST. MICHAEL.

establishing the post of New Archangel (now Sitka), founded forty stations along the coast and began the business of securing furs of seals, sea-otters, and beavers.

In the meantime explorations of the territory continued under English expeditions, commanded by Cook, Beechy, Franklin, and the Hudson Bay Company, the latter having a charter to hunt fur-bearing animals in the British possessions. The Russo-American Fur Company renewed its charter in 1839, but failed to do so at its expiration in 1863, because of the competition of the Hudson Bay Company, that had rendered the business no longer profitable. As Alaska was considered to be of small value by the Russian Government, after the dissolution of the Russo-American Company a proposition to buy the territory, made by Secretary Seward to Emperor Alexander II., met with a quick acceptance, and the negotiations for its transference to the United States were completed six months later. Almost immediately thereafter there were established whale, salmon, and cod fisheries within the territorial waters, and a company was directly organized and secured the privileges of catching seals on the Pribyloff Islands at an annual rental to the United States of \$300,000. The islands upon which the fur seals are found most

numerous were discovered by Captain Gearman Pribyloff in July, 1786. The group is composed of two small islands named respectively St. Paul and St. George, the former comprising thirty-three square miles and the latter twenty-seven, while near them are two rocks rising a few feet out of the sea, called Otter and Walrus islands, the former having one square mile of surface and the other barely five acres. These islands are nearly two hundred miles north of the Aleutian group proper, but they are nevertheless of identical formation. It is a singular fact that while seals gather upon these islands in almost countless numbers, they are rarely to be found on other islands not far distant, though seemingly equally well adapted.

Small quantities of gold and many indications were found in Alaska by members of the Hudson Bay Company as early as 1840. Indeed, a story is told to the effect that a Russian hunter, in 1804, brought some nuggets of gold to Sitka and presented them to Baronoff, the Russian Governor of the Russo-American Fur Company, at the same time declaring that he knew where much more

**THE GOLD
DISCOVERIES.**



VIEW OF THE SEAL HERDS ON PRIBYLOFF ISLANDS.

might be obtained. The old Governor exhibited great indignation and ordered a complete suppression of the report, properly believing that the news of a big gold discovery in Alaska would be quickly followed by a wild rush to the diggings and a demoralization if not utter destruction of the business of the fur company. It was not until 1871 that any excitement whatever was created by discoveries of gold in Alaska, when Edward Doyle found specks of the precious metal on the west side of Silver Bay, near Sitka. Nor was the excitement following considerable enough to attract many miners. Other discoveries, however, were soon after made at the foot of Round Mountain, Salmon Creek, and Bald Mountain, one of which induced a man named Stewart to set up a quartz crusher on Salmon Creek, but it failed to prove a profitable investment and was soon abandoned. On August 15, 1880, discovery of

low-grade gold-bearing rock was made by Joseph Juneau and Richard Harris, and six months later a town was founded at the place of discovery, which at first was called Harrisburg, but the name was changed a few months later to Juneau, which is now a place of about 3000 persons. Though the ore is very low grade the quantity is so great that capital was secured to build the largest crusher (240 stamps) and reduction works in the world, which have been working constantly at Juneau with a showing of large profits every year since they were set up. Six hundred tons of ore are milled there every day at an average of four dollars per ton.

In 1881 Edward Bean, a miner from Sitka, set out with two companions to search for gold along the upper Yukon, to reach which district he made his way through the Chilkoot Pass, now so famous, and explored the chain of lakes that feed Lewes River. The party



SCENE NEAR THE HEAD OF LAKE LABARGE.

proceeded as far as Fort Selkirk, but though they found some gold it was not in paying quantities, and Bean returned to Sitka without any idea of the existence of such phenomenally rich districts as have since been discovered where he prospected. Two years later several gold discoveries were made on the Big Salmon and the tributaries of Lewes River, but none of considerable value until 1886, when the precious ore was found to exist in paying quantity on Forty Mile Creek, followed quickly by similar discoveries on half a dozen tributaries of the Yukon. In 1893 a prospector uncovered pay dirt on Birch Creek, the news of which brought such a rush of miners to the new region that a town was built called Circle City, which rose to considerable importance. The town continued to grow rapidly until the summer of 1896, when a hunter-pro prospector named George McCormack, who was married to an Indian woman, found a nugget of gold on the bank of the Klondike

River, at its junction with the Yukon, within half a mile of where Dawson City now stands.

The news of McCormack's lucky find spread with amazing rapidity, and in a few days miners from Circle City and Forty Mile Creek were pouring into the new district with pick and pan. The country thereabout filled up at the expense of other settlements, and as numerous exceedingly rich finds were soon after made on Bonanza Creek, the Hunker district, and, in fact, all over the Klondike region, the rush to the diggings quickly became a stampede. Dawson City was founded by George L. Dawson and Joseph Ladue, the latter of whom erected a saw-mill on the site, in October, 1896, and six months thereafter the place had grown to be a town of 5000 souls, so full of excitement that it was difficult to distinguish, by occupation, day from night. Gold, gold was the one thought, the sole ambition of the excited population, and the aspiration that brought in hundreds of others. Discoveries followed fast, one after another, as the flood of prospectors spread out over the country. Tents and cabins sprang up in the forests and dotted the shores of many streams; long files of men poured over the passes, and the whole land became a hive of extraordinary activity, especially along the following streams: Baker, Nugget Gulch, Bullion, McCormack, Adams, Victoria, Hunker, Dominion, Bottom, and El Dorado creeks, where the strikes were richest.

The most profitable mines thus far opened in Alaska, are all located in the upper Yukon basin, which is British territory, no important discoveries having yet been made west of the line of demarcation between Alaska proper and the British possessions except

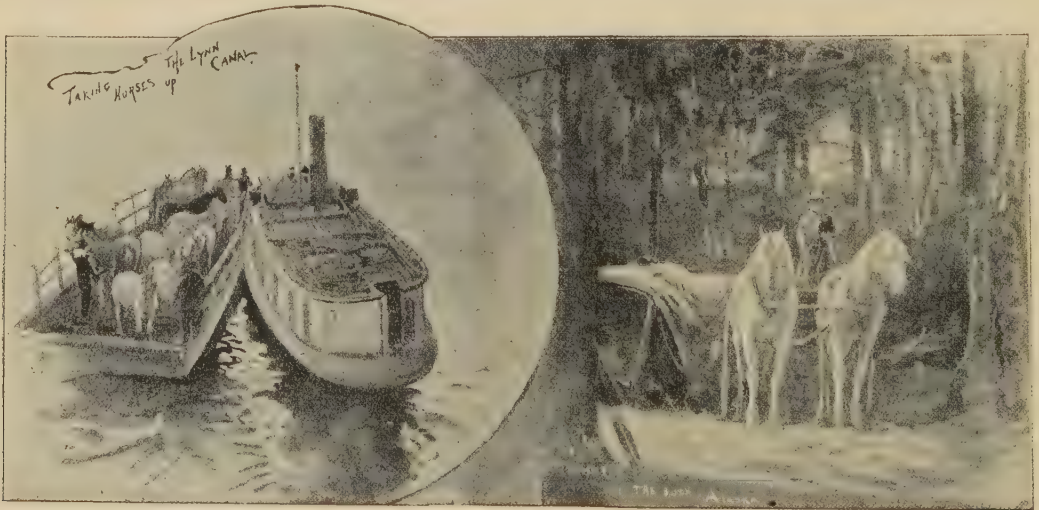


AT THE FOOT OF CHILKOOT PASS.

along Copper River, where exceedingly rich strikes were made in the latter part of 1897. This is no doubt due to the fact that so much rich ground has been uncovered in the Upper Yukon district that prospectors have not extended their labors beyond. There is abundant evidence however to support the belief that the whole valley of the Yukon River, which is two thousand miles long, as well as the valleys of its tributaries, contain gold in paying quantities. Indeed, the prediction has been made, and may be repeated with the best of reason, that within a very few years the fact will be demonstrated that Alaska and the neighboring British possessions will be proved to be the richest gold yielding territory in the world. And the inducement to immigrants is therefore so great that in ten years Alaska will have a permanent population of more than one million people, and will produce a sixth part of the annual gold yield of the world.

At this writing there are two highways leading to the Upper Yukon district, one by water and the other by land, but the water route is of course closed during winter, or from September 1 to June 1, so that until navigation is improved, as will soon be done, the greater number of gold seekers will traverse the overland way which leads as follows: By steamer from Seattle to Juneau, distance 725 miles, thence through the inland water-course to Dyea, which is at the head of Chilkoot Inlet, 100 miles from Juneau. At this point the

HOW TO REACH THE GOLD FIELDS.



TEAMING IN ALASKA.

traveler must begin an overland journey, with a choice of two ways over the Chilkoot mountains, viz., by way of the Chilkoot, or the Lindeman Pass, the former, which is 3500 feet above sea level, being most generally preferred. These two routes unite at White Horse Rapids of Link River, and thence the way is along a series of lakes which are joined by Link River, to its junction with Lewes River; thence following the latter stream to Fort Selkirk where the Lewes and Pelly rivers unite to form the Yukon. The traveler now continues along the Yukon 120 miles until he reaches Dawson, the total distance from Seattle being nearly 1400 miles.

The other route, which is 4320 miles in length, is by steamer from Seattle to St. Michael's Island, which is sixty-five miles from the delta of the Yukon, landing being made at Fort Get There, where reshipment of freight is necessary to river steamer and upon which the rest of the journey, 1900 miles, is made with comparative comfort, past Circle City, Fort

Cudahy, and many missions and small Indian settlements, to Dawson City, which lies seventy-five miles east of the Alaska boundary line.

The trip to Dawson City overland from Dyea is one which only the hardy and very resolute should undertake, for the privations and hardships involved are so severe that hundreds have succumbed in the effort. Last year (1897) when the rush to Klondike was the greatest, when in fact sufficient

**DANGERS AND HARDSHIPS OF
THE OVERLAND ROUTE.**

crafts were not obtainable to accommodate the waiting argonauts and their outfits, the following fares were charged: From Seattle to Juneau, \$23.00 first class; or from Seattle to Dyea first-class passage cost \$40.00, second class \$25.00, 150 pounds of baggage being allowed with each ticket; all baggage or freight above 150 pounds was charged ten cents per pound. The landing at Dyea is a fairly good one, but during the rush there the warehouse facilities were so inadequate that more than four-fifths of the stores set on shore were left without shelter and great loss was thereby sustained. The trip is continued from Dyea by horses or carts to Sheep Camp, a distance of twelve miles, half of the way being over a level surface, but the remainder is full of difficulties, leading no less



MINERS AND INDIAN GUIDES FORDING DYEAL INLET.

than seven times across the serpentine Dyea Inlet, which is fed by springs from glaciers at the foot of Chilkoot Pass. These several fords are so treacherous, being almost dry at one time and roaring torrents at another, that many persons have been drowned there.

Sheep Camp is far up the Chilkoot Mountain side, at the edge of the timber line, whence the way is so perilous that not even dogs can with safety be used to draw sledges, so that the only means for transportation of freight is by Indian packers. None but the strongest natives enter this hard service, who can carry an average load of 120 pounds, but not a few go through with a burden of as much as 175 pounds, for which the charge varies from fourteen to twenty-five cents per pound. The ascent of Chilkoot Pass is very steep and the way is through deep snow and by icy declivities that make every step dangerous save to the most cautious and surest footed, the climb at many points being as difficult as an ascent of the Jungfrau. On the way the traveler passes a large and interesting glacier that has a face wall 300 feet high and an extent of one mile, which is constantly moving, though at a snail's pace, but the movement is sufficient to produce a noise that at times may be heard



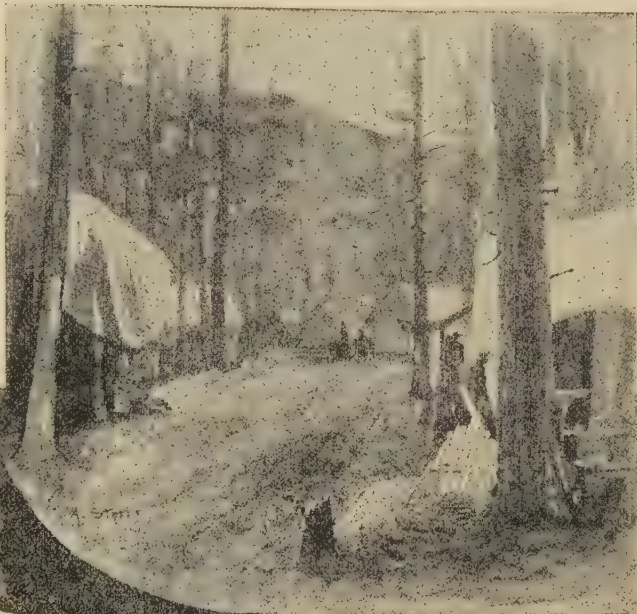
TRAMWAY BUILT OVER CHILKOOT PASS.

for a distance of two miles. One thousand feet below the summit is a place called Stone House, where a dozen persons may find shelter at one time, but it has few of the comforts of a road-house. The descent of Chilkoot Pass is easily made to Lindeman Lake, for it is done usually by coasting on Esquimau sledges. But there are no stations on the route, and shelter may be obtained only by setting up tents, so that not only provisions but also tents and stoves must be carried. After May 1 the ice on Lake Lindeman is treacherous, and boats must be provided to cross it, a distance of five miles. The boats, which miners heretofore made themselves on the lake shore, may be used, by little portage, for proceeding through Lake Bennett, a distance of twenty miles, but though boat traveling is much easier than walking and dragging sledges on land, the danger is greater, for at many points the

streams are perilous rapids, and it requires careful and expert handling of boats to shoot them without capsizing. The shore, too, is often precipitous bluffs, along which landing is impossible, which of course greatly increases the danger, since upsetting means almost certain death. Rafting has also been resorted to by many who lacked facilities for making boats, but this exceedingly treacherous means of transportation has been attended with not a few fatalities, so that it has been used only in cases of last resort.

The greatest hardships, though probably not the most hazardous, have attended the passage of Chilkoot Pass which, as already explained, is hard climbing along insecure and often obscure paths with fearful chasms on either side, and towering glaciers that seem to threaten to break away and sweep everything into the yawning depths. These dangers, however, will soon cease to exist, as the Chilkoot Railroad Company will construct an aerial tramway in the spring of 1898 for conveying both passengers and freight over the pass. This line, which will be three miles in

THE CHILKOOT TRAMWAY.



A STREET IN SKAGWAY.



A RESTAURANT ON THE WAY.

length, is similar to one in use at the Cripple Creek mines, in Colorado, and also to one for crossing the Connecticut River at Holyoke, Massachusetts, so that it is not a new experiment. The appearance of the line and its operation may be better understood by reference to the accompanying illustration than any printed description can give. In addition to the aerial tramway,

two lines of railway are projected, from Juneau and from Dyea, which will soon be built into the Klondike district, and will no doubt be connected with the Canadian trunk line.

A line of large steamers, with accommodations for five hundred passengers and two thousand tons of freight, will be running in the summer of 1898 between Seattle and St. Michaels, where connection will be made with a fleet of Yukon River steamers that will

transport persons direct to Dawson City comfortably and at reasonable expense. With these facilities and the cheapening of traveling and supplies, it is not surprising that the rush to the Golden District has increased so greatly, especially when every succeeding report represents, by new discoveries, the extraordinary, probably unexampled, richness of the region. Excitement is therefore unconfined, save by the world itself, and the tide of travel flows from all countries, not even excepting the gold fields of South Africa and Australia, where opportunities for acquiring a fortune are no longer so great.

Where so many persons of diverse qualifications, temperaments, and habits are to be found in a rigorous climate remote from civilization, it is not surprising that we see a diversity of reports both as to the richness of the gold fields and the difficulties that interpose in efforts to gain the treasures. But it is singular with what unanimity the real prospectors report the presence of gold throughout the Dawson districts, and the profitable yield that follows patient industry wherever employed along the streams within fifty miles of Dawson City. As a representation of the two extremes, the good and the bad, I quote from letters and interviews published in the *New York Journal* the following. Fred Crewe, of New York City, writing under date of September 17, 1897, of the gold fields says:

Dawson City lies a foot or more deep in a swamp of black muck, which smells like a hog wallow, and the British flag floats above it. A man whom they call the Old Commissioner is the chief official of the town. He can do as he pleases. It is said that a tax of 2 per cent is to be levied on all precious metal produced above \$600 from a claim. This new ruling of the Commissioner, it is reported, will go into effect in the spring, but I doubt if it can be enforced because of resistance that will certainly be made by miners.

A majority of the men who came in during the summer and found Eldorado and Bonanza Creek already staked turned their hands to locating bench claims. One hundred feet square was allowed each claim, and the claim had to be located on a hill-side, seven feet above high-water mark in the creek. Hundreds of these bench claims were staked, and holes from fifteen to thirty feet deep melted through the frozen earth. Only half a dozen or so proved of any value. It is no easy task to sink a hole in this ground, because it is frozen solid from the surface to unknown depths. After you get down twelve or fifteen inches then the hard work begins. You have to kindle a big fire in the hole, which thaws the soil until you can pick and shovel it out. So you keep at it, burning and shoveling until you reach bed-rock—which may or may not contain gold. There is no other way of mining in this land of frost and ice.

The trails chiefly run through swamps. In fact, the larger part of the country is swamp covered with two feet of moss. For miles you have to wade through this moss, saturated with water, icy cold. This is in the summer time. In the winter the moss and swamps, of course, freeze solid. But when it is not frozen it is no picnic to load yourself down with supplies and wade for miles through the muck, the mire and water often reaching to your knees. Carrying from twenty-five to fifty pounds over such trails, forty or fifty miles, in search of unknown mines gives one some idea of seeking a fortune in the Klondike.

But few Indians are here now since the salmon stopped running, when they had camps and caught and dried fish. I should say that all told there are about 5000 people now in the Klondike district. But there are at least 5000 dogs. The dogs fight and howl day and night, each trying to outyelp all the others.

Already the labor question has reached Klondike. It is said that wages are to be reduced from \$15 to \$10 a day in the mines, but I doubt if it is done. A man can save nothing on \$10 a day wages up here. Snow has already fallen, and the nights are cold and frosty. It is supposed that 3000 or 4000 persons are on the trail between here and the coast, all bound for the mines. But they will not be able to reach us this year. We expect a great rush in the spring.

Every man has to hustle for himself in this country, and the men who get out and locate claims this winter will, no doubt, be able to sell them for a good price next spring. Winter is closing down on us rapidly, and the September days are growing short. The display of the northern lights makes the Manhattan Beach fireworks ridiculous by comparison.

All letters to this part of the Klondike should be addressed, Dawson, Klondike River, Ca. N. W. Ter. via Victoria, B. C., otherwise they will go to Circle City, and will remain there unless one sends for them by the United States mail carrier, who charges fifty cents more for each letter.

In regard to provisions, I doubt if they will be nearly so scarce this coming winter as they have been, for the Alaska Commercial Company will make preparations on a large scale to get in supplies. Still, all who are intending to sojourn here a season or two should bring plenty of food. They should start from Juneau by March

that they may be able to sled their stuff to the summit on the snow and catch plenty of it on the road down the canyon to Lake Lindeman. If they leave Juneau much later than March they will experience much delay and hard "packing."

Probably 100 head of cattle have come into the mines, and 100 more, with 800 head of sheep, are on the road. Beef is \$1.50 a pound, and will not be cheaper. Game is not plentiful, and the large number of men in the mountains are frightening animals away. Only one or two bears and a dozen moose were killed during the summer. Ducks and geese are plentiful, but thousands of wild geese are now flying south. The mosquitoes have about finished their torture for the season of 1897.

The richest strikes made up to date in this country have been on Eldorado River, the best paying being No. 13—that unlucky number—yielding \$800 to the pan of dirt. From the place where the Eldorado branches off from the Bonanza River, generally called "The Forks," there is one continuous pay streak. Above No. 40 mining does not pay so well, but this winter's prospecting will undoubtedly develop some good claims. This stream, the Bonanza, last September was "staked" from its headwaters to the forks. No. 26 above "discovery," on Bonanza, is the richest claim on that creek. Still, there are many other valuable claims. The pay streak on the Bonanza has been located from sixty feet below "discovery" to forty above, and in some places it is as much as seventy feet in width. The bulk of developments has been done on the Eldorado, but Bonanza Creek this winter will be honey-combed with drifts which will "prove" up some very rich ground.

Skookum Gulch, on which half the men in the country sank prospect holes this summer and found nothing, came to the front a few days ago. A bench claim produced pay dirt, and the men rocked out \$700 in a little less than three hours. They have taken out nearly \$4000 in four days. The hole where they made this strike is not more than half a dozen feet from a hole that was sunk to bed-rock and found to be worthless. Such is luck in mining, even in the Klondike.

As soon as the news of this discovery reached Dawson City hundreds stampeded for the Skookum, and within twenty-four hours the hillside was covered with stakes. Skookum Creek runs into the Bonanza a little below Eldorado River, and the first claim up stream from its mouth has been remarkable for its yield of big nuggets, yet the claims above have thus far proved absolutely worthless.

The other creeks, or "pups" as they are called here, have shown no valuable claims on either side of the Bonanza. The Bear, Hunker and Gold Bottom, a tributary of Hunker, have some claims which promise nuggets, if properly worked. However, the best producers have yielded only \$12 to the pan. Good reports come from the Last Chance Creek, another tributary of the Hunker.

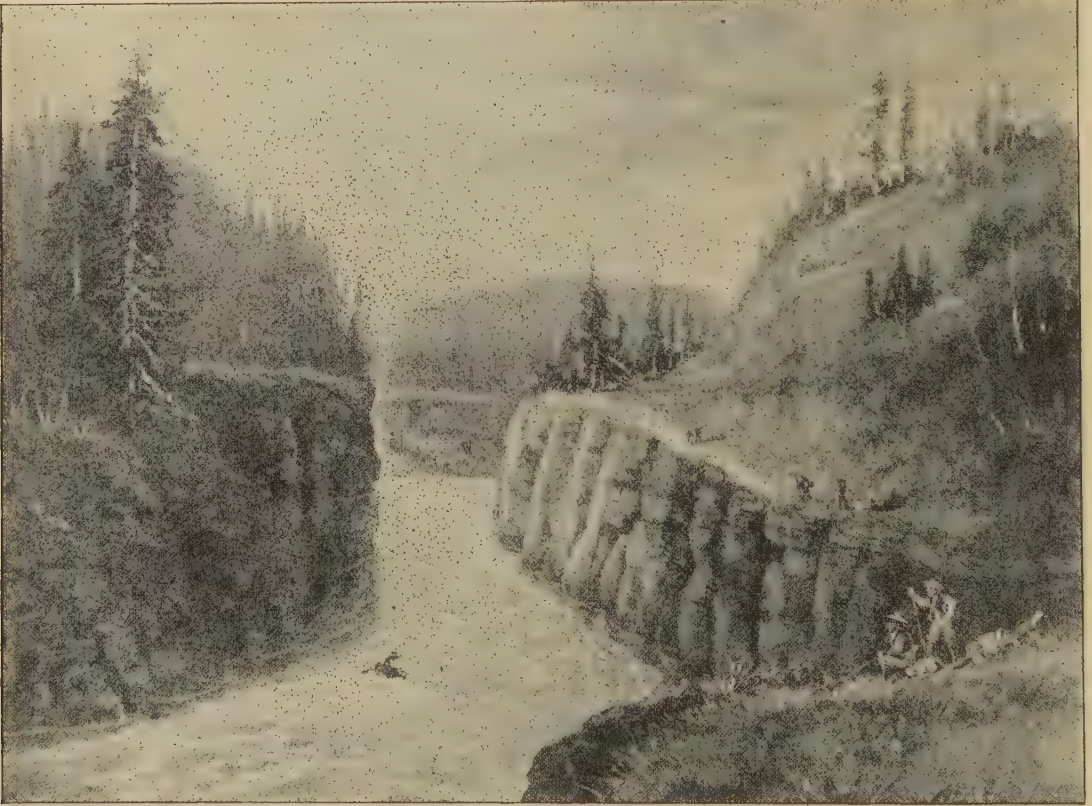


PACKERS FORDING THE STEWART RIVER.

Eureka has been the scene of the latest excitement, but nothing trustworthy has been established. A second stampede is now going on at the All Gold mines. A week ago there was a stampede to the third stream from the Klondike region emptying into the Yukon. So great was the excitement that the stampeders rushed out in the night and tramped through a cold, driving rainstorm and staked out claims covering the creek on both sides, from end to end. Frank Slavin, the prizefighter, was one of the stampeders. He staked out the second claim up the creek from the Yukon River.

By the way, Slavin meets all comers in a four-round set-to at the opera house in Dawson to-night. There are two or three other boxing contests, the wind-up being between Slavin and Joe Boyle, champions of Canada. Admission \$5, reserved seats \$10.

The reader will not fail to notice that while Mr. Crewe dwells upon the hardships attending mining in the frozen region, and the disappointments which are often met with, that his report upon the whole is most favorable as respects the richness of the gold fields.



GRAND OR MILES CANYON RAPIDS, LEWES RIVER.

A more glowing representation of the unexampled opportunities that are offered to industrious miners in this wondrously auriferous region, is thus made in a *Journal* interview December 5.

**GOLD! GOLD!
A WONDERFUL STORY.**

"Get into Klondike with a pick and shovel, provisions and warm clothing, and set yourself to work and you are a rich man."

So said Andrew Buckley, a broad-shouldered, ruddy-faced Irishman, at the Hoffman House the other night. He is wealthy and earned all his means digging for gold. He is fresh from the Klondike regions. He would not be here now were it not for the fact that he was a victim of scurvy, because he ate too much bacon and other salt meats. Mr. Buckley came to New York for treatment.

"As it is he is contented. He is recovering from his illness, has several valuable patches of gold territory along the Yukon River, and upward of \$150,000 in banks between this city and Seattle. He has nuggets of gold galore, and a fund of information in his brain, which he is willing to dispense gratis to any person who wants to know how to get to Klondike.

"I do not mind telling persons what to do to get gold," he said. "I have good reasons for being unselfish. There is gold for everybody along the Yukon. I do not care how many rush out to the gold territory in the next ten years. Gold is there waiting for them, and they might as well get it. The valuable territory is practically unlimited.

"I spent five years in the Yukon country and was all around Klondike. I found gold everywhere. It is in the gravel, in the sand, in the base rock, and in the water. It has been deposited in the majestic cliffs that rise in some places above the Yukon for 500 feet. To the best of my judgment, the choicest place to dig just now is Forty Mile Creek, which is only fifty miles away from Dawson City.

"About Forty Mile Creek you are allowed twenty acres to operate upon, and those twenty acres will yield you all the wealth you need carry for the rest of your life. Do not waste any time. Do not fear that you are going to be robbed or murdered for your gold. There is too much of it there to excite people to the commission



WHITE HORSE RAPIDS, LEWES RIVER.

of crime. When I went there five years ago a white man had been murdered by an Indian. He was not killed for his gold, but for his Winchester rifle. Since that time I have never heard of a murder in the Klondike. The Indians are polite and amiable. The watchword at Klondike is good-fellowship.

"Once settled on your claim you take your pick, shovel and pan, and dig. The sand and gravel you will find are filled with nuggets—some quite small, others large and heavy. In the lowest grade of digging you will discover that it is quite an easy matter for you to earn \$10 a day. If you have no claim you will not be wanting in employment which will net at least \$5 a day. The gold gravel in the creek banks is from ten to fifty feet deep.

"The experienced digger does his best to get to the base rock beneath as soon as possible. The gold, being heavier than the gravel, sinks to the base rock. When you get down there you will find a coating of gold, and all you have to do is to scrape it off carefully. A great deal of patience is sometimes needed, but patience and hard work are always rewarded in Klondike.

The individual miner can always make his fortune, but machinery will be a great aid in getting out the gold. "There is no danger of a person starving to death as has been reported. I am going back as soon as I am thoroughly well, and, as I have gone through the whole experience, you might conclude that if there was the

**SCRAPING UP
A FORTUNE.**

slightest suggestion of starvation attached to the trip, I would remain in my comfortable quarters here instead of undertaking the task again. It is true that articles of food are expensive. Luxuries are dear. For instance, a glass of whiskey costs you one dollar, and it is bad whiskey at that. Whiskey with an egg in it comes to one dollar and a half. I take it, though, that one who goes out there does not do so to drink. Vegetables were scarce for a long time, but steamers, which are running more frequently now, bring good supplies of them.

"I came out at Klondike in July, and did not reach Seattle until September, owing to delays. There were sixty persons in the party, and the poorest of them had at least \$10,000 in gold. Some of the party went out there as late as the preceding February."

Stories similar to these, which picture the two sides, or good and bad, of mining in the Klondike country, might be given by hundreds without, however, affording any further information than these supply. But in all the reports made, by letter or interview, there is unanimity in the declaration that gold abounds not only in enormous quantities, but that



AN OVERLAND TRAIN BOUND FOR DAWSON CITY.

it is found on the surface in many places, and may almost always be reached without digging to any great depth.

James Ogilvie, appointed by the Dominion government to make a survey of the route between Dyea and Dawson City, has compiled the following table of distances, in which he gives the names of prominent points and designates the dangerous places as canyons and rapids:

DISTANCES AND STATIONS.

	MILES.		MILES.
From Dyea to the head canoe navigation,	5.90	To Foot of White Horse Rapids,	125.93
To forks of Dyea River,	8.78	To Tahkeena River,	139.92
To Summit of Chilkoot Pass,	14.76	To Head of Lake Lebarge,	153.07
To Landing at Lake Lindeman,	23.06	To Foot of Lake Lebarge,	184.22
To Foot of Lake Lindeman,	23.49	To Teslinto River,	215.88
To Head of Lake Bennett,	28.09	To Big Salmon River,	249.33
To Foot of Lake Bennett,	53.85	To Little Salmon River,	285.54
To Foot of Cariboo Crossing,	56.44	To Five-finger Rapids,	344.83
To Foot of Tagish Lake,	73.25	To Pelly River,	403.29
To Head of Marsh Lake,	78.15	To White River,	499.11
To Foot of Marsh Lake,	97.21	To Stewart River,	508.91
To Head of Miles Canyon,	122.94	To Sixty-Mile Creek,	530.41
To Foot of Miles Canyon,	123.56	To Dawson,	575.70
To Head of White Horse Rapids,	124.95		

Those contemplating a trip to the Alaska gold fields with a view to engaging in mining, whether to speculate in claims or to prospect and work properties there, should make themselves acquainted with the mining laws of both the Dominion of Canada and of the United States, for otherwise confusion and loss to the investor is likely to be the result. It must be understood that nearly all the rich discoveries thus far made are in territory

belonging to Canada, which government exacts an export duty upon all gold mined by foreigners. This duty, however, while fixed at two per cent, will necessarily be difficult to collect since there are so many ways of evading payment, but it is nevertheless important to know all the restrictions. The boundary line between Alaska and the Dominion has been established along the one hundred and forty-first parallel of longitude, extending from the Arctic Sea on the north to Mount St. Elias on the south, and then runs inland so as to include within United States territory Lindeman, Chilkoot Pass, and all that country lying one hundred miles east of the ocean, as far south as Dixon Entrance. But though the largest discoveries thus far made are in Canadian territory, as before explained, the Yukon Valley and tributaries west of the one hundred and forty-first parallel will no doubt prove to be equally



A PORTAGE TO LAKE BENNETT.

rich when the attention of prospectors is turned in that direction. The importance therefore of knowing the mining laws that govern in both countries cannot be overestimated.

These laws, however, are subject to frequent changes to meet ever-varying conditions in a new country, and a rush of immigration, so that it is impracticable to give even a summary of all the provisions in a book like this, written not for a day but for years. For the information of interested readers, therefore, it should be generally known that a complete copy of all the Canadian mining laws may be had by mailing application therefor to "The Commissioner of the Department of the Interior," Ottawa, Ontario; or by addressing

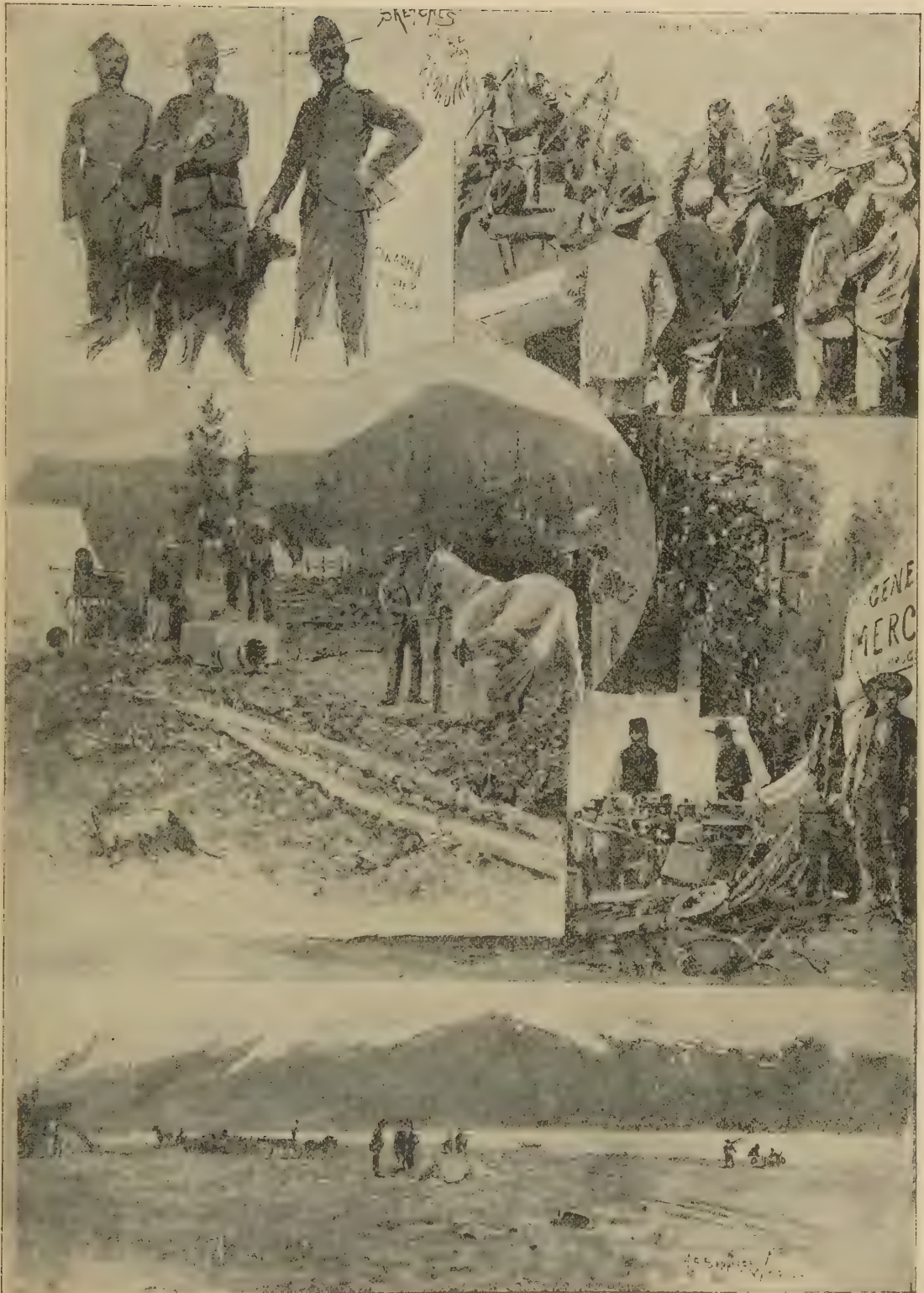
"The Gold Commissioners," Fort Cudahy, Yukon District, Northwest territories, Canada. Those who desire copies of the mining laws of the United States may obtain them from "The Commissioner of the Interior," Washington, D. C.; but in making such application it is advisable to state that your desire is to secure the latest enactments applicable to Alaskan mines, as special legislation is contemplated for that district.

Where so much treasure has been uncovered in so short a while, it is natural that experienced miners and geologists should speculate upon the prospects of the amount of gold recoverable from the Klondike district and the promise of new discoveries. It is interesting to know that expert opinion is a unit in the prediction that the auriferous deposits of the



ARGONAUTS DESCENDING THE SHORE OF THE ICE-BOUND YUKON.

little explored northwest territory will be found to exceed in richness the gold districts of all other parts of the earth; nor is this opinion without the support of excellent reason, though the theory is too long and technical to present here. Suffice to say, this region was at one time the centre of volcanic activity, during the early formative state of the earth, at which time the present Arctic region had a very high temperature, conducive to the production of minerals, especially of gold and silver, which are formed by heat and chemical process. The trend of the heaviest metals was also toward the North Pole at this time, as is plainly evidenced by the direction of the fissures and the deposits therein. It is almost certain that discoveries of gold quite as rich as those in the Klondike district will be made in sections of all North America, Greenland and Siberia, whenever means are found to prospect those regions without the exposures and privations that are now inseparable from the work. Though the time is no doubt far distant, it will nevertheless come to pass that gold will



SKETCHES ON THE WAY TO DAWSON CITY.

cease to be precious metal because of its plentifulness, to which end the Klondike-Alaskan discoveries will contribute no small part.

Lack of police as much as of society, and a superabundance of money is marked in the free-and-easy life and extravagance of Dawson City. When men are removed from the influences that induce to sobriety, order, and respect, there is immediately an indulgence of wild propensities, a development of savage dispositions and an abandon which they would regard as disgraceful and demand repression of while living under conditions to which they had been accustomed. Tales of California in the early days, of settlement of the great West, of life on the border, are stories of riot and rout, of boisterous roystering and insane indulgences,

**WARM TIMES
IN DAWSON CITY.**

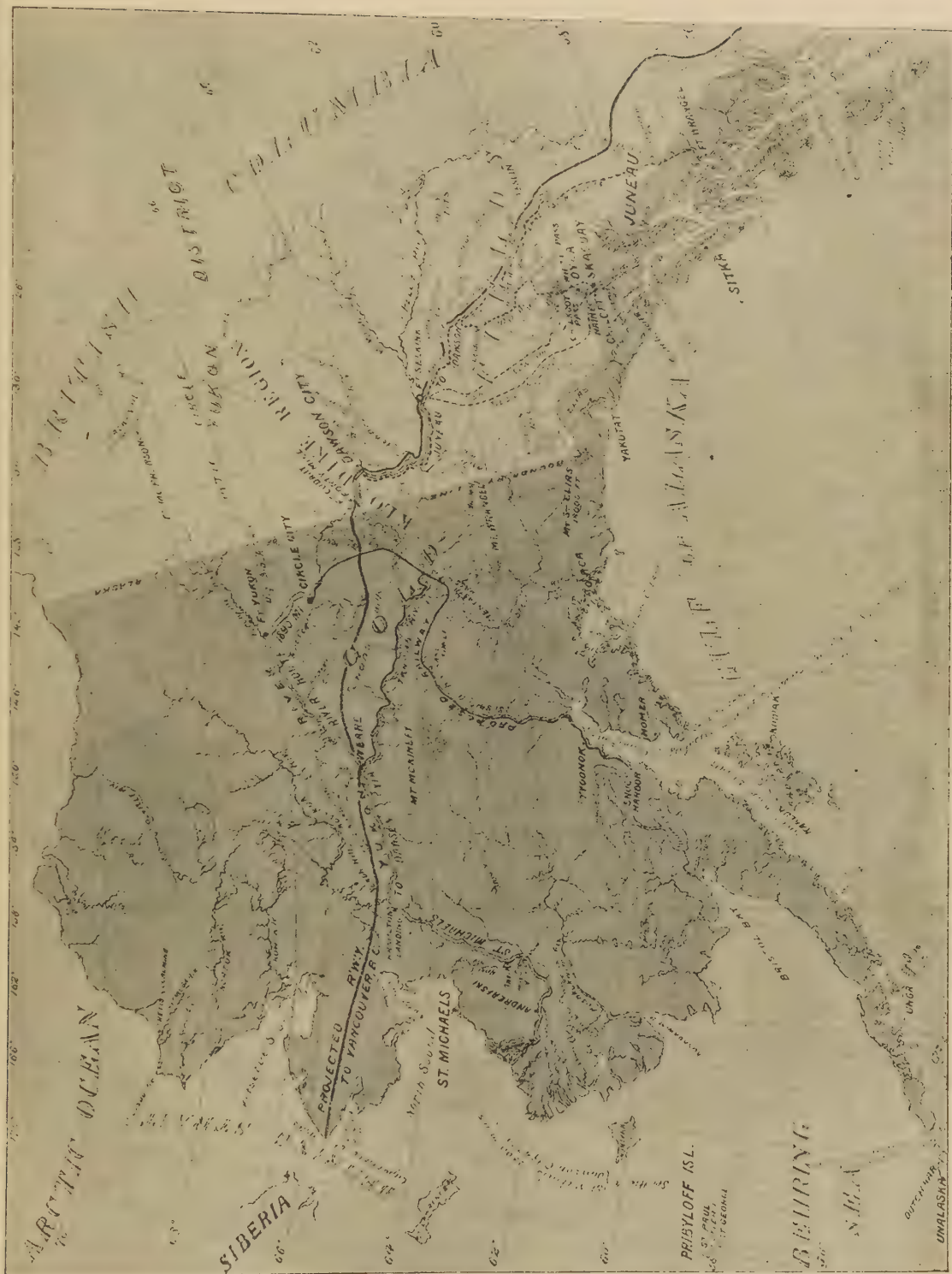


ALASKA INDIANS MILKING REINDEER.

and the same tales are told of scenes and profligacy following gold discoveries in South Africa, Australia, and South America.

It is therefore glancing at the expected to look at the Klondikers in their social divertissements that are sometimes cyclonic and always exciting. Nearly every person who journeys to Alaska's frozen fields in quest of gold takes along a considerable sum of money to start life there, and the result is that gold, silver, and currency are in abundance, while the hope of gaining fortune is so bright that the future is drawn against to create extravagance.

While a passenger on the *Etruria*, coming from Europe in August, 1897, I met a theatrical gentleman who told me of his plans to advance opportunity by taking a vaudeville combination to Dawson City next spring, flattering himself that he would be ahead of



LATEST AUTHENTIC MAP OF ALASKA AND THE GOLD DISTRICT OF THE NORTHWEST.

all others in the show business, while the chances of making a fortune were to him so alluring. To his surprise, a month later he found that vaudeville shows were not only in full blast in Dawson City, but that the female attractions which he had thought to provide with great profit were practically as numerous in the Klondike settlements as in New York. The new woman had shown her independence of social limitations by joining the advance argonauts and taking her chances in the new Eldorado. Hundreds went with their husbands, hundreds of others made a change of costume to the convenience that pants afford, and, taking up pick and shovel, entered the fields upon a physical quest of gold, by



RAFTING SUPPLIES DOWN LEWES RIVER.

hard manual labor; others joined the procession to look for opportunities; some possibly to hunt for rich husbands, and scores to furnish amusement, and to serve baser purposes.

The following description of life and amusements in Dawson City is extracted from a correspondent's letter to the *New York Herald*, October 18, 1897:

GAMBLING AND DANCING. If there is one place in the whole world where money has no value it is on the Klondike. You see this exemplified in the social life—if such it may be called—of the mining camps as you see it nowhere else. On the Klondike gold is a common commodity. Much has been written of this desolate region, but the historians have, as a rule, dwelt almost entirely upon the mineral development of the country. It is my intention to give you a glimpse of the people, their customs, their amusements, and their utter disregard of the value of money.

The principal diversions of Dawson are the gambling saloons and the dance halls. The most profitable industry is the sale of liquor, the saloons paying no revenue to the government. Beer and whiskey sell for fifty

cents a drink. The gambling saloons are run wide open day and night, and the dance halls never close till daylight. It may be remarked, incidentally, that there are two churches, one a Roman Catholic and the other a Protestant Episcopal. I fancy it would make some of your Fifth avenue congregations stare to see the collection plates heaped up with nuggets and dust on Sundays.

I often wonder, out in this wild spot, what the rounders, who used to think themselves high-rollers in the days of the old Tenderloin, would think of Dawson. The winning or losing of from \$1000 to \$3000 at a sitting excites no comment here. I was in the Golden Palace the other night (and the Golden Palace is by no means what its name implies) when Swiftwater Bill, a young man who hails from Spokane, Wash., came in and announced with a whoop that he was going to "bust the bank." Swiftwater Bill owns some of the richest claims on Eldorado Creek, and when he breaks loose the dust is sure to fly. Bill took a seat at the faro table, and in just one hour he had lost \$7500 in gold nuggets. "Things don't seem to be coming my way to-night," he remarked, as he rose from his seat and stretched himself. "Let the house have a drink at my expense." There was a rush for the bar, and waiters carried drinks to the various tables where games were in progress. That round cost Bill \$112. Then he lighted a dollar and a half cigar and strolled out.

SWIFTWATER BILL'S BIG PLAY.

The gambling saloons, in external appearance, are very much like all the other buildings in Dawson, except that they are larger. They are built of logs hewn on three sides, and solidly chinked with heavy moss. The



DESCENDING COOPER RIVER IN SUMMER TIME.

roofs are made of poles, on which a layer of moss fully ten inches thick is laid, and then a layer of dirt about twelve inches deep serves to keep out the cold. Heavy embankments of earth piled up against the huts on the outside serve as additional protection against the chilling blasts of the Arctic winter gales. A few saloons are built of lumber, with double walls, between which sawdust and moss are tightly packed, but old Yukoners tell me that such constructed buildings are inadequate against the severe cold weather.

Last year logs sold for \$1.40 apiece, and now they bring as high as \$4.00. To build the commonest kind of a log cabin, say eighteen by twenty-four feet, costs in the neighborhood of \$4500.

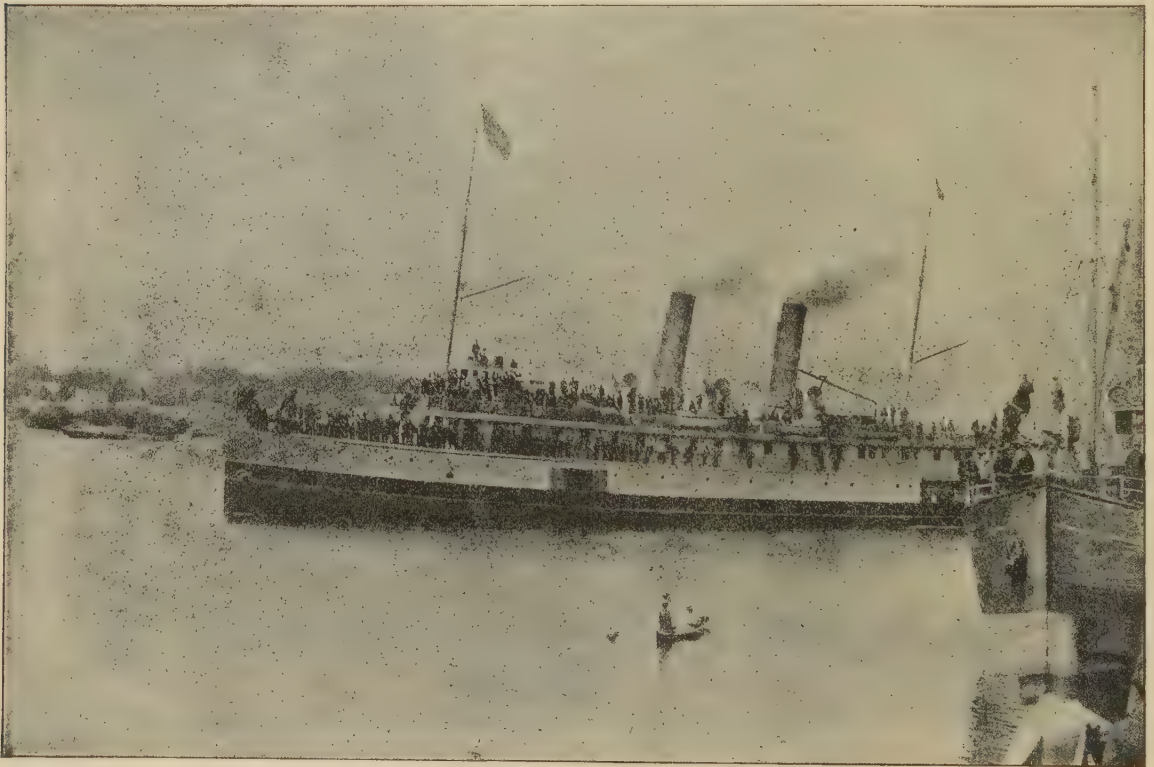
Games involving \$5000 and \$10,000 are running night and day. Professional dealers of "banking games" receive \$20 a day. The manner of hazarding money is unique even in a mining camp. The player takes his seat at a faro table, passes over his sack of gold dust to the dealer, who drops it into a small pigeon-hole. The chance of "overplaying his sack" devolves upon the player's honor. He is given full credit and can call for as many chips from the check rack as he desires. As the checks are passed out a tab is dropped on his sack. At the conclusion of the play the chips on hand are credited to the account of the sack. The dealer hands the player a slip of paper showing the condition of the account, and the latter takes it and his sack of gold to the bar. If he has lost he weighs out his gold dust, or, in the event of winning, the barkeeper does the paying.

About four o'clock one morning a miner known as "Shorty" left his seat at the table where he had been playing all night, saying that he had gone broke. The dealer handed him his bag of dust and his slip, the

latter corresponding almost to a grain with the value of the gold. "Shorty" walked over to the bar and invited a couple of other miners to have a drink. Then he was seized with a fatal fit of forgetfulness. He edged toward the door and was about to push it open when the bartender called to him, saying, "Say, 'Shorty,' haven't you forgot something?" "Forgot h——!" exclaimed "Shorty," and the door swung out. When it rebounded it stopped half way, obstructed in its inward passage by the body of a dying man. A flash of flame and the report of a pistol from somewhere in that low-ceilinged, smoke-laden room, explained the draught of cold air that came in through the half open door. "Shorty" was buried the next day.

In the effete East there is a fine distinction drawn between the society man and the club man. The same distinction is drawn here. The club is the gambling saloon; society is the dance hall. I wish some of the matrons who lend dignity to the Patriarchs' Ball could have been with me last night when I attended a "soirée" at the Morning Star. I got in about midnight, although the dancing begins as early as seven o'clock in the evening. The building is a large one, built of logs, but with a floor of rough hewn boards. It answers every purpose, however, for the mazy waltz and the two step are not popular with these boisterous revelers. They prefer the old-fashioned Virginia reel, or the plain quadrille, with lots of room to throw their feet about.

You could cut the tobacco laden atmosphere with a knife. Through the blue haze the figures of a couple of musicians could be faintly distinguished fiddling away for dear life and calling out, "Sashay all!" "Swing yer



A STEAMER LEAVING SEATTLE FOR THE GOLD FIELDS.

pardners!" "Ladies through!" as the occasion demanded. They received \$20 a night for doing this, and they earned every penny of it. To one side, extending the entire length of the room, was the bar, and the three dispensers of drinks were kept quite as busy as the fiddlers. Beer, whiskey, and cigars were retailed at fifty cents. A poor quality of champagne sold for \$30 a pint, and a somewhat better brand brought \$40.

Of course, the men greatly outnumbered the women. There were probably a dozen of the latter, some of them young and quite pretty. They have little or no time to rest between the dances, and when the morning sun peeps over the eastern mountains they are a jaded and somewhat bedraggled lot. But they charge a dollar for every dance, and Cripple Creek Carrie, the acknowledged belle of the "dancing set," has been known to make as much as a hundred dollars a night tripping the light fantastic toe.

A young fellow whom they called "Pinkey" was pointed out to me as the social leader of Dawson City. He was the only man in the room who wore a boiled shirt. When he goes to a dance, which is almost every night, he

carries a pair of pumps with him. He leaves his boots behind the bar, dons his patent leathers and sails in on a wild career of terpsichorean dissipation. "Pinkey" has been known to buy \$120 worth of dances in three successive nights. Most of the men wore their ordinary working clothes, with top boots or heavy, spike-bottom shoes. Their heads were covered by broad-brimmed hats, which they never removed, and in their mouths were cigar butts, which seemed equally stationary.

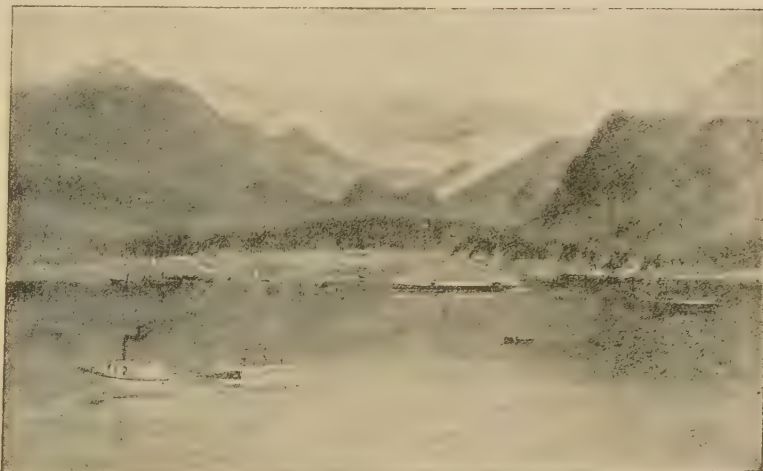
Personal vanity in the matter of dress is an item of no small expense in Dawson City. I paid \$1.75 for having a white shirt washed and ironed the other day, and then I couldn't wear it. The misguided laundress had not only starched and ironed the bosom, but had subjected the entire garment to that operation. It might have been all right for a suit of mail, but as an article of *fin de siècle* wearing apparel it was quite out of the question.

Aside from the two stores, three or four barber shops, half a dozen laundries, five or six restaurants, a second-hand store or two, two saw mills, three butcher shops, two jewelry stores, a dozen physicians and dentists, a couple of real estate offices, the principal business engaged in is the sale of intoxicants.

PROFITS OF THE SALOON BUSINESS.

The receipts for sixty days last spring in one saloon amounted to \$124,500, and the day the successful miners were taking their departure on the first steamer of the season the receipts amounted to \$6500. Hardly a saloon in town is receiving less than \$300 a day, besides winning large sums of money at the gambling games. Barkeepers are paid from \$12.50 to \$20 a day, and even the porters, where such luxuries are deemed necessary, are paid from \$7.50 to \$10. A rumor has emanated from official sources and is going the round to the effect that a Canadian official will arrive shortly and enforce a law permitting only hotel and inn keepers to engage in selling liquors.

Reports of rich discoveries being made in many different parts of Alaska have continued without contradiction almost since the time that McCormack made his lucky find in 1896, and government experts have so thoroughly verified the claims that the extraordinary mineral wealth of that territory cannot be questioned. Notwithstanding the rigorous climate, which prevents a profitable pursuit of agriculture, the country is destined to have a large population very soon, it having been predicted that as many as 200,000 persons will enter upon a quest for fortune in Alaska in 1898. In anticipation of a continued rapid growth of population, several important railway, steamship, and steamboat lines are projected, and some are already in process of construction, that will presently open up the country and tremendously stimulate its development. The latest enterprise contemplates the establishing of a line of vessels to run between Seattle and Snug Harbor, in Cook's Inlet, where a town is to be built, and then a railroad constructed following Sushitna and the Tanana rivers to Weare City, thence along the Yukon to Circle City. When this is accomplished the valley of these streams and also of Copper River will be thoroughly prospected, where it is confidently believed richer mines will be found than have been discovered in the Klondike region. The possibilities, aye, probabilities of Alaskan wealth are beyond the dreams of the alchemist.



SKAGWAY, FROM THE HEAD OF LYNN CANAL.

THE POLAR REGIONS.



HE restless spirit of man, though limited to a definable compass of action, is yet boundless as the universe. Over his small sphere no danger checks the mad ambition of his curiosity, and, chafing under the restraints of this earth, he creates new worlds in which to continue his search for the unknowable. Whether in Tropic heat or Polar cold, through the fogs and fens of lurking death, or the roseate and jocund beams of inviting salubrity, the beacon of his ambition is at all times equally bright, and causes him to tread dangerous paths with heart as proud as when he walks the easy road of safety.

The rigors of the distant North, around which gather the perpetual mists of secrecy, where Ithuriel guards, with flaming spears of Polar light, the regions of eternal ice and boding night, do not quench the noble resolution of man, who must knock at every door that encloses one of nature's secrets; even Ithuriel's spears are fended by the bold knights of discovery, who charge on until they fall before the walls which forever limit the footsteps of mankind. Many, yea, many, go out upon the highway to the bleak and barren North, no more to return to relate around the fireside of happy homes their adventures on the frozen wastes, or to tell of the fierce light which flashes around the northern sphinx; yet they have not died in vain, for the glory that crowns the human race is composed of the daring deeds of the heroic few. What is life, save as we estimate it for results accomplished? It is but a span at most, but may be made glorious and fruitful by sacrifice. Therefore, he who gives his life in an undertaking to contribute to the sum of human knowledge, has lived usefully and dies heroically. If one die in such an effort, let another hero take his place until the long procession at length shall give from its ranks a victor. So shall all great things be accomplished, and so shall the North Pole be reached.

It is a singular fact that Iceland and Greenland were inhabited and comparatively well-known countries before America was discovered by Columbus. However, as to the discovery of America, this honor belongs to Columbus only as the second discoverer, for the American coast as far south as Long Island was known to the Sea Kings of Norway in the ninth and tenth centuries. In the year 1000 a Norwegian, with a crew of Icelanders, landed on the coast of Massachusetts, which he named Vinland. They also established colonies on the Greenland coast and on Spitzbergen, which remained highly prosperous for several centuries. Ruins of once magnificent churches may yet be seen along the coast of Greenland. The Icelanders and Northmen were the first Arctic explorers. But as these colonies finally perished, though from what cause we know not, no trace of the discoveries made by these people was communicated to Europe, so that Columbus has the honor, in no wise detracted by the Norwegian explorers, of having discovered America.

In 1497 John and Sebastian Cabot landed in Labrador and projected a voyage to the North Pole, but they did not penetrate further than $67^{\circ} 30'$ north, which is about half-way up Davis Strait. This was the first effort ever made to reach the North Pole.

In 1500-1502 the Cortereal brothers made three voyages, extending as far as 60° north, but these resulted in nothing but disaster and loss of life. Fifty years later Sir Hugh Willoughby was sent out by the Moscovy Company to find a northeast passage to Cathay and India. He was driven back by ice, after reaching Nova Zembla, to the mouth of the



PHOSPHORESCENT ILLUMINATION OF THE SEA.

Arzina in Lapland, where he and his crew perished after experiencing untold sufferings. This was the first effort ever made to find a northwest passage.

In 1576-78 Martin Frobisher made three voyages to the northwest for scientific investigations, but beyond discovering the entrance to Hudson and Frobisher Straits, leading into Hudson Bay, his trips were without importance. These were the first voyages to the Arctic regions for scientific purposes.

In 1585-87 Davis made a trip to the far north, where he discovered the strait which bears his name, and surveyed a considerable portion of the Greenland coast, and added more important accessions to a knowledge of the Polar Sea than any of his predecessors. William Barentz made three voyages in this direction in 1594-96, but perished during the third on Icy Cape, without adding anything material to what was already known of the Arctic regions.

In 1607 Henry Hudson was sent out by the Moscovy Company with orders to steer directly for the North Pole, but after advancing to latitude 80° his further progress was barred by an impassable barrier of ice. He therefore returned, but made another voyage a year later in quest of a northwest passage to India, but was again forced to abandon the effort. Still entertaining hope of success, he set sail for the third time, but again finding his way impeded by ice, he returned, and sailing westward to the American coast discovered Hudson Bay, and wintered on one of the islands in the mouth of the bay. In the spring of 1611 he started north again, but his progress was beset with storms, his provisions gave out, the crew mutinied, and finally a portion of the mutineers returned to England without Hudson, whom they had set adrift to perish.

In 1616 Baffin explored the bay which bears his name and entered the mouth of Lancaster Sound. His survey was very exact and for a period of fifty years no navigator penetrated beyond him. In the meantime, however, two Russian expeditions were sent out, but beyond being the first to observe the variations of the magnetic needle, their voyages were without results.

In 1741 Behring set sail from a Russian harbor in Kamtchatka, discovered the strait which is named for him, but died before he added anything new to Polar discoveries. In 1760 Shalaroff, another Russian, attempted a northwest passage, but he perished from starvation, together with all his crew. Two more Russian expeditions were started from North Siberia, one under Andreyeff, the other under Captain Billings, but they bore no fruits worthy of mention. It was not until 1820-23 that any effort was made to reach the North Pole by sledges, when Von Wrangell and Anjou undertook to make the journey in that way. They proceeded as far as latitude $70^{\circ} 51'$ north, longitude $152^{\circ} 25'$ west, and reported an open sea in the distant north, which precluded further operations with sledges.

Hudson Bay was still considered as being a great outlet toward the northwest, and in 1743 the British Parliament offered a reward of \$100,000 to any one who should accomplish a northwest passage through it. Expeditions now followed one another almost annually, but generally without any beneficial results. In 1769-73 Samuel Hearne made three overland journeys, in one of which he discovered Coppermine River and traced it to its mouth. In 1773 Captain Phipps (Lord Mulgrove) went as far north as Hudson had reached. Captain Cook followed in 1776 on his last expedition, but he only reached latitude $70^{\circ} 45'$.

In 1789 Mackenzie, on a land expedition, discovered and traced to its mouth the great river which was named in his honor. In 1818 two more expeditions were dispatched to find a northwest passage; one of these was commanded by Captain Ross and Lieutenant Parry, and the other was led by Captain Buchan and Lieutenant (Sir John) Franklin, but they encountered so much ice in latitude $80^{\circ} 34'$ that one of the vessels was badly shattered, forcing them to return. In the following year Lieutenant Parry started again really to determine whether Lancaster was a sound or a bay, a question of so much dispute among geographers at the time. He approached so near the magnetic pole that his compass became useless, but he sailed on and passed the 110th meridian, thereby entitling him to a reward of \$25,000 which Parliament had offered for this achievement.

In 1819 Sir John Franklin set out on an overland journey to explore the north coast of America, and was followed by Lieutenant Parry in 1821, with an understanding that the two expeditions should co-operate, in the event of the latter reaching the north coast. Franklin made a foot journey of 856 miles through such intense cold that the mercury

in his thermometer froze in the bulb. In July, 1820, his party traveled 500 miles further and went into winter quarters at Fort Enterprise; here they remained until the following year and then started again, paddling along the shore in canoes a distance of 550 miles, and ascended Hood River. Their supplies were now completely exhausted, and, to sustain life, they were compelled to eat their old shoes and scraps of leather straps; two of them, however, died of starvation, but the others managed, by eating rock mosses, to reach York Factory, the place of starting. Lieutenant Parry was unable to find Franklin, nor did he make any important discoveries, but returned home in 1823 only to organize another expedition. Franklin also equipped another, while two others were fitted out, one by Captain Beechey and the other by Captain Lyon. All of these were dispatched in

**A STORY OF
STARVATION.**



INDIANS PURSUING MOOSE CROSSING THE YUKON.

different directions, but each was expected to report at Point Turnagain, where they might co-operate or render mutual assistance. Parry was most unfortunate, for his progress was continually interrupted by vast fields of ice, by which one of his two vessels was sunk. However, during this expedition Parry devised a contrivance whereby the compass may be made to work perfectly under all circumstances, thus obviating a most serious difficulty in Arctic navigation. This was accomplished by simply placing a small circular plate of iron near the compass. Neither of the other three expeditions made any discoveries, nor did any two of them meet, but each party encountered great difficulties and experienced intense suffering.

In May, 1829, Captain Ross set sail in the steamer *Victory*, with the purpose of reaching the North Pole, if possible, but chiefly to make scientific investigations at all eligible points. This was the first voyage to the north ever undertaken in a steamer, and it served to prove the advantages of this mode of navigation over sails. Ross explored 300 miles of new coast,

and by leaving his vessel and taking to the sledges, he reached latitude $70^{\circ} 5' 17''$, and longitude $96^{\circ} 46' 45''$ west, at which spot he fixed the position of the true magnetic pole. Scurvy appeared among the crew in such a virulent form that they had to abandon his ship, and wandered about for nearly two years in a hopeless state, many of the men dying, and all suffering from cold and hunger. They were finally picked up by a vessel which returned them to the Orkney Islands.

In February, 1833, Captain Bock was sent out in search of Ross, but shortly afterward learning of his friend's safety, continued on toward the north for nearly two years, but his voyage was without results except for his discovery of Victoria Land. On May 27, 1847, Dr. Rae, sent out by the Hudson Bay Company, completed the entire survey of the north coast of America, with the exception of Fury and Hecla Straits.

This brings us to the explorations of the celebrated Sir John Franklin, whose eminent services and tragic death in the Polar regions merit more than a passing notice. This distinguished explorer was born at Spilsby, Lincolnshire, England, **SIR JOHN FRANKLIN.** April 16, 1786. He was the youngest son of a respectable yeoman, who was compelled to sell his estate and engage in trade. John was intended for the clerical profession, but had such a consuming desire to follow the sea that, after a short voyage to Lisbon, his father procured his admission to the navy as midshipman, at the age of fourteen years. He accompanied his cousin, Captain Flinders, on an expedition sent out by the English Government to explore the coast of Australia, but the vessel in which they sailed proved unseaworthy, and they were transferred to the ship *Porpoise*, but their condition was by no means improved, for that vessel was wrecked August 18, 1803, about 200 miles from the Australian coast, and Franklin and his companions were barely saved from drowning by escaping to a sand bank 600 feet long, on which they remained fifty days at the imminent risk of starvation, before relief reached them from Port Jackson. On returning to England, he joined the ship of the line *Bellerophon*, and in 1805 took part in the battle of Trafalgar as signal midshipman. Of the forty persons who stood round him on the poop, only seven escaped unhurt. He also served in a similar capacity in the war of 1812-15 with the United States, and was promoted to the command of a vessel which engaged our forces at New Orleans, where he boarded one of our small boats and captured her; he was slightly wounded, and for his gallant act was promoted to lieutenant.

In the year 1818, the British Government fitted out an expedition to attempt a passage to India by crossing the Polar Sea north of Spitzbergen, in which Franklin was given command of the *Trent*, one of the two vessels sent out. He was forced to return after reaching latitude 80° on account of the injuries received by his companion-vessel, the *Dorothea*. In 1819 he was appointed to command an expedition which set out to travel overland from Hudson's Bay to the Arctic Ocean, to make a survey of the American coast. He returned to England and shortly after was made post-captain and elected a Fellow of the Royal Society. In 1823 he published "Narrative of a Journey to the Shores of the Polar Sea in 1819-22," and in August of the same year married Eleanor Porden. In 1825 he was appointed to the command of another expedition to the Arctic Ocean. On the day assigned for his departure his wife was lying

PATHETIC PARTING WITH at the point of death; she begged him not to delay on her account, and gave him a small silk flag which she requested him to hoist when he should reach the Polar Sea. She died the day he sailed. He returned home in September, 1827, and in March following married Jane Griffin, who was afterward the celebrated Lady Franklin. In the same year he published his "Narrative of a Second Expedition to the

LADY FRANKLIN.



MAP OF THE REGION ABOUT THE POLE, SHOWING LATITUDES REACHED BY MOST NOTED EXPEDITIONS.

Shores of the Polar Sea, 1825-27," and in the following year was knighted and received the degree of Doctor of Civil Law from Oxford University, and the gold medal from the Geographical Society of Paris. In 1836 Franklin was made governor of Van Dieman's Land, in which office he continued until 1843, when the Colonial Legislature voted an increase in the governor's salary; Sir John refused to accept it, but secured it for his successor, Long; afterward, the colonists, in remembrance of his great and beneficent services, voted a contribution of \$8000, which was sent to Lady Franklin to assist in paying the expenses of the search for her missing husband.

The greatest ambition of Franklin's life was to discover a northwest passage, and in this desire he was much encouraged by the confidence in which he was held by the English public, and the government as well. On May 19, 1845, he sailed again for the north in the good steam screw propeller *Erebus*, accompanied by a similar vessel, the *Terror*, commanded by Captain Richard Crozier. A tender, carrying provisions, bore them company as far as Davis Strait, where stores were landed sufficient to last the expedition for three years. On July 26, 1845, the two steamers were sighted by a whale ship in latitude $74^{\circ} 48'$, and longitude $66^{\circ} 13'$, about the centre of Baffin's Bay, anchored to an iceberg, awaiting an opening into Lancaster Sound. This is the last time either of the vessels was ever seen. So much anxiety was felt for their safety after the expiration of three years, that in 1848 three expeditions were sent out to search for them. These meeting with no success, in 1850 three more expeditions were dispatched, but these, too, returned without finding any trace of the lost explorers. In 1849 the British Government offered \$100,000 to any private exploring party, from any country, who should render efficient aid to the missing crews. Under this stimulus no less than eight other expeditions, consisting of twelve vessels in all, started in search of Franklin; one of these was sent by the United States Government, chiefly through the influence of Henry Grinnell; the English Government equipped another; the Hudson Bay Company another; while Lady Franklin sent one entirely at her own expense, and bore two-thirds of the expense of another; while a final expedition was equipped by public subscription, this last one being commanded by Sir John Ross.

Captain Shepherd Osborne, in charge of the Hudson Bay expedition, came upon the first traces of the missing explorers on the twenty-third of August, 1850. These relics were found scattered over a space of several miles in the vicinity of Beechey Island and Cape Riley, and consisted of empty tin cans, the embankment of a house, with carpenter's and armorer's working places, and finally the graves of three men who belonged to the *Erebus* and *Terror*, which bore date of the winter 1845-46. Other expeditions visited the same grounds and explored 675 miles of hitherto undiscovered coast, but without finding any further traces, nor were any documents found giving indications of the condition or intention of the missing men. Sir John Ross came to the conclusion that the Franklin party had been murdered in Wostenholm Sound by Esquimaux. This opinion was supported by Captain McClure, who, in August, 1850, discovered a flat brass button in the ear of an Esquimau chief, near the mouth of the Mackenzie River. This chief admitted that it had been taken from the ear of a white man who had been killed, but he could not tell the place where the murder was committed.

In April, 1852, five vessels were dispatched under command of Sir Edward Belcher, and in the following year five more expeditions were sent in search of Franklin. One of these was fitted out by Mr. Grinnell, of New York, and Mr. Peabody, of London, and was commanded by Dr. E. K. Kane, who had acted as surgeon, naturalist, and historian of the

former Grinnell expedition under DeHaven. One of these expeditions very fortunately found and rescued McClure and his ship's company, who had been buried in the ice since the summer of 1850, three years. These returned home with Belcher, abandoning their ship, and were thus the first and only ship's company who ever entered Behring Strait and returned to Europe by Baffin's Bay. Thus was established at last the great fact of a continuous water passage between Baffin's Bay and Behring Strait, parallel with the American coast. In the spring of 1854 no less than five vessels were abandoned in the ice and their crews had to return home in the vessels of other search parties.

In 1854 Dr. Rae met a party of Esquimaux who had in their possession various articles of silverware belonging to officers of the *Erebus* and *Terror*. These Esquimaux related that in 1851 they saw a company of forty white men dragging sledges and going where they might kill deer, their ship having been crushed in the ice. They purchased a few provisions from the natives, and showed evidences of great destitution. At a later date, the same summer, were found the corpses of about thirty persons and some graves on the American shore, and five dead bodies on an island near it.

**EVIDENCES OF
CANNIBALISM.**

Of the bodies on the island, one was supposed to be an officer, as a telescope was slung about his neck. These men had undoubtedly been driven to cannibalism before they perished, as there were on each the evidences of the fleshy portions having been cut away. Dr. Rae found guns, watches, various scientific instruments, clothing, etc.,



A RUN-AWAY DOG TEAM.

among the natives who had taken them from the dead bodies. Mr. Anderson found similar traces of the lost party in 1855, and conversed with natives who declared that the men had died of starvation.

Dr. Kane, the American explorer, left New York in the *Advance*, May 30, 1853. The expedition which he commanded was sent out with the double purpose of finding the Sir John Franklin party, and to test a theory which Dr. Kane had long entertained, viz., that there was, somewhere between the North Pole and 80° N., a vast open sea and a milder climate than was to be found some degrees further south. He hoped to reach this clear water and continue north on it until the goal was reached. He established his winter camp at Renesselar Harbor, and during the continuance of daylight excursions were made into the interior of Greenland, in which 800 miles were traversed. Kane's winter harbor was further north than that of any previous expedition.

The crew was much enfeebled by the long winter, and it was not until April that Dr. Kane started on a sledging tour to the north. The extreme severity of the weather defeated his prime purpose, but he was rewarded by the discovery of some remarkable natural wonders, which he named the Three Brothers Turrets, Tennyson's Monument, and the great Humboldt Glacier. He returned to his vessel May 14, and six days later started upon

another journey, in which they attained latitude $79^{\circ} 45'$ and longitude $69^{\circ} 12'$, and discovered two prominent capes, which were named Joseph Leidy and John Frazier. On June 30 two of Kane's officers, accompanied by an escort, left on another excursion, but upon reaching Humboldt Glacier four of the party were stricken blind and had to be sent back. The others pushed on until July 31, when they sighted open water, which they called Kennedy Channel.

Dr. Kane was ill much of the time, and the cold was so severe that there was no prospect of releasing his vessel; so in August he abandoned her and pushed on overland to Upernavik, where he arrived without losing any of his party, but not without enduring indescribable sufferings. Fears for Kane's safety had induced the United States Government to send out two vessels for his relief, the *Release* and *Arctic*, commanded by Captain Hartstene. He reached latitude $78^{\circ} 32'$ when his further progress was barred by impassable barriers of ice. Returning he found Kane and his crew at Upernavik, and with them reached New York in the fall of 1855. From a scientific point of view Dr. Kane's voyage was the most important one that had ever been made to the Arctic regions.

In 1857 Lady Franklin resolved to send another vessel, at her own expense, in quest of her lost husband. The screw steamer *Fox*, formerly a pleasure yacht, was purchased and fitted up for the purpose and the command given to Captain Francis McClintock. This steamer left Aberdeen, July 1, for Lancaster Sound, but she was caught in an ice pack nearly opposite the channel entrance to Baffin's Bay, and held there for eight months. The moving pack had in the meantime carried her back a distance of 1395 miles southward. She was refitted at Holsteinborg and started again, this time being unusually successful, for with comparatively little trouble she reached Port Kennedy in Franklin Strait, and there went into winter quarters. On March 1 McClintock met a party of Esquimaux near Cape Victoria, who told him that several years before two ships, with white crews, had been crushed in the ice and sunk in deep water off the northwest shore of King William Land. The crews went away to a great river, where they all died of starvation. This was all he could learn from them. McClintock then followed the south and west coast of King William Land and found several traces of the lost explorers near Cape Herschel. A skeleton, with European clothing lying near by, was found, and a few miles further he came upon a boat, fitted to a sledge, in which were two more skeletons. Some remnants of tents, three small cairns and one larger one was found. Displacing some stones of the larger one, the first and only record of the unfortunate Franklin party was found. It was only a bit of paper dated May 28, 1847, announcing that all were well, and that a small party had four days previously left the ships. On the margin of this slip was another memorandum, written in a different hand, dated April 25, 1848, stating that Sir John Franklin had died June 11, 1847, and that the total loss by death up to that time had been nine officers and fifteen men. The crews of both vessels, all told, originally numbered 129 souls. McClintock's discoveries finally decided the fate of the Franklin expedition.

Dr. Isaac I. Hayes, a member of Dr. Kane's party, and an enthusiastic believer in the existence of an open Polar sea, succeeded, by the aid of private subscriptions, in organizing

an exploring party of fourteen men, with whom he embarked in the schooner *United States*, from Boston, July 6, 1860. Hayes entered Baffin's Bay August 20, and added to his crew three Danes, and three Esquimaux hunters, and secured sledge dogs for the winter's work. He harbored at Port Foulke, and during the winter made several sledge journeys northward. April 3, 1861, he reached latitude $81^{\circ} 35'$, longitude $70^{\circ} 30'$, beyond which the ice was so rotten as to make further progress impossible. This was the most northerly point that had ever been reached, and from a lofty headland he looked out upon what he believed was an open Polar sea. Having no boat he was obliged to return, and as his vessel was already becoming badly broken by the ice, he had to make his way back to Boston, where he arrived in October, 1861.

In 1860 Captain Charles F. Hall left New London, Conn., in a whale ship, which landed him on the west coast of Davis Strait. From thence he prosecuted a search for the remains of the Franklin party in sledges. He found no trace of them, however, though he did discover relics of the Frobisher expedition, made 300 years before. Hall returned to the United States September 30, but in 1864 he again sailed for the Arctic regions with only two Esquimaux companions. He landed on the coast of Hudson Bay and thence journeyed to King William Land, where he found many relics of the Franklin party, and from a number of Esquimaux obtained indisputable evidence that the explorers had died of starvation, but not until they had accomplished the northwest passage. Captain Hall spent five years among the Esquimaux, learning their language and acclimating himself to the Arctic regions, and then returned to the United States in 1869 to organize another expedition.

**RELICS OF THE
FROBISHER EXPEDITION.**

A German expedition was sent out from Bremen in 1868, which reached latitude $81^{\circ} 5'$ north, longitude 60° west, but accomplished nothing of importance; and an expedition dispatched by the Swedish Government in the same year had no better success. In 1869 Dr. Hayes made a trip to Upernavik to make preparations for a journey which he hoped to undertake the following year. He made a short voyage in the steamer *Panther*, but added no new discoveries. The German Government sent out two vessels in 1869, one of which was wrecked in Sabine Bay, and the crew almost perished on an iceberg, where they had taken refuge. The other vessel returned within the year with nothing new to report. Several other expeditions started from the continent of Europe in 1869, but none of them made any important discoveries.

In 1871 four more expeditions started from Europe, but only one succeeded in gaining any honors. Two Austrian lieutenants, Payer and Weyprecht, sailed from Tromsø, Norway, in a small sailing vessel, and proceeded due north of Nova Zembla and entered an open ocean in which navigation was only slightly impeded by light and scattering ice. Dr. Petermann, the German geographer, regards this discovery as of the greatest importance, since the two lieutenants must have penetrated into the open sea and thus found the only free passage to the Pole.

The other European expeditions of 1871 were attended with no important results. It was in this year that Captain Hall organized, by the aid of Congress, an expedition which departed from New York June 29, in the steamer *Polaris*, of about 400 tons.

For nearly two years no important news was received from Hall, but as yet there was no alarm felt for his safety, as he expected to be absent three years. On April 29, 1873, the British steamer *Tigress* struck an ice floe in latitude $53^{\circ} 35'$ north, longitude 35° west. On this floe were found Captain Tyson, one of Hall's officers, and eighteen members of the *Polaris* expedition, who had been 196 days on the ice, and had drifted nearly 2000 miles.

DISCOVERY OF THE POLAR SEA. They reported that while landing provisions from their vessel, which was fast in the ice, the floe broke up and separated them from the ship, and rapidly drifting southward, they saw her no more. They also reported that Captain Hall had suddenly taken sick and died on November 28, 1871. The command then devolved on Captain Buddington, who resolved to return, and on August 2, 1872, the *Polaris* turned southward, but drifted with the ice into Baffin's Bay, where Tyson left her. The *Polaris* was so seriously injured by the breaking floe, that it was only by extraordinary exertion and the use of steam pumps that she was prevented from foundering. She was kept afloat during the night, however, and on the following morning was run aground in Kane's Life Boat Cove, where she was abandoned. Here they remained encamped, waiting for the ice to break up, until June 3, 1873, when they



FUNERAL OF CAPTAIN HALL.

loaded their small boats with provisions and started on the waters of Smith Sound for the south. On June 23 they sighted a vessel, which proved to be the *Raven-sCraig*, of Dundee, Captain Allen, a Scotch whaler. The explorers were picked up and landed at Dundee on September 19, 1873.

The reported loss of the *Polaris*, by Captain Tyson, caused the government to

send out the steamers *Juniata* and *Cabot*, under Lieutenant DeLong, to search for them, but they had gone only a short distance beyond St. Johns when the news of the rescue was received from a passing vessel, whereupon the expedition at once returned.

The next expedition was organized in 1877, by Lieutenant George W. DeLong, of the United States Navy, the expenses of which were provided by James Gordon Bennett, of the New York *Herald*. A suitable vessel was found in the steamer *Pandora*, which was put in prime condition for a contest with Arctic cold and dangerous

THE DE LONG EXPEDITION. icebergs, and then renamed the *Jeannette*, for Mr. Bennett's sister.

She put into Havre, after all repairs were made, from which port she sailed July 15, 1878, for San Francisco. Here the expedition was recruited from the navy, some of the officers being then in service in Chinese waters, so that a delay of nearly one year was unavoidable. On the eighth of July, 1879, the *Jeannette* departed with her select crew for Lawrence Bay, Lieutenant DeLong's intentions being to attempt a passage to the Pole through the open water found north of Nova Zembla by the Austrian lieutenants, Payer and Weyprecht.

On January 19, 1880, the *Jeannette* was caught between two ice-floes and severely strained by the enormous pressure, but the resistance she offered told how wonderfully strong had been her timbers and bracings. But on June 12, 1881, in latitude $77^{\circ} 14' 20''$, longitude $156^{\circ} 7' 30''$ east, she was caught again, and this time crushed so badly that she sank on the following afternoon, but not until all provisions had been removed. The party were in no wise discouraged by the disaster, for they had food in abundance, also boats and sledges. So buoyant, indeed, were their spirits that a concert

was given on the evening the *Jeannette* sank. Camp was pitched not far from where the vessel was crushed, and here the party remained in general good health for a few days, arranging the loads for sledge transportation. On June 15 the order to march was given, three cutters and two whale-boats being taken, in which to carry supplies. They marched southward with the hope of reaching the New Siberian Islands, and from thence make their way to the Siberian coast. The horrors of this dreadful march to open water, separation of the boats in a gale, loss of Lieutenant Chipp's boat and crew, are all fresh in the public mind. So also is the sad death of DeLong and so many of his party near the Lena Delta, where frost and starvation overwhelmed them; then the closing chapter of this most unfortunate expedition, the finding of the dead bodies and bringing them from their far resting places in the bleak wastes of Siberia's eternal winter, back to their homes in America and graves in native soil. The escape of Melville and his boat crew is the only result of the *Jeannette* expedition that is not extremely painful.

On June 19, 1878, Lieutenant Frederick Schwatka, of the Third United States Cavalry, set sail in the *Eothen* in search of the remains of Sir John Franklin and his party. The vessel and crew were both small, but resolution brought the expedition a success which its most earnest promoters had hardly anticipated.

They proceeded directly for King William Land, upon reaching which they went into winter quarters to await the disappearance of snow, so as to prosecute their search for traces of the fated party more easily. Eight months in tents at Camp Daly served to inure Schwatka and his men to the severe climate, and in April he set out with sledges to search for relics of the Franklin expedition. Reaching the Netchilik country, he interviewed several of the old natives, from whom he gathered considerable information. One of these people described the finding of several bodies near Richardson Point, and the ornaments which he himself had taken from them, consisting of a gold watch and watch-chain, gold ring, gold earrings, pipes, tobacco, and a number of silver watches. These bodies were all in a tent-covered boat; a number of them bore evidences of having been eaten by their comrades, for many of the bones had been cut with knife and saw.

**DEAD MEN'S BONES
IN PLENTY.**

Between Franklin Point and Collinson Inlet, Schwatka found the graves of two white men, and on the following day was found the camp which Captain Crozier and his command had made after abandoning the vessels, *Erebus* and *Terror*; next, Lieutenant Irving's grave was found and near it a silver medal. They were now in a district fruitful with relics of the unfortunate party, and discovered in several weeks of search the remains of no less than thirty members of the expedition, all of which were reburied with the exception of one entire skeleton, which, together with numerous relics, was brought back to the United States, and afterward turned over to the English Government. This skeleton proved to be the remains of Lieutenant Irving.

The foregoing résumé of Arctic exploration is intended as a mere recapitulation of the heroic efforts directed toward discovering a northwest passage for the benefit of commerce, and the location of the North Pole for the benefit of science. We will now proceed to relate some of the dreadful experiences of Arctic travelers, as well also the incidents, amusing and otherwise, connected therewith, which will necessarily include a description of the wonders of that forbidden region. The expeditions of Fridtjof Nansen must first be reported, as public interest is largely absorbed by his achievement in being the first traveler to cross Greenland, and who with only a single companion approached within 200 miles of the Pole, thus gaining a higher latitude than any other explorer.

ARCTIC DISCOVERIES OF FRIDTJOF NANSEN.



FRIDTJOF NANSEN, a Scandinavian adventurer, has become the greatest hero of Arctic exploration, who by almost unexampled resolution and superior judgment succeeded in 1895 in penetrating the region of perpetual cold to $86^{\circ} 14'$, or within some two hundred miles of the North Pole, the highest latitude ever reached of which reliable history gives any account. Nansen is a true descendant of the dauntless Vikings of old, and a daring scientist as well, whose investigations and deeds are alike important and memorable, the whole civilized world hailing him as one of the greatest travelers that ever led an expedition.

Nansen first came into public notice through a proposal which he made in November, 1887, to attempt a crossing of Greenland, which he advocated by lectures and with such zeal that his purpose received the necessary financial assistance from the private purse of one of his countrymen, Mr. Augustin Gamél, who subscribed the sum of 5000 crowns (\$1250.00), with which money an expedition was equipped according to Nansen's plans. Accompanied by five men, two of whom were hardy Laplanders, Nansen started from Christiania May 2, 1888, going first to London, and thence by the steamer *Jason* to Iceland. Not being able to charter a vessel for his exclusive use he was compelled to accept the accommodations of a sealing steamer, and it was therefore not until June 11 that he sighted the shores of Greenland. Leaving the *Jason*, in two small boats provided for his trip, Nansen drifted down the east coast, meeting so many obstructions and finding the ice so heavy that he was not able to make a landing until July 29. For almost six weeks the brave little party battled with storms, crashing icebergs, dangerous floes and evils of every kind, until their extremities were become so desperate as to almost destroy all hope of ever gaining a harbor. Providence, however, extended a saving hand in their darkest hour, and they finally found a landing in the fjord of Kekertarsuak without the loss of any of their stores. Here they tarried a few days for needed rest, and then pushed northward along the coast, meeting and fighting a thousand perils until August 10, when they reached the land and went into camp to prepare for their journey across a country that had never been traversed by a white man. Having no further use for the boats these were dragged to high ground and all the baggage and stores were then removed to two sledges brought along for the purpose, but as Nansen had no dogs the six men were compelled to do the dragging, three men to each sledge. Six days after landing their tent was struck, and the perilous trip through an unexplored region was begun.

Nansen had expected to meet with trials and dangers, and was therefore nerved for almost any experience, but the hardships actually encountered were infinitely greater than he had anticipated. Greenland is indeed a country of icy mountains, bleak as desolation itself, and so cold that at times it is hard to measure the temperature. The party soon saw the grave difficulties that confronted them, but they lost none of their resolution until they

had proceeded too far to permit of return. The route was a tedious way over wastes of snow, expanses of ice, and up mountains that rose to an altitude of 9000 feet above the sea, where the thermometer often fell to 49° below zero. They carried a canvas boat, which it was necessary to use on several occasions to cross stretches of open water, that abounded with fish, and the shores were animated with millions of birds. Bears were also frequently seen, and adventures with these afforded excitement and fresh meat that served to keep up the spirits and strength of the men. A number of villages of Esquimaux were visited that lay in the route pursued, and we have from Nansen's pen many interesting descriptions and anecdotes of the people, whose customs and superstitions he studied closely. His journey was from Uniwik, on the east coast, to Godthaab, on the west, a few miles below the Arctic circle, a distance of about 800 miles, which he accomplished in ninety days. While making ascents and traveling over hummocky ground progress was of course very slow, but at other times it was both swift and comfortable, for where the country was level the party raised sails on their sledges, and the wind was strong enough to push them along at great speed, while the descents were nearly always made by mounting the sledges and allowing them to shoot down, the coasting being, as a rule, excellent.

Nansen tells many interesting stories of his experiences with the native Esquimaux of Greenland, some of which must be retold or copied for the benefit of my readers. His first meeting with the natives was upon the promontory of Cape Bille, on the east coast, where he observed a number of skin tents, and, coming near, several Esquimaux came out to give a welcome to the white strangers, the first they had ever seen. Nansen was invited into one of the largest tents, and the sights therein he describes as follows:

"For my own part, I soon found myself sufficiently at ease to be able to use my eyes. My attention was first arrested by the number of naked forms which thronged the tent, in standing, sitting, and reclining positions. All the occupants were, in fact, attired in their so-called 'nâtit,' or indoor dress, the dimensions of which are so extremely small as to make it practically invisible to the stranger's inexperienced eye. The dress consists of a narrow band about the loins, which in the case of the women is reduced to the smallest possible dimensions.

"Of false modesty, of course there was no sign, but it is not to be wondered at that the unaffected ingenuousness with which all intercourse was carried on made a very strange impression upon us conventional Europeans in first instance. Nor will the blushes which rose to the cheeks of some among us when we saw a party of young men and women who followed us into the tent at once proceed to attire themselves in their indoor dress, or, in other words, divest themselves of every particle of clothing which they wore, be laid to our discredit, when it is remembered that we had been accustomed to male society exclusively during our voyage and adventures among the ice. The Lapps especially were much embarrassed at the unwonted sight."

THE JOURNEY ACROSS GREENLAND.



DR. FRIDTJOF NANSEN.

AN IMMODEST CUSTOM CAUSES BLUSHES.

Describing the domestic and indoor life of the Greenland Esquimaux, Nansen thus writes: "We had been at once invited to sit down upon some chests which stood by the thin skin-curtain at the entrance. These are the seats which are always put at the disposal of visitors, while the occupants have their places upon the long bench or couch which fills the back part of the tent. This couch is made of planks, is deep enough to give room for a body reclining at full length, and is as broad as the full length of the tent. It is covered with several layers of sealskin, and upon it the occupants spend their whole indoor life, men and women alike, sitting often cross-legged as they work, and taking their meals, and rest and sleep.

"The tent itself is of a very peculiar construction. The framework consists of a high trestle, upon which a number of poles are laid, forming a semi-circle below and converging more or less to a point at the top. Over these poles a double layer of skins is stretched, the

inner coat with the hair turned inward, and the outer generally consisting of the old coverings of boats and kayaks. The entrance is under the above-mentioned trestle, which is covered by the thin curtain of which I have just spoken. This particular tent housed four or five different families, each having their own particular partition



JACOBSHAVEN, GREENLAND.

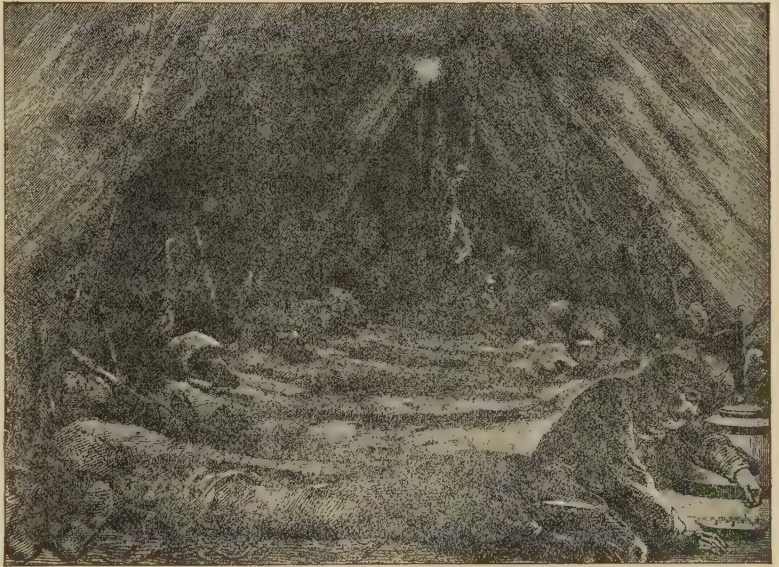
marked off upon the common couch. Before every family stall a train-oil lamp was burning with a broad flame. These lamps are flat, semi-circular vessels of pot-stone, about a foot in length. The wick is made of dried moss, which is placed against one side of the lamp and continually fed with pieces of fresh blubber, which soon melt into oil. The lamps are in charge of the women, who have special sticks to manipulate the wicks with, to keep them both from smoking and burning too low. Great pots of the same stone hang above, and in them the Esquimaux cook all their food, which they do not eat raw. Strange to say, they use neither peat nor wood for cooking purposes, though such fuel is not difficult to procure. The lamps are kept burning night and day; they serve for both heating and lighting purposes, for Esquimaux do not sleep in the dark, like other people; and they also serve to maintain a permanent odor of train-oil which, as I have said, our European senses at first found not altogether attractive, but which we soon learned not only to tolerate, but to take pleasure in. . . .

"The man embraced a fat woman, and thereupon the pair with extreme complacency pointed to some younger individuals, the whole pantomime giving us to understand that the

party together formed a family of husband, wife, and children. The man then proceeded to stroke his wife down the back, and to pinch her here and there, to show us how charming and delightful she was, and how fond he was of her, the process giving her at the same time evident satisfaction. Curiously enough, none of the men in this tent seemed to have more than one wife, though it is a common thing among the east coast Esquimaux for a man to keep two if he can afford them, though never more. As a rule, the men are good to their wives, and a couple may even be seen to kiss each other at times, though the process is not carried out on European lines, but by a mutual rubbing of noses. Domestic strife is, however, not unknown, and it sometimes leads to violent scenes, the end of which generally is that the woman receives either a vigorous castigation or the blade of a knife in her arm or leg, after which the relation between the two becomes as cordial as ever, especially if the woman has children. . . .

"Their hands and feet are alike unusually small and well shaped. Their hair is absolutely black and quite straight, resembling horse hair. The men often tie it back from

the forehead with a string of beads and leave it to fall down over the shoulders. Some who wear no such band have the hair cut above the forehead, or round the whole head, with the jaw-bone of a shark, as their superstitions will not allow them on any account to let iron come in contact with it. But, curiously enough, a man who has begun to cut his hair in his youth must necessarily continue the practice all his life. The women gather their hair up from behind and tie it with a string of sealskin into a cone, which must stand as



ARCTIC EXPLORERS IN THEIR SLEEPING BAGS.

perpendicularly as possible. This convention is especially stringent in the case of young unmarried women, who, to obtain the desired result, tie their hair back from the forehead and temples so tightly that by degrees it gradually gives way, and they become bald at a very early age." . . .

The hospitality of this desolate coast is quite unbounded. A man will receive his worst enemy, and entertain him for months if circumstances throw him in his way. The nature of their surroundings and the wandering life which they lead have forced them to offer and accept universal hospitality, and the habit has gradually become a law among them.

**REMARKABLE
HOSPITALITY.**

Nansen's journey across Greenland, counting the time occupied in traversing the wide expanse of shore ice, consumed three months, thirty-seven days of which were passed at great elevations, for his route was over the mountains of that frigid land. His absence, however, was something more than a year, because he reached the west coast

so late in the season that he had to await the return of spring to secure passage for home. He therefore spent the winter at Godthaab, where he was made comfortable by some of his countrymen who live at that far north station, and on April 15, 1889, a Norway vessel put into that sealing port, upon which he sailed for home a few days later.

NANSEN'S SEARCH FOR THE NORTH POLE.

Nansen returned to Copenhagen from his Greenland journey on May 21, 1889, where he was received with the greatest demonstrations; thence he began what may be truly called



RECEPTION OF DR. NANSEN AT COPENHAGEN.

a triumphal tour of Europe, for he was specially invited to appear before nearly all the prominent geographical and scientific societies of Norway, Denmark, Germany, France, and England, and when, in accepting these, he visited the large capitals, the people of all classes flocked to see him in almost incredible numbers. This extraordinary interest is difficult to account for unless it be due most largely to the man's personal magnetism, which indeed is extraordinary, for while crossing of Greenland was a heroic achievement, from the standpoint of intrepid daring, yet no appreciable results either for science or commerce were

obtained, nor was popular sympathy aroused by any story of shocking suffering which he had to tell, for few real hardships had been experienced during the journey.

Early in 1890 Dr. Nansen appeared before the Norwegian Geographical Society at Christiania, where he delivered a lengthy lecture partially devoted to his discoveries in Greenland, but most largely to advocating and explaining a plan which he had conceived of leading an expedition in quest of the North Pole. Briefly, his purpose was founded upon the belief that a constant current flows from Behring Strait toward the Pole, whence it turns southeast, passing between Spitzbergen and Greenland into Davies Strait. This theory Dr. Nansen sought to substantiate by the drift that carried relics from the *Jeannette*, which was abandoned north of the New Siberia Islands in June, 1881, to the southwest coast of Greenland, and by recovery of other articles that had been found on the shores of West Greenland, which must have been carried by ice-floes from the north coast of Alaska. Nansen's idea was that, once finding this current, he could follow it to or very near the Pole, without incurring the dangers of icebergs, and the obstructions of ice packs such as have brought disaster upon so many expeditions. He says: "It struck me that if objects from a ship (referring to the *Jeannette* relics) could drift this way, a ship, too, might go the same route, provided she was strong enough to withstand the pressure of the ice."

THEORIES ADVANCED
BY NANSEN.

Nansen's theories did not meet with general approval from other Arctic explorers, though he had no little encouragement from geographical societies, but even had this been withheld, his resolution and conviction would have remained the same, so fixed and determined is his disposition, a primary requisite for leadership. In February of 1892 he entered upon a lecturing tour of England, Ireland, and Scotland, which was presently extended to European cities, the proceeds of which were to be applied to the building of a ship and the outfitting of his proposed expedition. So little time was lost and his lectures were so well attended, that in the following November, his ship was launched in Raekevik Bay, Norway, and christened, with much ceremony, the *Fram* (signifying forward), his wife, whom he had married three years before, performing the act of breaking a bottle over the bow and pronouncing the name by which the little vessel should be known. The dimensions of the *Fram*, the strongest vessel, perhaps, ever built, were as follows: Length of keel, 102, and water line, 113 feet. Breadth at water line, 34 feet; depth of hold, 17 feet. The total thickness of the ship's sides was 24 to 28 inches, braced by powerful beams of wood and iron, and all the material used in the construction was the toughest and most durable that could be procured from any part of the world.

The contributions made for the expenses of the expedition were as follows (converted into United States money):

Appropriation by the Government of Norway, about	\$75,500
The king's private purse and individuals	28,500
Collections by a committee	6,100
Dr. Nansen's contribution	5,000
London Geographical Society	2,000
A private gentleman of Riga (not named)	1,750
Interest account	2,700

Total \$121,550

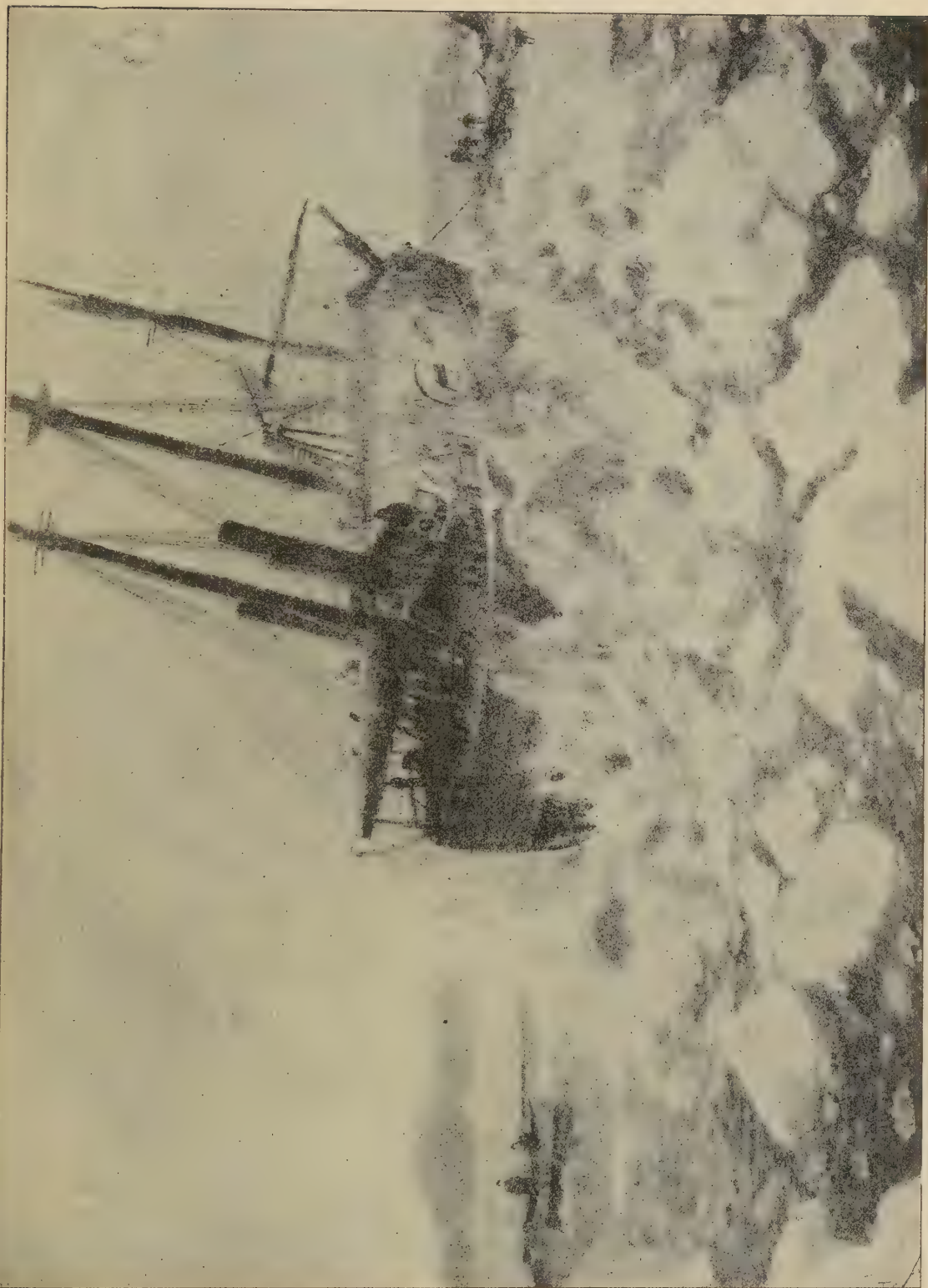
With a total crew of fourteen men, the *Fram* left the Christiania Fjord, June 23, 1893, fully provided for a two-years' trip, and proceeded to Chabarowa, in the Yugor straits, which was reached July 29. At this point thirty-four sledge dogs were taken on board, that

had been brought from Siberia for Nansen's use, and after cleaning the boilers the vessel again started on August 3. The route was along the north Siberian coast as far east as the Lena delta, thence north to reach the supposed current, which, according to Nansen's theory, must set toward the Pole. At Kjellman Islands a short stop was made, and two of the men going on shore to see what animal life might be found, they had the good fortune to shoot two bears and three reindeer. Before getting underway again a storm came up, and there being no harbor at hand, the situation soon became serious, for the waters were full of dangerous rocks while an adverse current made progress impossible. It was not until August 24 that the *Fram* was able to clear all obstructions and gain the open sea, but directly the broken ice became so heavy that Nansen made fast to an iceberg and drifted to the 79 parallel of latitude; observations taken November 8, however, showed that the drift had taken a contrary direction, by which the vessel had been carried southeast to 77° 43' north latitude. During this time the ice pressure was at times tremendous, strong enough to have crushed any other vessel, but the *Fram* received not the slightest injury, even though, as Nansen writes, "the ice piled itself up, and crashed against her sides with a noise like the crack of doom, rising at times to such a pitch that we could not hear each other speak as we sat in the saloon."

The temperature continued to fall, and remained low throughout the winter, reaching 63° below zero, but the *Fram* was so well protected against cold that no fire was started in the saloon until New Year's day. Being frozen in, with no likelihood of release for several months, the men, besides their several duties, kept themselves in good spirits by active games and pleasant amusements. The long Arctic night was relieved by the making and setting up of a windmill which supplied necessary force for working a dynamo to make electric light most of the time.

"On January 4, 1895," says Nansen, "the *Fram* was subjected to the greatest pressure we experienced, being frozen fast in ice over thirty feet in thickness. Across this field immense masses of ice came gliding with irresistible force against our port side. The pressure was tremendous. The ice piled above the gunwales, and high up the rigging, threatening to crush her, at least to bury her. The necessary provisions and utensils of every kind were removed onto the ice, and all hands made ready to leave the ship, but at the supreme moment, when for the first time her timbers began to crack, she broke loose and was slowly lifted up out of the icy berth into which she had been fast frozen. Notwithstanding the most careful examination, we have not been able to discover a single crack, a single splinter displaced in her. After this it became comparatively quiet, and we drifted on in a northerly and northeasterly direction."

Nansen found his progress so slow, and development seemed so uncertain, that he presently decided to carry into effect a bold plan long before conceived, when opportunity should offer, to make a sledge journey to examine the sea which lay north of the *Fram's* course. As great risk must be taken in such an enterprise Nansen was unwilling to trust it to others of his party, but resolutely determined to make the attempt himself, and to take only a single companion with him, whom he selected in the person of Lieutenant Johansen. The remainder of the winter was therefore spent making preparations for this expedition, for which the amplest provision was made as the grave nature of the undertaking positively required. On March 3 the sun appeared above the horizon for the first time that spring, after the longest Polar night ever experienced by man, and eleven days later the two men



THE "FRAM" LIFTING UNDER THE ICE PRESSURE.

set off on their dangerous undertaking with two sledges, laden with provisions and two kayaks, drawn by twenty-eight dogs. The story of this trip is both tedious and painful, for from day to day the men experienced incredible hardships, caused by the most difficult traveling over hummocky ice, through blinding storms, pinched by hunger, till to avoid starvation all their dogs save two were killed and eaten; but their achievement was compensation for all suffering, for Nansen and his equally heroic companion approached nearer the North Pole than any other persons of which history gives us any account. It was on the seventh of April that observation showed their position to be $86^{\circ} 14'$ north latitude, and 95° east longitude, which is about 225 geographical miles from the Pole. Previous to this feat, the highest latitude ever reached was $83^{\circ} 24'$, attained on the thirteenth of May, 1884, by Lieutenants Lockwood and Brainard, of the Greely expedition, which position is 450 geographical miles from the Pole.

Nansen writes: "In order to investigate the state of the ice, and the possibility of advance, I went further north on ski (slender snow-shoes that resemble sled runners) but could discern no likely way. From the highest hummock I could find, I saw only packed and piled up ice as far as the horizon. Here, as during our whole journey, we saw no sign of land in any direction. The ice appeared to drift before the wind without being stopped by mainland or islands. If it were like this in the direction of Franz Josef Land, we might have difficulty enough getting there, and the ice grew so bad that I thought it inadvisable to continue our journey any further toward the north."

While traveling northward Nansen saw no game of any kind, but upon returning he was astonished by the sight of tracks of two foxes at 85° north latitude, thus proving that at least these animals forage very near the Pole for their subsistence, and that land could not certainly be far distant. No animal life was again seen however until June 22, when the two half-starved men were fortunate enough to shoot a large seal, upon the flesh of which they subsisted until a few days later they killed three bears which they divided among the dogs which, for want of raw meat, had become almost too weak to travel.

This good luck was very soon after followed by an adventure of a serious character, which Nansen thus describes: "We were just about to cross a channel on the ice in our kayaks. This was generally accomplished by tying the two kayaks together on the ice, then placing them on the water, and after creeping with the dogs out onto the decks, paddling across. Suddenly I heard a noise behind me, and turning saw Johansen on his back with a bear over him, he holding the bear by the throat. I caught at my gun which lay on the fore-deck of my kayak; but at the same moment the boat slid into the water, and the gun with it. By exerting all my strength I hauled the heavy laden kayak up again, but while doing so I heard Johansen quietly remark, 'You must hurry up if you don't want to be too late.' At last I got the gun out of the case; and as I turned round with it cocked, the bear was just in front of me. In the hurry of the moment I had cocked the right barrel, which was loaded with shot; but the charge took effect behind the ear, and the bear fell down dead between us. The only wound that Johansen received was a slight scratch on the back of one hand, and we went on our way well laden with fresh bear meat.

"The bear must have followed our track like a cat, and, covered by the ice-blocks, have slunk up while we were clearing the ice from the lane and had our backs to him. We could see by the trail how it had crept over a small ridge just behind us under cover of a mound by Johansen's kayak. While the latter, without suspecting anything or looking round, went back and stooped down to pick up the hauling rope, he suddenly caught sight of an animal crouched up at the end of the kayak but thought it was Suggen (the dog);



NANSEN AND JOHANSEN BIDDING GOOD-BYE TO THE "FRAM."

and before he had time to realize that it was so big he received a cuff on the ear which made him see fireworks, and over he went on his back. . . . It was just as the bear was about to bite Johansen in the head that he uttered the memorable words, 'Look sharp!'

. . . Johansen let go his hold on the bear and wiggled out, while the bear gave Suggen a cuff which made him howl lustily. Then Kaifas (the other dog) got a slap on the nose. Meanwhile Johansen had struggled to his feet and when I fired had got his gun, which was sticking out of the kayak hole."

Nansen and his sole companion at length got into a strong current where the ice was broken into small floes which rendered their position extremely precarious, for they could not use their kayaks on account of the danger of having them crushed by the ice, and so had to

leap from one block of ice to another and drag the sledges after them, upon which the kayaks were carried. Thus they continued for a fortnight, until August 6, when they reached land in $81^{\circ} 38'$ north latitude, 63° east longitude, which were glacier covered islands along the north side of which they found open water and coasted in their kayaks the extreme length. Here they shot their last two remaining dogs because it was inconvenient to take them on the sea. "In these waters," writes Nansen, "we made a remarkable ornithological discovery; for as long as we were in the neighborhood of these islands we daily saw numbers of the hitherto so rare, so mysterious, and so little known Ross Gull. This, the most markedly Polar of all birds, is easily recognizable from other species of gulls by its beautiful rose-colored breast, its wedge-shaped tail, and airy flight."

On August 26, Nansen became imprisoned in the ice, in latitude $81^{\circ} 13'$, and as the autumn was now far advanced he concluded to winter here, rather than attempt the long journey to Spitzbergen. Accordingly he and Johansen set to work to provide meat, which was not a difficult thing to do as walrus and bears were plentiful. They also built a hut of stone, earth, and moss, a covering for which was supplied by walrus hide stretched over a ridge pole and weighted at the edges with large stones. For cooking, lighting, and heating, walrus blubber and bear's fat were used. The winter was passed very comfortably, considering the rude character of their quarters, and the health of both was perfect. Bears were so numerous that it was unnecessary to lay in any great stores of meat, for they could shoot one nearly every day without moving far from the hut. Besides these there was great plenty

of foxes "which almost every night," Nansen declares, "constantly sat upon the roof of our hut, whence we could perpetually hear their gnawing of our frozen meat. These foxes were of both the white variety and the valuable dark-furred kind, and had we been so inclined we could easily have laid by a store of valuable furs. Our supply of ammunition, however, was not so large as to allow of our spending it upon them, for it seemed to me that bears were the smallest game that could give us any return for our cartridges."

"At last came the spring, with sunshine and birds. How well I remember that first evening, a few days before the sun had appeared above the horizon, when we suddenly saw a flock of little auks sail past us along the mountains to the north. It was like the first greeting from life and spring. Many followed in their train, and soon the mountains around us swarmed with these little summer visitors of the north, which enlivened everything with their cheerful twittering."

Nansen started south again May 19, and reached the south side of a group of islands June 12, where he came to a large open piece of water. Lashing their two kayaks together and rigging a sail on a bamboo rod serving as a mast, they sped away over the open sea but



they now met with some adventures and mishaps that placed them in the gravest peril. These Dr. Nansen reports as follows: "One day, when we had been sailing along the shore, we lay to in the evening to reconnoitre our farther way westward. In leaving the kayaks, we made them fast to the ice by a strong strap, which we thought was perfectly reliable. While we were a little way off on the top of a hummock, however, we discovered that our linked boats had broken from their moorings and were rapidly drifting away from the ice, carried along by the wind. All our provisions were on board, our whole outfit, our guns, and our ammunition. There we stood upon the ice, entirely without resource. Our only safety lay in reaching our kayaks, and I had no choice but to spring into the water and try to reach them by swimming. It was, however, a struggle for life, for the kayaks seemed to drift more rapidly before the wind than I could swim; the icy water gradually robbed my whole

body of feeling, and it became more and more difficult to use my limbs. At length I reached the side of our craft; but it was only by summoning up my last energies that I finally succeeded in getting on board, and we were saved."

Two days after this incident the kayaks were viciously attacked by a walrus, which rose without warning, first under the kayak and then by the side, and placing one of its flippers over the gunwale, manifestly tried to upset the boat, which, failing in its first efforts to do, the wicked beast drove its tusks through the bottom, making a rent that admitted the water in great volume.



BEAR CORNER, WHERE NANSEN MET JACKSON.

Nansen had the double fortune to strike the walrus a sounding whack on the head with one of the heavy paddles, the blow driving it away, and of being near a floe upon which he escaped while the boat was fast sinking. The following day was spent repairing the kayak and drying clothes and the provisions which had become soaked with sea-water.

On the day following Dr. Nansen's adventure with the walrus, while cooking breakfast, he heard the barking of a dog, and going out to discover whence came this to him joyful sound, he saw a man approaching, who proved to be Mr. F. G. Jackson, leader of an expedition that had left England in July, 1894, to make an exploration of Franz Josef Land and the comparatively unknown region lying immediately north. It may be well understood how joyful this meeting proved, a happiness quite as great as the finding of a friend in that so seldom visited land was unexpected. At Cape Flora, Jackson, with his companions, had established his winter quarters in seven huts, built to house the party while conducting their investigations and explorations. They had been brought to this place by the steamer



NANSEN'S KAVAK ATTACKED BY A WALRUS.

Windward, which had returned to England, but was now daily expected on her second voyage to the station. The most generous hospitality was extended to Nansen and Johansen by Mr. Jackson, who prevailed upon them to remain with him in the little settlement until the arrival of the *Windward*, upon which he might then embark for home.

Though the *Windward* was expected at the time of the meeting between Nansen and Jackson, she did not arrive until six weeks later, this period of waiting being spent by the party in making a tour of Franz Josef Land, which was found to be a group of islands, and not a continental shore, as had been previously supposed. At last the welcome news of the *Windward's* arrival was reported, and after a week of hard labor, her cargo of stores were unloaded for the Jackson expedition, and on August 7 she weighed anchor for home, taking Nansen and Johansen as passengers. The vessel put into Vardö on August 13, at

which point Nansen and Johansen disembarked and sent a telegram to the **CELEBRATION** King of Norway announcing their safe return. Singular enough, eight **OF THE RETURN.** days later, a telegram was received from Skjarvo, a small port near Hammerfest, reporting the arrival there of the *Fram*, with all well on board, and a few days later there was a happy reunion at Tromsö, followed by such receptions, and celebrations, and ovations in the large cities of Norway as were never seen before.

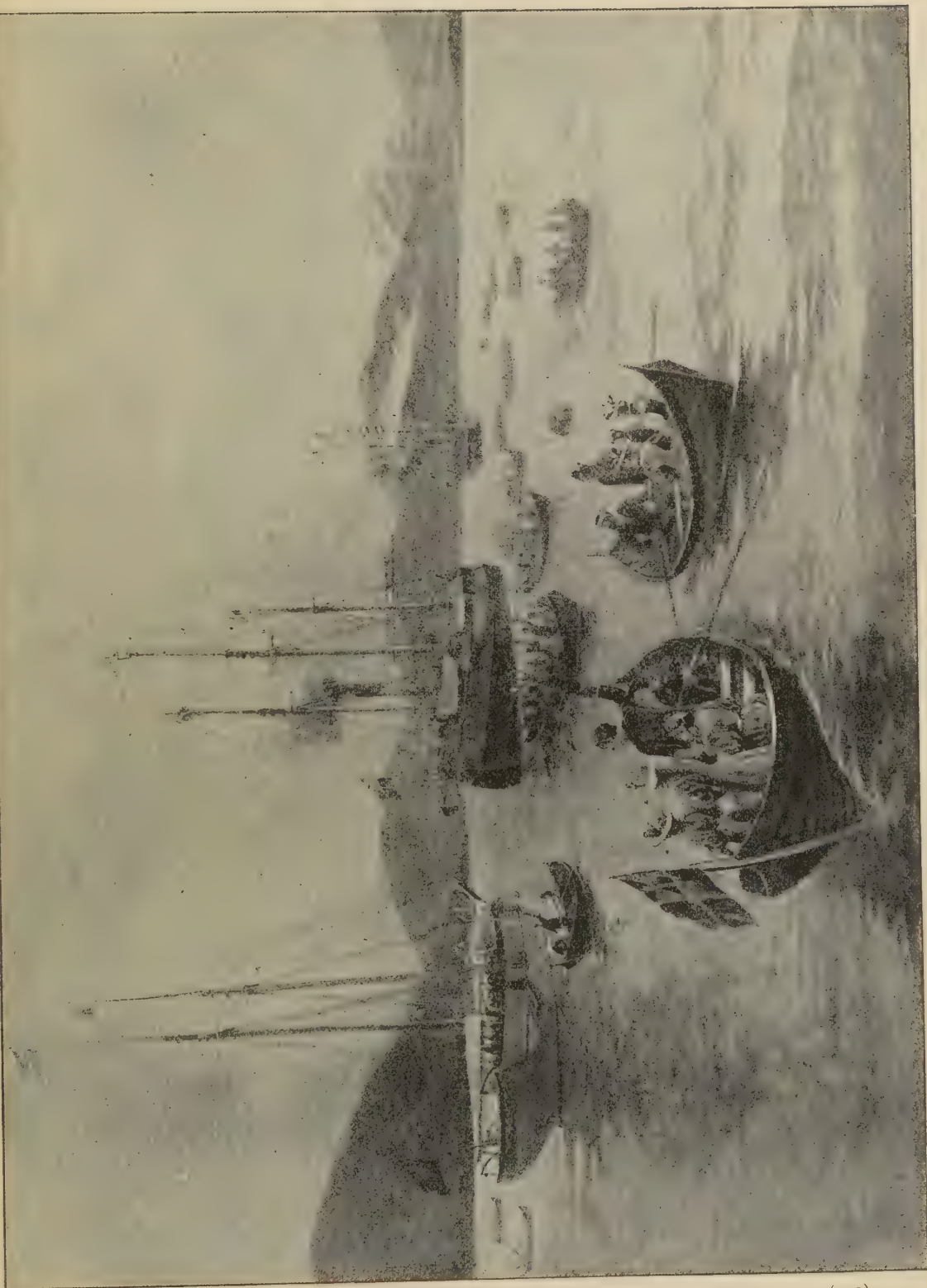
THE PEARY EXPEDITIONS.

Nansen accomplished the previously unattempted feat of crossing Greenland from east to west, and thereby won imperishable fame for himself, and honor for his country. But Nansen's effort, while worthy of all praise, may not be justly compared with that of Lieutenant R. E. Peary, of the United States Navy, who performed the much more perilous undertaking of crossing Greenland at its most northern extremity, or upon a line twenty degrees higher latitude than was Nansen's route.

This expedition was composed of six members, including Lieutenant Peary's wife, who was the first white woman that ever penetrated the Arctic Zone. With a splendid equipment, the party left New York on June 6, 1891, in a small sealing steamer named the *Kite*, and proceeded direct to Greenland, calling first at the Danish villages of Godthavn and Upernavik, and thence to McCormick Bay, near latitude 78°, where, having parted with the *Kite*, July 30, they went into winter quarters. The house built for their protection was of timbers brought by the steamer, and was made more comfortable than any structure ever previously erected in that rigorous latitude. Before the summer was ended Peary made himself familiar with a considerable extent of country, and became well acquainted with a number of Esquimaux, who came to visit him from far distant as well as nearby parts. His party also did considerable hunting, killing one bear and thirty-four reindeer, which provided almost enough fresh meat for their winter store.

On October 26 the sun disappeared, and the long night of nearly four months was at hand, for which the party had prepared themselves as well as possible, but which, nevertheless, passed drearily and seemingly endlessly, notwithstanding they had no end of company. Indeed, several Esquimaux built snow huts near Peary's timber house, while not a few were so sociable as to obtrude upon the expedition and to take without invitation the privilege of sleeping, packed like sardines, on the floor.

At the end of April preparation was made for the dangerous attempt to cross Greenland at its northern extremity, or to prove whether it were an island, or a continent extending to the Pole. For this expedition twenty dogs were obtained by barter with the Esquimaux, together with a sufficient number of sledges, snow shoes, ski, sleeping-bags, provisions, etc.,



ARRIVAL OF NANSEN AT TROMSØ, NORWAY.

and departure was made from McCormick Bay April 30, the party being composed of four persons, viz. : Peary, Gibson, Dr. Cook, and Eivind Astrup, a young Norwegian gentleman, who became historiographer of the expedition. The route lay over inland ice offering few

difficulties, until after several days their march was arrested by a furious snowstorm that raged incessantly for thirty-six hours, and so buried everything as to endanger the lives of the party. The poor dogs suffered so terribly that ten of them, in their frantic efforts to escape, gnawed the harness and straps that confined them, and succeeded in getting entirely away. This multiplied the troubles of the dreadfully beset party, for a recapture of the dogs was as difficult as it was necessary, taxing both energy and patience to the limit.

Astrup describes the process as follows: "The usual method of catching one of these dogs is to entice him to come to you by throwing small pieces of pemmican on the snow.



A BULL MUSK OX.

In a favorable moment you seize him by the neck with a firm grip. You then press his head in the snow and hold him in this position until someone else can harness him. If one is well practiced in this work he can, as a rule, do it without getting bitten more than two or three times. In two cases we had to lasso the dog doubly, each man clinging tightly to his rope and a third man holding the animal down in order to make it possible for a fourth person to put on a new harness or repair the old one."

At Humboldt Glacier, which is 130 miles east of McCormick Bay, the party divided, May 24, Peary and Astrup continuing the journey, while Gibson and Cook were sent back to Redcliffe, the name given to their winter quarters at the bay. The reason for thus separating was to have a relatively larger number of dogs to a small number of persons, so as to admit the carrying of provisions for a longer journey. Peary and Astrup



DR. NANSEN'S MEETING WITH JACKSON.

proceeded on their hazardous enterprise, meeting with many obstacles, but seeing no living thing until June 27, when the monotony was relieved by a sight of two musk ox cows with their calves, which Peary stalked so successfully that he managed to kill three, and a banquet of fresh meat was soon prepared for the men and dogs, of which they all ate inordinately. On the following day a larger herd of musk cattle were discovered grazing at a little distance, which this time Astrup stalked, and killed a large bull whose horns were like the huge drinking cups of the Vikings.

The exploration was completed on July 4 by discovery of a large body of water at the northeastern extremity, to which Peary gave the name of Independence Bay, and on a promontory overlooking the bay a high stone cairn was built, in the apex of which were fixed



ASTRUP AND PEARY STALKING MUSK OXEN.

two silk American flags on strong bamboo poles. Thus was accomplished a memorable trip and perilous enterprise, the crossing of northernmost Greenland and a skirting of the coast to prove that it is an island. The return journey was begun on July 8, and on August 5, when nearing their winter quarters, Peary and Astrup were met by a party of seven men, who composed an expedition led by Professor Heilprin, of Philadelphia, that had been sent out to find, relieve, or rescue the two hardy travelers, who it was feared had perished.

"Since leaving the house," writes Astrup, "we had spent more than ninety days on the inland ice of Greenland, and had traveled about 1300 miles. We had found the exact northern extent of the mighty ice-cap of this great region, and, with a probability bordering on certainty, had defined the limits of the Greenland continent to the north."

After a sojourn of fourteen months in the Arctic land, Peary and his party took passage for home on the *Kite*, which had returned for them, and landed in New York, after a four weeks' voyage, September 20, 1892.

A second expedition was undertaken by Peary in the following year, upon which he was accompanied by Astrup and twelve others, including Mrs. Peary, but no particularly valuable results were obtained, nor was a high latitude reached, though the party was absent for nearly two years. The time was well spent, however, especially by Astrup, who made such a careful study of Esquimaux life that he has been able to present the civilized world with the most complete description ever written of those singular people.

Astrup's observations have led him to conclude that the natives of hyperborean climes, particularly of North Greenland, are intelligent and possess no small amount of ingenuity and skill. Their adaptability to new conditions is little short of surprising, as evidenced by their remarkable quickness in

learning how to use modern fire-arms and in handling whale-boats, so very unlike the vessels to which they had from time immemorial been accustomed. Nor is it an easy thing to excite their superstitious fears, because of their disposition to inquire and reason, which is a trait quite contrary to that manifested by all other savage people. To test their faculties in this respect, Peary took with him a phonograph, which he set to perform before a large crowd of Esquimaux, who he naturally believed would be astounded if not frightened by hearing a human voice proceeding from so queer a box. Instead of his expectations being realized, not one showed the slightest alarm, but on the other hand critically examined the wonderful instrument, and while they could not comprehend the means, they understood at once that the sounds were produced by a mechanical agency.

Home life among the Esquimaux is not without its happiness, and domestic ties and joys are quite as strong with them as among civilized people. Polygamy is exceptional, though permitted, but no man ever has more than two wives. Women before marriage are chaste, exception to which is so extremely rare that Astrup was unable to learn, by observation or inquiry, of any violation; but after marriage promiscuity is the rule, and the trading of wives is a common thing; nor is a married woman held to any accountability by husband or associates for a transference of her favors to any number of lovers, though such promiscuity is not frequently seen in cases where wives have children.

The property upon which the Esquimaux sets highest value are his dogs, because without these useful animals it would be an exceedingly difficult matter for him to support life, in a region where the almost sole subsistence is by hunting. Dogs are not only useful in the



SHOOTING BEARS FROM THE STEAMER.

chase, but they are the Esquimau's reliance for draught purposes, very little if any use having been found for the reindeer in the high latitudes, which in fact are not native there. These dogs are not much larger than a cur, but are shaggy as a Newfoundland, will eat anything it is possible to chew, and often bolt things they cannot bite. Their courage is not great when alone, but numbers render them so fearless that no creature or obstacle may oppose them. They are apparently ill-treated, being beaten dreadfully for slight offences, yet every Esquimau loves his dogs almost as well as he does his children, and the loss of a member of his pack causes profound grief to the owner.

The creatures chiefly hunted by Esquimaux are: Foxes, which are caught by stone dead-falls; seals, which are speared by the hunter patiently sitting over a small blow-hole and waiting the appearance of the animal; bears, which are pursued by dogs and worried

until the hunter gains an opportunity to thrust his lance into a vital place,

ANIMALS OF THE but in these encounters it is common to have several dogs killed, and the
ARCTIC LAND. man himself occasionally becomes a victim, as a bear at bay, or wounded, is a terrible fighter. In seeking the walrus, great caution is necessary, for

it is a rare thing that they can be approached otherwise. The hunter is drawn to the grounds upon a sledge, and leaving his dogs tethered proceeds warily over ice to the spot where he supposes walruses to be. Describing what follows, Astrup writes: "Soon there

seems to be a singing and cracking in the ice; then there is a break into many pieces, and up through the opening thus formed a bearded walrus quietly and majestically lifts its large head and grinning face. You hear its deep breathing, which in the twilight of the forenoon seems to resemble a slow snoring, and you see its breath like a cloud of vapor, which in the very low temperature that prevails looks as white and shining as the steam from an engine. A moment afterward the animal slowly disappears in the deep. It is usually while the walrus is engaged in breaking the thin ice in order to form a breathing-hole that the Esquimau rushes to the attack, though sometimes, in spite of the cold, one is found that has crept upon the ice where it is strong enough to bear the weight." As a rule, the native



ARCTIC BEAUTIES.

uses only the spear when he attacks a walrus, which is so made that it may be employed as a harpoon, having a detachable head, which being fast to a long coiled line permits of the hunter throwing the spear into the animal, and thus saving the shaft, allows the wounded walrus to swim until exhausted, whereupon it is drawn to the brink of the ice and there dispatched.

In their domestic relations there is a fair distribution of labor and responsibility between men and women, in which respect there is a marked difference between the Esquimaux and their Indian congeners. In and about their huts the men and women busy themselves with duties made common to both, viz., cooking, making clothes, and looking after the dogs. It is a curious thing that in preparing skins, which are to be used for clothes, after

first being well dried by exposure, women chew the hard hides of seal, bear or walrus, inch by inch, until they are thoroughly pliable and easy to sew. The Esquimaux, as a rule, has protruding lips, not always thick, and is equipped with white and exceedingly strong teeth firmly set in muscular jaws. These are necessary, for not only is the food often eaten while thoroughly frozen, but at best the meat they procure by hunting is exceedingly tough, and besides this hard usage, the teeth are employed when pulling heavy loads.

Notwithstanding the rigorous climate and severe life, which may lead many to suppose that existence in the far north is both precarious and miserable, it is a fact that no people on the earth are happier than the Esquimaux, and the reason for this condition is not difficult to explain. Without sermonizing, it may be truth-

**HAPPINESS A CHARACTERISTIC
OF THE ESQUIMAUX.**

fully said that ambition and happiness are never found closely associated. Esquimaux society is founded upon principles of equal rights and community of interest, which exist among them in the most ideally perfect way. If a hunter kills an animal which he is unable at the time to remove, as frequently happens, he covers it with stones or blocks of ice to protect it while he goes for help. If, in his absence, another hunter finds the buried game, he is at liberty to take the body himself, without provoking the slightest objection from the real owner. "In fact," says Astrup, "the tribe forms a single family, and each member, without exception, consecrates the work of his life to the common good."

"It is extremely seldom that Esquimaux quarrel, and when a disagreement occurs it is a very tame affair. The parties do not talk loudly or call each other names, but simply separate. They are a quiet and gentle people, and very much dislike anything in the way of disturbance or discord." It may be added that the Esquimaux are exceptionally honest and truthful, and that their morals are remarkable. Nor is their life so serious that it lacks humor, for their mirth is exuberant and so easily excited that they seem to see the comical side of almost everything.

The Esquimaux have no definable religion, or any sort of theology that serves to distinguish between good or bad, or that promises reward or punishment, yet they have an indistinct idea of a hereafter. They believe in the existence of invisible spirits that may be exorcised at the will of their *Angekoks*, who may be either priests or magicians. These spirits are invoked in cases of sickness, and by propitiation, usually obtained by offerings of meat, they are supposed to effect a cure. And it is remarkable to observe the effects of mind upon mind, as its workings may be seen in the incantations practiced by the Esquimaux priests upon patients. And the conclusion is thus rendered almost irresistible that medicine is very much less efficacious, within certain limitations, than priestly impression. Nor can it be consistently maintained that the Esquimaux magician is a charlatan, for his services are usually rendered without compensation, solely for the common good. They also prepare themselves for their mystic profession by years of study, during which they are the subject of many solemn and mysterious ceremonies. These people also believe in the protecting power of amulets, which, to insure potency, must first pass into the hands of a priest, but consecration is completed by the singing of mystic songs over them. Upon the death of an Esquimaux the remaining members of the immediate family pass several days in mourning, during which time the name of the deceased may not be mentioned, and those who touch the body require several days for purification. The corpse is dressed in traveling costume and is drawn upon a sledge to some point a mile from the village, where it is deposited in a shallow grave and covered with stones, with many articles belonging to the deceased left near the burial place for use by the soul in the spirit hunting grounds.

ANDRÉE'S BALLOON EXPEDITION.

It is a question for philosophers to answer, if answer can be given, why men who, as a rule, are so tenacious of life, will risk all in an effort to acquire fame. There appears to be no limit to the dangers that persons will gladly encounter if by so doing they may win applause, and it is curious to note how many have been the forms of peril braved in this never-to-be understood quest for reputation. The world has been amazed at the action of a rope-walker crossing the falls of Niagara; of another riding over Whirlpool Rapids in a barrel; of a jumper leaping from Brooklyn Bridge; of a man crossing the Atlantic in a fifteen-foot boat, and of aeronauts performing upon a trapeze one thousand feet above the earth and then leaping into space with a parachute. Such hazardous feats are made with no view to the world's betterment, or to advancing science, but purely for sensational



PROFESSOR S. A. ANDREE.

ends—for exhibition purposes. It is remarkable how strong is popular attachment for unusual things; how morbid is taste, how great is curiosity. But while there is thirst for sensation, there is also sincere desire, though it be felt by the few, for the attainment of beneficent aims, even though the effort involves the largest sacrifices; even the imminent risk of life itself. This was the praiseworthy ambition that led Columbus to sail into unknown seas; that has prompted the exploration of savage lands; that has wrought civilization out of chaos. It is answer to the inquiry why men rove the world, and why adventurers follow, one after another, over the corpse-strewn but otherwise unmarked highway that leads to the throne of winter.

Failure after failure only serves to multiply the seekers; danger heaped upon danger only breeds resolution; death that ends effort only stimulates the living, for it is in human nature to strive continually to outdo; to accomplish that which has wrought the ruin of thousands; to gain what appears to be the unattainable. Every Polar explorer has had a theory of his own; every traveler that has sought the Polar axis has set upon the journey with a conviction that his plans would avail to satisfy his ambition; and failure, instead of discouraging, only increases his determination to modify his theory and try again.

A hundred courageous men have tried to reach the North Pole by vessel and by sledge, but as these have all failed, appetite for adventure has been whetted and led to the sugges-

THE FANCY OF A BALLOON EXPEDITION.

tion of attempting an *air* route as opposed to a *land* journey. Some have tried the building of a flying machine, which, however, was as vain as a quest of the Pole itself; but, finally, one bolder than his fellow travelers, resolved to satisfy his desperate purpose by ascending in a huge balloon and trusting to favoring air-currents to carry him to or over the plexus of northern longitudes. This brave adventurer was a Swedish civil engineer named S. A.

Andrée, who was a practical aeronaut, having made several balloon ascensions, and who had no difficulty in inducing prominent persons to advance a sum sufficient to test his theories.

Andrée's original purpose was to attempt a crossing of the Atlantic in a balloon, from Africa to South America, in order to determine the length of time a balloon may be kept in suspension and also to make a study of the upper air-currents. The plan was so far considered as to refer it to Nordenskjöld, who immediately advised that the purpose be changed to an effort to sail from Spitzbergen to the North Pole, as by so doing a double benefit might follow. Andrée was so appreciative of the suggestion that he set at once to putting it into execution. A fund of \$1400 was given him to pay the cost of experiments, which he pursued by making twelve ascensions between 1893-95, the results of which he communicated to the Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences. His essays on aerial navigation were widely read, and when, in February, 1895, he proposed, in a public lecture, to attempt to reach the North Pole by balloon he received the most flattering encouragement. Later in the year Andrée delivered a lecture on the same subject before the Geographical Congress in London and while a few of his audience thought the attempt would prove a failure, and so declared, the majority enthusiastically favored his purpose.

When Andrée returned to Sweden he found everything favorable to the execution of his plans. In a few days thereafter, through King Oscar's influence, the sum of \$36,000 was subscribed with which to defray the expenses of the proposed expedition. The winter of 1895-96 was spent by Andrée in France, where he made several ascensions, and in the spring of the latter year he returned to Sweden with a balloon that had been made by M. Lachambre, of Paris, at a cost of \$10,000, in which to make his hazardous voyage. This balloon stood nearly one hundred feet in height, when inflated, was made of three thicknesses of oiled silk, overlaid with two heavy coats of varnish. The car was five feet deep and seven feet in diameter, made of strong wicker-work lined with varnished silk, and provided with two comfortable departments, one for sleeping and the other for observations. Above the car was a wicker canopy, with a trap door in the centre so as to permit the occupants to ascend to the top of the canopy, upon which they might stand in case of need, protected by a canvas that was stretched around the upper circle of ropes. Above this was a ring of the same diameter as the car, to which many of the scientific instruments were attached, so that the explorers might conveniently use them while standing upon the canopy. Nothing was omitted that science thus far shows any need for in such an expedition, in addition to which there was a canvas collapsible boat, sleeping bags, abundant provisions, and an ingenious cooking arrangement, by which an oil stove was carried far enough below the car to be entirely out of all danger of igniting the



CAR OF THE ANDRÉE BALLOON.

gas in the balloon. The cooking was thus done at long range, the lamp being lighted and extinguished by a contrivance that avoided the need of raising the stove.

Andrée put into effect a scheme of his own for controlling, so far as possible, the direction and buoyancy of the balloon. This he sought to accomplish by means of long

trailing ropes, one thousand and twelve hundred feet in length, respectively, his purpose being to keep at an altitude of five hundred feet above the earth and thus to allow the ropes to drag. Another kind of steering apparatus which he employed was made by stretching sails attached to

a horizontal bamboo yard-arm, and connecting above with the body of the balloon, by which means, by taking in sail upon either side he thought he would be able to tack about thirty degrees. In addition to these ingenious provisions, the expansion and contraction of the gas was regulated by automatic valves set in opposite sides of the balloon. Lastly, the balloon was inflated with hydrogen gas, which, to produce the necessary amount (170,000 cubic feet), required the use of forty tons of iron filings, thirty-nine tons of sulphuric acid, and seventy-five tons of water. Besides the instruments carried for making scientific observations, photographing, testing the humidity, etc., a number of carrier pigeons were taken,

and a supply of cork buoys, in the centre of which latter were tin boxes to contain messages, which floating, might some time be picked up at sea.

Andrée selected for his companions two Swedish gentlemen, Dr. Nils Ekholm and Nils Strindberg, with whom he sailed for Spitzbergen on the



ANDRÉE AND COMPANIONS LEAVING GÖTEBURG FOR SPITZBERGEN.

steamer *Virgo* from Göteborg, June 8, 1896, arriving at their destination eleven days later. Here, at a place called Pike's House, the balloon was inflated, but the work was so long delayed that it was concluded to defer the journey until another time, and the balloon was accordingly taken to Tromsø and there stored, while Andrée and his companions returned to Stockholm.

This sudden change of purpose led not a few to express doubt of Andrée's courage and to no little ridicule, as was most natural. The following year, however, Andrée renewed his resolve, and was again encouraged to do so by King Oscar. Dr.

THE FINAL START FOR THE POLE. Ekholm decided, however, not to venture upon such a hazardous enterprise, whereupon his place was quickly taken by Ferdinand Frankel, who was at the time engaged as a civil engineer constructing railroads for the

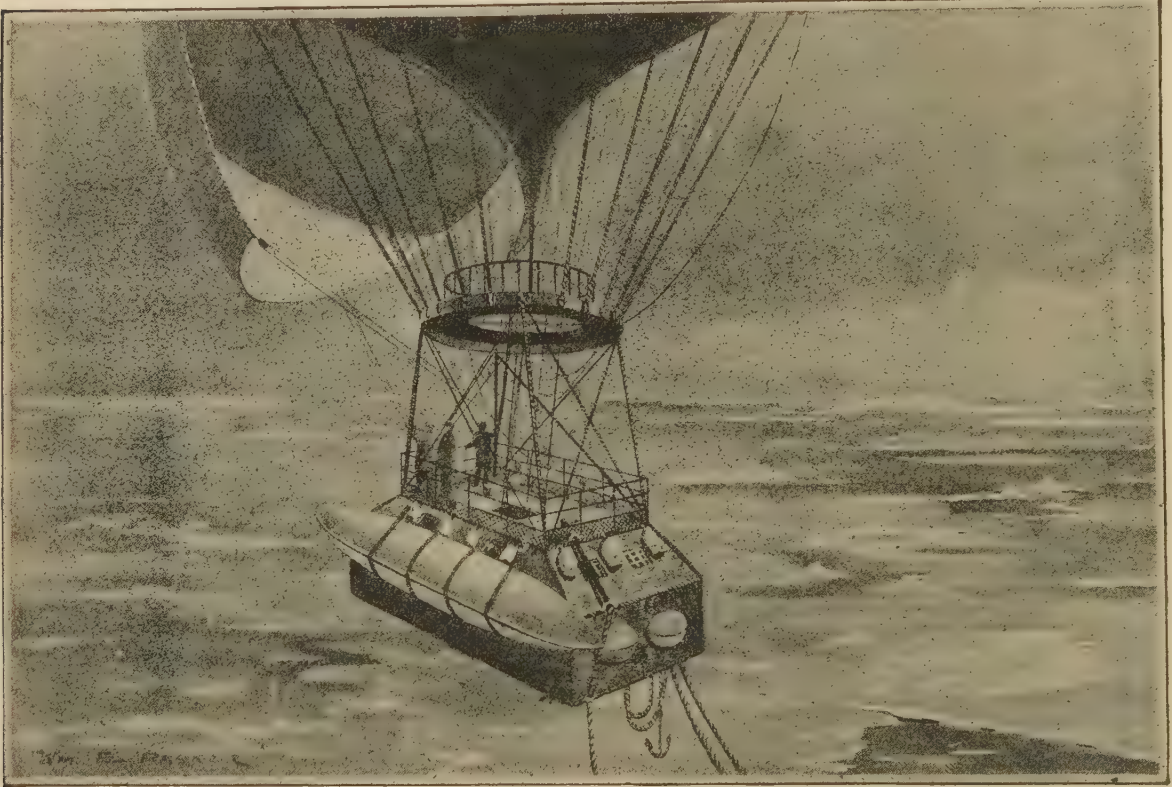
Swedish Government. The party started for Dane's Island the second of June, and there landed the balloon on the fourteenth, and on June 22 the inflation was completed. A few days was thereafter spent repairing the leaks and in tightening all the parts of the great air vessel, which had been duly christened, with the appropriate name *Ornen*, which in



ASCENSION FOR THE PERILOUS JOURNEY.

English is *Eagle*. Though everything was in readiness for a start on June 30, it was not until July 11 that wind and conditions were favorable for the ascension. The temporary building which housed the great balloon was quickly torn down by carpenters and sailors brought to the place by the Swedish gunboat *Svenskund*, and by two o'clock the aerial monster stood out like a thing of titanic life against a background of sea and sky. Andrée now very hurriedly wrote two dispatches, one to a paper of Stockholm and one to the King of Norway, expressing his thanks and sending greeting to friends.

When the supreme moment arrived the three brave adventurers exhibited no signs of excitement, but were, on the other hand, astonishingly calm. They each shook hands with



ANDRÉE'S BALLOON PASSING OVER THE ICE FIELDS.

their friends, after which Andrée stepped into the car, and called his two resolute companions to follow, to which they promptly responded. A few moments after, as the balloon became a little steadied, at 2.40 p. m., Andrée gave the command, "Cut the ropes," and immediately the mighty *Eagle* rose like a flying mountain into the air, amid the "hurrahs" and "*bon voyages*" of the spectators. The three adventurers waved back their adieus with flags and handkerchiefs, and in half an hour the balloon had passed entirely out of sight. It is now (February 1, 1898) as I write, more than six months since Andrée departed, and no word has come back to tell us what has been his fate. Will it be the same that overtook Sir John Franklin, which was not determined for nearly twelve years, and when discovered there were only bones and relics?

THE GREELY EXPEDITION.

CHAPTER I.



REQUENT disasters that have overtaken expeditions sent to the Arctic regions, involving loss of life by cold and starvation, and intense suffering always, even when no fatalities occurred, have not in the least diminished interest in Arctic exploration, but on the other hand seem only to incite renewed endeavor. Governments, reflecting popular desire, continue their efforts to gain honors by fresh discoveries in the almost inaccessible region, and each year serves to prove that civilization will not be content until the secrets and mysteries of the frozen North are yielded up to resolute explorers.

The Signal Service Department, under General Hazen, took great interest in Arctic research, and when some scientist proposed the establishment of international Polar stations by which it was believed the Pole might be reached by gradual approaches, General Hazen at once gave the scheme his unqualified sanction. The question was industriously agitated, until at length Congress, in 1880, voted an ample appropriation for equipping an expedition which was to proceed to certain specified points, as will hereafter appear, and establish permanent stations.

Lieutenant and Brevet-Major Adolphus W. Greely, assistant to the chief signal officer, was an enthusiast on Arctic discovery, and supported General Hazen with all his influence in carrying the appropriation bill through Congress. Greely had seen some service and was a man of acknowledged bravery. He entered the volunteer service as a private in 1861, at the age of seventeen, joining a Massachusetts regiment, and served continuously until appointed, in March, 1867, a lieutenant in the Fifth cavalry U. S. regular army. He attained in the volunteer service the grade of captain and brevet-major for bravery exhibited at the storming of Fredericksburg, December, 1862, in which he was wounded three times, but still kept the field. After his appointment in the regular army he was attached to the signal service corps, where he served in the several capacities of inspector, constructor, and superintendent of telegraph lines and as the official predicting officer. At the time De Long was recruiting from the army list his crew for the *Jeannette*, Greely offered his services, and in fact tried in every possible way to accompany the expedition, and was deeply chagrined at being refused.

When Congress passed the bill providing for the establishment of Polar stations, General Hazen interested himself in procuring for Greely the appointment as commander of the expedition, in which effort he was successful, and which when organized consisted of twenty-four officers and men, chosen from different branches of the army.

Lieutenant Greely sailed from St. John's, N. F., July 7, 1881, on the steamer *Proteus*, and reached Disco Island, at Godhaven, two weeks later. Here he secured two Esquimau interpreters, fourteen dogs, two sledges, and a large quantity of provisions, including several tons of walrus flesh and dried fish as food for the dogs. Several hundred pounds of white

whale flesh were also added to the store on account of its antiscorbutic properties. Sailing from Godhaven, the *Proteus* reached Upernavik on the twenty-fourth of July, and left there July 29, going north at full speed. Baffin's Bay, Smith's Sound, and Kennedy Channel were found remarkably free from obstructions. The season was very exceptional. There the *Proteus* in 1881 found open water, while the *Neptune* in 1882 and the *Proteus* in 1883 were driven back by immeasurable and impenetrable fields of ice. The Nares expedition in 1875

made the passage with great difficulty, battling with the ice continually and nearly losing their ships. They were twenty-one days in reaching Cape Frazer from Littleton Island, but the *Proteus* made the same distance in sixteen hours. The explorers passed Cape Constitution, Kane's highest point, and there they met with the first obstruction. On the fourth of August they steamed up to the solid main pack, extending right across the channel, which appeared to be at least twenty feet thick. The *Proteus* had then reached the southwest part of Lady Franklin Bay, and was within ten miles of her destination. For seven days the vessel was moored to the ice, and Lieutenant Greely almost despaired of attaining his object. But the ice moved to the eastward, and the ship was forced at full speed until Discovery Harbor was reached, and there Lieutenant Greely established his settlement, calling it Fort Conger, in honor of Senator Conger, of Michigan, who had been instrumental in passing the bill through Congress which authorized the expedition. The *Proteus* left the party well provided for at Fort Conger on August 18, and arrived safely at St. John's.

The company at Fort Conger was well equipped for its exile. Stores of provisions sufficient to last two years were at hand. The house erected had double frames and measured 61 by 21 feet. In addition to stores and supplies about 140 tons of coal were landed. It was not doubted that the members of the expedition could be made as comfortable and as safe from atmospheric dangers as are the men of the Signal Service stationed on the summits of Pike's Peak and Mt. Washington, or the employes of the Hudson Bay Company stationed at Fort York, where a temperature of sixty degrees is not uncommon.

Scientific work began at once. The formal observations of the international series, however, did not commence until August 1, 1882. They then continued for one year. The obligatory work was to include researches into meteorology, magnetism, the aurora, and astronomy. The voluntary or optional observations, which might be made without Congress insisting upon them, embraced every department of natural science, including the temperature of the soil, snow and ice, evaporation, terrestrial magnetism, and galvanic earth currents in close connection with magnetic and auroral phenomena, hydrographical, spectroscopical, and pendulum observations, as well as observations on atmospheric electricity, the growth and structure of ice, the physical properties of sea water, etc. Zoological, geological, and botanical collections were to be accumulated, and though mere exploration was not forbidden, it was to be regarded as secondary to the proper work of the different parties.

During the two years that Greely remained at Fort Conger, he busied himself with the duties which had been entrusted to him, while the spirit of discovery possessed many of his companions, producing results of the most valuable character. The

ACHIEVEMENT OF prime objects of the expedition were at no time neglected, but so admirably had the commander perfected his arrangements for scientific operations, that opportunity was left him and his officers to make a series of journeys, the happy results of which are modestly told in a dispatch sent by Greely to General Hazen from St. John's, July 17, 1884:

"For the first time in three centuries England yields the honor of the furthest north. Lieutenant Lockwood and Sergeant Brainerd, May 13, reached Lockwood Island, latitude $83^{\circ} 24'$ north, longitude $44^{\circ} 5'$ west. They saw from 2000 feet elevation no land north, or northwest, but to northeast Greenland, Cape Robert Lincoln, latitude $83^{\circ} 35'$, longitude 38° . Lieutenant Lockwood was turned back in 1883 by open water on North Greenland shore, the party barely escaping drift into the Polar Ocean. Dr. Pavy, in 1882, who followed



AN OBSERVATORY IN THE ARCTIC LAND.

Markham's route, was adrift one day in the Polar Ocean north of Cape Joseph Henry, and escaped to land, abandoning nearly everything.

"In 1882 I made a spring and later summer trip into the interior of Grinnell Land, discovering Lake Hazen, some sixty by ten miles in extent, which, fed by ice-caps of North Grinnell Land, drains Ruggles River and Weyprecht Fiord into Conybeare Bay and Archer Fiord. From the summit of Mount Arthur, 5000 feet, the contour of land west of the Conger Mountains convinced me that Grinnell Land travels directly south from Lieutenant Aldrich's furthest in 1876.

"In 1883 Lieutenant Lockwood and Sergeant Brainerd succeeded in crossing Grinnell Land, and ninety miles from Beatrix Bay, the head of Archer Fiord, struck the head of a fiord from the western sea, temporarily named by Lockwood the Greely Fiord. From the centre of the fiord, in latitude $80^{\circ} 30'$, longitude $78^{\circ} 30'$, Lieutenant Lockwood saw the northern shore termination, some twenty miles west, the southern shore extending some

fifty miles, with Cape Lockwood some seventy miles distant—apparently a separate land from Grinnell Land. Have named the new land Arthur Land. Lieutenant Lockwood followed, going and returning, on an ice cape averaging about one hundred and fifty feet perpendicular face. It follows that the Grinnell Land interior is ice-capped, with a belt of country some sixty miles wide between the northern and southern ice-capes.

"In March, 1884, Sergeant Long, while hunting from the northwest side of Mount Carey to Hayes Sound, saw on the northern coast three capes westward of the furthest seen by Nares in 1876. The sound extends some twenty miles further west than is shown by the English chart, but is possibly shut in by land which showed up across the western end.

"The two years' station duties, observations, all explorations, and the retreat to Cape Sabine, were accomplished without loss of life, disease, serious accident, or even severe frost-bites. No scurvy was experienced at Conger, and but one death occurred from it last winter."

This dispatch merely outlines the discoveries made, the importance of which can only be estimated when a fuller description is given. The latitude attained by Lockwood and

Brainerd is four miles further north than any previous explorer ever reached. This remote point was the summit of Lockwood Island, which is 2000 feet above the sea, affording a wonderful and awe-inspiring view. The awful panorama of the Arctic expanse, which their elevation spread out before them, made a profound impression upon the explorers. The exultation natural to the achievement which they had accomplished was tem-



SCENE IN THE ARCTIC ICE FIELDS.

pered by the reflections inspired by the sublime desolation of that stern and silent coast and the menace of its unbroken solitude. Beyond to the eastward was the interminable defiance of the unexplored coast—bleak, cold, and repellent. Below them lay the Arctic Ocean, buried beneath frozen chaos. No words can describe the confusion of this sea of ice—the hopeless asperity of it, the weariness of its torn and tortured surface. Only at the remote horizon did distance and the fallen snow mitigate its roughness and soften its outlines; and beyond it in the yet unattainable recesses of the great circle they looked toward the Pole itself.

It was a wonderful sight, one never to be forgotten, and in some degree a realization of the picture that astronomers conjure to themselves when the moon is nearly full and they look down into the great plain which is called the Ocean of Storms, and watch the shadows of sterile and airless peaks follow in slow procession across its silver surface.

When further progress northward was barred by open water, and the party almost miraculously escaped drifting into the Polar Sea, Lieutenant Lockwood erected, at the highest point of latitude thus far reached by civilized man, a pyramidal-shaped cache of stone, six feet square at the base, and eight or nine feet high. In a little chamber about a

foot square, half-way to the apex, and extending to the centre of the pile, he placed a self-recording spirit thermometer, a small tin cylinder containing records of the expedition, etc., and then sealed up the aperture with a closely fitting stone. The cache was surmounted with a small American flag made by Mrs. Greely. There were but thirteen stars in the field, as Mrs. Greely, finding the work rather wearing, had concluded to limit the stars to the number of the old Revolutionary flag.

This high latitude was attained on the thirteenth of May, which hereafter will remain a memorable date, and the event will find record in all future works on Arctic geography. Parry, in 1827, reached latitude 79° ; Kane, $80^{\circ} 30'$ in 1854; Hayes, $81^{\circ} 30'$ in 1861; Hall, $82^{\circ} 16'$ in 1871; and Nares, $83^{\circ} 20'$ in 1876. These latitudes are given approximately. Lieutenant Lockwood stopped at latitude $83^{\circ} 24'$, but saw and computed $83^{\circ} 35'$, which most northern land now known he called Cape Robert Lincoln. The journey to and from this point occupied fifty-nine days. It would seem from accounts of it that even at a temperature of minus sixty-one degrees hares, lemmings, ptarmigan, snow-birds, snowy owls, polar bears, musk-oxen, and even vegetation exist and thrive. Grinnell Land was quite thoroughly explored. Lake Hazen, of either 600 or 3700 square miles area (the dispatches are contradictory), was discovered therein. It would be interesting to know more of this fresh-water body and its inhabitants, if any. Nordenskjöld discovered that late in the summer great rivers, formed of melted ice, with icy beds and banks, make travel in the north impossible without small boats. Lake Hazen is described as being fed by streams from the ice-cap of northern Grinnell Land, emptying into Weyprecht Fiord. It was discovered in April, when some open water was seen. Had the time been August a much larger sized lake, fed by innumerable large and swift-flowing rivers, would have been found. This lake, named after General Hazen, is the most northern fresh-water body on the globe, one-fourth the size of Lake Erie. Lying contiguously to it, and parallel with the United States Mountains, were two ranges named after Senator Conger and the late President Garfield. The highest land in the latter range, and indeed of all the country north of Disco Bay, was named Arthur Peak, which is 5000 feet in height.

On the shores of Lake Hazen the remains of an Esquimaux village were found, apparently the most northern habitation attempted by the Esquimaux. Here were evidences of possession by this people of dogs, sledges, and iron. It would argue that at no distant period there was a beautiful valley about the lake, with an abundance of vegetation and game.

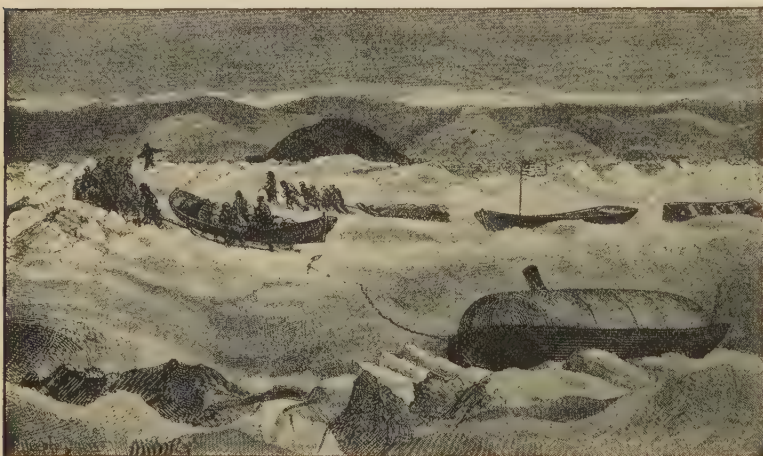
That the rigors of the most northern climate are slowly advancing south is evidenced by the gradual retreat of the Esquimaux. From this high latitude they have been forced several degrees, and that for no lack of game. Add to this the migration of Icelanders to Manitoba, after becoming hereditarily inured to the climate through an ancestry dating back a thousand years. Of late the ice-flow south has been increasing, until in 1894 it exceeded the combined fields of any three years known, and has continued its encroachment upon warmer latitudes ever since.

It is relevant to note that in 1824 Scandinavian seal-men found an open winter, the snow melting as it fell. Kane, in the winter of 1851, recorded an average temperature of about minus 5° . The *Polaris* expedition during the winter of 1872-73 experienced a temperature of minus 40° . Dr. Hall asserts that the mercury froze. Lieutenant Greely, ten years later, records a mean thermometer of minus 41° , with a maximum of minus $62\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ —the lowest yet noted.

During their sojourn in the Arctic regions the Greely party was subjected to a most salutary discipline. During the long Arctic night the explorers lived in a house within a house. They breakfasted at eight, lunched lightly at eleven a. m. and nine p. m., and dined at four. Observations were taken daily in meteorology, astronomy, magnetism, sea temperatures, ice thicknesses, tidal motion, and velocity of sound at different temperatures. Military discipline, one hour's exercise per day, and a weekly bath were required of all. The living apartments were kept clean. National holidays were observed with an extra dinner, and an interchange of presents on Christmas. Thus the dread disease of scurvy, which wore out two ship's crews for Nares, was prevented, and a fairly contented life enjoyed.

The men were allowed to grow full beard, except under the mouth, where it was clipped short. They wore knitted mittens, and over these heavy seal-skin mittens were drawn, connected by a tanned seal-skin string that passed over the neck, to hold them when the hands were slipped out. Large tanned-leather pockets were fastened outside the jackets, and in very severe weather jerseys were sometimes worn over the jackets for greater protection against the intense cold.

On the sledge journeys the dogs were harnessed in a fan-shaped group to the traces, and were never run tandem. In traveling, the men were accustomed to hold on to the back of the sledge, never going in front of the team, and often took off their heavy overcoats and threw them on the load.



ABANDONMENT OF THE LADY GREELY.

The instructions issued by the government, by which Greely was to be controlled in the possibility of his having to retreat from Fort Conger, read as follows :

"In case no vessel reaches the permanent station in 1882, the vessel sent in 1883 will remain in Smith's Sound until there is danger of closing by ice, and on leaving will land all her supplies and a party at Littleton Island, which party will be prepared for a winter's stay, and will be instructed to send sledge parties up the east side of Grinnell Land to meet this party. If not visited in 1882, Lieutenant Greely will abandon his station not later than September 1, 1883, and will retreat southward by boat, following closely the east coast of Grinnell Land until the relieving vessel is met or Littleton Island is reached."

In accordance with these instructions, after spending two years at Fort Conger, Greely abandoned the station, August 9, 1883, and started, with his entire party, all of whom were in excellent health, for Cape Sabine, which they reached after a dreadful journey of two months' duration.

On reaching Cape Sabine, Lieutenant Garlington's record of the loss of the *Proteus* (which will be described hereafter) was discovered, and the poor fellows then learned that another winter, on short allowance, was before them. For eight months, between October 21, when the camp was established, and June 22, it seems Greely and his followers had only

the scant allowance of food brought with them from Fort Conger; some supplies, much damaged, cached in 1875 by Sir George Nares at two or three points passed on the retreat; a small amount saved from the *Proteus* in 1882 (July 23), and landed by Lieutenants Garlington and Colwell on the beach.

CHAPTER II.

The march from Fort Conger to Cape Sabine was replete with intense suffering and narrow escapes. Upon reaching Baird Inlet, on the twenty-ninth of September, Greely had to abandon his boats, and was adrift for thirty days on an ice-floe in Smith's Sound. By rare good luck they were driven upon Cape Sabine on the thirty-first of October, 1883. A permanent camp was established here, and named Camp Clay, in honor of a nephew of the great statesman, who accompanied the expedition to Disco Island, but returned on the *Proteus*. They expected relief to reach them at this point, according to the promises made in the instructions from the government. Littleton Island is just across the sound from Camp Clay, but owing to violent gales and ice they were unable to make a crossing.

All the provisions brought with them from Fort Conger were fairly exhausted before the expedition reached Sabine Cape, so that when they went into camp, it was with the gloomiest prospects possible before them. An occasional auk was killed, but very few were secured, as they usually fell in the water, where they could not be recovered, all the boats having been lost. Seals, walrus, and ducks were plentiful and continually sporting in the sea before them as if to tempt and aggravate their hunger, for none of these could have been secured if killed. Their deplorable situation was rapidly destroying the minds of the men, weakened by the lack of food and strained by despair, and Greely realized the increasing necessity of securing relief at all hazards or giving up to fate. As a last resource, in which there was but the least gleam of hope, on November 2 he detailed Corporal Joseph Elison and three others to attempt recovery of the beef cached by Captain Nares at Cape Isabella in 1879, distant thirty miles from camp. The weather at the time was terrible, but the threatened starvation made it absolutely necessary to obtain the food if possible. Sergeants Rice and Linn, and Privates Fredericks and Elison started with a daily ration of four ounces of meat, eight ounces of bread, a little tea, and five ounces of alcohol for cooking purposes, with the temperature 35° below zero, the wind strong, the snow soft, and the ice hummocky. In four days they had reached the cached meat and were on their return journey on the morning of November 6. They had left their rations and sleeping-bags at Cape Isabella, where they had encamped on the ice, and started with only a cup of tea, intending to subsist on the frozen meat and save the extra weight of sleeping-bags, provisions, and cooking-gear. They also intended to use the wooden barrels for fuel, and thus save their alcohol, and return to the ice camp for dinner. On their return Elison suffered with thirst and began to eat snow, against the orders and advice of the others. His hands and mitts became wet, and, as a northwest gale was blowing, his hands were soon frozen. The snow had also caused his mouth and tongue to blister and he rapidly became weak. The men hurried into camp and then discovered that Elison had also frozen his feet. They cut his boots off and put him into the sleeping-bag, and restored the circulation in his hands and feet by friction. After a terrible night they continued on their journey with the

**INDESCRIBABLE
SUFFERING.**

**POOR ELISON'S
AGONY.**

temperature at 25° below zero. Elison was unable to help haul the load, which had been increased by their sleeping-bags and camp gear. His hands and feet were soon frozen, and Fredericks was obliged to help him along. Rice and Linn struggled manfully with the sled, but the whole party was soon forced by exhaustion to go into camp. The men passed another horrible night. They had no tent and their sleeping-bags were frozen so stiff that it required an hour's work to unroll them. The men gradually worked themselves into their bags as the heat of their bodies thawed them out. A strong wind, drifting snow, and their exhaustion prevented them from restoring the circulation in their frozen companion. Words cannot describe the horrors of that night. When they broke camp they were obliged to abandon the meat or their companion, and they chose the former. Elison, noble fellow, begged them to leave him to die and save their meat and his starving companions. They left the meat cached on the ice and also a rifle as a mark, and pushed ahead to Esquima Point, where they could secure shelter in their old camp. After reaching the camp they worked from seven in the evening until three in the morning, and partially restored the



THE MARCH TO CAPE SABINE.

strayed from the road. His hands and feet were frozen and he was scarcely able to see. His cheeks and nose were also frozen. The men took turns at leading and helping him, while two hauled the sled. At last it required all three at the ropes, and they tied Elison's arms to the back of the sled and hauled him in that way. His legs were stiff

COMRADESHIP and he would frequently fall and be dragged several yards before his
OF RARE FIDELITY. cries were heard. Linn began to fail, and it was decided that Rice should push ahead while Fredericks remained with Elison and Linn. Rice, with a little frozen beef, started for assistance. The other men remained in their sleeping-bags twenty-four hours, when Sergeant Brainerd reached them and gave them some hot tea and soup and started back to hurry up the relief party, which arrived ten hours later. Lieutenant Lockwood and Dr. Pavy hauled Elison into camp, Fredericks and Linn walking. Elison's feet were frozen beyond cure and all his fingers and thumbs were lost. Linn never fully recovered from the exposure. Rice was unable to move for a day, and Fredericks was prostrated for two days. Elison was carefully cared for and lived through the whole winter, receiving the best of rations and more than the others, and only died on July 8. His

circulation in Elison's hands and feet. They dried his clothes and made him warm tea, the only warm food they had been able to secure, the wind preventing them from lighting a fire. Early the next day Elison was able to walk, and was sent ahead while the others packed and hauled the sled. They soon overtook him, he having

joy at his rescue and his terrible suffering were more than his weakened constitution could stand.

This calamitous failure to bring the meat from Isabella Camp plunged the already despairing party into more wretched woe; their few stores, though portioned out in exceedingly small quantities, grew less until they were at last reduced to a soup made of boiled seal-skins, boots cut up fine and mixed with reindeer moss, rock lichens and small shrimps. They also made tea from the saxifrage and arctic willow, but in all this unpalatable and indigestible mixture there was very little nourishment, for the shrimps, which contained most substance, were least in quantity, as they were so small that it required more than 1000 to weigh a pound, and the men were too weak to catch them. Famine stalked into the camp at length and began pointing its bony finger at the victims. Still, discipline was fairly maintained among the starving men. The rule of the camp was to allow no man to sleep longer than two hours at a time, this precaution being necessary to prevent torpor and death, the usual accompaniments of intense cold. The men were awakened only by rough means and were then made to shake themselves, and beat and stamp their feet to restore circulation, for it must be remembered that no fuel was procurable, and that there was nothing but alcohol left to cook with.

In calamities such as now had overtaken the Greely party, stern character and heroism must become conspicuous; when death sits in judgment, the accused, if faint-hearted, is sure to quail, but there are others who will not cringe with obsequious fear, even before the monster though he were a thousand times blacker **HEROISM OF ELISON.** than Dante painted him. What better example of the heroic can be found than in the character of Joseph Elison, begging his companions to leave him to die, that they might thereby be enabled to reach their starving comrades with meat!

On the other hand, the conduct of Charles B. Henry, in stealing rations from his fellow-sufferers, shows the weaker side of human nature, at a time when only the more heroic qualities are expected to manifest themselves. But let us remember that the pangs of excessive hunger, which had disordered the brain and enfeebled the frame, rendered these men scarcely responsible for their acts, and in considering the resorts to which they were forced at last, let it be with charity.

Starvation was setting its seal fast on the party; to save himself, Private Henry forgot his duty to his suffering comrades, and as early as November 1 he began stealing provisions from the scanty store. At first he was not suspected, though there was a suspicion that theft had been committed, and a threat was made by the men to kill any one they might detect in such an act.

On January 24 the party was near perishing from asphyxia, and several of its members became unconscious. Private Henry, during this terrible experience, was seen by one of the Esquimaux to steal some of the bacon from the stores. He soon afterwards was taken ill from overloading his stomach, and vomited up bacon undigested. Investigation was had, and Henry proved guilty, not only of this, but of several previous thefts. It was a terrible state of affairs. Henry's indignant comrades demanded his death. Over and over again he promised to reform, but this did not still the clamor for his life. Lieutenant Greely remonstrated with the men, and all were quieted.

Taking Henry in hand, Lieutenant Greely represented to him the immensity of his offence, and pointed out to him the necessity for concentrated action in the party if all would be saved. He was then placed under guard for several weeks, until increasing feebleness of the other members of the party rendered it necessary for them to avail

themselves of his personal services. Shortly afterward he stole liquor from the stores and became intoxicated. Again his comrades clamored for his life, and again Lieutenant Greely restrained them. June 5 he again stole and carried away some of the provisions.

Lieutenant Greely spoke firmly to him, and told him it would be policy for **AN APPEAL** him to stop. Said the Lieutenant, "For God's sake, Henry, as you seem to **TO MANHOOD.** have no moral sense, remember our lives depend upon our holding together!"

With great earnestness Henry promised not to be guilty of theft again. But Lieutenant Greely felt he could not trust him. After revolving in his mind their circumstances he, on his own responsibility, issued a written order, now in possession of one of the survivors, commanding that Henry be shot on sight of the commission of any more thefts of food. At this time the party had left, as a last resort, only pieces of seal-skin and such shrimps as they could procure. About June 6, Henry went to the old winter quarters at Camp Clay, near Cape Sabine, and stole some of the last seal-skin, which was the only food left. He also took the last pair of boots in store. Being closely questioned by Lieutenant Greely, he admitted his guilt. He was again ready with promises to do better.

His fate was upon him. He was, in the afternoon of that day, a little distance at the rear of the summer quarters, alone by himself. The written order for his execution was committed to three of the party. They were ordered to shoot him, encounter-

THE SHOOTING ing as little danger to themselves as possible, as Henry was the strongest **OF HENRY.** of the party. Sadly the men departed on their terrible errand. Their comrades, left in the camp, turned their eyes to the ocean. In a few minutes the

breeze bore to their ears the sound of two pistol shots. All was then silent. Slowly, after a short interval, the men returned. The written order was handed to Lieutenant Greely, and the horrible, but necessary, execution was over. Henry was never again seen alive.

The order for the execution was that afternoon read to the survivors, and all concurred in the justice and necessity of the act, official report of which was made by Greely upon his return to the adjutant-general. It was a terrible thing to order the execution of a comrade who had borne with them the sufferings of an Arctic winter without food or shelter, but the party could not allow their sympathies to affect justice at the sacrifice of **DEATH BY** their own lives. The death of Henry was an inexorable necessity.

STARVATION. Starvation and cold had destroyed several of the party before Henry was executed, and after January 1, 1884, the death rate was appalling. Seventeen of the original twenty-five persons composing the expedition perished of starvation, the names of the dead recovered, with date of death, being as follows:

Sergeant Cross, January 1, 1884; Wedenck, an Esquimaux, April 5; Sergeant Linn, April 6; Lieutenant Lockwood, April 9; Sergeant Jewell, April 12; Private Ellis, May 19; Sergeant Ralston, May 23; Private Whistler, May 24; Sergeant Israel, May 27; Private Henry, June 6; and Private Schneider, June 18. The names of the dead buried in the ice-foot, with the date of death (bodies not recovered), are as follows: Sergeant Rice, April 6, 1884; Private Bender, June 6; Acting Assistant Sergeant Pavy, June 6; and Sergeant Gardiner, June 12.

Jans Edwards, one of Greely's faithful Esquimaux, while trying to harpoon a seal, broke through some newly formed ice on April 18 and was drowned. In the list of fatalities appears the name of Lieutenant Lockwood, to whose energies and ambitious daring the United States owes the honor of having its standard planted nearer the North Pole than that of any other nation to that time. How we should have rejoiced at his return, and with gladness given him the welcome of a hero!

The death of Sergeant Rice, photographer of the Greely expedition, which occurred April 6, was even more tragic than that of Sergeant Ellison. The detail of men sent to Cape Isabella to bring supplies from the cache there were forced to abandon their loaded sledge on the return, as previously related. **DEATH OF SERGEANT RICE.** Pen cannot picture the disappointment felt by those in the miserable camp when they saw the party return without food and dragging the almost lifeless body of Ellison instead. They gave a true report of their misfortunes, of having been compelled to abandon the meat brought from Cape Isabella, about fifteen miles from camp, in order to save their companion from certain death. Starvation was now so near at hand that Sergeants Rice and Fredericks volunteered to bring the meat, which involved a journey of thirty miles through deep snow and a temperature of 40° to 60° below zero.

It was, at best, with them a struggle for life, so the two heroes set out for the deserted meat, weakened by the insufficient food which they had so long been compelled to subsist upon, but strong in heart and purpose. They took with them a sledge, rifle and hatchet, and provisions for a five days' journey, which allowance would force them to march at least six miles a day, a thing extremely difficult to do under the circumstances.

For three days the two brave fellows traveled, but without being able to find the meat, as it was, no doubt, now covered with snow. Enfeebled by scanty diet, and exhausted by excessive cold and exposure, Sergeant Rice was seized with a blood-flux, which so rapidly sapped his little remaining strength, that he speedily succumbed and died in his companion's arms.

The horror of this moment to Sergeant Fredericks is beyond description; alone in that awful field of sheeted desolation, with death clinging to his very bosom. The spirit of mercy seemed never to have even cast eyes upon that horrible wilderness of woeful destitution, and all nature had apparently shunned the bleak expanse. Yet here was one of God's noblest creatures, battling the fiercest tide of misery, with death only for companionship—and lost! Poor Fredericks camped out alone that night, and stayed beside his dead comrade until he could dig a grave in the frozen earth with his hatchet, in which he interred with reverent respect the remains of a brave man, a noble friend, and a generous brother.

The profound grief felt at the loss of his comrade nerved Fredericks to greater effort, by suppressing hunger and cold, under his acute sufferings of heart. The little store of provisions, from which only one mouth was now to be fed, was drawn from more generously, and supplied strength and renewed hope, so that after three more days of wandering over the frozen plains, Fredericks at length found the camp again. His return without food plunged the party into despair, for the star of hope appeared now to have set forever.



MIDNIGHT IN THE POLAR WORLD.

No one is able to decide what desperate resources should be availed of in dire extremity. There are recorded in the pages of history such extraordinary experiences in efforts to stay the ravages of starvation that, though we may recoil with disgust at such loathsome practices, we are none the better prepared to declare that under similar circumstances we should have been more circumspect or humane. The eating of snakes, bugs, worms, and reptiles of every species has frequently occurred, all shocking enough to our well-fed senses, but these must be forgotten in the recollection of well-authenticated cases which we have of cannibalism.

An English officer, during a successful campaign in the East, many years ago, expressed a wish for a well-cooked boar's head. On the following day his table was graced with what was represented to him as a native dish of the food that he desired, prepared with especial care by one of the most noted cooks of India. The officer ate with unusual relish, not neglecting to bestow most extravagant praise on the manner of cooking, and begged that the recipe for preparing boar's head might be given him. The reader may imagine his horror when the Englishman afterward received incontestable proof that he had dined off a slave's head, who had been killed for the purpose, instead of a boar, no such animal being known in that country.

It is, therefore, the loathsome thought, rather than any disagreeable in taste, which makes the very heart sick in contemplating a repast on human flesh. Who can say that this disgust is not banished by overpowering hunger, like mirages of crystal waters rise before the vision of those suffering from thirst?

Is it really a matter for wonder that the Greely party, cast away and lost among the ice-crag and pitiless snows of a perpetual wilderness; freezing, starving, dying, with minds distorted by acute suffering, where all nature howled a requiem of despair, and desolation swept round their tattered tents like a ghoul hunting for victims; is it wonderful that, under such desperate circumstances, the surviving members of the Greely party should relieve their famine on the pulseless bodies of those lying under the snow? Self-preservation being, in truth, the first law of nature, every one must answer, "No."

The sense of shame—civilization's most enduring mark—did not abandon these brave men even in the last hour of their dreadful trial, for as hunger drove them to break their fast upon their dead comrades, they waited until the still watches of night and crept in half-bent attitudes to where the bodies lay; then scraping back nature's winding-sheet, they began the butchery. From arms, legs, and bodies the pale flesh was stripped with keen blades and devoured as only starving men can devour; but that, for grace, God was asked to look down with pity and forgiveness, we cannot doubt. Let us draw a veil of charity over this sad and wretched scene.

CHAPTER III.

During all the years that Greely was carrying out instructions and battling for honor and life, he was not forgotten by our government or people. In 1882 a relief expedition was fitted out, according to promise, and dispatched for Littleton Island by the steamer *Neptune*. The relief party left St. John's with a large quantity of supplies July 8, but on July 29, following, found an impassable barrier of ice extending from Cape Sabine to Cape

Inglesfield, and after waiting until September 5 for an opening in the pack (never being able to penetrate it further than latitude $79^{\circ} 20'$) returned to St. John's, warned by the formation of new ice, which was five inches thick, that the attempt to reach the colony must be deferred until another season. The *Neptune* left a few stores cached at Beebe, which is near the point selected on Littleton Island, and then hastened back to St. John's to escape the ice which was rapidly moving down. One year later, June 28, 1883, another relief expedition, consisting of the steamer *Proteus* and whaler *Yantic*, sailed, commanded by Lieutenants Garlington and Conwell, for Fort Conger, hoping to reach that far north and distribute supplies from that point at the several caches southward to Cape Sabine. This expedition met with swift disaster, for a few miles above Cape Sabine the *Proteus* was caught in the ice and crushed like an eggshell. The crew barely escaped with their lives onto the ice, and were picked up by the *Yantic*, which returned with them to St. John's, thus marking a conspicuous failure.

The loss of the *Proteus* brought to light a most serious blunder. The landing of her stores at Littleton Island, or Cape Sabine, at the mouth of Smith Sound, before the ship herself encountered the perils of a heavy pack north of Cape Sabine, was of the utmost importance. Prudent Arctic navigators, under similar circumstances, have always endeavored to secure the safety of their food supply by getting the bulk of it on solid land as soon as possible after reaching their base of operations, and before running the extreme risk which is necessarily involved in an attempt to penetrate any part of the great Polar pack. The experienced Arctic navigator, Leigh Smith, on his last voyage to Franz Josef Land, took the precaution to put a large part of his provisions ashore at the very earliest possible moment, so as not to be entirely at the mercy of the ice. The wisdom of this course was demonstrated only a few days later by the crushing and sinking of his ship. If the bulk of the *Proteus'* stores and the ready-made house which she had on board had been landed in this way on Littleton Island or on Cape Sabine as soon as the ship reached either of these points, it would not have been necessary for Lieutenant Garlington to seek safety at Upernavik, 800 miles away, and the lives of Lieutenant Greely's party would not have been sacrificed after their arrival where they had a right to expect to find food and shelter.

The ill results of the *Neptune* and *Proteus* expeditions did not wholly stifle public interest in the relief of Greely, though it did give rise to a pretty general impression that any further attempts would be an unjustifiable waste of public money.

It may be safely asserted that not one person in a thousand believed Greely or any of his men had survived the winter of 1883-84, since it was known, from the instructions given him before sailing, that he must be traveling toward Cape Sabine destitute of provisions, and therefore must have perished. Nevertheless, the few who still believed or hoped that the party might yet be relieved, had sufficient influence to induce the government to make another effort to reach the explorers.

Congress appropriated an ample sum for the purpose, and the preparations for a third relief expedition were made with the utmost care. The English Government, which had taken very great interest in Greely, made an unconditional tender to the United States of the good steamer *Alert*, to assist in the search, a gift that evidenced the warm sympathy felt in England for the lost explorers. This steamer was the advance ship of Sir George Nares' expedition in 1875, and was specially fitted for voyaging amid ice-floes and icebergs. The United States purchased two other vessels, the *Thetis* and *Bear*, both of which, however, were much smaller than the *Alert*, but were strongly built and well suited for such service as they were now to be used for. These ships were brought to America and

THE THIRD RELIEF EXPEDITION

specially fitted for their voyage, being strengthened by every appliance and means known to modern engineering, while the comfort of the crews was equally provided for.

The command of the expedition was given to Captain W. S. Schley, who was placed in immediate charge of the *Thetis*, while Lieutenant Emory was given command of the *Bear*, and Commander Coffin assigned to the *Alert*. Enlistment of volunteers for the voyage was then begun, and the list of 140 men all told was completed by the middle of April, 1884. No other expedition was ever so well equipped for an Arctic voyage as this one, and great expectations were aroused in consequence. Previous to starting Commander Schley issued the following order to Lieutenant Emory:

"Should you receive any information before my arrival that Lieutenant Greely's party, or any of them, have come as far south as Littleton Island, you are to seek the earliest occasion to reach them. This fact you will report to me in a communication to be left at Disco or Upernavik, or both places. Should you not hear at Disco or Upernavik of Greely or his party having reached Littleton Island, you may proceed beyond Upernavik, but you will not, under any circumstances, advance into Smith Sound until one of the other vessels of the Greely relief expedition shall arrive at Littleton Island."



"ALERT" AND "THETIS" BREAKING THROUGH AN ICE PACK.

off Cape York, and being now in a region where they might hope to find traces of the Greely party, colors were hoisted to attract attention. On Sunday, the twenty-second, both ships arrived at Cape Sabine and made fast to the ice, and parties were landed to scour the hills for records.

The *Bear's* steam launch whistled at frequent intervals, hoping thereby to attract the attention of either the Greely party or Esquimaux, should there be any in the neighborhood. It happened that the welcome sound fell upon the ears of

THE RESCUE. Sergeants Brainerd and Long as they lay in their torn and tattered tent, only able to stir out by joint assistance. When Long got clear of the entanglement of the tent, which had been swept to the ground, he rose to his feet with great difficulty, and succeeded in clambering up to a rock that gave the most extensive view in that neighborhood. Brainerd went back to the tent, but Long remained, looking out searchingly in every direction for some hopeful sign. At length he saw the unwonted sight of a large black object about a mile distant, which at first looked like a rock, but he knew there was no rock in that line. Suddenly the advancing steam launch changed its course, and Long recognized the approach of the rescuers. He came down from the rock,

went toward the camp, raised the flag-pole and flag, which had been blown down during a gale, and held it for about two minutes, until his strength gave out, and it was blown once more to the ground.

The look-out from the steam launch had spied Long, and under a full head of steam drove through bursting billows with all possible speed toward the nearest point for landing, while Long tottered in the direction of the little vessel, falling at every few paces from sheer weakness, but rising again under the stimulating influence of hope, until at length, when within nearly half a mile of the place where the tug had landed, he fell into the arms of Captain Ash, who was the first of the relief party to reach him. Brainerd was too weak to follow, and had to remain by the tent, where he prayed that the hope which had suddenly sprung into being might not prove the delusive dream of a chaotic mind. Captain Ash pushed on quickly toward the tent, with Commander Schley and five men, upon reaching which a sight met their gaze that beggars description.

**HORRIBLE SIGHT OF THE
GREELY CAMP.**

Camp Clay, into which Lieutenant Greely and his entire party moved on November 1, 1883, was situated about five miles west of Cape Sabine, in a little cove, about the same distance from Cocked Hat Island. This site was selected because it was near the scattered provisions that they found there, and because there were plenty of small rocks near by with which to build the house, the party being too weak to transport them from any distance. There was also a small lake, which supplied them with water up to the middle of February. In May the party moved into the tent, at the place where they were found, on a slight elevation overlooking the former camp, and about two hundred and fifty yards to the eastward of it. This change was made owing to the summer thaw setting in and washing out their winter quarters.

The scene about the entire camp was one of the most wretched imaginable. Quantities of debris, old clothes, cans, camp utensils—everything but fuel and food—covered the ground. Valuable chronometers, barometers, and other meteorological instruments were strewn about, showing the disregard that the poor fellows had come to have at the last for anything but life. The tent was an army wall-tent, nine by nine feet, and was pitched with its opening to the northeast.

The first words that gave signs of life to the rescuing party were those of Greely, who said, in a feeble voice, "Cut the tent." The front and western sides had blown down, and the poles were lying across three of the party, who were stretched out in their sleeping-bags, entirely too weak to lift the burden off. They had been in this condition sixty-two hours. Forty-eight hours more was the most that any of the party thought they could have survived under the circumstances.

**A FEEBLE CRY,
FAINT WITH HUNGER.**

The winter house was twenty-five by seventeen feet, with walls of small rocks, about six inches in thickness, piled to a height of three feet. Over the centre was laid the *Neptune's* whale-boat, forming a ridge pole, and canvas was stretched across this for a roof. Blocks of snow were banked on the outside to keep out the wind. The door was on the south side, and was about two-and-a-half by three feet, with a covered tunnel of the same size, running out about twenty-five feet. There were no windows, and their only source of light during the dark, dreary winter nights was an Esquimaux blubber-lamp. At the best it was a wretched hovel.

The report of the captain, Winfield Scott Schley, of the expedition under his command for the relief of the Greely party, was submitted to the Secretary of the Navy,

October 21, 1884. It cites the orders under which the expedition was organized, and then enters upon a graphic narrative of the events of the voyage. Early in the evening of June 7, the ships *Thetis* and *Bear* reached Duck Islands, which locality Commander Schley terms "a desired outpost for advance into the more perilous dangers of Melville Bay." Violent gales, snow storms, and dense fogs now prevailed, delaying further progress until the morning of June 11, when, open water having been observed through rifts in the fog to the northwest, the lines were cast off and the voyage was resumed.

The usual perils of Arctic navigation were experienced upon the northward journey from this point. Constant and anxious watch was kept for opportunities to make headway.



THE MIDNIGHT SUN.

Mile by mile a way was forced around obstructions and through dangerous and tortuous leads until, on the morning of June 18, the neighborhood of Cape York was reached. Here communication was opened with the natives, but no tidings of Greely's party could be obtained. Littleton Island was reached on June 21, up to which time

FIRST SIGHT OF THE STARVING PARTY. nothing had been heard of the objects of the search. The passage across to Payer Harbor was made on the afternoon of the twenty-second, during a heavy gale, and the vessels were moored to the ice-foot with ice-anchors. Parties were started at once to visit the cairns and caches at this point, in order that no opportunity should be lost to push northward if no tidings of Greely were to be obtained.

Soon cheers were heard above the roaring winds by those on shipboard, but could not be located accurately. In a few minutes, seaman Yewell made his appearance, almost out of breath, and reported that Greely and his party were at Cape Sabine. He brought and delivered to Commander Schley records found by Lieutenant Taunt in a cairn on Brevoort Island. The records had been chiefly prepared by Lieutenant Greely in person and were found to bear dates of eight and nine months previous. The latest paper, written Sunday, October 21, 1883, was as follows:

"My party is now permanently in camp on the west side of a small neck of land which connects the wreck cache cove, and the one to its west, distant about equally from Cape Sabine and Cocked Hat Island. All well."

Shortly after Yewell's arrival, Ensign Harlow signaled from Stalknecht Island: "Send five men. I have found all Greely's records, instruments, etc."

Lieutenant Colwell was now instructed to proceed to the wreck camp cache, and if any of the party were alive, to inform them that their relief was at hand. Commander Schley followed in the *Bear*, leaving the *Thetis* with instructions to pick up the remaining searching parties, and then follow the *Bear*.

As the steam cutter reached the wreck camp cache, Lieutenant Colwell and Ice-Masters Ash and Norman discovered Sergeant Long reclining on the rocks. Taking him into the cutter, and learning from him the location of the camp, they went to it and announced to Lieutenant Greely the coming of relief. Ice-Master Norman returned to the steam cutter from the camp and took Long off at once to the *Bear*. Long was too weak to get on board himself, and was carried up the side by the crew and placed on a chair in the saloon. Full particulars having been learned from him in a few moments, Commander Schley, with Lieutenant Emory, Ensign Reynolds, Dr. Ames and several of the crew of the *Bear*, went ashore and reached Greely's camp about nine p. m. Lieutenant Colwell now reported that he found the tent, covering the party, blown down on them and that he had partially raised it with the assistance of Ash and Norman, and had given the survivors some milk and beef extract. Signal was made to the *Thetis* to send more officers and men with Ensign Harlow and the photographic instruments; also to send clothing, blankets, and stretchers. To this signal Chief Engineer Melville, Dr. Green, Lieutenants Taunt and Lemly, and Ensign Harlow, of the *Thetis*, and Lieutenant Usher, of the *Bear*, responded.

These officers were assigned various duties in connection with the removal of the living and the dead, their effects, etc. The doctors were left to administer stimulants to Lieutenant Greely, Sergeant Elison, Sergeant Brainerd, Hospital-Steward Bierderbick, Sergeant Fredericks and private Connell, who were found alive in this wretched tent. All the survivors except Long were found in the tent, but Brainerd, Bierderbick, and Fredericks subsequently emerged and insisted that they were strong enough to walk to the boat. It required but a short time to demonstrate their mistake, and they, with the others, were carried upon stretchers. By eleven p. m. the survivors were so far strengthened by stimulants that all were removed to the ships—Lieutenant Greely, Sergeant Brainerd, Hospital-Steward Bierderbick, and Private Connell to the *Thetis*; Sergeants Fredericks and Elison to the *Bear*. The gale, which had blown all day, increased to a hurricane during the night. Work with boats, therefore, was both difficult and dangerous. With much difficulty the ships were kept head to the wind. The frequent squalls often drove them off, broadside to, and while in such position, without sail, their rails would be driven almost into the water. Although the shore was distant, at times hardly one hundred feet, the boats would nearly swamp in traversing that short distance.

The work of exhuming the bodies of the dead for transportation to the United States was carried on under the orders of Lieutenant Emory, and so energetically and promptly performed that the ships were able to start for Payer Harbor at four o'clock on the morning of June 23.

Commander Schley describes as follows the impressive scene inside Greely's tent:

"Lieutenant Greely was found in his sleeping bag, his body inclined forward and head resting upon his left hand. The Book of Common Prayer was open and held in his right hand. He appeared to be reading prayers to Private Connell, whose condition was most desperate and critical. He was cold to the waist; all sensation of hunger gone; was speechless and almost breathless; his eyes were fixed and glassy. Indeed, his weakness was such that it was with difficulty he swallowed the stimulants given him by Drs. Green and Ames; his jaws had dropped, his heart was barely pulsating, and his body temperature very low.

"This tender scene of a helpless, almost famished, officer consoling a dying companion, was in itself one that brought tears to the eyes of the strongest and stoutest of those who stood about them on the merciful errand of relief.

"Sergeants Brainerd and Fredericks and Hospital-Steward Bierderbick were extremely weak and hardly able to stand; they were no longer able to venture away from their camp to seek food, nor to prepare the simple diet of boiled seal-skin, nor to collect lichens, nor to catch shrimps, upon which they had to depend to a great extent to sustain life. Their faces, hands, and limbs were swollen to such an extent that they could not be recognized. This indicated that the entire party had but a short lease of life—probably not more than forty-eight hours at most. This fact was recognized by them all, and had come to them from their experience during that long and desolate winter in watching their dying companions, as one after another passed away from among them forever.

"Poor Sergeant Elison was found in his sleeping bag, where he had lain helpless and hopeless for months, with hands and feet frozen off. Strapped to one of the stumps was found a spoon, which some companion had secured there to enable him to feed himself. His physical condition otherwise appeared to be the best of any of the survivors, and this may be attributed to the fact that each of his companions had doled out to him from their small allowance of food something to help him, on account of his complete helplessness to add anything to his own by hunting about the rocks for lichens or shrimps. He suffered no waste of strength by exertion incident thereto. This care of Elison was such as only brave and generous men, suffering with each other under the most desperate circumstances, could think of.

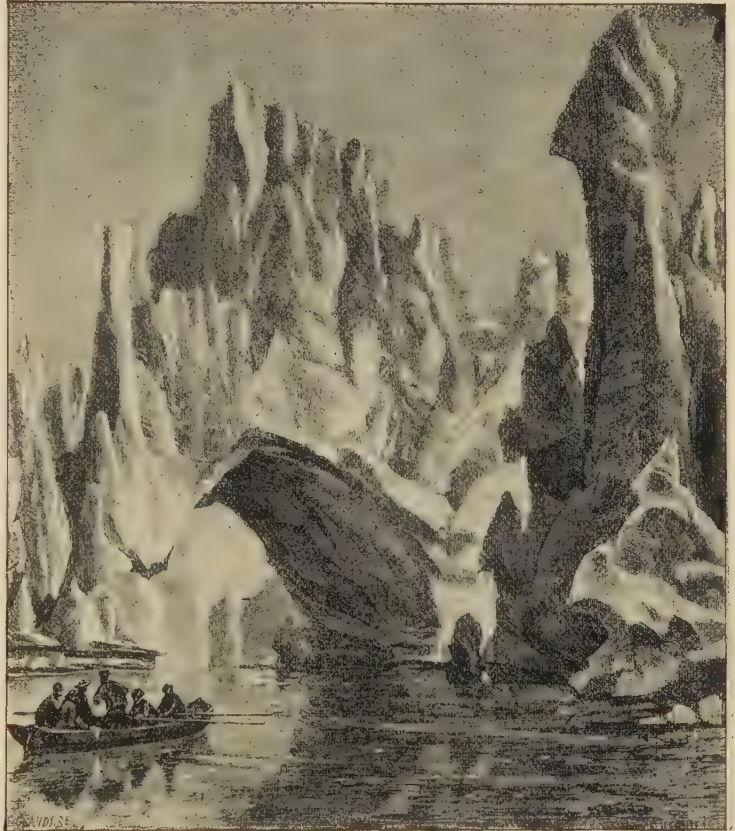
"Sergeant Long was very much reduced, though in somewhat better condition than some of the others. His office of hunter for the starving party had made it necessary to increase slightly his pittance of food to maintain his strength, that he might continue the battle for food and life to the helpless. In his case, however, the effect of this continued effort had told its story in his wasted form. Shorter and shorter journeys were made in good weather, while in the frequent bad weather of that region his strength was so much impaired that when the joyful signal whistle was heard he had only enough left to stagger out to the rocks overlooking the water to see if the signal had proceeded from ships in sight. His first visit was a bitter disappointment, as he saw nothing. A second visit, fifteen minutes later, brought him within fifty yards of the *Bear's* steam-cutter and in view of the relief ships coming around Cape Sabine. When the steam-cutter ran into the beach where Long was seen he rolled down the ice-covered cliff and was taken into the cutter. He informed Lieutenant Colwell that the location of the camp was just over the cliff.

"In the case of Sergeant Elison the medical officers were fearful from the first that his chances of life were very small. As soon as proper food was available and the digestive functions should be re-established fully, the healthful round of blood circulation would begin its distribution of new life to the injured parts, and inflammation would naturally occur. If Elison's strength should increase more rapidly than the inflammation, amputation of the injured parts would perhaps save his life. Several days after his rescue, June 28, Dr. Green reported that Elison was threatened with congestion of the brain. The symptoms increased rapidly until the poor fellow lost his reason. At Godhaven his condition was so critical that the surgeon of the expedition, after consultation, determined to amputate both feet above the ankle as the only chance of life left the sufferer. Disease, however, triumphed, and amid the bleak scenes that had surrounded him for three years in his heroic sacrifice, and within the desolate solitude of that region of everlasting ice and snow, surrounded by his sorrowing comrades, he passed away about 3 a. m. of July 7, three days after the amputation. **AMPUTATION AND DEATH.**

"Lieutenant Greely was physically the weakest, but mentally the most vigorous of his party. He had lain in his sleeping bag for weeks on account of his gradually failing strength. He was unable to stand alone for any length of time, and was almost helpless except in a sitting posture; all pangs of hunger had ceased; his appearance was wild; his hair was long and unkempt; his face and hands were covered with sooty black dirt; his body was scantily covered with worn-out clothes; his form was wasted, his joints were swollen, and his eyes were sunken.

"His first inquiry was if they were not Englishmen, but when he was told that we were his own countrymen, he paused for a moment as if reflecting, then said, 'And I am glad to see you.'

"The condition of his camp was in keeping with the scene inside the tent, desperate and desolate; the bleak barrenness of the spot, over which the wild Arctic bird would not fly, the row of graves on a little ridge, one hundred feet away, with the protruding heads and feet of those lately buried, a sad but silent witness to the daily increasing weakness of the little band of survivors; the deserted winter quarters in the hollow below, with its



ARCHED ICEBERG NEAR CAPE SABINE.

broken wall invaded by the water from the melting snow and ice above it; the dead bodies of two companions stretched on the ice-foot that remained; the wretched apology for cooking utensils improvised by them in their sore distress, hardly deserving the name; **A SAD, SAD PICTURE.** the scattered and worn-out clothes and sleeping bags of the dead; the absence of all food save a few cupfuls of boiled seal-skin scraps; the wild and weird scene of snow, ice, and glaciers overlooking and overhanging this desolate camp, completed a picture as startling as it was impressive. I hope never again in my life to look upon such wretchedness and such destitution. The picture was more startling and more deeply pathetic than I had ever dreamed could be possible. In beholding it I stood for a moment almost unmanned, and then realized that if the expedition had demonstrated any one thing more than another it was that an hour had its value to at least one of that party. Stouter hearts than mine felt full of sorrow. Eyes that had not wept for years were moistened with tears in the solemnity of that precious hour in the lives of that heroic little band of sufferers, until this moment so hopeless and helpless."

A portion of the report is devoted to a detailed description of the exhuming of the dead and the preparation of the bodies for transportation. In reference to the condition of the bodies Commander Schley says:

"In preparing the bodies of the dead for transportation in alcohol to St. John's, it was found that six of them—Lieutenant Kislingbury, Sergeants Jewell and Ralston, Privates Whistler, Henry, and Ellis—had been cut, and the fleshy parts removed to **THE PROOFS OF CANNIBALISM.** a greater or less extent. All other bodies were found intact. When the bodies of the dead were exposed in preparing them the identification was found complete. Some of them could be recognized by aid of a picture taken with us from home; others, whose features had decayed, were identified by other characteristics. I am therefore satisfied that no mistake was made in this important matter, which so impressed us from the beginning."

Maurice Connell was so exhausted by starvation that when found he was delirious and remained wholly unconscious for several days after his rescue. When aroused by the rescuers he wildly exclaimed: "For God's sake, let me die in peace." A transfer of the survivors to the *Thetis* and *Bear*, which lay off shore about three hundred yards, was attended with great difficulty. There was a terrific gale blowing from the southwest. A heavy sea was running and a formidable ice nip was apparently inevitable. Lieutenant Greely and the other six survivors had to be transferred from their camp to a steam launch and whaleboat in their sleeping bags, and while steaming from land to the ships the destruction of the whole party at one time seemed certain. The sea swept furiously over them. At length they were safely placed on board the rescuing squadron, where every possible preparation had been made to insure their recovery.

After removing the survivors, the rescuing party turned their attention to recovering the dead bodies, which lay under the snow and ice, some in marked and others in unmarked graves. Twelve of the victims were dug out of their ice-beds and carried to **UNCOVERING THE DEAD.** the *Thetis*, where they were dressed in becoming winding sheets, preparatory to bringing them back to the green hills of their birth for honored burial. The *Alert* had become separated from her companion vessels in a gale, and was not therefore, present at the recovery, but the three were again united, on the return journey, off Wilcox Head. Upon arriving at Upernavik, July 2, Commander Schley dispatched the *Alert* and her tender, the *Loch Garry*, to Godhaven, while the *Bear* and *Thetis* remained, the former to coal and the latter to shift her broken rudder. At Godhaven the *Alert*

repaired some of her broken machinery, and buried one of the Esquimaux who had accompanied Greely. The vessels started south together on the tenth of July, but on the fifteenth, when off the coast of Newfoundland, the steel barrier which bound the *Alert* and *Loch Garry* together parted three times in a gale, and the former had finally to be cast adrift.

July 17 the *Bear* and *Thetis* dropped anchor off St. John's at 9 a. m., and Commander Schley immediately telegraphed Secretary Chandler the results of his successful search as here given, and also the following further particulars of his voyage :

"The channel between Cape Sabine and Littleton Island did not close, on account of violent gales, all winter, so that 240 rations at the latter point could not be reached. All of Greely's records and all the instruments brought by him from Fort Conger are recovered and are on board. From Hare Island to Smith's Sound I **RAMMING A WAY THROUGH HEAVY ICE.** had a constant and furious struggle with ice in impassable floes. The solid barriers were overcome by watchfulness and patience. No opportunity to advance a mile escaped me, and for several hundred miles the ships were forced to ram their way from lead to lead, through ice varying in thickness from three to six feet, and when rafted much greater.

"The *Thetis* and the *Bear* reached Cape York, June 18, after a passage of twenty-one days in Melville Bay, with two advance ships of a Dundee whaling fleet, and continued to Cape Sabine. Returning seven days later, we fell in with seven others of this fleet off Wostenholme Island, and announced Greely's rescue to them, that they might not be delayed from their fishing grounds nor be tempted into the dangerous Smith's Sound in view of the reward of \$25,000 offered by Congress. Returning across Melville Bay we fell in with the *Alert* and *Loch Garry* off Devil's Thumb, struggling through the ice. Commander Coffin did admirably to get along so far with the transport so early in the season before the opening had occurred. Lieutenant Emory, with the *Bear*, has supported me throughout with great skillfulness and unflinching readiness in accomplishing the great duty of relieving Lieutenant Greely. The Greely party are very much improved since the rescue, but were critical in the extreme when found and for several days after. Forty-eight hours' delay in reaching them would have been fatal to all now living. The season north is late and the coolest for years. Smith's Sound was not open when I left Cape Sabine. The winter about Melville Bay was the most severe for twenty years. This great result is entirely due to the unwearied energy of yourself and the Secretary of War in fitting out this expedition for the work it has the honor of accomplishing.

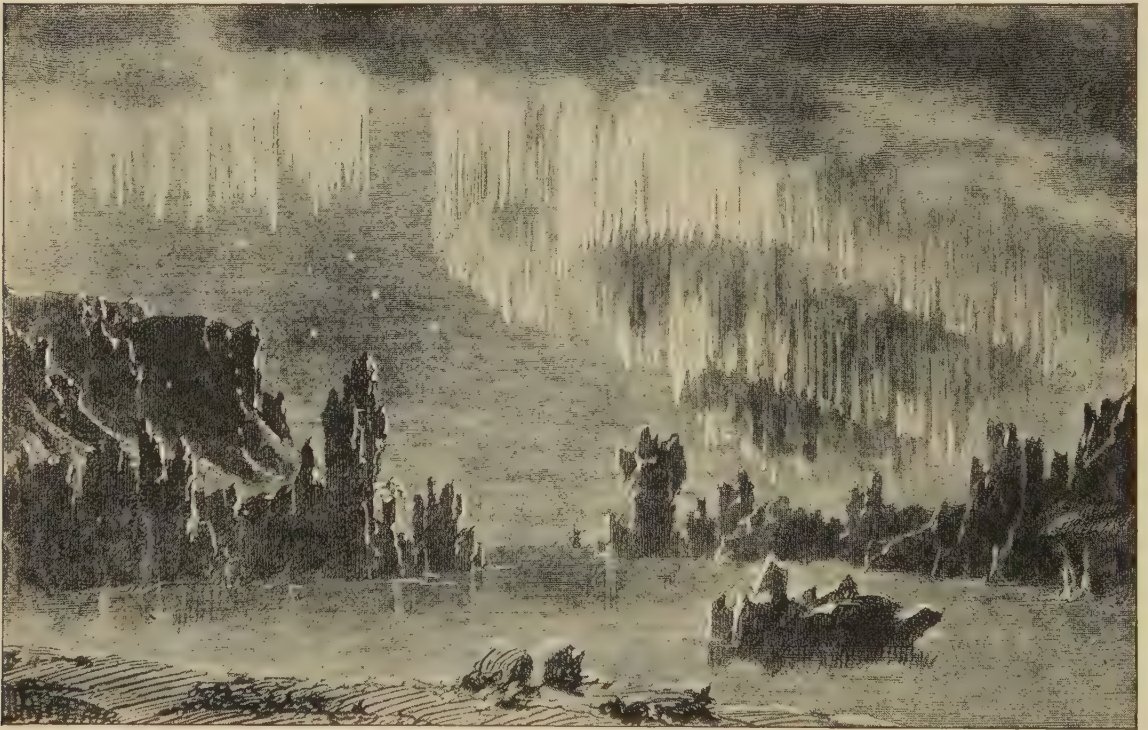
"W. S. SCHLEY, Commander."

When the dead bodies were brought on board the *Thetis*, they were all, at first, laid out in the fore-castle, and a screen was placed in front of them, to prevent a close examination being made by the sailors. They were left in this position for twenty-four hours, when half of them were transferred to the *Bear* **HOW THE BODIES WERE PREPARED.** after dark. Under ordinary circumstances the disagreeable task of packing away the bodies would have been considered unfit for officers and left to the seamen, but on this occasion, in order to obtain greater secrecy, commissioned officers were specially detailed for this duty. On the *Thetis* they were Surgeon Green, Ensign Harlow, and Chief Engineer Melville, and on the *Bear*, Dr. Ames and Lieutenant Cross. They cut off all the clothing and sewed the corpses up in sheets. Then the limbs and bodies were tightly enveloped in muslin bandages, which were also sewn up, and the heads and faces were all concealed in like manner. The only article of clothing which was

not removed was a woollen skull-cap worn by each. They left that on because they were afraid to remove it. After being thus prepared, the bodies were placed in iron tanks and covered with alcohol. Thus prepared, they were brought to St. John's, and there Captain Schley ordered iron caskets to be made for their reception.

On August 1, the Greely relief squadron reached Portsmouth Harbor, bearing the dead and survivors of the expedition, and was met by the North Atlantic squadron of United States men-of-war, with Secretary Chandler on board the flag-ship *Tennessee*. What a scene, as the noble weather-beaten ships, moving as if instinct with life, and bearing home the six living and the twelve dead heroes, steamed slowly around old Fort Constitution and dropped anchor in the harbor. The grim men-of-war, drawn up to greet them, displayed all their bunting; their decks were alive with officers in gold lace; their

**MEETING BETWEEN GREELY
AND HIS WIFE.**



THE AURORA BOREALIS.

yards were manned by gallant tars who cheered right lustily, and their guns roared deep-mouthed welcome, while the strains of the familiar old melody, "Home Again," played by the band of the *Tennessee*, brought tears to many eyes. And then what greetings, what embraces, what fervent "God bless yous," and what deep, undemonstrative joy! Secretary Chandler gathered the commanding officers of the relief squadron around him in the cabin of the flag-ship, while Commander Schley arranged for the long-looked-for meeting of Lieutenant Greely and his wife. It was a dramatic scene of pathos and joy. Mrs. Greely had but just arrived in Portsmouth, and had been at once taken on board the *Thetis*, where her husband was. Lieutenant Greely had not been informed that his wife was about to come on board, and a few moments before her arrival, in conversation with Commander Schley, the hero said he did not expect to see her, as she probably had not been able to reach there

so soon. When the Secretary's barge was seen to leave the *Tennessee*, with Mrs. Greely and her two brothers, Messrs. G. O. and C. A. Nesmith, sitting in the stern sheets, Commander Schley said to Lieutenant Greely: "Lieutenant, I would like to see you in my own cabin for a few moments." This was to engage Lieutenant Greely's attention until a peculiar signal given on the boatswain's whistle indicated that Mrs. Greely was on board. With trembling steps she descended to the cabin door, and just at the instant she entered Commander Schley left the room, leaving the long-separated couple alone. Lieutenant Greely was sitting with his back to the door, but when Commander Schley so abruptly left him, he turned, and at the same instant saw his wife enter. There was one wild exclamation of joy, smothered by a frantic embrace, and what followed none know but those two. Later in the afternoon the mother of Lieutenant Greely arrived from Newburyport, and there was another affecting meeting. Mr. and Mrs. Greely and the latter's brothers were seated in Commander Schley's cabin, alternately crying, laughing, and embracing. Old Mrs. Greely suddenly entered and threw her arms around her son's neck, saying only, "My son! my son!" Lieutenant Greely spoke no word save "Mother!" Fearing the excitement would be too much for his shattered constitution, Commander Schley entered the cabin and directed the conversation into less emotional channels.

The great land demonstration in honor of the return of the survivors took place in Portsmouth on Monday, the fourth. Commander Schley, Lieutenant Emory, and Commander Coffin, with the crews of the *Thetis*, the *Bear* and the *Alert*, a body of naval cadets and apprentices, a battalion of marines, and the naval brigade of the North Atlantic squadron, formed a superb procession, which was reviewed by the survivors from the balcony of the Rockingham House. As the crews of the relief squadron passed, Lieutenant Greely bowed very low and seemed to look his gratitude to the men who had so recently rescued him from an Arctic grave. The scene was affecting, and much emotion seemed to pervade the entire throng. In a carriage following those of the officers of the relief squadron, rode Secretary Chandler, General Hazen, Commodore Wells, and Acting Admiral Luce. These gentlemen received a tribute of applause. The marching of the long procession was very fine, and the manœuvres of the battalion of marines from the squadron were brilliant.

DEMONSTRATIONS IN HONOR OF THE RETURN.

In the evening an enthusiastic meeting of the citizens, at which a large number of distinguished persons were present, was held at the Music Hall. The official welcome of the city of Portsmouth was extended to the surviving members of the Lady Franklin Bay expedition, who were not, however, allowed by their physicians to attend the gathering. Secretary Chandler reviewed the history of the expedition and the rescue, and paid a glowing and well-deserved tribute to the noble work of Commanders Schley and Coffin and Lieutenant Emory. A letter of grateful and heartfelt acknowledgment from Lieutenant Greely was read, and other speeches were made by Mr. S. J. Randall, Senator Hale, Commanders Schley and Coffin, Lieutenant Emory, and General Butler.

The *Thetis*, the *Bear*, and the *Alert* arrived in New York on the seventh, bearing the bodies brought from Cape Sabine to be reclaimed by the relatives and friends. On the following day they were transferred with imposing ceremonies from the *Thetis* and *Bear* to the barge *Chester A. Arthur*, and thence conveyed to Governor's Island, which concluded the tragedy of the Greely Expedition, that had been at once an exhibition of wondrous heroism and horrible failure.

WONDERS OF THE ARCTIC WORLD.

CHAPTER I.



NATURE has distributed her wonders throughout all space, except that there is no space, for all conceivable distances in the apparent void are inhabited by atoms of life—airy motes, yet living, and performing the duties of their several spheres according to creation's law. So, in the hyperborean regions of perpetual ice, where freezing cold repels every effort of exploration, there, also, animal life teems, though with less diversification than in tropical climates.

The mystery which surrounds the impenetrable region of the North Pole is embalmed in numerous stories and wild theories, in which goblins, ghouls, and ice-sprites figure conspicuously. There sits a siren, wrapped in a mantle of snow, decorated with glittering icicles and her hair sparkling with frost spangles, crooning the lay which the north wind sings so monotonously in winter.

Her voice is husky, but her eyes are bright as Venus shining over a waste of sleet on a cold, clear night. The light of her eye attracts explorers, who follow as it recedes, until drawn within the magnetic circle of her power, she sends a shiver of death through them, and they become spirits of her frost realm. There is also a phantom ship, manned by a phantom crew. Her rigging hangs thick with jagged ice, and the shrouds are clothed with snow. The silent men are muffled in overcoats white with frost, while their hair and beards are hoary, but not with age. This phantom vessel appears in the offing to Arctic travelers, and is the sure precursor to fatal calamity. These and other wild stories are told of the mysterious North to deter adventurers from seeking to penetrate those forbidden fields of nature.

Of the theories respecting the North Pole the most singularly interesting is that advanced by John Cleves Symmes, an American, who, in a wonderfully plausible manner, argued that the earth is hollow, open at the poles, and capable of being inhabited within. He both lectured and wrote extensively on this theory, but though his arguments were well conceived, and not without a measure of consistency, yet some of his claims appeared so absurd that he made few converts. His theory of concentric spheres, however, was pretty well received by many scientists, which had the effect of preserving his name among the list of noted men.

It will be remembered by readers of the Greely expedition, that Lockwood and Brainerd, upon reaching the greatest latitude ever before attained by man, found a current setting in so strong toward the north that they were compelled to turn back, to avoid being caught in the drift and carried irresistibly away into the unknown, although their nearest approach to the North Pole was four hundred miles. This is an important fact, explainable only upon two hypotheses, viz., that there is a current which sweeps constantly toward and around the Pole, where a warmer climate exists ; or that a fissure or verge in the earth

STORY OF THE PHANTOM SHIP.

SYMMES' THEORY OF A HOLLOW EARTH.

attracts the waters to that spot, as Symmes maintained. The former, it must be confessed, is altogether the more reasonable, and must, therefore, be popularly accepted. There is another almost equally important fact, however, which tends materially to confuse all theories respecting the North Pole, except that of Symmes, which is, that after reaching 80° north there is a gradual increase of temperature and a corresponding increase of animal life. Symmes' theory is that this warmth is the result of the electrical force of the inner earth expending its effect on the atmosphere adjacent to the Pole. This theory, though, is combated by the discovery that the cold toward the North Pole is not nearly so intense as that which surrounds the South Pole, and the yet further and still more important fact, that the lowest temperature is not found at either pole, but in the neighborhood of Yakoutsck, Siberia. We are therefore lost in an inextricable confusion of conflicting facts, which must be left to future discoveries, or forever remain unanswered problems, mysteries of mysterious nature.

Scientists, whose most ambitious flights of speculation can hardly go back of the withered age of time, assert, by a process of analogous reasoning, that climatic change is due to glacial formation; that the earth shifts about on its axis to maintain its equilibrium, which is destroyed through a gradual process of ice formations at its poles. As a result of this shifting movement, one portion of the earth is submerged as the other rises, the change being so gradual, however, as to be perceptible only after ages of observation and comparison. There are evidences that at one time nearly all of North America was under water, at which period South America must have been of much greater extent than it is now, and must also have had a very different temperature. Then, as North America gradually rose, by reason of heavy glaciers collecting at the South Pole, South America was slowly being submerged, thus reversing their climates and undergoing the most radical changes, which are partially explained by geologic and fossiliferous formations and remains found on mountain tops and in deep valleys. The remarkable ruins of temples found in Greenland indicate most conclusively that that country **GREENLAND ONCE** must have had a comparatively mild climate at one time, favorable to **A WARM COUNTRY.** agriculture and a high state of civilization, while now it is a desolate waste from the intense cold which prevails. Further proofs of a reversal of climate, from warm to cold, in the Arctic region, seems to be found in the extinct animal life of Northern Siberia, unless it can be accounted for on the Symmes' theory. This is now the coldest district of the earth, but along the rigorous coast are numerous remains of the mammoth, elephant, rhinoceros, and other equatorial beasts. The change of temperature seems to have been so sudden that they were overwhelmed before being able to retreat to a warmer climate, unless their remains were drifted there by currents in the Arctic Ocean from a warm country near the Pole, as is claimed by Captain Symmes and his supporters. The mammoth may possibly have existed in a cold region, for it was clothed with a heavy coat of long hair, but, on the other hand, being an herbaceous animal, or certainly a vegetable feeder, it could hardly have sustained life in a cold region, no more than the elephant and rhinoceros, which we know do not exist beyond the tropics. These wonders only increase the appetite for exploration, since in them we discover what very pigmies we are in knowledge, and how little are the wonders of nature comprehended by our short grasp of intellect.

Arctic travel would be impossible without Esquimaux dogs. Reindeer may be used as far north as 70° , possibly further, but they cannot stand travel nearly so well as dogs, and are more difficult to manage. The true Esquimaux dog is neither domestic nor savage,

but a hybrid in character, with little or none of the characteristics of our faithful animals so fond of man. They do not appreciate kindness nor attempt any familiarities with their masters, but rather repel any effort made to fondle them. The sledges **ESQUIMAU DOGS.** used in traveling at the far north are light, though strongly made, about eight feet long by three wide, capable of supporting a load of a thousand pounds. The runners are usually iced by pouring water on them, which is allowed to freeze. This is done preparatory to starting on a journey, and should this ice become detached from any cause, or worn off by passing over stones, a stop is made at once to ice the runners again. Each dog is expected to draw seventy-five pounds of weight, though in extreme cases they can pull twice that amount, but it is best not to overload them. They are hitched to the sledge by means of a single trace attached to a breast-strap, but instead of becoming entangled in running, a dozen dogs to a single sledge will spread out in fan-shape and thus keep their traces from fouling. The outside worker thinks his place is harder than any other, so, after pulling in that position for a time, as he considers it his duty to do, the outside dog will slack up and skillfully run under several traces and reappear near the centre of the group without having created the least confusion.

Every pack of dogs has a boss, or king, usually the largest and fiercest among them, who takes upon himself the duty of regulating the conduct of all his comrades. This ruler is never lazy, and sees to it that, while traveling, none of his subjects shirk their work. He keeps his eyes about him, and whenever he discovers a dog slacking his trace too much the king jumps on him and administers such a sound thrashing that it is rarely necessary to repeat it. Around the camp, too, this dog-king exacts obedience and will not permit an unnecessary amount of fighting. When there is more than one pack of dogs in camp, each keeps strictly to itself, for if one dog ventures to visit another pack he is at once set upon and whipped or killed, unless his own companions rush to his assistance, in which case a dreadful fight takes place that hardly terminates before many dogs are fairly cut to pieces, for it is quite impossible to separate them even though clubs be used with cruel effect.

A pack of ten dogs will draw a load of 1000 pounds ninety miles a day and show little signs of fatigue. Before starting on a long journey, they are kept without food for three or four days, until they are ravenously hungry and extremely gaunt, and while traveling they are fed sparingly on frozen meat, which is bolted without chewing. When in flesh or his hunger is satisfied, the Esquimau dog is very lazy and becomes easily fatigued, though more sociable. It is astonishing the amount and character of food they will eat when voraciously hungry. In one respect they are like an ostrich, being ready to swallow anything that may be thrown to them. Dr. Kane, while fast bound in the ice near Cape Grinnell, makes the following entry in his journal respecting the voracity of his dogs:

"More bother with these wretched dogs; worse than a street of Constantinople emptied upon our decks; the unruly, thieving, wild-beast pack! Not a bear's paw, or an Esquimau cranium, or basket of mosses, or any specimen whatever, can leave your **HOW TO HANDLE** hands for a moment without their making a rush at it, and after a yelping **ESQUIMAU DOGS.** scramble swallowing it at a gulp. I have seen them attempt a whole feather-bed; and here, this very morning, one of my Karsuk brutes has eaten up two entire birds'-nests which I had just before gathered from the rocks—feathers, filth, pebbles, and moss—a peckful at the least. When we reach a floe, or berg, or temporary harbor, they start out in a body, neither voice nor lash restraining them, and scamper off like a drove of hogs in an Illinois oak-opening."

Though active under the incitement of hunger, Esquimau dogs are not driven merely by words, but must be industriously stimulated with a whip, in the handling of which a novice would punish himself more than the dogs. Kane describes it as follows:

"The whip is six yards long, and the handle but sixteen inches—a short lever, of course, to throw out such a length of seal-hide. Learn to do it, however, with a masterly sweep, or else make up your mind to forego driving sledge; for the dogs are guided solely by the lash, and you must be able not only to hit any particular dog out of a team of twelve, but to accompany the feat also with a resounding crack. After this, you find that to get your lash back involves another difficulty; for it is apt to entangle itself among the dogs and lines, or to fasten itself cunningly round bits of ice, so as to drag you head over heels into the snow.

"The secret by which this complicated set of requirements is fulfilled consists in properly describing an arc from the shoulder, with a stiff elbow, giving a jerk to the whip-handle from the hand and wrist alone. The lash trails behind as you travel, and when thrown forward is allowed to extend itself without an effort to bring it back. You wait patiently after giving the projectile impulse until it unwinds its slow length, reaches the end of its tether, and cracks to tell you that it is at its journey's end. Such a crack on the ear or forefoot of an unfortunate dog is signaled by a howl quite unmistakable in its import.

"The mere labor of using this whip is such that the Esquimaux travel in couples, one sledge after the other. The hinder dogs follow mechanically, and thus require no whip; and the drivers change about so as to rest each other."

There is so much of identical character between Arctic dogs and wolves that they are very properly assigned to the same family. The oblique position of the wolf's eye is common among Esquimau dogs. Kane had a slut, one of the tamest and most affectionate of the whole of them, who had the long legs and compact body, and drooping tail, and wild, scared expression of the eye, which some naturalists have supposed to characterize the wolf alone. When domesticated early—and it is easy to domesticate him—the wolf follows and



ESQUIMAU FAMILY AND DOGS.

loves you like a dog. That they are fond of a loose foot proves nothing. "Many of our pack," says Kane, "will run away for weeks into the wilderness of ice; yet they cannot be persuaded when they come back to inhabit the kennel we have built for them only a hundred yards off. They crouch around for the companionship of man." Both animals howl alike, and their footprints are very similar, while there are well-authenticated instances of their inter-breeding. The dog is to the Esquimaux what the horse is to us, if not, indeed, a more valuable friend; yet these faithful creatures are subjected to a treatment unreasonably cruel. The poor dogs are driven hundreds of miles on a pitiful allowance of frozen food, and when they return to camp their hunger is so great that they attack and devour almost anything that can be bolted, but they are beaten off with dreadful blows of axe or hatchet. Captain Hall mentions a fact as not uncommon, of the Esquimaux brutally whipping their dogs just before starting on a journey, merely to excite and "warm them up."

There is not a more singular people on the earth than those living within the Arctic belt; nomadic, and yet all their resources are taxed to procure a living; always pressed for food, and yet wonderfully hospitable; true barbarians, but none the less peaceable and clever. How different from other indolent and

LIFE AND HABITS OF THE ESQUIMAUX. improvident races! In the hot climates nature yields a prodigal supply of nourishing fruits, and tempers the wind so generously that even clothing is unnecessary, thus fulfilling all the conditions to inspire effeminacy and languor. Away in the chilly North nature withholds her gifts of food and warmth, and then with hard and pitiless niggardness, she drives such chilly blasts as if life within her sphere had angered her. Under a glinting sky of frost, within an unbroken landscape of inexpressibly lonesome desolation, the Esquimaux makes his home and lives, despite the rigor and barren waste of his nameless country.

These wonderful children of eccentric creation are controlled by no law, either written or traditional, and acknowledge accountability only to their own conscience, and yet they are orderly and little given to crime. They have patriarchs in their tribes who give advice but never assert authority. Esquimaux children render singular obedience to their parents, even after reaching maturity, which proceeds from a remarkable fraternal devotion, for there is no such thing as punishment of a male child by its parents. Females, however, fare badly, whether babes, maidens, or wives, for it is considered quite proper to control the female sex with an iron hand. In former times, at least among some of the Esquimaux tribes, it was customary for the parents to smother all their girl babies except one. Girls are married before they reach twenty, a thing not difficult to do, owing to their scarcity and the polygamous practices of the men. As soon as a man dies his widows are almost immediately appropriated by others, so that there are neither old maids nor widows among the Esquimaux. Another convenient custom which they practice is to exchange wives when, for any reason, the consorts of a man who is about to set out on a journey cannot accompany him. There are always other women who will take their places, and thus a clever exchange is effected. So is the borrowing of wives very common. An exchange of children is also sometimes made, while the giving away of infants is an ordinary occurrence. Children are rarely weaned before they reach seven or eight years of age, though they begin eating meat at one year. Marriage among these savages is purely and entirely a matter of convenience, as love is a feeling unknown to them. Wives are usually purchased for a trifle, and after being taken to their husbands' igloos (huts) they are tattooed in the forehead with a character resembling the letter V. Others tattoo themselves for ornamentation, but without regard to definite figures, straight lines being mostly made, and these are confined

principally to the chin. Their dress is admirably adapted to the severity of the climate. With their two pairs of breeches made of reindeer or seal-skin, the outer one having the hair outside and the inner one next the body, and their two jackets—of which the upper one is provided with a great hood—with their water-tight seal-skin boots, lined with the downy skins of birds, and their enormous gloves, they bid defiance to the severest cold, and even in the hardest weather pursue their occupations in the open air whenever the moon is in the sky, or during the doubtful meridian twilight. The women are perfect in the art of making water-tight shirts, or "*kamleikas*," of the entrails of the seal or walrus, which in summer serve to replace their heavy skin jackets. They also sew their boots so tight that not the slightest wet can penetrate, and with a neatness of which the best shoemaker in America might be proud. The dress of the two sexes is much alike, the outer jacket having a pointed skirt before and behind, but that of the females is a little longer. The women also wear larger hoods, in which they carry their children; and sometimes the inner boot has in front a long, pointed flap, to answer the same purpose.

**SOME CURIOUS
CUSTOMS.**

The Esquimaux are no less skillful in the construction of their dome-shaped huts of a single room. These they make from blocks of frozen snow, which are cut out with knives made of walrus bone. These blocks are not more than two inches thick, and thus admit considerable light while serving well to keep out the wind. When more light is required,



SETTING FOX TRAPS.

a small window is cut, over which a sheet of ice is placed, or a well-oiled piece of dried deer skin. To secure warmth in specially severe seasons, which it seems they have a faculty of forecasting, the Esquimaux excavate a large space, deep enough to contain their huts, so that the dome will be even with the surface of the earth. To reach this underground habitation they dig a tunnel, usually about fifteen feet long, which first slants downward, then upward, where it enters the hut; the tunnel is so low that it can only be entered by creeping on the hands and knees.

A TUNNEL DOORWAY.

As may be imagined, these huts are very warm, the temperature inside reaching 90° above, while outside it is 50° below zero. The igloo is lighted by a rude window, covered with a piece of scraped seal intestine instead of glass, and the smoke and gases are permitted to escape through a small hole at the top. In these furnaces the natives go almost naked, the women invariably stripped to the waist, and when lying down to sleep even the garments covering the lower extremities are removed.

Matches, of course, are unknown among the Esquimaux, nor do they resort to friction to produce fire, as they have a much more admirable and expeditious means. They use

two stones, one an oxide of iron, in appearance, and the other a milky-looking quartz; these are struck together in flint-and-steel fashion, over a tinder composed of the silky down of the willow-catkins, which is held over a lump of dried moss. Under favorable conditions, matches are but a small improvement over this native way of producing fire.

The Esquimaux subsist on an exclusively meat diet, and all eat like gourmands. Cleanliness is something which they do not appreciate, but in this they are excused by the rigor of their climate, which makes water both scarce and disagreeable. Usually they prefer uncooked flesh, though sometimes they boil their meat, but only for the soup it yields. Their mode of eating from a fresh carcass is ingeniously curious. They cut the meat in long strips, one end of which is introduced into the mouth and swallowed as far as the powers of deglutition will allow, then cutting off the portion left protruding from the mouth, they repeat the process of swallowing. It is not wholly unlike feeding a hungry dog with a fat piece of bacon tied to a string.

CHAPTER II.

There are several species of seals living in the Arctic waters, ranging in size from three or four feet in length, and weighing fifty pounds, to what is known as the large-bearded seal, which often measures twelve feet in length and weighs nearly one thousand pounds. In the capture of these animals the Esquimaux are wonderfully skilled, for they make a study of their habits until every action is thoroughly understood. The Hispid species is most generally hunted, and it is almost the staple diet of the Esquimaux. When raw it has a flabby look, more like coagulated blood than muscular fibre, but cooking imparts to it a dark soot color. The meat is close-grained, but soft and tender, with a slight flavor of lamp-oil, yet during spring and summer the blubber, when fresh, is sweet and delicious. The summer season is also most favorable for hunting them, as the sun's glare so seriously affects their eyes that they are rendered almost blind. At such seasons they are often slaughtered with clubs, in great numbers, by the sailors of whale ships.

If an Esquimau has any reason to suppose that a seal is busy gnawing beneath the ice, he immediately attaches himself to the place, and seldom leaves it, even in the severest frost, till he has succeeded in killing the animal. For this purpose he first builds a snow-wall about four feet in height, to shelter him from the wind, and seating himself under the lee of it, deposits his spears, lines, and other implements upon several little forked sticks inserted into the snow, in order to prevent the smallest noise being made in moving them when wanted. But the most curious precaution consists in tying his knees together with a thong so securely as to prevent any rustling of his clothes, which might otherwise alarm the animal. In this situation a man will sit quietly, sometimes for hours together, attentively listening to any noise made by the seal, and sometimes using the deep "*kuttuk*" in order to ascertain whether the animal is still at work below. This simple little instrument—which

affords another striking proof of Esquimau ingenuity—is merely a slender rod of bone (as delicate as a fine wire, that the seal may not see it), nicely rounded, and having a point at one end and a knob at the other. It is inserted into the ice, and the knob remaining above the surface informs the fisherman by its motion whether the seal is employed in making his hole; if not, it remains undisturbed, and the attempt is given up in that place. When the hunter supposes

HOW SEALS ARE

CAPTURED.

the hole to be nearly completed, he cautiously lifts his spear (to which the line has been previously attached), and as soon as the blowing of the seal is distinctly heard—and the ice consequently very thin—he drives it into him with the force of both arms, and then cuts away with his *panna* or well-sharpened knife, the remaining crust of ice, to enable him to repeat the wounds and get him out. The *neituk* being the smallest seal, is held, while struggling, either simply by hand, or by putting the line around a spear with the point stuck into the ice. For the *oguke* the line is passed around the man's leg or arm; and for a walrus, round his body, his feet being at the same time firmly set against a hummock of ice, in which position these people can, from habit, hold against a very heavy strain. A boy of fifteen is equal to the killing of a *neituk* but it requires a full-grown person to master either of the larger animals. This sport is not without danger, which adds to the excitement of success, particularly if the creature struck by the hunter be a large seal or walrus; for woe betide him if he does not instantly plant his feet firmly in the ice, and throw himself in such a position that the strain on the line is as nearly as possible brought into the direction

of the length of the spine of his back and axis of his lower limbs. A transverse pull from one of these powerful animals would double him up across the air-hole, and perhaps break his back; or, if the opening be large, as it often is when the spring is advanced, he would be dragged under water and drowned. When the water is clear of ice the natives hunt the seals in their kayaks, which is not only exciting, but dangerous sport, as the seals often climb upon



A SEAL HUNTER WATCHING FOR THE QUARRY.

and upset the frail craft. Killing seals by using harpoons is peculiar to the Esquimaux, whose patience is immeasurable. They declare that no white man can harpoon a seal, but Captain Hall refuted this statement by a very clever capture which is related in his journals.

Being directed to a seal-hole—which, it must be remembered, is not really a hole, but an excavation made on the under side of the ice, shelved so as to admit the animal's body out of water, while a surface ice is still overhead—Hall took his seat over the spot and there remained for an hour without moving, awaiting signs of the seal's presence underneath. At length he heard a softly breathing and slightly scratching noise below the snow and ice. Raising himself cautiously to his feet, he lifted the harpoon over the spot, and with all his strength drove it down vertically; the blow was effective, for in a moment the line was jerked from his hand, but, "quick as a flash," he says, "I seized it again, or I would have lost my prize, as well as the harpoon and line. The sealers far and near saw that I was fast to a seal, and although I called to *Nu-ker-zhoo*, '*kiete! kiete!*'—come here! come here!—there was no necessity for

**CAPTAIN HALL
CAPTURES A SEAL.**

it, for before I uttered a word 'he and all the others were making their way to me. Had I caught a whale there could not have been more surprised and happy souls than were these Innuits on finding I was really fast to a seal. Laughter, hilarity, joyous ringing voices abounded. Almost the last Innuvit who arrived to congratulate me was my good friend *Ou-e-la*, accompanied by his dog, dragging a seal which he had just captured. Last of all came the young ladies, *Tuk-too* and *Now-ye*, with dogs and sledge, and a seal which *Ar-mou* had taken a little while before. All this time nobody had seen my seal, for it was flipping away down in salt water beneath the snow and ice, still fast to one end of my line while I held on to the other. *Nu-ker-zhoo*, with his *pelong* (long knife), then cut away the snow, two feet in depth, covering the seal-hole, and removing still more with my spear, he chiseled away the ice-lining just above the hole. Soon the seal came up to breathe, and then the death-blow was given to it by a thrust of the spindle of the spear directly into the thin skull. The prize was drawn forth—a larger seal than either *Ou-e-la's* or *Ar-mou's*. Again the air resounded with shouts and joyous laughter. It was the first case among them of a white man's success in harpooning."

Another method of killing seals is to place a screen of canvas on a sledge, and cautiously push it toward the wary animals until within range, and then shoot them through a hole near the centre of the screen, made for that purpose, the hunter remaining concealed behind the screen.

As the Polar bear is as great a seal-hunter as the Esquimaux, one of the usual methods employed by the latter to catch bears is to imitate the motions of the seal by lying flat on the ice until the bear approaches sufficiently near to insure a good aim; but a
HUNTING THE POLAR BEAR. gun is necessary to practice this stratagem with success. The Esquimaux have another ingenious mode of capturing the bear by taking advantage of the well-known voracity of the animal, which generally swallows its food without much mastication. A thick and strong piece of whalebone about four inches broad and two feet long, is rolled up into a small compass, and carefully enveloped in blubber, forming a round ball. It is then placed in the open air at a low temperature, where it soon becomes hard and frozen. The natives, armed with their knives, bows, and arrows, together with this frozen bait, proceed in quest of the bear. As soon as the animal is seen, one of the natives discharges an arrow at it; the monster, smarting from this assault, chases the party, then in full retreat, until, meeting with the frozen blubber dropped in his path, he greedily swallows it, and continues the pursuit—doubtless fancying that there must be more where that came from. The natural heat of the body soon causes the blubber to thaw, when the whalebone, thus freed, springs back, and frightfully lacerates the stomach. The writhing brute falls down in helpless agony, and the Esquimaux, hurrying to the spot, soon put an end to his sufferings.

Dr. Kane, while wintering in his vessel, in 1854-55, witnessed a most interesting fight between his dogs and a large Polar bear, with a four-months' cub that had invaded the deck in quest of food. Hearing a racket above his head, he ran out of the cabin with
A SAVAGE CONTEST. his six-shooter, in time to see his native dogs engaging a medium-sized she-bear which was at bay but recklessly slinging the dogs right and left. The Polar bear does not hug, but snaps somewhat like a dog and occasionally uses its paws with telling effect. In the fight which was now progressing, the bear acted always on the defensive, and waiting until a dog ventured near enough, she would seize him by the neck and fling him several yards with a barely perceptible motion of the head; one of the dogs was thrown entirely over the deck, a distance of twenty-five feet, onto the snow and ice

below. The dogs were fairly vanquished very soon, when, without a sign of fear, the bear proceeded to turn over beef barrels and ram her nose into the meat. Dr. Kane lodged all the bullets of his pistol in her side, while his companion wounded her with a Webster rifle; but even this produced little or no effect, for she continued tearing down barrels of beef which made triple walls to the storehouse, and thus mounting the rubbish, seized a keg of herrings and made off. Reaching the ice, however, the bear was again beset with dogs, which worried her by running around and snapping at her heels. until, to ward off her enemies, she again came to bay, and as before, placed the cub between her hind-feet and bade defiance. More guns were brought, with which she was dispatched only after six more



BATTLE WITH A POLAR BEAR.

bullets had pierced her body. When dressed, she proved to be exceedingly lean, and without a particle of food in her stomach. But bears furnish much more palatable food when in a lean condition than when fat, for the impregnation of fatty oil through the cellular tissues makes a well-fed bear nearly uneatable.

Some members of Dr. Kane's expedition had another exciting contest with a bear and her cubs, while journeying by sledge toward Cape Jackson. Upon being pursued, the bear fled, but the little ones, being unable either to keep ahead of the dogs or to keep pace with her, she turned back, and, putting her head under their haunches, threw them some distance forward. The cubs safe for the moment, she would wheel round and face the dogs, so as

to give them a chance to run away; but they always stopped just as they alighted, till she came up and threw them ahead again; they seemed to expect her aid, and would not go on without it. Sometimes the mother would run a few yards ahead, as if to

**ANOTHER BATTLE
WITH A BEAR.**

coax the young ones up to her, and when the dogs came up she would turn on them and drive them back; then, as they dodged her blows, she would rejoin the cubs and push them on, sometimes putting her head under them, sometimes catching them in her mouth by the nape of the neck. For a time she managed her retreat with great celerity, leaving the men far in the rear. They had engaged her on the land-ice; but she led the dogs in-shore, up a small stony valley which opened into the interior. After she had gone a mile and a half, her pace slackened, and the little ones being jaded she soon came to a halt.

The men were then only half a mile behind; and, running at full speed, they soon came up to where the dogs were holding her at bay. The fight was now a desperate one. The mother never went more than two yards ahead, constantly looking at the cubs. When the dogs came near her, she would sit upon her haunches and take the little ones between her hind legs, fighting the dogs with her paws, and roaring so that she could have been heard a mile off. "Never," said one of the men, "was an animal so distressed. She would stretch her neck and snap at the nearest dog with her shining teeth, whirling her paws like the arms of a windmill. If she missed her aim, not daring to pursue one dog lest the others should harm the cubs, she would give a great roar of baffled rage, and go on pawing, and snapping, and facing the ring, grinning at them with her mouth stretched wide."

When the men came up, the little ones were perhaps rested, for they were able to turn round with the dam, no matter how quickly she moved, so as to keep always in front of her. The five dogs were all the time frisking about actively, tormenting her like so many gad-flies; indeed, they made it difficult to draw a bead on her without killing them. But Hans, the Esquimau, lying on his elbow, took a quiet aim and shot her through the head. She dropped and rolled over dead without moving a muscle.

The dogs sprang toward her at once; but the cubs jumped upon her body and reared up, for the first time growling hoarsely. They seemed quite afraid of the little creatures, which fought so actively and made so much noise: and, while tearing mouthfuls of hair from the dead mother, they would spring aside the minute the cubs turned toward them. The men drove the dogs off for a time, but were obliged to shoot the cubs at last, as they would not quit the body.

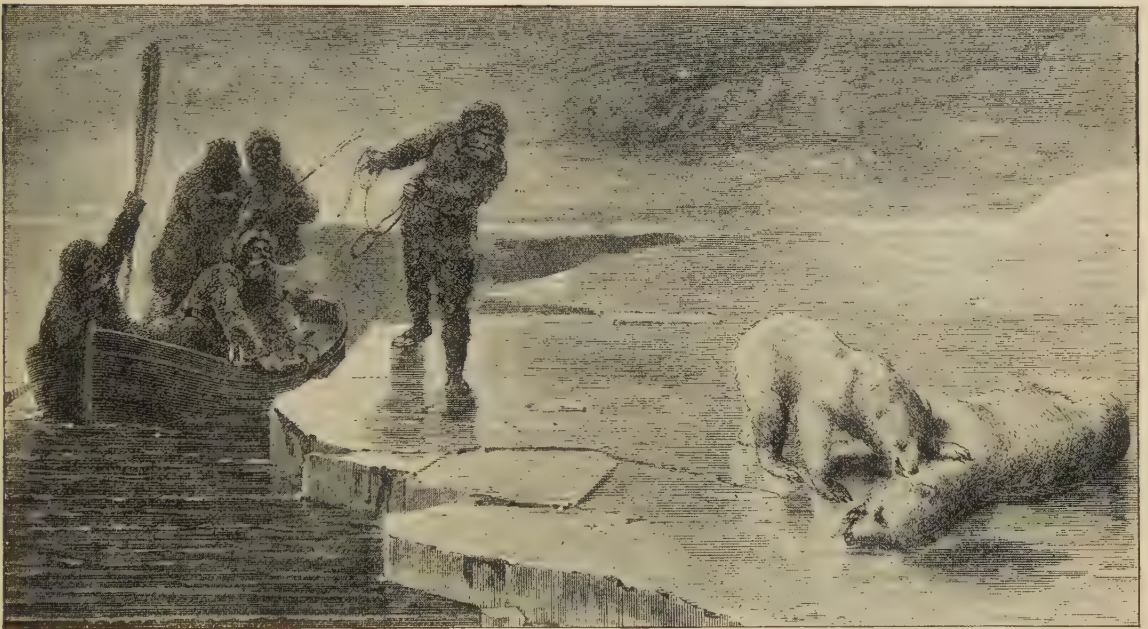
In the latter part of June, 1854, Dr. Kane sent out a party of his men from the brig to scale the Great Glacier, from which an observation was hoped to be gained. The men were gone nine days, but were forced to return before accomplishing their object,

**AN UGLY VISITOR
IN CAMP.**

on account of the destruction of their provisions by bears, which beset them in great numbers. At one place where the party camped, toward midnight their slumbers were interrupted by an intrusive visitor, no less important than a bear, which, setting aside formality, pushed open the tent cover and walked in to inspect the commissaries. Scratching and growling, the animal was not long in awakening his hosts, who, however, were hospitable only through sheer necessity. As they sprang up, only to confront the vicious head of bruin, their excitement and fear increased amazingly, for all the guns had been left on the sledge outside. Lucifer matches and burning paper failed to disturb the intruder, who took up a position at the tent entrance and began stuffing himself with the carcass of a seal which had been shot the day before. One of the party, at

length, managed to cut a hole in the tent, through which he crawled out and secured the guns, with which bruin was speedily dispatched.

As the Polar bear is frequently found above a hundred miles from the nearest land, upon loose ice steadily drifting into the sea, it seems but fair to assign him a place among the marine animals of the Arctic Zone. He hunts by scent, and is constantly running across and against the wind, which prevails from the northward, so that the same instinct which directs his search for prey also serves the important purpose of guiding him in the direction of the land and more solid ice. His favorite food is the seal, which he surprises by crouching down with his forepaws doubled underneath, and pushing himself noiselessly forward with his hinder legs until within a few yards, when he springs upon his victim, whether in the water or upon the ice. He can swim at the rate of three miles an hour, and can dive to a considerable distance. Though he attacks man when hungry, wounded, or



CATCHING THE YOUNG BEAR.

provoked, he will not injure him when food more to his liking is at hand. Sir Francis McClintock relates an anecdote of a native of Upernavik who was out one dark winter's day visiting his seal-nets. He found a seal entangled, and while kneeling down over it upon the ice to get it clear, he received a slap upon the back—from his companion, as he supposed; but a second and heavier blow made him look smartly round. He was horror-stricken to see a peculiarly grim old bear instead of his comrade. Without taking further notice of the man bruin tore the seal out of the net and began his supper. He was not interrupted, nor did the man wait to see the meal finished, fearing, no doubt, that his uninvited and uncereemonious guest might keep a corner for him.

Extreme hunger will sometimes prompt Polar bears to attack a walrus, but the contest thus invited most commonly proves fatal to the bear, for, armed with the strongest and sharpest of weapons, the walrus is a dreadful fighter, while his skin is so thick and tough that even the powerful jaws and claws of a bear can scarcely produce any impression upon

it. A walrus will frequently whip or kill several bears in a single combat, using his sharp ivory tusks with fearful effect. Such a battle presents a grand and awful spectacle, never to be forgotten by the beholder.

Few Arctic animals are more valuable to man, or more frequently mentioned in Polar voyages, than the walrus, which, though allied to the seals, differs greatly from them by the development of the canines of the upper jaw, which form two enormous tusks projecting downward to the length of two feet. The walrus is one of the largest quadrupeds existing, as it attains a length of twenty feet and a weight of from fifteen hundred to two thousand pounds. In uncouthness of form it surpasses even the ungainly hippopotamus. It has a small head with a remarkably thick upper lip, covered with large pellucid whiskers or bristles; the neck is thick and short; the naked gray or red-brown skin hangs loosely on the ponderous and elongated trunk, and the short feet terminate in broad fin-like paddles, resembling large ill-fashioned flaps of leather.

Timorous and almost helpless on land, where, in spite of its formidable tusks, it falls an easy prey to the attacks of man, the walrus evinces a greater degree of courage in the water, where it is able to make a better use of the strength and weapons bestowed upon it by nature. Many instances are known where walruses, which never attack but when provoked, have turned upon their assailants or have even assembled from a distance to assist a wounded comrade.

Like the seals, the walrus is easily tamed and of a most affectionate temper. This was shown in a remarkable manner by a young walrus brought alive from Archangel to St. Petersburg in 1829. Its keeper, Madame Dennebecq, having tended it with the greatest care, the grateful animal expressed its pleasure whenever she came near it by an affectionate grunt. It not only followed her with its eyes, but was never happier than when allowed to lay its head in her lap. The tenderness was reciprocal, and Madame Dennebecq used to talk of her walrus with the same warmth of affection as if it had been a pet lap-dog.

That parental love should be highly developed in animals thus susceptible of friendship may easily be imagined. Mr. Lamont, an English gentleman whom the love of sport led a few years since to Spitzbergen, relates the case of a wounded walrus who held a very young calf under her right arm. Whenever the harpoon was raised against it, the mother carefully shielded it with her own body. The countenance of this poor animal was never to be forgotten: that of the calf expressive of abject terror, and yet of such a boundless confidence in its mother's power of protecting it, as it swam along under her wing, and the old cow's face showing such reckless defiance for all that could be done to herself, and yet such terrible anxiety as to the safety of her calf. This parental affection is shamefully misused by man, for it is a common artifice of the walrus hunters to catch a young animal and make it grunt in order to attract a herd. Though affectionate under certain conditions there is no more savage animal on earth than a mad walrus, nor is there one more to be feared in close contest. They have a ferocious aspect distinguishable in no other animal.

Dr. Kane describes a walrus hunt in which he participated with two of his men, Myouk, an Esquimaux, and Morton, who were well acquainted with the habits of the animal. They took with them three sledges, one of which was taken to a cache in the neighborhood, while the other two, drawn by nine dogs, went off toward the open water, twelve miles from the brig. As they came to the sea, the two hunters would from time to time remove their hoods and listen intently for the walrus' voice.

AN EXCITING WALRUS HUNT.

After awhile Myouk became convinced, from signs or sounds which were inappreciable to Morton or Kane, that walrus were sporting not far off, under a thin formation of ice. As they approached nearer they heard the characteristic bellow of a bull of the awuk species. The walrus, like some of the higher order of beings to which he has been compared, is fond of his own music, and will lie for hours listening to himself. His vocalization is something between the mooing of a cow and the deepest baying of a mastiff—very round and full, its barks or detached notes repeated rather quickly seven to nine times in succession.

The party now formed in single file, following in each other's steps; and, guided by an admirable knowledge of ice-topography, wound behind hummocks and ridges in a serpentine approach toward a group of pond-like discolorations, recently frozen ice spots, but surrounded by firmer and older ice.

When within half a mile of these the line broke, and each man crawled toward a separate pool, Morton, on his hands and knees, following Myouk. In a few minutes the walrus were in sight. They were five in number, rising at intervals through the ice in a body, and breaking it up with an explosive puff which might have been heard for miles. Two large, grim-looking bulls were conspicuous as leaders of the group.

Now for the marvel of the hunting craft. When the walrus is above water the hunter is flat and motionless. The animal's head is hardly below the water-line before every man is in a rapid run; and again, as if by instinct, before the beast returns, all are motionless behind protecting knolls of ice. They seem to know beforehand not only the time he will be absent, but the very spot at which he will

reappear. In this way, hiding and advancing by turns, Myouk, with Morton at his heels, reached a plate of thin ice, hardly strong enough to bear them, at the very brink of the water-pool the walrus were curveting in. Myouk, till now phlegmatic, seems to awaken with excitement. His coil of walrus-hide, a well-trimmed line of many fathoms' length, is lying at his side. He fixes one end of it in an iron barb, and fastens this loosely by a socket upon a shaft of unicorn's horn; the other end is already looped, or, as sailors would say, "doubled in a bight." It is the work of a moment. He has grasped the harpoon; the water is in motion. Puffing with pent-up respiration, the walrus is within a couple of fathoms directly before him; Myouk rises slowly, his right arm thrown back, the left flat at his side. The walrus looks about him, shaking the dripping brine from his arched neck; Myouk throws up his left arm, while the animal rises breast high to fix one look before



FIGHT WITH A WALRUS.

plunging below again, but as he rises the harpoon is buried under his left flipper. Down now the wounded walrus buries itself deep under water, while Myouk runs with desperate speed from the scene, playing off his coil freely, but clutching the end by its loop. As he runs he seizes a small piece of bone, rudely pointed with iron, and by a sudden movement drives it into the ice; to this he secures his line, pressing it down close to the ice surface with his feet.

Now comes the struggle. The hole is dashed in mad commotion by the struggles of the wounded beast; the line is drawn tight at one moment, the next relaxed; the hunter has not left his station. There is a crash of the ice; and rearing up

A HOT STRUGGLE. through it are two walruses, not many yards from where he stands. One of them, the male, is excited and seemingly terrified; the other, the female, collected and vengeful. Down they go again, after one grim survey of the field; and on the instant Myouk has changed his position, carrying his coil with him and fixing it anew. He has hardly fixed it before the pair have again risen, breaking up an area of ten feet in diameter about the very spot he left. As they sink once more he again changes his place. And so the conflict goes on between address and force, till the victim, half exhausted, receives a second wound, and is played like a trout by the angler's reel.

The instinct of attack which characterizes the walrus is interesting to the naturalist, as it is characteristic also of the land animals, the pachyderms, with which he is classed. When wounded he rises high out of the water, plunges heavily against the ice, and strives to raise himself with his fore-flippers upon its surface. As it breaks under his weight, his countenance assumes a still more vindictive expression, his bark changes to a roar, and the foam pours out from his jaws till it froths his beard.

Even when not excited he manages his tusks bravely. They are so strong that he uses them to grapple the rocks with, and climbs steeples of ice and land which would be inaccessible to him without their aid. He ascends in this way rocky islands that are sixty and a hundred feet above the level of the sea.

The battle between the walrus and Dr. Kane, Morton, and Myouk, lasted for over four hours, during which the desperate animal rushed continually at them, tearing off great tables of ice with his tusks and showing no fear whatever. He received upward of seventy lance wounds before giving up the contest, and even then remained hooked to the ice with his tusks, vanquished only by death.

To land this huge animal required no little skill, for its weight was fully two thousand pounds—perhaps more. Incisions were made on both sides of the neck, through which a line of seal-skin was passed, and a pulley made in the ice, by which it was dragged out, several Esquimaux assisting.

During the winter of 1864, Captain Hall participated, with several Esquimaux, in an exciting walrus hunt; indeed, the pursuit of this animal is always exciting, for it is in the water what the tiger, or elephant, is on land, a beast of extraordinary vicious-

HALL'S BATTLE WITH A WALRUS. ness and power, capable of destroying even small ships, should its energies be so directed. Several dogs were taken with the party to assist in attacking, as they are very serviceable for diverting the attention of the walrus, and thus affording the harpooners good opportunities to approach and throw their deadly instruments. The walrus feeding grounds, which had recently changed, were now in a newly formed field of ice that had been detached from shore and was grinding in broken floes. Here they could be seen sporting, coming up under the ice with such force as to throw fragments many feet into the air. To cross over this moving field, broken here and

there, leaving fissures between, was a hazardous undertaking, but the promise of rare sport gave the party courage to brave all dangers. For scores of miles to the north and south, the drifting floe was grinding its uneven face against the firm but jagged front on which Hall stood. Mounting a high ridge of ice, he saw, as far as the eye could reach seaward and up and down the bay, a boundless field slowly moving onward toward the south, but crushing to atoms miles and miles of massive ice; now rearing up mountains on mountains, now plowing up acres into high ridges.

One of the Innuits, who had joined him, was unable to reach a large walrus which rose in a small water-space five fathoms off, for the "squeezed, rolling, crunching mass" was working between the floes. He gave a quick signal to those on the drifting floe, and his



SAVAGELY ATTACKED BY A HERD OF WALRUSES.

companions ran rapidly toward the walrus; but just as he had his harpoon raised, the animal disappeared in the water. Hall then directed their steps toward the loose pack which the others had already gained, to reach which the sharp eye of the Inuit quickly discovered the only possible crossing. A quick run, a few steps over sludge and powdered ice, a jump from this trembling block to that one, and a final leap to the driving floe, brought the two safely over.

Walruses could now be seen in every direction; some butting up ice-fragments from the solid main, some with heads through the broken holes, and some with their bodies half distended upon the ice. The hunters now began their exciting work. In one direction two Innuits were under full speed for the same blowing walrus, the dogs running around them. Suddenly the two men stopped, for the walrus had become alarmed and gone down.

In another direction an excited group of Esquimaux was seen, one throwing a lance, another holding on to a line, for a walrus had been struck. With some difficulty Hall gained this group, but only to find the ice reddened with blood without any further appearance of the animal. He soon learned that a very large walrus had been harpooned and lanced almost to death, but that the harpoon had slipped out, leaving the lance-head, so that the animal had escaped.

Hall hastened to a second group of Innuits, who were as busily occupied as the first, and in a few moments found himself pulling away with others on a line which was fast to a large walrus. After a few pulls, the half-killed animal came up in a flouncing, tumbling way. He was furiously mad. He had not only been harpooned, but lanced and lanced again and again, so that at every blow, quarts of thick, dark blood were thrown up, scattering itself about, painting the ice, the dogs, and the party with a crimson hue.

A hard death did this one die. He fought desperately, but steel and sinewy arms, under the control of cool, courageous hearts, finally conquered. As often as he came up to blow,

he was met by the lance of the harpooner, who thrust it quick and deep into the heart and *churned* away until the walrus withdrew by diving under the ice and flippering away to the length of the line. Then, at each new appearance, he would fasten his long ivory tusk (one had been broken off, probably in some fight), upon the edge of the ice, and turning his blazing, yet blood-shot eyes around, would dash at his nearest enemy, the very incarnation of madness; failing to do injury, after each futile blow, he would dive down again, drawing the line with great rapidity after him. When he came up to breathe, which he did several times through different holes, resting with his tusk hooked onto the edge of the ice, he expelled through his white-walled mouth a frightful stream of hot life-blood, and as the hungry dogs rushed up fearlessly to the very fountain whence the luscious, savory gore issued, the dying walrus quickly raised his head and struck it forward with tremendous force, though to little purpose, as the dogs were too quick dodging the blows. *Shoo-she-ark-nook* at last cut a gash in the neck with his *pelong* (long knife) and thrust the point into the very marrow of the spine.

A fresh opening was now made in the ice, and to this the carcass was towed. Then the line, made fast to the tough skin on the nose, was taken to the point of a small hummock five fathoms distant, and back again through a hole in the same tough skin. With this purchase, five of the party pulled away on the line, gradually sliding the carcass upon the ice. It weighed about twenty-two hundred pounds.

The reindeer, though an Arctic animal, is confined chiefly to Labrador and Northern Siberia, where it roams in vast herds, both wild and domestic. In Northern America it is called "caribou," but they are not nearly so numerous there as in Lapland, Norway, and Siberia, where they are used extensively for draught purposes, and also ridden, though it never makes an easy riding animal. When it walks a peculiar clattering noise is heard a considerable distance, the cause of which is a matter about which travelers and naturalists are not agreed.

Its antlers are very different from those of the stag, having broad palmated summits, and branching back to the length of three or four feet, and frequently weighing as much as twenty-five pounds. It is remarkable that both sexes have horns, while in all other deer species the male alone possesses these weapons. The female brings forth in May a single calf, rarely two. The offspring is small and very weak for the first few days, but develops strength so rapidly that in a month it has even ceased nursing and finds its own food.

The reindeer gives very little milk—at the very utmost, after the young has been weaned, a bottleful daily; but the quality is excellent, for it is uncommonly thick and nutritious. It consists almost entirely of cream, so that a great deal of water can be added before it becomes inferior to the best cow-milk. Its taste is excellent, but the butter made from it is rancid, and hardly to be eaten, while the cheese is very good.

The reindeer's food consists almost wholly of moss, which lies deep under the snow. Nature has provided this animal with such a marvelous instinct that however deeply his food may be covered by snow he unerringly finds it by smelling along the surface.

The reindeer attains an age of from twenty to twenty-five years, but in its domesticated state it is generally killed when from six to ten years old. Its most dangerous enemies are



SAMOYEDS WITH REINDEER TEAM.

the wolf and the glutton, or wolverine, which belongs to the blood-thirsty marten and weasel family, and is said to be of uncommon fierceness and strength. It is about the size of a large badger, between which animal and the pole-cat it seems to be intermediate, nearly resembling the former in its general figure and aspect, and agreeing with the latter as to its dentition. No dog is capable of mastering a glutton, and even the wolf is hardly able to scare it from its prey. Its feet are very short, so that it cannot run swiftly, but it climbs with great facility upon trees, or ascends even almost perpendicular rock-walls, where it also seeks a refuge when pursued.

HABITS OF THE WOLVERINE.

When it perceives a herd of reindeer browsing near a wood or a precipice, it generally lies in wait upon a branch or some high cliff, and springs down upon the first animal that

comes within its reach. Sometimes, also, it steals unawares upon its prey, and suddenly bounding upon its back kills it by a single bite in the neck. Many fables worthy of Munchausen have been told about its voracity; for instance, that it is able to devour two reindeer at one meal, and that when its stomach is exorbitantly distended with food, it will press itself between two trees or stones to make room for a new repast. It will, indeed, kill in one night six or eight reindeer, but it contents itself with sucking their blood, as the weasel does with fowls, and eats no more at one meal than any other carnivorous animal of its size.

Besides this voracious enemy the reindeer has two others, both of which are a species of gad-fly. One of these deposits its eggs in the back of the animal, where a larvæ soon



WOLVERINE ABOUT TO ATTACK HIS PREY.

develops, producing a bad sore. The other lays its eggs in the reindeer's nose, where the larvæ bore their way into the fauces and under the tongue of the poor animal, producing intense pain, followed by emaciation and sometimes death by exhaustion from suffering.

The Samoyeds of Northern Siberia own vast herds of reindeer by which their

wealth is estimated. While thousands of domesticated reindeer roam over the tundras of Siberia, under the charge of herders, thousands of wild ones share the same region. These latter furnish the Samoyeds with hunting sport which they indulge in throughout all the long winter months. There are two ways of taking the animal, and both equally popular. One is by making a large corral on the snow-plains, which is approached by wide converging wings. One or more domestic reindeer are tied in the centre of the corral, after which a wild herd is driven toward the enclosure, which they enter through the wings, and are then quickly slaughtered.

Reindeer are easily driven, notwithstanding their shyness, for they keep together like sheep and do not run very far before stopping to graze. This habit is taken advantage of by Samoyeds, not only to capture them in corrals, but also to drive them into rivers, where men previously posted on shore and in boats armed with lances, easily dispatch hundreds without trouble.

One of the most remarkable quadrupeds of the high northern regions is the musk-ox, which by some naturalists has been considered as intermediate between the sheep and the ox. It is about the height of a deer, but of much stouter proportions. The horns are very broad at the base, almost meeting on the forehead, and curving downward between the eye and ear until about the level of the mouth, when they turn upward. Its long, thick, brown or black hair hanging down below the middle of the leg, and covering all parts of the animal with a fine kind of soft ash-colored wool, which is of the finest description, and capable of forming the most beautiful fabrics manufactured, enables it to remain even during the winter beyond 70° of northern latitude. In spring it wanders over the ice as far as Melville Island, or even Smith's Sound. They are exclusively confined to the New World now, though that they were at one time numerous in Siberia is attested by the great number of fossil remains of the animal still to be found there. Its legs are short, but it runs with much speed and climbs lofty precipices like the Rocky Mountain goat. They go in herds of twenty or thirty, but are now so scarce as to be seldom met with. Dr. Kane, in all his travels in the Arctic regions, did not see a single herd, though he obtained an excellent specimen from some Esquimaux, which he stuffed and presented to the Smithsonian Institute. Schwatka was more fortunate, however, for he met with several, and his party was for some time sustained on their flesh. Captain Tyson, of the *Polaris*, also mentions several successful hunts for musk-oxen, which he describes as affording little sport. When attacked by dogs they form in a circle with their heads all pointed outward, and thus stand and suffer themselves to be shot.

The Innuits hunt the musk-ox with great success, by taking advantage of the stubborn character which this animal exhibits. Captain Hall was a witness of an Esquimaux attack on a herd of musk-oxen, which he describes as being very exciting.

A herd of nine being discovered, the Innuits slipped their dogs from the sledges and made ready for a big fight. As the dogs went bounding and barking toward the herd, the animals stopped quickly and formed a circle, with their heads outward and horns prepared to receive the charge. Here they stood defiantly until one of the Esquimaux hunters advanced with a long lance to within twelve feet of a large bull and then threw it with such precision that the animal received the weapon in its shoulder; maddened by the pain the bull plunged desperately at the man, barely grazing his fur jacket with its sharp horns. To prevent further mischief, Captain Hall shot the infuriated bull. Usually, a herd of musk-oxen will brave any danger, but in this instance, at the sound of the gun all except two broke away over the hills and escaped. These two stood their ground, each throwing his massive head up and down between his forefeet, rubbing the tips of his horns, which were already almost as sharp as needles. This is their habit when in open ground, but if there are any rocks near by they sharpen their horns on these. It was a grand sight to see the two bulls at bay, fire shooting from their eyes and their tails lashing from side to side like lions before charging. The dogs kept running round the bulls, sometimes snapping at their heels and so distracting their attention that the Innuits were enabled to advance close enough to use their lances. The contest was very much more exciting, because more dangerous, than a Spanish bull-fight, and for a time Captain Hall had great fears for the safety of the men, but they were skilled in such fighting. Gradually the Innuits contracted the circle they had formed around the animals, until at last they threw their lances with such accuracy and fatal effect that the bulls charged blindly, only to rush upon other lances, which speedily dispatched them. Viewed in open ground, where there is no undue advantage taken, an Esquimaux

**ANOTHER FIGHT WITH
MUSK-ÖXEN.**

attack with lances on a herd of musk-oxen is wonderfully interesting, and is frequently attended by fatal results to the attacking party.

The Arctic fox almost exclusively inhabits the treeless wastes that fringe the Polar Ocean, and is found on almost all the islands that repose upon its bosom. This pretty little creature, which in winter becomes perfectly white, knows how to protect
THE ARCTIC FOX. itself against the most intense cold, either by seeking a refuge in the clefts of rocks, or by burrowing to a considerable depth in a sandy soil. It principally preys upon lemmings, stoats, Polar hares, as well as upon all kinds of water-fowl and their eggs; but when pinched by hunger, it does not disdain the carcasses of fish, or the mollusks and crustaceans it may chance to pick up on the shore. Its enemies are the glutton, the snowy owl, and man, who, from the equator to the poles, leaves no creature unmolested that can in any way satisfy his desire to kill.



EXCITEMENT IN THE CAMP.

Lemmings, of which there are several species, are small rodents, peculiar to the Arctic regions, and are found as far north as vegetation extends. They breed like rabbits, bringing forth five and six at a birth, and would be very destructive but for their numerous enemies. With the exception of the bear and the hedgehog, they are pursued by all the northern carnivora. The wolf, the fox, the glutton, the marten, the ermine, devour them with avidity, and a good lemming season is a time of unusual plenty for the hungry Laplander's dog. The snowy owl, whose dense plumage enables it to be a constant resident of the tundra, almost exclusively frequents those places where lemmings, its favorite food, are to be found; the buzzards are constantly active in their destruction; the crow feeds its young with lemmings; and even the poor Lap, when pressed by hunger, seizes a stick, and, for want of better game, goes

out lemming hunting, and rejoices when he can kill a sufficient number for his dinner.

The greatest plagues of the tropical countries—mosquitoes and gnats—are found in increased abundance in the Polar regions, where they swarm at times in such myriads as to almost obscure the sun. Lapland is particularly cursed with mosquitoes,
MOSQUITOES AND GNATS. and the people are plagued into devising a thousand different ways to escape the voracious insects. The gnats are no less troublesome, for they are even more numerous than mosquitoes and bite with almost equal severity. If anything eatable be exposed for even a few minutes, the gnats and mosquitoes dispose of it in about as quick time as the crustaceans of the deep devour a piece of meat flung into the Arctic Sea. For one thing, however, "God be praised," declare the Laplanders, the Arctic mosquitoes are not so large as those of tropical countries; if they

were, they would devour men and animals. Captain Hall describes the torment which he suffered from these pests of the Arctic regions during a walk in July, in the following language :

"The sun was about five degrees high. Not a breath of air stirring, the sun shining hot, and the mosquitoes desperately intent on getting all the blood of the only white man of the country. I kept up a constant battling with my seal-skin mittens directly before my face, now and then letting them slap first on one and then on the other of my hands, which operations crushed many a foe. It seemed to me at times as if I never would get back. Minutes were like hours, and the distance of about two miles seemed more like half a score. At length I got back to my home, both temperature and temper high. I made quick work in throwing open the canvas roof of our stores, and, getting to our medicine-chest, snatched a half-pint bottle of mosquito-proof oil, and with a little of this besmeared every exposable part of my person. How glorious and sudden was the change! A thousand devils, each armed with lancet and blood-pump, courageously battling my very face, departed at once in supreme disgust at the confounded stink the coal-oil had diffused about me."

One of the most beautiful animals in the Polar regions is the Arctic hare. In size it is about equal to our jack-rabbit, but its coat is a beautiful clear white, while the ears are tipped with black. They are numerous and distributed over a great extent of country, from North British America as far as any explorer has ever gone **ARCTIC HARES.** toward the Pole. They feed on the bark and catkins of the willow, and lie on the stony sides of worn-down rocks in order to protect themselves from the wind and snowdrifts. They do not burrow like our rabbits, but squat in crevices or under large stones. Their average weight is about nine pounds. Esquimaux dogs hunt them pertinaciously and regard them with such relishing appetite that they cannot be relied on as an assistant to man. The Arctic hare is enabled to penetrate the snow crusts and obtain food where the reindeer and the musk-ox perish in consequence of the glazed covering of their feeding grounds.

The Esquimaux, like all barbaric people, are much given to exaggeration, so that it will not do to place reliance in many of their statements. Their country being a strange one, sometimes it is impossible to decide between truth and misrepresentation, for they do frequently describe things that appear improbable to us, **A TRADITIONAL** and yet their statements are true. For example, during Captain Hall's five **ANIMAL.** years' residence among these people he had often described to him an animal which the Esquimaux call *arcla*, but which is not mentioned in any work of natural history, nor did he ever see a specimen himself, yet he was indisposed to declare it mythical. The natives speak of this animal as being larger than the bear, and as very ferocious and much more difficult to be killed. It has grayish hair, a long tail, and short, thick legs, its fore feet being divided into three parts, like the partridge's; its hind feet are like a man's heels. When resting it sits upright like a man. A Neitchille Innuut, crawling into a hole for shelter, in the night, had found one sound asleep and quickly dispatched it with his knife. It may be added here that Ebierbing, who was Hall's interpreter, who for a considerable time resided in the United States, confirms such accounts of the *arcla*, and says that the animal once inhabited his native country on Cumberland Sound.

We know that stranger-appearing creatures than this once roamed over the earth, some of which are known to us through their fossil remains, while no doubt many others existed of which we have no conception, because every vestige of them has long since disappeared under the fading effects of time, soil, and climate. It was once stoutly denied that there was

any such animal as the gorilla; who shall therefore say that the arcla exists only as the coinage of a fertile brain?

Birds, of many and varying species, are numerous in the Arctic regions, such as snow-owls, ptarmigan—both of which seek their food under the snow—the king eider duck, brent geese, great northern black and red-throated divers, bermide geese, sea eagles, **ARCTIC BIRDS.** and others of less size and quiet habits, such as the Lapland bunting, pin-tail ducks, and the snow-bunting. This latter may properly be called the Polar song-bird, for it sings the sweetest lays throughout the fugitive summer, and to a traveler in that bleak region is a genuine joy. The auk is a prolific inhabitant of the Polar climate, where it breeds with the rapidity of English sparrows in our own country. There are islands in the Arctic seas which seem to be composed almost entirely of auk guano, and so thickly do the birds settle at times that they cover acres of the rocky and precipitous formations which rise out of the Northern ocean. The Esquimaux catch them in great numbers by means of a circular net, made fast to a handle of narwhal bone and used as we do a casting minnow-net.

The ptarmigan, or snow-partridge, is found in great abundance in many parts of the Polar regions. Its flesh is delicious, and is highly prized by natives and Arctic travelers. They go in coveys, like the quail, which they somewhat resemble; but their winter dress is snow-white, except their tail-feathers, and when at rest they are scarcely distinguishable from the snow at a distance of ten feet.

The sea eagle is monarch of the frigid air, in which his lordly sway is acknowledged by the fear which his presence inspires in all the feathered creatures that share his kingdom. At his approach the gull and the auk conceal themselves in the fissures of the rocks but are frequently dragged forth by their relentless enemy. The divers are, according to Wahlgren, more imperilled from his attacks than those sea-birds that do not plunge, for the latter rise into the air as soon as their piercing eye espies the universally dreaded tyrant, and thus escape; while the former, blindly trusting to the element in which they are capable of finding a temporary refuge, allow him to approach, and then suddenly diving, fancy themselves in safety, while the eagle is only waiting for the moment of their reappearance to repeat his attack. Twice or thrice they may possibly escape his claws by a rapid plunge, but when for the fourth time they rise out of the water, and remain but one instant above the surface, that instant seals their doom. The sea eagle is equally formidable to the denizens of the ocean, but sometimes too great confidence in his strength leads to his destruction, for Kittlitz was informed by the inhabitants of Kamtschatka that, pouncing upon a dolphin, he is not infrequently dragged down into the water by the diving cetacean in whose skin his talons remain fixed.

Sea gulls of the Arctic regions are as rapacious as sea eagles, though their carnivorous appetite does not feast itself on such a diversity of flesh. The glaucous gulls are like cormorants, always watching for fish, but equally glad when they can seize a young duck. During breeding time the mother gulls are very destructive to the ducks, over whose peaceful shallows they sail until opportunity invites, when down they swoop with a loud rush of wing and carry off young eiders as their wants require. A more domineering or insatiable rapacity is not exhibited by any other bird or animal. The gull will gobble up and swallow a fledgling duck in less time than it takes to describe the act. For a moment the paddling feet of the poor little victim are seen protruding from the mouth; then comes a distension of the neck as the duck descends into the stomach; a few moments more and the young gulls are feeding on the ejected morsel.

The mother duck, nearly distracted by her loss, battles with all her might, but she cannot always re-assemble her scattered brood. In trying to defend one she uncovers others, until frequently she is left as destitute as Niobe; but in such cases she frequently adopts a new progeny.

CHAPTER III.

The sparse life found on the ice and snowy wastes in the northern zone is well compensated by the multitude of marine animals which sport under and about the Pole. There is a marked difference of temperature in the air and water, for below the surface there is a rapid increase of warmth, caused by undercurrents of streams flowing from the tropics. This modification is highly conducive to the propagation of many water animals, peculiar to the Arctic regions, which could not survive in as low a temperature as obtains on the land. It is a fact that animal life is greater in the Arctic than in the Tropical seas. There is a portion of the Arctic Ocean between 74° and 80° which wears a color varying from purest ultra-marine to olive green, and from crystalline transparency to striking opacity, which is due mainly to small medusæ—sea-nettles and jelly-fish—and nudibranchiate—naked mollusks. These, it is calculated, form one-fourth part of the surface of the sea between the above-mentioned parallels, so that many thousands of square miles are absolutely teeming with life.

On the coast of Greenland, where the waters are so transparent that the bottom is clearly visible at a distance of three hundred feet, there may be seen gigantic tangles growing in the depth, around the fronds of which millions of tiny creatures are always circulating. A dead seal or fish is speedily converted into a skeleton by the myriads of small crustaceans which infest these icy waters, and, like the ants of equatorial forests, perform the part of scavengers of the deep. This minute animal life affords most interesting study to the scientist, but our remaining space must be reserved for the greater wonders, such as whales, narwhals (sea unicorns), dolphins, and other large inhabitants of the Polar seas.

The largest of all animals is the whale, a very leviathan, ponderous with bulk and powerful with energy. The wonders of nature are shown in this animal more amazingly than in any other creature. These remarkable phenomena are not found alone in its extraordinary size, but in its structure and habits as well. **WONDERS OF THE**
WHALE.
 The largest species attains a length of one hundred feet, while its head measures fully thirty feet, a wonderful proportion; and yet there is no trace of neck even in the skeleton; they have nostrils, but not for the exercise of smell, being used for respiration and also for hearing; there is no external ear, and the auditory opening is extremely small, to prevent the undue access of water. Air penetrates into the large eustachian tubes through the blow-holes, permitting an appreciation of sounds, both in the air and water. It may therefore be said, paradoxically, that the whale smells with his ears and hears with his nose. The mouth is of great width and the jaws are armed with plates of whalebone, or numerous conical teeth, the former acting as a strainer of its food for one species, while in another the teeth perform the usual function of grasping and grinding. The skin is naked, except a few bristles about the jaws, and beneath it is a thick coat of fat, or blubber, preserving the temperature of the body and reducing its specific gravity; this fat affords the oil for which whales are chiefly pursued. Formerly, naturalists

regarded the blubber as subcutaneous, but it is now a settled fact that it is a part of the true skin, the fibres forming an open net-work in which the fat is held.

Though all whales are carnivorous, the stomach is divided into from three to six different compartments, but for what reason is not understood. Until the time of Linneus whales were regarded as fishes, but they are no longer thus classed. They are a true mammal, warm-blooded, air-breathing, bring forth their young (usually one) alive, and suckle them for a considerable time by means of two abdominal mammaræ. Though a whale's mouth is quite large enough to contain a ship's long-boat, yet the opening into the gullet is not greater than a man's fist. It feeds upon jelly-fish and small swimming mollusks, and rarely, if ever, swallows anything larger than a herring.

The period of gestation is variously placed at from eight to eighteen months; at birth the young measures from ten to fourteen feet in length, and is very tenderly cared for by the mother for one year. While nursing they roll from side to side, so as to give each a chance of breathing. The mother has great affection for her young, and will defend it as long as life lasts.

There are a great many species of whales, in which the size varies from twelve to one hundred feet in length, and with the single exception of being mammals, they vary as greatly in habits. The ones most sought within the Polar circle are either the "right whale" or the "white whale:" but there is the bow-head, sulphur-bottoms, spermaceti, and others. All the large ones of that region are called "balleeners," as their mouths are furnished with the balleen, or whalebone, of commerce. The oil of an average whale is worth about \$2300, while the value of the bone is about \$3000.

The right whale is often fifty or sixty feet long, but the white whale does not average more than fifteen—from twelve to twenty. The blubber produces a very superior kind of oil, and its texture is more gelatinous and less gross than that of the larger whales. In the water this creature is of a brilliant, shiny white. A common harpoon is scarcely fit for its capture, for it is necessary to penetrate through the blubber to the flesh to have it hold. The Esquimaux consider the flesh of the white whale excellent eating.

Captain Tyson, who was with Captain Hall in the *Polaris* expedition, thus describes the killing of a whale, in which he participated:

ADVENTURE WITH A WHALE. "I once had, when I was boat-steerer, quite an adventure with a whale which was determined not to die. It was a large and valuable balleener. Soon after the boat was lowered we got alongside. As I rose to heave the harpoon it seemed, almost in an instant, that the whale had plunged down to the bottom of the bay; as the rope uncoiled and went over the gunwale it fairly smoked with the intense rapidity of the friction, and I had to order it 'doused' to prevent its taking fire. It came, too, within a hair-breadth of capsizing us. Fortunately, the line was over seventy fathoms long, and of the strongest kind. After she plunged we followed on, it taking all our strength to bring the boat near enough to keep the line slack. She stayed under water the first time so long that we thought she was dead and sunk. It was nearly an hour before she rose: and when she did, the jerk almost snapped our strong line, already weakened by the friction and unusual tension.

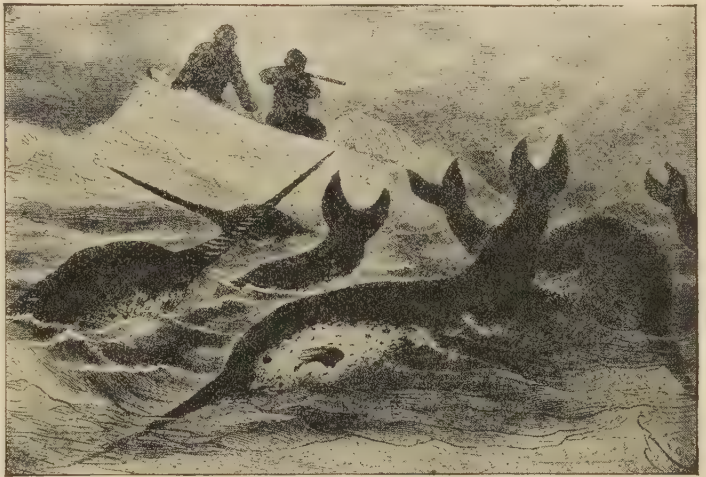
"As soon as she appeared she began to beat the water with her flukes, and swirled around so that it appeared impossible to get a lance into her, and, while I was endeavoring to do this, our line parted, and away she went, carrying the harpoon with her. We followed with all the speed we could force, and at last, after several hours' hard pull, came up with her. She seemed to know we were following, and several times disappeared, and then would

come up to blow, perhaps half a mile off; but we were bound to have her. On and on she went, on and on we followed. The moon was shining, and the Arctic summer night was almost as light as day, and deep into the night we followed her. Down she went, for the sixth or seventh time, but fatigue was getting the better of her. She was weakening, while with all the fatigue our spirits, and strength, too, were kept up by the excitement. At last, when we had been nearly twenty-four hours on the chase, I got another harpoon in her. This seemed to madden her afresh. Another plunge, which had nearly carried us with her; but this time she did not stay down more than ten or twelve minutes. Up she came once more, the water all around covered with blood, and we knew she was done for. Three or four lances were hurled into her ponderous bulk, and at last our exertions were rewarded by seeing her roll over on her side. She was dead. We bent on another strong line, and soon towed her to a floe. But we found ourselves with our prize, a good nine miles from the ship. We could not, therefore, save the blubber, but we made a good haul of balleen, with which we loaded our boat to its utmost capacity, and then dragged her, with her heavy cargo, the whole distance over the ice to the ship, which is what I call a fair day's work."

But not every attack upon the whale is as successful as was the one Captain Tyson relates. The spermaceti whale, which grows to the length of seventy-five feet, is really a dangerous animal, for it not only uses its flukes to dash a boat to pieces, but it is not slow to attack with its well-armed jaws. These whales usually go in herds of twenty or thirty, and the whole number have been known to rush to the assistance of a wounded comrade, in which case they will even sink a sailing ship.

The seas of Nova Zembla, Spitzbergen, and Greenland are the domain of the narwhal, or sea-unicorn, a cetacean quite as strange, but not so fabulous, as the terrestrial animal which figures in the arms of England. The use of the enormously spirally-wound tusk projecting from its upper jaw, and from which it derives its popular name, has not been clearly ascertained, some maintaining that it is a weapon of defence, while others suppose it to be only an ornament, or mark of the superior dignity of the male sex to which it has been awarded. It is known to use it for breaking ice to obtain a breathing hole, and Scoresby asserts that with the tusk it transfixes flat fish, upon which it feeds.

The narwhal attains a length of sixteen or eighteen feet, and the tusk is sometimes ten feet in length. This tusk is of solid ivory, and grows from the intermaxillary bone from a permanent pulp, as in the elephant. These strange creatures generally go in bands of ten to twenty, and are often seen sporting and spouting around whaling vessels, elevating their tusks as though especially proud of showing them. Narwhals are migratory, and their appearance is hailed with delight by the Greenlanders, who consider them the certain



HUNTING THE NARWHAL.

THE NARWHAL.

forerunners of the right whale, as they both feed on the same kinds of food. They are harpooned for their ivory, oil and flesh, which latter the Greenlanders consider a rare delicacy. The ivory is very hard and susceptible of a high polish. A famous throne of the kings of Denmark is said to be made of narwhal and walrus tusks.

There are so many species of this animal inhabiting the Polar and Tropical seas alike, that any attempt to describe it in detail would be foreign to our general subject, treating as it does of Arctic animals. The dolphin is allied to the whale, though not in resemblance, but it is a warm-blooded animal, brings forth its young and suckles them in the same manner and also projects water through a similar spiracle opening at the top of its head. Those inhabiting the Arctic waters are called black dolphins and bottle-nosed whales. It grows to a length of twenty feet, and being armed with 136 powerful teeth, it is a dreadful enemy to small fish, upon which it preys. No cetacean strands more frequently than the black dolphin, and occasionally large herds have been driven on the shores of Iceland, Norway, and the Orkney, Shetland and Færøe islands, where their capture is hailed as a god-send. The intelligence that a shoal of cæling whales or grinds has been seen approaching the coast, creates great excitement among the otherwise phlegmatic inhabitants of the Færøe islands. The whole neighborhood, old and young, is instantly in motion, and soon numerous boats shoot off from shore to intercept the retreat of the dolphins. Slowly and steadily they are driven toward the coast; the phalanx of their enemies draws closer and closer together; terrified by stones and blows, they run ashore, and lie gasping as the flood recedes. Then begins the work of death, amid loud shouts of the executioners and furious splashings of the victims.

The ferocious orc, or grampus, is the tiger of the Arctic seas. Black above, white beneath, it is distinguishable by its large dorsal fin, which curves backward toward the tail, and rises to the height of two feet or more. Measuring no less than twenty-five feet in length and twelve or thirteen in girth, of a courage equal to its strength, and armed with formidable teeth, thirty in each jaw, the grampus is the dread of the seals, whom it overtakes in spite of their rapid flight; and the whale himself would consider it as his most formidable enemy, were it not for the persecutions of man. The grampus generally ploughs the seas in small troops of four or five, following each other in close single file, and alternately disappearing and rising so as to resemble the undulatory motions of one large serpentine animal. In summer they appear in the Greenland seas, and the seals instantly seek refuge from them in the various creeks and inner harbors; and the Esquimau hunter in his frail kayak, when he sees the huge pointed dorsal fin swiftly cleaving the surface of the sea, is scarcely less anxious to shun such dangerous company.

The white, or basking shark, of Polar waters is an animal possessing some very peculiar habits, and is said to be absolutely insensible to pain. Greenland fishers use nets to take even the white whale, which is a small species, and these nets are serviceable also to capture sharks, though they are principally taken by means of a large hook adapted to the purpose. These sharks are caught for the sake of their livers, which yield a considerable quantity of oil, and a valuable substance resembling spermaceti may be expressed from their bodies, for which purpose powerful screw-presses are employed. In early winter the sharks are caught with hook and line through holes in the ice, like salmon, for which the Esquimau women fish so industriously. It is by no means an easy task to land one of these cetaceans, for they are sometimes ten feet in length and of corresponding strength.

The nets set for white whales are deftly made of seal-skin and attached to the shore, extending off at right angles, so as to intercept them in their annual southern migration, when they swim close among the rocks to avoid their direst foe, the grampus. When the white whale is stopped by the net it often appears at first to be unconscious of the fact, and continues to swim against it, affording time for the approach of a boat and deadly harpoon from behind. If entangled in the net a short time suffices to drown them, since they are compelled frequently to rise to the surface to breathe.

It is on the carcasses of dead whales that white sharks delight to feed, and they therefore become a great pest to Greenland fishermen, who often find what would have been a rich haul, if left unmolested, reduced to bones by the sharks. No amount of noise or beating will drive these sharks from their feast, and it is almost impossible to kill them; a large knife thrust scores of times through their heads seems to produce no more effect than like thrusts through a jelly-fish, the brain being so extremely small that it is very difficult to find.

CHAPTER IV.

Like flowers wasting their sweetness on desert air, so do the wonderful beauties of nature in the Arctic regions display themselves, like a modest virgin who blushes, though not without pride, at her own reflected image. For, in the far north, where even echo does not build her airy haunt, there are such gorgeous splendors as would wake the soul of pessimism and thrill the hopeless heart. How wantonly nature luxuriates in her charms in the icy regions, as if jealous of their exhibition in populous climates, but even in this reserve man discovers her, like Diana at the bath, and we may, therefore, all read about, if we cannot see, the wonderful beauties which she shows to the voiceless and insensate Polar world.

Nothing can exceed the magnificence of an Arctic sunset, clothing the snow-clad mountains and the skies with all the glories of color, or be more serenely beautiful than the clear star-light night, illumined by the brilliant moon, which for days continually circles around the horizon, never setting until she has run her long course of brightness. The uniform whiteness of the landscape and the general transparency of the atmosphere add to the lustre of her beams, which serve the natives to guide their nomadic life, and to lead them to their hunting grounds.

But of all the magnificent spectacles that relieve the monotonous gloom of the Arctic winter, there is none to equal the magical beauty of the aurora. Night covers the snow-clad earth; the stars glimmer feebly through the haze which so frequently dims their brilliancy in the high latitudes, when suddenly a broad and clear bow of light spans the horizon in the direction where it is traversed by the magnetic meridian. This bow sometimes remains for several hours, heaving or waving to and fro, before it sends forth streams of light ascending to the zenith. Sometimes these flashes proceed from the bow of light alone; at others they simultaneously shoot forth from many opposite parts of the horizon, and form a vast sea of fire whose brilliant waves are continually changing their positions. Finally they all unite in a magnificent crown or cupola of light, with the appearance of which the phenomena attains its highest degree of splendor. The brilliancy of the streams, which are commonly red at their base, green in the middle, and light yellow toward the zenith, increases, while at the

**BEAUTIES OF
THE ARCTIC AURORA.**

same time they dart with greater vivacity through the skies. The colors are wonderfully transparent, the red approaching to a clear blood-red, the green to a pale emerald tint. On turning from the flaming firmament to the earth, this also is seen to glow with a magical light. The dark sea, black as jet, forms a striking contrast to the white snow-plain or the distant ice-mountain; all the outlines tremble as if they belonged to the unreal world of dreams, while the imposing silence of the night heightens the charms of the magnificent spectacle.

But gradually the crown fades, the bow of light dissolves, the streams become shorter, less frequent, and less vivid; and finally the gloom of winter once more descends upon the northern desert.

The aurora varies greatly in shape, sometimes assuming a serpentine form, then again an oval, and at other times representing giant lances which flash with a splendor almost dazzling to behold. Not infrequently it may be seen in the shape of an arch; some observers sent out by the French Government saw, from their station in Finland, no fewer than nine arches, separated by dark spaces and resembling in their arrangement magnificent curtains of light, hung behind and below each other, their brilliant folds stretching completely across the sky.

That the aurora borealis is due to the earth's magnetism, or a surplus charge of electricity, is most generally believed, though the conditions and result are not clearly understood. Captain McClintock observed in the Arctic regions that the aurora was never visible above ice fields, but that whenever one was in progress the light appeared always to be gathered over the open water. Water being an excellent conductor of electricity, while ice is a non-conductor, we may infer that the peculiarity observed by McClintock was due to this difference in the conducting powers of ice and water.

It is held by some that the aurora is due to electrical discharges from the earth. Through some cause the earth, regarded as a vast magnet, becomes overcharged with electrical energy, and it is as this energy is gradually dissipated that the splendors of the aurora are displayed.

Mock moons and paraselenæ, which are a rare sight even in the Arctic zone, are due to electrical disturbance of a misty atmosphere. The paraselenæ are luminous rings surrounding the moon, and are multiplied by refraction until three, and sometimes even four, circles are seen impinging one another. Within the centre of each circle the moon appears, from which radiates four spears of light, like spokes to a wheel, and at the points where the spears touch the circle a mock moon is seen, thus affording at once a novel and beautiful view.

There is almost perpetual snow in the Polar regions, though it does not fall to such great depth there as in the North Temperate zone. But the most striking peculiarity in the

COLORED SNOW. fall of snow within the Arctic circle is found in the fact that it is often deeply colored, green, red, yellow, and black, red being the color most commonly seen. The black color is produced by the snow being impregnated with a dust of carbon and iron, either from the eruptions of volcanoes or from meteors. The other colors are due to the presence of microscopic organisms, described by Dr. Wollaston as minute spherical globules, having a transparent covering, and divided into seven or eight cells, filled with a red oily-like liquid, insoluble in water. Girodchantraus describes these as plants, while Bauer demonstrated that they are a fungous growth. Robert Brown says they are algæ, water-plants or seaweeds. Recent investigation confirms the theory that these colors are produced by vegetable growth, and that the several colors are due to the

ripening stages of the algæ. Ehrenburg maintains that red snow receives its coloring not only from vegetable spores, but from an animalcule also, to which he gave the name *Philodina roseola*.

The Arctic world is full of pulseless wonders, staid and insensate things of nature, which move upon the waters with a majesty awesome and grand. Ice is king in this frosty realm, and he gives strange evidences of his mighty power.

More dangerous than hidden shoals and sunken cliffs to the navigator are the floating islands of ice which swing about and grind one another, or break up and fall with a force that will

ICEBERGS AND WONDERFUL ICE FORMATIONS.

crush any ship. Arctic navigators have given various names to these movable shoals, which are the cause of so much delay and danger. They are icebergs when they tower to a considerable height above the waters, and ice-fields when they have a vast horizontal extension. A floe is a detached portion of a field; pack-ice, a large area of floes or smaller fragments closely driven together so as to oppose a firm barrier to the progress of a ship; and drift-ice is loose ice in motion, but not so firmly packed as to prevent a vessel from making her way through its yielding masses.

The large ice-fields which the whaler encounters in Baffin's Bay, or on the seas between Spitzbergen and Greenland, constitute one of the marvels of the deep. There is a solemn grandeur in the slow, majestic motion with which they are drifted by the current to the south; and their enormous masses, as mile after mile comes floating by, impress the spectator with the idea of a boundless extent and an irresistible power. But vast and mighty as they are, they are unable to withstand the elements combined for their destruction, and their apparently triumphal march leads them only to their ruin.

When they first descend from their northern strongholds, the ice of which they are composed is of the average thickness of from ten to fifteen feet, and their surface is sometimes tolerably smooth and even, but in general it is covered with numberless ice-blocks, or hummocks, piled upon each other in wild confusion to a height of forty or fifty feet, the result of repeated collisions before flakes and floes were soldered into fields. Before the end of June they are covered with snow, sometimes six feet deep, which, melting during the summer, forms small ponds or lakes upon their surface.

Frequently ice-fields are whirled about in a rotary motion, which causes their circum-

ference to gyrate with a velocity of several miles per hour. When a field, thus sweeping through the waters, comes into collision with another which may possibly

GYRATING ICE MOUNTAINS.

be revolving with equal rapidity in an opposite direction—when masses often twenty or thirty miles in diameter, and each weighing many millions of tons, clash together—imagination can hardly conceive a more appalling scene. The whalers at all times require unremitting vigilance to secure their safety, but scarcely in any situation so much as when navigating amidst these fields, which are more particularly dangerous in foggy weather, as their motions cannot then be distinctly observed. No wonder that since the establishment of the fishery numbers of vessels have been crushed to pieces between two fields in motion, for the strongest ship ever built must needs be utterly unable to resist their power. Some have been uplifted and thrown upon the ice; some have had their hulls completely torn open; and others have been over-run by the ice, and buried beneath the fragments piled upon their wreck.

The icebergs, which, as their name indicates, rise above the water to a much more considerable height than the ice-fields; have a very different origin, as they are not formed in the sea itself, but by the glaciers of the northern highlands. As our rivers are continually

pouring their streams into the ocean, so many of the glaciers or ice-rivers of the Arctic zone, descending to the water-edge, are slowly but constantly forcing themselves farther and farther into the sea. In the summer season, when the ice is particularly fragile, the force of cohesion is often overcome by the weight of the prodigious masses that overhang the sea or have been undermined by its waters; and in the winter, when the air is probably 40° or 50° below zero, and the sea from 28° to 30° above, the unequal expansion of those parts of the mass exposed to so great a difference of temperature cannot fail to produce the separation of large portions. This is the generally-accepted theory as to the manner in which icebergs are formed.

Most of these swimming fragments, or icebergs, are formed on the mountainous west coast of Greenland, by the large glaciers which discharge themselves into the fiords from Smith's Sound to Disco Bay, as here the sea is sufficiently deep to float them away, in spite of the enormous magnitude they frequently attain.

Captain Ross, on his first voyage, mentions one of these wrecked bergs which was found to be 4169 yards long, 3689 yards broad, and 51 feet high above the level of the sea. It was aground in 61 fathoms, and its weight was estimated by an officer of the *Alexander* at 1,292,397,673 tons. On ascending the flat top of this iceberg, it was found occupied by a huge white bear, who justly deeming "discretion the best part of valor," sprang into the sea before he could be fired at.

The vast dimensions of the icebergs appear less astonishing when we consider that many of the glaciers or ice-rivers from which they are dislodged are equal in size or volume to the largest streams of continental Europe.

In a high sea the waves beat against an iceberg as against a rock; and in calm weather where there is a swell, the noise made by their rising and falling is tremendous. Their usual form is that of a high vertical wall, gradually sloping down to the opposite side, which is very low; but frequently they exhibit the most

**MAGNIFICENT
SIGHTS.**

fantastic shapes, particularly after they have been a long time exposed to the corroding power of the waves, or of warm rains pelting them from above. A number of icebergs floating in the sea is one of the most magnificent spectacles of nature, but the wonderful beauty of these crystal cliffs never appears to greater advantage than when clothed by the midnight sun with all the splendid colors of twilight.

"The bergs," says Dr. Hayes, describing one of these enchanting sights, "had wholly lost their chilly aspect, and glittering in the blaze of the brilliant heavens seemed in the distance like masses of burnished metal or solid flame. Nearer at hand they were huge blocks of Parian marble inlaid with mammoth gems of pearl and opal. One in particular exhibited the perfection of the grand. Its form was not unlike that of the Colosseum, and it lay so far away that half its height was buried beneath the line of blood-red waters. The sun, slowly rolling along the horizon, passed behind it, and it seemed as if the old Roman ruins had suddenly taken fire. In the shadow of the bergs the water was a rich green, and nothing could be more soft and tender than the gradations of color made by the sea shoaling on the sloping tongue of a berg close beside us. The tint increased in intensity where the ice overhung the water, and a deep cavern near by exhibited the solid color of the malachite mingled with the transparency of the emerald, while in strange contrast a broad streak of cobalt blue ran diagonally through its body. The bewitching character of the scene was heightened by a thousand little cascades which leaped into the sea from these floating masses, the water being discharged from lakes of melted snow and ice which reposed in quietude far up in the valleys separating the high icy hills of their upper surface. From

other bergs large pieces were now and then detached, plunging down into the water with deafening noise, while the slow-moving swell of the ocean resounded through their broken archways."

An equally gorgeous spectacle was witnessed by Dr. Kane in Melville Bay. The midnight sun came out over a great berg, kindling variously colored fires on every part of its surface, and making the ice around the ship one great resplendency of gem-work, blazing carbuncles and rubies, and molten gold. These are the beauties of the iceberg, but it has its terrible features as well. On one occasion Kane was beset by a heavy squall, which gave him no small concern for the safety of his vessel, which was threatened by the heavy flocs blowing off shore and promising to nip him if shelter was not soon reached. As a



THE MIDNIGHT SUN AS SEEN AT HAMMERFEST.

measure of protection he resolved to fasten to an iceberg, which he was only able to do after hard labor of eight hours. His crew had hardly time for a breathing spell before they were startled by loud crackling sounds above them, and small fragments of ice, not larger than a walnut, began to disturb the water like the first drops of a summer shower. The indications were unmistakable, and they had barely time to cast off before the face of the berg fell in ruins, crashing with a roar like artillery.

Icebergs are all composed of fresh water, which Arctic discoverers declare, and no doubt very properly, are made by gradual freezing accretions from great rivers which pour out their water over precipices, as already explained. But a very strange fact is worthy of

consideration in this connection, viz., that the frequent freezing of salt water produces fresh water. McClintock, during his voyage in search of the Franklin party, discovered this singular phenomenon. A portion of his diary reads: "By my desire

AN ORIGINAL THEORY Dr. Walker is occupied in making every possible experiment upon
RESPECTING ICEBERGS. the freezing of salt water; the first crop of ice is salt, the second less so, the third produces drinkable water, and the fourth is fresh. Frosty efflorescence appears upon ice formed at low temperatures in calm weather—it is brine expressed by the act of freezing."

Is it not possible that the commonly accepted theory as to the manner in which icebergs are formed, is false? If repeated congelation destroys the saline crystallization of sea water, may not a similar chemical decomposition take place under continuous congelment? The rivers of Greenland, to whose debouchement the formation of icebergs is ascribed, are yet to be discovered, though the point of apparent iceberg formation has been visited. It is an open question yet whether these ice-mountains are not created under atmospheric influence. If, as seems to be well proved, there is a comparatively warm climate prevailing about the poles, the proximity of excessive cold and warm currents would be productive of the most violent paroxysms of the air, such as cyclones, waterspouts, etc. These might suck up vast quantities of sea water, which would be precipitated again at certain points, like the vapor of the gulf-stream, which condenses and falls over England because it there first meets with a counter cold current. If this uplifted water, now in the form of clouds, should strike against the mountain barriers along the Greenland coast, it would certainly be precipitated in the form of rain, and meeting with an intensely cold atmosphere, would congeal as it fell, thus building up great peaks of fresh-water ice just as we see them. This theory might extend further with perfect consistency, to account for icebergs of fresh water by repeated congelation, for it is plausible to assume that there are air-stratas of hot and cold at latitudes about the poles, passing through which the sea-water would alternate from rain to hail until the chemical change to fresh water is complete. Not infrequently icebergs, or rather glaciers, form in the interior of Greenland, and always at the feet of mountains or slopes to the sea; after reaching a certain size, gravity causes them to break loose and sweep into the sea, carrying with them great boulders, driftwood, or anything in their path.

This theory, which I have the boldness to present, is merely an individual's speculation, and does not claim to be the results of any extended research or special study of the subject; it is given only for what it is worth.

One of the most remarkable phenomena of the Polar Sea is the ice-blink, or reflection of the ice against the sky. A stripe of light, similar to the early dawn of morning, but without its redness, appears above the horizon, and traces a complete ærial
THE ICE-BLINK. map of the ice to a distance of many miles beyond the ordinary reach of vision. To the experienced navigator the "blink" is frequently of the greatest use, as it not only points out the vicinity of the drift-ice, but indicates its nature, whether compact or loose, continuous or open. Thus Scoresby relates that on the seventh of June, 1821, he saw so distinct an ice-blink, that as far as twenty or thirty miles all round the horizon he was able to ascertain the figure and probable extent of each ice-field. The packed ice was distinguishable from the larger fields by a more obscure and yellow color; while each water-lane or open passage was indicated by a deep blue stripe or patch. By this means he was enabled to find his way out of the vast masses of ice in which he had been detained for several days, and to emerge into the open sea.

On sunny days, the strong contrasts of light and shade between the glistening snow and the dark protruding rocks produce a remarkable deception in the apparent distance of the land, along a steep mountainous coast. When at the distance of twenty miles from Spitzbergen, for instance, it would be easy to induce even a judicious stranger to undertake a passage in a boat to the shore, from a belief that he was within a league of the land. At this distance the portions of rock and patches of snow, as well as the contour of the different hills, are as distinctly marked as similar objects in many other countries, not having snow about them, would be at a fourth or a fifth part of the distance. A ship's top-gallant mast, at a distance of five or six leagues, may be discerned when just appearing above the horizon with a common perspective-glass, and the summits of mountains are visible at a distance of from sixty to a hundred miles.

Nothing can be more wonderful than the phenomena of the atmosphere, dependent upon reflection and refraction, which are frequently observed in the Arctic seas. They are probably occasioned by the commixture of two currents of air of different temperature, so as to create an irregular deposition of imperfectly condensed vapor, which, **MIRAGE.** when passing the verge of the horizon, apparently raises the objects there situated to a considerable distance above it, or extends their height beyond their natural dimensions. Ice, land, ships, boats, and other objects, when thus enlarged and elevated, are said to *loom*. The lower portions of looming objects are sometimes connected with the horizon by an apparent fibrous or columnar extension of their parts; at other times they appear to be quite lifted into the air, a void space being seen between them and the horizon.

A most remarkable delusion of this kind was observed by Scoresby while sailing through the open ice, far from land. Suddenly an immense amphitheatre, enclosed by high walls of basaltic ice, so like natural rock as to deceive one of his most experienced officers, rose around the ship. Sometimes the refraction produced on all sides a similar effect, but still more frequently remarkable contrasts. Single ice-blocks expanded into architectural figures of an extraordinary height, and sometimes the distant, deeply indented ice-border looked like a number of towers or minarets, or like a dense forest of naked trees. Scarcely had an object acquired a distinct form, when it began to dissolve into another.

It is well known that similar causes produce similar effects in the warmer regions of the earth. In the midst of the Tropical ocean the mariner sees verdant islands rise from the waters, and in the treeless desert fantastic palm-groves wave their fronds, as if in mockery of the thirsty caravan.

Dangers arising from the breaking up of the ice, which gathers at the shore for miles seaward, are sometimes very great. In traveling in the Arctic regions it is necessary to pass over immense tracts of ice, and thus the danger of being carried adrift on detached fields, called floes, is ever present.

WONDERFUL ADVENTURES ON ICE-FLOES.

The most remarkable adventure that ever befell any one cast adrift on an ice-floe, happened to Captain George E. Tyson and eighteen members of the *Polaris* expedition. The *Polaris* sailed from the Brooklyn navy yard June 29, 1871, in command of Captain C. E. Hall, whose consuming ambition had been, for many years, to reach the North Pole.

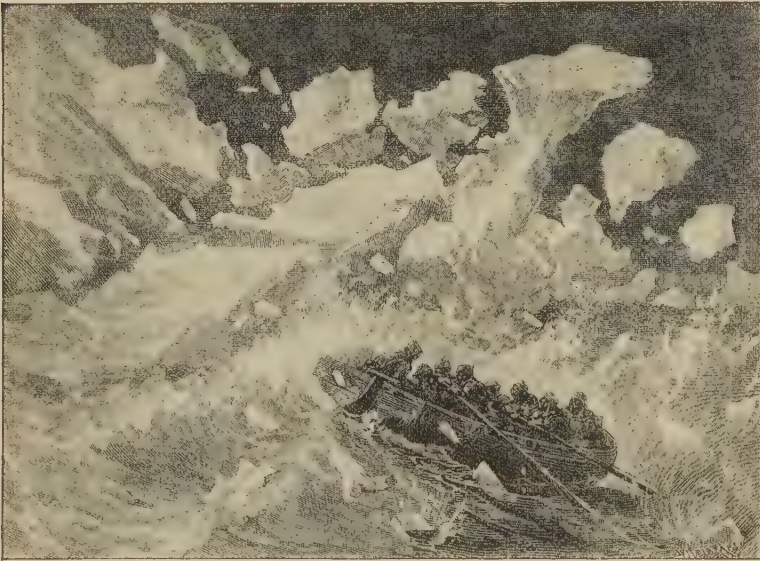
The *Polaris* was housed in winter quarters at Thank God Harbor, Hall intending to proceed from there by sledge toward the North. About the first of November, however, he fell sick of a strange malady—some say poison—and on the eighth died in great agony. He was buried, wrapped in the national colors, in a shallow grave, dug only by great labor in the hard, frozen earth. Captain S. O. Buddington, who had been acting as sailing and

ice-master, succeeded to the command. Immediately upon assuming charge of the expedition, Captain Buddington abandoned every effort to carry out the objects for which it was dispatched, and awaited with much impatience the coming of spring and the breaking up of the ice, that he might return to the United States. Captain Tyson begged Buddington to remain, or hold the *Polaris* until he could himself make a sledge journey to the north. This was refused upon the most unjustifiable grounds, and on July 25, 1872, the season being very late, there was a break-up in the ice sufficient to allow them to sail; but being in a bay the ice was found thick at the mouth, and the ship was soon

**DRIFTING HELPLESSLY
WITH THE ICE.**

so beset that it became necessary to anchor to a floe, in latitude $80^{\circ} 2'$ north. They now drifted helplessly until October 15, when there was so much danger from being nipped and the vessel crushed, that a considerable quantity of provisions was thrown off the steamer onto the ice as a precaution. At six o'clock in the afternoon of that day all hands were at work throwing off packages,

as the vessel was already leaking badly, and her timbers were cracking under the great pressure of ice about her. Suddenly, at ten o'clock at night, while a gale was blowing, the vessel was released and blown out to sea, through a large rift, giving no one time to anticipate such an accident; thus several were left on broken bits of ice struggling for their lives, while others were on the main floe, wondering what had become of the vessel, which some thought had sunk, so suddenly did she disappear in the darkness.



TYSON UNDER A BREAKING ICEBERG.

Fortunately, two boats were left on the floe, and with these, when morning came, those on the small ice were rescued, and then the long drifting on a shelterless shore of ice began. They looked in vain for the *Polaris* to return to them, but she had been irresistibly carried away to the shore of Greenland, as already related in the summary of Arctic voyages.

The floe upon which Tyson and his party were now floating was four miles in circumference, nearly circular, and was full of hillocks and small lakes of fresh water, which had been formed by the melting of ice during the short summer. To feed his eighteen men, women and children, Captain Tyson had only fourteen cans of pemmican, eleven and a half bags of bread, one can of dried apples, and fourteen hams. On the following day this large floe broke in two, separating the party from one of their boats in which were six bags of bread of their original store of provisions. They were now on a piece of ice not more than five hundred feet in diameter, and this was gradually lessening from grinding with other ice. Tyson now appointed hunters, as it was possible to kill seals, which were their only hope

**BEGINNING OF A
PERILOUS JOURNEY.**

of escape from starvation; these would furnish warm food and blubber-oil to cook with. Three seals were killed October 18, and on the twenty-first the lost boat and provisions were recovered. Igloos (huts built of ice-blocks) were made sufficiently large to accommodate half of the party, by packing them in like herrings, while the other half had to be content with their skins and sleeping bags, though the comforts were shared in turn. They had a lamp with them, which was extraordinary good fortune, for by it they were enabled to warm their quarters and cook their food, though it was not one of the most serviceable lamps that the Esquimaux use.

The ordinary lamp in use among the natives is made out of a soft kind of stone, indigenous to the country; it is hollowed out like a shallow dish, with an inverted edge, on which they place a little moss for wicking, which, when lighted, sucks up the oil from the blubber; and this is all the fire they have in their cold country, either for heating their huts or for cooking. To dry their clothing, they put them in nets suspended over the lamp.

As day after day went by without killing any more seals, provisions ran so low that Tyson had to establish a daily allowance, which he doled out at the rate of eleven ounces of meat for each grown person, and half that **PITIALE SPECTACLES.** amount to each child. Captain Tyson gives a sad picture of their sufferings during this period, on the occasion of a visit to the hut occupied by Hans and his family. He says:

"On going into Hans' hut the other day, to see the sick boy, the miserable group of children made me sad at heart. The mother was trying to pick a few scraps of 'tried-out' blubber out of their lamp, to give to the crying children. Augustina is almost as large as her mother, and is twelve or thirteen years old. She is naturally a fat, heavy-built girl, but she looks peaked enough now. Tobias is in her lap, or partly so, his head resting on her as she sits on the ground, with a skin drawn over her. She seemed to have a little scrap of something she was chewing on, though I could not see that she swallowed anything. The little girl, Succi, about four years old, was crying—a kind of chronic hunger whine—and I could just see the baby's head in the mother's hood, or capote. The babies have no clothing whatever, and are carried about in this hood, which hangs down the mother's back, like young kangaroos in the maternal pouch, only on the reversed side of the body. All I could do was to encourage them a little. I had nothing that I could give them to make them any more comfortable. I was glad, at least, to see that they had some oil left."

Two of their nine dogs were at length killed and eaten by the now starving party, who were left in a yet more abject state by the exhaustion of their originally small stock of blubber-oil, which was needed for warmth, light, and cooking purposes. The long, brooding darkness of Arctic night was upon them, when only during high-noon time was there even a short twilight, rendering objects dimly visible. Drifting away in the darkness, without food, light, or fuel, exposed to a constantly-freezing temperature, their condition was most pitiable.

**KILLING DOGS TO STAY
STARVATION.**

November 21, three seals were killed, and so ravenously hungry were the men that they ate them raw, skin, hair, and all. This lucky stroke of the hunters was a god-send to the people, who were upon the point of succumbing to starvation. But there was another long spell of fasting to follow, broken on December 29 by another seal, which, being small, was eaten raw at one meal, including the skin and intestines. No more seals

were killed for so long a time that all but two of the dogs were slaughtered and devoured. After an absence of eighty-three days the sun reappeared, and though it brought little warmth, its rays cheered anew the drooping spirits of the starving and half-frozen party.

One day in February, after the appearance of the sun, Esquimau Joe discovered a seal on some young ice near the wretched camp. The ice had been formed during the night,

and was not strong enough to bear the weight of a man while remaining stationary, and yet too thick to force a boat through. It was a

FORTUNATE KILLING OF A SEAL. Seating himself in his kayak, two of the men gave him a

vigorous push from the floe, and he went skimming over the smooth ice toward the seal, like a boy on his sled. The seal was asleep, and allowed the boat to glide close to him, when Joe quickly dispatched it with his harpoon. But the most dangerous part of the adventure was yet to be performed, for if the kayak should break through the thin ice it would be impossible to get it out or to walk back to the floe; but by skilful management he succeeded in shoving the frail boat in safety over the dangerous ice, dragging the seal after him, which was quickly devoured by the hungry people, with many compliments to Joe for his daring and successful hunt.

When March approached seals became more plentiful, and were shot almost daily. Bears, also, were occasionally killed, for in the latitude in which they were now drifting these animals are both land and aquatic in their habits, and are often seen swimming between ice-floes more than one hundred miles from land.

On the twenty-eighth of March, just after dark, Captain Tyson heard a noise outside the ice hut in which he and the Esquimaux lodged, the other hut, in which the men lived,

being a few feet distant. Joe, the Esquimau who accompanied Captain **A BEAR HUNT ON THE FLOE.** Hall on all his expeditions, was preparing to retire, but on hearing the noise thought it was the ice breaking up, and went out to see what the situation was. He had not gone more than ten seconds before he came

back, pale and frightened, exclaiming, "There is a bear close to my kayak!" The kayak was within ten feet of the entrance to the hut. Joe's rifle and also Captain Tyson's were outside—the latter lying close to the kayak, Joe's inside of it; but Joe had his pistol in the hut. They both now crept cautiously out, and, getting to the outer entrance, they could hear the bear distinctly eating. There were several seal-skins and a good deal of blubber lying around in all directions. Some of these skins were being dried for clothing, and some were yet green. He had now hauled some of the skins and blubber about thirty feet from the kayak, and was eating away, having a good feast. Joe crept into the sailors' hut to alarm them. While he was gone Tyson crawled stealthily to his rifle, but in taking it he knocked down a shot-gun standing by. The bear heard it, but Tyson's rifle was already on him; he growled, Tyson pulled the trigger, but the gun did not go; he pulled the second and third time—it did not go, but Tyson did, for the bear now came for him. Running to the hut he put another cartridge in his gun, and placing two reserves in his vest pocket, crept out again, getting a position where he could see the animal, although it was what might be called quite dark. The bear saw him, too, and again faced him; but this time, to Tyson's joy, the rifle-ball went straight to its mark. Joe now came out of the men's hut, and cracked both a rifle and pistol at him. The bear ran about two rods, and fell dead. On skinning him in the morning, they found that the ball had entered the left shoulder, passed through the heart, and out at the other side—a lucky shot in the dark!

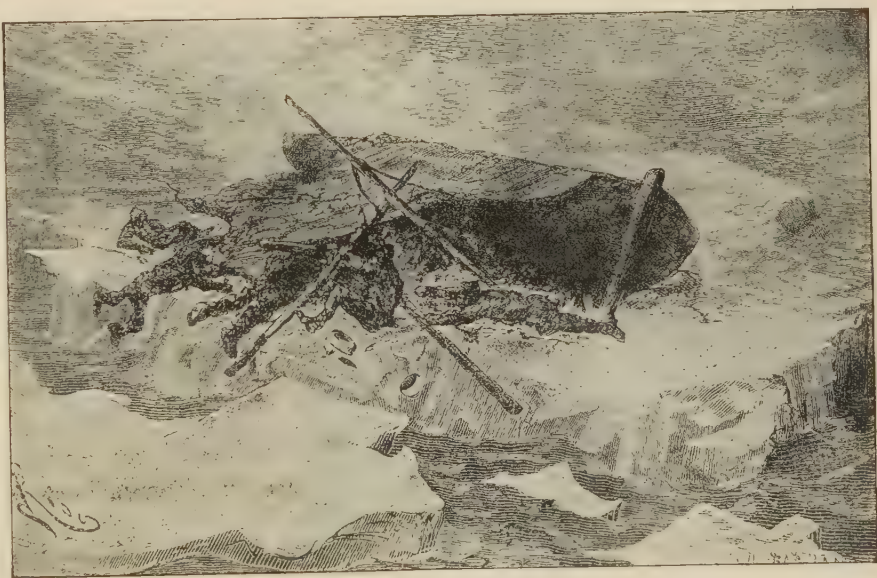
Joe and Hans, the Esquimaux hunters, had quite a contest, one day, with a large bear on the ice, which they finally killed with their spears, in native fashion. This is accomplished by approaching close to the animal, and as it rears up to strike with its paws, a sudden thrust of the spear into some vital part soon ends the contest. But it is exceedingly dangerous sport, for the bear frequently knocks the spear out of the hunter's hands, or breaks it with a blow of his huge paw, and then the fate of the poor hunter is sealed.

Food was now in abundance; but new dangers arose, for as they drifted into a warmer temperature, the ice began to break up, and they were in constant dread of their lives from drowning. They had one boat left, the other having been broken up for fuel, but a small boat could not live many minutes amid the crushing and grinding cakes of ice tossed by an angry sea, and they had to leap and scramble from one floe to another, the one they were drifting on sometimes breaking at their feet. This dreadful state of affairs continued so long that the food supply again ran short, there being no opportunity to recruit it. April 15 and 16 Tyson made the following entry in his journal:

**NEW DANGERS
FOLLOW.**

"Some of the men have dangerous looks; this hunger is disturbing their brains. I cannot but fear that they contemplate crime. After what we have gone through, I hope this company may be preserved from any fatal wrong. We can and we must bear what God sends without crime. This party must not disgrace humanity by cannibalism."

Some of the men had threatened to kill and eat the Esquimaux, and the latter were in constant dread of that terrible fate; but Captain Tyson had determined that if an attack should be made upon them, he would stand by them and die with them. The following night he writes:



A BATTLE WITH THE STORM.

The following night he writes:

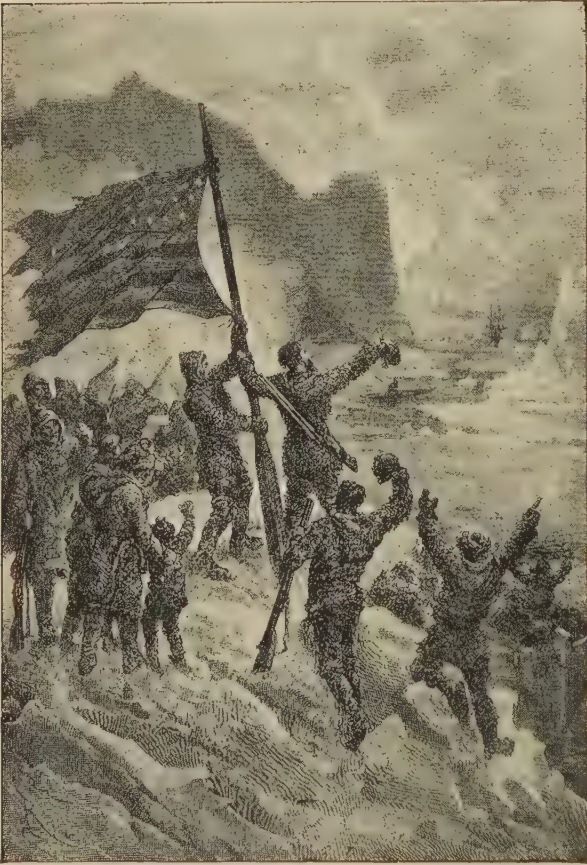
"One more day got over without a catastrophe. The ice is still the same. We keep an hour-watch now through the night. The men are too weak to keep up long together. Some one has been at the pemmican. This is not the first time. I know the men; there are three of them. They have been the three principal pilferers of the party. I should not blame them much for taking food, but of course all the others will have less in consequence. We have but a few days' provisions left. We came down still lower on our allowance this morning. Rather weakening work, but it must be done to save life in the end. The idea that cannibalism can be contemplated by any human being troubles me very much."

April 28 was a day, or rather a night, that can never be forgotten by Tyson or any of his party, for from 9 p. m. to 7 a. m., the whole night, each one was compelled to face a fury and fight death with a nerve and endurance which only a desperate love of life could inspire. Resting on a small floe, a gale came up, lashing the ocean into tempestuous billows that rolled over them and swept away their tent, skins, and nearly everything but the boat; this the men held on to with a death-grip, for it was the only thing between them and destruction. All night long they held the boat, which a hundred times was nearly dashed from their weakened grasps by the mad waves, while they were assailed by a battery

**A NIGHT OF
INDESCRIBABLE HORROR.**

of loose ice of all sizes, which bruised their legs in a shocking manner; but they bravely held on throughout the night and until the storm abated, when all were bundled into the boat and rowed away to a more secure floe, where they had the extraordinary good fortune to kill a bear.

April 28 the joyful sight of a steamer burst upon their view, but it was afar off, and vanished like fleeting hope in the darkness, which was near. All the party were now embarked in the boat, watches were posted, and there was an intense nervous strain excited by the hope of seeing another vessel. In the afternoon smoke was descried eight miles to the east, and soon a steamer hove in sight. They pulled with a will toward the vessel, until so beset with ice that they could go no further. They landed on a small piece of ice, hoisted their colors, and fired three volleys from the guns. The sound of three shots was wafted back to them in response, and the vessel headed for them; everyone's heart was leaping with rapture, for rescue seemed at hand, but, like a will-o'-the-wisp, the ship changed her course and faded away.



RELIEF SIGHTED.

They were now in latitude $53^{\circ} 35'$ north, where they might expect to see frequent sails, as fishing vessels are numerous off the Labrador coast, where they were now drifting. At 5 p. m., of April 30, they were overjoyed by the near approach of a steamer, pushing her way through a thick fog. The guns were instantly fired, while the noise of the discharge was increased by a great shout which they set up to attract attention. Being very near, the ship's officers soon perceived the drifting party, and lying to, sent out a boat, into which they were lifted and speedily transferred on board the steamer. It would be impossible to describe the joy felt by Tyson and his fellow-sufferers at finding themselves in warm, comfortable quarters, feasting from a bounteous table, and saved from the very jaws of a

terrible death. The vessel that rescued them was a sealer, the *Tigress*, commanded by Captain Bartlett, who returned with them to St. John's, arriving there May 12. The extraordinary character of this adventure has passed into history as one of the greatest wonders of shipwreck and endurance. For a period of 196 days they were drifting on the ice-floes, during which time they traveled, by the current, 2000 miles.

CHAPTER V.

Darkness is a condition of nature which we instinctively shun ; it seems to curtain the world like a pall of death, or afford concealment for hideous things ; horrible mirages of the brain, and misty apparitions, which imagination conceived and tradition has transmitted. With our natural dread of twelve hours night succeeding a like period of day, what must be the effect of an uninterrupted night of nearly five months? Not clouds and shadows, but the deep shades of changeless darkness, when the moon, in her phases, is the only source of light, save the stars that twinkle like a frost-setting gathering gleams from a setting sun.

NIGHT IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS. Dr. Kane's journal of November 7 reads : "The darkness is coming on with insidious steadiness, and its advances can only be perceived by comparing one day with its fellow of some time back. We still read the thermometer at noonday without a light, and the black masses of the hills are plain for about five hours with their glaring patches of snow ; but all the rest is darkness. Lanterns are always on the spar-deck, and the lard-lamps are never extinguished below. The stars of the sixth magnitude shine out at noonday. Our darkness has ninety days to run before we shall get back again even to the contested twilight of to-day. Altogether, our winter will have been sunless for one hundred and forty days.

"*December 15.*—We have lost the last vestige of our mid-day twilight. We cannot see print, and hardly paper ; the fingers cannot be counted a foot from the eyes. Noon-day and mid-night are alike, and except a vague glimmer on the sky that seems to define the hill outlines to the south, we have nothing to tell us that this Arctic world of ours has a sun. In one week more we shall reach the midnight of the year."

Later he writes : "The influence of this long, intense darkness was most depressing. Even our dogs, although the greater part of them were natives of the Arctic circle, were unable to withstand it. Most of them died from an anomalous form of disease, to which, I am satisfied, the absence of light contributed as much as the extreme cold."

EFFECTS OF PROTRACTED NIGHT. The nervous disorder which destroyed several of his dogs has been described in a previous chapter, but Kane affirms that there were at least three cases of hydrophobia among them, which, he believed, was produced by the protracted night.

While man is not so seriously affected by a long period of darkness as are dogs, cats, and other domestic animals, he does not wholly escape, and frequently succumbs to a melancholia which the Arctic night induces. To ward off this insidious disease, Polar explorers keep their men busy, even if it is only playing fox, leap-frog, or other active pastimes. Cards, checkers, chess, and other games, serve also to occupy the mind, and thus render the body less receptive to the influence of darkness. In every respect an Arctic night is awful, and it tries the strongest constitution, for, aside from scurvy, it is the most

deleterious, exhaustive influence with which Polar travelers have to contend. Beyond the quarters where lie housed the men, there is no sound; the snow, falling soft as shadows, is apparently the only moving thing in creation; if the stillness be broken by a halloo, no echo comes back, and the spell remains yet undisturbed. So perfectly quiet, lonesome, and weirdly stagnant does all the world seem, that it weighs with a wonderful oppressiveness upon the brain and soul alike, until a charnel house would appear more endurable, for in the presence of death the soul finds interest in reflection; spirit would at least be company there for chaotic thoughts.

Another fact, hardly less interesting, is found in the serious effect produced by the eating of ice or snow, the latter particularly. Reference is made to this in a description of the sufferings of Elison, of the Greely expedition. In a Polar atmosphere there is such rapid evaporation of heat from the body that the internal temperature is materially lowered, sometimes as much as two degrees, while in the mouth there is a total absence of caloric, so that snow or ice will not melt within the closed mouth. During such times any attempt to quench thirst by eating snow is followed by results almost identical with that of a piece of highly heated iron held in the mouth; it burns so intensely that the tongue is

speedily reduced to a blistered and then raw condition, just as if the covering, or papillæ, were entirely burned off. Its effects upon the mucous membrane of the mouth are no less disastrous. Many persons tortured by thirst have laid down their lives in the Arctic regions after the most excruciating sufferings, by not heeding the warnings given them against eating snow. Captain Hall, during his expedition to King William Land, in 1869, had some excellent brandy, of so high a proof



AN ESQUIMAUX DOG.

that it would not freeze; and one very cold night, upon camping after a long day's journey, he thoughtlessly took a swallow of the liquor without first warming it, and it burnt his mouth and stomach like boiling water.

The Esquimaux have original ideas about the sun, moon, and stars; the latter serve them as time-pieces, for so closely have they studied their movements that the time of night is reckoned by them with great accuracy. They regard all the bright luminaries of the sky as spirits of the departed, but the sun and moon are brother and sister. The story of their origin is told in the following strange legend:

ESQUIMAUX LEGEND OF THE SUN AND MOON.

In a distant country there once lived an unmarried woman who had several brothers. Being once at a festive gathering, she felt herself suddenly and violently seized by the shoulders. This she well knew was a declaration of love, for such is the custom of her people; but who the man was she could not discover, since the hut was quite dark. There being to her knowledge no men in the village, beside her brothers, she at once suspected that it must be one of these. She broke from him, and, running away, smeared her hand with soot and oil. Upon returning to the hut she was seized again, and this time she blackened one side of the face of her unknown lover. A lighted taper being brought soon afterward, her

suspicions were confirmed. Seizing the taper, she now ran out of the hut, and bounded over the rocks with the fleetness of a deer. Her brother lighted a taper and pursued her, but his light soon went out, yet he still continued the chase, and without having overtaken her they came to the end of the earth. Determined not to be caught, the girl then sprang out into the heavens. Her brother followed her, but he stumbled while in the act of springing, and, before he could recover himself, the object of his pursuit was far away from him. Still bent upon gaining the prize, he continued the race; and from that time until this the sun has been going around and around, and the moon around and around after her, trying still to catch her. The bright light of the sun is caused by the taper which the maiden carries; while the moon, having lost his taper, is cold, and could not be seen but for his sister's light. One side of his face being smeared with soot, is therefore black, while the other side is clean; and he turns one side or the other toward the earth as suits his pleasure.

That cluster of stars in "Ursa Major," which we designate as "the dipper," they call a herd of "*took-took*" (reindeer). The stars of "Orion's belt," seen far away in the south, are seal-hunters who have lost their way. The "Pleiades" are a pack of dogs in pursuit of a bear. Other clusters and other stars have other names. The *aurora borealis* is caused by the spirits at play with one another. Rain is the overflowing of the heavenly lakes, on the evergreen banks of which live the happy spirits who have taken up their abode in the skies, where sunshine and summer are eternal.

CHAPTER VI.

STORY OF THE DELONG EXPEDITION.

The loss of the *Jeannette*, and the long and fatal sufferings of her crew, constitute one of the most painful stories that has ever been told of the mysterious Northern sea.

George W. DeLong was young when he died on the frozen coast-fields of Siberia, but his short life was made up of stirring incidents. Born in New York City in 1844, he received the educational advantages of the Metropolis, but the solicitude of his mother bound him so completely to the fireside that, up to twelve years of age, he had participated in few boyish sports, and was as effeminate as a girl. An accident, by which his ear was badly injured from a blow of a hard snowball, confined him indoors for several months, during which time he read several of Captain Marryat's marine novels, and these gave him a longing for the sea. To all his mother's pleading for him to adopt the profession either of law, medicine, or the ministry, he uttered strong protestations. In 1861, by the exercise of great persistence he secured a cadetship in the Naval Academy at Annapolis, from which he graduated in 1865. His first assignment was as midshipman on the United States steamer *Canandaigua*, on which he made a three years' cruise along the coasts of Europe and Africa, and in the Mediterranean, and upon his return he was promoted to lieutenant. In 1871 he was married to Miss Emma J. Wotton, of Havre, France, the ceremony being performed on a United States man-of-war lying in that harbor. One year later he became executive officer of the *Nantasket*, and in the following year was assigned to the command of the steam launch *Juniata*, which was attached to the North Atlantic squadron, and dispatched to the relief of the steamer *Polaris*, which vessel had been sent out on an expedition to the North Pole under Captain Hall. DeLong brought the *Juniata* to harbor at Upernavik, and from that point conducted a boat journey along the coast, in search of the

Polaris, as far as Cape York. This experience in the Arctic regions inspired him with a passionate desire to command an expedition to search for the North Pole, an ambition which was gratified, in 1876, by James Gordon Bennett purchasing the steamer *Pandora* and placing her at the disposal of DeLong. The *Pandora* was thought to be fairly serviceable

DEPARTURE OF THE EXPEDITION. for the purpose of navigating the Arctic sea, but she was nevertheless thoroughly overhauled, to make her power of resistance to ice-floes as great as possible. This was done at Deptford, after which she was taken to Havre, where, on July 4, she was rechristened the *Jeannette*, and turned over to DeLong. Ten days later the vessel steamed out of Havre Harbor for San Francisco, which voyage occupied 165 days. At San Francisco DeLong received his crew, which was recruited from the ranks of the navy, and the officers designated by the Navy Department.

The *Jeannette* left San Francisco July 8, 1879, and passed through Behring Strait the last of August, headed for Wrangel Land. Two months later she was caught in an ice-pack near Herald Island, $71^{\circ} 28'$ north, where she was so tightly beset that DeLong concluded to go into winter quarters. Although the ice piled up around the vessel in great masses as far

as the eye could reach, yet she constantly drifted northward, whither all the Arctic currents seem to flow. On the nineteenth of January there was a singular breaking up of ice, which squeezed the vessel so tightly that her timbers were sprung and she began leaking badly. All efforts to repair the injury were futile, and to keep her from sinking the pumps had to be worked incessantly. This caused a serious consumption of coal and great anxiety. At length DeLong thought of building a windmill, for pumping purposes, which Melville, the chief engineer, was entrusted to complete. A few days sufficed to construct the new motor, and, to



HOUSES OF WOOD, CANVAS AND FELT ON FRANZ JOSEF'S LAND.

the joy of all, it worked in the most satisfactory manner. The winter held out to an unusual length, and in May there were still no signs of open water, and the drifting northward continued. Observations made on May 30, 1880, showed a latitude of $74^{\circ} 5' 27''$ north, longitude 177° east, which indicated a total drift of nearly three degrees north, but on June 4, DeLong was profoundly astonished to find, from observation, that a sudden change in the drift had occurred, and that it was now setting southward. This continued until June 30, when they had gone back to $72^{\circ} 19' 41''$ north, and $178^{\circ} 27' 30''$ east, when the wind changed and turned the drift northward again.

The *Jeannette* was unfortunate almost from the first day she sailed away from San Francisco, but serious misfortune did not befall her until she stuck fast in the ice-pack so early in her voyage. It is a common thing for vessels to be so caught in

SINKING OF THE JEANNETTE. high latitudes, but usually they get free by the first advent of spring, but the *Jeannette* was held by frozen tethers throughout the entire summer of 1880. The crew were remarkably fortunate, however, in procuring fresh meat, as either bears, seals, or birds were shot every day, and the larder was always bountifully supplied.

Day after day, like Coleridge's ancient mariner, the *Jeannette* drifted, over a sea fast bound, and whither none of the crew could tell. Thus passed the fall of 1879, the whole of 1880, and the spring of 1881, with dull monotony and hopeless longings. At last, on June 10, 1881, the ice suddenly opened alongside the vessel, and she righted to an even keel. There was now a rift through the great field of ice in which the *Jeannette* lay, but her injuries were such that constant pumping was necessary; the gravest danger, however, was to be apprehended from the parted floes, which were liable to come together at any moment, in which event DeLong knew that the vessel would be crushed like an egg-shell. Every man, therefore, trembled with anxiety at the threatened calamity, which appeared impending, and they worked with almost superhuman energy, driving up the detached ice between the floes so as to fill the breach near the ship and relieve her from the pressure should the floes again drift together. DeLong's journal of June 12 reads as follows:

"At 7.30 a. m. the ice commenced to move toward the port side, but after advancing a foot or two came to rest. Employed one watch in hauling heavy floe into a small canal on the port bow, to close it up and receive the greater part of the thrust.

"At 4 p. m. the ice came down in great force all along the port side, jamming the ship hard against the ice on the starboard side, causing her to heel 16° to starboard. From the snapping and cracking of the bunker sides and starting in of the starboard ceiling, as well as the opening of the seams in the ceiling to the width of one and one-fourth inches, it was feared that the ship was about to be seriously endangered, and orders were accordingly given to lower the starboard boats and haul them away from the ship to a safe position on the ice-floe. This was done quietly and without confusion. The ice, in coming in on the port side, also had a movement toward the stern, and this last movement not only raised her port bow, but buried the starboard quarter, and jamming it and the stern against the heavy ice, effectually prevented the ship rising to pressure. Mr. Melville (chief engineer), while below in the engine-room, saw a break across the ship in the wake of the boilers and engines, showing that so solidly were the stern and starboard quarters held by the ice that the ship was breaking in two from the pressure upward exerted on the port bow of the ship. The starboard side of the ship was also evidently broken in, because water was rising rapidly in the starboard coal-bunkers. Orders were now given to land one-half of the pemmican in the deck-house, and all the bread which was on deck, and the sleds and dogs were likewise carried to a position of safety. The ship was heeled 22° to starboard, and was raised forward 4' 6", the entire port bow being visible also to a height of 4' 6" from the forefoot. . . .

**DANGEROUSLY
NIPPED BY THE ICE.**

"At 5 p. m. the pressure was renewed, and continued with tremendous force, the ship cracking in every part. The spar-deck commenced to buckle up, and the starboard side seemed again on the point of coming in. Orders were now given to get out provisions, clothing, bedding, ship's books and papers, and to remove all sick to a place of safety. While engaged in this work another tremendous pressure was received, and at 6 p. m. it was found that the vessel was beginning to fill. From that time forward every effort was devoted to getting provisions, etc., on the ice, and it was not desisted from until the water had risen to the spar-deck, the ship being now heeled to starboard 30° . The starboard side was evidently broken in abreast of the mainmast, and the ship was settling fast. Our ensign had been hoisted at the mizzen, and every preparation made for abandoning the ship, and at 8 p. m. everybody was ordered to leave her. Assembling on the floe, we dragged all our boats and provisions clear of bad cracks, and prepared to camp down for the night."

At three o'clock the following day, June 13, the *Jeannette* sank until her smokestack was barely above water, in which position she was sustained by the ice an hour longer, then she plunged below with a lurch that imparted a swirl to the water like a miniature maelstrom. This accident occurred in latitude $77^{\circ} 14' 57''$ north, longitude $155^{\circ} 58' 45''$ east.

Drifting for nearly two years, imprisoned in an ice-pack, seemed to render DeLong and his party insensible to the new perils which now faced them, for, helplessly cast away as they were, their spirits appeared to rise, and a serenade was improvised

HELPLESS ON to entertain the party on the evening the ship was lost. Provisions
THE WIDE, WIDE SEA. were abundant, so were clothes and other creature comforts, and a respite from the anxieties attending the fate of the ship was improved by a few hours, at least, of perfect relaxation. A comfortable camp was made on the floe, and the next four days were devoted to preparing for a retreat southward, mounting the

boats on sleds, packing provisions, and making sleeping bags. On June 17 the entire party moved southward, with the hope of reaching the New Siberian islands, and from there to make their way by boats to the coast of Siberia. They had five sledges and three boats—two cutters and a whale-boat—which carried 6896 pounds of provisions, besides ammunition, fire-arms, clothing, and other needful sundries. A dreadful march now began, during which hope and despair alternated from day



THE JEANNETTE WRECKED AND ABANDONED.

to day, if not, indeed, from hour to hour. DeLong had only twenty-two dogs, so that every man had to lend his strength to dragging the heavily-weighted sledges. Sometimes one sledge would be left far behind, blocked by some obstruction, which would require a return of the advance party to relieve it, so that it was marching and doubling back, making the advance both tedious and exhausting.

The difficulties of traveling now increased, as openings in the ice became more frequent at the numerous fissures, which were of variable widths, though never broad enough to warrant the rigging up of the boats; the party had to stop and bridge the water space with broken pieces of ice, which was a work of infinite
BOMBARDED
BY CHUNKS OF ICE. trouble and consumed more than half their time. In addition to this, as

July advanced the increase in temperature began to let loose immense floes that form, for some unaccountable reason, at the bottom of the sea; these rise with such force that they break the heavy surface ice and pile it up in huge hummocks, which are often thirty feet high and cover large fields, so that passing over them is like climbing rough, rocky precipices. This traveling was dreadfully exhaustive, and required the men to go over the same ground four times each way, as the full force was needed to move a

single sledge. Lieutenant Danenhower, executive officer, and Lieutenant Chipp, second in command, had been sick since 1880, or almost from the beginning of the expedition, and this manner of traveling so aggravated their illness that they were several times upon the point of succumbing. Danenhower suffered principally from an affection of his eyes, and it was so painful as to prove a severe drain upon his system. Chipp was still more seriously ill, with a debility that left him almost helpless, yet so great was his pluck and self-denial, that he insisted on walking, to relieve the hospital sled, though he could scarcely take a score of steps without falling from sheer weakness.

When the entire party was almost exhausted from their hard journey and exposure, from lying in wet blankets, as the ice surface was constantly covered with shallow water, caused by slow melting under the sun's rays, their low spirits were suddenly revived on July 29, by the discovery of land in latitude $76^{\circ} 38' 17''$ north, longitude $148^{\circ} 20'$ east. After great exertion this land was reached, and found to be an island of considerable size and possessing many valuable products, among which were bituminous coal in great abundance, several different kinds of succulent grasses, beautiful amethysts, hematite, from which brown metallic paint is made, and myriads of birds, such as dovekies, and murre, which nest there.

Among the singular discoveries made on the island were quantities of driftwood, pieces of which were partially burned, while others showed axe-marks; there were also flowers of different varieties, and a live butterfly was found that had the appearance of belonging to the tropics. This strange piece of land was taken possession of in the name of the United States, and named Bennett Island, in honor of the patron of the expedition.

DeLong remained on Bennett Island until August 7, when open water was discovered southward, which, with the beautiful weather they were then having, prompted him to abandon the island and take to the sea in the boats.

The provisions were equally distributed among the three boats, and at 9 a. m. the party embarked, with four men rowing each boat. The dogs had been reduced in number from twenty-two to eight, ten being shot as useless on account of fits, and four escaping. DeLong issued an order appointing Melville to the command of the whale-boat, while the second cutter was given in charge of Chipp, DeLong himself remaining with the first cutter. In this order he instructed them to keep as near him as possible, but in case of separation to make for the Lena River, up which they were to ascend until a Russian settlement should be reached, then to open communication with the government. Melville was instructed to obey the orders of Chipp, should they remain together after separating from DeLong.

After embarking they made better progress than before reaching Bennett Island, but their labors were certainly not lessened, for they met an ice-floe at nearly every mile, over which they were forced to drag their boats, sometimes for nearly as great a distance as they had made by water; this required continual loading and unloading of the boats, so that in a week after leaving the island they had progressed barely forty miles. This gave DeLong much anxiety, for he had now subsistence for only thirty-eight days, and at the rate he was then traveling starvation promised to overtake the party before they could reach Siberia, unless they should be more fortunate in finding game than they had been since the *Jeannette* sank. Good fortune drove them upon the Siberian Islands, where a small quantity of game was obtained, but pushing ahead to Semenooski Island, they were still more fortunate, killing a number of deer and ptarmigan, upon which they feasted several days most bountifully.

On the twelfth of September the boats were caught in a terrible gale, which threatened to swamp them, and would have done so but for unremitting bailing and pumping, which barely kept them afloat. Being at the mercy of the waves, the boats
A SEPARATION OF separated, and when the gale subsided each boat was alone, and they did
THE BOATS. not meet again. DeLong reached the Lena Delta September 19, with scarcely two days' provisions (full rations) left, and set out to find a Russian settlement, the nearest being, as he supposed, about ninety-five miles. His boat grounded nearly a mile from shore, so that the men were forced to wade through the icy water and carry their things, thus subjecting them to the most dreadful exposure. There was plenty of driftwood along the shore, however, and a large fire soon dried their clothes and served to give them new hope.

September 21, DeLong's party started up the Lena River, but owing to the extreme illness of three of the men, Ericksen, Boyd, and Ah Sam, it was impossible to make more than five miles per day, for there were no means at hand for hauling the sick. After thus traveling for two days they came to two log huts, one of which was new, but there were no signs of life about them. DeLong took possession of these, and decided to remain there while Noros and Nindemann were sent out to find relief. At this time provisions for only two days remained, so that the gravest fears were excited lest starvation should overtake them; deer tracks were discernible in numerous places, and one herd was seen, but it was impossible to secure a shot.

The sore trouble which now afflicted them caused DeLong to leave the huts and proceed, in spite of the difficulties, as they could not hope for speedy relief except by the killing of some game. Poor Ericksen's condition was terrible; his foot, which had been frozen, sloughed away so much of the skin as to expose the sinews and muscles, and yet he was forced to travel and carry a load of nearly forty pounds. When their last provisions were consumed, the most extraordinary good luck befell them; a herd of reindeer was sighted and three large bucks killed. This saved the party from starvation, by giving them food sufficient for three days longer.

Thus they marched until October 6, when Ericksen, whose feet had been amputated two days before, died, and was buried in the Lena River, the ground being so hard frozen that digging a grave was impossible. Here, too, the party were in great danger from starvation again, as the only food now left was a few pounds of their last dog, which had been killed the day before.

The record from October 10 is a ghastly one, which excites the deepest compassion. In the absence of food DeLong served out half an ounce of alcohol or glycerine to each man. Alexey, who had been their main dependence, as it was he who
STARVATION AND had done the hunting, succumbed from exhaustion and starvation on the
MUTILATION. seventeenth, followed three days later by Kaack and Lee, who died from the same cause. Prayers were read over their bodies, but the remainder of the party were too weak to give them any kind of burial. Iversen died on the twenty-eighth, Dressler on the twenty-ninth, and Boyd, Gortz, and Collins on the thirtieth. At this point DeLong became so feeble that he could no longer keep his journal. The rest of this painful story can only be surmised by the subsequent discovery of the Lieutenant's body lying beneath the snow in the midst of his forever mute comrades.

Nindemann and Noros, in trying to obtain relief, in obedience to their commander, went out upon a march over a trackless and desolate region, to encounter hardships fully as great as those under which DeLong and the men who remained with him succumbed.

Having no food with them on departing, they had to take the chances of finding it on the way. But day after day followed without either of them seeing any game, and to stay the gnawing pangs of hunger they had to subsist on tea made of the Arctic willow, and pieces of their seal-skin clothes. This diet, dreadfully unpalatable, brought on dysentery, which so exhausted them that they abandoned all hope and felt that death was near. They left DeLong October 9, and so floundered about, in their extreme weakness, that by October 27 they had hardly traveled thirty miles; but through God's providence they reached a collection of huts, called Ku Mark Surka, where some Russian exiles were found, who treated them with the greatest kindness and supplied their immediate needs. The two men endeavored with all their ability to make the Russians understand the terrible plight in which they had left DeLong and his party, but their efforts were without avail, as sign language was all that could be used. The commandant at Ku Mark Surka finally, by signs, induced Noros to write something, which being done, the Russian picked up the paper and, hurrying out of the hut, disappeared. He returned the next day, and to their astonishment and joy was accompanied by their late companion, Melville. The object which the Russian had in securing the writing was now apparent: Melville had arrived at a neighboring village several days before, and the Russian, who knew of the fact, was anxious to learn if Noros and Nindemann belonged to Melville's party. Experiences were quickly exchanged, in which Melville told of the sufferings endured by himself and his men after parting from DeLong and Chipp. He reached the Lena Delta after several narrow escapes from being swamped, and proceeded up one of the river's mouths. He had been lucky in meeting natives just as his provisions were exhausted, and these supplied him and his party with food, and piloted him to the village of Bulem, where he was stopping when the writing of Noros reached him.

The terrible condition of DeLong was soon told to Melville, who, without a moment's delay, prepared to go to his relief. He could speak the Russian language sufficiently to make himself readily understood, and he was thereby enabled to enlist such assistance as was necessary. Melville took with him Nindemann and two exiles, with provisions for a ten days' journey, while Noros, Danenhower, and the other survivors, were sent on to Yakoutsk, where they arrived December 17.

**DEAD ON SIBERIA'S
WASTE OF SNOW.**

Snow-storms, which had prevailed nearly every day since October, had so completely covered up all traces of Noros and Nindemann's trail, that Melville had nothing to guide him in his search for DeLong, who, with his comrades, now lay dead beneath a deep winding-sheet of snow. For twenty-three days, however, he continued the search, going on reduced rations until he was in the greatest danger of starvation, but still refusing to abandon his efforts to find his former comrades until the exiles refused to go any further, and the dogs which drew his sledge were famishing. In this time Melville had traveled six hundred and sixty-three miles, and passed almost within a stone's throw of the place where DeLong lay dead, but without finding the bodies, or any signs of Lieutenant Chipp and his party. He could do nothing more, except to send a dispatch to St. Petersburg, and inform the Russians in the district that two parties of his countrymen had been lost about the Lena Delta, and ask them to search for their bodies. This he did, and then proceeded on to Yakoutsk, where he arrived December 30.

Melville put himself in communication with the American Minister in St. Petersburg, giving a full account, by telegram, of the misfortunes of the expedition. Determined to leave nothing undone to find his lost comrades, he then sent Danenhower, whose eyes were

in a dreadful condition, to the United States, with all the others, except Nindemann and Bartlett, whom he retained to assist him in the search which he intended to renew the following spring. During his stay at Yakoutsck he received a dispatch from the Secretary of the Navy, instructing him to omit no effort and to spare no expense in securing the safety of the lost explorers. This dispatch being shown to the Governor of Yakoutsck, that officer, with a spirit of great generosity, placed at Melville's disposal all the money and provisions and any number of men that might be required. Being greatly facilitated in his efforts, Melville speedily collected teams, men, and provisions, with which he pushed northward to Bulem again, which he reached February 18. A month was now spent getting dogs and establishing depots of supplies at the necessary rendezvous.

May 16, 1882, he set out with Nindemann upon his search, but they were forced to return by a terrible snow-storm, in which they came near being lost. After the storm had abated they started again, and traveled over a very large district before finding any traces of the route which DeLong had followed. At length they came to the river, and going out upon a headland leading into a bay, they discovered a fire-bed six feet in diameter, and from its evident use as a signal they knew it must have been one of DeLong's camping places.



DISCOVERING THE REMAINS OF DE LONG AND COMPANIONS.

About five hundred yards from where the fire had been made, Melville noticed the points of four sticks standing up out of the snow about eighteen inches, and lashed together with a piece of rope. Making a careful examination of this place, he first found a tea-kettle, then an arm was seen protruding from the snow, and, hastily scraping the snow away, he was horrified to find the body of his late commander, Lieutenant

DeLong. This convinced him that the death-camp was near, and a little additional effort soon uncovered the bodies of Dr. Ambler and Ah Sam, the cook. The bodies were all carefully taken from under the snow and laid side by side, where they were left under a piece of old tent cloth, while the search for the others was continued. It was not until the following day, however, that the blown down tent was discovered, as it lay buried in a drift of snow nearly twenty feet deep. The tent was several hundred yards distant from the spot where DeLong lay, and under its frozen folds the remains of three more victims of the expedition were found. These six bodies were conveyed to a knoll of ground about eight miles from where they were found, and there buried in one large box, made from the timbers of DeLong's cutter. A cairn of stones was erected over the grave, in the apex of which they placed a cross, which made the grave a conspicuous object for several miles, thus rendering it easy to find. Having performed these last sad duties, the indefatigable and heroic Melville proceeded to search for Lieutenant Chipp and his party, of whom nothing had been seen or heard since the separation of the boats in the fatal gale. He made a most thorough search of the Lena Delta, and along a hundred miles of the Siberian coast, but could find no trace of the missing men. He persisted as long as there was a probability, or even hope, of success, and then returned to Yakoutsck sore in heart over his failure.

In the meantime, after the publication of the dispatches which he had forwarded to the United States, several parties had been sent from this country to aid in the search for the lost explorers, and one of these, commanded by Lieutenant Harber, was directed to bring the bodies of DeLong and his heroic comrades **BRINGING THE HEROIC DEAD TO AMERICA.** back to America for interment, the sum of \$25,000 having been appropriated by the government for that purpose. On reaching Yakoutsck, Lieutenant Harber procured reindeer sledges, and proceeding to the graves of DeLong and his companions, the bodies were taken up, placed on the sledges, and conveyed to Yakoutsck, arriving there early in 1883. Here they were placed in caskets made specially for their reception, and then brought back to America, where they were received by the Secretary of the Navy. On the twenty-second of February the bodies were taken from the Brooklyn Navy Yard across the bay to the Battery, from whence they were escorted through the streets of New York by battalions of marines and regular troops, several regiments of militia, a number of societies, and a vast concourse of citizens, who thus manifested their admiration and respect for the dead heroes. They were then returned to the navy yard, where they lay in state for twenty-four hours, the day being observed by a general suspension of business in New York and Brooklyn. On the following day the remains of Collins were taken to the Cathedral, where mass was said for the repose of his soul, after which the body was placed on board the steamer *Chicago*, and sent to his native land, Ireland, for burial. On the twenty-third the other bodies were conveyed to the Church of the Holy Trinity, where services were held, after which the remains of Commander DeLong were consigned to a final resting-place in Woodburn Cemetery. The body of Dr. Ambler was taken to Alexandria, Va., for interment, while that of seaman Boyd was given to his friends in Philadelphia.

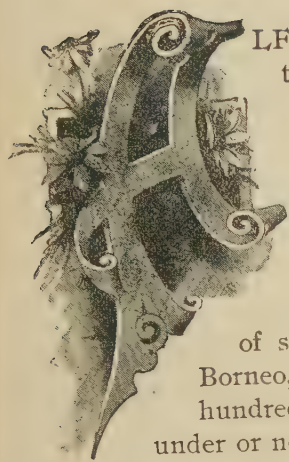
Lieutenant Chipp, and the seven brave men who rode with him to death in the second cutter, were never seen or heard of again after the boats separated in the gale. Thus ended the expedition that sailed away amid the incense of hope, promise, and the cheers of a multitude that waved benedictions to the *Jean-* **LOSS OF THE CHIPP PARTY.** *nette* as she gallantly steamed out of San Francisco harbor, July 8, 1879. Thus do our ambitions often rise in an atmosphere of glorious expectation and confiding faith, only to fall into an abyss of impenetrable gloom and black despair; but good intentions, which develop heroic purposes, are never uselessly expended, for, even in failure, they leave a spark that will kindle for others the noble flame which had burned for them in vain.

"So sleep the brave, who sink to rest
By all their country's wishes blest;
When Spring, with dewy fingers cold,
Returns to deck their hallowed mold,
She there shall grace a sweeter sod
Than Fancy's feet have ever trod."



TRAVELING OVER THE ICE HUMMOCKS.

THE MALAY ARCHIPELAGO.



ALFRED RUSSEL WALLACE, an English naturalist of great reputation, has added to the sum of geographic knowledge a vast amount of information respecting the Malay Archipelago, in which region of the earth he made a protracted tour of exploration, extending over eight years. This archipelago proper, the largest group of islands, which include also the greatest islands in size on the globe, comprises the Indo-Malay islands, the Timour group, the Celebes group, the Moluccas, and the Papuan group, all lying north and northwest of Australia, between that continent and the countries of southeastern Asia. The largest of these islands are, New Guinea, Borneo, Sumatra, Java, and Celebes, in the order named, though there are hundreds of islands in the several groups. This extensive archipelago lies under or near the equator, and being bathed by the tepid water of the great tropical ocean, the region enjoys a climate more uniformly hot and moist than

any other portion of the globe, and therefore presents a profusion of natural productions that are elsewhere unknown. In some respects it is the most wonderful district of the earth. It not alone teems with animal life, but nowhere else does nature revel in such gorgeous hues and enrapturing beauty. Flowers bejewel the prolific soil, not only in lowly beds carpeting the earth, but also ascend trailing vines and gather in clusters of richest coloring to bedeck the trees. Insects flash like prismatic fires from flower to flower, and tree to tree, their iridescent hues reflecting the lambent sunlight like a million of diamonds. Here alone are found the birds of paradise, those gorgeous plumaged warblers whose coats seem fresh with the glory of heaven, or a thousand rainbows. On every side the eye is charmed with scenes of nature more delectable than a shifting kaleidoscope; in short, it is a region of pure delight, so far as the sight can measure it, but yet not wholly free from lurking dangers, which seem to be added by beneficent design, in order that the eye may not weary by gazing always on the beautiful.

EXUBERANCE OF NATURE.

Of the many wonderful things which Mr. Wallace describes as having seen during his visits to the several islands, one of the most remarkable is a flying frog, which he found in Borneo. This most curious reptile lives among the trees, and in its habits is not wholly unlike our common flying squirrel, for its food is very similar and its mode of flight almost identical. The body is about four or five inches long, of a deep shimmering green color, the under surface and the inner toes yellow, while the webs are black rayed with yellow. The webs of each hind foot, when expanded, cover a surface of four square inches, the webs of all feet together about twelve square inches, and its body is capable of considerable inflation. It literally flies with its feet, very much like the action of swimming. Another creature, called the flying dragon, is provided with a membrane attached to its side, which it may spread at will and sail through the air at a slight decline for a considerable distance.

A FLYING FROG.

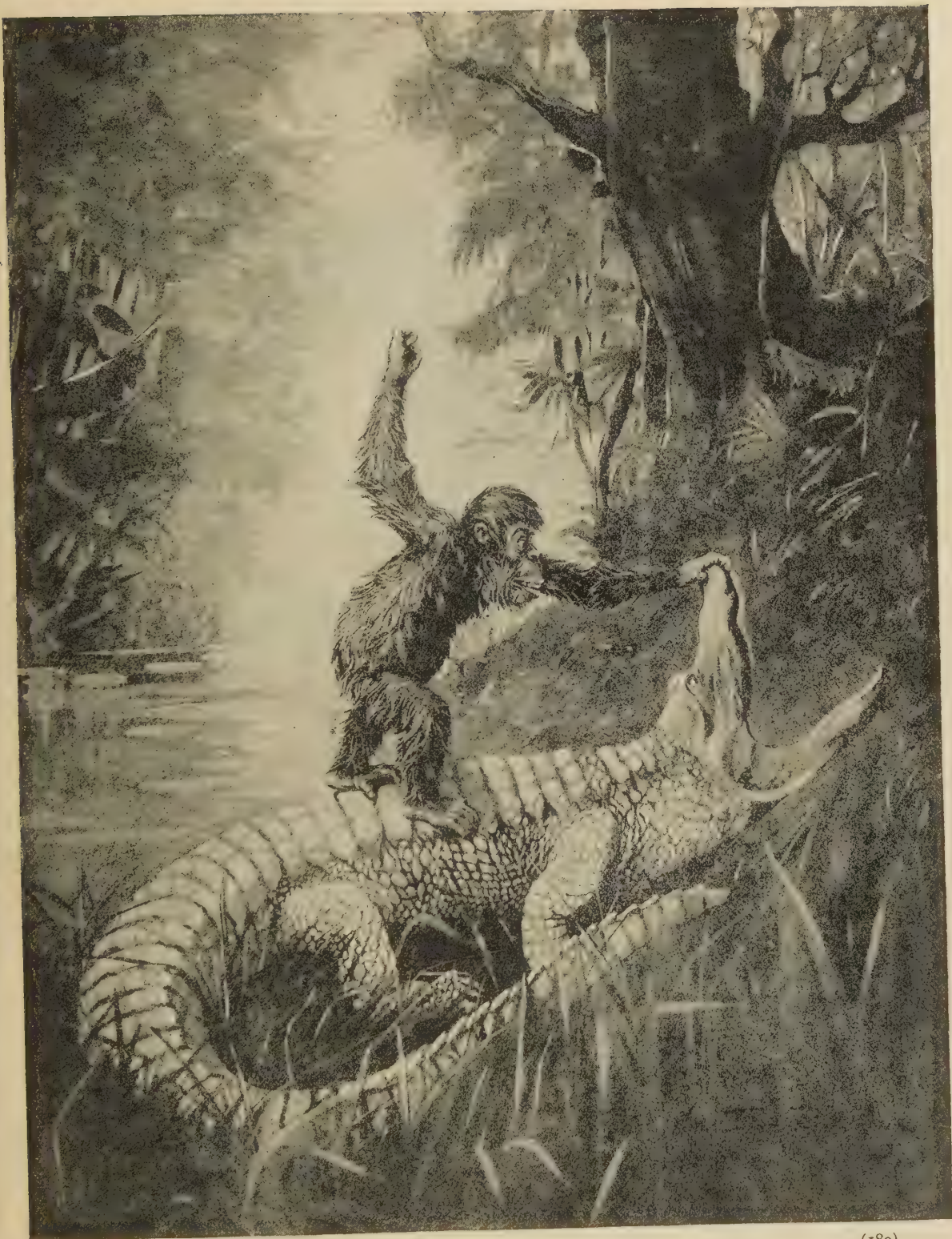
Mr. Wallace spent much of his time in Borneo hunting the great man ape—Orang-Outang—specimens of which he was anxious to obtain for his friend, Charles Darwin, and the British Museum. This animal is found in great numbers in some parts of Borneo, but to enable him to be more successful in the hunt Mr. **HUNTING THE ORANG-OUTANG.** Wallace employed some Dyaks (natives) to accompany him, as they were familiar with the habits of the animal. On the first day's hunt two medium-sized orang-outangs—which are called *mias* by the natives—were killed, and a small baby one captured. It was so young that, as a substitute for milk, Wallace fed it on rice-water and sugar; but though it ate heartily enough and seemed very tame, it did not grow in the least, and at the end of three months died.



AN ORANG-OUTANG FAMILY.

On the following day a monster male was met with in a deep jungle, and though Wallace repeatedly wounded it, yet so tenacious of life was the animal that it did not succumb until both legs were broken, one hip bone and the root of the spine completely shattered, and two bullets were flattened in its neck and jaw. This monster measured four feet two inches in height, and the spread of its arms was seven feet three inches.

About ten days after this, some Dyaks came to tell Wallace that the day before a *mias* had nearly killed one of their companions. A few miles down the river there was a Dyak house, and the inhabitants saw a large orang feeding on the young shoots of a palm by the river-side. On being alarmed, he retreated toward the jungle which was close by, and a number of men, armed with spears and choppers, ran out to intercept him. The man who was in front tried to run his spear through the animal's body, but the *mias* grabbed it in



AN ORANG-OUTANG KILLING A CROCODILE.

his hands, and in an instant got hold of the man's arm, which he seized in his mouth, making his teeth meet in the flesh above the elbow, which he tore and lacerated in a dreadful manner. Had not the others been close behind him, the man

**ADVENTURES WITH
THE MIAS.**

would have been more seriously injured, if not killed, as he was quite powerless, but they soon destroyed the creature with their spears and choppers. The man remained ill for a long time, and never fully recovered the use of his arm. The Dyaks all declare that the mias is never attacked by any animal in the forest, with two rare exceptions; and the accounts received of these are so

curious that they are given as related by two Dyak chiefs, who lived all their lives in the places where the animal is most abundant. "No animal is strong enough to hurt the mias," said one of the chiefs, "and the only creature he ever fights with is the crocodile. When there is no fruit in the jungle, he goes to seek food on the banks of the river, where there are plenty of young shoots that he likes, and fruits that grow close to the water. Then the crocodile sometimes tries to seize him, but the mias gets upon him and beats him with his hands and feet, and tears him and kills him." The chief added that he had once seen such a fight, and that he believed the mias was always the victor.

Another chief relates that the mias has no enemies; no animals dare attack it but the crocodile and the python. He always kills the crocodile by main strength, standing upon it, pulling open its jaws, and ripping up its throat. If a python attacks a mias, he seizes it with his hands, and then bites it, and soon kills it. The mias is very strong; there is no animal in the jungle so strong as he.

In the island of Lombock, which is separated from Java by a narrow strait,

there is a singular people who are peculiar in their remarkable disposition to commit suicide; yet the word is a misnomer, for they do not kill themselves, but invite death in a manner that is unaccountably strange. The least misfortune, such as loss at gaming,

**THE LOMBOCK
SUICIDES.**

inability to pay debts, insults, sickness, loss of friends, and similar annoyances of life, often provoke them to "run a muck," as they call it. The person thus troubled seizes a sword or spear and runs through the village killing everybody he meets, making no distinction between friend or foe, age or sex, and continues his indiscriminate slaughter until the people set upon and kill him in self-defence. There is some superstitious fear which restrains them from committing suicide, and another superstition which incites them to murder and invite their own death at the hands of the community.



ORANG-OUTANGS IN THE FOREST.

Lombok is governed by a Rajah, who has established some very severe laws, as well as queer ones. Theft is punished with death, without regard for the value of the article stolen. A person found in the house of another after dark, without permission, may be killed and thrown into the street. The men are woefully jealous, and this feeling is a fruitful source of crime. A wife must not accept a cigar, flower, or the simplest article from a gentleman; should she be detected in so doing her life must pay the penalty.



A HUNTER SEIZED BY AN ORANG-OUTANG.

Infidelity is punished by tying the woman and her paramour back to back and throwing them into the sea, where they are quickly devoured by sharks which infest the waters.

Snakes, though not particularly numerous in the Archipelago, are wonderfully sociable, preferring houses to trees and caves, so that it is not an unusual thing for a family to be seriously disturbed by a huge boa, which has stealthily gained entrance to the dwelling.

Wallace met with one of these unbidden guests while on Amboyna Island, which he describes as follows :

"One night, about nine o'clock, I heard a curious noise and rustling overhead, as if some animal were crawling slowly over the thatch. The noise soon ceased, and I thought no more about it and went to bed soon afterward. The next afternoon, being rather tired with my day's work, I was lying on the couch with a book in my hand, when, gazing upward, I saw a large mass of something overhead which I had not noticed before. Looking more carefully, I could see yellow and black marks, and thought it must be a tortoise-shell put up there out of the way, between the ridge-pole and the roof. Continuing to gaze, it suddenly resolved itself into a large snake, compactly coiled up in a kind of knot ; and I could detect his head and



TYPES OF THE NATIVES OF BORNEO.

bright eyes in the very centre of the folds. The noise of the evening before was now explained. A python had climbed up one of the posts of the house, and had made his way under the thatch within a yard of my head, and taken up a comfortable position in the roof—and I had slept soundly all night directly under him.

"I called to my two boys, who were skinning birds below, and said : 'Here's a big snake in the roof ;' but as soon as I had shown it to them they rushed from the house and begged me to come out directly. Finding they were too much afraid to do anything, we called some of the laborers in the plantation, and soon had half a dozen men in consultation outside. One of these, a native of Bouru, where there are a great many snakes, said he would get him out, and proceeded to work in a business-like manner. He made a strong noose of rattan, and with a long pole in the other hand poked at the snake, which then

began slowly to uncoil itself. He then managed to slip the noose over its head, and getting it well on to the body, dragged the animal down. There was a great scuffle as the snake coiled round the chairs and posts to resist his enemy, but at length the man caught hold of its tail, rushed out of the house (running so fast that the creature seemed quite confounded) and tried to strike its head against a tree. He missed, however, and let go, and the snake got under a dead trunk close by. It was again poked out, and again the Bouru man caught hold of its tail, and running away quickly dashed its head with a swing against a tree, and it was then easily killed with a hatchet. It was about twelve feet long, and very thick, capable of doing much mischief, and of swallowing a dog or a child."

A singular tree grows in the island of Ceram, called the sago palm, the trunk of which provides most excellent food after passing through a process of beating and washing, which dissolves the pith from the trunk. Water is then poured on the pith, which is kneaded and pressed against a strainer till the starch is dissolved and has passed through, when the fibrous refuse is thrown away. The water, charged with sago starch, passes on to a trough, with a depression in the centre, where the sediment is deposited, the surplus water trickling off by a shallow outlet. The sago thus gathered is taken out of the trough and dried into cylinders of about thirty pounds weight. It makes excellent bread and delicious cakes, particularly when eaten with butter and a little sugar.

It is truly an extraordinary sight to witness a whole tree-trunk, perhaps twenty feet long and four or five in circumference, converted into food with so little labor and preparation. A good-sized tree will produce thirty toman, or bundles of thirty pounds each, and each toman will make sixty cakes of three to the pound. Two of these cakes are as much as a



DYAK WARRIORS.

man can eat at one meal, and five are considered a full day's allowance; so that reckoning a tree to produce 1800 cakes, weighing 600 pounds, it will supply a man with food for a whole year. The labor to produce this is very moderate. Two men will finish a tree in five days, and two women will bake the whole into cakes in five days more; but the raw sago will keep very well, and can be baked as wanted, so that we may estimate that in ten days a man may produce food for the whole year. This is on the supposition that he possesses sago trees of his own, for they are now all private property. If he does not he has to pay about two dollars for one; and as labor there is ten cents a day, the total cost of a year's food for one man is about three dollars. The effect of this cheapness of food is



NATIVES OF TIMOR-LAUT.

decidedly prejudicial, for the inhabitants of the sago country are never so well off as those where rice is cultivated. Many of these people have neither vegetables nor fruit, but live almost entirely on sago and a little fish. Having few occupations at home they wander about on petty trading or fishing expeditions to the neighboring islands; and, as far as the comforts of life are concerned, are much inferior to the wild Hill Dyaks of Borneo, or to many of the more barbarous tribes of the Archipelago.

As Wallace extended his journey eastward he found the people in feature and habit greatly changed, and that the birds wore more beautiful plumage. At the Abu Islands, near New Guinea, he met the original Papuans, who compose one of the most distinct and strongly marked races of the earth. They are intensely black, but with this exception they very little resemble negroes, for all their features, except the nose, which is aquiline with large nostrils, greatly resemble the Caucasian. They have no idea of a hereafter, profess no kind of religion, are not even superstitious, have no laws, and yet they are an apparently happy and contented people, free from vice. They re-

cognize only the relationship which commerce gives, and therefore the importance of preserving peace and practicing honesty. Concerning these people, Mr. Wallace writes:

"Here, as among most savage people with whom I have dwelt, I was delighted with the beauty of the human form—a beauty of which stay-at-home civilized people can scarcely have any conception. What are the finest Grecian statues to the living, moving, breathing men I saw daily around me? The unrestrained grace of the naked savage as he goes about his daily occupations, or lounges at his ease, must be seen to be understood; and a youth bending his bow is the perfection of manly beauty. The women, however, except in

extreme youth, are by no means so pleasant to look at as the men. Their strongly marked features are very unfeminine, and hard work, privations, and very early marriages soon destroy whatever of beauty or grace they may for a short time possess. Their toilet is very simple, but also, I am sorry to say, very coarse and disgusting. It consists solely of a mat of plaited strips of palm-leaves, worn tight around the body, and reaching from the hips to the knees. It seems not to be changed till worn out, is seldom washed, and is generally very dirty. This is the universal dress, except in a few cases where Malay 'sarongs' have come into use. Their frizzly hair is tied in a bunch at the back of the head. They delight in combing, or rather forking it, using for that purpose a large wooden fork with four diverging prongs, which answers the purpose of separating and arranging the long, tangled, frizzly mass of cranial vegetation much better than any comb could do. The only ornaments of the women are ear-rings and necklaces, which they arrange in various tasteful ways."

Speaking of the remarkable honesty of the Papuans, Mr. Wallace says: "Toward the

end of September it became absolutely necessary for me to return, in order to make our homeward voyage before the end of the east monsoon. Most of the men who had taken payment from me had brought the birds they had agreed for. One poor fellow had been so unfortunate as not to get one, and he very honestly brought back the axe he had received in advance; another who had agreed for six, brought me the fifth



RED-BIRD OF PARADISE.



PHILIPPINE ISLANDERS.

two days before I was to start, and went off immediately to the forest again to get the other. He did not return, however, and we loaded our boat, and were just on the point of starting, when he came running down after us holding up a bird, which he handed to me, saying with great satisfaction, 'Now I owe you nothing.' These were remarkable and quite unexpected instances of honesty among savages, where it would have been very easy for them to have been dishonest without fear of detection or punishment."

The island of Java is more thickly populated than any others of the Archipelago, and the people are more nearly civilized, owing to the fact that this island enjoys a large trade with the Dutch who have settled along the coast in considerable numbers. The city

of Batavia, which has a population of nearly 200,000, is largely composed of Europeans. The principal large animals of Java are the tiger, tapir, and a small species of rhinoceros, which latter frequently visits interior villages in quest of food, but it rarely shows any disposition to fight.

The tigers of Java are similar to those of India, being savage and bold. Many persons are destroyed by them annually. During Wallace's visit to the island he entered a village where a man-eating tiger had invaded a house and carried off a boy the day before. Nearly the entire village was in arms, ready to pursue the savage beast. The natives, armed only with spears, surrounded a



ARMS AND UTENSILS OF THE PAPUANS.

dense jungle, where they believed the animal lay concealed, and began beating it in a rather reckless manner. The tiger was roused at length, and, finding itself surrounded, made a savage attack, but a half-dozen natives received it on their spears and killed it without sustaining any injury themselves.

Near the east coast of Java there are found vast ruins of an ancient civilization, such as elegantly sculptured figures, forts, palaces, baths, aqueducts, and temples, the latter having been at one time decorated with the most extravagantly rich

WONDERFUL RUINS. and delicate sculpture work. On the mountain of Gunong Prau are the ruins of a magnificent temple covering a large elevated plateau.

To reach this temple four flights of steps were cut in the solid stone of the mountain side, each flight consisting of more than one thousand steps. These gigantic works will

doubtless forever remain a mystery; they show the deteriorating effects of time, and rude houses of bamboo and thatch occupy the site of the ancient temple. The natives regard these ruins as the undoubted productions of giants or demons.

New Guinea lies immediately north of Australia, from which it is separated by Torres Strait, which is only ninety miles in width. Since Australia is classed as a continent, New Guinea is the largest island in the world, and certainly one of the most interesting regions of the earth. Yet, with all of this, it is a *terra incognita*, no explorer having ever penetrated it beyond a distance of fifteen miles from the coast. That it has a salubrious climate toward the interior is attested by the lofty, snow-capped mountains which may be seen from the sea, and the numerous large rivers which pour their sparkling waters into the ocean.

It is remarkable that this great island, which has been known since the year 1636, has

never been explored, though small Dutch colonies have existed on its southern coast for nearly one hundred years. Frequent attempts have been made to advance into the interior, but always without success, owing entirely to the fact that the parties were not properly equipped, or of insufficient strength to give them confidence to proceed.

The Papuans, who occupy New Guinea, are uncivilized, but they are much in advance of all other barbaric tribes in many particulars. They live in houses fairly comfortable, resting on a foundation of up-



HAIR ORNAMENTS OF THE PAPUANS.



HOUSES ON THE COAST OF CERAM.

right posts which elevate them eight or ten feet above the ground. The place of building is usually over streams of water, and the flooring is made of bamboo with interstices left, through which all refuse is thrown, so that, using the streams to carry off all obnoxious

matter, the villages are always clean. They have a novel instrument for measuring time, and are the only savage people known who ever devised any means for this purpose, or who ever conceived the idea of dividing the days into hours. The primitive clock of the Papuans consists of the half of a cocoanut-shell, through the bottom of which a small hole is made.

This shell is placed in a basin of water, and as it receives a delicate jet gradually settles until it sinks at the expiration of one hour, causing a bubbling sound, which attracts the attention of anyone standing near. This shell is their only measure of time, but it suggests the idea of a clock, from which a more elaborate time-piece might be made.

The natives of New Guinea are generally of a fierce character, and cannibalism is sometimes practiced, especially by interior tribes, but only the bodies of enemies are devoured. New Guinea supports a profuse vegetation; lying, as it does, wholly within the equatorial region, but animal life is not very abundant. Though separated from Australia by a narrow strait, it has few of the creatures, either bird or mammal, found in that island continent, and no savage animals range its jungles. Birds of Paradise, however, are plentiful and of great variety, covered with a plumage as beautiful



THE MONSTER-FACED BAT.

as the robes of Iris, and the dense woods are also animated by myriads of insects little less gorgeously arrayed. Bats of many kinds are found in New Guinea, nearly all fruit eaters, at least one of which is as hideous as it is remarkable, as the illustrations herewith will show. This extraordinary creature is about the size of its congener, the flying fox, which it resembles except the head, which is horrific to a degree. The vulgar name, "monster-faced" (*Hypsignathus*), has been appropriately applied, for a more dreadful countenance has not been seen, yet it is harmless in fact and exceedingly timid. Some species are said to have a spread of wing equal to five feet, but generally the length of body does not exceed one foot, and from tip to tip the measurement is three feet.

Captain Paget, who visited the island in 1871, declares that he found many of the natives wearing anklets and armlets of beaten gold, and that he saw a chief who bore a club made of the same precious metal. Not being able to converse with them, they misconstrued his gestures and fled to the hills, where it was considered inexpedient to follow them. This incident is mentioned as furnishing an additional incentive for a thorough exploration of the island, which has partially been accomplished within the last few years (1898), and no doubt it will be comparatively well known by the end of the century.



HEAD OF THE HYPSIGNATHUS.

THE SOUTH AMERICAN TROPICS.



HERE is infinite interest, a singular charm about the chill and frozen desolation of the Polar regions, which hardy adventurers are stimulated to explore for the glory that attends their achievements, but the tropical world must ever take precedence, because of its more prolific life, both animal and vegetable, and because it presents more anomalous and curious features than other parts of the globe. Indeed, in the tropics there seems to be a superabundance of growth, which led Sir Thomas Buckle to declare: "Amid this pomp and splendor of nature no place is left for man. He is reduced to insignificance by the majesty with which he is surrounded. The forces that oppose him are so formidable that he has never been able to make headway against them, never able to rally against their accumulated pressure. The whole of Brazil, notwithstanding its immense apparent advantages, has always remained entirely uncivilized; its inhabitants wandering savages, incompetent to resist those obstacles which the very bounty of nature has put in their way."

In the tropics we have two directly opposite effects of the sun, one tending toward the multiplication of life, while the other operates to destroy it. In no other part of the globe do we find great deserts like that of Sahara, or such pestilential vapors as continually arise from a profuse vegetation which is as rapid in its decomposition as in its growth; in no other zone are there such destructive earthquakes and storms, nor does disease stalk with such dreadful fatality in any other division of the earth. Another characteristic of the tropics is found in the size and ferociousness of its wild animals, whether beasts, birds, or reptiles, which find their homes either in the deep jungles or on the craggy peaks of great mountains, where the most intrepid hunter cannot pursue them. But there are many other interesting features found in the tropical zone which should be understood before we proceed to a description of the animal life found within its limits.

The lands lying within the tropics comprise a portion of Mexico, all of Central America, and nearly all of South America, Africa, the West India Islands, Polynesia, and about one-half of Australia. The very great excess of water over land within the tropics is one of the most important facts in physical geography, for, were the proportions reversed, there would be a like reduction of growth and a corresponding amount of sterility; without water there can be neither vegetable nor animal life. All the water that gushes up in fountains or swells into brooks and rivers comes from the ocean, whence it is raised by evaporation and carried along unseen channels of the air to be precipitated in the form of rain or snow, sometimes thousands of miles distant from the place whence it was drawn up. This water when first evaporated has the salty taste of the ocean—

or, more directly speaking, is strongly impregnated with salt, but as it is borne upward into clouds, the vapor is subjected to an electrical influence not clearly understood, but which decomposes the salt and precipitates the vapor in the form of pure water; but in the descent it absorbs from the air a small quantity of

EFFECTS OF HOT CLIMATE.

WHY THE SEA IS SALT.

carbonic acid, ammonia, or nitric acid, which imparts to rain-water its peculiar taste. All water that is evaporated and ascends into clouds, of course does not come from the ocean, as every fresh as well as salt body of water contributes to that continual ascent and descent which nourishes the earth and the fullness thereof. It has been computed by some patient calculator that 200,000 cubic miles of water are raised each year from the ocean, in the form of vapor. At least three-fourths of this immense volume is raised within the tropics, and a

great part falls beyond them. If the extent of the tropical ocean were diminished by half, there is no part, perhaps, of the temperate zones which would not be parched by excessive drought, and hardly a river but whose bed would be a dry ravine.

The water which fills the great lakes of North America, and, thundering down the cataract of Niagara finds its way through the St. Lawrence River into the ocean almost on the verge of the Polar World, only a few weeks before, perhaps, laved the coral reefs of the tropical seas.

If any considerable part of the tropical ocean were converted into land, the heat of the Torrid Zone would become so greatly increased that no animal life, such as now exists, could endure it; and as the vegetation of a climate is adapted to the prevailing temperature, the trees and plants which now flourish would become extinct. Water, in being converted into vaporous form by the process of evaporation, absorbs heat from surrounding objects, or, as we may say, produces cold. Thus the burning rays of a vertical sun, pouring down upon the ocean, in a measure quench themselves. The same rays, which, falling upon the ocean, never raise the water beyond a grateful temperature, falling upon the land produce an intolerable heat.

The great extent of the tropical seas is the cause of those mighty ocean currents which sweep from the equatorial to the



NEW HEBRIDES WARRIOR.

Polar regions. Cool as the waters of the tropics are, they are warm when compared with the other parts of the ocean. The water thus heated becomes specifically lighter than that of colder regions, is lifted up, and in obedience to the laws of gravitation runs off in both directions toward the poles. There, having become cooled, the salt waters are heavier than the comparatively fresh ones of the Polar regions, and sinking beneath them, return in an undercurrent to their starting-place. This great equatorial current, or rather series of currents, is the marvel of physical geography. Let us follow that of the Atlantic in its

long career. Starting on the line of the equator, it flows northwestwardly along the coast of South America, enters the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico, from which fact it derives the name of the Gulf Stream. It passes out through the Straits of Bemini, between Florida and Cuba, a great river thirty-two miles wide, 2200 feet deep, flowing at the rate of four miles an hour. Its volume is a thousand times greater than that of the Amazon or the Mississippi, and its banks of cold water are more clearly defined than are those of either of these rivers at flood. So clear is the line of demarkation between the warm water of the river and its cool liquid banks, that a ship sailing along may be half in one and half in the other; and a bucket of water dipped from one side will be twenty degrees cooler than one from the other. Skirting the coast at a distance of about one hundred miles, its width is increased and its velocity diminished. Striking the projecting banks of Newfoundland, its course is deflected almost due east, until it arrives at mid-ocean. Here it spreads out like a fan, skirting the shores of Spain, France, and Great Britain. It then divides, one branch sweeping around the west coast of Iceland, the other approaching the shores of Norway, and its thermal influence is perceptible in the ameliorated climate of Spitzbergen.

It is owing to this great ocean river that the temperature of the western shores of Europe is so much higher than that of the eastern shore of America in the same latitudes. Maury estimates that the amount of heat which the Gulf Stream diffuses over the northern Atlantic in a winter's day is sufficient to raise the whole atmosphere which covers France and Great Britain from the freezing point to summer heat. The olives of Spain, the vines of France, the wheat-fields of England, and the green expanse of the Emerald Isle, are the gifts of the tropical seas, dispensed through the Gulf Stream.

EFFECTS OF THE GULF STREAM.

Near the Azores another branch of the Gulf Stream encounters the return flow from the Arctic Ocean, bends around, and, skirting the coast of Africa, returns to its starting-place in the Gulf of Guinea, leaving in its great bend near the Azores an expanse of almost motionless waters larger than the whole of France. This is known as the Sargasso Sea, from the surface being covered with a sea-weed called the *Sargassum natans*. So thick is the covering of weeds that at a little distance it seems solid enough to walk upon. The discovery of the bodies of strange animals and unknown trees and plants flung ashore at the Azores suggested to Columbus the idea that there was land lying beyond the western ocean; so that to the Gulf Stream we are indirectly indebted for the discovery of the New World. Bottles have been thrown overboard at various points in the Gulf Stream, containing the date, and position of the ship; many of these have been picked up, from which it appears that the stream takes eight months to flow from the Gulf of Mexico to the shores of Europe, and the broader and slower current takes a year to travel from the Bay of Biscay back to the Gulf of Mexico.

The air has currents as well as the ocean, and these have very much to do in modifying the climate of the tropical world. Rarefied by the intense heat of a vertical sun, the atmosphere within the tropics rises in perpendicular columns high above the surface of the earth, and thence flows off toward the poles; while, to fill up the void, cold air currents come rushing in from the Arctic and Antarctic regions; but the rotation of the earth gradually diverts the direction of these cold currents, and changes them into trade-winds, which regularly blow over the greater portion of the tropical ocean from east to west, and materially contribute to the health and comfort of the navigator whom they waft over the equatorial waters. The trade-wind is an air current of even greater importance than the water current known as the Gulf Stream. This wind covers no less than 56° of latitude—

28° north and 28° south of the equator. In this large tract, which comprises many of the most fertile countries on the globe, the trade-wind blows during the whole year, either from the northeast or from the southeast. The causes of this regularity are now well understood, and are known to depend partly on the displacement of air at the equator, and partly on the motion of the earth; for the cold air from the poles is constantly flowing toward the equator, thus producing northerly winds in the northern hemisphere, and southerly winds in the southern.

The trade-wind, blowing on the eastern coast of South America, and proceeding from the east, crosses the Atlantic Ocean, and therefore reaches the land surcharged with the vapors accumulated in its passage. The vapors, on touching the shore are, at periodical intervals, condensed into rain; and as their progress westward is checked by that gigantic mountain chain, the Andes, which they are unable to pass, they pour the whole of their

moisture on Brazil, which, in consequence, is often deluged by the most destructive torrents. This abundant supply, being aided by that vast river system peculiar to the eastern part of South America, and being also accompanied by heat, has stimulated the soil into an activity unequaled in any other part of the world. Brazil, which is nearly as large as the whole of Europe, is covered with a vegetation of incredible profusion. A great part of this immense country is filled with dense and tangled forests, whose noble trees, blossoming in unrivaled beauty, and exquisite with a thousand hues, throw out their products in endless prodigality. On their branches are perched birds of gorgeous plumage; below, their base and trunks are crowded with brushwood, creeping plants, innumerable parasites, all swarming with life. There, too, are myriads of insects of every variety; reptiles of strange and singular forms; serpents and lizards, spotted with deadly beauty; all of which find means of existence in this vast workshop and repository of nature. Dr.



GIANT LANTERN FLY AND LOCUST.

Gardener, who looked at these things with the eye of a botanist, says that near Rio Janeiro the heat and moisture are sufficient to compensate even the poorest soil; so that "rocks, on which scarcely a trace of earth is to be observed, are covered with a profuse vegetation, all in the vigor of life." That nothing may be wanting in this land of marvels, the forests

are skirted by enormous meadows which, reeking with heat and moisture, supply countless herds of wild cattle, that browse and fatten on the herbage; while the adjoining plains, rich in another form of life, are the chosen abode of the subtlest and most ferocious animals, which prey upon

each other, but which it might almost seem no human power can hope to extirpate. Mr. Darwin, the eminent naturalist, says, "In England, any person fond of natural history enjoys in his walks a great advantage, by always having something to attract his attention; but in these fertile climates, teeming with life, the attractions are so numerous that he is scarcely able to walk at all."

The dense jungles along the Amazon are full of strange life, and at night are illuminated by flying lights that fill the mind of the beholder upon first sight with suggestion of demons assembling for their uncanny orgies. These flitting lights, however, are produced by the giant lantern fly, which is a creature some three inches in length that carries his fire-works in his head, but otherwise resembles a large moth. The natives often catch a number of these giant fire-flies and imprison them in a bottle, from which they are able to obtain sufficient light to make the reading of fine print possible. Women also frequently bind them in their hair for the unique effect which the flashing of fire produces.

Probably the most curious of the many strange creatures that are peculiar to South America, is the Pipa or Surinam frog, of Dutch Guiana. This animal is remarkable not so much for its uncouth appearance as for the unaccountable and unexampled means it employs for reproduction. The male, as will be seen by reference to the illustration, attaches himself by his back to the female during impregnation, and the eggs thus produced develop on the back of the female, which the male then more firmly attaches to his mate by pressing them with his feet. Here the eggs hatch under the skin of the female, and when the young are ready to come forth they issue from the female's back, which becomes honey-combed, so to speak, as the illustration shows.

We have spoken of the trade-winds as extending over the whole breadth of the Tropical World. But to this there is a notable exception. Near the equator, but a little to the north of it, the two currents from the Arctic and Antarctic regions meet and neutralize each other, producing a belt of calms, which sailors call the "Doldrums," of about six degrees in breadth. Here it rains almost every day during the year, for the ascending currents of heated air loaded with moisture become suddenly cooled in the higher regions, and are forced to give up the water which they have lifted from the



MALE AND FEMALE PIPA FROG, OF DUTCH GUINEA.

ocean. Toward noon dense clouds form in the sky and dissolve in torrents of rain. Toward evening the vapors disperse, and the sun sets in a cloudless horizon. The quantity of rain which here falls during the year is enormous. In the United States the annual rainfall is from 25 to 70 inches; in Europe from 15 to 104; in the Atlantic doldrums it reaches 225. So copious is the rainfall that fresh water has been dipped up from the surface of the tropical seas.

Tornadoes and hurricanes rage in the tropical world with a frequency, extent, and violence unknown in other climes. They sometimes move with a direct velocity of forty-five miles per hour; but the violence and destructiveness of a whirlwind depends less upon the velocity with which the whole storm moves than upon the speed with which the wind whirls around and in upon the centre. The great Bahama hurricane of 1866 moved forward at the rate of thirty miles per hour; but the velocity of its whirling motion was from 80 to 100, and for short intervals from 100 to 120 miles an hour. The diameter of the great storms of the tropical Atlantic is often from 600 to 1000 miles; those of the Indian Ocean 1000 to 1500. These, however, move more slowly. The smaller storms are usually more rapid than the larger ones.

The revolving motion accounts for the sudden and violent changes observed during hurricanes. In consequence of this rotation the wind blows in opposite directions on each side of the axis of the storm; the violence increases from the circumference inward; but at the centre the air is in repose. Hence, when the body of a storm passes over a place, the wind begins to blow moderately, and increases to a hurricane as the centre of the whirlwind approaches; then in a moment a dead calm succeeds, followed suddenly by a renewal of the storm in all its violence, but now blowing in a direction opposite to which it had before. From this rotary motion it follows that the direction of the wind at any moment is no indication of the direction which the body of the storm is pursuing.

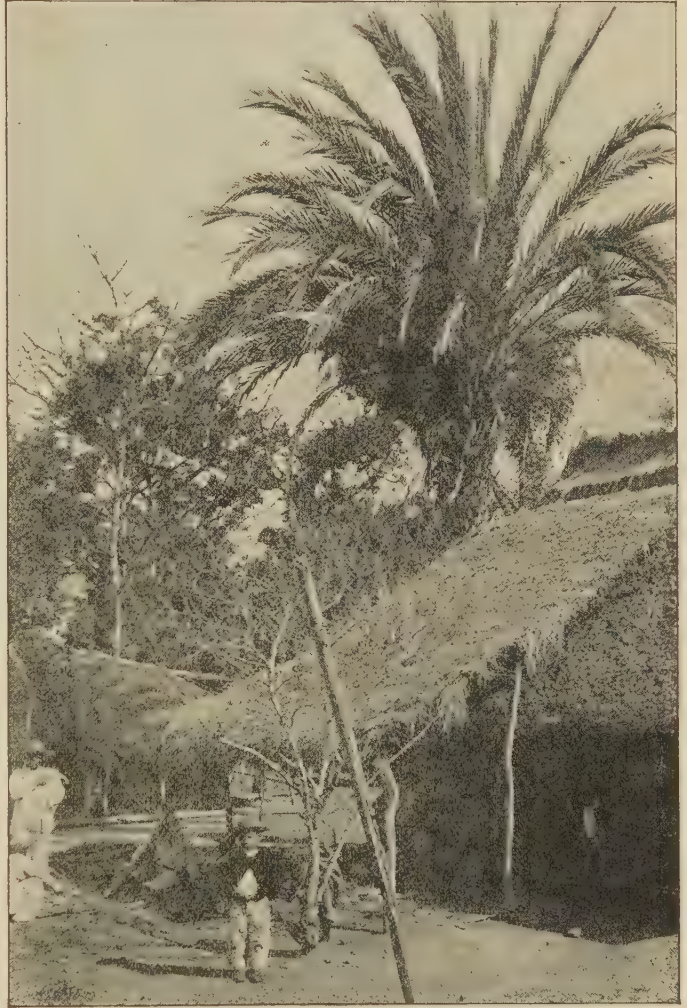
Water-spouts and cyclones belong to the same class of phenomena as whirlwinds and hurricanes. In fact, water-spouts are but whirlwinds at sea, while the term cyclone is used to distinguish the most violent hurricanes or tornadoes. Whirlwinds may be formed by the rapid rotary movement of either ascending or descending currents of air; when the former occurs over a body of water not infrequently water-spouts are the result, and at times so violent are these that at their base they have power to wreck a small boat, and to lift an immense column of water which is drawn upward with a noise like the rush of Niagara. In cloudbursts we have the very opposite, for they are produced by the rapid rotary motion of descending currents, and in the equatorial regions they often deluge and desolate vast tracts of land, destroying buildings and stock, and sometimes washing up large trees.

Nine-tenths of the islands which dot the ocean lie within the tropics. These islands are divided into two great classes, one of which is of volcanic origin, upheaved from the depth of the ocean; or, rather, they are lofty peaks of mountains, whose sides and bases lie deep in the water. There are two opposite theories to account for the existence and present appearance of these islands. According to one theory, a continent once occupied a large portion of the Pacific Ocean within the tropics, a portion of which has sunk beneath the water, and these islands are the peaks and table lands of that lost continent. The other theory is that these islands have been for unknown ages, and now are, slowly being lifted up from the depth below. These two assumptions are at great variance, yet both may be accepted as true; for they are parts of the one great fact, that the crust of the earth, which we

are wont to consider so firm and stable, is now, as it always has been, rising and falling, as truly as the surface of the water rises and falls, by the attraction of the sun and moon ; only that these periodic changes are measured by ages instead of by hours. Who shall say that in the higher knowledge which we shall gain during the ages of the future we may not attain to an understanding that the rising and sinking of continents is like that of the tides, governed by law, and that we may not be able to express in figures, which will then be quite finite to us, though now seeming infinite, the years that have elapsed since "heaven and earth rose out of chaos !"

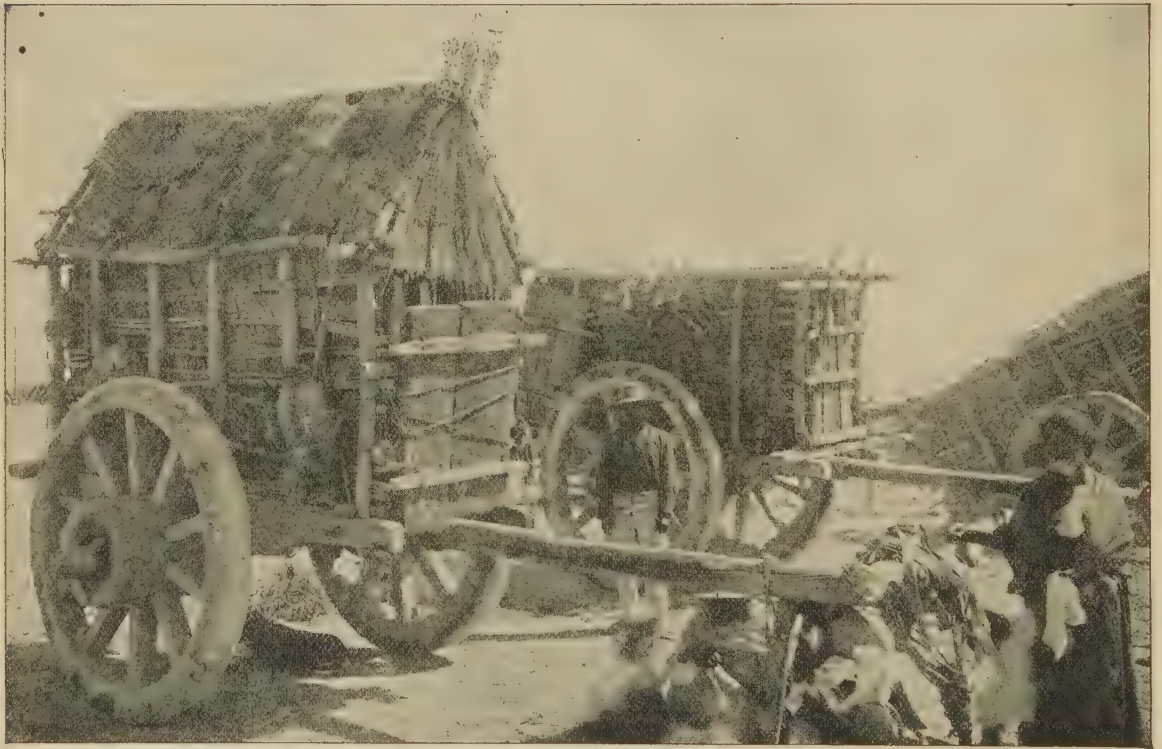
Volcanic islands are found in all oceans. Iceland has its Hecla, Sicily its *Ætna*, Hawaii its Mauna Kea and Mauna Loa, Nippon its Fusi-yama. From Sumatra, Java and Sumbawa, Ternate and Tidore, Borneo, Celebes and Gilolo, close by the equator, thence northward and northwestward to the Kurile Islands, hard by the frozen coast of Kamtchatka, is one great belt of volcanic islands, spreading out like a fan through Polynesia. But in the tropical seas, and there alone, are coralline islands, built up, grain by grain, by minute living beings. The simplest form of these coral islands is a ring enclosing a portion of the ocean. Sometimes this ring is barely two miles in diameter ; sometimes it reaches a hundred miles, rising only a half-score of feet above the level of the water, and, owing to the convexity of the surface of the ocean, invisible from the deck of a ship at a distance of a mile or two, unless they happen to be covered with tall palms or pandanus. The roar of the surf dashing upon their windward side is often heard before the island itself comes into view. The outer side of this ring, or atoll, slopes gradually for a hundred yards or more, to a depth of twenty-five fathoms, and then plunges sheer down into the waters with a descent more rapid than the cone of any volcano.

At a distance of five hundred yards no bottom has been reached with a sounding line of a mile and half in length. All below the surface of the water to the depth of one hundred feet is alive ; all above and below this section dead, for the coral insect can live only within this range.



HUT MADE OF COCOANUT LEAVES AND FIBER.

These atolls assume every form and condition. Sometimes they are solitary specks in the waste of waters. Oftener they occur in groups. The Caroline Archipelago has sixty groups extending over a space of 1000 square miles. Sometimes a group of atolls becomes partially joined into one, the irregular ring encircling an island-studded lagoon, with openings through which a ship may enter. Sometimes these coral formations take the form of long reefs bordering an extensive coast. Such a reef runs parallel to the coast of Malabar for nearly five hundred miles. It consists of a series of atolls arranged in a double row, separated by a sea whose depth no line has sounded; yet from outer to inner edge of the double row is a space of but fifty miles. Such a broken coral reef often girdles a volcanic island. Tahiti, the largest of the Society group, is a fine example of this kind. This island rises in mountains 7000 feet high,



SOUTH AMERICAN CART.

with only a narrow plain along the shore. The lagoon which encompasses it like a great moat is thirty fathoms deep, and is shut out from the ocean by a coral band at a distance of from half a mile to three miles.

But there are coral reefs of far greater magnitude. The grandest is that extending off the northeast shore of Australia. Rising from an unfathomed ocean, it extends for 1000 miles along the coast, with a breadth of from two hundred yards to a mile, and at an average distance of twenty or thirty miles, though sometimes double that space. This long, narrow lagoon is never less than ten fathoms deep, and often six times as much, so that the *Kaiser Wilhelm der Grosse*, the hugest vessel that ever floated, if it once passed through one of the openings in the reef, might sail as though in a tranquil harbor for 1000 miles in sight of land on either side, without her keel for an instant reaching half-way to

the bottom. The direct influence of the ocean upon the islands of the tropical world is great in every respect. It gives an almost temperate climate to low lands lying under the equator, and thus modifies their fauna and flora, in accordance with known laws of nature. But the ocean and air in their currents also determine the vegetable, animal and human life of the islands of the tropical world in an accidental manner.

Time was when the volcanic islands of the tropics were masses of naked rock, the coraline islands patches of barren sand. The elements disintegrated the surface of the rock and ground the coral into soil. Some day a fruit—perhaps a cocoa or bread-fruit—drifted along by currents, touched the island; or a bird, swept far out to sea, having in its crop an undigested seed, rested its weary wing upon solid land. The chance-planted fruit or seed took root and grew, and produced its kind, and in time the waste island was clothed with verdure. Other birds found a home in the new forests, built their nests and raised their young, so that the islands became populous with the winged tribes. Animals, of course, could only rarely cross the waste of waters. Hence the comparative paucity of this form of life in islands remote from the main land. Swine were almost the only quadrupeds which the early European navigators found in Polynesia; and they were doubtless brought there by human means. Mankind reached the islands in a like accidental manner. Perhaps a canoe from the Malayan shores drifted upon the Fiji Islands, and its rowers became the progenitors of the black cannibals; or a junk from China or Japan was cast away upon Tahiti or Hawaii. These wanderers, cut off from intercourse with the rest of the world, developed their barbarism or semi-civilization in their own way, under the influence of altered conditions, climate, and productions. The story of the *Bounty*, and the first settlement of Pitcairn's Island, too well known to require more than a passing allusion, shows that such a canoe or junk voyage is altogether possible, and how widely in the course of a single generation a group of isolated individuals deviate from their original stock.



CONDORS GATHERED AT THE FEAST.

of a single generation a group of isolated individuals deviate from their original stock.

Within the geographical limits of the tropical world is found every variety of climate upon the globe. There are great mountain ranges which, even at the equator, rise above the limits of perpetual snow. Their summits, untrodden by man, and **THE GIANT CONDOR.** unvisited by any other form of animal life, must be more desolate than the most extreme Polar regions to which explorers have been unable to penetrate. Of living creatures the strong-winged condor alone has reached so high. Upon these dreary crags this great bird is king of all ; here it rears its brood unmolested, and from its eyrie surveys the valleys below, and swoops down, with rushing wings, upon defenceless flocks, and bears away in its cruel talons the young of the various folds. Keen of vision, and no less wary, it has no enemies to fight, and thus lords its way in the world, multiplies and annually becomes more destructive in its ravages. Nature has provided this wonderful



VISION OF MANCO CAPAC.

bird with a power which is given to no other bird or animal, that of sustaining life at such great altitudes.

The most remarkable, as well as one of the most lofty plateaus that has been occupied by man is known as the *Puna* or *Altos* of Peru. It extends through a great part of the length of Peru and Bolivia at a height of 10,000 to 14,000 feet above sea level. It is that cold and rugged region which forms the broad summit of the Cordillera. It has the aspect of an irregular plain and is diversified with mountain ridges and snowy volcanic peaks, imposing in their proportions.

In this vast, elevated region there is nothing else which possesses such deep human interest as Lake Titicaca, for in it is embosomed the sacred island, to which the Incas traced their origin, and which to this day is to their descendants all that Jerusalem and Mecca are to Christians and Mohammedans. This beautiful body of fresh water is at an elevation of 12,864 feet above the sea, higher than any point in Europe except the ten loftiest peaks of the Alps. It is 120 miles long, and from fifty to sixty miles wide. Though the temperature falls quite low, the lake never freezes over, but ice forms along its shores. In the winter

months the temperature of the lake is usually ten or twelve degrees higher than that of the atmosphere.

The largest island in this lake is the sacred island of Titicaca, bare and rocky, about six miles long and five miles broad. Tradition tells us that here Manco Capac and Mama Oella, at once his wife and sister, who were both children of the sun, and messengers of that luminary, started on their errand to civilize the barbarous tribes which then occupied the country. Manco Capac was directed to travel northward until he should reach a spot where his golden staff would sink into the ground of its own accord, and there he was to fix the seat of his empire. In obedience to these directions he traveled slowly along the western shore of Lake Titicaca, through the barren Puna lands, until he reached the Vilcanota River, one of the principal branches of the Amazon, when he descended its valley, and, after a journey of three hundred miles, his golden staff sank into the ground upon the spot where the city of Cuzco now stands. Here he fixed his seat of empire, and here arose the city of the sun, the capital of the Inca Empire, which in time spread over a length of thirty-seven degrees of latitude, and in breadth from the eastern base of the Andes westward to where the Pacific beats against the deeply planted feet of the Cordilleras.

**SACRED ISLAND
OF TITICACA.**

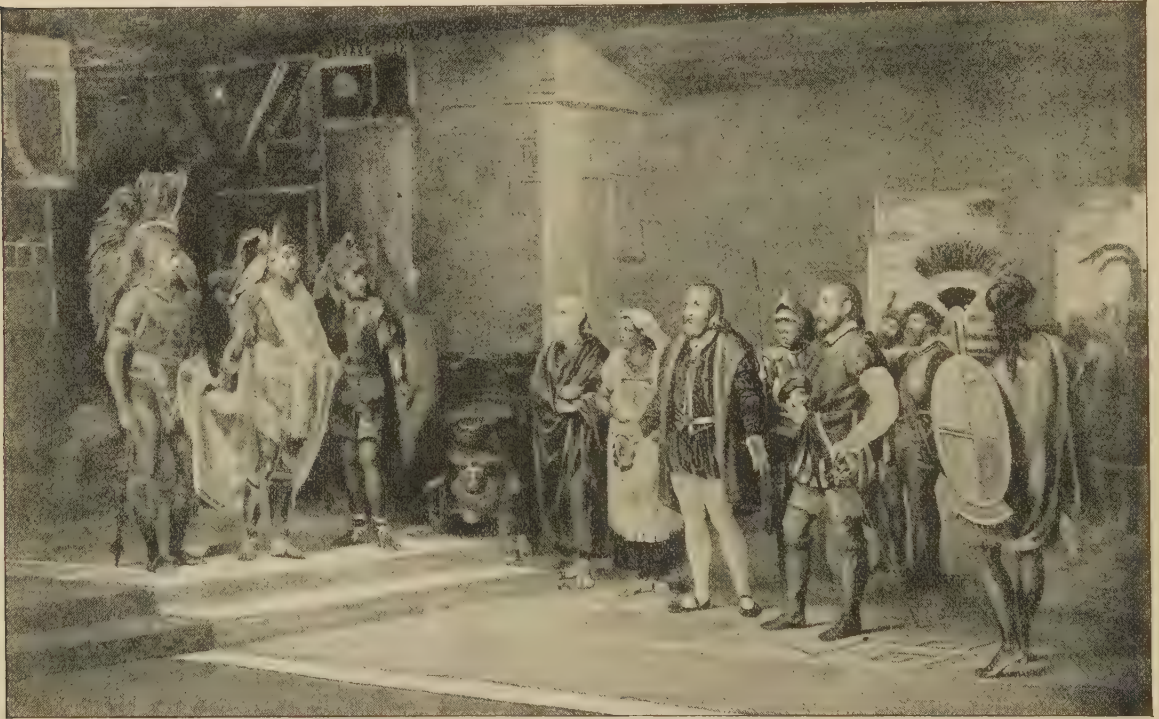
So runs the legend; but there are mythical ideas incorporated into the traditions respecting Manco Capac. We find his counterpart in the Fohi of the Chinese, the Buddha of the Hindus, the Osiris of Egypt, the Odin of Scandinavia, the Jatzacoal of Mexico, and the Votan of Central America. Still, there can be no doubt that he is a real historical character, to whom, however, have been attributed many of the achievements of those who preceded him, and perhaps of some who followed him. The time when he lived is altogether uncertain. Some, studying the *quipus*, or knotted cords, which are the only records of ancient Peruvian history, place his advent back to within five centuries after the deluge. But the best authorities give the date approximately at about four centuries before the arrival of the Spaniards under Pizarro, or about 1000, A. D., the period when all Christendom was hurling itself in crusades upon the Holy Land.

This civilization, in some respects one of the most remarkable which the world has ever seen, had its origin in the lofty table-land of the Puna, which we are now considering; and far and wide as the reign of the Incas subsequently extended, they and their subjects always retained their reverence for the little rocky islet in Lake Titicaca. At the northern end of the island is a frayed and water-worn mass of red sandstone, about two hundred and twenty-five feet long and twenty-five feet high. This is the sacred rock of Manco Capac, the most holy spot in all Peru. Upon it, as was believed, no bird would alight, no animal venture, and upon which no human being not of royal blood dared set his foot. From this rock the sun first rose to dispel the primal vapors and illuminate the world. It was, so runs the legend, planted all over with gold and silver, and, except upon the most solemn occasions, covered with a veil of cloth of costly material and gorgeous colors. The gold and silver, as well as the gorgeous covering, have long since disappeared, and what is now seen is only a bare rock, on the crest of the island, which rises 2000 feet above the waters of the lake. Yet even now, when the Indian guides come within sight of it they raise their hats, bow reverently, and mutter words of mystic import, which they themselves most likely do not understand. In front of the rock is a level artificial terrace, 372 feet long and 125 feet broad, supported by a low stone wall. According to tradition the soil which once covered this terrace was carried upon the backs of men from the distant valleys of the

**WONDERS OF AN
EXTINCT CIVILIZATION.**

Amazon, so that it might nourish a vegetation denied by the hard, ungrateful soil of the island.

Everywhere on the holy island are the ruins of Inca structures, and the sites of the most sacred spots are still shown. Here is the sheltered bay where the Incas landed when they came to visit the spot consecrated to the sun. Half-way up the ascent are the "foot prints" of the great Inca, Tupanqui, marking the place where he stood, when, catching his first view of the hallowed rock, he removed the imperial covering from his head in token of adoration of the divinity whose shrine rose before him. These so-called footprints bear strong resemblance to the impressions of a gigantic foot, thirty-six inches long and of proportionate breadth. Their outline is formed by hard ferruginous veins around which the softer rock has been worn away, leaving them in relief.



PIZARRO IN THE COURT OF THE INCA.

The Fountain of the Incas is situated in a sheltered nook, surrounded with terraces upon which grow patches of maize with ears not longer than one's finger. The bath is a pool forty feet long, ten wide, and five deep, built of worked stones. Into this pour four jets of water, as large as a man's arm, from openings cut in the stones behind. The water comes through subterranean passages from sources now unknown, and never diminishes in volume. It flows to-day as freely as when the Incas resorted here and cut the deep hillsides into terraces, bringing the earth all the way from the valley of Yucay, or "Vale of Imperial Delights," four hundred miles distant. Over the walls droop the tendrils of vines; and what with the odors, and the tinkle and patter of the water one might imagine himself in the court of the Alhambra.

Besides the sacred island of Titicaca, there are eight smaller ones in the lake. Soto was the isle of Penitence, where the Incas were wont to resort for fasting and humiliation.

Coati was sacred to the moon, the wife and sister of the sun, and on it is the palace of the Virgins of the Sun, one of the most remarkable and best preserved remains of aboriginal architecture on the continent of America.

At Tihuanico, on the border of the lake, are immense ruins which clearly antedate the time of the Incas. They were ruins when the Spaniards made their appearance, and the natives could give no account of them. They supposed that they were built by divine architects in a single night. Cieza de Leon, one of the companions of Pizarro, writes of them: "What most surprised me was that the enormous gateways were formed on other great masses of stone, some of which were thirty feet long, fifteen wide, and six thick. I cannot conceive with what tools or instruments these stones were hewn out, for they must have been vastly larger than we now see them. It is supposed that some of these structures were built long before the dominion of the Incas; and I have heard the Indians affirm that these sovereigns constructed their great building at Cuzco after the plans of the walls of Tihuanico." The most remarkable thing in these ruins are the great doorways of a single block of stone. The largest of these is ten feet high and thirteen broad, the opening cut through it being six feet four inches high, and three feet two inches wide. The whole neighborhood is strewn with immense blocks of stone elaborately wrought, equaling if not surpassing in size any known to exist in Egypt, India, or any part of the world. Some of these are thirty feet long, eighteen broad, and six thick.



INDIANS OF THE SAN JUAN.

All these gigantic remains of a past civilization are found in the lofty table-land of the Puna. When these come to be fully described and illustrated, it will be seen that here, in a climate so cold that hardly a vegetable will grow, were planted the seeds of a civilization as remarkable as any which ever existed. But **WONDER WORKS OF THE ANCIENT INCAS.** more wonderful, perhaps, than these great architectural works, were the great military roads constructed by the Incas. One reached from Cuzco down to the ocean. Another stretched from the capital, along the very crest of the Cordilleras, and down their ravines, to Quito, 1200 miles distant. The length of these great roads, including branches, was not less than 3000 miles. Modern travelers compare them with the best in the world. They were from eighteen to twenty-five feet broad, paved with immense blocks of stone, sometimes covered with asphaltum. In ascending steep mountains, broad steps were cut in the rock; ravines were filled with heavy embankments flanked with parapets, and, wherever the climate permitted, lined with shade trees and shrubs, with houses at regular distances for the accommodation of travelers, and specially serving as

post-stations. For there was a regular postal service by which the Incas could send messages from one extremity of their dominion to the other. This service was performed by runners; for the Peruvians had no beasts of burden stronger or swifter than the llama. These messengers were trained to great speed. On approaching a station they gave a loud shout to warn the next courier of their approach, so that he might be ready to take the message or parcel without delay. In this manner it is said that dispatches were sent at the rate of 150 miles a day, a speed unequaled until within our own times, when the railway and the telegraph have brought the ends of the world almost together.



SACRED ROCK IN LAKE TITICACA.

The only parts of America which, before the arrival of Europeans, were in some degree civilized, were Mexico and Peru; to which may probably be added that long and narrow tract which stretches from the south of Mexico to the Isthmus of Panama. In this latter country, which is now known as Central America, the inhabitants, aided by the fertility of the soil, seem to have worked out for themselves a certain amount of knowledge, since the ruins still extant prove the possession of a mechanical and architectural skill too considerable to be acquired by any nation entirely barbarous. Beyond this nothing is known of their history; but the accounts we have of such buildings as Copan, Palenque and Uxmala make it highly probable that Central America was the ancient seat of a civilization in all essential points similar to that of India and Egypt; that is to say, similar to them in respect to the unequal distribution of wealth and power, and the thralldom in which the great body of the people consequently remained.

WONDERS OF THREE DEAD CITIES.

Mr. Squier, who explored Nicaragua, says of the statues which he saw in large numbers about the ruins of old palaces: "The material, in every case, is a black basalt, of great hardness, which, with the best of modern tools, can only be cut with difficulty." Mr. Stephens, another explorer of Central America, says he found at Palenque "elegant specimens of art and models for study," and of the paintings he found at Chichen he writes: "They exhibit a freedom of touch which could only be the result of discipline and training under masters." At Copan the same writer declares that "it would be impossible, with the best instruments of modern times, to cut stones more perfectly." These evidences unmistakably confirm the impression that in many respects the civilization of Europe or the United States does not show a greater degree of intellectual refinement and little more progress in the arts and sciences than the people of Mexico, Central America and Peru were acquainted with. The same is true of Egypt, and we cannot contemplate these wonders to-day without being impressed with the belief that civilizations, like tides, ebb and flow, their rise and fall being dependent upon change of climate, revolutions of nature, or protracted wars, though measured by centuries.

The wonders of South America are not confined, however, to the ruins of a past civilization, for one of the greatest of natural wonders is the mighty Amazon River and its marvelous effect upon the vegetation and animal life of Brazil. This remarkable stream was discovered by Yanez Pinzor in the year 1500, and was first navigated by one of Pizarro's officers named Orellana, in 1541. The word Amazon is supposed to be derived from the story of Orellana's fight with a body of Amazons—a nation of female warriors,—although some declare it is from an Indian word, *Amassona* (boat destroyer) which is decidedly improbable. The men who opposed Orellana wore long tunics and parted their hair in the middle, which fact, aided by the fabled Amazons of the Caucasus, doubtless led him to believe them women.

The total length of this gigantic stream, as estimated by Lieutenant Herndon, is 3944 miles, and its average depth forty-three feet, quite enough to float the largest ocean steamers, but owing to the numerous falls and rapids it is really navigable for steam vessels only about 500 miles from its mouth. A singular feature of the Amazon is its abrupt banks, there being no shoal water near the shore as in other rivers, soundings taken from the bank often showing fifty feet or more, equaling the greatest depth of mid-stream.

The enormous valley of the Amazon is walled in by the Andes and the highlands of Guiana and Matto Grosso. No other region of equal area has such a remarkably uniform character, and its geological formation is of deep interest. The territory through which the Amazon flows is covered with vast forests and possesses a soil of extraordinary fertility. "If," says Humboldt, "the name of primeval forest can be given to any forests on the face of the earth, none, perhaps, can so strictly claim it as those that fill the connected basin



THE MYGALE SPIDER.

of the Orinoco and Amazon." "From the grassy steppes of Venezuela to the treeless pampas of Buenos Ayres," says a later traveler, "expands a sea of verdure in which we may draw a circle of 1100 miles in diameter, which shall include an evergreen, unbroken forest. There is a most bewildering diversity of grand and beautiful trees—a wild, unconquered race of vegetable giants, draped, festooned, corded, matted and ribboned with climbing and creeping plants, woody and succulent in endless variety."

Animal life is not more conspicuous in the forest than on the river; the latter is fairly crowded with strange fishes, alligators, great turtles, porpoises, manitees—sea cow—and enormous anacondas. Through the forest are scattered mammals, birds, and reptiles, the more common being the ferocious puma and jaguar, tapir, capybaras, peccaries, sloths, deer, armadillos, monkeys, parrots, toucans, and macaws. The shores of the Amazon are but thinly inhabited, the most important tribes being Mundurucus, Tucunas, and Yagnos, who are an idle, vagabondish people, regardless of the past and heedless of the future.

The valley of the Amazon is an unbroken solitude of dense forests, almost impenetrable, where man rarely ventures and where savage life of reptile and insect holds sway. Caimen abound, which are as ferocious as the India crocodile, and great anacondas, with power



THE FLYING DRAGON.

equal to the African boa-constrictor, or the Malay python, bask upon tree-trunks that project over the dark waters. Monkeys gambol on the trees, and dispute with cockatoos, parrots, and other birds which make the woods resound with their clatter. Among the fierce and poisonous insects that infest these jungles the mygale spider, largest of his species, is an acknowledged autocrat. This dreadful creature when full-grown has a spread of legs of something more than six inches, and its body is quite two inches through at the abdomen. It has been known to seize and devour humming birds, also small lizards, and is capable of killing creatures of even larger size. This remarkable spider possesses the courage to attack a man, but fortunately, though poisonous, it is not nearly so venomous as the tarantula, otherwise it would be exceedingly formidable.

Another queer creature of the Amazon woods is the flying dragon, which, however, is not confined to South America, for it is also found in Oceanica and Africa with slight variations of species. This animal belongs to the lizard kind and seeks its food in the trees, like the iguana, where it lives off insects. Nature has provided the flying dragon with a distensible delicate membrane, which lies folded upon the creature's sides until required for use, when, at a moment, the membranes become wings, incapable of motion however, which, acting like a parachute, enable the little lizard to sail through the air, at a falling angle, for a considerable distance.

Sharks are very plentiful in the bays and at the mouths of all South American rivers, where they act as scavengers and thus perform a useful part, but they do not hesitate to attack any living thing that falls within their reach. Notwithstanding the well-known ferocity of sharks, which abound in South American waters and grow to a length of fifteen

feet, the natives exhibit a singular indifference to their presence, and in fact often leap into the water with knife in hand to give them battle. Thus does familiarity with danger finally beget unconcern, save to court it for the reputation that comes from daring it.

The two most daring and dangerous creatures of South American rivers and jungles are the jaguar, or leopard, which keeps its haunts in the deepest recesses of the forests, generally near a pool or stream, and the anaconda, whose terrible reptilian length not unfrequently measures twenty feet, and which has a constricting power equal to that of its African cousin, the great python. The jaguar of South American tropics is as predatory as a tiger, and does not hesitate to attack any living thing that ventures within reach of his fatal spring. They usually seek their prey by lying in wait stretched upon a limb projecting over a game-path or the water, keeping their bodies concealed and remaining perfectly quiet for hours at a time until deer, tapir, snake, or in fact any moving thing passes beneath, when a spring is made that is succeeded by a quick death to the prey.

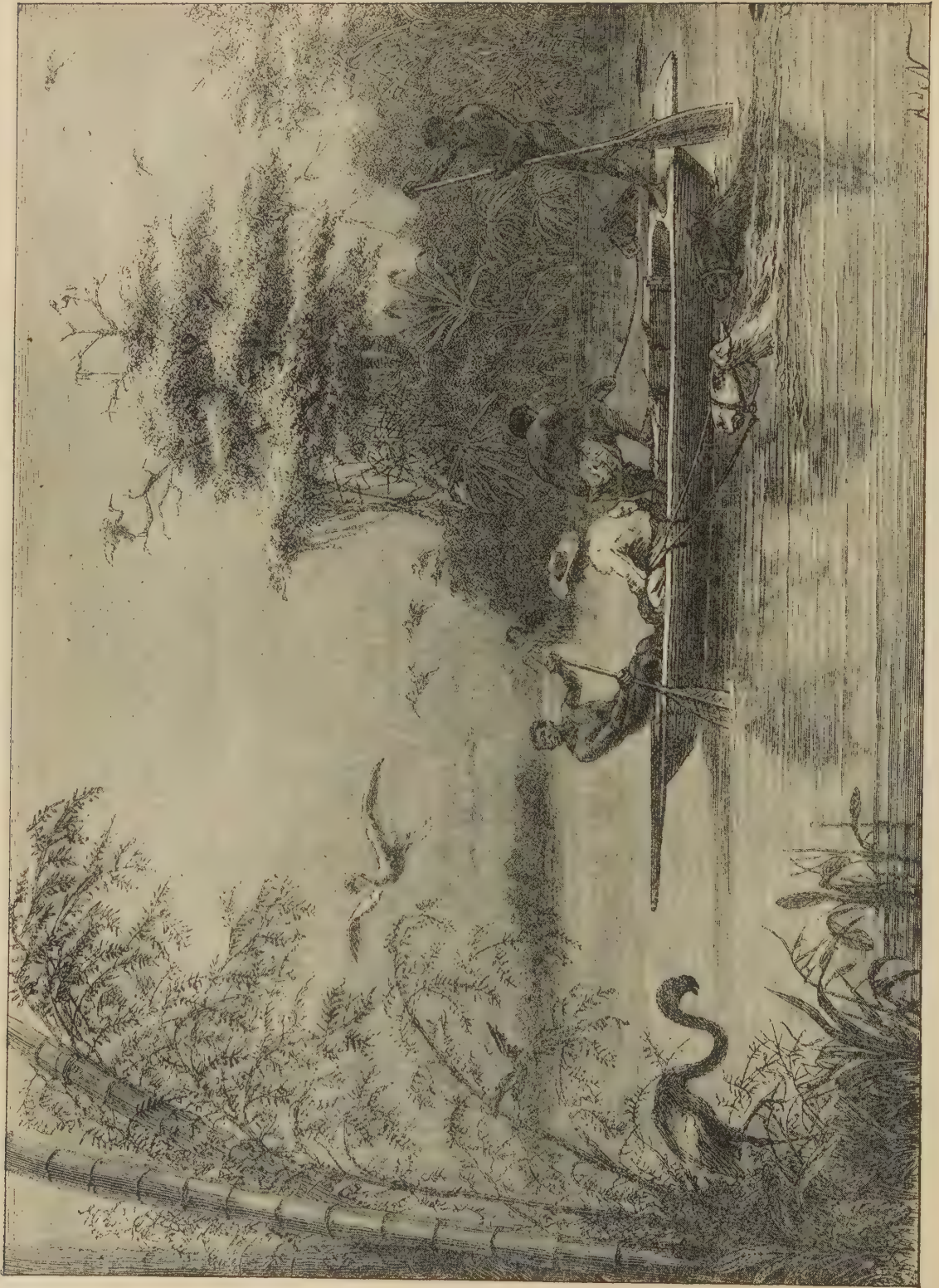
THE JAGUAR AND HIS PREY.



DARING A SHARK IN HIS OWN ELEMENT.

Anacondas, whose mottled bodies so resemble the ground or logs upon which they rest that discovery is difficult, seek their prey very much like the jaguar, which animal it has in fact been known to attack, though always to its own destruction. The anaconda's favorite food is small animals and birds, which it seizes by means of two fangs in its great jaws, but generally crushes before devouring, except birds and small creatures such as may be readily swallowed. Its haunt is always near the water, which element is its natural home, seeking the still stretches of rivers, and especially bayous, where the banks are sedgy and afford rest and concealment. The caiman is one of its enemies, which attacks the serpent whenever the opportunity offers, and in turn, the anaconda gives an account of himself not so much by fighting as by devouring the eggs of his foe. But in every jungle there is perpetual conflict, the more powerful living by destroying the weaker, which wise provision of nature prevents the congestion of animal life which must otherwise take place. Thus, in all things do we observe a wondrous providence, a manifestation of wisdom that confounds the human intelligence, and leads us constantly towards a higher appreciation of nature's God.

THE ANACONDA AND CAIMAN.



A FERRIAGE ACROSS THE UPPER AMAZON.

THE STORY OF AFRICA.

CHAPTER I.



FROM the foregoing outline of the interesting phases of nature in South America, we now turn to that most interesting of all countries, Africa, which, though lying within the same zone belts as South America, and having a somewhat similar physical aspect, is yet possessed of very many peculiar features not found elsewhere in the world. Here the most ancient records place the beginning of creation, which, though in allegory, give evidence of the birth of civilization in the neighborhood of that mighty and wonderful river, the Nile. It was in Africa that the father of history was born, and on its northeastern coast or interior were builded the great cities of Carthage, Memphis, and Alexandria, which, for a time, in succession, ruled the world. Here also the Saracens, in their practice of alchemy, found greater than philosophers' stones, in discovering, by accident, so many useful facts in chemistry.

The history of Ancient Africa is unwritten, nor has it ever been determined whence the name originated, though hundreds of philologists have attempted to explain its origin. The earliest mention we have of any attempt to explore the country is the following, from a book published by John Ogilby, "Master of His Majesty's Revels in the Kingdom of Ireland," in 1670, the full title of which would occupy nearly one page of this work, but which is descriptive of Africa. In the quaint style then used, it says :

"Amongst the Ancients, Hanno, a Carthaginian, sent forth by that State, discovered long since much of the Coasts of Africa, but pierced not far the Inland Country, nor did his Voyage give great light that they might after steer by, though translated from the Punick Language into Greek, and published by Sigismund **ANCIENT HISTORY** Gelenius at Brazil, in 1533. And in the reign of Necho, King of Egypt, **OF AFRICA.** some Phenicians from the Red-sea sayl'd by the Coast of Africa to Gibralter, from thence returning the same way they came. Of which Herodotus (Herodotus wrote nine Books of History, according to the number of the Muses, entitling them in order by their respective names) in his Melpomene (Fourth Book) says: 'The Phenicians sayling from the Red-sea, came into the Southern Ocean, and after three years reaching Hercules Pillars, returned through the Mediterranean, reporting wonders ; how that they had the Sun at Noon on their Starboard, or North-side, to which I give little credit, and others may believe as they please. Nor did Sataspes' Voyage in the Reign of Xerxes, King of Persia, in the year of the world 3435, give us any better Hints ; of which thus Herodotus in the same book :

" 'Sataspes, Teaspes' son, ravishing a virgin, and condemned to be crucified, by the mediation of his Mother, Darius' sister, was to suffer no more than to undertake a voyage round Africa, which he but slightly performed ; for passing Gibralter, he sayl'd to the

utmost point called Siloe (Cape de Verd), from thence sayling on southward; but being weary, returning the same way he came, made a strange relation to Xerxes, how he had seen remote countreys, where he found few people in Tyrian Purple, but such as when they drew near the Land, forsook their abodes, and fled up into the Mountains, and that they only drove some of their Cattle thence, doing them no further damage; adding also, that he had sayled round Africa, had it not been impossible: To which the King giving small credit, and for that Sataspes had not performed his Undertaking, remitted him to his former sentence.'

"As little availed that expedition of the Nasamones (a People inhabiting Tunis) to this discovery, who (as Herodotus relates in his Euterpe, second book) chose by lot five young men of good Fortunes and Qualifications, to explore the African Deserts, never yet penetrated, to inform themselves of their Vastness, and what might be beyond; these setting forth with fit Provisions, came first where only wild Beasts inhabited; thence traveling westward through barren Lands, after many days, they saw a Plain planted with Trees, to which drawing near they tasted their Fruits, whilst a Dwarf-like People came to them about half their stature, neither by speech understanding the other, they led them by hand over a vast Common, to their City, where all the inhabitants were Blacks, and of the same size; by this City ran towards the East a great River, abounding with Crocodiles, which Etearchus, King of the Ammonians, to whom the Nasamones related this, supposed to be the Nile. This is all we have of Antiquity, and from one single Author, who writ 420 years before the Incarnation, which sufficiently sets forth the Ignorance of the Ancients concerning Africa."

What has been written of South America in no inconsiderable measure applies to Africa, but there are disadvantages noticeable in the latter against which natives of the former country do not have to contend. Africa has ever appeared

THE DISADVANTAGES OF like a country cursed by God, its people in the greater part bearing
NATIVE AFRICANS. a mark that has descended apparently from posterity to posterity since the day that Ham was bitterly cursed by his father, and made a slave

to his heartless brothers. Egypt, the seat of learning, the birthplace of genius, with her Alexandria library and her great philosophic schools, is now only a mausoleum of a dead civilization, like an instrument once giving forth the most exquisite melody, now broken and stringless. From a wonderfully brilliant sunlight, which once lighted her forums, palaces, specimens of art and culture, she has fallen under the pall of age, and her glory is buried under the sands; her Memphis and her Thebes lie inurned by pelting storms; the Sphinx and the Pyramids, broken and crusted by time, are only curious monuments of a past age that will return no more. The blood of Hypatia, the noblest woman that ever championed a cause, rose round the temples which her murderers desecrated, and the demons of vengeance made brooding night settle upon Afric's ruins.

In Egypt, as in all Africa, there has ever been an impassable barrier between the rich and poor. In the olden time, when Egypt was in her glory, the laws were atrociously oppressive; if a member of the industrial classes changed his usual employment, or was known to pay any attention to political matters, he was severely punished,

SLAVERY OF THE and under no circumstances was the possession of land allowed to an agri-
EGYPTIANS. cultural laborer, to a mechanic, or, indeed, to any one except the king, the clergy, and the army. The people at large were little better than beasts of burden; and all that was expected of them was unremitting and unrequited labor. If they neglected their work they were flogged; and the same punishment was frequently

inflicted upon domestic servants, and even upon women. Hence it was that the industry of the whole nation, being at the absolute command of a small part of it, there arose the possibility of rearing those vast edifices which inconsiderate observers admire as a proof of civilization, but which in reality are evidences of a state of things altogether depraved and unhealthy.



MAP OF THE TRANSVAAL, SOUTH AFRICA.

That in such a society as this much regard should be paid to human suffering it is idle to suppose, and we therefore observe a reckless prodigality with which, in Egypt, the upper classes squandered away the labor and lives of the people. In this respect, as the monuments yet remaining abundantly prove, they stood alone. We may form some idea of the almost incredible waste, when we hear that two thousand men were occupied for three years removing a single stone from Elephantine to Sais; that the canal of the Red

Sea cost the lives of a hundred and twenty thousand Egyptians; and that to build one of the Pyramids required the labor of three hundred and sixty thousand men for twenty years. This reckless disregard for the people so impoverished the lower classes, chiefly by confiscations, that subsistence became finally so difficult that families were compelled to support life almost exclusively from the fruit of date trees.

This was the condition of the most civilized portion of Egypt; but when we describe the life found in Central Africa, there will be found influences so nearly identical that we must conclude there were the same causes operating throughout the whole country, to keep it in darkness and terror. While the potentates of Central Africa are never wealthy, as we value possessions, yet they hold their subjects by hooks of steel, as it were, and place no estimate whatever on human life, using it only as it may please or advantage them. Through all Africa, therefore, as well as in Egypt, there is seen the slave-mark, the curse of all uncivilized nations.

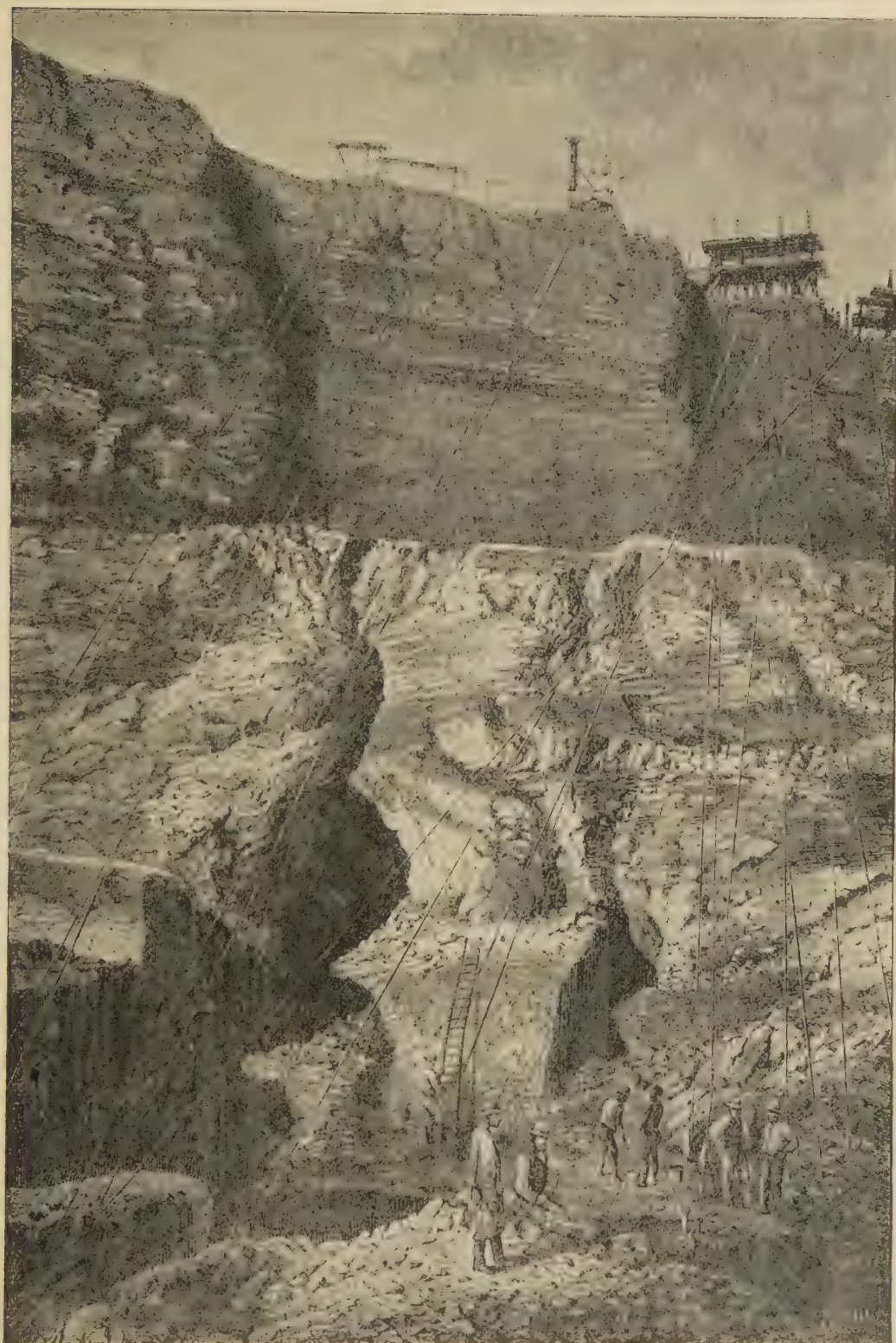
Of all rivers which traverse the habitable portions of the earth, the Nile is pre-eminently the grandest; grand not alone because it flows through a wild, dark, pathless region, nor because of its long-hidden source, but because of its singular character

THE RIVER NILE. in its adaptation to the sand-covered, scorching desert which it cleaves, spreading a wondrous fertility over the otherwise barren and uninhabitable waste, fructifying the sands and establishing a seat for the earliest civilization. Oh, marvelous Nile! Oh, wonderful Egypt! That great country in which the infant of industry and progress was cradled; which gave to science its swaddling clothes, and nursed art and religion into strong and imperishable vitality, has not only been sustained by the Nile's gift's of prodigal fertility, but was created by the alluvial soil which flowed down through the long centuries, and deposited in continual accretions to the delta. Thus has Egypt grown out into the sea, a creature of that wonder of wonders, the great Nile. At so remote a period that history cannot even approximate, Egypt came into existence, washed down from hills and mountains, lagoons and lakes, to take her rank as mother of the civilized world.

"Egypt," as Sir Samuel Baker says, "was not only created by the Nile, but the very existence of its inhabitants depended upon the annual inundation of the river. Thus all that related to the Nile was of vital importance to the people; it was the hand that fed them.

"Egypt, depending so entirely upon the river, it was natural that the origin of those mysterious waters should have absorbed the attention of thinking men. It was unlike all other rivers. In July and August, when streams in all other parts of the world are at their lowest, by reason of the summer heat, the Nile is at its flood! In Egypt there is no rainfall—not even a drop of dew in those parched deserts through which, for 860 miles of latitude, the glorious river flows without a tributary. Licked up by the burning sun, and gulped by the exhausting sand of Nubian deserts, supporting all losses by evaporation and absorption, the noble flood sheds its annual blessings upon Egypt. An anomaly among rivers; flooding in the driest season; everlasting in sandy deserts; where was its hidden origin? where were the sources of the Nile? This was, from the earliest period, the great geographical question to be solved?"

Strange as it appears, it is none the less true, that one of the most accurate maps of Africa ever published, was printed in Ogilby's book over two hundred years ago, not only showing the true source of the Nile, just as Speke found it, but generally all the waterways and topography of the entire country are faithfully exhibited. Vasquez da Gama, who



KIMBERLY DIAMOND MINES.

figures so conspicuously in the discoveries of North America, was the first explorer we have any authentic history of who circumnavigated Africa, and incited a national desire to effect a thorough exploration of its interior, though it was twenty years after his death before an expedition suitably equipped, attempted to cross the country. Since that time African exploration parties have been very numerous, nearly every nation on the globe contributing adventurous spirits to battle with the wild animals and wilder jungles which characterize its interior, in pursuit of a curiosity which every person possesses more or less.

MODERN TRAVELS THROUGH AFRICA. In this volume I shall confine myself to the results and more exciting incidents, discoveries and adventures of the great modern explorers of Africa, giving prominence to those whose achievements entitle them to public recognition.

CHAPTER II.

AFRICAN GOLD AND DIAMOND FIELDS.

It is not a little curious that at intervals of about twenty years discovery is made in some part of the world of a rich mine of precious mineral, which sets an army of excitable in rapid motion, and results in the development of a new country. Indeed, development is in large measure dependent, it would appear, upon such discoveries. India has been, from the earliest period of written history, the most densely populated, and it is to India we must refer when considering the first gold discoveries. Egypt was enriched by her mines in Ethiopia, which was a part of the country. The finding of gold in Cuba by Columbus, and of rich mines in Mexico and Peru, by Cortez and Pizarro, led to a rapid settlement of the new world. In more modern times, Australia was developed by reason of the gold discoveries there made, and the Great West of our country was an unoccupied waste until the excitement in 1849 over gold in California, and the subsequent opening of other gold and silver mines in the West, attracted hordes of fortune-seekers, who, failing to gain wealth by mining, turned their quest in the direction of agriculture. The same story may be told of South Africa, and more recently of Alaska, and the reader, if he cares to take the pains to investigate, will find that these discoveries followed one another in periods about twenty years apart.

Da Gama, a Portuguese navigator, was the first voyager to double the Cape of Good Hope, on his way to India, in 1497, but it was not until 1648 that any attempt at settlement was made in the southern point of Africa, when a shipwrecked crew of a vessel belonging to the Dutch East India Company took refuge on the shore near the spot now occupied by the city of Cape Town. This was the first white occupation of the country, but it was so little regarded as a place or territory of importance that the Dutch made no objection to the English taking possession of the point and establishing there a naval station for the benefit of their trade with India. The Dutch and English dwelt in harmony and made a satisfactory division of the country, the former settling upon some of the land as small farmers, and the latter holding their acquirement for the advantages it gave as a half-way station on the voyage to India; this they extended by forming Cape Colony in 1806, a tract comprising some 230,000 square miles, the capital of which was Cape Town, founded by Van Riebeeck as early as 1652. While the country increased considerably in population, followed presently by much contention, first by the Dutch forcing back the Hottentots, and then by the English

defeating the Dutch, the greatest development has taken place since 1867, in which year discovery was made of wonderfully rich diamond mines in the district north of the Orange River. Intense excitement quickly followed, and there succeeded an immense rush of wealth-seekers to the new fields. England was thus aroused to the value of the territory, and was not slow to extend her possessions in those parts, annexing in succession Grigua Land, and the upper valleys of the Orange River, known as Basutoland, Kaffraria, and other territorial divisions south of the Zambesi River. Subsequently the South African



A FERRY ACROSS THE VAAL RIVER, SOUTH AFRICA.

Republic was formed, and soon took its place as one of the important political divisions of the eastern continent.

The Kimberly diamond mines, opened in 1867, caused a rapid influx of immigrants, miners, tradesmen, agriculturists, and speculators, but much greater excitement and increase of population followed the discovery of gold in the Witwatersrand in 1887, which proved to be one of the richest finds ever made. Almost immediately thereafter the town of Johannesburg was founded, in the centre of the gold fields, and rose so rapidly that in a few years it surpassed in both importance and population the city of Pretoria, which had been made the seat of government of the republic. On July 9, 1895, a railroad was opened connecting Johannesburg with the coast, at Delagoa Bay, a distance of 300 miles, which enterprise was inaugurated and largely carried to success by the indomitable perseverance of Paul Krueger, the redoubtable and determined president of the new republic. The fabulous wealth of the Witwatersrand gold fields may be reckoned by the fact that the

**RESULT OF THE
GOLD DISCOVERIES.**

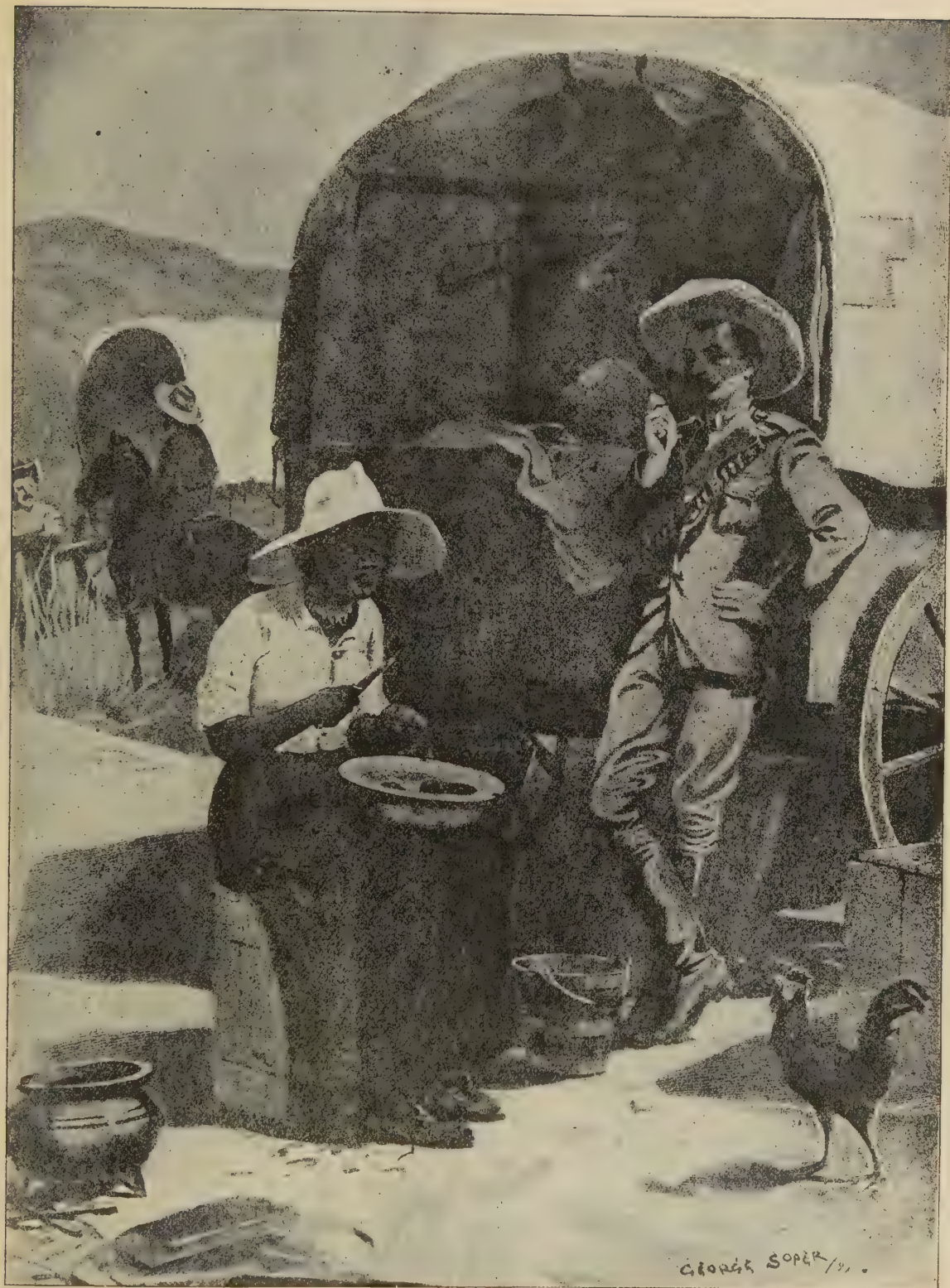
production has been as much as \$3,000,000 in a single month ; and the growth of population and enterprising character of the people may be understood when we know that in ten years Johannesburg, now called the "City of Gold," has grown from a small collection of shanties to be a substantial metropolis of some 75,000 souls, containing numerous magnificent buildings of brick and stone, notwithstanding the fact that nearly all the material for the construction of these houses was hauled by ox-teams hundreds of miles. Johannesburg of to-day is a modern city in every respect, with fine theatres, stock exchange, street cars, and all the other appointments to be seen in any place of its size in Europe or America.

While the output of gold in the Rand is not so large as formerly, development of the country continues, principally through the enterprise of the British South Africa Company, under the administration of Hon. Cecil Rhodes, and his successor, Earl Grey. In November, 1897, this company opened a railroad connecting Mafeking, which is the administrative headquarters of the British Bechuana Protectorate, and thereby also Cape Colony, with Buluwayo, the capital of Matabeleland.



JOHANNESBURG IN 1889.

A more pretentious scheme, rapidly developing, with promise of an early completion, is a projected railway line running north and south through Central Africa, from Cape Town to Cairo. This enterprise was conceived by Mr. Cecil Rhodes, who has already promoted the project to the extent of building a telegraph line northward from Cape Colony to Nyassa Land, a distance of about 1500 miles, and by the close of 1898 the northern end of the line will reach the Uganda country. In connection with this enterprise is a still greater one, viz., not only of building a railway north and south through the continent, but of similarly developing the whole interior of Africa, by means of railroads and steamboat lines. Already South Africa has half a dozen roads bisecting it in several directions, and there are regular lines of steamers traversing Tanganyika, Victoria, and Nyassa Lakes, and the Congo River, while the French Government is constructing a railroad south from Algiers through the Sahara Desert, to Timbuctoo and the Central Soudan. In a very few years the Dark Continent will be illuminated by the light of civilization, and is to-day, therefore, the land of opportunities, which is destined to receive millions of white emigrants from all countries before the end of the century.



Where so much wealth was suddenly discovered it is natural that great contention should arise, especially between two peoples like the English and Dutch, one of which is always progressive and grasping, and the other stolid and resistant. The Dutch have the advantage of being the first white people to occupy any part of South Africa, though they acquired possession by driving back the Kaffirs. When the English came they were gladly received by the frugal Dutch, or Boers, as they are called, not because of any love for the English as a people, but because of the commercial benefits which would accrue, by providing a market and developing the country. It was therefore a selfish motive that influenced the Boers, and so long as their advantage continued paramount they were content, for the English had no incentive



MAIN STREET, JOHANNESBURG, 1898.

to increase their prerogatives until the discovery of diamond mines, and later of gold fields, thoroughly aroused their cupidity, as it never fails to do, and then strife was begotten of ambition to control the commerce of the mines. The Boers were never miners, but they understood tax-gathering, and while the Uitlanders, or foreigners, toiled and moiled for gold, the Boer stood by and exacted a tithe of the product. There was trouble in 1881 between the Boers and English, which, however, after a brief skirmish, was settled in a way, but hatreds were engendered that both sides could not forget. In 1884 the Independence of the Transvaal was declared, which before had been an English protectorate, and the South African Republic was established, with Paul Krueger as president, though their independence as a State was formally recognized as early as 1854.



MATABELE INSURRECTION—BATTLE NEAR GWELO, MAY 9, 1896.

It is probable the differences between the English, or, more properly, the Uitlanders, and the Boers, would have been healed by a bond of common interest, had it not been for the gold discoveries of 1887, which brought into controversy a variety of interests, all of course growing out of conflicting claims and efforts to conduct mining without paying all the profits to the Boers. Under the constitution of the New Republic persons of foreign birth are excluded from election to either branch of the Volksraad (Congress), and members of the upper house must have the following qualifications, viz., they must belong to some Protestant church, be owners of landed property, and citizens of the republic for not less than fifteen years. Like restrictions apply to the lower house, by which qualifications foreigners residing in the Transvaal are effectually prevented from any participation in the political power of the government, notwithstanding the development of the country is due to them, besides four-fifths of its wealth belongs to foreigners, upon whom, therefore, virtually all the taxes are laid. At least this is the contention of the National Reform Union.

Feeling ran very high in the latter part of 1895, which finally, in December, led to a forcible revolt on the part of the Uitlanders, or foreign residents. It was reported that the foreigners in Johannesburg were in imminent danger of massacre or cruel ill-treatment at the hands of irate Boers, and to save these, as was claimed, Dr. Jameson marched, with a body of 650 volunteers, from Pitsania to Krugersdorf, where he was intercepted on the thirty-first of December by 1200 Boers, and a sharp engagement followed. The result of the struggle was the complete defeat of Jameson's raiders, the loss of probably fifty of his men, and the capture of the rest. The prisoners were taken to Johannesburg and there held for some time, but released upon the representations of Hon. Joseph Chamberlain, Secretary for the Colonies, that the raiders should be tried for unlawful invasion of the republic. Dr. Jameson was treated as a guerilla, and when taken to England was tried, convicted, and sentenced to six months' imprisonment, which served to satisfy the demands of the Boers, since which time there has been no further outbreak, though little amity exists between the Boers and Uitlanders, who maintain an armed peace.

The feeling of jealous hatred between Briton and Boer, that culminated in the Jameson raid, was relieved in a measure by the Matabele uprising in the early part of 1896. The Kaffir warriors thought opportunity had come for a successful revolt, evidently hoping that their enemies were so divided that neither would succor the other, and seizing what they believed was an opportune time, to drive back the foreigners who had dispossessed them of so much territory, began an indiscriminate slaughter of farmers and villagers, after the manner of Indian warfare. To their surprise the Uitlanders and Boers united to punish the Matabele raiders and several hot battles followed. The war was concluded by a decisive conflict fought between the main forces of the two armies near Bulawayo, in which a large number of Kaffirs were killed and their power completely broken. Since that time they have kept the terms of peace and confined themselves to Matabeleland under government of an English protectorate.

Nearly three years before the Matabele insurrection, Lobengula, king of Matabeleland, entered upon a raid against the Mashonas, who were under British protection, and cruelly massacred a large number, but the English gave them such prompt and severe punishment that in December, 1893, numbers of the Matabele chiefs and tribes made their submission, giving up a thousand rifles or muskets, and ten thousand spears to the new government of that country. In May, 1894, the British South Africa Company, which had obtained its



MATABELE INSURRECTION—BATTLE OF COLENBRANDER FARM, APRIL 25, 1896.

charter in 1889, and had occupied Mashonaland, was invested by a more precise instrument, upon terms settled between Mr. Cecil Rhodes and Sir Henry Loch, then her Majesty's High Commissioner for South Africa, with more extended powers.

BULUWAYO, OF By these terms, Matabeleland was made to include the western and
MATABELELAND. southwestern parts of the large territory, popularly called "Rhodesia," between the Limpopo and the Zambesi Rivers, bounded on the west by the Bechuanaland Protectorate, and on the east by the Portuguese dominions of the Mozambique sea-coast. The headquarters of the company's territorial government were then, April 11, 1896, established at Fort Salisbury, in Mashonaland. In Matabeleland the site of the former capital of the native king was retained, at Buluwayo, on a confluent of the Umkhosi River below the Matoppo Hills, about 120 miles from Tati, on the Bechuana frontier, and 150



MORNING MARKET IN JOHANNESBURG.

miles west of Fort Victoria, Mashonaland. Here the new British colony erected its capital on the main road which traverses the whole territory of Rhodesia from southwest to northeast, which is now connected with Cape Colony by a railroad, and there is small likelihood of either the Mashonas or Matabeles again opposing the English government.

Africa is to-day a land of great opportunities, both for the rich and poor man, possessing as it does advantages of climate, soil, mineral, rivers, lakes and woods equal to that of any other division of the earth. Indeed, it is a more promising country than was America a hundred years ago, and during another century we may expect to see a development no less remarkable.



TERRITORIAL MAP OF AFRICA, SHOWING EUROPEAN POSSESSIONS.

CHAPTER III.

LIVINGSTONE'S TRAVELS IN AFRICA.



R. DAVID LIVINGSTONE, a Scotchman, has won a greater reputation for travel and research in Africa than any other man, though his actual discoveries have not been so important as those of our own Stanley. Livingstone was a born philanthropist. The son of uncommonly observant and strict Presbyterians, he was encouraged to read only theological literature, all other reading being prohibited under pain of condign punishment. As might be expected, he disliked religion in his youth, and smuggled books of travel and adventure to such retreats as offered immunity from detection. He mentions it as a fact that the last punishment he ever received from his father was for reading books which he declared were inimical to religion.

Livingstone gained the means to school himself by spinning cotton, and completed a course of medicine by the same energetic application. He was now ready to see the world, and his desire was first to visit China, which was then closed to all nationalities, existing as a government in a marvelous exclusiveness which could alone incite the building of a wall as a protection against intrusion. About this time, however, the London Missionary Society desired to send a missionary into Southern Africa, and Livingstone's friends recommended him as a most suitable person. As sectarianism was not a characteristic of the society, which urged the teachings of Christ only, and salvation without creed or discipline, it pleased Livingstone, whose ideas were strictly in accord with these principles. Accordingly he was engaged, and in 1840 embarked for Africa, reaching Cape Town after a voyage of three months. Spending but a short time there, he started for the interior, where he spent the following sixteen years of his life in explorations and missionary and medical labors, without cost to the inhabitants. During his short stay at Cape Town he became acquainted with a fellow-missionary named Robert Moffat, whose daughter he married, and she subsequently accompanied him on his various expeditions.

Soon after his marriage he started by ox-team for the missionary station at Kuruman, in the Bechuana country, about six hundred miles northeast of Cape Town, where, after resting three months, he journeyed to Litubaruba, fifteen miles to the south. He entered upon a study of the native language, and in six months had gathered enough to express himself in the Bechuana tongue. He now went north to visit the Bakaa Mountains, much of which journey he was compelled to make on foot on account of his oxen being sick. Here he tried to found a settlement, but a war between neighboring tribes put an end to his plans. A return to Kuruman became necessary, to secure provisions, which, being obtained, he went into a beautiful valley called Mabotsa (latitude $25^{\circ} 14'$ south, longitude $26^{\circ} 30'$) and there founded a missionary station, to which he removed in 1843.

The natives of Mabotsa were called Bakatla, and were a very superstitious but friendly people. About this place lions were very troublesome, as they carried off cattle, both in the night and day-time, so that the Bakatla came to believe that the beasts were witches sent by their enemies to prey upon their flocks, and they made little effort to kill them. It is a

well-known fact that if one of a troop of lions is killed, the others will leave that part of the country; and in order to take advantage of this peculiarity Livingstone resolved to destroy at least one of the marauders. The order for a hunt was given, which was obeyed by the natives forming in a large circle to drive in whatever they might surround. In this way one of the lions was discovered sitting on a rock within the now closed circle. A native fired at it, but the ball struck the rock, which caused the lion to bite at the spot as a dog will at a stick thrust at him, but in another moment he bounded off and rushed through the circle, the men giving way instead of spearing him, owing to their fear of witchcraft.

When the circle was reformed and advanced, two more lions were found within it, but these also escaped without injury. The cowardly action of the Bakatla so disgusted Livingstone that he decided to hunt the lions on his own account, though a number of the more courageous natives followed him. They were not long in discovering another lion sitting on a rock not more than thirty yards distant; Livingstone aimed at the body and fired both barrels, at which the natives cried out, "He is shot! he is shot!" and were making toward it while Livingstone stood to reload his gun. When in the act of ramming down the bullet, a shout attracted his attention just as

the lion sprang upon him, catching his shoulder and bearing him to the ground. With a horrible growl the lion seized him by the arm, crunching the bone and shaking him like a terrier dog does a rat. Of the immediate effect of the bite Livingstone writes: "The shock produced a stupor similar to that which seems to be felt by a mouse after the

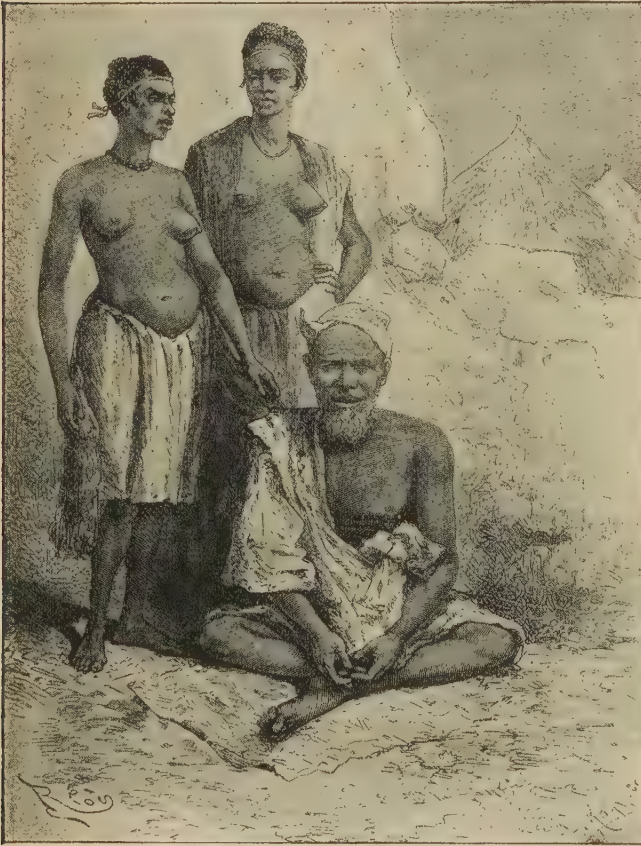


A PERILOUS ENCOUNTER WITH A LION.

first shake of the cat. It caused a sort of dreaminess, in which there was no sense of pain nor feeling of terror, though quite conscious of all that was happening. It was like what patients partially under the influence of chloroform describe, who see all the operation but feel not the knife. This singular condition was not the result of any mental process. The shake annihilated fear, and allowed no sense of horror in looking round at the beast. This peculiar state is probably produced in all animals killed by the carnivora; and if so, is a merciful provision by our benevolent Creator for lessening the pain of death."

As he turned to relieve the weight of the animal's paw, which rested upon his head, he saw one of the men of his party trying to shoot at a distance of ten yards, but his gun missed fire. At the same instant a dog belonging to one of the natives rushed in and bit the

lion on the leg, which attracted his attention away from Livingstone, but he immediately sprang upon a native named Mebalwe, and dreadfully lacerated his thigh. In an instant another brave fellow rushed to the assistance of his comrade, with a spear, but the lion seized him by the shoulder and would doubtless have killed the poor native but for the fact that the loss of blood from the wound inflicted by Livingstone's shots had so weakened him that his grip soon relaxed, and he fell dead. All this was the work of a few moments, and was evidently done by the animal in his dying paroxysms of rage. Besides crunching the bone into splinters, he left eleven teeth wounds on the upper part of Livingstone's arm. A wound from a lion's tooth resembles a gunshot wound; it is generally followed by a sloughing discharge, and pains are felt in the part periodically ever afterward. Livingstone wore a tartan jacket on this occasion, and it evidently wiped off all the virus from the teeth that pierced the flesh, for his



NATIVES OF MABOTSA.

two companions in this affray both suffered from the peculiar pains, while he escaped with only the inconvenience of a false joint in the limb. The man whose shoulder was bitten showed his wound actually burst forth afresh on the same month of the following year.

The settlement at Mabotsa soon became a flourishing place, as the natives were anxious to be near Livingstone, whom they regarded as a great chief and doctor, able to cure their ills and protect them against their enemies. One of the principal chiefs of the Bakwains was named Sechele, an intelligent fellow, who quickly perceived how superior the white man was to his people, and he therefore sought to imitate Livingstone as nearly as possible. He was easily converted to Christianity, and became a very active disciple

whose labors for a time seemed to bear excellent fruit, for he converted a great many of his own people and had them attend a school which Livingstone established, that they might learn to read the Bible. Everything appeared propitious, until a dreadful drought set in; vegetation parched up, the streams ran dry, and even the birds and insects perished. In vain the rain-maker practiced his magic, the clouds would roll up and break in copious showers sometimes within ten miles of Mabotsa, but never a drop in the scorched fields of the Bakwains. Patience at length ceased, and the people openly declared that the drought was a curse sent upon them for becoming Christians, a belief which was readily received because rain fell in abundance among all the neighboring tribes. Yet they continued to treat Livingstone with the greatest kindness, though constantly begging him to quit praying, lest his wickedness in so doing should bring other calamities upon the country.

**ENTRAPPING
LARGE GAME.**

The drought having destroyed all corn and other vegetables upon which the natives were dependent, to obtain food a hunt was proposed by Livingstone, which suggestion was received with general satisfaction, though some were doubtful if any success could be had with the "drought-maker" among the hunters. Nevertheless, a hunt was organized. Some miles from Mabotsa there was a small creek not yet quite dry, which Livingstone knew must be resorted to by numbers of wild animals, and in this neighborhood he had the natives construct what they called a "hopo." The hopo consists of two brush hedges in the form of an open-ended V, which are high and thick near the angle. Instead of the hedges being joined, they are made to form a lane about fifty yards in length, at the extremity of which is a pit eight feet deep and fifteen feet in breadth and length. Trees are laid carefully about the borders so as to overlap the edge of the pit to prevent entrapped animals from leaping out. The entire pit is carefully covered over with green rushes, to make it appear like a roadway, thoroughly disguising the pitfall.

As the hedge-wings are generally a mile or more in length and as broad at the entrance, by beating up the adjacent covert a large amount of game is driven into the hopo, particularly as two or three hundred hunters make a great circuit and by loud shouts drive in the game from an immense district of country.

In the hunt which Livingstone organized, an unusually large quantity of game was beat up, consisting of rhinoceri, antelopes, hartebeests and lions, so that the pit was not only filled, but hundreds escaped over the bodies of the less fortunate. The natives destroyed those that were entrapped with spears and javelins, while Livingstone added much to the store of meat by shooting several antelopes that would have otherwise escaped. A great feast followed and enough food was secured to last until the rains came to freshen vegetation again.

After a residence of eight years at Mabotsa, Livingstone had thoroughly established the Christian doctrine, and had so far educated many of the Bakwains that they were qualified to continue the schools. Two English sportsmen, named Murray and Oswell, who had penetrated to Lattakoo, hearing of Livingstone at Mabotsa, paid him a visit and requested him to accompany them across the great Kalahari desert to Lake Ngami, which is in latitude $20^{\circ} 30'$; longitude 23° .

**CROSSING
AN AFRICAN DESERT.**

Kalahari is not, strictly speaking, a desert, but is called so from the fact that it contains no running water, and very little can be procured by digging wells; notwithstanding this, it is covered with grass and a great variety of creeping plants, while game, especially antelope, abounds in numbers like buffaloes on our western plains thirty years ago. A

peculiarity of this so-called desert is the vast amount of delicious tubers and refreshing vine fruits which are everywhere found on its surface. One of these is the *Leroshua*, which is a small plant with linear leaves and a stem not longer than a crow's quill; on digging down a foot or eighteen inches, a tuber is found, generally four to six inches in diameter. The meat, which is enclosed within a thin rind, is most excellent. Another plant, named *Mokuri*, which grows only in parched districts, is found here. It is an herbaceous creeper and deposits under ground a number of tubers, in a circle of a yard or more, some of which are as large as a man's head. The natives, who are Bushmen, strike the ground on the circumference of the circle with stones, until by a peculiar sound they know the tuber is beneath. They then dig a foot or so and find it. Strange enough, this tuber does not contain food, but is filled with deliciously cool water, furnishing an inestimable blessing to persons traveling through the country.

But the most surprising plant of the desert is a peculiar sort of watermelon. The elephant, true lord of the forest, revels in this fruit, and so do the different species of



PIGMIES OF THE KALAHARI DESERT.

rhinoceros, although naturally so diverse in their choice of pasture. The various kinds of antelopes feed on them with equal avidity, and lions, hyenas, jackals, and mice, all seem to know and appreciate the common blessing. These melons are not, however, all of them eatable; some are sweet, and others so bitter that the whole are named by the Boers the "bitter watermelon." The natives select them by striking one melon after another with a hatchet,

and applying the tongue to the gashes. They thus readily distinguish between the bitter and sweet. The bitter are deleterious, but the sweet are quite wholesome. This peculiarity of one species of plants bearing both sweet and bitter fruit occurs also in a red, eatable cucumber, often met with in the country.

The Bushmen, also known as *Bakalahari*, a small tribe, or offshoot, are declared by some travelers to be pigmies, not more than four feet in height, who choose their residences far from water on account of their dread of visits from strange tribes. They not unfrequently hide their liquid supplies in pits and build fires over them. When water is desired, the women come with twenty or thirty of their vessels in a bag or net on their backs. These water-vessels consist of ostrich egg shells, with a hole in the end of each barely large enough to admit one's finger. The women tie a bunch of grass to one end of a reed about two feet long, and insert it in a hole dug as deep as the arm will reach, then ram down the wet sand firmly round it. Applying the mouth to the free end of the reed, they form a vacuum in the grass beneath, in which the water collects, and in a short time rises into the mouth. An egg-shell is placed on the ground alongside the reed, some inches below the mouth of the sucker. A straw guides the water into the hole of the vessel, as the woman draws

mouthful after mouthful from below. The water is made to pass along the outside, not through the straw. If any one will attempt to squirt water into a bottle placed some distance below his mouth, he will soon perceive the wisdom of the Bushwoman's contrivance for giving the stream direction by means of a straw. The whole stock of water is thus passed through the woman's mouth as a pump, and, when taken home, is carefully buried.

To turn from such a refreshing scene—the bubbling spring, that wells up like an eternal joy—and picture a hoary waste, whitened by the glare of a scorching sun, one vast sheen of trackless, waterless, arid desert, is not a pleasurable transformation; yet we must now view Livingstone on his march across the Kalahari desert to traverse new fields, untrodden by the European. It was on the first of June, 1849, that he, in

A DREARY MARCH ACROSS THE DESERT.

company with three English hunters, started upon the march, provided with oxen and horses to convey their baggage, and guides to direct the way. From the beginning the journey was a painful one, for there was a sandy stretch before them over which it was most difficult to draw the wagons. The distance from Mabotsa to Lake Ngami is about three hundred and fifty miles, two points west of north. Water was nowhere obtainable on the route except at Bushman settlements, which were so far apart that the party often went for forty hours without wetting their parched lips. Oxen are naturally slow travelers, but in this burning waste they sometimes made only six miles a day, being so nearly overcome by heat and thirst that any attempt to drive them further would have caused their death. Hartebeests and antelopes were very numerous notwithstanding the want of water, which led Livingstone to examine the alimentary canal of several that he killed, in order that he might discover by what peculiar endowment nature enabled them to subsist without water so long; but he found nothing in them that was not common to other animals.

At Nchokotsa, a little more than half-way from Mabotsa to Ngami, the party came upon a great number of salt basins, covered with an efflorescence of lime. This salt basin, which is twenty miles in circumference, is obscured, however, in approaching from the southeast, by a thick belt of mopane trees; and, at the time the basin burst upon their view, the setting sun was casting a beautiful blue haze over the wide incrustations, making the whole look exactly like a lake.

A REMARKABLE SALT BASIN.

Here not a particle of imagination was necessary to enable them to believe that they were gazing upon a large body of water; the waves seemed to dance along the shore, and the shadows of the trees were vividly reflected beneath the surface in such an admirable manner that the loose cattle and the horses, dogs, and even the Hottentots, ran off toward the deceitful lake. A herd of zebras in the mirage looked so exactly like elephants that preparations were made to pursue them, but a break in the haze dispelled the illusion.

On August 1, 1849, exactly two months after leaving Mabotsa, the party came in sight of Lake Ngami, they being the first white men that had ever gazed upon its placid bosom. The lake is not very large, perhaps fifty miles in circumference, but it is the basin for many rivers, which pour their waters into it during the wet season until it inundates an immense district of country. One of the principal rivers which flow into it from the south is the Zouga, a considerable stream, but remarkable chiefly for its fish and the prodigious amount of game that lines its shores. Elephants and a new species of antelope, called *leche*, were particularly numerous, but the former are inferior in size to those found further south.

DISCOVERY OF LAKE NGAMI.

The natives of this locality, called Bakurutse, who are generally friendly, live chiefly on fish, which they spear, and also catch in nets that are woven exactly like fish-nets in

America; and with these they catch such great quantities that they do not pretend to consume the half.

After some days spent on the banks of the lake, Livingstone resolved upon a visit to Sebituane, chief of the Makololos, three hundred miles north, there to begin again his missionary labors. As Oswell and Murray were elephant hunters, they here separated from Livingstone and continued their sport in the surrounding country, but not without first giving a quantity of new dress goods to Mrs. Livingstone, for herself and three children, who were greatly in need of clothes, their old ones being fairly in tatters.

Six months after his arrival at the Makololo country, Livingstone met Mr. Oswell again, and together they traveled one hundred and thirty miles northeast, to a place called Sesheke, which was near the very centre of the continent. On hunting through this country they fortunately discovered the Zambesi River, one of the most considerable streams in Africa, being from three hundred to six hundred yards broad at extreme low water, and rising twenty feet perpendicularly at its flood.



LIVINGSTONE ON THE SHORES OF LAKE NGAMI.

Livingstone met with difficulties in the Makololo country which he had not anticipated: the people were hospitable, but had recently engaged in the slave-trade, which seemed to render them insensible to Christian teaching. Mrs. Livingstone and her children were also suffering severely from fever, which resisted all the remedies and became so serious that he decided to return to Cape Town with them, and from there send them to England, and then return to Makololo to prosecute his work alone. This he accomplished, and was much encouraged to see his family greatly improved in health when they took passage on the vessel for home.

Livingstone procured several oxen and two guides at Cape Town, with such necessities as his journey required, and started on his return to the Makololo country, nearly fifteen hundred miles from the Cape. Being free from anxiety, he describes this trip as a pleasant picnic, for all the people on his route were friendly, hundreds of whom received medical and surgical attention from him; for his fame as a physician seemed to precede him, so that at every village great crowds came begging his professional services.

Being in no special haste, he spent much of his time hunting and studying the animal life which came under his observation. He was somewhat astonished to learn, in dissecting the large game which he killed, that it was subject to most annoying and fatal diseases, not wholly unlike those from which our domestic animals suffer. He saw several gnu, giraffes, buffaloes, hartebeestes, etc., afflicted with a mangy disorder, from which they died with a frothing at the nostrils. He saw one buffalo blind from ophthalmia, and rhinoceri that were worried by worms which infested the conjunction of the eyes.

STRANGE DISEASES AND PECULIARITIES OF ANIMALS.

The carnivora, too, become diseased and mangy ; lions grow lean and perish miserably by reason of the decay of the teeth. When a lion becomes too old to catch game, he frequently takes to killing goats in the villages ; a woman or child happening to go out at night falls a prey, too ; and as this is his only source of subsistence now, he continues it. From this circumstance has arisen the idea that the lion, when he has once tasted human flesh, loves it better than any other. A man-eater is invariably an old lion ; and when he overcomes his fear of man so far as to come to villages for goats, the people remark, "His teeth are worn, he will soon kill men." They at once acknowledge the necessity of instant action, and turn out to destroy him. When living far away from population, or when, as is the case in some parts, he entertains a wholesome dread of the Bushmen, as soon as either disease or old age overtakes him, he begins to catch mice and other small rodents, and even to eat grass ; the latter may be taken as medicine, however, as dogs are observed to do.

When encountered in day time, the lion stands a second or two gazing, then turns slowly round, and walks away for a dozen paces, looking over his shoulder ; at first slowly retreating he then begins to trot, and when he thinks himself out of sight bounds off like a greyhound. By day there is not, as a rule, the least danger of lions attacking man, or even on a clear moonlight night, except when breeding ; at such times they will brave almost any danger ; and if a man happens to cross to the windward of them, both lion and lioness will rush at him, in the manner of a bitch with whelps.

This does not often happen, and Livingstone knew of only two or three instances of the kind. In one case a man, passing where the wind blew from him to the animals, was bitten before he could climb a tree ; occasionally a man on horse-back has been caught by the leg under the same circumstances. So general, however, is the sense of security on moonlight nights, that travelers seldom tie up their oxen, but let them lie loose by the wagons ; while on a dark, rainy night, if a lion is in the neighborhood, he is almost sure to venture to kill an ox. His approach is always stealthy, except when wounded ; and any appearance of a trap is enough to cause him to refrain from making the last spring. This seems characteristic of the feline species.

When a lion is very hungry, and lying in wait, the sight of an animal may make him commence stalking it. In one case a man, while stealthily crawling toward a rhinoceros,



BUFFALO AT BAY BEFORE A LION.

happened to glance behind him, and found to his horror a lion *stalking him*; he only escaped by springing up a tree like a cat. At Lopepe a lioness sprang on the after quarter of Mr. Oswell's horse, and when his companions came up to him they found the marks of the claws on the horse, and a scratch on Mr. O.'s hand. The horse, on feeling the lion on him, sprang away, and the rider, caught by a wait-a-bit thorn, was brought to the ground and rendered insensible. His dogs saved him. Another English gentleman (Captain Codrington) was surprised in the same way, though not hunting lions at the time, but turning round he shot the animal through the neck. By accident a horse belonging to Codrington ran away, but was stopped by the bridle catching a stump; there he remained a prisoner two days, and when found the whole space around was marked by the footprints of lions. They had evidently been afraid to attack the haltered horse from fear that it was a trap. Two lions came up by night to within three yards of Livingstone's oxen, which were tied to a wagon, and a sheep tied to a tree, and stood roaring but afraid to make a spring, thus showing their cowardice before objects which they do not understand.

Most of the feats of strength which Livingstone saw performed by lions, such as the taking away of an ox, etc., were not by carrying, but by dragging the carcass along the ground. They will spring, on some occasions, onto the hind-quarters of a horse, but no one has ever seen them on the withers of a giraffe. They do not mount on the hind-quarters of an eland even, but try to tear it down with their claws.

Oswell and Vardon, while hunting together once, saw three lions endeavoring to drag down a buffalo which was mortally wounded, but they were unable to do so. This very exciting circumstance is thus described by Mr. Vardon in a letter to Livingstone: "Oswell and I were riding this afternoon along the banks of the
ADVENTURES
WITH LIONS. Limpopo, when a water-buck started in front of us. I dismounted and was following it through the jungle, when three buffaloes got up, and, after going a short distance, stood still, and the nearest bull turned round and looked at me. A ball from the two-ouncer crashed into his shoulder, and they all three made off. Oswell and I followed as soon as I had reloaded, and when we were in sight of the buffalo, and gaining on him at every stride, three lions leaped on the unfortunate brute; he bellowed most lustily as he kept up a kind of running fight, but he was, of course, soon overpowered and pulled down. We had a fine view of the struggle, and saw the lions on their hind legs tearing away with teeth and claws in most ferocious style. We crept up within thirty yards, and, kneeling down, blazed away at the lions. My rifle was a single barrel, and I had no spare gun. One lion fell dead almost on the buffalo; he had merely time to turn toward us, seize a bush with his teeth, and drop dead with the stick in his jaws. The second made off immediately; and the third raised his head, coolly looked round for a moment, then went on tearing and biting at the carcass as hard as ever. We retired a short distance to load, then again advanced and fired. The lion made off, but a ball that he received ought to have stopped him, as it went clean through his shoulder-blade. He was followed up and killed, after having charged several times. Both lions were males. It is not often that one bags a brace of lions and a bull buffalo in about ten minutes. It was an exciting adventure, and I shall never forget it."

In general the lion seizes the animal he is attacking by the flank near the hind-leg, or by the throat below the jaw. It is questionable whether he ever attempts to seize an animal by the withers. The flank is the most common point of attack, and that is the part he begins to feast on first. The natives and lions are very similar in their tastes in the selection of tid-bits: an eland may be seen disemboweled by a lion so completely that he

scarcely seems cut up at all. The bowels and fatty parts form a full meal for even the largest lion. The jackal comes sniffing about, and sometimes suffers for his temerity by a stroke from the lion's paw laying him dead. When gorged, the lion falls fast asleep, and is then easily dispatched. Hunting a lion with dogs involves very little danger as compared with hunting the Indian tiger, because the dogs bring him out of cover and make him stand at bay, giving the hunter plenty of time for a good deliberate shot. A man is in much more danger of being run over when walking in the streets of New York than he is of being devoured by lions in Africa, unless engaged in hunting the animal.

The lion has other checks on inordinate increase besides man. He seldom attacks full-grown animals; but frequently, when a buffalo calf is caught by him, the cow rushes to the rescue, and a toss from her often kills him. It is questionable if a single lion ever



HUNTING THE LION AND BUFFALO IN SOUTH AFRICA.

attacks a full-grown buffalo. The amount of roaring heard at night, on occasions when a buffalo is killed, seems to indicate there are always more than one lion engaged in the onslaught.

On the plain, south of Sebituane's ford, a herd of buffaloes kept a number of lions from their young by the males turning their heads to the enemy. The young and the cows were in the rear. One toss from a bull will kill the strongest lion that ever breathed. Livingstone says that in one part of India even the tame buffaloes feel their superiority to some wild animals, for they have been seen to chase a tiger up the hills, bellowing as if they enjoyed the sport. Lions never go near any elephants except the calves, which, when young, are sometimes torn by them; every living thing retires before the lordly elephant,

yet a full-grown one would be an easier prey than a rhinoceros; the lion rushes off at the mere sight of this latter beast.

The Zouga River, besides attracting large numbers of wild game to its waters, seems also to be the resort of many serpents, not a few of which are of the most venomous kind.

Livingstone mentions having seen one at Kolobeng of a dark brown, nearly black color, that measured eight feet three inches in length; and it continued to distil clear poison for several hours after its head was cut off. This serpent is so copiously supplied with poison that it can strike an ox dead. It is sometimes called the "spitting serpent," and is believed to be able to eject its poison a considerable distance.

Along the reedy marsh banks of the Zouga are also found several species of vipers, and that most dangerous serpent, the puff adder, which, when angered, distends the skin about its neck to wonderful proportions, and is so vicious that it will readily attack anything, whether man or beast. There is a snake peculiar to this region which the natives call "Noga-putsane," or serpent of a kid, so named because at night it utters a cry exactly



SHOOTING A BOA CONSTRICTOR.

like the bleating of that little animal. Cobras are quite numerous and greatly feared by the people, yet it is seldom that any one is bitten by them, as they usually give ample warning by rearing up and swaying their heads back and forth several times before striking. The large python, measuring from fifteen to twenty feet in length, is also found near the Zouga. Their bite is harmless, but they often kill and devour animals of medium size, which they crush and swallow like the boa constrictor; generally, however, their food is small animals, such as field mice, rats, etc. The python is hunted by the natives for its flesh, which they greatly esteem, indeed preferring it to the meat of nearly all animals.

Notwithstanding the journey was a pleasant one, Livingstone was glad when he arrived at Makololo, for much traveling becomes tedious however great the attractions may be on the route. He found a hearty welcome among the people, and everything propitious for the establishment of a successful missionary school. He invited the chiefs to come first, but they held back in mysterious awe, fearing there was some lurking danger in a thing which could relate incidents that had transpired in remote localities. At length

Matibe, father-in-law of the principal chief, Sekeletu, offered himself as a student, but he affected the disposition of a doctor who must first take his own medicine in order to show his patients that it contains no poisonous ingredient. Gradually the school increased, and so soon as one had mastered the rudiments he was sent out to become a teacher of others.

After laying the foundation for a mission at Makololo, by having taught several of the tribe to read, Livingstone departed for the northwest, his ultimate destination being Loanda, which is at the mouth of the river Coanza, where it empties into the Atlantic Ocean. Sekeletu had taken such an interest in the mission and was so devoted to Livingstone that he resolved to accompany his white friend a considerable portion of the journey, and also provided an escort to protect him from harm.

INCIDENTS OF TRAVEL.

Being fully prepared for a long trip, with provisions, oxen and guides, Livingstone departed from Makololo, taking his route along the Leeambye River, on which he had several canoes launched that were of great service in transporting the baggage. The country was generally fine, and thickly inhabited, but none of the natives manifested hostility, being disposed rather to friendly curiosity on observing the first white man who had ever visited them. Approaching the Loeti River they came upon a number of hippopotamus hunters who fled with every indication of terror upon seeing Livingstone, whom they no doubt regarded as some mysterious being.

The numbers of large game above Libonta are prodigious, and they proved remarkably tame. Eighty-one buffaloes defiled in slow procession before the camp-fire one evening, within gun-shot; and herds of splendid elands stood by day, without fear, at two hundred yards distance. They were all of the striped variety, and with their forearm markings, large dewlaps, and sleek skins, were a beautiful sight to see. The lions here roar much more than in the country near the lake. One evening they had a good opportunity of hearing the utmost exertions the animal can make in that line. They had made their beds on a large sand-bank, and could be easily seen from all sides. A lion on the opposite shore amused himself for hours by roaring as loudly as he could, putting, as is usual in such cases, his mouth near the ground, to make the sound reverberate. The river was too broad for a ball to reach him, so they let him enjoy himself, certain that he dared not have been guilty of the impertinence in the Bushman country. Wherever game abounds, these animals exist in proportionate numbers. Here they were very frequently seen, and two of the largest seemed about as tall as common donkeys; but the mane made their bodies appear rather larger.

Rowing along the river afforded interesting sights of birds, reptiles, and animals. Fish-hawks sailed through the air, or attacked the full-pouched pelican; the alligator-bird, the tinc-tinc-tinc, or iron-beating bird, the great ibis, the rhinoceros-bird, and a thousand other singular species. Numbers of iguanas sat sunning themselves on overhanging branches of trees. They are highly esteemed as an article of food, so the chief boatman sits at the bow of his canoe armed with a javelin to spear those that do not quickly disappear.

SINGULAR BIRDS, REPTILES AND ANIMALS.

The rapids in the part of the river between Katima-molelo and Nameta are relieved by several reaches of still, deep water, fifteen or twenty miles long. In these very large herds of hippopotami are seen, and the deep furrows they make in ascending the banks to graze during the nights, are everywhere apparent. They are guided back to the water by the scent, but a long-continued pouring rain makes it impossible for them to perceive, by that means, in which direction the river lies, and they are often found bewildered on land. The

hunters take advantage of their helplessness on these occasions to kill them. It is impossible to judge of the numbers in a herd, for they are almost always hidden beneath the waters; but as they require to come up every few minutes to breathe, when there is a constant succession of heads thrown up then the herd is supposed to be large. They love a still reach of the stream, as in the more rapid parts of the channel they are floated down so quickly that much exertion is necessary to regain the distance lost by swimming up again; such constant exertion disturbs them in their nap. They prefer to remain by day in a drowsy, yawning state, and, though their eyes are open, they take little notice of things at a distance. The males utter a loud succession of snorting grunts, which may be heard a mile off. Livingstone says that in passing over a wounded one in a canoe a distinct grunting was elicited, though the animal lay entirely under water.

The young, when very little, take their stand on the neck of the dam, and the small head rising above the larger, comes soonest to the surface. The dam, knowing the more urgent need of her calf, comes more frequently to the surface when it is in her care. But in the rivers of the Loanda, where they are much in danger of being shot, even the hippopotamus gains wit by experience; for, while those in the Zambesi put up their heads openly to blow, those referred to keep their noses among water-plants, and breathe so quietly that one would not dream of their existence in the river except by footprints on the banks.

CHAPTER IV.

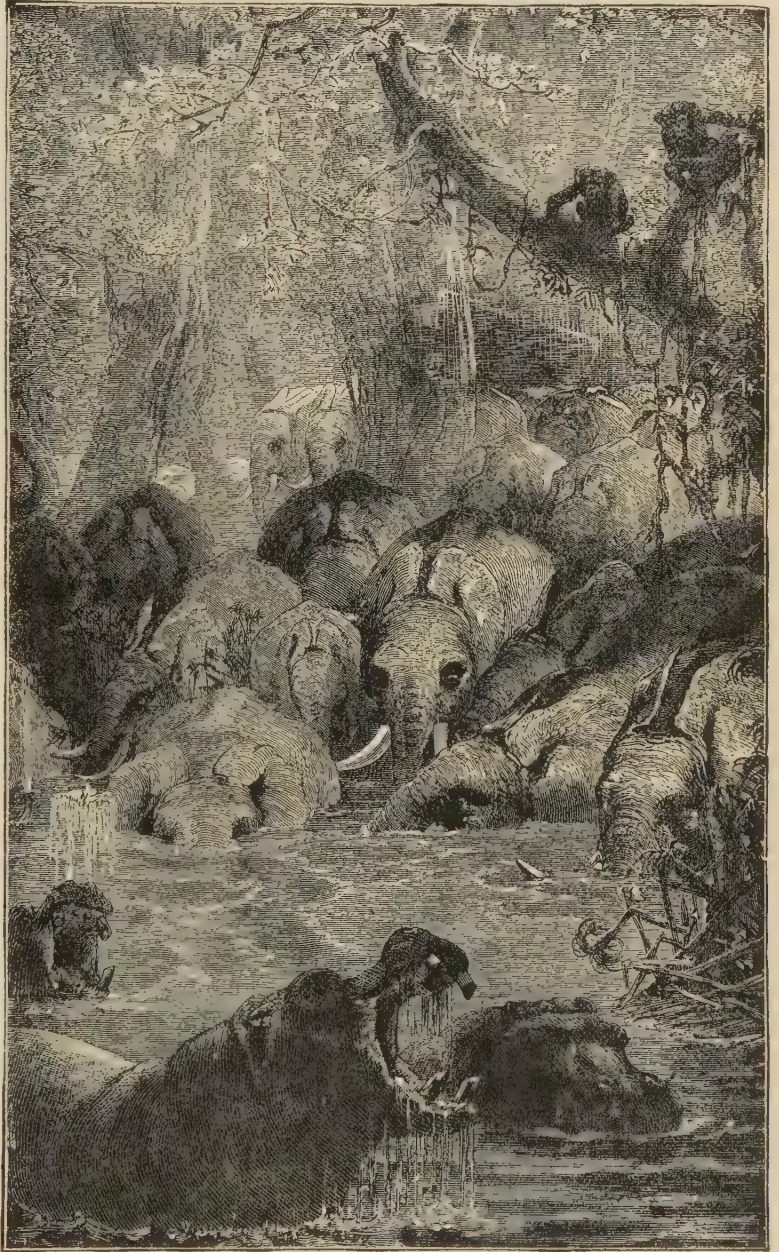
RAVAGES OF CROCODILES IN THE LEEAMBYE.

Part of Livingstone's company marched along the banks with the oxen, and part went in the canoes, but their pace was regulated by the speed of the men on shore. Their course was rather difficult, on account of the numbers of departing and re-entering branches of the Leeambye, which they had to avoid or wait at till ferried over. The number of crocodile is prodigious, and in this river they are more savage than in some others. Many children are carried off annually at Sesheke and other towns; for, notwithstanding the danger, when they go down for water they almost always must play a while. This reptile is said by the natives to strike the victim with its tail, then drag him in and drown him. When lying in the water watching for prey, the body never appears. Many calves are lost also, and it is seldom that a number of cows can swim over at Sesheke without some loss. Livingstone says he never could avoid shuddering on seeing his men swimming across these branches, after one of them had been caught by the thigh and taken below. He, however, retained, as nearly all of them in the most trying circumstances do, his full presence of mind, and having a small, square, ragged-edged javelin with him, when dragged to the bottom gave the alligator a stab behind the shoulder. The crocodile, writhing in pain, left him, and he came out with the deep marks of the reptile's teeth on his thigh.

The great abundance of game which was constantly met with was consoling to the invariably hungry natives, but on account of certain difficulties it had its unpleasant features to Livingstone. He tried in vain to instruct certain men in his company how to shoot, but with all his care they fired so wildly that if they had been his sole reliance all the ammunition must have been expended without any game to show for it; thus the shooting all devolved on Livingstone. His arm had never recovered fully from the lion's bite, which he received near Mabotse, as, owing to the lack of proper surgical attention, the

broken and crushed bone had not united well. Continual hard manual labor, and several falls from oxen had lengthened the ligament by which the ends of the bones were united, and a false joint was the consequence. On this account he could not himself shoot well, so that a great part of his time had to be spent hunting in order to supply his men with meat.

Passing out of the Leeambye River, which in some places further east is called the Zambesi, Livingstone's party came to another river called the Luba. He was now among the Balonda people, a tribe that has a vague idea of spirit life, which we may possibly call religion, but instead of this idea benefiting them, it has a contrary effect, for their superstitions only seem to degrade them the more. They file their teeth to a point and tattoo themselves in various parts, but chiefly on the abdomen; the skin is raised in small elevated cicatrices, each nearly a half an inch long and a quarter of an inch in diameter, so that a number of them may constitute a star or other device. The dark shade of the skin prevents any coloring matter showing in these figures, but they love much to have the whole surface of their bodies anointed with a comfortable varnish of oil. Sheakondo was chief of the Barotse tribe, and his wife ruled over the Balonda, a neighboring people, considerably intermixed with the former. Beyond these is another tribe of Balonda, over whom the great female chief, Nyamoana, ruled. She was reputed to have been a woman of much cunning and immense influence, due principally to her powers of necromancy. Nyamoana treated Livingstone in a most hospitable manner, and besides giving him some oxen insisted



ELEPHANTS AND HIPPOPOTAMI OF THE ZAMBESI.

on furnishing a guide to conduct him to the next village, which was also governed by a woman, named Manenko. She was a finely formed young woman, having no other covering upon her person than a thick daubing of yellow ochre. She was a dealer in charms, and when one of Livingstone's Masiko guides entered a tent of her tribe without first requesting permission, she expressed her belief that it was for the purpose of leaving some wicked charm; she therefore raised a big row and detained the party two days. Like women in general, this chief suddenly changed her mind, and became as friendly as at first. She not only suffered Livingstone to depart in peace, but accompanied him to the next village, named Kabompo, which contained many thousand people, ruled by a chief called Shinte. Here Livingstone was treated to a royal reception, at which Shinte sat on his throne and had his warriors go through their military exercise of leaping and throwing spears.

Owing to the fact that Livingstone was now suffering from an enervating fever, he was unable for several days to visit Shinte, as that chief had repeatedly requested him to do.

When he was a little recovered, however, he called upon the chief, and **AN AMUSING SHOW.** to amuse him exhibited a magic lantern which threw pictures life-size.

Shinte at once sent for all his wives and the dignitaries of his small court, and upon their assembling, the show was begun. The first picture exhibited was Abraham about to slaughter his son Isaac; it was shown as large as life, and the uplifted knife was in the act of striking the lad; the Balonda men remarked that the picture was much more like a god than the things of wood or clay they worshiped. Livingstone explained that this man was the first of a race to whom God had given the Bible, now held, and that among his children our Saviour appeared. The ladies listened with silent awe; but when he withdrew the slide, the uplifted dagger moving toward them, they thought it was to be sheathed in their bodies instead of Isaac's. "Mother! mother!" all shouted at once, and off they rushed helter-skelter, tumbling pell-mell over each other, and over the little idol-huts and tobacco-bushes; nor could they be induced to come back again. Shinte, however, sat bravely through the whole performance and afterward examined the instrument with interest. An explanation was always added after each time of showing its powers, so that no one should imagine there was aught supernatural in it.

It being now the rainy season, everything was so wet that it was almost impossible to procure guides, and more especially since Shinte had contracted such a great liking for

Livingstone that he was anxious to detain him, believing that so long **HOW SHINTE PROVED** as the white man remained in the village there would befall himself

HIS LOVE. and people nothing but good luck and pleasure. One miserably rainy day, while Livingstone was alone in his tent, Shinte stepped in as

though anxious no one should observe him; after examining such curiosities as a looking-glass, books, hair-brushes, comb, watch, etc., he closed the tent opening that no one might witness the extravagance of which he was about to be guilty. He then drew out from his limited clothing a string of beads and the end of a conical shell, which he hung about Livingstone's neck with the remark, "There, now, you have a proof of my friendship." The value of this present in the estimation of Shinte was very great, for such a shell is considered in that region of as much value as the Lord Mayor's badge in England. For two of them a slave might be bought, and five would be considered a handsome price for an elephant's tusk worth in England \$150.

After leaving Shinte, Livingstone proceeded northward, and he observed that the guides furnished him at the various villages had much more courtesy than any of the tribes further south. They would not partake of food which they had given to his party, nor would they

eat their own food in Livingstone's presence. When it was cooked they retired into a thicket and ate their porridge; then all stood up and clapped their hands and praised Intemese (their god) for it.

The dress of the Balonda men consists of the softened skins of small animals, as the jackal or wild cat, hung before and behind from a girdle round the loins. The dress of the women is of a nondescript character; but they were not immodest. They stand before strangers perfectly unconscious of any indecorum. But, while ignorant of their own deficiency, they could not maintain their gravity at the sight of the nudity of Livingstone's men behind. Much to their annoyance the young girls laughed outright whenever their backs were turned to them.

While passing through a village governed by a chief named Ionga Panza one of the guides deserted, and stealing some articles from the chief, made off. The chief held Livingstone responsible for the loss of his property, as he had brought the thief into the country, and the controversy came near ending in a row; **THE TAILLESS OX.** but in order to avoid such a calamity, Livingstone agreed to give Panza an ox in place of the stolen articles. It happened that the ox had lost part of his tail, which led the natives to suspect that it had been purposely cut off and some witchcraft medicine inserted, whereupon they rejected the ox and another had to be substituted. Livingstone now had only four oxen left, and, seizing upon the idea which this incident had suggested, he had his men cut off a part of each of their tails, in which "magical" condition he had no difficulty in retaining them.

The objective point of the expedition was the Portuguese settlement of St. Paul de Loanda, on the southwestern coast of Africa, and as they drew near the sea, Livingstone observed that his men became very uneasy. On ascending some hills near the town they caught a glimpse of the ocean, which the men **ST. PAUL DE LOANDA.** regarded with the utmost awe. On describing their feelings afterward, they remarked that "we marched along with our father, believing that what the ancients had always told us was true, that the world has no end; but all at once the world said to us, 'I am finished; there is no more of me!'" They had always imagined that the world was one extended plain without limit.

Livingstone arrived at Loanda on the thirty-first of May, 1854, almost worn out with fatigue and severe dysentery. The town, with a population of twelve thousand souls, contained but a single Englishman, who was a commissioner for the suppression of the slave trade. This man looked upon Livingstone as a brother, and took him at once to his house, giving him his own bed and making him comfortable in every way.

Livingstone remained at Loanda nearly four months, much of which time he was bed-ridden by fever, although under excellent medical care all the while. There was an English man-of-war anchored before Loanda, in Bengo bay, the surgeon of which devoted most assiduous attention to the traveler, but he was so **A JOURNEY ACROSS THE CONTINENT.** emaciated and debilitated, and the malaria had such firm hold that his system was almost incapable of rallying, and thus, despite his anxiety to return to the interior and open up a route across the continent by way of the Zambesi River, he was forced either to keep his bed or act with great prudence during a long convalescence.

During his stay in Loanda, when able to sit up, he wrote several letters which were published in the town paper, elaborating his plan for opening up an interior and transcontinental trade, which so commended itself to the Portuguese residents that they proffered

him such aid as he might require to complete his purposes. The merchants gave to each of his men a good horse and an elegant uniform, and also, by a public subscription, presented to Livingstone handsome specimens of all their articles of trade, and two donkeys.

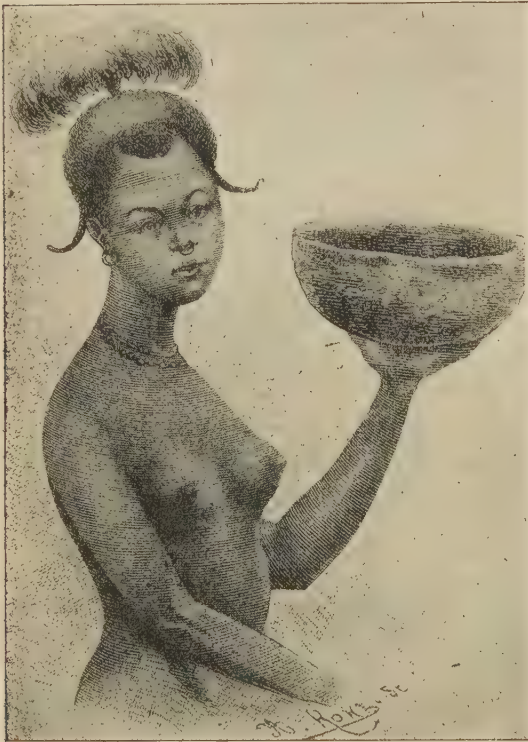
Having at length recovered from the fever, he prepared to re-enter Africa and make a crossing by way of the Zambesi, if that should prove possible, which his slight knowledge of the stream led him to believe could be done.

He says: "I took with me a good stock of cotton cloth, fresh supplies of ammunition and beads, and gave each of my men a musket. As my companions had amassed considerable

quantities of goods, they were unable to carry mine, but the bishop furnished me with twenty carriers, and sent forward orders to all the commandants of the districts through which we were to pass to render me every assistance in their power. Being now supplied with a good new tent made by my friends on board the *Philomel*, we left Loanda on the twentieth of September, 1854, and passed round by sea to the mouth of the River Bengo."

He ascended the Bengo for a hundred miles and then took to the country, passing over the same route he had come for several hundred miles, as he found any deviation from the regular road impracticable. In order to familiarize himself with the district generally, he made short excursions on transverse waterways to villages, in many of which he found primitive iron works and sugar refineries, which had been abandoned, no doubt, on account of wars, for there were proofs that they had been profitable when unmolested.

One of the most interesting people whose country borders the Bengo River, and also the



YOUNG ANGOLA WOMAN.

Atlantic, are the Angola tribe, which at one time possessed a higher culture than at present. Throughout their country may still be seen ruins of convents and forts, as well as of manufacturing industries. They have greatly retrograded, but from what cause is

AMONG THE indifferently understood. The chief recreations of the natives of Angola are **ANGOLAS.** marriages and funerals. When a young woman is about to be married, she

is placed in a hut alone and anointed with various unguents, and many incantations are employed in order to secure good fortune and faithfulness. Here, as almost everywhere in the south, the height of good fortune is to bear sons. They often leave a husband altogether if they have daughters only. In their dances, when any one may wish to deride another, in the accompanying song a line is introduced, "So-and-so has no children, and never will get any." She feels the insult so keenly that it is not uncommon for her to rush away and commit suicide. After some days the bride elect is taken to another hut, and adorned with all the richest clothing and ornaments that the relatives can either lend or borrow. She is then placed in a public situation, saluted as a lady, and

presents made by all her acquaintances are placed around her. After this she is taken to the residence of her husband, where she has a hut for herself, and becomes one of several wives, for polygamy is general. Dancing, feasting, and drinking on such occasions are prolonged for several days. In case of separation, the woman returns to her father's family, and the husband receives back what he gave for her. In nearly all cases a man gives a high price for a wife, and in case of mulattoes, as much as \$300 are often paid to the parents of the bride.

When death occurs the body is kept several days, and there is a grand concourse of both sexes, with beating of drums, dances, and debauchery, kept up with feasting, etc., according to the means of the relatives. The great ambition of many of the blacks of Angola is to give their friends an expensive funeral. Often, when one is asked to sell a pig, he replies, "I am keeping it in case of the death of any of my friends." A pig is usually slaughtered and eaten on the last day of the ceremonies, and its head thrown into the nearest stream or river. A native will sometimes appear intoxicated on these occasions, and, if blamed for his intemperance, will reply, "Why! my mother is dead!" as if he thought it a sufficient justification. The expenses of funerals are so heavy that often years elapse before the relatives of the deceased can defray them.

In the Angola country there is found a very singular insect, which inhabits trees of the fig family. Seven or eight of these small bugs cluster around a spot, generally on a small branch of the tree, and there keep up a constant distillation of a clear fluid which, dropping to the ground, forms a little puddle below. If a vessel is placed **A CURIOUS** under them in the evening it will contain three or four pints of fluid in the **INSECT.** morning. Naturalists assert that the water thus obtained is really the tree sap which these insects, by a process which no one has attempted to explain, draw from the tree, but Livingstone, after making many experiments, denies this, and says the fluid is undoubtedly obtained by a condensation of the atmosphere, but he offers no theory as to how it is done.

At Tola Mungongo, about four hundred miles east of Loanda, Livingstone's attention was called to a peculiar red ant that infests that part of the country. He accidentally trod upon one of their nests, and hardly an instant seemed to elapse before a simultaneous attack was made on various parts of his body, up the trousers' **AFRICAN ANTS.** legs from below, and on his neck and breast above. The bites of these furies were like sparks of fire, and the only means of ridding himself of them was by hurriedly removing his clothing and picking them off one by one. It is astonishing how such small bodies can manifest so much venom and ill-nature. They not only bite, but twist themselves round after the mandibles are inserted, to produce laceration and pain, more than would be effected by the simple bite. They are very useful in consuming the dead animal matter of the country, and when they visit human habitations they clean them entirely of the destructive white ants and other vermin. The severity of their attacks is greatly increased by their vast numbers, and rats, mice, lizards, and even the great python, when in a state of surfeit from recent feeding, fall victims to their fierce onslaught. When an ox is slaughtered the natives are compelled to build fires around the carcass to prevent the red ants from devouring it.

In the Cassanga country, which adjoins that of Mungongo, the people are extremely superstitious, and pray to a god whom they call Barimo. They believe that the spirits of the dead, instead of taking up their abode in remote regions, remain always with the tribe and spend their time in vexing the living. A person accused of witchcraft must consent

to undergo the ordeal of drinking a tea made from an infusion of a poisonous tree; if the first dose nauseates and causes the stomach to reject it, the accused must drink again, so that death is certain. The same superstitious ideas being prevalent through the whole of the country north of the Zambesi seem to indicate that the people must originally have been one. In sickness, sacrifices of fowls and goats are made to appease the spirits. It is imagined that they wish to take the living away from earth and all its enjoyments. When one man has killed another a sacrifice is made, as if to lay the spirit of the victim. A sect is reported to exist



HIPPOPOTAMI HAUNT ALONG THE LEEBA RIVER.

who kill men in order to take their hearts and offer them to Barimo. The chieftainship is elective from certain families. Among the Bangalas of the Cassanga valley the chief is chosen from three families in rotation. A chief's brother inherits in preference to his son. The sons of a sister belong to her brother; and he often sells his nephews to pay his debts. By this and other unnatural customs, more than by war, is the slave-market supplied. The prejudices in favor of these practices are very deeply rooted in the native mind. Even at Loanda the natives retire out of the city in order to perform their heathenish rites without the cognizance of the authorities. Their religion, if such it may be called, is one of dread. Numbers of charms are employed to avert the evils with which they feel themselves to be encompassed.

Among nearly all the nations of South Africa the sight of a white person excites terror. In the villages the dogs run away with their tails between their legs, as if they had seen a lion. The women peer from behind walls till he comes near them, and then hastily dash into the house. When a little child, unconscious of danger, meets you in the street, he sets up a scream at the apparition, and conveys the impression that he is not far from going into fits. Among the Bechuanas Livingstone was often obliged to reprove the women for making a hobgoblin of the white man, by telling their children that they would send for him to bite them.

DREAD OF WHITE MEN.

On a rivulet called 'Tamba, Livingstone found a people of a light olive color, who were timid and civil. They file their teeth to a point, which makes the smiles of the women frightful, as it reminds one of the grin of an alligator. Many of the men are dandies; their shoulders are always wet with the oil dripping from their lubricated hair, and everything about them is ornamented in one way or another. Some thrum a musical instrument the livelong day, and when they wake at night proceed at once to their musical performance. Many of these musicians are too poor to have iron keys to their instruments, but make them of bamboo, and persevere, though no one hears the music but themselves. Others try to appear warlike by never going out of their huts except with a load of bows and arrows, or a gun ornamented with a strip of hide for every animal they have shot; and others never go anywhere without a canary in a cage. Ladies may be seen carefully tending little lap-dogs, which are intended to be eaten. Their villages are generally in forests, and composed of groups of irregularly planted brown huts, with banana and cotton trees and tobacco growing about. Round baskets are placed on the thatch of the huts for the hens to lay in, and on the arrival of strangers, men, women, and children ply their calling as hucksters with a great deal of noisy haggling; all their transactions are conducted with civil banter and good temper.

AFRICAN DANDIES.

Livingstone tarried a few days with his good friend Shinte, already spoken of, and then began a descent of the Leebe River. This is a beautiful stream, and besides having a tranquil, clear bosom, its banks are adorned with rich and varied vegetable growth, while game is found in great abundance. As they arrived at a village on the river shore several of the inhabitants came out and entreated Livingstone to attack a herd of buffaloes that were then feeding in the village garden, and so tame were the animals that he was able to come within six yards of them. His arm was so badly disabled by the lion bite, already described, that he could shoot only with the greatest effort and uncertainty, which made him a very inferior shot. Presently he saw a large buffalo running directly toward him, evidently with hostile intentions. He glanced around, but the only tree on the plain was a hundred yards off, and there was no escape elsewhere. He therefore cocked his rifle, with the intention of giving the buffalo a steady shot in the forehead when he should come within three or four yards. The thought flashed across his mind, "What if your gun misses fire?" He placed it to his shoulder as the brute came on at full speed, and that is tremendous, though generally he is a lumbering-looking animal in his paces. A small bush and bunch of grass fifteen yards off made him swerve a little and expose his shoulder. Livingstone fired, and heard the ball strike, at the same time falling flat on his face. The pain must have made the buffalo renounce his purpose, for he bounded close past and on to the water, where he was found dead.

**NARROW ESCAPE FROM
A BUFFALO.**

Upon reaching Libonta, in the Makololo country, and the neighboring villages, Livingstone was received with manifestations of much joy by the simple-hearted natives.

There were some awkward scenes at this reception, however; several of the Makololos who had left their wives to accompany him to Loanda, upon returning now found them remarried, and not a few had children to show by their new husbands. But as polygamy is almost universally practiced among all African tribes, their feelings are naturally blunted in regard to such things, and they are but little thought of.

Livingstone left Naliele on the thirteenth of August, and while proceeding along the shore at mid-day a hippopotamus struck the canoe with her forehead, lifting one-half of it quite out of the water, so as nearly to overturn it. The force of the butt tilted Mashauana, one of the natives, out into the river; the rest sprang to the shore, which was about ten yards distant. Glancing back, Livingstone saw the hippopotamus come to the surface a short way off, and look to the canoe, as if to see if she had done much mischief. It was a female, whose young one had been speared the day before. No damage was done except wetting their persons and goods. The attack was so unusual an occurrence, when the precaution is taken to coast along the shore, that the men exclaimed, "Is the beast mad?" There were eight in the canoe at the time, and the shake it received shows the immense power of this animal in the water.

Livingstone continued down the river, and being in the vicinity of Victoria Falls resolved to visit them. The Leebe River had now given place to the Leeanbye, which further east is known as the Zambesi, all being one and the same, only called differently by the natives of the northeast, south, central and eastern tribes. Approaching to where the rapids begin he saw an island quite large enough for a considerable town, and upon going ashore he found the grave of a chief, named Sekote, ornamented with seventy large elephant tusks planted round it with the points turned inward. This was an indication of his wealth and greatness.

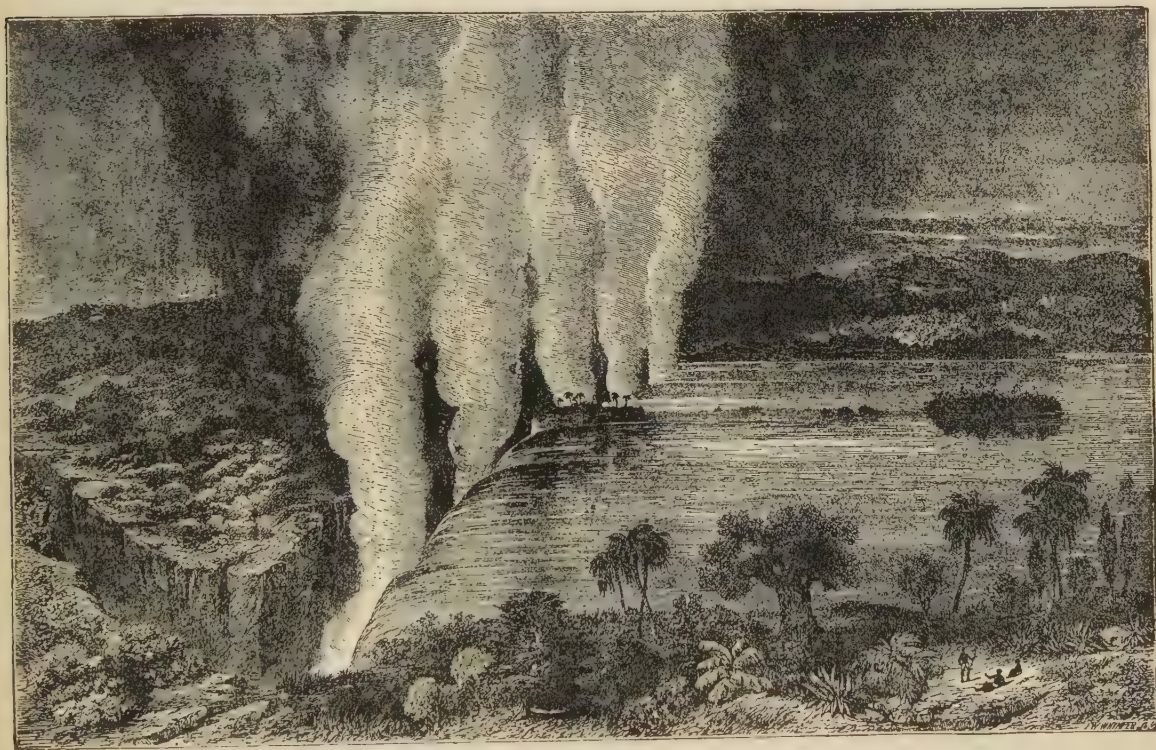
The falls of Victoria, called by the natives Mosioatunya, or more anciently Shongwe, were not far off, and on the following day he pushed on with only one native as a guide, and soon came near enough to see five great columns of vapor ascending and moving off like smoke, descending again in torrents of rain upon a thick covert of trees a mile or more distant. Describing this sight and the falls, Livingstone says:

"No one can imagine the beauty of the view from anything witnessed in England. It had never been seen before by European eyes; but scenes so lovely must have been gazed upon by angels in their flight. The only want felt is that of mountains in the background. The falls are bounded on three sides by ridges three hundred or four hundred feet in height, which are covered with forest, with the red soil appearing among the trees. When about half a mile from the falls, I left the canoe by which we had come down thus far, and embarked in a lighter one, with men well acquainted with the rapids, who, by passing down the centre of the stream in the eddies and still places caused by many jutting rocks, brought me to an island situated in the middle of the river, and on the edge of the lip over which the water rolls. In coming hither there was danger of being swept down by the stream which rushed along on each side of the island; but the river was now low, and we sailed where it is totally impossible to go when the water is high. But, though we had reached the island, and were within a few yards of the spot, a view from which would solve the whole problem, I believe that no one could perceive where the vast body of water went;

it seemed to lose itself in the earth, the opposite lip of the fissure into which it disappeared being only eighty feet distant. At least I did not comprehend it until, creeping with awe to the verge, I peered down into a large rent which had been made from bank to bank of the broad Zambesi, and saw the stream of a thousand yards broad leap down a hundred feet, and then become suddenly compressed into a space of fifteen or twenty yards. The entire falls are simply a crack made in a hard basaltic rock from the right to the left bank of the Zambesi and then prolonged from the left bank away through thirty or forty miles of hills."

These falls are, without doubt, one of the greatest natural curiosities on the earth, and should they ever become accessible to the civilized world they will attract millions of tourists and pleasure-seekers. Victoria Falls may in truth be designated as one of the wonders of the world.

After indulging in a long view of the falls, measuring the stream, and estimating the character of the surrounding soil for garden purposes, Livingstone planted some peach and



VICTORIA FALLS OF THE ZAMBESI.

apricot seeds, and some coffee grains, on a little island in the river just above the falls, and then proceeded on his journey to the east coast.

On the Kolomo River he saw an elephant which had no tusks, a sight quite as rare in Africa as it is to see one with tusks in Ceylon. The elephant was extremely wary and made off with great haste at sight of the men. Buffaloes were plentiful, and shooting into a herd, Livingstone brought one down; the others, not perceiving their enemy, tried to gore their wounded comrade, and in so doing actually lifted him with their horns and bore him a considerable distance. All wild animals usually gore a wounded companion and expel it from the herd; even zebras bite and kick a diseased one.

**CURIOUS FRIENDSHIP AMONG
ANIMALS AND BIRDS.**

This instinct is a wise provision of nature to prevent any but the perfect and healthy from propagating their species.

Among the great numbers of buffaloes Livingstone noticed that nearly every animal was attended by a peculiar bird, which served the double purpose of ridding them of insects and sounding an alarm when danger threatened. Rhinoceri were also plentiful, and these, too, were followed by a companion-bird, which seemed attached to the huge beast out of pure affection, for owing to its hard, hairless skin it is not much troubled with insects.

One species of this bird possesses a bill of a peculiar scoop or sharp forceps form, as if intended only to tear off insects from the skin; and its claws are as sharp as needles, enabling it to hang on to an animal's ear while performing a useful service within it. This sharpness of the claws allows the bird to cling to the nearly insensible cuticle without irritating the nerves of pain on the true skin, exactly as a burr does to the human hand.

One evening, on the Zambesi, Livingstone shot an elephant, and on the following day, while his men were cutting it up, great numbers of the villagers came to enjoy the feast.

They were on the side of a fine green valley, studded here and there with trees and cut by numerous rivulets. Livingstone had retired from the noise, to take an observation among some rocks of laminated grit, when he beheld an elephant and her calf at the end of the valley, about two miles distant. The calf was rolling in the mud, and the dam was standing fanning herself with her great ears. As he looked at them through his glass, he saw a long string of his own men appearing on the other side of them, while one of the men came and told him that these had gone off saying, "Our father will see to-day what sort of men he has got." He then went higher up the side of the valley, in order to have a distinct view of their mode of hunting. The beast, totally unconscious of the approach of an enemy, stood for some time suckling her young one, which seemed about two years old; they then went into a pit containing mud, and smeared themselves all over with it, the little one frisking about his dam, flapping his ears and tossing his trunk incessantly, in elephantine fashion. She kept flapping her ears and wagging her tail, as if in the height of enjoyment. Then began the piping of her enemies, which was performed by blowing into a tube, or the hands closed together, as boys do into a key. They called out to attract the animal's attention,

"O chief! chief! we have come to kill you.

O chief! chief! many more will die besides you, etc.

The gods have said it," etc., etc.

Both animals expanded their ears and listened, then left their bath as the crowd rushed toward them. The little one ran forward toward the end of the valley, but, seeing the men there, returned to his dam. She placed herself on the danger side of her calf, and passed her proboscis over it again and again, as if to assure it of safety. She frequently looked back to the men, who kept up an incessant shouting, singing, and piping; then looked at her young one and ran after it, sometimes sideways, as if her feelings were divided between anxiety to protect her offspring and desire to revenge the temerity of her persecutors. The men kept about a hundred yards in her rear, and some that distance from her flanks, and continued thus until she was obliged to cross a rivulet. The time spent in descending and getting up the opposite bank allowed of their coming up to the edge, and discharging their spears at about twenty yards distance. After the first discharge she appeared with her sides red with blood, and beginning to flee for her own life, seemed to think no more of her young. Livingstone sent word to spare the calf. It ran very fast, but neither young nor

old ever enter into a gallop ; their quickest pace is only a sharp walk. Before the messenger could reach them, the calf had taken refuge in the water, and was killed. The pace of the dam gradually became slower. She turned with a shriek of rage, and made a furious charge back among the men. They vanished at right angles to her course, or sideways, and, as she ran straight on, she went through the whole party, but came near no one except a man who wore a piece of cloth on his shoulders. Bright clothing is always dangerous in these cases. She charged three or four times, and, except in the first instance, never went farther than one hundred yards. She often stood after she had crossed a rivulet, and faced the men, though she received fresh spears. It was by this process of spearing and loss of



ELEPHANTS AT THE BATH.

blood that she was killed ; for at last, making a short charge, she staggered round and sank down dead in a kneeling posture.

Changing his course to get back to the Zambesi River, Livingstone reached a great plain covered with broad-leaved bushes, in which he found elephants so numerous that several times he had to shout and fire his gun in order to frighten them out of the path so as to enable his party to get through. At an open space a herd of buffaloes came trotting up to the oxen, and were only driven away after Livingstone had shot one of their number. The elephants were generally good-natured, but at one place a female with three young ones of different sizes charged through the centre of the extended line and produced a panic ; one of the men was courageous enough, however, to thrust a spear into her side which caused her to retreat without doing any injury.

**ADVENTURES WITH
WILD ANIMALS.**

Along the Zambesi Livingstone found enormous flocks of water-fowl, chiefly geese and ducks, which, having never been hunted were exceedingly tame, and might have been killed with stones. This great game country, which perhaps excels that of any other section of Africa, was near the conjunction of the Kafue with the Zambesi River.

Occasionally white or albino children are born in Africa, and they are regarded with dread and superstition. Livingstone relates that during the time he resided at Mabotsa, a

**SUPERSTITION
RESPECTING ALBINOS.**

woman came to the station with a fine albino boy. The father had ordered her to throw him away, but she clung to her offspring for many years. He was remarkably intelligent for his age. The pupil of the eye was of a pink color, and the eye itself was unsteady in vision. The hair, or rather wool, was yellow, and the features were those common among the Bechuanas. Some time after Livingstone left the place the mother is said to have become tired of living apart from the father, who refused to have her while she retained the son; so she took him out one day and killed him close to the village.

In some tribes a case of twins renders one of them liable to death; and an ox, which, while lying in the pen, beats the ground with its tail, is treated in the same way. It is thought to be calling death to visit the tribe. If a fowl crows before midnight it is guilty of "tlolo," and is killed. Livingstone's men often carried them sitting on their guns, and if one began to crow in a forest the owner would give it a beating, by way of teaching it not to be guilty of crowing at unseasonable hours.

Livingstone says that only on one occasion did he ever witness anything like a fist-fight between natives. An old woman, standing by his camp, continued to belabor a good-looking young man for hours with her tongue. Irritated at last, **SETTLING DISPUTES.** he uttered some words of impatience, when another man sprang at him, exclaiming, "How dare you curse my 'Mama?'" They caught each other, and a sort of pushing, dragging wrestling-match ensued. The old woman who had been the cause of the affray wished Livingstone to interfere, and the combatants themselves hoped as much; but he preferred to remain neutral and allow them to fight it out. It ended by one falling under the other, both, from their scuffling, being in a state of nudity. They picked up their clothing and ran off in different directions, each threatening to bring his gun and settle the dispute in mortal combat. Only one, however, returned, and the old woman continued her scolding till the men, fairly tired of her tongue, ordered her to be gone. Their disputes are usually conducted with great volubility and noisy swearing, but they generally terminate by both parties bursting into a laugh.

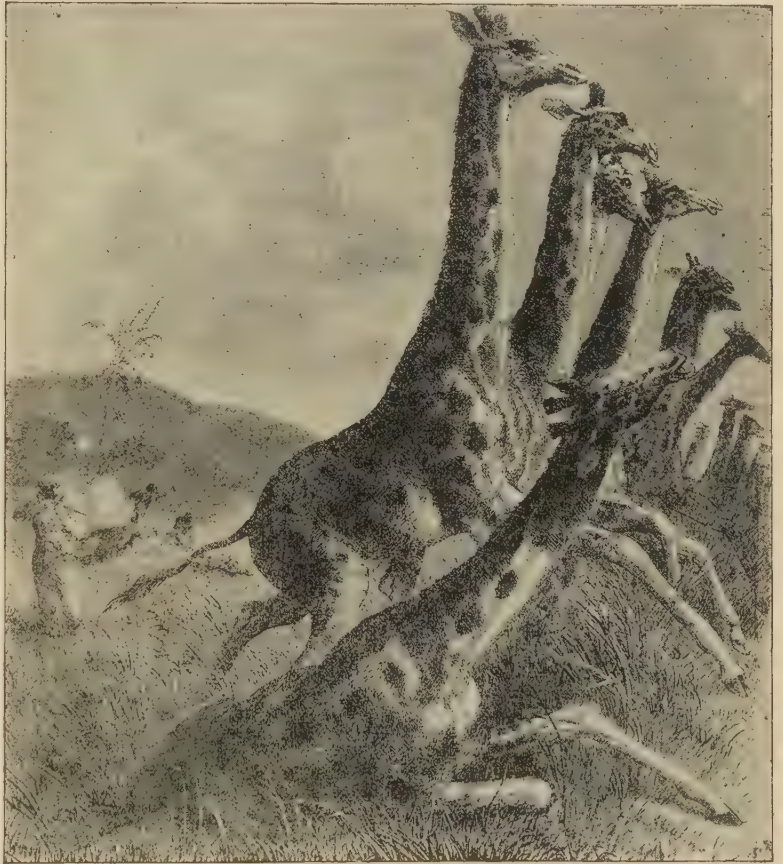
The Batokas inhabit a part of the country near the Kafue River. They are friendly, and came out in great numbers to see the white man, bringing with them presents of corn and provisions. The men go entirely naked. They walk about without the smallest sense of shame. They have even lost the tradition of the "fig-leaf." **PECULIARITIES OF THE
BATOKA TRIBE.** Livingstone asked a fine, large-bodied old man if he did not think it would be better to adopt a little covering. He looked with a pitying leer, and laughed with surprise at being thought at all indecent; he evidently considered himself above such weak superstition. It was regarded as a good joke when Livingstone told them that if they had no other clothing, they might put on a bunch of grass.

Their mode of salutation is quite singular. They throw themselves on their backs on the ground, and, rolling from side to side, slap the outside of their thighs as expressions of thankfulness and welcome, uttering the words "Kina bomba." Livingstone says that this

method of salutation was to him very disagreeable, and he never could get reconciled to it. He would call out, "Stop, stop; don't do that;" but they, imagining he was dissatisfied, only tumbled about more furiously, and slapped their thighs with greater vigor.

One day, in passing through some thick trees and brush, Livingstone and his men were surprised by the sudden appearance of three buffaloes, which had scented them, and imagining they were surrounded, dashed through the lines. Livingstone's ox set off at a gallop, and when he could manage to glance back he saw one of the men up in the air about five feet above a buffalo, which was tearing along with a stream of blood running down his flank. The poor fellow alighted on his face, and though he had been carried on the horns of the buffalo about twenty yards before getting the final toss, the skin was not pierced nor was a bone broken. When the beasts appeared he had thrown down his load and stabbed one in the side. It turned suddenly upon him, and before he could use a tree for safety, carried him off. His bruises were dressed, and in about a week he was able to perform his customary duties.

ADVENTURE WITH THREE BUFFALOES.



SHOOTING GIRAFFES NEAR THE ZAMBESI.

Shooting of elephants, rhinoceri, giraffes, and hyenas was a daily occurrence, but no special incident took place until they reached Tete, which is on the Zambesi, about three hundred miles from the coast. Here Livingstone was greatly astonished to find a Portuguese fort and settlement, and his reception was of the most cordial character. The commandant provided every dainty that was procurable, and lodged his guest and his entire party in the best possible manner. After resting a few days a canoe was obtained, and eight of the men accompanied Livingstone to Quilimane, on the sea-coast, paddling their canoe down the Zambesi.

One of the men, old Sekwebu, had become so attached to his white friend that he begged to accompany him to England, and Livingstone finally consented, at the same time warning him that he might die if he went to so cold a country. "That is nothing," replied Sekwebu; "let me die at your feet."

They sailed on the brig *Frolic* and reached Mauritius on the twelfth of August, 1856. Sekwebu was picking up English and becoming a favorite with both men and officers. He seemed a little bewildered, everything on board a man-of-war being so new and strange; but he remarked to Livingstone several times, "Your countrymen are very agreeable," and "What a strange country this is—all water together!" When they reached the Mauritius a steamer came out to tow them into the harbor. The constant strain on his untutored mind seemed now to reach a climax, for during the night he became insane. He had descended into a boat, and when Livingstone attempted to go down and bring him into the ship, he ran to the stern and said, "No! no! it is enough that I die alone. You must not perish; if you come I shall throw myself into the water." The officers proposed to secure him by putting him in irons; but, being a gentleman in his own country, Livingstone objected, knowing that the insane often retain an impression of ill treatment, and he could not bear to have it said in Sekwebu's country that he had chained one of the principal men as they had seen slaves treated. In the evening a fresh accession of insanity occurred; he tried to spear one of the crew, then leaped overboard, and, though he could swim well, pulled himself down hand under hand by the chain cable. They never found the body of poor Sekwebu.

CHAPTER V.

LIVINGSTONE'S SECOND EXPEDITION.

The sixteen years which Livingstone had spent in Africa served to largely increase the spirit of adventure which first led him to renounce the influences of civilization for the barbarous regions of an unknown country. He was restless in England, and longed to return and continue the labors he had begun in Africa. He was ambitious to strike a death blow to the accursed slave trade, which at that time existed in nearly all parts of Africa, destroying happy families, debasing and degrading the people, and keeping up a constant state of alarm which rendered futile all efforts to civilize or Christianize the natives. He had witnessed happy domestic scenes in Africa, and the good of that people lay close to his great heart.

To give expression to his wishes he wrote several papers to the English Geographical Society, and proposed an expedition to the Zambesi, with the avowed double intention of promoting commercial intercourse with the interior natives and suppressing, as far as possible, the infamous slave-trade.

A considerable fund was raised, one gentleman contributing \$5000, to aid the expedition, which was organized and set sail on the tenth of March, 1858. Livingstone was accompanied by his wife, also his brother Charles, and Dr. Kirk, superintendent of the Kew Gardens, London. They embarked on the steamer *Pearl*, and carried with them a steam launch, in sections. Arriving at the mouth of the Zambesi, the launch was put together, and in this an ascent of the river was begun. Owing to several sand-bars in the lower end of the Zambesi, after penetrating a few miles it was found that a lateral stream, named the Kongone, was more easily navigated, and into this the launch was turned. The banks of this stream, which is a branch of the Zambesi, were lined with a profusion of tropical growth, mangroves, screw-palms, and climbing plants, which imparted a most picturesque and charming view.

One hundred miles from the Zambesi's mouth Livingstone discovered the river Shire, which was such a considerable stream that he ascended it several hundred miles, until he entered a large lake, to which he gave the name Nyassa. He coasted the lake a distance of nearly two hundred miles, and found it to be a basin **LAUGHING RATS.** into which a great portion of Central Africa is drained. He found the slave-trade flourishing here to a fearful extent, promoted by continual wars, in which all prisoners on either side were reduced to slavery. Criminals were also sold into slavery.

From Lake Nyassa the expedition returned down the Shire to Mazaro, where they camped two days, preparatory to following up the Zambesi. During this stop they were grievously annoyed by a singular species of rat, whose continual laughing was sorely perplexing and uncanny. They were so numerous that at night sleep was impossible, on account of their boldness in scampering over the men, and their loud, unceasing "he! he! he!" almost exactly like a human laugh. Any effort to get rid of them was certain to be followed by a most diabolical "he-he-ing," so weird as to be suggestive of the infernal regions.

Livingstone was now in the elephant country again, and every day there was some adventure with these animals. One morning the launch ran into a herd that was bathing in the river, and so frightened were they that a young one was caught. Its screams attracted the dam, which came immediately to the rescue of her calf; but ropes were thrown over the little one so quickly, while the vessel moved off rapidly, that she was left behind. The little fellow was brought on board and soon became quite friendly, but, unfortunately, one of the natives employed on the boat had cut his proboscis during the capture, from which it died after several days.

On the same day a large female elephant was killed, and as it was then growing late a halt was made for the night. The elephant was cut up, a big fire lighted, and a royal feast began. Says Livingstone: "We had the elephant's forefoot cooked for ourselves in native fashion. A large hole was dug in the ground, in which a fire was made; and when the inside was thoroughly heated, the entire foot was placed in it, and covered over with the hot ashes and soil; another fire was made above the whole, and kept burning all night. We had the foot thus cooked for breakfast next morning, and found it delicious. It is a whitish mass, slightly gelatinous, and sweet, like marrow. A long march, to prevent biliousness, is a wise precaution after a meal of elephant's foot. Elephant's trunk and tongue are also good, and, after long simmering, much resemble the hump of a buffalo and the tongue of an ox; but all the other meat is tough and, from its peculiar flavor, only to be eaten by a hungry man. The quantities of meat our men devour is quite astounding. They boil as much as their pots will hold, and eat till it becomes physically impossible for them to stow away any more. An uproarious dance follows, accompanied with stentorian



A SLAVE WORKING UNDER A TASK-MASTER.

song ; and as soon as they have shaken their first course down, and washed off the sweat and dust of the after performance, they go to work to roast more ; a short snatch of sleep succeeds, and they are up and at it again ; all night long it is boil and eat, roast and devour, with a few brief interludes of sleep."

The Portuguese had introduced rum into the country through which they were now traveling, in connection with the slave trade, and its painfully degrading effects were manifested among the people. One chief remarked that the white men were greatly favored by their God, who was so kind as to send them guns and powder from heaven, and to cause



A HERD OF ELEPHANTS SPORTING.

rivers of rum to flow through their country all the year round. He said he would like to live on the banks of such a river.

The expedition proceeded up the river above three hundred miles, to the head of navigation, and from thence by oxen, donkeys, and on foot to a place near Bazizulu, where there is a very dense jungle. Here the attention of Charles Livingstone was attracted by a ferocious yelping like dogs fighting. Proceeding forward to locate the sound, he was astonished to behold a troop of dogs wrangling over the remains of a buffalo, which they had killed and nearly devoured. This was a strange sight, for wild dogs were not

previously known. This singular animal has a large head and jaws of great power; the ears are long, the color black and yellow in patches, with a white tuft at the tip of the tail. They hunt their game in packs, and perseveringly follow the animal they first start till they bring him down. The Balala of the Kalahari Desert are said to have formerly tamed them and to have employed them to hunt. An intelligent native at Kolobeng remembered when a boy to have seen a pack of the dogs returning from a hunt in charge of their masters, who drove them like a herd of goats, and for safety kept them in a pit.

The explorers continued their journey along the banks of the Zambesi until the Zongwe River was reached, up which they went by canoes nearly fifty miles, then crossed the country to Victoria Falls. Being now in the Makololo country, Livingstone's first inquiries were for Sekeletu and the fate of the Mabotsa mission. The report was most discouraging, for Sekeletu was fatally afflicted with leprosy and his power among the tribe wholly lost by reason of his helpless condition, his people believing him to be bewitched. Mr. Helmore and his wife, who had succeeded Livingstone at the Mabotsa mission, had both died of fever, and there was now scarcely a remembrance left of his labors among the Makololo tribe.

There was nothing now to detain him in that country, as the fate of the mission destroyed all hope of any good coming from further Christian labors in that district; so they visited Victoria Falls and then by canoe descended the rapids. While going down the stream, which is considered very dangerous, an old native offered his services to pray for their safe passage for a small remuneration, which was, however, declined, and when the canoes safely descended through the chasm of boiling water, there was great surprise manifested by the natives. Upon reaching a flat place under the cliffs where an eddy was formed, a large herd of hippopotami, thirty or more in number, were found sporting, while a number of native boys were amusing themselves by pelting them with stones. The native canoemen were afraid to pass through the herd, declaring that there was a certain old bull who, from anger or viciousness, would attack canoes if run in among them. Livingstone, to frighten the animals, killed one, which floated off, but was caught a short distance below. An effort was made to drag it from the water, but at this moment the huge carcass was attacked by a dozen or more crocodiles, and despite the throwing of stones, shooting and shouting, the ferocious reptiles dragged the hippopotamus away and feasted upon it.

Directly after this incident a fine water-buck was shot while drinking from the river; the animal fell and was instantly seized by a crocodile, but being only wounded, it regained its feet, though still held by the reptile, and for some minutes there was a dreadful contest. The water-buck got away, however, but as it attempted to swim the stream, another crocodile seized it and dragged it under.

**WOMAN SEIZED BY
A CROCODILE.**

A few nights afterward, while encamped on a small stream, they were aroused by a scream of anguish, and quickly running to the bank of the river, they found that a woman had been caught by a crocodile; they seized a boat and pushed off to the rescue, but just as they were almost within reach of the unfortunate woman she gave a fearful shriek: the horrid reptile had snapped off her leg at the knee. Mangled and fainting she was carried to the village and her limb bandaged, but she soon died.

Livingstone journeyed about one hundred miles west of Victoria Falls, then retraced his steps, varying his route by a few short detours, to Lake Nyassa, which he desired to

more fully explore. A considerable boat was constructed and an effort made to cross the lake, but a storm arose and for six hours they were in imminent danger, but happily gained the shore without loss. The country lying north of the lake is mountainous,

RETURN TO LAKE NYASSA. but well suited for agriculture, and is occupied by a tribe of Zulus. These people own large herds of cattle and are constantly increasing in numbers by annexing other tribes. Referring to this fact, Livingstone says: "Never before in Africa have we seen anything like the dense population on the shores of Lake Nyassa. In the southern part there was an almost unbroken chain of villages. On the beach of well-nigh every little sandy bay, dark crowds were standing, gazing at the novel sight of a boat under sail; and wherever we landed we were surrounded in a few seconds by hundreds of men, women, and children, who hastened to have a stare at the 'chirombo' (wild animals). To see the 'animals' feed was the greatest attraction; never did the Zoological Society's lions or monkeys draw more sight-seers than we did. Indeed, we equaled the hippopotamus on his first arrival among the civilized on the banks of the Thames.



WOMAN SEIZED BY A CROCODILE.

looking native at the south part. 'The other end of the lake!' he exclaimed, in real or well-feigned astonishment; 'who ever heard of such a thing? Why, if one started when a mere boy to walk to the other end of the lake, he would be an old, gray-headed man before he got there. I never heard of such a thing being attempted.'

This answer indicates how little the tribes of Central Africa travel. The end of the lake was not more than one hundred miles from the place where this ignorant native resided, and yet neither he nor any of his companions had any idea of the distance, having lived and fished all their lives in one place.

Livingstone's exploration of the lake extended from September 2 to October 27, 1861, when, having expended or lost most of his goods, it was necessary to go back to the ship. He did not return again to the lake, but established several missions and devoted himself

of an intelligent

"How far is it to the end of the lake?" we inquired

to freeing slaves, being now in a country where slavery appeared to be the principal occupation of the natives. There was incessant war, one tribe preying upon another, capturing and selling, massacreing and burning, until barbarity could go no further. Fever broke out among the party on board the vessel, and became extremely virulent and obstinate. About the middle of April Mrs. Livingstone was prostrated by this disease, which was accompanied by obstinate vomiting. Nothing is yet known that can allay this distressing symptom, which of course renders medicine of no avail, as it is instantly rejected. She received whatever medical aid could be rendered from Dr. Kirk, but became unconscious, and her eyes were closed in the sleep of death as the sun set on the evening of the Christian Sabbath, the twenty-seventh of April, 1862. A coffin was made during the night, a grave was dug next day under the branches of a great baobab-tree, and with sympathizing hearts the little band of his countrymen assisted the bereaved husband in burying his dead. At his request, the Rev. James Stewart read the burial service; and the seamen kindly volunteered to mount guard for some nights at the spot where her body rests in hope. Those who are not aware how this brave, good English wife made a delightful home at Kolobeng, a thousand miles inland from the Cape, and as the daughter of Moffatt and a Christian lady exercised most beneficial influence over the rude tribes of the interior, may wonder that she should have braved the dangers and toils of this down-trodden land. She knew them all, and in a charitable and godly attempt to renew her labors, was called to her reward.

**DEATH OF
MRS. LIVINGSTONE.**

It was Livingstone's intention to launch a steam vessel on Lake Nyassa, and he had one built for this purpose, but when ready the Shire River had fallen so low that the attempt had to be abandoned. Learning from some natives that the Rovuma River had its source in Lake Nyassa, he determined to explore that stream. So preparations were made for a final departure from the Zambesi. Upon reaching the mouth of the Rovuma, they found the stream too shallow to admit anything but small, flat-bottomed crafts, which, fortunately, they had brought with them. In three light-draught sail-boats they began an ascent of the stream. There was a fertile valley reaching several miles on each side near the mouth, but as they proceeded inland hills arose, until at several places the river ran zig-zag through a deep cut which was almost like piercing a mountain. There was an utter absence of game and the natives were far from friendly. While passing by an island, several natives appeared armed with bows and muskets and demanded toll; a long parley ensued, in which Livingstone understood that he would have to either pay toll or fight; he paid the toll, thirty pieces of cloth, but had proceeded less than a mile when another party attacked the boats; bullets fairly riddled the sails, but a few well-directed volleys dispersed the enemy with some loss.

**EXPLORATION OF THE
ROVUMA RIVER.**

The expedition ascended a distance of one hundred and fifty-six miles, and then found the river so narrow and obstructed by dangerous cataracts, that it was necessary to return, much to their disappointment, as they had not gained any particularly valuable information concerning its source. Crocodiles are scarce in the Rovuma, on account of being hunted so persistently by the natives, who relish their meat as the English do roast beef, while crocodile eggs are considered even more delicious, tasting something like hen's eggs, with a slight flavor of custard.

There is only one other animal whose habitat is near the Rovuma that the natives make any show of hunting, viz., the *seuze* which in size equals our domestic cat, but in

shape somewhat resembles a pig or peccari. It keeps from sight in dense reeds, where it feeds on succulent young vegetable growths, and perhaps also on snakes and toads. The natives set fire to the reeds during the dry season, and as the senze rush out to escape a scorching they are speared or shot in great numbers.

They now descended the Rovuma to their large vessel, and returned to the Zambesi, hoping that by this time the Shire River would be navigable for the steam launch. While proceeding up the Zambesi, several natives were employed as sailors, and thousands offered their services for a few pieces of cloth. Owing to a severe drought in the country between Luputa and Kebrabosa, the people were driven to the woods by hunger, where they were subsisting on such wild fruits as the country afforded. Game was abundant, but the natives are such poor hunters that they cannot depend upon it.

**TERRIBLE EFFECTS
OF SLAVERY.**

The Shire River having risen so as to promise successful navigation, on January 10, 1863, they departed from Shupanga. They had scarcely got well into the river before they became witnesses of the dreadful atrocities being then perpetrated by a chief named Mariano. He was a Portuguese slave-agent, and had invaded the country, capturing slaves, burning villages, killing and robbing the people. Says Livingstone:

"Dead bodies floated past us daily, and in the mornings the paddles had to be cleared of corpses, caught by the floats during the night. For scores of miles the entire population of the valley was swept away by this scourge, Mariano. The sight and smell of dead bodies was everywhere. Many skeletons lay beside the path, where in their weakness they had fallen and expired. The corpse of a boy floated past the ship; a monstrous crocodile rushed at it with a speed of a greyhound, caught it, and shook it as a terrier does a rat. Others dashed at the prey, each with his powerful tail churning the water into froth as he furiously tore off a piece. In a few seconds it was all gone. The sight was fearful to behold."

So numerous were the reptiles that Livingstone counted sixty-seven lying on a single bank. One of the men, reaching down to dip up a cup of water, was seized, but fortunately he grasped a tree branch and held fast, while the ferocious reptile tugged desperately to drag him into the water. The crocodile did not release its hold until it had terribly gashed and lacerated the man's hand.

The little steamer was sailed to within thirty-five miles of Lake Nyassa, and there she was taken apart, having been constructed in sections so as to be portable. It was necessary, however, to cut a road through the intervening forests, which required great labor and patience, so many trees having to be felled and stones removed. The object of placing this boat on the lake was to use her as a corvette in breaking up the slave-trade, and carrying ivory, also in opening up a commercial route to the sea by way of the Rovuma River. The vessel was carted half the distance, when Dr. Kirk and Charles Livingstone became so ill from dysentery that they were compelled to abandon the expedition and return to England; Dr. Livingstone was also attacked and reduced to a mere skeleton. In addition to these troubles, the lack of food was seriously felt, and a number of the carriers deserted. Against all these annoyances Livingstone struggled, but he found, as the road became more difficult, that it would be impossible to convey the boat to the lake, and rather than lose her by the desertion of his carriers, he had the vessel carried back and floated in the Shire.

He could not endure the idea of returning without seeing more of the lake, and he therefore left a dozen of the party in charge of the vessel while with twice as many more he went on to the lake and followed its banks until within sight of the head waters, which



NATIVE HUNTERS HARPOONING CROCODILES ON THE ROVUMA RIVER.

were very shallow. He noted many small streams on the left bank flowing into the lake, but no considerable river.

Speaking of the results of his second expedition, Livingstone says: "We opened a cotton-field, which, taking in the Shire and Lake Nyassa, was four hundred miles in length. We had gained the confidence of the people wherever we had gone; and a new era had commenced in a region much larger than the cotton-fields of the Southern States of America." His hopes for the future of that country, however, were not fulfilled, for it is yet almost as wild and barbarous as when he visited it, the curse of slave-hunting seeming to rest upon it from generation to generation.

CHAPTER VI.

LIVINGSTONE'S THIRD EXPEDITION.

Soon after his return from Africa, in 1864, Livingstone was apprised of the results of Speke and Grant's discoveries, and upon reading their journals was impressed with a belief that they had not found the true source of the Nile, which he thought must be in a chain of lakes lying south of Victoria N'yanza. Revolving the matter much in his own mind, he soon concluded to visit Africa for the third time, to test the claims put forth by Speke and Grant and to make other explorations.

It chanced that at this time the government of India desired to present to the Sultan of Zanzibar the steamer *Thule*, which had belonged to Captain Osborne's Chinese fleet, but was no longer required in that service. Dr. Livingstone was commissioned to make the formal presentation, and just previous to his departure, Sir Bartle Frere gave him a note to the Sultan, warmly commending him to his Excellency and begging the favor that the distinguished traveler might be assisted in making a journey into Central Africa. With these advantages he set sail for Zanzibar in the steamer *Thule*, and after a voyage of twenty-three days from Bombay, landed his vessel January 23, 1866, and reported to the Sultan, who was representing the Arabian government.

Dr. Livingstone was cordially received by the Sultan, and also by Dr. Seward, acting British consul at Zanzibar. The presentation of the steamer was made according to the terms of his commission, before a gathering of English officers from the steamers *Wasp* and *Vigilant*, which were lying off the port, and so pleased was the Sultan that he not only was ready to fulfill the request of Sir Bartle Frere, but his kindness went so far as to offer Livingstone a vessel, crew and provisions, and to give him any protection which the Arabic arms could afford.

A stay of nearly two months was made at Zanzibar, outfitting and perfecting details for the contemplated march, Livingstone being provided with a handsome house in the meantime and his desires carefully attended to. On March 18 he arranged with a Banian, who farmed the custom-house revenue, to send a supply of beads, cloth, flour, tea, coffee and sugar to Ujiji, on Lake Tanganyika, with a man to remain in charge of the goods on their arrival. Ujiji was made a principal base for supplies, and the first journey was therefore directed toward that place.

The steamer *Penguin* was placed at his disposal, and on March 19 he set sail for the Rovuma River. On the following day the river was reached, where a *dhow* (a coasting

vessel of East Africa) was in waiting to receive the animals which Livingstone took with him for riding and as beasts of burden; these comprised six camels, three buffaloes and a calf, two mules and four donkeys. The men in his company consisted of thirteen Sepoys, ten Johanna men, nine Nassick boys, two Shupanga men, and others, members of interior tribes, making forty in all. Several of these had accompanied Livingstone on his second journey, and were of the greatest service to him.

Owing to shallow water and extremely miry banks he found it quite impossible to land his animals at the Rovuma, and had to search for a safer spot, which he at length found at Mikindamy Bay, which lies twenty-five miles north of Rovuma.

The animals were so badly bruised by being tossed about in the **LANDING THE ANIMALS.** dhow, that a rest was necessary before starting for the interior.

Twenty natives were engaged here to carry some of the burdens, and saddles were made for the camels and donkeys. During this delay a buffalo gored one of the donkeys so badly that it had to be shot, which was a loss much to be deplored, as no other animal is so well suited for carrying purposes in Africa.

It was not until April 6 that the expedition started for the interior along the Rovuma valley. On the twenty-third they passed a spot where, on the previous night, a leopard had been burned. Upon questioning the natives, Livingstone found that it was the custom to burn the bodies of leopards that are killed, but **BURNING A LEOPARD.** to preserve the skins. The reason which they gave for not eating the flesh, as nearly all other tribes do, is that the leopard devours men; this shows the opposite of an inclination to cannibalism.

Upon reaching the Makoa country, a queer people were met with, quite unlike those of any tribe toward the south. The men have their faces thickly tattooed in double raised lines of about half an inch in length. After the incisions are made charcoal is rubbed in and the flesh pressed out, so that all the cuts are raised above the level of the surface. The women are generally tall and well-made, with fine limbs and feet, and are profusely tattooed all over; even the hips and buttock are elaborately marked, no shame being felt at an exposure of those parts.

On May 21, while they were encamped, a leopard slipped in among the tents and caught a little dog which Livingstone had brought with him. Its yelps and agonizing cries awakened him, and he rushed out of his tent in time to catch a glimpse of the retreating leopard as it made off with the dog. **TERRIBLE COMBAT WITH A LEOPARD.** Mentioning the incident at the next village, which was near, the natives related an adventure which some of them had had with perhaps the same leopard on that day. Having lost many of their goats and calves by wild animals, a spring-gun was set by the natives, near which a small goat was tied, so that any attempt to seize the goat would fire the gun. After waiting several hours, five of the natives went to see the result, but as they approached, one of them, being in advance, was attacked by a large leopard that leaped upon his shoulder and with the utmost ferocity began to tear him with its huge claws. The suddenness of the attack prevented him from using his spear, and he would have been torn to pieces in a moment except for the assistance of his comrades, who, hearing his agonized screams, ran to his assistance, and after a terrible battle, in which several of them were wounded, they succeeded in dispatching the brute with their spears. It was one of the largest of its species, and, being pressed with hunger, was doubtless in the act of springing upon the decoy goat when the man appeared, whereupon it at once directed its fury against him. The men who had slain the leopard had

suddenly become heroes in the eyes of their countrymen, and the lofty manner in which they strutted about showed how much they appreciated their honors.

A thrilling story was told to Holeb of a singular adventure with a leopard in South Africa, which had gained access to an Englishman's home through a window that had carelessly been left open. The animal had been driven by hunger to invade a small settlement and finding neither pig nor chickens upon which to break its fast, boldly leaped into a room occupied by a sleeping child. Fortunately the family was aroused by the noise of a falling chair which the animal had upset, and the father being at home and not yet retired, rushed into the room, followed by other members of the family, instinctively believing something serious had occurred. He was terrified to see a large leopard on the bed snarling above his still sleeping child, ready to devour it. The farmer was courageous, and quickly attacked the animal with a long spear, which was his only weapon, whereupon the cowardly leopard hastily retreated by the opening through which it had entered.

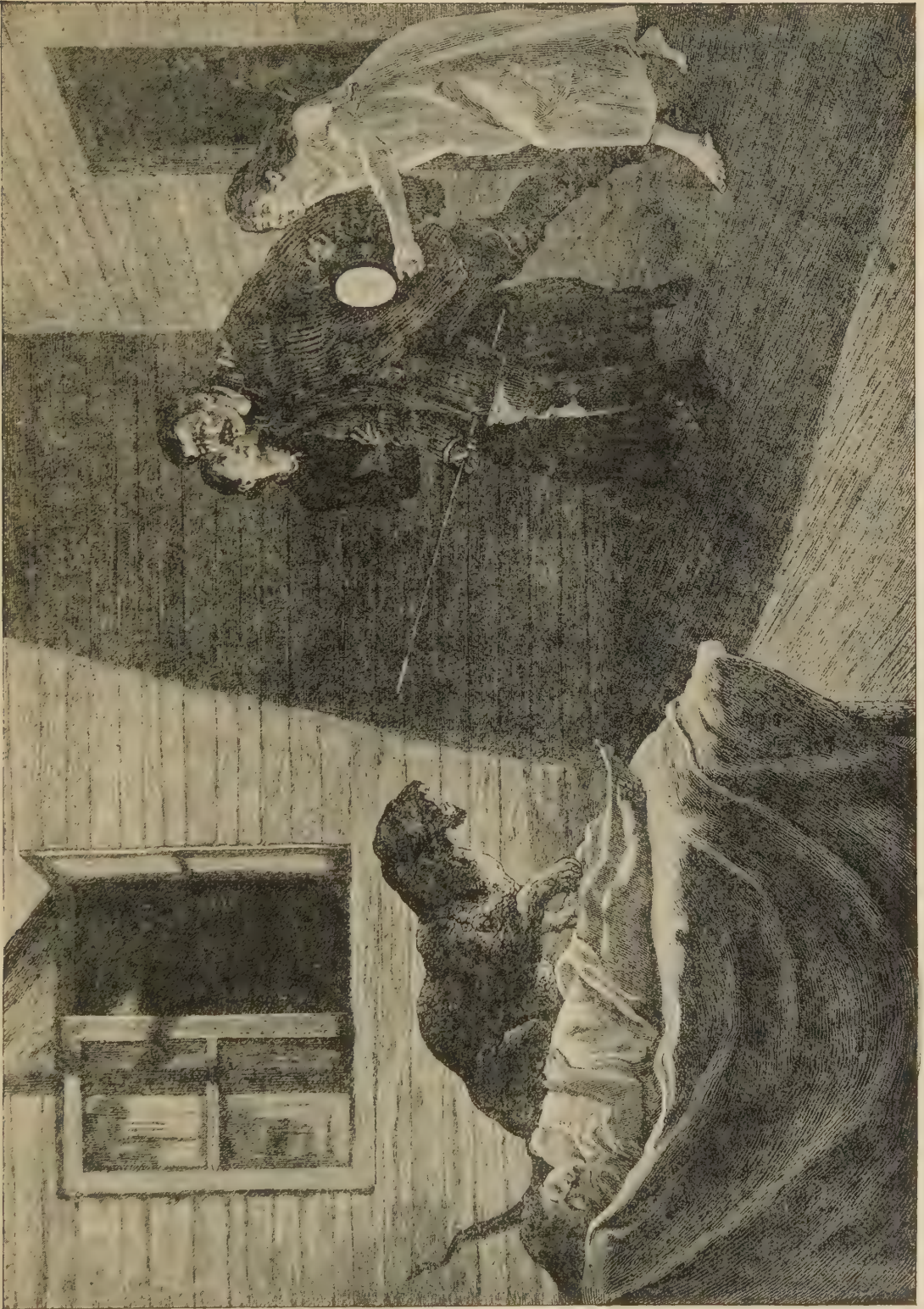
The cattle of Africa are, like the Indian buffalo, only partially tamed; they never give their milk without the presence of the calf, or its stuffed skin, the "fulchan." The women

adjacent to Mozambique partake a little of the wild animal's nature,
STRANGE CUSTOMS. for, like most members of the inferior races of animals, they refuse all intercourse with their husbands when enceinte, and they continue this for about three years afterward, or until the child is weaned, which usually happens about the third year. Livingstone was told, on most respectable authority, that many fine young native men marry one wife, and live happily with her till this period; nothing will then induce her to continue to cohabit with him; and as the separation is to continue for three years, the man is almost compelled to take up with another wife; this was mentioned as one of the great evils of society. The same absurdity prevails on the West Coast, and there it is said that the men acquiesce from ideas of purity.

The beasts of burden which had been bitten by the tsetse fly continued to droop and die, while one of the camels was beaten to death by the Sepoys, who proved to be the most worthless and irresponsible people Livingstone had ever met with. Their conduct was so bad, and they were so lazy and worthless, that he was finally obliged to discharge and send them back.

They were now nearing Lake Nyassa, a fact which became evident from the number of slave parties that were met on the route, whose tallow marks proved that they came from the region of the Lake. Livingstone's journal shows the following

HORRIBLE SCENES. entry on June 19: "We passed a woman tied by the neck to a tree, and dead. The people of the country explained that she had been unable to keep up with the other slaves in a gang, and her master had determined that she should not become the property of any one else if she recovered after resting for a time. I may mention here that we saw others tied up in a similar manner, and one lying in the path shot or stabbed, for she was in a pool of blood. The explanation we got invariably was that the Arab who owned these victims was enraged at losing his money by the slaves becoming unable to march, and vented his spleen by murdering them. A poor little boy with *prolapsus ani* was carried yesterday by his mother many a weary mile, lying over her right shoulder—the only position he could find ease in; an infant at the breast occupied the left arm, and on her head were carried two baskets. The mother's love was seen in binding up the part when we halted, while the coarseness of low civilization was evinced in the laugh with which some black brutes looked at the sufferer."



A LEOPARD'S INVASION OF A SOUTH AFRICAN'S HOME.

The natives about Metaba are more intelligent than those found farther east on the Rovuma, and their appearance is not at all displeasing. Stone boiling is unknown in their country, but ovens are made in ant-hills. Holes are dug in the ground for baking heads of large game, such as of zebras, the feet of elephants, and humps of the rhinoceros. In the production of fire they use two sticks, which are usually carried with them, one of which has a hole through the centre. They wet the blunt end of the upright stick with the tongue and dip it in the sand to cause some particles of silica to adhere before inserting it in the horizontal piece, which they then rub briskly. The wood of a certain wild fig-tree is esteemed as yielding fire readily. In wet weather they usually carry fire in the dried balls of elephants' dung.

The country is generally beautiful, but the curse of slave-trading had blighted it until, at the time Livingstone passed through, famine and starvation were rife; skeletons by the wayside, and slaves in galling yokes dying for want of food. He mentions having met with a number of slaves, all yoked together, that had been abandoned by their captors to die of starvation; some of them were already in an unconscious condition from want of food, and others barely able to raise their heads from the ground. It was a shocking sight, but only one of a thousand such.

Livingstone reached Lake Nyassa, at the confluence of the Misinje, on August 8, having surmounted many obstacles, not the least of which was a distressing scarcity of food. He passed around the south end of the lake and was most hospitably entertained at all the villages. So dense is the population that there is a succession of villages with scarcely any break or line of separation between them. At a village called Mponda he found an Arab party with nearly eight hundred slaves confined in a pen made of dura stalks; nearly all of them were in the taming stick except the boys, who were tied together by a thong passed round their necks.

Livingstone remained two days at Mponda; on the morning of the second day a woman was found in a bush by the village who had been killed by a lion and more than one-half eaten. It is a common occurrence for women and children to be carried off by lions in this vicinity, the beasts being much encouraged in their attacks by the cowardice of the natives, who never hunt them. Two days later a native drank so much beer that he went to sleep near the edge of the lake and was seized by a crocodile and carried off. A great wail was raised by his wives, of which he possessed twenty, and this was kept up for several days.

The people about the lake are much engaged in iron working, though their furnaces and smithies are extremely crude. There is an abundance of iron ore in the district, but it is not rich. Livingstone watched a founder drawing off slag from the bottom of a furnace, which process he describes in the following manner: "He broke through the hardened slag by striking it with an iron instrument inserted in the end of a pole, when the material flowed out of the small hole left for the purpose in the bottom of the furnace. The ore (probably the black oxide) was like sand, and was put in at the top of the furnace, mixed with charcoal. Only one bellows was at work, formed out of a goat-skin, and the blast was very poor. Many of these furnaces, or their remains, are met with on knolls; those at work have a peculiarly tall hut built over them."

Hoes and spears are the articles chiefly manufactured, the former being generally supplied with two handles, so that it may be worked by two persons at the same time. The people are good-looking and friendly. They do not commonly wear the lip-ring, but submit

to what must be keen torture, in ornamenting their arms, which are covered with large, ridge scars, lattice-shaped, extending also to the back and shoulders, which are produced by deep gashing, the wounds being afterward irritated to prevent quick healing.

The people who live about the northern shores of the lake, while friendly and in a measure industrious, are most inhuman and superstitious. They usually have a storehouse in some large hill, where grain is kept but not touched except in case of war; over this storehouse they place a cow, which occupies a shed on the summit of the hill; the people believe that this cow will indicate, by lowing, when an enemy is near, and will bring good influences in case of war. Their inhumanity extends to selling their own people, and even their children. Livingstone, upon remonstrating with an old chief for selling his subjects to the Portuguese and Arabs for slaves, was astonished at the reply, "Oh, I have too many people, they cause me trouble, and I will be better off without them."

**INHUMANITY AND
SUPERSTITION.**

The helpless children of a mother who dies are left to the mercies of nature only, as no one will care for another's child, except, sometimes, a near relative. Livingstone mentions seeing a little child in a village crying and calling its dead mother; those who heard it as they passed by would say, "She is coming," but no one would give it food or shelter, and death from starvation soon relieved the little sufferer.



CROCODILES ON THE MARGIN OF NYASSA.

Livingstone left the banks of Nyassa in November, and took a course northwest, which led through dense forests, where game was plentiful but very difficult to come at. Nyassa is 2600 feet above sea level, but toward the west the elevation increases to 2800 feet, and in fifty miles there is a descent into a large valley of surpassing fertility. The people west of the lake were almost continually at war, and in consequence provisions could not be purchased at any price. At one time Livingstone was positively in fear of starving, being reduced to the most desperate straits. Fortunately, he encountered some bee-hunters, who were using the honey-bird as a guide. The bird kept a little way before them, and patiently waited on the limb of a tree while the hunters sat for half an hour smoking and chatting with Livingstone's men. This extraordinary bird flies from tree to tree in front of the hunter, chirruping loudly, and will not be content till he arrives at the spot where the bees'-nest is; it then waits quietly till the honey is taken, and feeds on the broken morsels of comb which fall to its share. Livingstone followed the bird a mile or more, and was rewarded with a rich store of honey, enough to appease the hunger of his men for two days, and until they reached a village, where an elephant had recently been killed, and a small quantity of its dried flesh was purchased.

THE HONEY-BIRD.

As food was scarce in all the villages, Livingstone could not stop in any of them, but pushed on where everything appeared distressingly gloomy. On January 1, 1867, he had reached the Chambeze River, but now the rains set in, and ten miles a day **DANGER FROM SERPENTS.** was all that could be made, as rank grass obscured the paths, and even the guides had to depend on the configuration of the country. Snakes were numerous, and there was an ever-present danger lurking in the grass. One morning Livingstone sat beside a tree, and accidentally glancing down by his side saw a large cobra, and a little further off a puff-adder, both of which, however, were somewhat benumbed by the cold.

Rain and hunger now united to stay further progress, and a less resolute man must have succumbed to these desperate obstacles. On the twentieth of January the most serious loss that Livingstone could sustain befell him. Two Waiyan carriers, who **FAMINE AND A SERIOUS LOSS.** had served him faithfully for several weeks, deserted, carrying with them, among other things, the medicine chest; they took also all the dishes, a large powder-box, two guns, a cartridge-pouch, and all the tools; these latter, though of inestimable value in such a country, could be dispensed with, but in the medicine chest lay all the hope and possibility of the expedition, for no constitution can withstand the malarial exhalations of tropical Africa unaided by that fever specific, quinine. Livingstone says: "I felt as if I had received the sentence of death."

Livingstone came upon a small stream called the Lopiri, a branch of the Chambeze, on the last day of January, and following it down some distance he entered a village, over which Chitapangwa, sometimes called Motoka, was ruler. Fish were **MEETING WITH CHIEF CHITAPANGWA.** very plentiful in the Lopiri, and this fact mainly induced Livingstone to make a short stay in the village, where he supposed food must be procurable. Entering the place he was gladdened by the sight of a party of Arabs, who were upon the point of going to Zanzibar for supplies. He sent by these men for coffee, candles, sugar, quinine, calomel, resin of jalap, and some other things, to be forwarded to Ujiji, but only with a slight hope that the articles would reach him, as the Arabs were unfriendly to Livingstone's purposes.

Chitapangwa, who was a great chief among his people, was not long in seeking an audience with his white guest, whose goods he appeared very anxious to inspect. The first meeting was a very friendly one, during which Chitapangwa gave Livingstone a large cow, and begged him to remain several days in his country. On the following day, however, when the cow was about to be slaughtered, one of the chief's head men objected, saying that a blanket must first be given; as Livingstone had no blanket that he could spare, a long palaver took place, which resulted in the cow being sent back, and Livingstone's party had either to fast or eat dried hippopotamus meat, which was anything but appetizing. At his next audience with the chief, Livingstone declared his intention to go a little way east to buy goats, but at this Chitapangwa appeared angry, and said that he would give the cow first offered, which was finally brought and slaughtered. Chitapangwa was a singular creature, so jolly in his intercourse and full of good promises, but provokingly chary about fulfilling them. He wanted cloths, which were given to the value of two or three cows; but he still demanded a blanket, and was so persistent that he refused Livingstone permission to depart until a well-worn blanket belonging to one of the men was given him. He had an idea that Livingstone's purpose in visiting his country was for individual gain, and upon being assured that there was no selfish object connected with the expedition, he pulled down the underlid of his eye exactly like some of our precocious lads when they ask, "Do you



see anything green in my eye?" Livingstone finally obtained the confidence and good-will of the chief, who then declared that he had given the cow in the first place as an evidence of his friendship; that he had instructed his head man to ask for a blanket, but in case this was refused to give the cow anyhow, and beg the white man to send any pretty thing which he might spare. This explanation Livingstone, of course, had to accept, though he knew it to be a falsehood. He remained three weeks, and on taking leave Chitapangwa gave him a brass knife with ivory sheath, and sent some of his men to accompany him and show the way to Lake Tanganyika, which was nearly two hundred miles distant.

The country was somewhat more open on the route north than that which Livingstone had passed through to reach Chitapangwa's village, but food continued scarce. At Moamba, a village about twenty miles north of Chitapangwa's, and ruled over by that chief's brother, Livingstone was well received and provided with meat and guides, much to his surprise, for it had been represented that here he would meet with hostility. Upon leaving this place food again became scarce, and to add to his troubles he was attacked with fever. Wearied, sick and hungry, he still continued his journey, sustained wholly by his wonderful will power; and on March 31 he came in sight of Lake Tanganyika. So mountainous are its shores, that from the point where he first observed the lake he had to descend two thousand feet before reaching the level of the water. It seemed about twenty miles broad, and in the view of thirty miles northward he could see four different rivers pouring their waters into it. After a fortnight's stay on the lake Livingstone writes of it as follows: "Its peacefulness is remarkable, though at times it is said to be lashed up by storms. It lies in a deep basin, whose sides are nearly perpendicular, but covered well with trees; the rocks which appear are bright-red argillaceous schist; the trees at present all green; down some of these rocks come beautiful cascades, and buffaloes, elephants and antelopes wander and graze on the more level spots, while lions roar by night. The level place below is not two miles from the perpendicular. The village (Pambete) at which we first touched the lake is surrounded by palm-oil-trees—not the stunted ones of Lake Nyassa, but the real West Coast palm-oil-tree, requiring two men to carry a bunch of the ripe fruit. In the morning and evening huge crocodiles may be observed quietly making their way to their feeding grounds; hippopotami snort by night and at early morning."

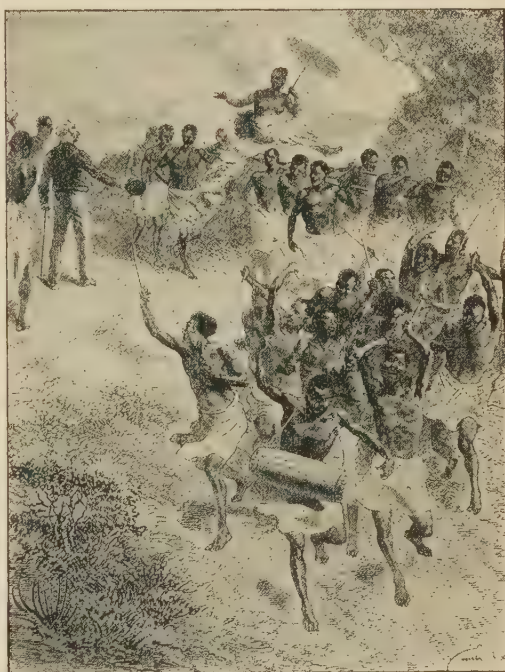
The Balungu people, who inhabit the south shores of the lake, are exceedingly affable, and would be superior subjects for the civilizing influences of missionaries, were it not for their cowardice and laziness. The Mazitu tribe attack them very often, and take their women and children captives without meeting any resistance. Their politeness, however, is remarkable; in marching with them they labor incessantly to promote the comfort of strangers, and bow and salute on every occasion, like the most fastidious Frenchman. The mode of salutation among relatives of the Balungu is to place the hands round each other's chests, kneeling; they then clasp their hands close to the ground. Some more abject individuals kiss the soil before a chief; the generality kneel only, with the forearms close to the ground, and the head bowed down to them, saying, "O Ajadla chiusa, Mari a bwino." The Usanga say, "Aje senga." The clapping of hands to superiors, and even equals, is in some villages a perpetually-recurring sound. Aged persons are usually saluted; how this extreme deference to each other could have arisen cannot be conceived; it does not seem to be fear of one another that elicits it. Even the chiefs inspire no fear, and those cruel old platitudes about governing savages by fear seem unknown, yet governed they certainly are, and upon the whole very well.

Livingstone's intention was to pass along the lake coast, but from this purpose he was dissuaded by a report that a powerful chief, named Nsama, was at war with the Arabs under Hamees, and that between these two he would be certain to fall into difficulty. To evade these hostile people he turned southwest, intending to make a circuit back to the lake. The country through which he was now traveling was very fertile, and the food supply of every village was abundant; but this lasted for a distance of only fifty miles, when it was necessary, in making a detour, to pass through the village of Hara, in the Itawa country, which had recently been burned by Hamees; here they were so near Nsama that he heard of Livingstone's being in his vicinity, and sent for him to visit him in his new stockade, about five miles from Hara, but to bring no guns. Livingstone complied with the request, and was received becomingly, except that the chief insisted on searching his person to see if any arms were concealed. The Arabs had defeated him in a desperate battle, and though previously Nsama had been regarded as invincible, now his influence was almost destroyed. Yet, for commercial purposes, Hamees desired to make peace with him, and came to Hara to cement the friendship by marrying one of his daughters. The proposal was not readily acceded to, and the people were sorely concerned as to the outcome. In the midst of these doubts, however, a daughter of Nsama was conveyed on a litter by a party of soldiers into Hara, to be a wife and sacrifice herself for the sake of peace. She was a nice, modest, good-looking young woman, her hair rubbed all over with grease and a red pigment made from the cam-wood, and much used as an ornament. She was accompanied by a dozen young and old female attendants, each carrying a small basket with some provisions—cassava, ground-nuts, etc. The Arabs were all dressed in their finery, and the slaves, in fantastic costumes, flourished swords, fired guns, and yelled vociferously. When she was brought to Hamees' hut she descended from her perch, and, with her maids, passed in at the door. She and her attendants had all small, neat features. Livingstone had been sitting beside Hamees, and as he got up and walked away he heard the Arab chief say to himself, "Hamee wadim Tagh!"—"See to what you have brought yourself." This completed the marriage ceremony.

Nsama's people have generally small, well-chiseled features, and many are really handsome, and have nothing of the West Coast Negro about them; but they file their teeth to sharp points, and greatly disfigure their mouths. The only difference between them and Europeans is the color. Many of the men have very finely formed heads, and so have the women; and the fashion of wearing the hair sets off their foreheads to advantage. The forehead is shaved off to the crown, the space narrowing as it goes up.

During his stay at Hara, which was really enforced by protracted rains, Livingstone gained the friendship of Hamees, and when he left the village on the twenty-second of

A WEDDING IN AFRICA.



CONVEYING THE BRIDE OF COSEMBE.

September he was accompanied by several Arabs, while Hamees followed a short distance, and then supplied guides to take him to Lake Moero. The journey thence was through a beautiful country, very thickly populated, but the natives were so terror-stricken at the sight of guns, owing to the recent Arab incursions and battles, that they would not stop to barter, but ran off and hid themselves; thus food was somewhat difficult to obtain; fortunately, however, a considerable amount was brought along.

Reaching the Kalongi River the natives were more friendly disposed, and as the river teemed with fish there was least succeeding famine. Rapid progress was now made, and on November 1 the village of Casembe was entered, to the great delight of the tired travelers. Casembe is a term applied to both village and governor, or, literally, *General*. Just before Livingstone's arrival there had been an interregnum in the rulership, the old Casembe having recently died. As the son or heir does not succeed to the chieftainship, the village was without a ruler for nearly a year before a new Casembe was selected to succeed the dead chief.

The plain extending from the Lunde River to Casembe is level, and studded thickly with red-ant hills, from fifteen to twenty feet high. The chief's residence is enclosed in a wall of reeds, eight or nine feet high and three hundred yards square; the gateway is ornamented with about sixty human skulls; a shed stands in the middle of the road fronting the gate, under which is a cannon ornamented with gaudy cloth. A number of noisy fellows tried to stop Livingstone and his party and compel them to pay a tribute for the cannon, but they burst through without regarding the demand. Mohamid bin Saleh, the Arab leader at this place, met Livingstone and gave him a reception by firing guns, then led his party to a large shed for further ceremonies, such as bowing, firing salutes, rubbing elbows, etc. After this a large hut was given Livingstone for his residence until others could be built. The town is headquarters for the Arab slave-trade, and there is a very large stockade for slaves, which Livingstone found full.

Many of the Casembe people appeared with their ears cropped and hands lopped off. Upon inquiring the cause, Livingstone was told that it was the practice of the Casembe to mutilate his subjects for petty offences, and sometimes merely to gratify his barbarous inclination.

The third day after his arrival Livingstone was tendered a reception by the Casembe, who was seated in great state in front of his council chamber, while his principal chiefs squatted on the ground around him. A "tom-toming" was kept up by two musicians on native drums, while Casembe's wives danced up to Livingstone with small branches of trees in their hands, with which they swept the ground as they bowed before him. One of the principal officers was instructed to present the white guest with an elephant's tusk, as an evidence of the great esteem with which he was regarded. The affair was one of the most stately that Livingstone had ever witnessed in Africa, and he describes the incident and the people at some length.

"The present Casembe," says Livingstone, "has a heavy, uninteresting countenance, without mustache or whiskers, and somewhat of the Chinese type, and his eyes have an outward squint. He smiled but once during the day, and that was pleasant enough, though the cropped ears and lopped hands, with human skulls at the gate, made me indisposed to look on anything with favor. His principal wife came with her attendants, after he had departed, to look at the Englishman (Moengerese). She was a fine, tall, good-featured lady,

with two spears in her hand. The principal men who had come around made way for her, and called on me to salute; I did so, but she, being forty yards off, I involuntarily beckoned her to come nearer; this upset the gravity of all her attendants; all burst into a laugh, and ran off. Casembe's smile was elicited by a dwarf making some uncouth antics before him. His executioner also came forward to look; he had a broad Lunda sword on his arm, and a curious scissor-like instrument at his neck for cropping ears. On saying to him that his was nasty work, he smiled, and so did many who were not sure of their ears a moment; many men of respectability show that at some former time they have been thus punished. Casembe's chief wife passes frequently to her plantation carried by six, or more commonly by twelve, men in a sort of palanquin; she has European features, but light-brown com-



INUNDATION OF CASEMBE.

plexion. A number of men run before her, brandishing swords and battle-axes, and one beats a hollow instrument, giving warning to passengers to clear the way; she has two enormous pipes ready filled for smoking. She is very attentive to her agriculture; cassava is the chief product, but they also raise sweet-potatoes, maize, sorghum, millet, ground-nuts, and cotton. The people seem more savage than any I have yet seen; they strike each other barbarously from mere wantonness, but they are civil enough to me."

Livingstone took leave of Casembe on December 22, and on January 1, after a severe journey through dreadful bogs, reached Moero Lake, which lies in a basin surrounded by the Rua Mountains. Its shape is almost circular, with a diameter of about fifty miles. Numerous villages line its shores, and large game, such as buffaloes, elephants, zebras, lions and leopards, abound.

In the vicinity of Moero are found that singular race or species known as Troglodytes, which, like the bat, are impossible of classification. They live in underground houses along the Rua Mountain sides for twenty miles or so. In some cases the doorways are level with the adjacent country, while a ladder is used in reaching others. Generally these habitations are caves, a singularly large number of which are found in the Rua Mountains, but not a few are artificial excavations.

Livingstone had left Casembe with the assurance of his guides that they should reach Ujiji within a month, but the rains were so incessant that traveling was nearly impossible for several months, and necessitated a stay in the vicinity of Lake Moero and Casembe for nearly four months. During this time, however, he was not entirely idle, but went from village to village as far as the floods would permit. At a small place, called Mofwe, he found an Arab digging and fencing up a well, to prevent his slaves from being taken away by crocodiles; this precaution was not thought of until after he had lost three slaves. The country, being almost covered with water, was badly infested by crocodiles while the wild animals were driven from their accustomed haunts and forced to seek refuge on hills, knolls, and other high places. Their terror seemed to rob them of their fierce propensities and natural instincts, and lions, hyenas, leopards, antelopes, monkeys and other animals were often seen huddled close together in small dry spots, without any attempt of the strong and ferocious to attack the weak and defenseless. Such scenes were very remarkable and made Livingstone think of the time when "the lion and the lamb shall lie down together."

CHAPTER VII.

ON THE SHORES OF BANGWEOLO.

It was not until the first of June that the floods had subsided sufficiently to admit of a resumption of the journey, which was now to be directed toward Lake Bangweolo, of which Livingstone had heard much. As he was upon the point of leaving Casembe, he was struck by the sight of the sub-chief's wife, who was uncommonly good-looking, in a slave chain-gang. Inquiry elicited the fact that she had been sold for unfaithfulness; her husband, Kapika, was an old man, while she was both youthful and pretty; her offence, therefore, was but the counterfeit of what we frequently see among civilized people who are similarly mis-mated.

The case of the chieftainess excited great sympathy among the people; many brought her food, and one man offered to redeem her with three slaves. The matter was finally brought before Casembe, but this chief, owing to the fact that he himself was an old man having a pretty young wife, declared that ten slaves could not redeem the faithless woman. He pronounced this judgment with a scowl and looked at his own wife at the same time.

On the sixth day after leaving Casembe a small party of natives was met, carrying a dead lion slung across a pole. The lion had killed a man, and it was being taken to Casembe for judgment; its mouth was carefully strapped and the paws tied tightly across its chest. Some of the lions of this district stand more than five feet high, and are nearly as large as a buffalo.

One day Livingstone met a gang of slaves being driven along the path, and some of them were singing as if they did not feel the weight and degradation of the slave-sticks.

Livingstone asked the cause of their mirth, and was told that they rejoiced at the idea of "coming back after death, and haunting and killing those who had sold them." Some of the words he had to inquire about; for instance, the meaning of the words "to haunt and kill by spirit power;" then it was, "Oh, **JOY AMONG SLAVES.** you sent me off to Manga (sea-coast), but the yoke is off when I die, and back I shall come to haunt and to kill you." Then all joined in the chorus, which was the name of each vendor. It told not of fun, but of the bitterness and tears of such as were oppressed. Kapika's wife was among the slaves, and she was asked if she would return to kill Kapika. Her heart was evidently sore; for a lady to be so humiliated was most grievous. She had lost her jaunty air, and with her head shaved, was ugly; but she never forgot to address her captors with dignity, and they seemed to fear her.

On June 25 Livingstone reached the Luongo River, along which were several villages, but the people were afraid of the "white man," whose purposes and singular color they could not comprehend, so that no stop was made among them. Wild beasts were so numerous and daring in their depredations that the villages were protected by high hedges. Leaving these villages, he came to a **A GRAVE BY THE WAYSIDE.** grave in the forest; it was a little rounded mound, as if the occupant sat in it in the usual native way; it was strewn over with flour, and a number of large blue beads lay on it; a little path showed that it had visitors. "This," says Livingstone, "is the sort of grave I should prefer; to lie in the still, still forest, and no hand ever disturb my bones. The graves at home always seemed to me to be miserable, especially those in the cold, damp clay, and without elbow-room; but I have nothing to do but wait till He who is over all decides where I have to lay me down and die. Poor Mary (his wife) lies on Shupanga brae, 'and beeks fornent the sun.'"

A more pathetic allusion to a sad circumstance was never made than is contained in these few lines. He must have a hard heart indeed, who can read them without emotion as he thinks of the wild, lonesome spot where this noble and courageous woman reposes, so far from home and civilization, wrapt in the mysteries of nature, alone with nature's God.

On July 18 Livingstone's heart was gladdened by the discovery of Lake Bangweolo, one of the largest bodies of water in Central Africa, and thirty-six hundred feet above sea level. The modesty with which he announces this important discovery is remarkable, after reading Baker and Speke's self-laudations on similar occasions. Livingstone does not even give "thanks for being made the **DISCOVERY OF LAKE BANGWEOLO.** instrument in God's hands for exploring this great lake, and adding so much to the geography of Africa." His modest announcement is as follows: "Reached the chief village of Mapuni, near the north bank of Bangweolo. On the eighteenth I walked a little way out, and saw the shores of the lake for the first time, thankful that I had come safely hither."

The people living near Bangweolo Lake are called Mboghwa; their features would not be unpleasant if they abstained from the practice of filing their teeth to a point and tattooing their foreheads and chins. Their occupation is chiefly fishing, in which they show much skill; a singular thing is the fact that their fish-hooks are made exactly like those we use in America, except there are no barbs on them. The shores of the lake being shallow, many men may be seen on stilts strapped to their knees on which they wade far out into the water and fish from their precarious perch.

A very large canoe, capable of carrying twenty men, was engaged by Livingstone, and in this he visited several islands in the lake, all of which he found thickly inhabited. The

lake is computed to be one hundred and fifty miles long, by eighty broad ; its water is clear as crystal and the bottom is of beautiful white sand, so that objects are visible at a great depth.

Livingstone had gone directly away from Ujiji in proceeding to Bangweolo, which is nearly one hundred miles south of Casembe, but the importance of his discovery recompensed

him for the trouble he had encountered. But when he was about to return to **IN TROUBLE.** Casembe, the news reached him that hostilities had broken out between the Arabs and natives, under the following circumstances : The Mazitu tribes had overrun Casembe's territory and so devastated it that the trade in ivory had been almost utterly destroyed. To preserve their own interests, therefore, the Arabs had joined Casembe and defeated the Mazitu with great slaughter. This success gave the Arabs a hope of finally possessing the entire country, but Casembe soon became aware of their ambitions, and forming an alliance with another strong chief, named Chikumbi, the two attacked Kombokombo, an Arab leader, but were repulsed. There was now fighting on all sides, so that Livingstone could not hope to go unmolested through so large a district as lay between him and Casembe.

Shortly after leaving Bangweolo Lake he was intercepted by a large body of furious Imbozhwa (Casembe soldiers), who, mistaking his party for plunderers, raised their spears and were upon the point of attacking, when an old man who had seen Livingstone at Casembe rushed out in front of his people and ordered them to desist. It was only by a piece of extraordinary good fortune that Livingstone was not killed, but on the following day his party was again besieged by another army of natives under the false impression that he was heading a crowd of Mazitu, but for a second time good luck attended him.

On the twenty-third of September he fell in with some Arab traders and four hundred Wanyamwezi people, who were trying to get out of the country, and together they marched northward. In anticipation of attacks they built fences each night around their camp and kept out a sharp watch for enemies until reaching the Kalongosi River, which is the southern boundary of Casembe's territory.

Livingstone hardly expected an attack after reaching Casembe's country, but in this he was mistaken ; for, on account of the killing of a woman by an Arab, the Imbozhwa

turned out in strong force and attacked the combined forces of Living- **KILLING PRISONERS.** stone, the Wanyamwezi, and Arabs. A stockade was hastily constructed,

but this would have afforded little protection had it not been for the Wanyamwezi, who shot vigorously with their arrows and occasionally charged the Imbozhwa. The women went up and down the village with sieves, as if winnowing, and singing songs and lullilooing to encourage their husbands and friends who were fighting ; each had a branch of the *Ficus Indica* in her hand, which she waved as a charm. About ten of the Imbozhwa were killed, but dead and wounded were at once carried off by their countrymen. They continued the assault from early dawn till 1 p. m., and showed great bravery, but they wounded only two with their arrows. Their care to secure the wounded was admirable ; two or three at once seized the fallen man and ran off with him, though pursued by a great crowd of Wanyamwezi with spears, and fired at by the Arabs—Red-cross fellows truly many of them were ! Those who had a bunch of animals' tails, with medicine, tied to their waists, came sidling and ambling up to near the unfinished stockade, and shot their arrows high up into the air, to fall among the Wanyamwezi, then picked up any arrows on the field, ran back and returned again. They thought that by the ambling gait they avoided the balls, and when these whistled past them they put down their heads, as if



SICK WITH PNEUMONIA, LIVINGSTONE IS CARRIED BY HIS SERVANTS.

to allow them to pass over; they had never encountered guns before. When a man was killed and not carried off, the Wanyamwezi brought his head and put it on a pole on the stockade; six heads were thus placed. A fine young man was caught and brought in by the Wanyamwezi; one stabbed him behind, and another cut his forehead with an axe. Livingstone called in vain to them not to kill him. As a last appeal, the victim said to the crowd that surrounded him, "Don't kill me, and I shall take you to where the women are." "You lie," said his enemies; "you intend to take us where we may be shot by your friends;" and they killed him.

For two weeks or more the Imbozhwa kept up the siege, and finally forced the Arabs to restore all the prisoners taken; but still they did not leave, and when a small party of Wanyamwezi went out to feel the enemy they were set upon and driven back. At length it was decided to quietly abandon the stockade at night, and under cover of darkness steal away, a stratagem which worked successfully, and on December 11 Livingstone, in company with the Arabs and their strings of wretched slaves, yoked together in heavy slave-sticks, started for Ujiji. It was with great disgust and humiliation that he marched with such a motley crowd, but self-preservation compelled him to, for had he undertaken to go alone he would certainly have fallen a victim to the furious hordes which swarmed and plundered the country. Fortunately, no more enemies appeared to impede the march, but owing to stoppages on account of escaping slaves, which the Arabs always tried to recapture, though nearly always in vain, the journey was a slow one. Many streams had to be waded, and this, with the worry and lack of rest, brought the fever back again on Livingstone.

On New Year's Day the party came to the Lofuko River, which they crossed by wading waist deep; this exposure, in his already enfeebled condition, caused such severe illness that Livingstone was unable to march any further. He was attacked by pneumonia in the right lung, and soon his brain became so affected that he lost count of the days of the week and month. In his delirium he fancied himself lying dead on the road to Ujiji. The Arabs were very kind, however, and carried him for sixteen days, until they arrived at Tanganyika Lake. Here arrangements were at once made for transporting him by canoe to Ujiji, on the east side of the lake, more than one hundred miles north of the point where he now lay. The lake air, and some medicine administered by the Arabs, revived him, and when, on February 27, 1869, he embarked for Ujiji, he was able to sit up and eat a little gruel. High winds on the lake proved a serious obstacle, sometimes days being spent ashore on account of dangerous waves, so that it was not until March 14 that Ujiji was reached.

Great was his disappointment to find that only a small part of the goods which he had ordered sent from Zanzibar had reached Ujiji, the most having been stolen by the Arab who was commissioned to bring them. This was a sad blow, at a time, too, when his bodily infirmities were so great that he had to be assisted to rise from his bed; yet so infinite was his patience and so strong his courage, that he mentions the fact only as a passing event, and hopes on.

Ujiji is an Arab settlement, and Livingstone naturally expected, in view of the letter which he carried from the Sultan at Zanzibar, to receive every attention becoming his position, but instead, so vicious had been the rule of the governor at this place, that he would allow no one to carry Livingstone's communications to the coast, lest the injustice, brutality, and corruption of his rule might be made public. Anxious to communicate with civilized people, he wrote forty-two letters while in his enfeebled state, to friends who had not heard from him for years, and entrusted them to an Arab for conveyance to Zanzibar, but not one of these precious missives reached its destination.

While at Ujiji Livingstone conceived the idea that the Tanganyika was rather the expansion of a river than a lake, an opinion which he formed by observing that there was a current of about one mile per hour flowing northward. This led him to suppose that it was connected with the Nile, and that indeed the large chain of lakes in Central Africa were all united, and that the Nile derived its waters from them all. He therefore determined, as soon as he was able, to explore the region around Lake Tanganyika, going as far south as Lake Bangweolo, and westward into the Manyuema country, to ascertain if the large river on that side of Lake Tanganyika was the Nile or the Congo. He sent again to Zanzibar for men and supplies, with little hope, however, of receiving them.

Although still weak and much reduced in flesh, on the twelfth of July he procured a boat and some rowers, also several carriers, and crossing Lake Tanganyika landed at Kasinge, in pursuance of his intention to visit the Manyuema country, about two hundred miles northwest of Ujiji. This was an unexplored district, not even the Arab traders having ever visited it, chiefly because the people were reputed to be cannibals. Some Arab traders became so much interested in the proposed trip, that they decided also to visit the country, since their chief trade in the southwest was now destroyed, at least for a time, by the wars then waging.

**A JOURNEY INTO
THE MANYUEMA COUNTRY.**

A native of Kasinge was engaged by Livingstone to act as guide, and on August 4 the party started on the land journey. There was no incident worthy of record until September 2, when they reached Katemba, fairly exhausted from continual traveling. Game was plentiful in the vicinity of Katemba, especially buffaloes and elephants. One of the latter was killed, and Livingstone had the heart cooked for himself, and found it a surprisingly savory dish. On the ninth another stop was made to shoot elephants and buffaloes, which were so abundant that they were scarcely ever out of sight from the wayside.

On arriving at Bamberre, Livingstone found a singular country and a curious people. The roadways were all good, and appeared to have been used for hundreds of years, as indicated by worn passages in the rocks, sometimes two or more feet deep. The forests were so dense that nothing but wild animals could penetrate them, so that though game is wonderfully plentiful, it is almost impossible to shoot. The people tattoo themselves with figures of crocodiles, elephants, and other animals. The houses are all kept well filled with firewood on shelves, and each has a bed on a raised platform in an inner room. They were so simple and unused to strangers that on the appearance of the white traveler they thought he had come from another world to kill them. They have little wooden idols and charms, and believe in the efficacy of the beetle to prevent harm. There is a wood in this country which, when burned, emits a horrible fecal odor, and, as Livingstone says, "one would think the camp polluted if the fire were made of it."

Livingstone's quarters were very comfortable at Manyuema, and he improved in health and flesh rapidly. The only inconvenience suffered was from the depredations of soldier-ants, which filled his hut and not only destroyed every kind of food within their reach, but at times they would even attack the occupants. But these **SOLDIER-ANTS.** ants have deadly enemies in what is called the *sirufu* ant, which sometimes swarm into the huts and devour every soldier-ant in them; an incident of this kind occurred in Livingstone's hut, which he describes as follows:

"A whole regiment of soldier-ants in my hut were put into a panic by a detachment of driver-ants, called *sirufu*. The *chungu*, or black soldiers, rushed out with their eggs and young, putting them down and running for more. A dozen *sirufu* pitched on one

chungu and killed him. The chungu made new quarters for themselves. When the white ants cast off their colony of winged emigrants, a canopy is erected like an umbrella over the ant-hill. As soon as ants fly against the roof they tumble down in a shower, and their wings instantly become detached from their bodies. They are then helpless, and are swept up in baskets to be fried, when they make a very palatable food."

The soldier-ants are deadly enemies of the white species, and if it were not so, the latter would overrun the country, as they increase with great rapidity. When on their way to attack the abode of the white ants, they march in a column of three or four abreast, like soldiers, and are led by several officers, who are larger than the rest and direct their movements, but never carry loads. As they approach the homes of their victims, the latter may be observed rushing about in the greatest alarm. The black leaders seize the white ants one by one, and inflict a sting, which has an effect similar to that of chloroform, as it renders them insensible, but not dead, and only able to move one or two front legs. As the leaders toss them on one side, the rank and file seize them and carry them off.

The natives of nearly all parts of Africa are exceedingly fond of white ants as a dish. On one occasion, while camping on the banks of the Zouga, Livingstone was visited by a chief, and as he was at dinner at the time, he gave him a piece of bread and some preserved apricots. The chief seemed to relish it very much, and Livingstone asked him if he had anything equal to that in his country. "Ah," said he, "did you ever taste white ants?" Livingstone assured him that he had never tried that delicacy. "Well, if you had," replied the chief, licking his mouth with pleasant memories, "you never could have desired anything better."

After more than a month's stay among the Manyuema, chiefly at Bambarre, Livingstone concluded to explore the Lualaba River, which is a stream of considerable size, flowing through the Manyuema country and discharging its waters into Lake Kamalondo, to the south. On the journey he met with no little opposition from the natives; some of these people mistrusted his intentions and endeavored to turn him back, but great caution prevented a collision. The women, all of whom are stark naked, appeared more hostile, or, rather captious, than the men, but a few beads or other trinkets usually placated them.

Ivory was exceedingly plentiful, and little or no value was placed upon it by the natives. The Arab traders brought with them several slaves, with the expectation of trading them to the Manyumas for ivory, but the latter would have none but female slaves, which they desired for wives, and refused to receive a man slave even as a present. This was a sore disappointment to the Arabs, who scarcely knew what to do with their slaves, unless they liberated them. They finally concluded to go further north and try traffic with other natives. Livingstone met with no better success than the Arabs, for with all his persuasion and proffers of presents he could not hire a canoe, and was forced to abandon his intended exploration of the Lualaba. The forests which lined the road were exceedingly dense, and Livingstone noticed that wherever any clearing had been attempted gigantic grass usurped the place in a very short time; this grass, however, is burned frequently. Large trees do not readily succumb to the fire, but put out new wood below the burnt places. Upon these Livingstone found large numbers of parrots building their nests, while above the natives construct straw huts and live secure from the attacks of wild animals. The men make a stair up one hundred and fifty feet by tying climbing plants (called binayoba) around the tree, about four feet apart, to serve as steps. Near the confluence of the Luamo men build huts on this same species of tree for safety against the arrows of their enemies.

Being defeated in his purpose of exploring the river, Livingstone returned to Bambarre, and there joined the Arabs in a journey to the north. The route lay through a marshy district, and so many streams had to be crossed that fever again attacked him, which, aided by a severe spell of dysentery, so exhausted his strength that he could scarcely support himself. They came to a village among fine gardens of maize, bananas, ground-nuts, and cassava, but the villagers said, "Go on to next village," which meant, "We don't want you here." The main body of the Arabs was about three miles in advance ; but Livingstone was so weak he sat down in the next hamlet, and asked for a hut to rest in. A woman with leprous hands gave him hers, a nice clean one, and a very heavy rain came on ; of her own accord she prepared dumplings of green maize, pounded and boiled, which are sweet, for she said that she saw he was hungry. Seeing that he did not eat for fear of the leprosy, she kindly pressed him : "Eat ; you are weak only from hunger ; this will strengthen you." He put it out of her sight, and blessed her motherly heart.

February 3 Livingstone made the following memorandum : "Caught in a drenching rain, which made me fain to sit, exhausted as I was, under an umbrella for an hour trying to keep the trunk dry. As I sat in the rain, a little tree-frog, about half an inch long, leaped on to a grassy leaf, and began a tune as loud as that of many birds, and very sweet ; it was surprising to hear so much music out of so small a musician."

After a rest of eight days, during which time he used water only that had been boiled, and lived principally upon a species of potatoes called nyumbo, much famed among the natives as a restorative, Livingstone found his health very much improved. The village in which he was resting was on the banks of a confluent of the Lualaba, which abounded with

**A SINGING FROG, AND
FISH THAT GIVE MILK.**



A MANYUEMA VILLAGE.

fish ; among the several species is one called *mamba*, which has breasts with milk, and which utters a peculiar cry. Its flesh is very white and savory. While here an elephant was killed which had three tusks, all of good size ; the third tusk grew out from the base of the trunk, midway between the other two.

On June 26 Livingstone resolved to start again for the Lualaba River by a northwest route, although he had been deserted by all but three of his followers, Chuma, Susi, and Gardner. His purpose was accelerated by the fact that the Arabs had made war on the Manyuema people, ostensibly on account of a string of beads which had been stolen, but really because they could not trade their men slaves for ivory ; forty of the natives had been killed and several villages burned. Knowing that general hostilities would follow, Livingstone decided that Arabs were bad companions, and that he would be safer alone than with them. But for once he made a mistake. After traveling several days, wading rivers breast and neck deep, through awful beds of mud, over fallen trees and through dense brush, he discovered that the Lualaba did not lay where he expected to find it, for he had gone far to the north, directly away from the object of his search. His feet were dreadfully lacerated, and instead of healing, as heretofore, the sores became irritable, eating ulcers, so painful that it was only by the utmost determination that he could limp back to Bambarre.

Livingstone had heard much concerning the cannibal propensities of the Manyuema people, but principally from the tribes around Lake Nyassa, so that he was disposed to believe the reports were little else than traditions, similar to those which asserted
THE MANYUEMA that white men live in the sea, that there is a tribe in North Africa whose
CANNIBALS. people have tails like cows, and another race that have four eyes, two in front and two behind, while another race have but a single eye. Actual contact of several months with the Manyuema, however, convinced him that the reports he had received of them were in no wise exaggerated. He says : " On August 17, Monayembe, the chief, came, bringing two goats ; one he gave to Mohamed, the other to Moenekuss' son, acknowledging that he had killed his elder brother ; he had killed eleven persons over at Linamo in our absence, in addition to those killed in villages on our southeast, when we were away. It transpired that Kandahara, brother of old Moenekuss, whose village is near this, killed three women and a child, and that a trading man came over from Kassangangaye and was murdered too, for no reason but to eat his body. When they tell of each other's deeds they disclose a horrid state of blood-thirsty callousness. The people over a hill north-northeast of this killed a person out hoeing ; if a man is alone in a field, he is almost sure of being slain. Some said that people in the vicinity, or hyenas, stole the buried dead ; but Posho's wife died and, in Wanyamwazi fashion, was thrown out of camp unburied. Mohamed threatened an attack if Manyuema did not cease exhuming the dead. It was effectual ; neither men nor hyenas touched her, though exposed now for seven days.

" The head of Moenekuss is said to be preserved in a pot in his house, and all public matters are gravely communicated to it, as if his spirit dwelt therein ; his body was eaten ; the flesh was removed from the head and eaten too ; his father's head is said to be kept also. The foregoing refers to Bambarre alone. In other districts graves show that sepulture is customary, but here no grave appears ; some admit the existence of the practice here, others deny it. In the Metamba country, adjacent to the Lualaba, a quarrel with a wife often ends in the husband killing her and eating her heart, mixed up in a huge mess of goat's flesh ; this has the charm character. Fingers are taken as charms in other parts, but in Bambarre alone is the depraved taste the motive for cannibalism."

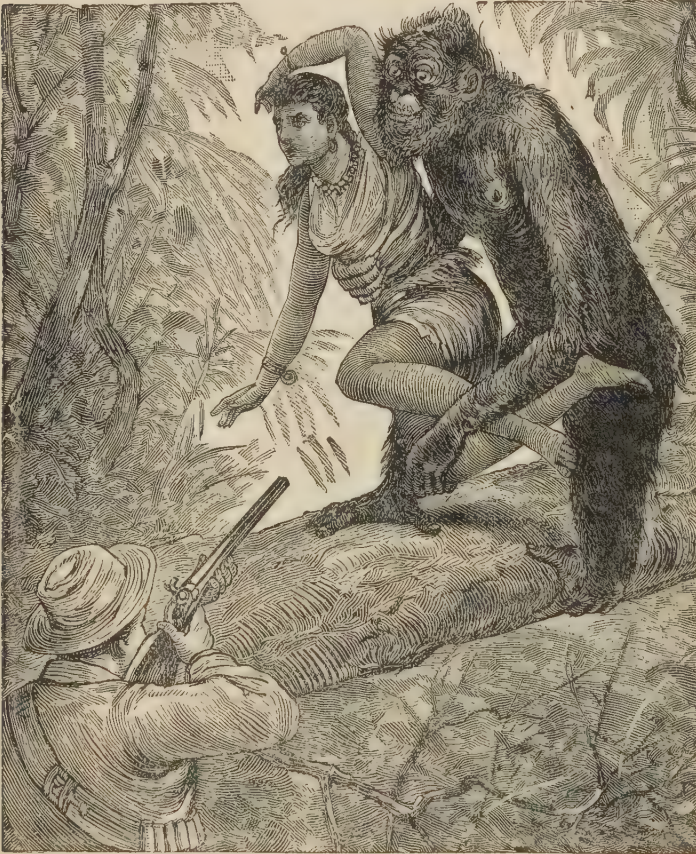
For a period of eighty days Livingstone was laid up at Bambarre by the ulcerations of his feet. The only thing which afforded the slightest relief was malachite, rubbed down with water on a stone, and applied with a feather. While he was suffering with this worst of all afflictions thirty slaves died in Bambarre of the same **A GORILLA, OR SOKO, HUNT.** complaint, which shows with what fatality it attacks the natives. During his prolonged enforced stay at Bambarre some natives went on a gorilla hunt, that animal being quite numerous throughout the Manyuema country. It is probable, however, that the gorilla of which Livingstone writes, and which he usually calls a soko, is a species of chimpanzee, and not the true gorilla, which is much larger than the animal referred to in the following description which he gives of the hunt and the animal :

"Four gorillas, or sokos, were killed yesterday ; an extensive grass-burning forced them out of their usual haunt, and coming on the plain they were speared. They often go erect, but place the hand on the head, as if to steady the body. When seen thus, the soko is an ungainly beast. The most sentimental young lady would not call him a 'dear,' but a bandy-legged, pot-bellied, low-looking villain, without a particle of the gentleman in him. Other animals are graceful, especially the antelope, and it is pleasant to see them, either at rest or in motion. The natives are also well made, lithe, and comely to behold, but the soko, if large, would do well to stand for a picture of the devil. He takes away my appetite by his disgusting bestiality of appearance. His light-yellow face shows off his ugly whiskers and faint apology of a beard ; the forehead, villainously low, with high ears, is well in the background of the great dog-mouth ; the teeth are slightly human, but the canines show the beast by their large development. The hands, or rather the fingers, are like those of the natives. The flesh of the feet is yellow, and the eagerness with which the Manyumas devour it leaves the impression that eating sokos was the first stage by which they arrived at being cannibals ; they say the flesh is delicious. The soko is represented by some to be extremely knowing, successfully stalking men and women while at their work, kidnapping children and running up trees with them ; he seems to be amused by the sight of the young native in his arms, but comes down when tempted by a bunch of bananas, and, as he lifts that, drops the child ; the young soko, in such a case, would cling closely to the arm-pit of the elder. One man was cutting out honey from a tree, and naked, when a soko suddenly appeared and caught him, then let him go. Another man was hunting, and missed in his attempt to stab a soko : it seized the spear and broke it, then grappled with the man, who called to his companions, 'Soko has caught me : ' the soko bit off the ends of his fingers and escaped unharmed. Both men are now alive at Bambarre.



A FIGHT WITH SOKOS.

"The soko is so cunning, and has such sharp eyes, that no one can stalk him in front without being seen; hence, when shot it is always in the back; when surrounded by men and nets he is generally speared in the back, too; otherwise he is not a very formidable beast; he is nothing, as compared in power of damaging his assailant, to a leopard or lion, but is more like a man unarmed, for it does not occur to him to use his canine teeth, which are long and formidable. Numbers of them come down in the forest within a hundred yards of our camp, and would be unknown but for giving tongue like fox-hounds; this is their nearest approach to speech. A man hoeing was stalked by a soko and seized; he



A SOKO KIDNAPPING A GIRL.

roared out, but the soko giggled and grinned, and left him as if he had done it in play. A child caught up by a soko is often abused by being pinched and scratched, and let fall.

"The soko kills the leopard occasionally, by seizing both paws and biting them so as to disable them; he then goes up a tree, groans over his wounds, and sometimes recovers, while the leopard dies; at other times both soko and leopard die. The lion kills him at once, and sometimes tears his limbs off, but does not eat him. The soko eats no flesh; small bananas are his dainties, but not maize. His food consists of wild fruits, which abound. The soko brings forth at times twins. A very large soko was seen by Mohamed's hunters sitting picking his nails; they tried to stalk him, but he vanished. Some Manyuema think that their buried dead rise as sokos, and one was killed with holes in

his ears, as if he had been a man. He is very strong, and fears guns, but not spears; he rarely catches women.

"Sokos collect together, and make a drumming noise, some say with hollow trees, then burst forth into loud yells, which are well imitated by the natives' embryotic music. If a man has no spear the soko goes away satisfied; but if wounded, he seizes the wrist, lops off the fingers, and spits them out, slaps the cheeks of his victim, and bites without breaking the skin; he draws out a spear (but never uses it), and takes some leaves and stuffs them into his wound to staunch the blood: he does not wish an encounter with an armed man. He sees women do him no harm, and seldom molests them; a man without a spear is nearly safe from him. They beat hollow trees as drums with hands, and then scream as music to it; when men hear them they go to the sokos, but sokos never go to men with hostility.

Manyuema say, 'Soko is a man, and nothing bad in him.' They live in communities of about ten, each having his own female; an intruder from another camp is beaten off with their fists and loud yells. If one tries to seize the female of another, he is caught on the ground, and all unite in boxing and biting the offender. A male often carries a child, especially if they are passing from one patch of forest to another over a grassy space; he then gives it to the mother."

Livingstone was detained at Bambarre a considerable while, even after his ulcerated feet had healed, for, since all but three of his men had deserted, he was forced to send back to Ujiji for more, expecting now the arrival of those sent for to Zanzibar, as before explained; but he was doomed to sorest **A MARVELOUSLY IGNORANT** disappointment. Nothing could engage his attention during this **PEOPLE.** long delay except the habits of the Manyuema, whose characteristics, however, were striking enough. His journal at Bambarre is therefore rambling and disconnected, giving information on a variety of matters, just as they chanced to come under his observation, as the following will show:

"December 16, 1870.—Oh, for Dugumbe or Syde to come! (the messengers sent to Zanzibar for men and medicine) but this delay may be all for the best. The parrots all seize their food and hold it with the left hand; the lion, too, is left-handed; he strikes with the left; so are all animals left-handed, save man.

"I noticed a very pretty woman come past quite jauntily about a month ago, on marriage with Monasiamba. Ten goats were given; her friends came and asked another goat, which being refused, she was enticed away, became sick of rheumatic fever two days afterward, and died yesterday. Not a syllable of regret for the beautiful young creature does one hear; but for the goats—'Oh, our ten goats!'—they cannot grieve too much—'Our ten goats—oh! oh!'

"A man died near this: Monasiamba went to his wife, and after washing he may appear among men. If no widow can be obtained he must sit naked behind his house till some one happens to die; all the clothes he wore are thrown away. The man who killed a woman without cause goes free; he offered his grandmother to be killed in his stead, but after a great deal of talk nothing was done with him. 'Heresi,' a ball of hair rolled in the stomach of a lion, is a grand charm to the animal and to Arabs. Mohamed has one.

"Lions' fat is regarded as a sure preventive of tsetse or bongo. This was noted before, but I add now that it is smeared on the ox's tail, and preserves hundreds of the Wanyamwazi cattle in safety while going to the coast; it is also used to keep pigs and hippopotami away from gardens; the smell is probably the efficacious part of the 'heresi,' as they call it.

"The neggeri, an African animal, attacks the tenderest parts of man and beast, cuts them off, and retires contented; buffaloes are often castrated by him. Men who know it squat down, and kill him with knife or gun. The zibu, or mbuine, flies at the tendon Achilles; it is most likely the ratel,"—honey badger.

This record is so incoherent in parts as to indicate a feverish condition of mind, proving that he had not recovered from his illness, and that bitter disappointments had somewhat affected his mind, previously enfeebled by severe suffering. In other parts of his journal also this temporary lapse of thought connection is observed, betraying a gradually failing system that had been drained by exposure and hardships of nearly twenty-seven years exploration through a country where human sympathy and refined association was never present. Such influence can never fail to produce dangerous effects upon a sensitive mind, cultivated as his had been.

CHAPTER VIII.

AMONG THE MANYUEMA CANNIBALS.

On February 4 Livingstone was much encouraged by a report that ten of his men from the coast were come near to Bambarre, and would arrive that day. In his great exultation he writes : "I am extremely thankful to hear it, for it assures me that my
DEPARTURE FROM packet of letters was not destroyed. They know at home by this time
BAMBARRE. what has detained me, and the end to which I strain !"

On the next day, however, his hopes were dissipated, when his men arrived with the information that only one of his letters reached Zanzibar. After referring to his disappointment he writes : "James was killed by an arrow to-day ; the assassins hid in the forest till my men, going to buy food, came up. They found indisputable proof that his body had been eaten by the Manyuema who lay in ambush."

On the sixteenth of February Livingstone started from Bambarre again on a third attempt to explore the Lualaba River. The people whose villages he passed through generally received him kindly, as his reputation for justice, as distinguished from the depredations of the Arabs, had preceded him.
DESCRIPTION OF THE Before getting out of the Manyuema country he adds another
CANNIBALS. paragraph to his journal, concerning the comely features of the people, in the following language :

"The Manyuema are far more beautiful than either the bond or free of Zanzibar ; I overheard the remark often, 'If we had Manyuema wives, what beautiful children we should beget.' The men are usually handsome, and many of the women are very pretty ; hands, feet, limbs, and forms perfect in shape, and the color light-brown, but the orifices of the nose are widened by snuff-takers, who ram it up as far as they can with the finger and thumb ; the teeth are not filed, except a small space between the two upper front teeth. The men here deny that cannibalism is common : they eat only those killed in war, and, it seems, in revenge ; for, said Mokandira, 'the meat is not nice ; it makes one dream of the dead man.' Some west of Lualaba eat even those bought for the purpose of a feast ; but I am not quite positive on this point ; all agree in saying that human flesh is saltish, and needs but little condiment. And yet they are a fine-looking race. I would back a company of Manyuema men to be far superior in shape of head, and generally in physical form too, against the whole Anthropological Society. Many of the women are very light-colored, and very pretty ; they dress in a kilt of many folds of gaudy lambas."

On the thirtieth of March, after a pleasant journey of about fifty miles, Livingstone reached the Lualaba River at a village called Nyangwe. He found the stream to be much larger than he expected, at its narrowest parts being at least half-a-mile
ON THE BANKS OF broad, and so deep that at no season of the year is it fordable ; the
THE LUALABA. banks are steep and deep, though the current is hardly more than two miles an hour, running toward the north. Several soundings showed a depth from nine feet near shore to twenty feet in the centre of the stream. Villages lined the river bank, and so numerous are the people that one morning Livingstone counted seven hundred market women file past him. Yet, notwithstanding the great number of people, he was unable to get any canoes ; so to gain the confidence of the natives, he built a hut and concluded to remain awhile among them, or until they concluded to assist him.

The market scenes in the villages along the river are interesting and not altogether unlike those which may be witnessed in Billingsgate fish-market, except in the articles offered for sale. Here were queer vessels, snails, fruits, cowrie-shells, and nameless things without number. One man had ten human under-jaw bones hung by a string over his shoulder; on inquiry he professed to having killed and eaten the owners, and showed with his knife how he cut up his victims. When Livingstone expressed disgust he and others laughed. Two nice girls were trying to sell their venture, which was roasted white ants, called "gumbe."

A very popular market had been established at the village of Nyangwe, where Livingstone and a party of Arabs were stopping, to which hundreds of people came daily with their simple wares, from both sides of the river. No fear of the dreadful sequel seemed to haunt the natives, but the Arabs had **A DREADFUL MASSACRE** determined to turn this little earthly paradise into a hell of murder. It was almost an invariable custom with them to add murder to their other horrid crimes, and as the traffic in slaves among the natives of the Lualaba had not been profitable, they seemed more bloodthirsty than usual.



THE MASSACRE AT NYANGWE.

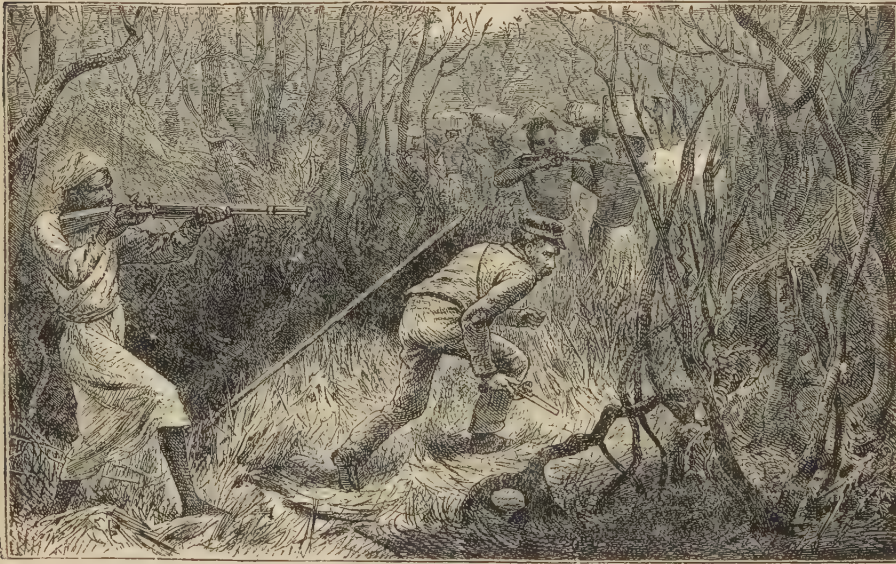
One morning Livingstone was startled by the sound of guns in the market, and running out of his hut he saw that the massacre had commenced. Arabs were firing indiscriminately upon the people, hundreds of whom had come to the market that day. The murdering was continued nearly all day; seventeen villages were burnt, and many hundreds of the natives killed. Livingstone saved scores who rushed to him for protection, the Arabs not daring to murder them in his presence. He exerted himself to the utmost to stop the bloodshed, and also ministered to the wounded, and showed a friendship which the natives had never known before. An old man, called Kabono, came to him and asked for his wife, who had taken shelter, like many others, under Livingstone's protection. Kabono expected him to keep her as a slave, according to the custom of the Arabs, and even of the natives, unless he could buy her back; he was, therefore, not prepared for the good luck which awaited him. Turning to the old woman, Livingstone asked her if Kabono was her

husband; she went to the old man, and putting her arms lovingly around him, replied: "Yes." Livingstone gave them, in addition to his blessings, five strings of beads with which to buy food, as all their stores had been destroyed with their home. She bowed down and put her forehead to the ground as an expression of her thanks; Kabono did the same; tears stood in their eyes as they went away.

All the canoes available were taken by the Arabs, so that, however friendly the natives might be with Livingstone, he could not get a single boat; but this was not his worst misfortune, for the hostilities now inaugurated so frightened the men **FORCED TO RETURN** (who were Banian slaves) sent to him from Zanzibar, that they ran off and made their way as fast as possible to the coast. Here was a terrible dilemma to face; nothing but a return to Ujiji, nearly six hundred miles distant, was possible, and accordingly, on July 20, he again turned his back on the Lualaba without having made a last exploration of its source or outlet.

A few Arabs and friendly Manyuemas accompanied him back to Bambarre, but the country was so excited that traveling was extremely dangerous. They were frequently

waylaid and attacked by scouting parties of Manyuemas, but happily without serious results. Twice in one day Livingstone miraculously escaped death, spears thrown by lurking foes in the thick jungle barely grazing him. On such occasions he and his men quickly prepared themselves to resist attack, but the natives



ATTACKED BY MANYUEMA CANNIBALS.

would not rush upon their firearms. This was one of the very few occasions during Livingstone's entire African experience that he was compelled to resort to his weapons for defence, and now only because of the brutality of the Arabs, who had murdered and infuriated the natives.

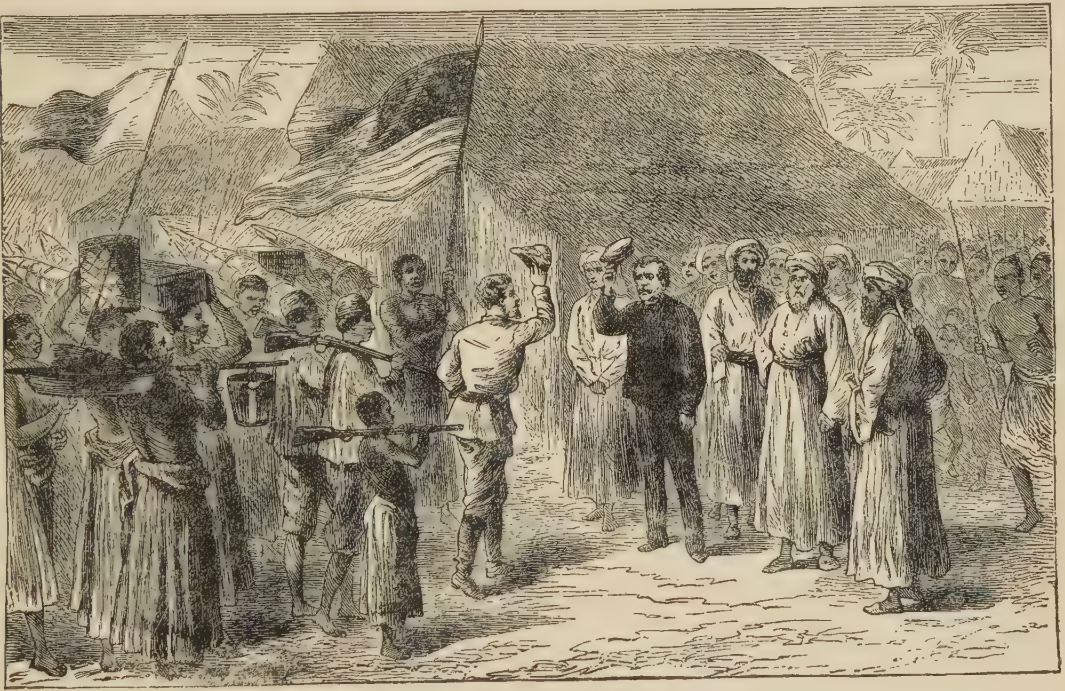
While traveling a short distance from Mamohela they came upon some Manyuemas who had shortly before killed a man, and, after cutting him up, were boiling his body with bananas preparatory to a feast. Livingstone says it is not the want of food that has led the Manyuema to cannibalism, for the country is full of everything, apparently, both vegetable and animal, that human appetite could crave. Says he:

CANNIBALS CAUGHT
IN THE ACT. "Goats, sheep, fowls, dogs, pigs, abound in the villages, while the forest affords elephants, zebras, buffaloes, antelopes, and in the streams there are many varieties of fish.

The nitrogenous ingredients are abundant, and they have dainties in palm-toddy and tobacco or *bange*. The soil is so fruitful that mere scraping off the weeds is as good as plowing; so that the reason for cannibalism does not lie in starvation or in want of animal matter, as was said to be the case with the New Zealanders. The only feasible reason I can discover is a depraved appetite, giving an extraordinary craving for meat which we call 'high.' They are said to bury a dead body for a couple of days in the soil in a forest, and in that time, owing to the climate, it becomes putrid enough for the strongest stomachs."

On the twenty-third of October Livingstone reached Ujiji, reduced almost to a skeleton and distressed by a score of anxieties, only to find that the third lot of goods sent him from Zanzibar had been stolen, including three thousand yards of calico and several hundred pounds of beads. This last blow crushed the spirits of the brave old man, for he was now reduced almost to beggary. But there was still sunshine behind the clouds, relief and joy were near at hand. He must tell in his own language the happiness which sprung up when hope was dying, the delightful

**MEETING WITH
STANLEY.**



LIVINGSTONE'S MEETING WITH STANLEY.

turn of fortune's wheel which infused the old-time courage and high resolve into his heart again. He writes:

"But when my spirits were at their lowest ebb the good Samaritan was close at hand, for one morning Susi (his faithful servant) came running at the top of his speed, and gasped out, 'An Englishman! I see him!' and off he darted to meet him. The American flag at the head of a caravan told of the nationality of the stranger. Bales of goods, bathtubs of tin, huge kettles, cooking-pots, tents, etc., made me think, 'This must be a luxurious traveler, and not one at his wit's end like me.'

"It was Henry Moreland Stanley, the traveling correspondent of the *New York Herald*, sent by James Gordon Bennett, Jr., at an expense of more than \$20,000, to obtain accurate

information about Dr. Livingstone if living, and if dead to bring home my bones. The news he had to tell to one who had been two full years without any tidings from Europe, made my whole frame thrill. The terrible fate that had befallen France—the telegraphic cables successfully laid in the Atlantic—the election of General Grant—the death of good Lord Clarendon, my constant friend—the proof that Her Majesty's Government had not forgotten me in voting \$5000 for supplies, and many other points of interest, revived emotions that had lain dormant in Manyuema. Appetite returned; and instead of the spare, tasteless two meals a day, I ate four times daily, and in a week began to feel strong. I am not of a demonstrative turn—as cold, indeed, as we islanders are usually reputed to be—but this disinterested kindness of Mr. Bennett, so nobly carried into effect by Mr. Stanley, was simply overwhelming. I really do feel extremely grateful, and at the same time I am a little ashamed at not being more worthy of the generosity. Mr. Stanley has done his part with untiring energy; good judgment, in the teeth of very serious obstacles. His helpmates turned out depraved blackguards, who, by their excesses at Zanzibar and elsewhere, had ruined their constitutions and prepared their systems to be fit provender for the grave. They had used up their strength by wickedness, and were of next to no service, but rather down-drafts and unbearable drags to progress."

Dr. Livingstone on a previous occasion wrote from the interior of Africa to the effect that Lake Tanganyika poured its waters into the Albert N'yanza Lake of Baker. At the time, perhaps, he hardly realized the interest that such an announcement was likely to occasion. He was now shown the importance of ascertaining by actual observation whether the junction really existed, and for this purpose he started with Mr. Stanley to explore the region of the supposed connecting link in the north, so as to verify the statements of the Arabs.

They procured canoes at Ujiji and coasted along the shores of the lake until they reached the mouth of the Rusizi River, up which they paddled for some distance, and found that it flowed into the lake instead of out of it, as Livingstone had previously supposed, thus proving that Lake Tanganyika had no connection with Lake Albert, and therefore settling the question of the Nile's sources in favor of Speke and Sir Samuel Baker. Livingstone still believed, however, that the Nile had its sources in certain fountains or lakes south and west of Lake Tanganyika, and that the large river flowing to the northwest in the Manyuema country was the Nile. It will be seen, however, in subsequent pages of this volume, that Stanley proved this river to be the Congo, which, in honor of his distinguished friend, he renamed the Livingstone.

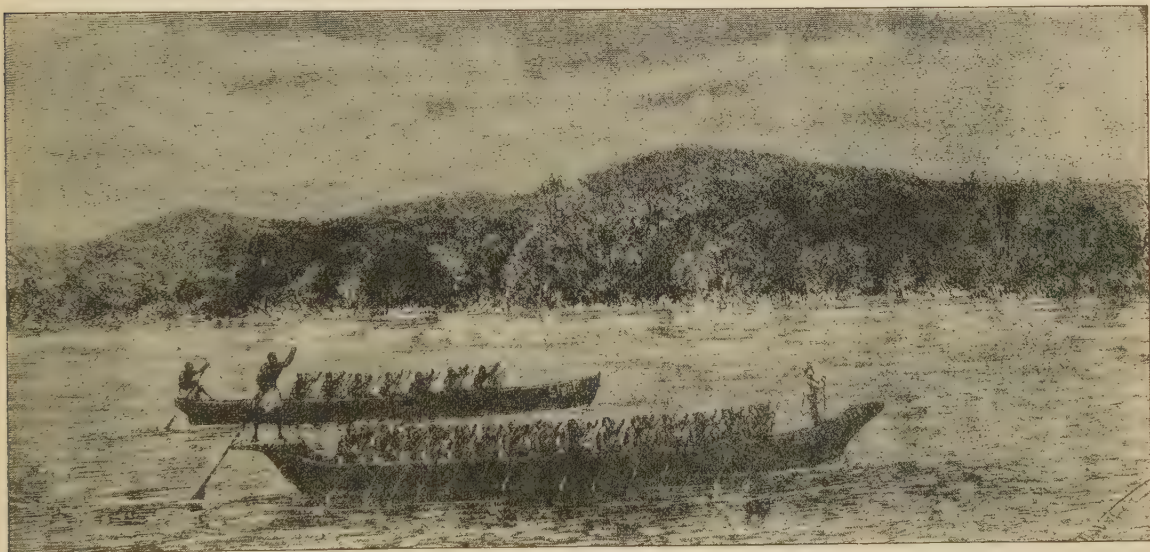
Stanley endeavored to persuade Livingstone to go with him to England, and recuperate his health before completing his explorations of the Nile sources, but the doctor thought it best that he should finish his work, and then return to remain permanently. So they returned to Ujiji, and from thence proceeded in canoes to the southern part of the lake, from whence they traveled overland northeastwardly to Unyanyembe. Here Stanley took a sad farewell of his friend and proceeded by rapid marches to Zanzibar, where he organized a new force of men and sent them back to Livingstone with supplies, who remained at Unyanyembe until their arrival.

During the interval between Stanley's departure and the arrival of men and supplies from Zanzibar, Dr. Livingstone employed his time in visiting various chiefs and tribes who inhabit the country near Unyanyembe, and in making preparations for his final explorations. He notes in his journal during this period some singular ideas entertained by the natives in regard to the hereafter. One portion of primitive belief—the continued existence of

departed spirits—seems to have no connection whatever with dreams, or, as we should say, with “ghost-seeing;” for great agony is felt in prospect of bodily mutilation or burning of the body after death, as that is believed to render return to one’s native land impossible. They feel as if it would shut them off from all intercourse with relatives after death. They would lose the power of doing good to those once loved, and evil to those who deserved their revenge.

One morning a serpent of dark olive color was found dead at Livingstone’s door, killed by his pet cat. “Puss approaches very cautiously, and strikes her claws into the head with a blow delivered as quick as lightning; then holds the head down with both paws, heedless of the wriggling mass of coils behind it; she then bites the neck and leaves it, looking with interest to the disfigured head, as if she knew that therein had lain the hidden power of mischief.

“In many parts one is struck by the fact of the children having so few games. Life is a serious business, and amusement is derived from imitating the vocations of the parents—



LIVINGSTONE AND STANLEY ON LAKE TANGANYIKA.

hut-building, making little gardens, bows and arrows, shields and spears. Elsewhere boys are very ingenious little fellows, and have several games; they also shoot birds with bows, and teach captured linnets to sing. They are expert in making guns and traps for small birds, and in making and using bird-line. They make play-guns of reed, which go off with a trigger and spring, with a cloud of ashes for smoke. Sometimes they make double-barreled guns of clay, and have cotton-fluff as smoke. The boys shoot locusts with small toy-guns very cleverly.”

On the twenty-third of August the doctor started on his last exploration, pursuing a course south of west until he arrived on the shores of Lake Tanganyika, where, turning south, he followed the lake to its southern extremity and around to its southwestern line, from whence he struck off almost due south **HIS LAST EXPLORATION.** in the direction of Lake Bangweolo. Soon after turning southward the country became low and marshy, and they were compelled to wade through water almost constantly. The party suffered greatly from fever, and the doctor’s old complaint,

dysentery, returned in an aggravated form, reducing his strength so that the men had to carry him most of the time. The entry in his journal of January 24 graphically describes the difficulties they had to encounter on this terrible march: "Went on east and northeast to avoid the deep part of a large river, which requires two canoes, but the men sent by the chief would certainly hide them. Went one hour and three-quarter's journey to a large stream, through drizzling rain, at least three hundred yards of deep water, among sedges and sponges of one hundred yards. One part was neck-deep for fifty yards, and the water cold. We plunged in elephants' footprints one hour and a half, then came in one hour to a small rivulet ten feet broad, but waist-deep; bridge covered and broken down. Carrying me across one of the broad, deep, sedgy rivers is really a very difficult task. One we crossed was at least one thousand feet broad, or more than three hundred yards. The first part, the main stream, came up to Susi's mouth and wetted my seat and legs. One held up my pistol behind, then one after another took a turn; and when he sank into an elephant's deep foot-print, he required two to lift him, so as to gain a footing on the level, which was over waist-deep. Others went on, and bent down the grass, to insure some footing on the side of the elephant's path. Every ten or twelve paces brought us to a clear stream, flowing fast in its own channel, while over all a strong current came bodily through all the rushes and aquatic plants. Susi had the first spell, then Farijala, then a tall, stout, Arab-looking man, then Amoda, then Chanda, then Wade Sale; and each time I was lifted off bodily, and put on another pair of stout, willing shoulders, and fifty yards put them out of breath; no wonder! It was sore on the women-folk of our party. It took us full an hour and a half for all to cross over, and several came over in turn to help me and their friends. The water was cold, and so was the wind, but no leeches plagued us. We had to hasten on the building of sheds after crossing the second rivulet, as rain threatened us. After 4 p. m. it came on a pouring, cold rain, when we were all under cover. We are anxious about food. The lake is near, but we are not sure of provisions, as there have been changes of population. Our progress is distressingly slow. Wet, wet, wet; sloppy weather truly, and no observations, except that the land near the lake being very level, the rivers spread out into broad friths and sponges."

The hemorrhagic discharge from which Livingstone suffered so much was intensified by the dreadful exposure he was forced to encounter. That he evidently saw great danger in the constant recurrence of the disorder, is shown in frequent solemn reflections recorded in a pocket-book which he carried; one of these, written February 14, reads as follows:

"If the good Lord gives me favor, and permits me to finish my work, I shall thank and bless Him, though it has cost me untold toil, pain, and travel. This trip has made my hair all gray."

His last birthday, March 19, found him on the Chambeze River, en route for Bangweolo Lake. The river was at its flood from long continued heavy rains, and canoes were very difficult to obtain, so that sore vexations plagued him into forgetfulness of the day. All the world was dreary to him in that dense solitude of savage nature over which the very heavens wept in pity.

He waited beside the Chambeze until March 16 before he could obtain canoes to ferry his party across. When he did undertake the passage one of the canoes was sunk, containing a large number of cartridges, several guns, and a saddle, all of which were lost. After crossing, other larger canoes were secured, in which the party traveled in the flooded district, as the paths were fully six feet under water. This mode of travel, however, was excessively fatiguing, for at short intervals the canoes would have to be dragged over dense

sedges or spots of land, so that everyone was constantly wet and worried with the exhausting labor. All this told seriously on Livingstone.

With unexampled fortitude he continued the journey, notwithstanding a rapidly growing weakness which could have but one result. After leaving the canoes the roads were full of water, and every step in advance seemed like entering more deeply into the slough of hopelessness. He continued to grow weaker, **THE END COMES.** and at his request his servants made a litter in which to carry him, consisting of two side-pieces of seven feet in length, crossed with rails three feet long and about four inches apart, the whole lashed strongly together. This framework was covered with grass and a blanket laid on it. Slung from a pole, and borne between two strong men, it made a tolerable palanquin, and on this the exhausted traveler was conveyed to the next village through a flooded grass plain. To render the kitanda more comfortable, another blanket was suspended across the pole, so as to hang down on either side, and allow the air to pass under while the sun's rays were fended off from the sick man.



LIVINGSTONE BEING HELPED INTO THE HUT IN WHICH HE DIED.

April 27 he seems to have been almost dying, though able to make a short entry in his journal, describing his condition and the location of his party. This was the last entry he ever made. When they reached a village, Livingstone was carried into a hut, but the next morning he was too weak to bear such assistance as would be required to take him out to the litter, so one side of the hut was knocked out and the kitanda was brought to him, and upon it he was laid with all possible care.

As they carried him he had frequently to request them to stop, as he could not long endure the motion. Weaker and weaker thus he grew, and it was much feared he would not live to reach the next village, called Chitambo, after its chief. The servants tried every way to cheer him, and their great carefulness, no doubt, prolonged his life the few hours needed to reach the village. Here a comfortable bed was made for him, beside which the necessary medicines were placed. During the night of April 30 he passed peacefully away,

while on his knees engaged in prayer. The particulars of this most melancholy incident are related by his faithful servants, as follows : About 11 p. m. Livingstone called his servant Susi, whose hut was close by, and asked, "Is this the Luapula?" Susi told him they were in Chitambo's village, near the Molilamo, when he was silent for a while. Again, speaking to Susi, in Suaheli this time, he said, "Sikungapi kuenda Luapula?" (How many days is it to the Luapula?)

"Na zani zikutatu, Bwana," (I think it is three days, master,) replied Susi.

A few seconds after, as if in great pain, he half sighed, half said, "Oh, dear, dear!" and then dozed off again.

About an hour later Susi heard Majwara again outside the door, "Bwana wants you, Susi." On reaching the bed the doctor told him he wished him to boil some water, and for this purpose he went to the fire outside, and soon returned with the copper kettle full. Calling him close he asked him to bring his medicine-chest, and to hold the candle near him, for the man noticed he could hardly see. With great difficulty Dr. Livingstone selected the calomel, which he told him to place by his side; then, directing him to pour a little water into a cup, and to put another empty one by it, he said in a low, feeble voice, "All right, you can go now." These were the last words he was ever heard to speak.

It must have been about 4 a. m. when Susi heard Majwara's step once more. "Come to Bwana, I am afraid; I don't know if he is alive." The lad's evident alarm made Susi run to arouse Chuma, Chowpere, Matthew, and Muanuasere, and the six men went immediately to the hut.

Passing inside, they looked toward the bed. Dr. Livingstone was not lying on it, but appeared to be engaged in prayer, and they instinctively drew backward for the instant. Pointing to him, Majwara said, "When I lay down he was just as he is now, and it is because I find that he does not move that I fear he is dead." They asked the lad how long he had slept. Majwara said he could not tell, but he was sure that it was some considerable time: the men drew nearer.

A candle, stuck by its own wax to the top of the box, shed a light sufficient for them to see his form. Dr. Livingstone was kneeling by the side of his bed, his body stretched forward, his head buried in his hands upon the pillow. For a minute they watched him; he did not stir, there was no sign of breathing; then one of them, Matthew, advanced softly to him and placed his hands to his cheeks. It was sufficient; life had been extinct some time, and the body was almost cold; Livingstone was dead.

His sad-hearted servants raised him tenderly up and laid him full length on the bed; then, carefully covering him, they went out into the damp night air to consult together. It was not long before the cocks crew, and it is from this circumstance—coupled with the fact that Susi spoke to him some time shortly before midnight—that they were able to state with tolerable certainty that he expired early on the first of May.

Livingstone had not merely turned himself, he had risen to pray; he still rested on his knees, his hands were clasped under his head; when they approached him he seemed to live. He had not fallen to right or left when he rendered up his spirit to God. Death required no change of limb or position; there was merely the gentle settling forward of the frame unstrung by pain, for the traveler's perfect rest had come.

Calling the whole party together, Susi and Chuma placed the state of affairs before them, and asked what should be done. They received a reply from those whom Mr. Stanley had engaged for Dr. Livingstone, which was hearty and unanimous. "You," said they, "are old men in traveling and in hardships; you must act as our chiefs, and we

will promise to obey whatever you order us to do." From this moment we may look on Susi and Chuma as the captains of the caravan. To their knowledge of the country, of the tribes through which they were to pass, but, above all, to the sense of discipline and cohesion which was maintained throughout, their safe return to Zanzibar at the head of their men, must, under God's good guidance, be mainly attributed.

It was thought very necessary to keep Chief Chitambo in ignorance of Livingstone's death, lest he might levy a great fine for the injury done his district by an Englishman dying within it, as nearly every other African chief would have done. But despite their secrecy, Chitambo soon heard the sad news, when, instead of demanding a fine, he at once prepared to give the remains the respectful funeral honors which are due to the greatest chiefs in Africa. In accordance with his promise, at the proper time, Chitambo, leading his



CHITAMBO'S VILLAGE, WHERE LIVINGSTONE DIED.

people and accompanied by his wives, came to the hut wherein the remains lay. He was clad in a broad red cloth, which covered the shoulders, while the wrapping of native cotton cloth, worn round the waist, fell as low as his ankles. All carried bows, arrows, and spears, but no guns were seen. Two drummers joined in the loud wailing lamentation, which so indelibly impresses itself on the memories of people who have heard it in the East, while the band of servants fired volley after volley in the air, according to the strict rule of Portuguese and Arabs on such occasions.

It was determined to carry the body to Zanzibar, notwithstanding the apparently insurmountable difficulties of embalming. It was placed in a hut, which was surrounded by a very strong stockade, open at the top, but so high that no wild animal could break in. There was only some salt and brandy with which to complete the embalming, but these two

articles one of the servants, who had had some experience at Zanzibar, thought he could use with success. It was not until May 4 that the process of embalming was begun. This long delay did not serve to render the task more difficult, because the body was little more than skin and bones.

No journal was kept by Susi or Chuma, so that dates are no longer obtainable, but it was some time about the middle of May that the party started with the body for Zanzibar.

As they traveled northward many of them began to succumb to fever, the malaria having been absorbed into their systems during the marches with **EN ROUTE FOR ZANZIBAR.** Livingstone. Two of the women died, and after journeying a hundred miles the entire party became so ill that a stop of a month was necessary.

Upon reaching the Luapula River, which they found to be four miles wide at the village of Chisalamalama, one of the donkeys was seized by a lion after breaking down an enclosure in which it was confined. The donkey was killed and dragged into the jungle. At the village of Chawende they had a hard battle with the natives, in which several of the latter were killed and two of the funeral party wounded, but they did not abandon their precious burden.

Untold difficulties continually beset the party. Even when proceeding beyond Unyanyembe the natives, hearing the news of Livingstone's death, and the intention of conveying the body to Zanzibar, determined to prevent its passage through the country. They would no doubt have desecrated the remains had not Susi and Chuma taken the precaution to hide them in some bales of calico, and then made up an effigy which they sent with as much publicity as possible to be buried at Unyanyembe as Dr. Livingstone's.

After a painful journey of six months the party reached the coast town of Bagamoyo, where the English consul at Zanzibar met them and received the body of Livingstone, which was sent to England and buried with appropriate honors in Westminster Abbey.

We have now followed Dr. Livingstone throughout his three journeys in Africa, not with perfect satisfaction, however, because he was prevented from completing his purposes, and the record of his travels is somewhat like an incomplete **LIVINGSTONE'S GREATNESS.** story; but we have followed him far enough to form a correct judgment of his character. This great man traveled over a distance of ten thousand miles in Africa, and was the first to cross through the continental centre; he spent nearly thirty years of his life in that vast wilderness, learned to speak the native tongues of many tribes; and with all his experience he does not mention having met one single king, nor did he have the vanity to say that even a chief deigned to do him homage.

Livingstone had a fixed purpose, and his inflexible motto was, "Prove all things." There was not the very least vanity in his nature; he believed that Bangweolo Lake was the Nile's chief source, and that the Lualaba River was the connecting stream between Lake Albert and Bangweolo. He had every reason to believe his theory to be correct, both from his own observations and the information he received from natives whom he consulted. But he would not retire on a theory; he would not claim a discovery that he had not rightly made and incontestably proved. His modesty is positively wonderful, and can only be equaled by the noble, exalted, pure and beautiful Christianity which filled his great heart. While journeying toward Bangweolo the last time, to prove his theory respecting the Lualaba being its outlet and the Nile source, with a hand almost palsied by a fatal disease, he wrote: "The discovery of the true source of the Nile is nothing to me, except as it may be turned to the advantage of Christian Missions."

CHAPTER IX.

EXPEDITION OF SIR SAMUEL BAKER.



SAMUEL WHITE BAKER, subsequently knighted in recognition of his services as an African explorer, thus begins the account of his first expedition up the Nile :

"In March, 1861, I commenced an expedition to discover the sources of the Nile, with the hope of meeting the East African expedition of Captains Speke and Grant, that had been sent by the English Government from the South, *via* Zanzibar, for that object. I had not the presumption to publish my intention, as the sources of the Nile had hitherto defied all explorers, but I had inwardly determined to accomplish this difficult task or die in the attempt. From my youth I had been inured to hardships and endurance in wild sports in tropical climates, and when I gazed upon the map of Africa, I had a wild hope, mingled with humility, that, even as the insignificant worm bores through the hardest oak, I might by perseverance reach the heart of Africa.

"I could not conceive that anything in the world had power to resist a determined will, so long as health and life remained. The failure of every former attempt to reach the Nile's source, did not astonish me, as the expeditions had consisted of parties which, when difficulties occur, generally end in difference of opinion and retreat ; I therefore determined to proceed alone, trusting in the guidance of a Divine Providence, and the good fortune that sometimes attends tenacity of purpose. I weighed carefully the chances of the undertaking. Before me—untrodden Africa ; against me—the obstacles that had defeated the world since its creation ; on my side—a somewhat tough constitution, perfect independence, a long experience in savage life, and both time and means which I intended to devote to the object.

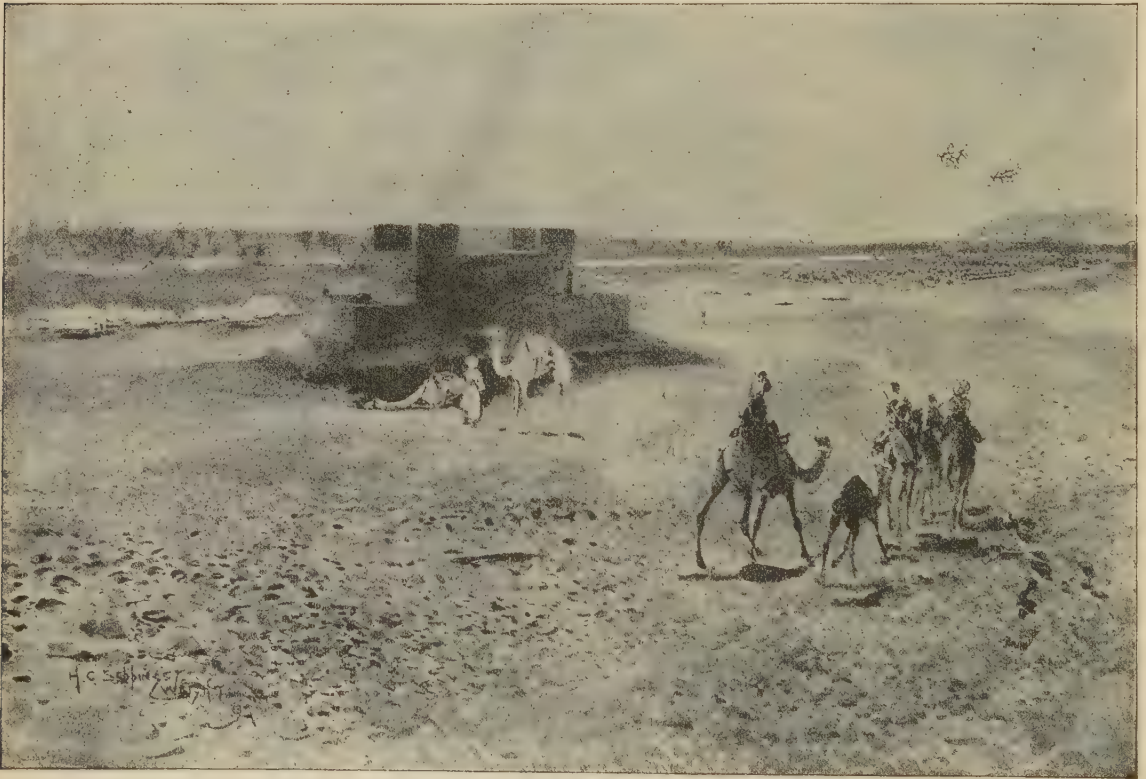
"England had never sent an expedition to the Nile sources previous to that under the command of Speke and Grant. Bruce, ninety years ago, had succeeded in tracing the source of the Blue or Lesser Nile ; thus the honor of that discovery belonged to Great Britain ; Speke was on his road from the South, and I felt confident that my gallant friend would leave his bones upon the path rather than submit to failure. I trusted that England would not be beaten ; and although I hardly dared to hope that I could succeed where others greater than I had failed, I **A HEROIC YOUNG WIFE.** determined to sacrifice all in the attempt. Had I been alone

it would have been no hard lot to die upon the untrodden path before me ; but there was one who, although my greatest comfort, was also my greatest care ; one whose life yet dawned at so early an age that womanhood was still a future. I shuddered at the prospect for her should she be left alone in savage lands at my death ; and gladly would I have left her in the luxuries of home instead of exposing her to the miseries of Africa. It was in vain that I implored her to remain, and that I painted the difficulties and perils still blacker than I supposed they really would be : she was resolved, with woman's constancy and devotion, to share all dangers and to follow me through each rough footstep of the

wild life before me. And Ruth said, 'Entreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee; for whither thou goest I will go, and where thou lodgest I will lodge; thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God; where thou diest will I die, and there will I be buried; the Lord do so to me and more also, if aught but death part thee and me.'

"Thus accompanied by my wife, on the fifteenth of April, 1861, I sailed up the Nile from Cairo. The wind blew fair and strong from the north, and we flew towards the south against the stream, watching those mysterious waters with a firm resolve to track them to their distant fountain."

When Baker arrived at Berber, he found that a knowledge of Arabic was essential to his success, and therefore devoted the first year to exploring affluents of the Nile from the



ON THE MARGIN OF THE LIBYAN DESERT.

Abyssinian range of mountains, which gave him a very excellent means for acquiring the language, as association is a better school than study.

Having made himself familiar with Arabic, as did also his wife, Baker prepared, in December, 1862, to proceed with his original purpose. The principal requirement now was a force of arms-bearers and sailors. This preparation had to be made at

STARTING FOR THE Khartoum, where many men could be had, but they were generally of a
NILE SOURCE. dissolute and perfidious character. However, he enlisted ninety-six men, forty of whom he armed with double-barreled guns and rifles, forty others were sailors, and the remainder servants. He had three boats specially built, which he loaded with twenty-one donkeys, four camels and four horses, hoping these would render

him independent of porters, who are so given to desertion. Each man received five months' wages in advance, and just before starting they were treated to an entertainment, at which they had an abundance to eat and drink.

On the evening of January 9, while the boats were moving at the rate of five miles an hour against the current, a buffalo was sighted in the deep grass, about one hundred yards from the river. As meat was scarce, Baker had the boats run to bank, and as the buffalo's head appeared above the grass he fired, and the animal dropped as if struck dead. Several of the men ran pell-mell after it, and as the beast still appeared to be dead, instead of falling to at once and cutting it up, they danced about it in savage delight, one holding its tail while another leaped on the body brandishing his knife. Suddenly the buffalo jumped up, scattered the

**A FATAL
BUFFALO HUNT.**



SALI ACHMET KILLED BY A BUFFALO.

blacks, and ran off into a morass, where it fell again. The boats tied up for the night, and on the following morning the groans of the wounded animal could plainly be heard. About forty of the men now took their guns and waded knee-deep through mud, water and high grass in search of it. One hour after, Baker heard shouting and shooting, which lasted fully twenty minutes; by aid of the telescope he could see a crowd of his men standing on an ant-hill three hundred yards distant, from which point they were still shooting at some indistinguishable object. The death-howl then followed, and the men were seen to rush down from their secure position, and directly afterward returned to the boats, carrying the dead and mangled body of Sali Achmet, Baker's most valuable man. It transpired that this man had been attacked by the wounded buffalo and killed in sight of his comrades, who were too cowardly to render him any assistance. The poor fellow was horribly mangled, and, as usual with buffaloes, the furious beast had not rested content until it pounded the

breath out of the body, which was found imbedded and trampled so tightly in the mud that only a portion of the head appeared above the marsh.

In relating the story to Baker, the men stated that three men were with Sali when the buffalo charged him, but that the cowards bolted without firing a gun, and took position on an ant-hill, from which they saw their comrade tossed into the air and heard his distressing cries for help without responding. This was a fair sample of the courage of the native Africans, who exalt their bravery when danger is not near, but who run like sheep at the first intimation of peril. The buffalo was found dead from exhaustion, its shoulder having been broken, and was secured; poor Sali was buried according to the usages of his countrymen, after which the boats were got underway again.

On the thirteenth of January the expedition stopped near a village on the right bank of the river. The natives came down to the boats,—they were something superlative in the way of savages; the men as naked as they came into the world; **MEETING WITH A STRANGE PEOPLE.** their bodies rubbed with ashes, and their hair stained red by a plaster of ashes and cow's urine. Baker says these fellows were the most unearthly-looking devils he ever saw—there was no other expression for them.

The unmarried women were also entirely naked, but the married had a fringe made of grass around their loins. The men wore heavy coils of beads about their necks, two heavy bracelets of ivory on the upper portion of the arms, copper rings upon the wrists, and a horrible kind of bracelet of massive iron armed with spikes about an inch in length, like leopard's claws, which they used for a similar purpose. The chief of the Nuehr village, Joctian, with his wife and daughter, paid a visit to the boats, and asked for all they saw in the shape of beads and bracelets, but declined a knife as useless. They went away delighted with their presents. The women were very ugly. The men were tall and powerful, armed with lances. They carried pipes that contained nearly a quarter of a pound of tobacco, in which they smoked simple charcoal when tobacco could not be obtained. The carbonic acid gas of the charcoal produces a slight feeling of intoxication, which is the effect desired. Baker took the chief's portrait, which, of course, caused him much delight. In reply to a question as to the use of the spiked iron bracelet, the man exhibited his wife's arms and back covered with jagged scars. Charming people, these poor blacks! He was quite proud of having clawed his wife like a wild beast.

On the fifteenth of January, while the men ashore were drawing the boats, their heads being invisible on account of the tall grass, a hippopotamus was frightened out of his lair and appeared directly under the bow of the boat. In an instant, **NOVEL CONTEST WITH A HIPPOPOTAMUS.** about twenty men, thinking the animal an infant one, jumped overboard to grapple with it, but as the supposed baby suddenly appeared again about three times as large as they had supposed, they showed no further eagerness to close with it. However, the captain of the boat, more courageous than the rest, pluckily seized the hippopotamus by one of its hind legs, whereupon the others rushed in and a grand tussle followed. Ropes were thrown from the boat, and nooses slipped over the animal's head, but these efforts for its capture were so futile that the hippopotamus swam rapidly toward midstream and would have carried everything with it, had not Baker put an end to the sport by shooting the beast, which proved to be an old bull that had been scarred all over by the tusks of some other hippopotamus that had been bullying him. The men declared that his father had thus misused him; others were of the opinion that it was his mother; and the argument ran high and became hot. These Arabs have an extraordinary taste for arguments upon the most trifling points. Baker says he has

frequently known his men to argue throughout the greater part of the night, and commence the same argument on the following morning. These debates generally end in a fight; and in the present instance the excitement of the hunt only added to the heat of the argument. They at length agreed to refer it to the master, and both parties approached, vociferously advancing their theories; one-half persisting that the old hippo had been bullied by his father, and the others maintained that it had been by the mother. Baker, being referee, suggested that "perhaps it was his *uncle*." "Wah Illahi sahe!" (By Allah, it is true!) Both parties were satisfied with the suggestion; dropping their theory they became practical, and fell to with knives and axes to cut up the cause of the argument. The hippopotamus



BAKER'S EXPEDITION ASCENDING THE NILE.

was as fat as butter, and was a perfect godsend to the people, who divided him with great excitement and good humor.

On the nineteenth of January the boats emerged from the apparently endless region of marsh-grass, and saw on the right bank a large herd of grazing cattle, tended by naked natives. This proved to be the Kytch country, a tribe of the most strange and singular people that can be found in Africa. At the principal station, **A SINGULAR RACE OF PEOPLE.** Zareebo, one of the natives, generously offered Baker a bullock, which he refused, until he saw that the man was affronted. Notwithstanding the vast herds of cattle these people own, their misery is beyond description. They will not kill their cattle, nor do they ever taste meat unless an animal dies of sickness; neither will they work, and thus starvation is common among them, as they exist almost wholly upon rats, lizards, snakes, and fish. They capture fish by means of a harpoon, which is a neatly

made instrument, attached to a reed pole about twenty feet in length, and secured by a long line. They cast the harpoon haphazard, anywhere among the reeds, without regard for signs of fish; thus they may make and do make hundreds of casts before striking a fish. Occasionally, but always by accident, they harpoon species of fish weighing as much as two hundred pounds; and in such an event a long and exciting chase ensues, for the fish carries away the harpoon, and the spearman has to swim with the line and play with the fish until it is tired out.

Baker was introduced to the chief of the Kytch tribe, and he describes him and his people as follows: "The chief of the Kytch people wore a leopard skin across his shoulders, and a skull-cap of white beads, with a crest of ostrich feathers; but the mantle was merely slung over his shoulders, and all other parts of his person were naked. His daughter was the best-looking girl that I have seen among the blacks; she was about sixteen. Her clothing consisted of a little piece of dressed hide, about a foot wide, slung across her shoulders, all other parts being exposed. All the girls of this country wear merely a circlet of little iron jingling ornaments round their waist. They came in numbers, bringing small bundles of wood to exchange for a few handfuls of corn. Most of the men are tall, but wretchedly thin; the children are mere skeletons, and the entire tribe appears thoroughly starved. The language is that of the Dinka. The chief carried a curious tobacco-box, an iron spike about two feet long, with a hollow socket, bound with iguana-skin; this served for either tobacco-box, club, or dagger. The whole day we were beset by crowds of starving people, bringing small gourd-shells to receive the expected corn."

Among the Kytch polygamy is, of course, common. When a man becomes too old for his several wives his eldest son becomes his substitute.

Shortly after leaving the Kytch country, a squall of wind came up, which took away one mast of the best boat and left it a wreck. Baker had now to proceed entirely by cordelling, which process was very slow and not without danger to the men, who had to wade through marshes in which were numerous crocodiles, snakes, and hippopotami; besides, the country was filled with malaria, mosquitoes, and a sultry atmosphere. Thus day by day passed, and but for one incident the monotony of the journey would have been vexatiously wearisome. This diversion was afforded, strange enough, by the fighting black women on board, who worried, quarreled and scratched like Gehenna cats. Among these was one little black terrier named Gaddum Her, very short, but wonderfully strong and plucky; she was the embodiment of long-cultivated vice, and was always spoiling for a fight. On one occasion this little wretch fought with another of her tribe until they rolled all over the boat, and finally down into the hold, where they landed upon a number of water-jars, which they broke. On the next day the fight was renewed, and did not end until both had fallen into the river. This irritability was not only manifested among the women, but the donkeys, horses, and camels also had their daily fights.

On January 28 Baker passed two bivouacs of Aliabs, who were tending large herds of cattle. These people appeared quite friendly; they were hardly so bad as the Kytch tribe, but were very low in the scale of humanity. They not only milk their cows, but bleed them every month, by driving a lance into a vein of the neck, and boil the blood for food. Living in a country where mosquitoes are so numerous, they make tumuli of dung, which are kept constantly on fire, fresh fuel being added as fast as wasted; this burns like smudge, producing a heavy smoke that drives the mosquitoes away. Around these smouldering dung-heaps the cattle crowd in hundreds,

FIGHTING BLACK AMAZONS.

THE ALIAB TRIBE.

living with the natives in the smoke. By degrees the heaps of ashes become about eight feet high; they are then used as sleeping places and watch stations by the natives, who, rubbing themselves all over with the ashes, have a ghastly and devilish appearance positively horrible to look upon.

Two days later, Baker came upon the Shir tribe, which he describes as follows: "The men are, as usual in these countries, armed with well-made ebony clubs, two lances, a bow (always strung), and a bundle of arrows; their hands are completely full of weapons; and they carry a neatly made miniature stool slung upon **THE SHIR TRIBE.** their backs, in addition to an immense pipe. Thus a man carries all that he most values about his person. The females in this tribe are not absolutely naked; like those of the Kytch, they wear small lappets of tanned leather as broad as the hand; at the back of the belt, which supports this apron, is a tail which reaches to the lower portions of the thighs; this tail is formed of finely-cut strips of leather, and the costume has doubtless been the foundation for the report I had received from the Arabs, that a tribe in Central Africa had tails like horses. The women carry their children very conveniently in a skin slung from their shoulders across the back, and secured by a thong round the waist; in this the young savage sits delightfully. The huts throughout all tribes are circular, with entrances so low that the natives creep both in and out upon their hands and knees. The men wear tufts of cock's feathers on the crown of the head, and their favorite attitude, when standing, is on one leg while leaning on a spear, the foot of the raised leg resting on the inside of the other knee. Their arrows are about three feet long, without feathers, and pointed with hard wood instead of iron, that metal being scarce among the Shir tribe. The most valuable article of barter for this tribe is the iron hoe generally used among the White Nile negroes. In form it is precisely similar to the 'ace of spades.' The finery most prized by the women are polished iron anklets, which they wear in such numbers that they reach nearly half-way up the calf of the leg; the tinkling of these rings is considered to be very enticing, but the sound reminds one of the clanking of convicts' fetters."

CHAPTER X.

CRIME AND CRUELTY AT GONDOKORA.

On the first of February Baker arrived at Gondokoro, which is a Turkish slave and trading station, composed of miserable little grass huts and the ruins of an old mission. Here a long stay was made, waiting the arrival of a Turkish trader from the interior, whom Baker hoped to accompany on the return to Central Africa.

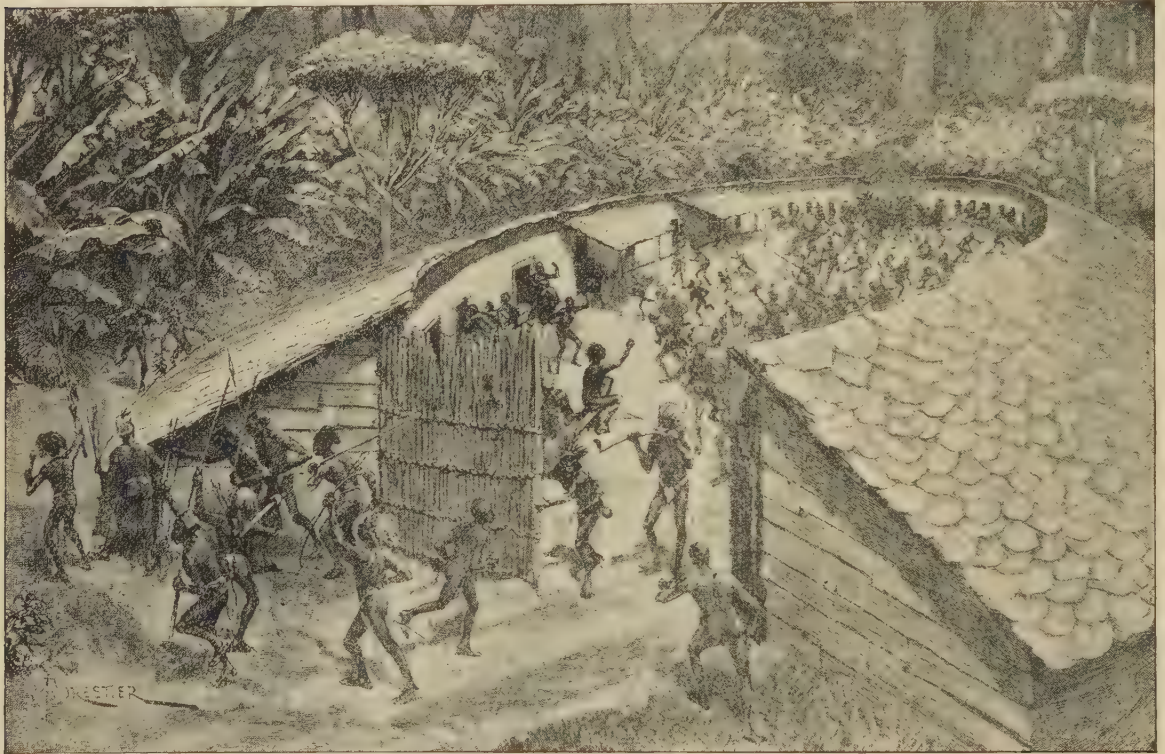
The natives of Gondokoro belong to the Bari tribe, a singular people who have become savage in their nature by contact with the barbarous Turks. Their dwellings are very cleanly, but far from picturesque. The domicile of each family is surrounded by a hedge of impenetrable thickness, and the interior of the enclosure usually consists of a yard neatly plastered with a cement of ashes, cow-dung, and sand. The huts have projecting roofs, in order to afford shade, and the entrance is only about two feet high.

When a member of the family dies he is buried in the yard; a few ox-horns and skulls are suspended on a pole above the spot, while the top of the pole is ornamented with a bunch of cock's feathers. Every man carries his weapons, pipe, and stool, the whole

(except the stool) being held between his legs when standing. The men are well grown, the women are not prepossessing, but the negro type of thick lips and flat nose is wanting ;

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE BARI TRIBE. the features are good, and the woolly hair alone denotes the trace of negro blood. They are tattooed upon the stomach, sides, and back so closely that it has the appearance of a broad belt of fish-scales, especially when they are rubbed with red ochre, which is the prevailing

fashion. This pigment is made of a peculiar clay, rich in oxide of iron, which, when burnt, is reduced to powder, and then formed into lumps like pieces of soap ; both sexes anoint themselves with this ochre, formed into a paste by the admixture of grease, giving themselves the appearance of new red bricks. The only hair upon their persons is a small tuft



BLOWING THE WAR HORN IN A BARI VILLAGE.

upon the crown of the head, in which they stick one or more feathers. The women are generally free from hair, their heads being shaved. They wear a neat little lappet, about six inches long, of beads, or of small iron rings, worked like a coat of mail, in lieu of a fig-leaf, and the usual tail of fine shreds of leather or twine, spun from indigenous cotton, pendant behind. Both the lappet and tail are fastened on a belt, which is worn round the loins, like those in the Shir tribe ; thus the toilette is completed at once. It would be highly useful, could they only wag their tails to whisk off the flies, which are torments in this country.

The cattle are very small ; the goats and sheep are quite Lilliputian, but they generally give three at a birth, and thus multiply quickly. The people of the country were formerly friendly, but the Khartoumers pillage and murder them at discretion in all directions ; thus, in revenge, they will shoot a poisoned arrow at a stranger unless he is powerfully escorted.

The effect of the poison used for the arrow-heads is very extraordinary. A man came to Baker for medical aid ; five months before he had been wounded by a poisoned arrow in the leg, below the calf, and the entire foot had been eaten away by the action of the poison. The bone rotted through just above the ankle, and the foot dropped off. The most violent poison is the produce of the root of a tree, whose milky juice yields a resin that is smeared upon the arrow. It is brought from a great distance, from some country far west of Gondokoro. The juice of a species of euphorbia, common in these countries, is also used for poisoning arrows. Boiled to the consistency of tar it is then smeared upon the point. The action of the poison is to corrode the flesh, which loses its fibre, and drops away like jelly, after severe inflammation and swelling. The arrows are barbed with diabolical ingenuity ; some are arranged with poisoned heads that fit into sockets ; these detach from arrows on any attempt to withdraw them ; thus the barbed blade, thickly smeared with poison, remains in the wound, and before it can be cut out the virus is absorbed by the system. Fortunately the natives are bad archers. Their bows are invariably made of the male bamboo, and are kept perpetually strung ; they are exceedingly stiff, but not very elastic, and the arrows are devoid of feathers, being simple reeds or other light wood, about three feet long, and slightly knobbed at the base as a hold for the finger and thumb ; the string is never drawn with the two fore-fingers, as in most countries, but is simply pulled by holding the arrow between the middle joint of the fore-finger and the thumb. A stiff bow drawn in this manner has very little power ; accordingly the extreme range seldom exceeds a hundred and ten yards.

**POISONED ARROWS
OF THE BARI.**

The Bari tribe are very hostile, and are considered to be about the worst along the White Nile. They have been so often defeated by traders' parties in the immediate neighborhood of Gondokoro, that they are on their best behavior while within half a mile of the station ; but it is not at all uncommon to be asked for beads as a tax for the right of sitting under the shade of a tree, or for passing through the country. The traders' people, in order to terrify them into submission, were in the habit of binding them, hands and feet, and carrying them to the edge of a cliff about thirty feet high, a little beyond the ruins of the mission house ; beneath this cliff the river boils in an eddy, and into this watery grave the victims were remorselessly hurled as food for crocodiles. It appeared that this punishment was dreaded by the natives more than the bullet or rope, and it was accordingly adopted by the Turkish trading parties.

Baker had remained in Gondokoro only a short time before he observed a general discontent among his men, which increased in seriousness until he gave a personal castigation to the leader with fist and boot. Two days after the mutinous outbreak, Baker was startled by the rapid firing of guns and shouts apparently from the whole village. Rushing out of his hut he was overjoyed to see two white men approaching, who, upon close inspection, proved to be his old friend Captain Speke, accompanied by Captain Grant, both ragged, lean and much careworn, who were returning to England, after their successful journey through Central Africa and discovery of the lake sources of the Nile.

**MEETING WITH
SPEKE AND GRANT.**

On the twenty-sixth of February Speke and Grant sailed from Gondokoro for home, while Baker at once proceeded to strike for the interior, regardless of the danger which threatened him from his treacherous force, relying almost wholly upon the protection and assistance of the Turk Mohamed, who promised to accompany him to where his ivory was stored, which, however, would require but a few days' time.

After the departure of Speke and Grant, Baker moved his tent to some high ground above the river; the effluvium from the filth of several thousands of people was disgusting, and fever was prevalent in all quarters. Baker and his wife were both sick, also several of the men, one of whom died. The animals were all healthy, but the donkeys and camels were attacked by a bird, about the size of a thrush, which caused them great uneasiness. This bird is a greenish brown color, with a powerful red beak and excessively strong claws. It is a perfect pest to animals, and positively eats holes in them. The original object of the bird in settling upon the animal is to search for vermin, but it is not contented with the mere insects, and industriously pecks holes in all parts of the beast, more especially on the back. A wound once established adds to the attraction, and the unfortunate animal is so pestered that it has no time to eat. Baker was obliged to hire little boys to watch the donkeys, and to drive off these plagues; but so determined and bold were the birds, that they would run under the body of the donkey, clinging to the belly with their feet, and thus retreating to the opposite side of the animal when chased by the watchboys. In a few days the animals were full of wounds, excepting the horses, whose long tails were effectual whisks. With the exception of this annoyance everything appeared in fair condition for the journey. Mohamed had promised to accompany the expedition through, in consideration of such presents as Baker had agreed to give him, but he had not reckoned on the duplicity of the Arab scoundrel thus engaged. While professing friendship, he was doing all in his power to hinder and defeat Baker's expedition, by circulating false and alarming reports among his ignorant and superstitious men.

Influenced by these stories, they began to evince a sullen demeanor, which was not long developing into an insurrection, having for its purpose the murder of Baker and a confiscation of his property. It chanced, however, that among his force there were two really faithful subjects, one named Richarn, a fellow of dissolute habits, but honorable and trustworthy; the other a little boy named Saat, only twelve years of age, whom Mrs. Baker had taken compassion on at Khartoum as a friendless outcast, and adopted. This boy had received some Christian instruction and was anxious to be taught more, which made him a source of tender care to Mrs. Baker, and in return for this he was obedient, loving, ready to lay down his innocent life for his master and mistress. Through the alertness and faithfulness of these two, Baker was made acquainted with the full details of the plot and was thus able to prepare himself against its fulfillment.

Realizing that it would never do to attempt to penetrate Africa with such men, Baker determined to get rid of them. He first disarmed them, with the assistance of his courageous wife and the faithful Richarn and Saat, and then gave them their discharges, writing the word "mutineer" above his signature on each of them. None of the men being able to read, they unconsciously carried the evidence of their own guilt, which he resolved to punish should he ever find them on his return to Khartoum.

Most of the men that Baker disarmed at once joined trading parties, while the others made off at the first intimation of trouble and were seen no more. It was the expressed intention of the mutineers to shoot Baker, which no doubt would have been done had they not found him so well prepared to return their shots.

Having been deserted by Mohamed and compelled to discharge the force he had engaged at Khartoum, Baker sent for a Circassian chief, named Koorshid, from whom he asked the service of ten elephant hunters and two interpreters; but his request was

denied, for the reason that no men could be hired to serve under him. This denial took away all hope from Baker, and nothing remained for him to do but establish a depot and remain at Gondokoro for another season. No expedition had ever been more carefully planned; everything being prepared under his own directions and without regard for expense, but the promise of success and reward was defeated by the very ones whom he had employed to assist him. These reflections weighed heavily upon the minds of Baker and his courageous wife. During the night they were startled by a succession of loud screams, and upon listening attentively, heard the heavy breathing of something in their hut; searching through the dark, they discovered an object cowering close to the head of the bed. Baker noiselessly drew a revolver from under his pillow, and pointing it at the crouching object, asked, "Who is that?" Just as he was upon the point of firing, a voice replied "Fadeela!" It was one of the black women of the party, who had crept into the tent for an asylum. Upon striking a light Baker found that the woman was streaming with blood, being cut in the most frightful manner with the coorbach (whip of hippopotamus hide). Hearing the screams continued at some distance from the tent, he found a party in the act of flogging two women; two men were holding each woman upon the ground by sitting upon her legs and neck, while two men with powerful whips operated upon each woman alternately. Their backs were cut to pieces, and they were literally covered with blood. The brutes had taken upon themselves the task of thus punishing the women for a breach of discipline in being absent without leave. Fadeela had escaped before her punishment had been completed, and came near being shot by running to the tent without giving warning. Seizing the coorbach from the hands of one of the executioners, Baker administered them a dose of their own prescription, to their intense astonishment, as they did not appear conscious of any outrage;—"they were only slave women." In all such expeditions it is necessary to have women belonging to the party to grind the corn and prepare the food for the men; Baker had accordingly hired several from slave-owners at Khartoum, and these had been maltreated as described.

**GLOOMY
REFLECTIONS.**



BAKER LEAVING GONDOKORO.

Baker determined at all hazards to leave Gondokoro, having engaged seventeen men whom he knew to be fully as treacherous as those he had dismissed, but he hoped to overcome their evil designs by kind treatment and by impressing them with the importance of yielding obedience, as the only way of successfully penetrating a country filled with hostile savages.

**DETERMINED TO
LEAVE GONDOKORO.**

On the route between Gondokoro and Latooka there was a powerful tribe among the mountains of Ellyria. The chief of that tribe (Legge) had formerly

massacred one hundred and twenty men of a traders' party. He was an ally of Koorshid, whom the Turks declared would raise an army against Baker to defeat and destroy him. It would only be necessary for the traders to request the chief of Ellyria to attack his party to insure its destruction, as the plunder of the baggage would be an ample reward. Baker, however, had great faith in presents. The venality of Arabs is proverbial, and having many valuable effects with him, he trusted that when the proper moment should arrive, he would be able to overcome all opposition by an open hand.

The day arrived for the departure of Koorshid's people. They commenced firing their usual signals; the drums beat; the Turkish ensign led the way; and they marched at two o'clock p. m., sending a polite message, "daring" the Englishman to follow

A MOMENTOUS them.

HOUR. Baker immediately ordered the tent to be struck, the luggage to be arranged, the animals to be collected, and everything to be ready for the march. Richarn and Saat were in high spirits, even Baker's unwilling men were obliged to work, and by 7 p. m., they were all ready. The camels were too heavily loaded, carrying about seven hundred pounds each. The donkeys were also overloaded, but there was no help for it. Mrs. Baker was well mounted on a good Abyssinian horse, and was carrying several leather bags slung to the pommel, while her husband was equally loaded on his horse; in fact, they were all carrying as much as they could stow.

They had neither guide nor interpreter. Not one native was procurable, all being under the influence of the traders, who had determined to render their advance utterly impossible by preventing the natives from assisting them. They commenced the desperate journey in darkness about an hour after sunset.

"Where shall we go?" said the men, just as the order was given to start. "Who can travel without a guide? No one knows the road." The moon was up, and the mountain of Belignan was distinctly visible about nine miles distant. Knowing that the route lay on the east side of that mountain, Baker led the way, Mrs. Baker riding by his side, and the British flag following close behind as a guide for the caravan of heavily-laden camels and donkeys.

CHAPTER XI.

THROUGH THE SAVAGE COUNTRY OF ELLYRIA.

It being late when the cavalcade started, Baker halted after a march of three hours and went into camp one-half mile from where the Turks had bivouacked, hoping to conciliate Ibrahim, the Turkish chief, and procure a guide from him. The haughty Mussulman, however, rejected all overtures, and repeated his threat to have the Englishman annihilated by the Ellyrians. Baker now saw that his safety lay in out-traveling the Turks and passing the Ellyrian mountains before Ibrahim could communicate with the savages. Accordingly, he struck his tents before daylight the next morning and pushed on with all possible speed, but on account of his badly overloaded camels and donkeys, he could travel but slowly.

Having no guides, the route taken was extremely bad, being obstructed by deep ravines, and penetrating a jungle that was composed chiefly of thorn bushes. The camels being tall, the overhanging branches caught in their packs, either shifting the loads or dragging them off altogether, and while going down ravines the animals frequently

stumbled, and would sometimes roll over and over to the bottom. Thus it was that the men would have to unload, carry the packs up the opposite hill, and reload the camels about every half hour. The Turks made slow progress also, as they were trading with the natives along the route, and had no object to hurry them.

While proceeding under great difficulty, two Latookas, who had deserted Ibrahim for being severely beaten by him, overtook Baker, and offered to guide him through the Ellyria country; this was a piece of extraordinary good luck, for his men, having neglected to supply themselves with water, were now suffering much from thirst. The Latooka guides led the way, and soon brought the half-famished party to a place where water was procured by digging a few feet in a dry basin. While the men were regaling themselves and the animals at the wells thus made, some natives appeared, carrying the head of a wild boar that was in a horrible state of decomposition and fairly alive with maggots. They made themselves familiar with Baker's men, and building a fire, proceeded to cook the unsavory dish. The skull becoming too hot for its inhabitants, the maggots wriggled out from the ears and nose like a jam of people escaping from the doors of a theatre on fire. The natives tapped the skull with a stick to hasten their exit, and when the cooking was done they devoured the meat and sucked the bones. No matter how putrid meat may be, it does not appear to affect the health or stomach of native Africans.

The blacks, having finished their repast, joined the caravan, which now moved on again, with Mr. and Mrs. Baker about one mile in advance, accompanied by the Latooka guides. Crossing a deep gully they halted under a large fig tree at the extremity of a vale, to await the party. They were soon observed by the **BESIEGED BY** Tolloga natives, who emerged from their villages among the rocks and **CURIOUS NATIVES.** surrounded them. They were all armed with bows and arrows and lances, and were much excited at seeing the horses, which to them were unknown animals. Says Baker:

"There were five or six hundred natives pressing round us. They were excessively noisy, hallooing to us as though we were deaf, simply because we did not understand them. Finding that they were pressing rudely around us, I made signs to them to stand off, when at that moment a curiously ugly, short, humped-back fellow came forward and addressed me in broken Arabic. I was delighted to find an interpreter, and requesting him to tell the crowd to stand back, I inquired for their chief. The humpback spoke very little Arabic, nor did the crowd appear to heed him, but they immediately stole a spear that one of my Latooka guides had placed against the tree under which we were sitting. It was getting rather unpleasant; but having my revolver and a double-barreled rifle in my hands, there was no fear of their being stolen.

"In reply to a question to the humpback, he asked me 'Who I was.' I explained that I was a traveler. 'You want ivory?' he said. 'No,' I answered, 'it is of no use to me.' 'Ah, you want slaves!' he replied. 'Neither do I want slaves,' I answered. This was followed by a burst of laughter from the crowd, and the humpback continued his examination. 'Have you got plenty of cows?' 'Not one, but plenty of beads and copper.' 'Plenty? Where are they?' 'Not far off; they will be here presently, with my men,' and I pointed to the direction from which they would arrive. 'What countryman are you?' 'An Englishman.' He had never heard of such people. 'You are a Turk?' 'All right,' I replied; 'I am anything you like.' 'And that is your son?' (pointing at Mrs. Baker). 'No, she is my wife.' 'Your wife! What a lie! He is a boy.' 'Not a bit of it,' I replied; 'she is my wife, who has come with me to see the women of this

country.' 'What a lie!' he again politely rejoined in the one expressive Arabic word, 'Katab.'

"After this charmingly frank conversation he addressed the crowd, explaining, I suppose, that I was endeavoring to pass off a boy for a woman. Mrs. Baker was dressed similar to myself in a pair of loose trousers and gaiters, with a blouse and belt—the only difference being that she wore long sleeves, while my arms were bare from a few inches below the shoulder."

Tombe, chief of the tribe, was not long in making his appearance, with a gourd full of honey and a pot of native beer, which was very refreshing. The chief drove the importunate natives away, Baker having gained his favor by giving him a variety of beads and copper bracelets. This display of presents brought the natives back again, when they discovered Mrs. Baker's pet monkey, one of a red species of Abyssinia, quite unknown to them. This attracted their attention, but the monkey resisted all attempts at familiarity by viciously attacking their unprotected legs, which made the crowd roar with laughter, and resulted in winning their friendship.

The humpback was employed as interpreter, and the party then moved on, Baker believing that he had distanced the hated Turk, and would be able to pass through Ellyria, which was now only six miles distant, before they could reach there. The remainder of the road, however, was extremely rough, and ran through a rocky defile, from the heights of either side of which a few savages might, by rolling down stones, have destroyed an army. Baker could not help feeling some alarm at the position he was now in, for it would take him several hours to pass through this place; he knew it was here that more than one hundred traders had met their deaths at the hands of the barbarous Ellyrians, and he therefore felt a growing insecurity as he neared the principal village of that tribe, realizing that the Turks must be very close in his rear.

Just before emerging onto the plain, within a mile of Ellyria, he was horrified to see the Turks immediately in the rear of his party, and they soon marched by without the slightest recognition. He felt that all must now be lost, and with no definite plan to pursue he stood still till the hated caravan had gone by, and Ibrahim, who was some distance in the rear, approached. This man had the visage of a demon, a merciless, cold, villainous face, and the scowl of a savage brute. He did not turn his head to recognize Baker, who in turn, was too proud and defiant to notice him. But Mrs. Baker insisted upon her husband calling to Ibrahim and placating him, and upon his refusal she called to the Turk herself. With a sullen look he turned and gruffly asked what she wanted. Baker now saw that his wife's ideas were more reasonable than his own, and he accordingly addressed the Turk as follows:

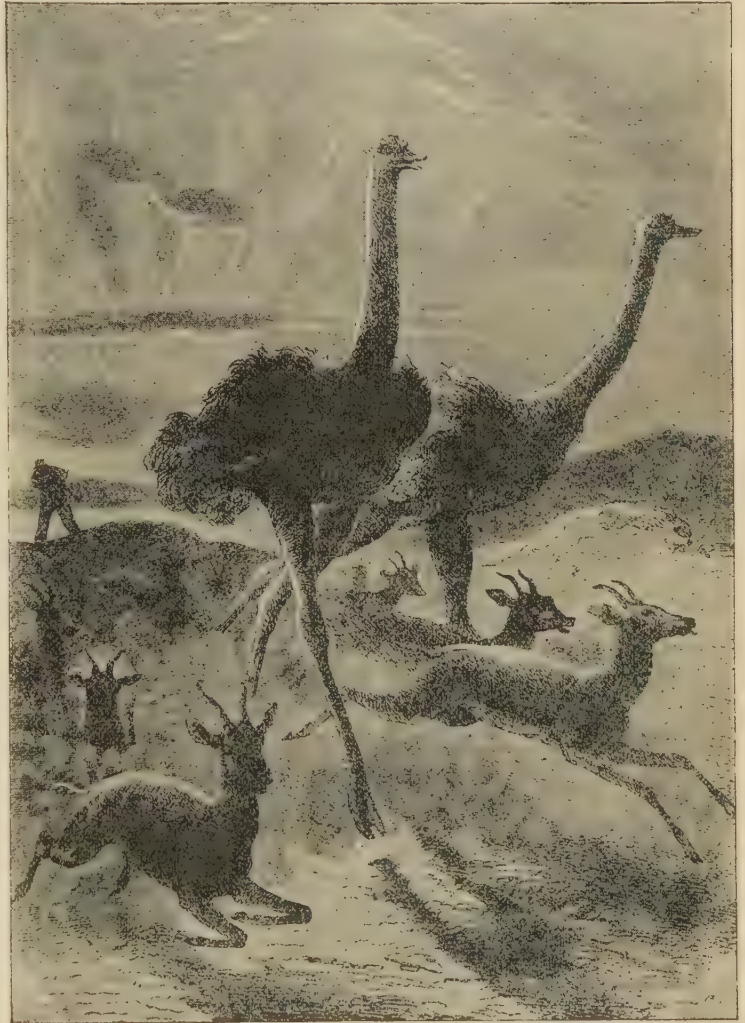
"Ibrahim, why should we be enemies in the midst of this hostile country? We believe in the same God; why should we quarrel in this land of heathens, who believe in no God? You have your work to perform; I have mine. You want ivory; I am a simple traveler; why should we clash? If I were offered the whole ivory of the country I would not accept a single tusk, nor interfere with you in any way. Transact your business, and don't interfere with me; the country is wide enough for us both. I have a task before me, to reach a great lake—the head of the Nile. Reach it *I will* (Inshallah). No power shall drive me back. If you are hostile, I will imprison you in Khartoum; if you assist me, I will reward you far beyond any reward you have ever received. Should I be killed in this country you will be suspected; you know the result; the government would hang you on

the bare suspicion. On the contrary, if you are friendly, I will use my influence in any country that I discover, that you may procure its ivory for the sake of your master, Koorshid, who was generous to Captains Speke and Grant, and kind to me. Should you be hostile, I shall hold your master responsible as your employer. Should you assist me, I will befriend you both. Choose your course frankly, like a man—friend or enemy?"

This speech caused Ibrahim to pause, whereupon Baker furnished him a new double-barreled gun and some gold, which completely won the old scoundrel, and they marched into Ellyria together.

The party had not time to unpack their loads before they were surrounded by a large body of Ellyrians, and among the first was their chief, Legge, who was intent on securing blackmail. His first demand was for fifteen heavy copper bracelets and ten pounds of assorted beads. A bottle of spirits had accidentally been broken in one of the packs, and smelling the liquor he immediately clamored for a "belly-fully," as he expressed it. A pint bottle of the strongest spirits was given him, which he emptied without once removing it from his mouth. Baker says:

"Although I had presented Legge with what he desired, he would give nothing in return, neither would he sell either goats or fowls; in fact, no provision was procurable except honey. I purchased about eight pounds of this luxury for a hoe. My men were starving, and I was obliged to serve them out rice from my sacred stock, as I had nothing else to give them. This they boiled and mixed with honey, and they were shortly sitting round an immense circular bowl of this rarity, enjoying themselves thoroughly, but nevertheless grumbling as usual. In the coolest manner possible the great and greedy chief, Legge, who had refused to give or even to sell anything to keep us from starving, no sooner saw the men at their novel repast than he sat down among them and almost choked himself by cramming handfuls of the hot rice and honey into his mouth, which yawned like that of an old hippopotamus. The men did not at all approve of this assistance, but as it is the height of bad manners in Arab



DRIVING GAME IN ELLYRIA.

etiquette to repel a self-invited guest from the general meal, he was not interfered with, and was thus enabled to swallow the share of about three persons."

Legge, although the worst of his tribe, had a similar formation of head. The Bari and those of Tolloga and Ellyria have generally bullet-shaped heads, low foreheads, skulls heavy behind the ears and above the nape of the neck; altogether their appearance is excessively brutal, and they are armed with bows six feet long, and arrows horribly barbed and poisoned.

The Ellyrians would sell nothing but honey, while their incessant begging was very annoying, so that the halt among them was only for one day. The route from this place

toward Latooka led generally through a flat country, with few difficulties
THROUGH A GAME COUNTRY. to surmount. The Turks took the lead, with Ibrahim in advance, alongside of whom rode Mr. and Mrs. Baker. They soon got into

friendly conversation, which Baker improved by flattering the old Turk and winning his friendship. Ibrahim at length became confidential and told Baker that his men had agreed to mutiny as soon as they should arrive at Latooka, and named the leader. This was bad news in one sense, but good in another, for it gave Baker time to prepare for the trouble, whereas he might otherwise have been shot down and his wife left to perish in that barbarous region. They pushed on together, and two days after leaving Ellyria they came into the Wakkula country, which, owing to its rich pasturage and abundant water, abounded with all kinds of game, such as elephants, rhinoceri, buffaloes, giraffes, wild boars, and several varieties of large antelope. Just before going into camp in this beautiful region, some of Baker's men found a buffalo that had been caught in a trap and partially eaten by a lion; that which remained the men devoured with great relish, as it was the first meat they had tasted since leaving Gondokoro. Baker went on a hunt in this paradise and bagged several antelope, enough to provision the force until their arrival at Latooka, but his great anxiety to push forward prevented him from enjoying a hunt for larger game.

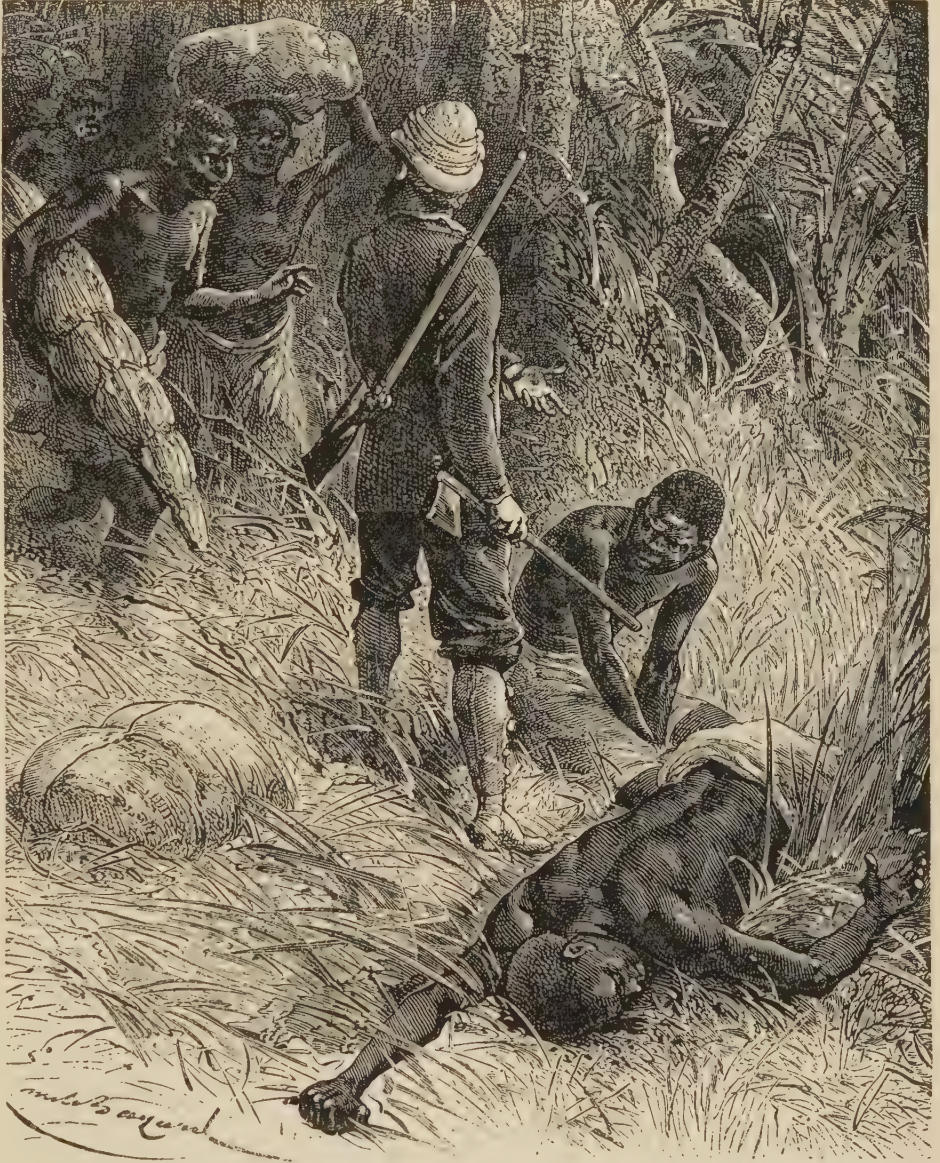
Shortly after leaving the lovely plain on which he had found such an abundance of game, still in the company of Ibrahim and his party, they saw a large Latooka town, named Latome, in the distance, and could discover a considerable crowd of Turks assembled in the shade of two enormous trees. These issued forth, upon observing the approaching columns, and coming near, fired their guns with great rapidity, as a salute. This was the place where Baker's men had agreed to mutiny, and the salute was therefore no indication of an agreeable spot to camp. Directly afterward, however, a Turkish trading party, under Mohamed Her, that had bivouacked in the village, came out and forbid the passage of Ibrahim through the country, claiming an exclusive right to trade there. A big row was the result, in which Mohamed was strangled almost to death by one of Ibrahim's sergeants. Baker's men showed an unmistakable sympathy for Mohamed, though their time had not yet arrived for making an outbreak.

After violent quarreling for some hours, the several parties repaired to their tents and slept, but on the following morning, when Baker called his men to resume the march, they sullenly disobeyed, and four of them rose, seized their guns and assumed

ANOTHER MUTINY. a threatening attitude. He knew that the mutiny was now about to manifest itself, and acted accordingly. Belaal, the leading spirit of this outbreak, stood near, and upon being ordered to fall in and begin loading the camels, he advanced upon Baker, looking him fiercely in the eyes, and dashing the butt of his gun violently to the ground, said, "Not a man shall go with you!—go where you like with Ibrahim, but we won't follow you, nor move a step farther. The men shall not load the camels; you may employ the 'niggers' to do it, but not us."

"I looked at this mutinous rascal for a moment," says Baker; "this was the burst of the conspiracy, and the threats and insolence that I had been forced to pass over for the sake of the expedition all rushed before me. 'Lay down your gun!' I thundered, 'and load the camels!' 'I won't!' was his reply. 'Then stop there!' I answered; at the same time lashing out as quick as lightning with my right hand upon his jaw.

"He rolled over in a heap, his gun flying some yards from his hand; and the late ringleader lay apparently insensible among the luggage, while several of his friends ran to him, and did the good Samaritan. Following up on the moment the advantage I had gained by establishing a panic, I seized my rifle and rushed into the midst of the wavering men, catching first one by the throat, and then another, and dragging them to the camels, which I insisted



BAKER QUIELLING THE MUTINY.

upon their immediately loading. All except three, who attended to the ruined ringleader, mechanically obeyed. Richarn and Sali both shouted to them to 'hurry;' and the vakeel arriving at this moment and seeing how matters stood, himself assisted, and urged the men to obey.

"Ibrahim's party had started. The animals were soon loaded, and leaving the vakeel to take them in charge we cantered on to overtake Ibrahim, having crushed the mutiny

and given such an example that, in the event of future conspiracies, my men would find it difficult to obtain a ringleader."

A short time after the event just related, Belaal and four others deserted and joined Mohamed Her, taking their guns and ammunition with them. Baker roundly abused his leader for permitting them to escape, and declared that the vultures would pick the bones of the base recreants who had abandoned them. This threat seemed to have much effect upon the men, and when, three days later, Belaal and his four compatriots were killed by a band of savage natives, the superstitious people believed that it was through some magic power exerted by Baker, so that they hailed him as a powerful magician. This belief he did not attempt to dispel, and it was fortunate that he did not, for it served him well on future occasions.

Thirteen miles from Latome lay the largest village in the Latooka country, Tarrangolle, where Moy, the chief, resided. This was Ibrahim's destination, the place where he collected his ivory and slaves, and carried them back to Gondokoro, which, by dead reckoning, was only 101 miles distant, but nearly a month is required to make the journey.

Crowds of natives came out of the village to receive Baker and the Turks, but their curiosity was attracted almost exclusively to the camels and the white woman, paying little heed to Baker himself, because he was brown as an Arab.

The Latookas are doubtless the finest made savages in all Africa. A score or more of them who came into Baker's tent were measured, and averaged five feet eleven and one-half inches. Not only are they tall, but they possess a wonderful muscular development, having beautifully proportioned legs and arms; and although extremely powerful, they are never fleshy or corpulent. The formation of head and general physiognomy is totally different from that of all other tribes in the neighborhood of the White Nile. They have high foreheads, large eyes, rather high cheek-bones, mouths not very large, well shaped, and the lips rather full. They have a remarkably pleasing cast of countenance, and are a great contrast to other tribes in civility of manner. They are frank but warlike, excessively merry, ready either for a laugh or a fight.

The town of Tarrangolle contains about three thousand houses, which are not only surrounded by iron-wood palisades, but every individual house is fortified by a stockaded courtyard. The cattle are kept in large kraals and very carefully tended, even to the lighting of fires to keep annoying insects from them. The houses are bell-shaped, rising into a sharp-pointed cone, twenty-five feet high, resting on a circular wall four feet in height. The doorway is only two feet high, so that entrance is made by crawling; the interior is clean, but there are no windows, the only light received being through the door.

Baker says he noticed, during the march from Latome, that the vicinity of every town was announced by heaps of human remains, bones and skulls, forming an incipient Golgotha within a quarter of a mile of every village. Some of the bones were in earthenware pots, generally broken; others lay strewn here and there; while a heap in the centre showed that some system had originally been observed in their disposition. This was

explained by an extraordinary custom most rigidly observed by the Latookas. Should a man be killed in battle the body is allowed to remain where it fell, and is devoured by the vultures and hyenas; but should he die a natural death, he or she is buried in a shallow grave within a few feet of his own door, in the little courtyard that surrounds each dwelling. Funeral dances are then kept up in memory of the dead for several weeks; at the expiration

of which time, the body being sufficiently decomposed, is exhumed. The bones are cleaned, and are deposited in an earthenware jar, and carried to a spot near the town, which is regarded as the cemetery.

The costume of the Latookas is simple enough, as they make no effort to cover any part of the body, but infinite care is bestowed upon the hair, which is trained to grow into the shape of a helmet, the perfecting of which requires unremitting attention for eight or ten years. Their weapons consist of the lance, a powerful iron-headed mace, a long-bladed knife, and an ugly iron bracelet, armed with knife-blades about four inches in length by one-half inch broad; this latter weapon is used to strike with if disarmed and to cut with when struggling with an enemy.

The women are as plain as the men are fastidious; they are not even acquainted with the use of a loin-cloth. They are not so well made as the men, for while the latter are sinewy and graceful, the women are immense creatures, with prodigious limbs, and in all respects appear to be admirably fitted for the drudgery service they are put to.

On the day after Baker's arrival he was visited by the chief, who had never before seen a white person. Seating him upon a piece of Persian carpet, Baker presented a quantity of beads, necklaces, copper bars, and colored cotton handkerchiefs. Among the gifts was a necklace composed of opal beads, the size of marbles. He **CHIEF MOY AND HIS WIFE.** seized them like a greedy child and requested a similar necklace for his wife, Bokke; this being also given him, the chief said, "What a row there will be in the family when my other wives see Bokke (who was his chief wife) dressed up with this finery." This was, of course, a demand for more opal beads, whereupon Baker gave him three pounds of beads to be divided among his wives.

On the next day Bokke called at Baker's hut, covered with beads, and presenting a singular spectacle by reason of the scars on her cheeks, tattoo marks on her temples, and a piece of ivory pending from a perforation through her lower lip. Despite these disfigurements she was real pretty, and her daughter, Baker declares was the handsomest savage girl he ever saw.

Bokke made herself entertaining by asking how many wives the white man had, and laughing with scorn, if not incredulity, when told he had but one. She also suggested to Mrs. Baker that her looks would be very much improved by knocking out her four lower front teeth, according to the custom of that country, and wearing red ointment on her hair and a piece of bone through her lower lip.

In the afternoon of the following day she came again, with the information that Mohamed Her and his party of 110 men had been massacred by the Latookas, one of whose villages he had tried to destroy and to make slaves of the inhabitants. Very soon after other runners arrived with particulars of the fight, confirming the first reports. This news put the people of Tarrangolle into a furore of excitement, particularly as Ibrahim's followers had been maltreating the Latooka women. A big fight threatened, the war drums were beaten, and several thousand warriors assembled to exterminate the Turks in their village, and Baker as well; but chief Moy, who had become somewhat attached to his white guests, on account of the presents given, prevented his people from making an attack.

Although there were not less than 10,000 head of cattle belonging to the people of Tarrangolle, they would not sell a single beef. The want of meat was so badly felt that Baker had to resort to his gun. Fortunately ducks and geese were very plentiful in a stream near the town, and every day he shot a sufficient number to supply his men.

A very interesting ceremony was witnessed by Baker at Latooka, being nothing less than a funeral dance in honor of one of the brave warriors of the tribe. The dancers were grotesquely appareled, as is the custom of all savage tribes during such ceremonies. A dozen very large ostrich feathers adorned their helmets of hair, while leopard or black and white monkey skins were suspended from their shoulders, and a leather strap tied round the waist supported a large iron bell, which was girded upon the loins like a woman's bustle; this they rung to the time of the dance, by jerking their posteriors in the most ridiculous manner. Every dancer wore an antelope's horn suspended round the neck, which he blew occasionally in the height of his excitement. These instruments produced a sound partaking of the braying of a donkey and the screech of an owl. Crowds of men rushed round and round in a sort of "galop infernal," brandishing their lances and iron-headed maces, and keeping tolerably in line



A FUNERAL DANCE OF LATOOKAS.

five or six deep, following the leader who headed them, dancing backward. The women kept outside the line, dancing a low, stupid step, and screaming a wild and most inharmonious chant, while a long string of young girls and small children, their heads and necks rubbed with red ochre and grease, and prettily ornamented with strings of beads around their loins, kept a very good line, beating time with their feet, and jingling the numerous iron rings which adorned their ankles, to keep time with the drums. One woman attended upon the men, running through the crowd with a gourd full of wood-ashes, handfuls of which she showered over their heads, powdering them like millers; the object of this ceremony Baker could not understand. The "premiere danseuse" was immensely fat; she had passed the bloom of youth, but despite her unwieldy state, she kept up the pace to the last, quite unconscious of her general appearance, so absorbed was she with the excitement of the dance.

When the funeral services were over, Baker, anxious to learn something of the origin of the ceremonies he had just witnessed, and hoping to find in them some analogy to Christian rites and beliefs, sent for Commoro (the "Lion"), brother of Moy, the chief, and entered into conversation with him on the resurrection of the body. He declares that Commoro was one of the most clever and common-sense savages any white man ever met with, and reports the conversation, which was interpreted, as follows :

**AN AFRICAN PRINCE'S
IDEA OF THE HEREAFTER.**

"Have you no belief in existence after death?" asked Baker.

"Existence after death!" exclaimed the savage. "Can a dead man get out of his grave unless we dig him out?"

"Do you think man is like a beast, that dies and is ended?"

"Certainly; an ox is stronger than a man, but he dies and his bones last longer; they are bigger. A man's bones break quickly—he is weak."

"Is not a man superior in sense to an ox; has he not a mind to direct his actions?"

"Some men are not so clever as an ox. Men must sow corn to obtain food, but the ox and wild animals can procure it without sowing."

"Do you not know that there is a spirit within you more than flesh? Do you not dream and wander in thought to distant places in your sleep? Nevertheless, your body rests in one spot. How do you account for this?"

"Well, how do *you* account for it?" said Commoro, laughing. "It is a thing I cannot understand; it occurs to me every night."

"The mind is independent of the body; the actual body can be fettered, but the mind is uncontrollable; the body will die and will become dust, or be eaten by vultures, but the spirit will exist forever."

"Where will the spirit live?"

"Where does fire live? Cannot you produce fire by rubbing two sticks together, yet you *see* no fire in the wood? Have you no idea of the existence of spirits superior to either man or beast? Have you no fear of evil except from bodily causes?"

**BAKER VANQUISHED
IN ARGUMENT.**

"I am afraid of elephants and other animals when in the jungle at night, but of nothing else."

"Then you believe in nothing; neither in a good nor evil spirit! And you believe that when you die it will be the end of body and spirit; that you are like other animals, and that there is no distinction between man and beast; both disappear and end at death?"

"Of course they do."

"Do you see no difference in good and bad actions?"

"Yes, there are good and bad in men and beasts."

"Do you think that a good man and a bad must share the same fate, and alike die, and end?"

"Yes; what else can they do? How can they help dying? Good and bad all die."

"Their bodies perish, but their spirits remain; the good in happiness, the bad in misery. If you have no belief in a future state, *why should a man be good?* Why should he not be bad, if he can prosper by his wickedness?"

"Most people are bad; if they are strong they take from the weak. The good people are all weak; they are good because they are not strong enough to be bad."

Some corn had been taken out of a sack for the horses, and a few grains lying scattered on the ground, Baker tried the beautiful metaphor of St. Paul as an example of the future

state. Making a small hole with his finger in the ground, he placed a grain within it; "That," he said, "represents you when you die." Covering it with earth, he continued, "That grain will decay, but from it will rise the plant that will produce a reappearance of the original form."

"Exactly so; that I understand. But the *original* grain does *not* rise again; it rots like the dead man, and is ended; the fruit produced is not the same grain that we buried, but the *production* of that grain; so it is with man—I die, and decay, and am ended; but my children grow up like the fruit of the grain. Some men have no children, and some grains perish without fruit; then all are ended."

Baker saw it was useless to argue further, and frankly says: "I was obliged to change the subject of conversation. In this wild, naked savage there was not even a superstition upon which to found a religious feeling; there was a belief in matter; and to his understanding everything was *material*. It was extraordinary to find so much clearness of perception combined with such complete obtuseness to anything ideal."

Baker remained at Latooka two weeks or more, waiting the return of Ibrahim from Gondokoro, whither he had gone for a new supply of ammunition; and to better employ the time of his detention, on the fifteenth of April, just as the rainy season was setting in, he resolved upon a hunt for large game, traces of which were numerous within five miles of Latooka. Accordingly, with a good guide, and several servants to carry the guns, he set out, and coming to a plain covered with long rich grasses, he was suddenly startled by a rhinoceros bolting out of a copse close to his horse's head, and plunging into another before he could seize his gun. He would have followed had not his attention been called away from the rhinoceros by a shout from his servants, who reported a herd of large bull elephants browsing in a forest at the edge of the plain. Stopping short to locate the herd, he was delighted to see two large bulls bearing down toward him, less than one hundred yards distant. He dismounted to get a steady shot, but the elephants saw the Latookas, and, taking fright, rushed off to join the main herd, only a short distance away. Baker soon mounted and dashed toward the elephants, but his horse stepped into a buffalo hole and fell hard on his leg. He fortunately extricated himself without difficulty, and, mounting another horse, rode at full speed toward the fugitive game, which had gained considerable distance, and disappeared in the wood. After a quarter of an hour of hard riding he saw an enormous bull ploughing through the brush like an immense engine, tearing down everything in his way. The country was unfavorable for the hunter, on account of buffalo holes, and though approaching within twenty yards, he was unable to get a fair shot. Away they flew over ruts and gullies until the ponderous brute was chased to another open plain, when a ball was planted in his shoulder; though badly struck the elephant did not alter his course or speed until another shot was put close to the first one. The animal now slackened his speed, then

PURSUED BY AN turned about and made straight for his assailant, screaming like an
ENRAGED ELEPHANT. infuriated demon. Baker put spurs to his horse, having urgent business in another vicinity, and as he was not pursued more than a hundred yards, made his escape. He prepared for another attack by taking a larger gun and starting after the wounded beast, but had gone less than a dozen yards when he saw a closely packed herd of eighteen elephants coming directly toward him; but as soon as they discovered him they broke off in another direction. In the herd he noticed an uncommonly large bull that was armed with an immense and beautiful pair of tusks; this one he determined to cut out from the others, and by shouting succeeded in scattering them; he now

rode for the chosen one, but the elephant, seeing himself pursued, turned and charged so determinedly upon his assailant that his escape appeared for a time impossible; fortunately, again the elephant stopped, almost at the moment he might have caught the bold hunter, and entered a thicket where a horse could not well follow. Baker went into the woods to find the herd again, and soon came upon the one he had wounded. It was standing in a painful attitude as if upon the very point of dissolution, but the moment its fiery eyes rested upon the hunter the maddened beast charged him again; another shot brought the elephant to his knees, but he rallied quickly, and lifting his great trunk and screaming with rage, he rushed after Baker, whose horse was now badly jaded. The race this time was more exciting than before, for, instead of stopping after a short run, the elephant kept its swift pace and followed for more than a mile, all the while gradually gaining, until the distance between pursued and pursuer was not more than ten yards, while the horse was nearly ready to fall from exhaustion. The cowardly servants, who were also mounted on horses, were so mindful of their own safety that they made no effort to divert the attention of the elephant, but ran as swiftly and as far away as possible. Baker was almost upon the point of despair; he knew that the climax must soon be reached, which would be hastened should his horse fall. In a moment of desperation he turned his horse aside, like a hare doubling on the dogs, just in time to feel the swish of the elephant's trunk as it grazed him, but the momentum of the great brute carried him by. Seeing his enemy now running in a new direction, the elephant broke off up hill, and on the following morning was found dead in a jungle not far distant from where he had abandoned the pursuit.

Elephant flesh is very poor eating to white men, but it is highly esteemed by the black races of Africa, notwithstanding its leathery consistency and strong taste; the fat is prized above the meat, however, as it is used both for food and to grease their bodies. The more common method used by the natives to capture elephants is by pit-falls; these are dug near some drinking place, and trees are so felled that they leave only a pathway in which the pit-falls are excavated. These pits are usually three feet broad, twelve feet long, and nine feet deep, tapering toward the bottom; they are concealed by straw and sticks over which elephant dung is scattered to complete the deception. When an animal falls into the pit his two feet are jammed together in the narrow bottom, and though nearly upright he can scarcely move, in which helpless condition he is easily dispatched with spears.

ELEPHANT PITS AND NATIVE HUNTERS.

Another way of killing elephants, much resorted to—generally in January, when the prairies are parched—is by locating a large herd and then firing the grass. Surrounded by a circle of fire, the animals huddle together or blindly rush from one side of the circle to another and become so panic-stricken that there is no danger incurred in attacking them with spears or lances.

The next method of hunting is savage cruelty. Should many elephants be in the neighborhood, the natives post about a hundred men in as many large trees; these men are armed with heavy lances specially adapted to this sport, with blades about eighteen inches long and three inches broad. The elephants are driven by a great number of men toward the trees in which the spearsmen are posted, and those that pass sufficiently near are speared between the shoulders. The spear being driven deep into the animal, creates a frightful wound, as the tough handle, striking against the intervening branches of trees, acts as a lever, and works the long blade of the spear within the elephant, cutting to such an extent that he soon drops from exhaustion.

The best and only really great elephant-hunters of the White Nile are the Bagara Arabs, on about the thirteenth degree of north latitude. These men hunt on horseback, and kill the elephant in a fair fight with their spears. The lance is about fourteen feet long, of male bamboo; the blade is about fourteen inches long by nearly three inches broad, and as sharp as a razor. Two men, thus armed and mounted, form the hunting party. Should they discover a herd, they ride up to the finest tusker and single him from the others. One man now leads the way, and the elephant, finding himself pressed, immediately charges the horse. There is much art required in leading the brute, who follows the horse with great determination, and the rider adapts his pace so as to keep his horse so near that the attention of the pursuing elephant is entirely absorbed with the hope of catching him. The other hunter should by this time have followed close to the elephant's heels, and,



BANGARA ARAB ELEPHANT HUNTERS.

dismounting when at full gallop, with wonderful dexterity, he plunges his spear with both hands into the animal about two feet below the junction of the tail, and with all his force he drives the weapon deep into the abdomen, and withdraws it immediately. Should he be successful in his stab, he remounts his horse and flies, or does his best to escape on foot, should he not have time to mount, as the elephant generally turns to pursue him. His comrade immediately wheels about, and dashing at the elephant, in his turn dismounts, and stabs the beast with his lance. Generally, if the first thrust is scientifically given, the elephant is at once disabled. Two good hunters will frequently kill several out of one herd; but in this dangerous hand-to-hand fighting the hunter is frequently the victim. Hunting the elephant on horseback is certainly far less dangerous than on foot, but although the speed of the horse is undoubtedly superior, the chase generally takes place upon ground so disadvantageous that he is liable to fall, in which case there is little chance for either animal or rider.

CHAPTER XII.

THE MAKKARIKA CANNIBALS.

Among the Turkish soldiery Ibrahim had left at Latooka, was a black Bornu man, named Ibrahimawa, who had been captured when a lad twelve years old and sold at Constantinople to Mohammed Ali Pasha. This man had been to London, Paris, and all over Europe, and besides being a great traveler was smart and valorous. He was an object of much interest to Baker, from the fact that, in addition to his travels, he had served for some years with a trading party that had penetrated through the Makkarika country. This district lies two hundred miles west of Gondokoro, and is inhabited by cannibals. The stories of his adventures among these man-eaters were highly edifying and of no little importance, since Baker's steps were bent in that direction.

Ibrahimawa and many of his party had been frequent witnesses to acts of cannibalism during their residence among the Makkarikas. They described these cannibals as remarkably good people, but possessing a peculiar taste for dogs and human flesh. They accompanied the trading parties in their raids, and invariably ate the bodies of the slain. The traders complained that they were bad associates, as they insisted on killing and eating the children which the party wished to secure as slaves. Their custom was to catch a child by its ankles, and to dash its head against the ground; thus killed, they extracted the stomach and intestines, and tying the two ankles to the neck, they carried the body by slinging it over the shoulder, and thus returned to camp, where they divided it by quartering, and boiled it in a large pot.

On one occasion, many slave women and children, on witnessing such a scene, rushed panic-stricken from the spot and took refuge in the trees. The Makkarikas, seeing them in flight, were excited to give chase, and pulling the children from their refuge among the branches of the trees, they killed several, and in a short time a great feast was prepared for the whole party.

Ibrahim returned from Gondokoro on the last day of April, having made the trip with much expedition, considering the large supply of ammunition that he brought back with him. Having had some very favorable reports from the Obbo country, whose natives desired to trade with the Turks, Ibrahim decided to pay it a visit, much to the delight of Baker who had now only fifteen men and no porters; besides, Obbo lay directly in the path of Baker's intended journey to the Nile source. Accordingly, on the second of May the two parties started from Latooka for the new country, forty miles distant, their friendship being now well and truly cemented.

ON THE MARCH
TO OBBO.

Most of the country traversed in going to Obbo was exceedingly beautiful, being richly diversified by mountains, on the peaks of which native villages could be seen, impregnable by position, and green valleys covered with large herds of wild game, which lent variety to the view. There was also an abundance of wild fruits and nuts of most delicious taste, providing sufficient support for the natives. The journey was made without special incident, and on arrival they were most hospitably received by the chief, Katchiba, who was an old man, but a great clown and joker. He had one specially good point, however—he did not beg.

In the evening an entertainment was provided by the chief for his visitors, which Baker describes as follows: "About a hundred men formed a circle; each man held in his left hand a small, cup-shaped drum, formed of hollowed wood, one end only being perforated, and this was covered with the skin of the elephant's ear, tightly stretched. In the centre of the circle was the chief dancer, who wore, suspended from his shoulders, an immense drum, also covered with the elephant's ear. The dance commenced by all singing remarkably well a wild but agreeable tune in chorus, the big drum directing the time, and the whole of the little drums striking at certain periods with such admirable precision that the effect was that of a single instrument. The dancing was most vigorous, and far superior to anything that I had seen among either Arabs or savages, the figures varying continually, and ending with a 'grand galop' in double circles, at a tremendous pace, the inner ring revolving in a contrary direction to the outer, the effect of which was excellent."

The men of Obbo wear a dress consisting of a skin slung across the shoulder and loins, but the women are almost naked, and instead of wearing a leather apron and tail like the

Latookas, they are content with a slight fringe of leather shreds, about four inches long by two broad, suspended from a belt. The unmarried girls go entirely naked; or, if they are specially rich in finery, they wear two or three strings of beads as a covering. The old ladies are antiquated Eves, whose dress consists of a string around the waist, in which is stuck a bunch of green leaves, the stalks uppermost. Some of the more prudish young ladies indulge in a like covering, but they do not appear to be fashionable. One great advantage of this leaf costume is that it may be always clean and fresh, as the nearest bush (if not thorny) provides a clean petticoat. When in the society of these very simple and really modest Eves, one cannot help reflecting upon the Mosaical description of our first parents, "and they sewed fig leaves together."

Chief—or as Speke would call him, king—Katchiba holds his subjects by a power which is most effective among savages, viz., sorcery. Should one of his people displease him or refuse a gift asked for, the old chief threatens to curse his goats

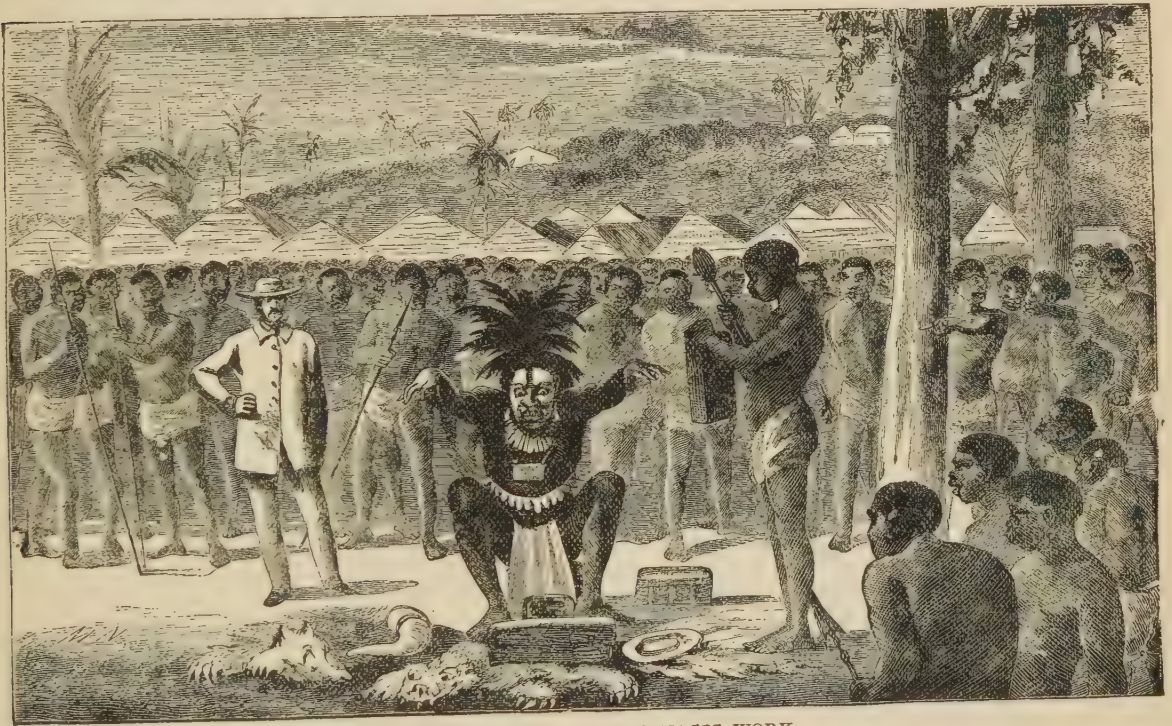
A ROYAL SORCERER. and wither his crops, and the fear of his power usually forces obedience.

Should there be either a drouth or destructive rainfall, Katchiba assembles his subjects and in a fatherly way expresses his regrets that their conduct has forced him to afflict them with unfavorable weather, but that it is their own fault. If they are so greedy or stingy that they will not supply him properly, how can they expect him to regard their interests? He must have goats and corn—"No goats, no rain; that's our contract, my friends." Should his people complain of too much rain, he threatens to pour storms and lightning upon them forever, unless they bring him corn, beer, and provisions.

No man would think of starting upon a journey without first receiving the old chief's blessing, which is supposed to act as a spell to avert all evil. In case of sickness he is called in to charm away the disease, but his practice exhibits the same fluctuating results that attend the efforts of all doctors. In order to propitiate this royal sorcerer, his people frequently present him with their prettiest daughters, so that he is enabled to keep a harem at every village in his country, and in his journeys he is at home wherever he goes. His multiplicity of wives has made him a famous father; at the time of Baker's visit the old chief had *one hundred and sixteen children* living, and perhaps as many more dead. Each village in the Obbo country is ruled by one of his sons, so that the entire government is a family affair.

Katchiba was not a bad man, although a sorcerer, and he treated Baker with much kindness, besides furnishing most valuable information concerning the country south of him. It was now May, and he told Baker that on account of the Asua River being swollen by heavy rains, it would be impossible to cross it before **A FINE OLD CHIEF.** December, and he must therefore postpone his departure. In his anxiety to proceed, however, Baker left his wife at Obbo, under a guard of eight men and the immediate care of Katchiba, who promised to protect her; and taking three men with him, he started upon a short trip to test the accuracy of the chief's assertions in regard to the river.

Proceeding southward, the route lay through a lovely country, park-like and well-wooded, though generally overgrown with grass about six feet high. Upon reaching the Asua River it was found to be a roaring torrent, and Baker's conclusions in regard to it were



A WITCH DOCTOR AT HIS MAGIC WORK.

confirmed by a local chief, who assured him that it could not be crossed during the rainy season. He accordingly returned to Obbo.

Baker had been absent more than a week, and naturally felt some anxiety in regard to the safety of his wife, but he found her looking remarkably well, and regularly installed "at home." Several fat sheep were tied by the legs to pegs in front of the hut, a number of tame fowls were pecking around the entrance, and she met her husband on the threshold with a large pumpkin-shell containing about a gallon of native beer. These luxuries were all presents from the kind-hearted old chief, who soon appeared upon the scene, wearing a very self-satisfied countenance at having so faithfully carried out his promise to protect the white woman. Mrs. Baker gave him an excellent character; he had even been so careful of her safety as to place several of his own sons as guards over the hut day and night. Baker accordingly presented him with some beads, bracelets and other odds and ends, which

threw him into ecstasies of delight. Among the presents was a pair of sun-goggles, which he placed upon his flat nose and then viewed himself with great complacency in a small mirror, which had also been given to him. He regarded his presents with the pleasure and pride of a child, and his kind old heart swelled with gratitude toward his beloved white guests. Baker noticed that the old chief was lame in the back, and was told that he had received a bad fall during his absence. Mrs. Baker laughingly explained the matter. Katchiba had come to her one morning, saying that he wished to procure some chickens for her from one of his distant villages, but, said he, "my people no good; he say he got no chicken—but you lend me horse, and I ride him, then they be afraid and give me plenty chicken." Katchiba was not a good walker, owing to his age and infirmities, and also to the fact that his old head was nearly always fuddled with large draughts of native beer that he constantly guzzled. His usual method of traveling was upon the back of a very strong subject, precisely as children ride "pick-a-pack." He generally had two or three spare men, who alternately acted as guides and ponies, while one of his wives invariably accompanied him, bearing a large jar of beer, with which it was said the old chief refreshed himself so copiously during the journey that it sometimes became necessary for two men to carry him instead of one. This may have been merely a scandalous report in Obbo; however, it appeared that Katchiba was ready for a start, as usual accompanied by a Hebe with a jar of beer. Confident in his powers as a rider across country on a man, he considered that he could easily ride a horse. It was in vain that Mrs. Baker protested, and prophesied a broken neck should he attempt to bestride the hitherto to him unknown animal; but to ride he was determined. Accordingly, one of the blooded horses was brought out, and Katchiba was assisted upon his back. Recognizing an awkward hand, the horse did not move. "Go on," said Katchiba; but as the steed did not understand the Obbo language, he remained perfectly still. "Touch him with your stick," cried one of Baker's men; and, acting upon the suggestion, the old sorcerer gave him a tremendous whack with his staff. This was immediately responded to by the spirited animal, who, quite unused to such eccentricities, gave a vigorous kick, the effect of which was to convert the sorcerer into a spread-eagle, flying head over heels, and landing heavily on the ground, amidst roars of laughter from the crowd that had collected to witness the scene. The old chief was assisted upon his feet, and being considerably stunned, he regarded the horse with great astonishment. But his natural instinct prompted him soon to call for his beer, and after a long draught from the mighty cup his courage returned. He made no further effort, however, to ride the white man's horse, expressing the sage opinion that he was "too high—it was a long way to tumble down."

As they could not advance southward on account of the rainy season, Baker and the Turks determined to return to their former camp at Latooka, where supplies were more abundant, and wait until the weather should become more settled.

RETURN TO LATOOKA. Before parting a ceremony had to be performed by Katchiba, whose brother was to be their guide, and who was to receive power as deputy-magician to control the elements during the journey. With great solemnity the dear old sorcerer broke a branch from a tree, upon the leaves of which he spat in several places. The branch thus blessed with holy water, was laid upon the ground, and a fowl was dragged around it; he then handed the branch to his brother, accompanied by a magic whistle of antelope's horn, both of which were received with great gravity. All the natives wore whistles similar in appearance, but none were supposed to be effective unless previously blessed by the great magician. The ceremony being over, the travelers took leave of

Katchiba, promising soon to return, and departed on their journey amidst a din of "toot-too-too-ing" from rain whistles and horns.

Bordering a ravine, near which they camped that night, were a number of large trees covered with a thorny creeper, the leaves of which resembled those of a species of yam. These Ibrahimawa, the traveled Bornu man—who claimed to be a learned botanist—at once pronounced to be excellent food, and digging at the roots **POISON YAMS.** of the vines he soon procured a basketful of fine-looking yams. The rest of the men, not being botanists, left the search for food to Ibrahimawa, but when he pro-



VILLAGE OF LATOOKA.

duced the basketful of tempting-looking food they made a rush for it and helped themselves. The scientific botanist was left without a yam; but he had his revenge. The roots were soon cooked, and the men ate them voraciously; but in a few minutes they began to disappear one by one, and from a distance came smothered but unmistakable sounds similar to those produced by sea-sick passengers on a rolling ship. All who had dined from Ibrahimawa's botanical specimens were suffering from a powerful "vomi-purgatif." They were

intensely sick for about an hour, but no further inconvenience was experienced from the poison yams, although Ibrahimawa's reputation as a botanist fell to a very low degree.

Upon reaching the Latooka valley, where game was abundant, a herd of twenty hartebeests was seen peacefully grazing on the plain. Baker dismounted to stalk them, but he had scarcely left his horse when the red flags of the Turks attracted the attention of a large gang of baboons, that at once set up a chattering and hoarse cries of alarm which frightened the hartebeests. One of the men fired at a big baboon sitting on a rock, and by accident shot it through the head. It was about the size of a large mastiff, and had a long brown mane like that of the lion. This is much prized by the natives as an ornament, which is cut into strips and worn round the body.

As the party went into camp that evening, Baker rode out alone in quest of game, and found a herd of giraffes, whose towering heads could be seen as they were cropping the tops of mimosa trees. Not being able to stalk them, he relied on speed, and chased the beautiful animals a long distance, but was unable to get a shot, owing to the dense undergrowth which they ran into.

On the next day the party arrived in Latooka, only to find that small-pox had broken out in a virulent form, and the disease was soon communicated to the Turkish camp. In addition to this misfortune, two of Baker's best horses died, as did **A TERRIBLE AFFLICTION.** also three camels and five donkeys, while his wife was laid up with gastric fever. Although the entire journey, since leaving Gondokoro, had been little else than a succession of misfortunes, none had equaled those which they were now experiencing. The Turkish camp was reeking with small-pox, and Baker, as a precaution, had to change his quarters and pay special attention to his men to avoid the pestilence. To add to their other troubles, Moy and Commoro induced the Turks to join them in an attack upon a Kayala village, from which a great many cows were stolen, and sixty-five women killed, but the Turks were forced to retreat. Thus more enemies were made, who might at any time attack Latooka in return, and overwhelm Baker with the rest, for the natives of Kayala were powerful and warlike.

The position of affairs now became so desperate that the Turks decided to proceed once more to Obbo, and as Baker was dependent entirely upon them, he was compelled to follow.

Upon reaching that place again, they found the people on the verge of **BACK TO OBBO.** starvation; the small-pox had also broken out among them, and they were dying rapidly from this dreadful plague. In addition to their other calamities, the Turks had robbed the natives of nearly everything, so that it was impossible to buy either cows or oxen. Soon after their return Baker's last horse died, and both himself and wife became excessively ill from bilious fever, so that neither could assist the other. The kind old chief, hearing that they were dying, came to charm them with his magic. He found the invalids lying helpless, and immediately procured a small branch of a tree, and filling his mouth with water, he squirted it over the leaves and about the floor of the hut; he then waved the branch around his patients' heads, and completed the ceremony by sticking it in the thatch above the doorway; he told them they should now get better, and thus perfectly satisfied, he took his leave. The hut was swarming with rats and white ants; the former racing over them during the night, and burrowing through the floor, filled their only room with mounds like mole-hills. As fast as the holes were stopped, others were made with determined perseverance. Having a supply of arsenic, Baker gave them an entertainment, the effect being disagreeable to all parties, as the rats died in their holes and created a horrible effluvium, while fresh hosts took the place of the departed. Now and

then a snake would be seen gliding within the thatch, having taken shelter from the pouring rain. The animals were no better off, for they were attacked by the dreadful tsetse fly, so that they soon had no hair left on their bodies, and died one after another.

After two months of severe illness, Baker and his wife were sufficiently recovered to be out again, and they decided to pay a morning call to chief Katchiba. He received them very politely, and begged them to enter his principal residence.

Creeping on all fours through the narrow doorway, they found themselves in the presence of one of the chief's wives, who was preparing merissa beer. The whole establishment appeared to be devoted to the brewing of this drink, of which Katchiba was excessively fond. The apartment contained several immense jars, holding about thirty gallons each, in one of which the chief had stored the presents that he had received, among the rest a red flannel shirt which Baker had given him, and which he considered exceedingly *recherche*. Several dressed ox-hides were spread on the ground, and the chief invited his visitors to be seated, Mrs. Baker on the right and her husband on the left. Then, after the beer had been passed around, and Katchiba had taken enough to warm himself up pretty well, the delightful old sorcerer called for his harp, and after tuning it, politely asked his visitors "if he should sing?"

A VISIT TO KATCHIBA.



BAKER'S HUT IN LATOOKA.

Prepared for something comic, they begged him to begin, and he sang, to their surprise, a most plaintive, wild, but pleasing air, accompanying himself perfectly on the harp. Music, dancing, and drinking beer were Katchiba's principal amusements, and he excelled in all of them. The entertainment over, he led a sheep in by a string, and begged his guests to accept it; but they politely declined, saying they did not expect a present, but had merely called on him as friends. He accordingly handed the sheep to his wife, and they departed; but on arriving at their own camp, they found the sheep awaiting them. The following day Katchiba returned their visit in great state, carrying a large red flag made from a piece of cloth the Turks had given him, and accompanied by two men beating drums and another blowing a sort of clarinet.

While waiting at Obbo, Baker's hopes were somewhat revived by an Unyoro slave woman, who gave him a very good account of the Luta N'zige, which she described as a large lake, lying in almost the exact latitude in which Baker expected to find the Albert

N'yanze—the object of his expedition, but the Asua River was still too badly swollen to be crossed safely ; so he continued in Obbo, oppressed with fever and the knowledge that the Turks were stirring up the natives to war, on account of their thievery. On the seventeenth of October, Baker concludes an entry in his journal, chiefly descriptive of the symptoms of an approaching fever, as follows : “My stock of quinine is reduced to a few grains, and my work lies before me ; my cattle are all dead. We are both weakened by repeated fever, and traveling must be on foot.”

The rains finally ceased, and beautiful crops were growing, which, however, were seriously threatened by elephants, large herds of which went prowling at night, eating and trampling the crisp tullaboon plants—a grain somewhat resembling corn. Although weak and feverish, yet like a true hunter, Baker was anxious to secure some of the big game, the meat of which he knew would be very acceptable to the half-famished natives. So, taking his servant, they went about half a mile from the village, and dug a hole in which to hide, and at night the watch began. Baker reports the result as follows:

**KILLING AN ELEPHANT AS
LARGE AS JUMBO.**

“There was no sound throughout the night. I was well wrapped up in a Scotch plaid, but an attack of ague came on, and I shivered as though in Lapland. I had several rifles in the grave ; among others the ‘Baby,’ that carried a half-pound explosive shell. At about 4 a. m. I heard the distant trumpet of an elephant, and I immediately ordered Richarn to watch, and to report to me their arrival. It was extremely dark, but Richarn presently sank slowly down, and whispered, ‘Here they are!’

“Taking the ‘Baby,’ I quietly rose, and listening attentively, I could distinctly hear the elephants tearing off the heads of the tullaboon, and crunching the crisp grain. I could distinguish the dark forms of the herd about thirty paces from me, but much too indistinct for a shot. I stood with my elbows resting on the edge of the hole, and the heavy rifle balanced, waiting for an opportunity. I had a paper sight arranged for night shooting, and several times tried to get the line of an elephant’s shoulder, but to no purpose. While waiting, I suddenly heard a trumpet close to my left, and quickly perceived an elephant walking toward my grave. I waited, with the rifle to my shoulder, until he was within about twelve paces ; I then whistled, and he stopped and turned, exposing his side. Taking the line of the foreleg, I fired at the shoulder. The tremendous flash and smoke of ten drachms of powder completely blinded me, and the sudden reaction of darkness increased the obscurity.”

The result of Baker’s shot could not be determined that night, but early in the morning a short search discovered the elephant standing about ten yards in the grass jungle, so nearly dead on its feet that it fell over upon making an attempt to move, and expired. It was so large that Baker took its measurement, and found it to be ten feet six and one-half inches in height. The word being given, a crowd of waiting natives rushed upon the huge carcass, and about three hundred people were soon attacking it with knives and lances. About a dozen men were working inside as though in a tunnel ; they had chosen this locality as being near to the fat, which was greatly coveted.

A few days after killing the elephant, Baker fired the grass, and then strolled over the burnt ground in quest of game. Although elephants were plentiful, not a single one could be found, and he was returning to his hut greatly disappointed, when there suddenly sprang out from a hole in his pathway a wild boar and sow, and the former viciously attacked him. It was a moment of extreme peril, but quick action and a steady aim saved his life. He fired at the vicious beast and killed it almost at

A WILD BOAR.

the muzzle of the gun. The natives were soon apprised of the lucky shot, and as they value pork above all other meat, the boar was very quickly cut up and a feast prepared.

It is a singular fact that the wild pigs of the Obbo country live underground; the manis, or great scaled ant-eater, burrows in a considerable excavation, which habitations the pigs enter, dispossess the manis, and, enlarging the retreat, make it their abode.

January had now arrived, and though enfeebled by fever and seriously inconvenienced by the loss of his pack-animals, Baker determined to proceed south in quest of the great lake which he believed formed the chief source of the Nile. Reports which Ibrahim received from Kamrasi's kingdom to the south, in regard to the abundance of ivory there, prompted the Turk to accompany him, particularly since neither slaves nor ivory had been secured in the Latooka or Obbo countries. In fact, up to this time both expeditions had been

**DEPARTURE FOR
KAMRASI'S COUNTRY.**



AN ELEPHANT BANQUET PROVIDED.

practically failures, as hardships had been constant, and progress retarded by incessant difficulties. Ibrahim had a force of more than two hundred men, and this made his company very agreeable to Baker, who, if alone, must have fallen a victim to the murderous Bari tribes, whose business was war and plunder, and through whose country they were compelled to pass.

Katchiba, who had become extremely fond of his white guests, was induced to sell Baker three oxen, which were purchased to be ridden, as these were more serviceable for the purpose than any other animals in that country. On the fifth of January the combined party started on their journey, Mrs. Baker riding one of the oxen and her indomitable husband

another, while the third was loaded with supplies. On account of extreme shyness the ox which Baker rode was unharnessed and driven a while until it should become accustomed to the people, but the moment it was loosed it ran off with all possible speed into the jungle, and was never seen again. They had not gone far when a large fly fastened on the rump of Mrs. Baker's ox, the effect of which was to produce so sudden a kick and plunge that she was thrown to the ground with much violence, bruising and stunning her. Ibrahim very civilly gave her another ox, however, which she was fortunately still able to ride; but Baker had no other alternative than to walk, although he was so weak that several times the



VILLAGE SCENE IN OBBO.

caravan had to halt to allow him to rest; but he continued the march until they arrived at Farajoke, eighteen miles from Obbo, where he purchased another ox.

On the thirteenth of January, 1863, they reached a town called Shooa, where they received a most friendly welcome, and found the place, in figurative language, "flowing with milk and honey." Fowls, butter, goats, etc., were in abundance and very cheap; beads were of great value, as few had ever reached that country. The women flocked to see Mrs. Baker, bringing presents of milk and flour, and receiving beads and bracelets in exchange. The people were like those of Obbo in language and appearance, exceedingly

**A COUNTRY FLOWING
WITH MILK AND HONEY.**

mild in their manner, and anxious to be on good terms. Vegetable cultivation in this country was superior to anything they had seen, and the people appeared to be in a highly prosperous condition.

Remaining in Shooa five days to recruit and perfect their plans for the future, they proceeded on their way, and after a march of eight miles came to the village of Fatiko. In a short while the natives assembled around them; they were wonderfully friendly, and insisted upon a personal introduction to both **THE POLITE FATIKOANS.** Baker and his wife, as they were the first white people the natives had ever seen. They were thus compelled to hold a levee; not the passive and cold ceremony of the whites, but a most active undertaking, as each native that was introduced performed the salaam of his country, by seizing both of his visitor's hands and raising the



FERRY AT THE VILLAGE OF ATADA.

arms three times to their full stretch above the head. After about one hundred natives had been thus gratified, Baker gave the order to saddle the oxen immediately, and they escaped a further proof of Fatiko affection that was already preparing, as masses of natives were streaming down the rocks hurrying to be introduced. Notwithstanding the fatigue of the ceremony, Baker took a great fancy to these poor people; they had prepared a quantity of merissa and a sheep for their lunch, which they begged their guests to remain and enjoy before they started; but the pumping action of half a village was too much; and mounting their oxen, with aching shoulders, the Baker party bade adieu to Fatiko.

After several days' marching through a most lovely country, they approached the falls of Karuma, close to the village of Atada. The heights were crowded with natives, and a

canoe was sent across to within parleying distance. Bacheeta, the black woman who acted as interpreter, now explained that "*Speke's brother* had arrived from his country to pay Kamrasi a visit, and had brought him valuable presents." "Why has he brought so many men with him?" inquired the people from the canoe. "There are so many presents for the king that he has many men to carry them," shouted Bacheeta. "Let us look at him," cried the headman in

the boat; and having prepared for the introduction by changing his clothes to a tweed suit, something similar to that worn by Speke, Baker climbed up a high and almost perpendicular rock that formed a natural pinnacle on the face of the cliff, and waving his cap to the crowd on the opposite side, he instructed Bacheeta to shout to the people that an English lady, his wife, had also arrived, and that they wished immediately to be presented to the king and his family, as they had come to thank him for his kind treatment of Speke and Grant, who

had arrived safe in their own country. Upon this being explained and repeated several times, the canoe approached the shore. Baker ordered all the people to retire, and to conceal themselves among the plantains, that the natives might not be startled by so imposing a force, while he and Mrs. Baker advanced alone to meet Kamrasi's people, who were men of some importance. Upon landing through the high reeds, they immediately recognized the similarity of Baker's beard and general complexion to that of Speke; and their welcome



IRON SMITHS OF UNYORO.

was at once displayed by the most extravagant dancing and gesticulating with lances and shields, as though intending to attack, rushing at the travelers with the points of their lances thrust close to their faces, and shouting and singing in great excitement.

The difference between the people of Unyoro (Kamrasi's country) and the tribes they had hitherto seen was most striking. On the north side of the river the natives were either stark naked or wore a mere apology for clothing, in the shape of a skin slung across their shoulders; the river appeared to be the limit of utter savagedom, and the people of Unyoro considered the indecency of nakedness precisely in the same light as among Europeans. The men wore robes of dark cloth arranged in various fashions, generally either like the Arab "tope," or the Roman toga.

In spite of the very friendly reception, the explorers were still not permitted to cross the river. Only a few months before a party of Arabs had allied themselves with Rionga, Kamrasi's deadly enemy, and made an attack on the latter's people, slaying three hundred of them. This made the king suspicious of all strangers, and he had given strict orders

that none should be ferried across the river. The travelers were therefore compelled to remain on the opposite bank two days longer, but finally succeeded, through a liberal display of presents and the use of various stratagems, in getting over the stream.

Still their troubles were not ended, and it was some time before Baker was permitted to have an interview with the king. He and his wife were both so prostrated with fever at this time that they had to be carried in litters, and Kamrasi's procrastination worried them greatly. Finally it was announced that the king was ready to receive them, and although more fit for a hospital than an interview, Baker instructed his men to carry him into the presence of the African potentate. He was shortly laid on a mat at the king's feet, whom he found to be a fine-looking man, but with a peculiar expression of countenance, owing to his extremely prominent eyes; he was about six feet tall, beautifully clean, and was dressed in a long robe of bark-cloth most gracefully folded. The nails of his fingers and toes were carefully attended, and his complexion was about as dark a brown as that of an Abyssinian. He sat upon a copper stool placed upon a carpet of leopard skins, and was surrounded by about ten of his principal chiefs, all of whom rendered the most abject homage, while the persons who ventured near his august presence grovelled in the dirt and demeaned themselves as though they were afraid his very look might strike them dead. His wives, whom he possessed by scores, were distinguished from other women of the village by a more cleanly appearance, and, except the elder, were generally good looking and animated, but they manifested great fear of the royal scowl, and were as circumspect of their conduct as the meanest subject.

This interview proved to be a pleasant one, and after explaining that the object of his visit to Unyoro was to find the great lake from which the Nile flows, Baker ordered his men to unpack a Persian carpet, which was spread upon the ground before the king. He then gave him a large white Cashmere mantle, a red silk netted sash, a pair of scarlet Turkish shoes, several pairs of socks, a double-barreled gun and ammunition, and a great heap of first-class beads made up into gorgeous necklaces and girdles. Kamrasi took very little notice of the presents, but requested that the gun might be fired off. This was done, to the utter confusion of the crowd, who rushed away in such haste that they tumbled over each other like so many rabbits; this delighted the king, who, although himself startled, now roared with laughter. He told Baker that he must be hungry and thirsty, therefore he hoped he would accept something to eat and drink; accordingly, he presented him with seventeen cows, twenty pots of sour plantain cider, and many loads of unripe plantains.

On the following morning the king visited Baker in his hut, and solicited him to join in an expedition against Rionga. This request was declined, as the explorers could not afford to embroil themselves with any of the natives. Baker was extremely anxious to proceed, as he and his wife were both sick and out of medicine; so he importuned Kamrasi for porters and guides. These were readily promised—"to-morrow." But the king's promises resulted in nothing; he was determined to keep the travelers with him, if possible, as long as they had anything to give. He continued to put them off from day to day, constantly begging for everything he saw, being particularly anxious to secure Baker's watch, which was the last one he had, and could not be parted with. Speke had given Kamrasi several watches, also a chronometer and compass, but all these were now "dead," as the king declared, and he wanted at least one "live one." In many respects this royal chieftain was scarcely above a child in disposition, not only being intensely delighted with gew-gaws, but he was equally jealous, capricious, and cowardly, startling with the least unusual noise, suspicious of every new face, and ready to flee with terror at the approach of any person whose object he did not fully understand.

CHAPTER XIII.

MARCH THROUGH THE KINGDOM OF UNYORO.

After a provoking and unreasonable delay of three weeks at Unyoro, Kamrasi provided porters and guides and suffered Baker to depart, Ibrahim remaining; but at the first camping-place, about ten miles on the journey, the king overtook the party for the purpose, he explained, of taking a final leave, but in reality to try again for the watch and the other things which his previous importunities had failed to secure. Baker gave him some handkerchiefs and several opal beads, but again refused to give him the watch, as parting with the only timepiece in the company would cause much inconvenience, while it could be of no service to the king. All his argument with the greedy savage was of no avail, and when he again requested leave to depart, Kamrasi, in the coolest manner, replied, "I will send you to the lake, as I have promised; but *you must leave your wife with me.*" This insult so incensed Baker that, drawing his revolver and placing its muzzle within two feet of the king, he told him that should he dare to repeat such language he would shoot him on the spot, at the same time explaining that in England such insolence would be certain to provoke bloodshed. Mrs. Baker also gave expression to her indignation in such a way that the king, no doubt, was glad his proposition was not accepted. "Don't be angry!" he exclaimed; I had no intention of offending you by asking for your wife; I will give you a wife if you want one, and I thought you might have no objection to give me yours; it is my custom to give my visitors pretty wives, and I thought you might exchange. Don't make a fuss about it; if you don't like it, there's an end of it; I will never mention it again." Baker received this very practical apology sternly, and insisted upon starting. The king seemed rather confused at having committed himself, and to make amends he called his people and ordered them to carry the loads. His men ordered a number of women who had assembled out of curiosity to shoulder the luggage and carry it to the next village, where they would be relieved. Baker assisted his wife upon her ox, and with a very cold adieu to Kamrasi, they turned their backs gladly upon that country.

Notwithstanding his enfeebled condition, Baker rejoiced that he was finally rid of the persistent old beggar, and the cavalcade moved southward along the banks of the Kafoor

River with excellent progress. As they approached the next village, at
A SATANIC GUARD. least six hundred men came rushing out with spears and lances to receive them. Baker's men thought they were to be attacked, but his experienced judgment told him different, for women and children were mixed up with the crowd of natives, which is never the case when an attack is intended.

"With a rush like a cloud of locusts," says Baker, "the natives closed around us, dancing, gesticulating, and yelling before my ox, feigning to attack us with spears and shields, then engaging in sham fights with each other, and behaving like so many madmen. A very tall chief accompanied them. One of their men was suddenly knocked down and attacked by the crowd with sticks and lances, and lay on the ground covered with blood; what his offence had been I did not hear. The entire crowd were most grotesquely gotten up, being dressed in either leopard or white monkey skins, with cows' tails strapped on behind, and antelopes' horns fitted upon their heads, while their chins were ornamented with false beards, made of the bushy ends of cows' tails sewed together. Altogether, I

never saw a more unearthly set of creatures; they were perfect illustrations of my childish ideas of devils—horns, tails, and all, excepting the hoofs; they were our escorts furnished by Kamrasi to accompany us to the lake."

The expedition moved forward, and on the sixth day out, having made a detour, came again upon the Kafoor River, at a bend where it became necessary to cross it. The stream was in the centre of a marsh, and although deep, it was so covered with thickly matted water-grass, and other aquatic plants, that a natural floating bridge was formed two feet thick, over which it was possible to pass by stepping quickly. Baker started across with his wife following, but when near mid-stream he looked back and was horrified to see her standing still, sinking gradually through the weeds, while her face was distorted and purple. Rushing to her side, he found her insensible, and quickly calling two of the men to his

**AN HOUR OF SOREST
TRIAL.**



BAKER'S RECEPTION BY KAMRASI'S SATANIC GUARD.

assistance, they dragged her to the shore, for if they had attempted to carry her, all would have sunk through the grass bridge into the water beneath.

On reaching the shore, Mrs. Baker was laid under a tree, and her face and hands were bathed, but she continued insensible, as though dead, with teeth and hands firmly clenched, and eyes open but fixed. A litter was hastily constructed, upon which she was carried mournfully forward like a corpse. Every few minutes a halt was necessary, as a painful rattling in the throat betokened suffocation, which an elevation of her head could alone relieve. At night the poor woman was laid in a hut and carefully attended by her husband, but she remained unconscious. For three days and nights she lay in a comatose state, every fleeting breath anxiously watched by her distracted companion. The third morning dawned, and Baker thus describes what came with it:

**MRS. BAKER SEIZED
WITH MADNESS.**

"My lamp had just burned out, and, cramped with the night's watching, I rose from my low seat, and seeing that she lay in the same unaltered state, I went to the door of the hut to breathe one gasp of the fresh morning air. I was watching the first red streak that heralded the rising sun, when I was startled by the words, 'Thank God,' faintly uttered behind me. Suddenly she awoke from her torpor, and with a heart overflowing I went to her bedside. Her eyes were full of madness! She spoke, but the brain was gone!"

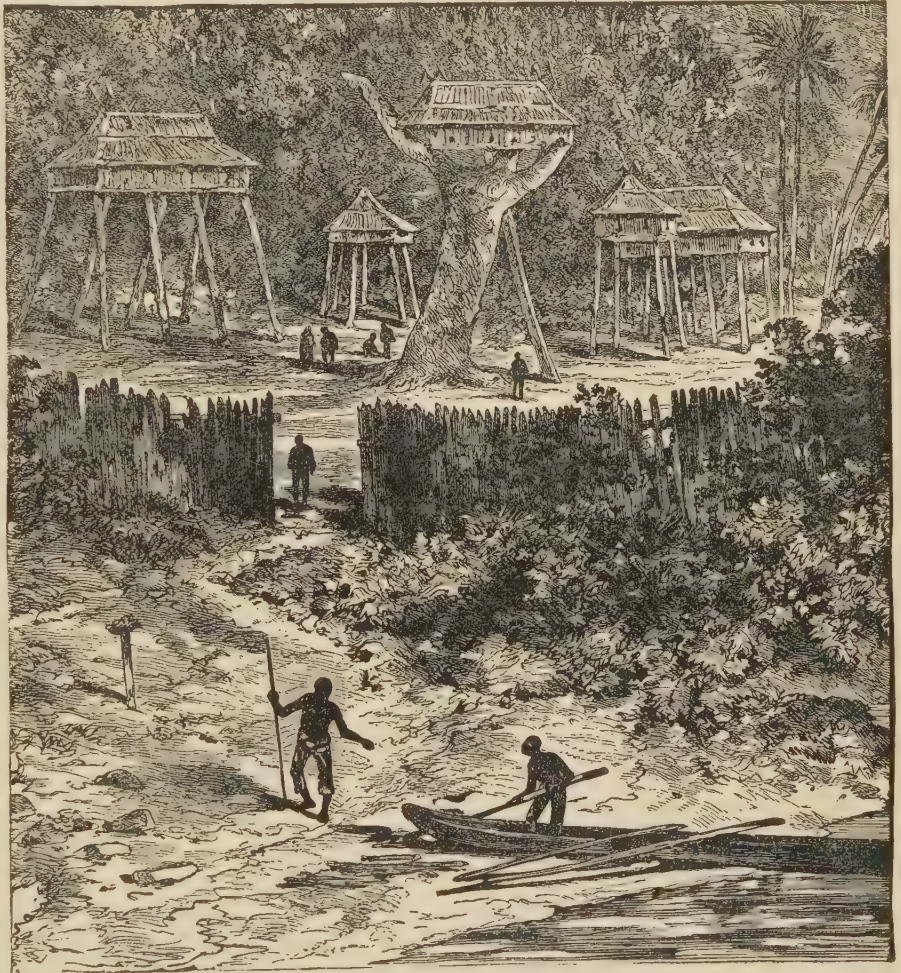
Brain fever now set in, and lasted seven days, during all of which time they were compelled to travel, as they could not remain in one place. At last, on the seventh morning, broken down with watching and fatigue, Baker fell asleep. He says: "The sun had risen when I awoke. I had slept, and horrified as the idea flashed upon me that she must be dead, and that I had not been with her, I started up. She lay upon her bed, pale as marble, and with that calm serenity that the features assume when the cares of life no longer act upon the mind, and the body rests in death. The dreadful thought bowed me down; but as I gazed upon her in fear, her chest gently heaved, not with the convulsive throbs of fever, but naturally. She was asleep; and when at a sudden noise she opened her eyes, they were calm and clear. She was saved! When not a ray of hope remained, God alone knows what helped us. The gratitude of that moment I will not attempt to describe."

They now remained in camp two days, to afford Mrs. Baker rest, but she gained very slowly in strength, having neither medicine nor any of the delicacies so necessary to a sick person. It was finally decided to proceed on the journey, and carry her in a litter, which was so arranged as to make her as comfortable as possible.

The guides informed Baker that the place where they were camping was only one day's journey from the great lake, and that night he slept but little. For years he had striven to reach the "sources of the Nile," and after so much hard work, suffering and perseverance the cup was at his lips—before another sun would set his eyes would rest upon the great reservoir of Nature that ever since creation had baffled all discovery. The weary but triumphant explorer can best describe his own feelings on this great occasion. "The sun had not risen," he says, "when I was spurring my ox after the guide, who, having been promised a double handful of beads on arrival at the lake, had caught the enthusiasm of the moment. The day broke beautifully clear, and having crossed a deep valley between the hills, we toiled up the opposite slope. I hurried to the summit. The glory of our prize burst suddenly upon me! There, like a sea of quicksilver, lay far beneath the grand expanse of water,—a boundless sea horizon on the south and southwest, glittering in the noonday sun; and on the west, at fifty or sixty miles distance, blue mountains rose from the bosom of the lake to a height of about 7000 feet above its level. It is impossible to describe the triumph of that moment;—here was the reward for all our labor—for the years of tenacity with which we had toiled through Africa. England had won the sources of the Nile! Long before I reached this spot, I had arranged to give three cheers with all our men in English style in honor of the discovery, but now that I looked down upon the great inland sea lying nestled in the very heart of Africa, and thought how vainly mankind had sought these sources throughout so many ages, and reflected that I had been the humble instrument permitted to unravel this portion of the great mystery when so many others greater than I had failed, I felt too serious to vent my feelings in vain cheers for victory, and I sincerely thanked God for having guided and supported me through all dangers to the good end. We were about 1500 feet above the lake, and I looked down from the steep granite cliff upon those welcome

waters—upon that vast reservoir which nourished Egypt and brought fertility where all was wilderness—upon that great source so long hidden from mankind; that source of bounty and of blessings to millions of human beings; and as one of the greatest objects in nature I determined to honor it with a great name. As an imperishable memorial of one loved and mourned by our gracious Queen and deplored by every Englishman, I called the great lake ‘the Albert N’yanza.’ The Victoria and the Albert lakes are the two sources of the Nile. My wife, who had followed me so devotedly, stood by my side, pale and exhausted—a wreck upon the shores of the great Albert Lake that we had so long striven to reach. No European foot had ever trod upon its sand, nor had the eyes of a white man ever scanned its vast expanse of water. We were the first; and this was the key to the great secret that even Julius Cæsar yearned to unravel, but in vain.”

They painfully descended to the lake shore, assisting one another down the steep cliff, both being so weak from sickness and fatigue that they could scarcely walk. On the beach they found a small village, called Vavovia, the inhabitants of which were fishers, as evidenced by the large amount of crude tackle displayed before every hut. The soil was so impregnated with salt as to unfit it for cultivation, and yet salt itself was most difficult to procure—impossible in a pure state. The process employed by the natives to secure this necessary article, was by placing quantities of the saline mud in vessels and allowing it to drain through perforations in the bottom; this drainage was submitted to a cleansing process of imperfect distillation, and then boiled. The product, though salt, is very bitter and unpleasant to the taste. In other sections of Africa the means for manufacturing salt are equally defective. At Latooka,



ELEVATED HUTS ON THE SHORES OF ALBERT N'YANZE.

for example, it is made chiefly of goats' dung, which is burned to ashes ; these are saturated, after which the water is strained and evaporated by boiling. Another, much poorer, quality is made of a peculiar grass, that has a thick, fleshy stem, something like sugar-cane. This is reduced to ashes, which are subjected to a similar process. So precious is English salt in Africa that the natives will eat it by handfuls with the greatest relish, and will barter supplies for it more readily than for beads or other trinkets.

Vacovia is about one hundred and fifty miles, coast-line, from where the lake has its outlet in the Nile River. The season was very late and Baker was exceedingly anxious to get back to Gondokoro before the last of April, in time for the annual trading

A SAIL ON boats from Khartoum, which, if he missed, he would be delayed another year
ALBERT LAKE. in reaching England. Traveling by land had become very monotonous and painful, and besides, all the party were sick of fever, so they now prepared to journey in canoes as far as possible. After a stay of eight days in Vacovia, they started in two canoes, the carrying capacity of each being twenty-five men and necessary luggage. The first day's voyage was delightful, the air being bracing, though the temperature was very warm. Hippopotami and crocodiles were numerous, both in and out of the water, lying along the banks or sporting near the shore. At night a camp was made close by a small village, from which a few fowls and one young kid were purchased. In the morning Baker discovered that all the oarsmen, whom Kamrasi had furnished him, had absconded. His party was now reduced to his own force of thirteen men, but his progress was not materially affected, for in the evening he secured twenty more oarsmen from the next village.

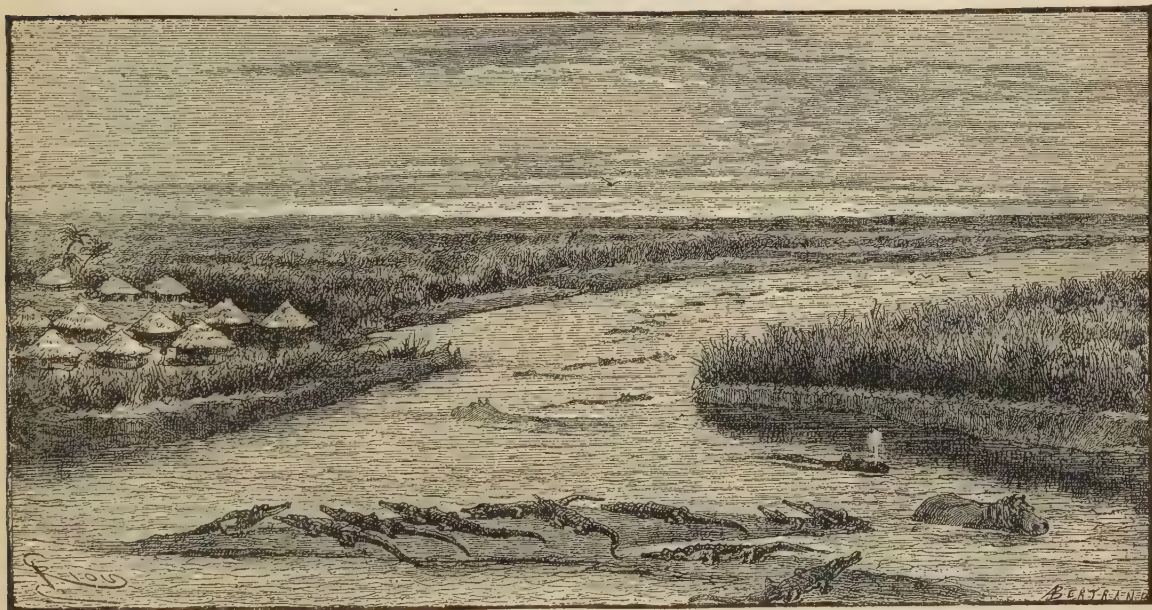
On the next day a bay had to be crossed that was eight miles wide, and while nearly in the centre of it a storm arose, which came so near swamping the boats that the most desperate bailing by all hands barely kept them afloat. They steered toward the beach, and just as the canoes struck the sand a large wave overwhelmed them and left them struggling in the water, while all the provisions were destroyed. Fortunately, a village was near by, and the party took possession of some huts, dried their clothes, and as far as possible repaired their losses. They remained here two days, entertained by the natives, who, in addition to supplying them with food, honored them with music, dancing, and games. Baker was much interested in their musical instruments, which were curiously and ingeniously made, and produced a harmony which, though wild, was not discordant.

Directly after leaving this village, Baker killed a large crocodile, measuring sixteen feet in length, which his men soon cut up into chunks ready for the pot ; but he could not relish such meat, as it had a combined flavor of bad fish, decayed flesh, and musk.

Large herds of elephants and great numbers of hippopotami were almost continually in sight, but time was too precious to give them any attention. Owing to severe thunder storms which broke during every afternoon, traveling had to be suspended at mid-day ; nevertheless, on the thirteenth day out from Vacovia they landed at the mouth of the Somerset River where it empties into Albert Lake.
BAKER'S
GREATEST MISTAKE. From this point, with the aid of their glasses the explorers could plainly see the outlet of the main Nile, some thirty miles to the northwest of them, from whence they could trace its line northward to the Madi country, through which they had passed on their outward journey. Mrs. Baker, though still too weak to walk, and suffering greatly from fever, proposed, with Spartan heroism, that they should follow the lake to the head of the Nile, and then proceed down the stream in canoes, so as to prove beyond a doubt that they had really discovered the principal source of the great river. But the guides declared that it would be impossible to descend the rapids, and

that they would be beset by hostile natives who would dispute every mile of their journey, and murder them before they could reach a place of safety. Similar objections were urged against Stanley attempting to descend the Congo, a few years later, but instead of heeding them he relied upon his own judgment and accomplished the feat, as related elsewhere in this volume, and proved himself, next to Livingstone, the most determined explorer that ever visited Africa. Had Baker followed the advice and wishes of his heroic wife, he would have settled the Nile question beyond all dispute, and reached home fully a year sooner than he did. But some allowance must be made for his sick and dispirited condition, and due honor be accorded him for the perseverance and daring he displayed on all occasions. The only regret is that, having come so near the solution of the great problem, he did not fully prove it.

He decided that it was not advisable to attempt a return by way of the Nile, but



SCENE ON SOMERSET RIVER.

that their proper course was to ascend the Somerset River to the falls, and then proceed overland to Unyoro, returning from thence by the same route they had come. Accordingly, after resting two days and procuring food from the natives, they proceeded up the river in canoes, reaching the falls at a distance of eighteen miles from the lake. Here the river plunges, at one leap, over a precipice one hundred and twenty feet deep into an abyss below, forming one of the grandest waterfalls on the known globe. Baker named these Murchison Falls, in honor of the President of the Royal Geographical Society of England. The river below the falls is one hundred and eighty feet wide, clear and sluggish; in fact, the current is almost imperceptible. The banks, at places, are high and precipitous; but the beach is generally flat and sandy, and crocodiles are so numerous that a hundred or more may be counted without moving from one position. While Baker was sketching the falls, a crocodile came up so near the canoe that he shot it; the noise of the gun frightened the native canoe-men so badly that they dropped their paddles and allowed the boat to swing around on to some rushes, when a hippopotamus, surprised in its retreat, rushed under the canoe and almost

capsized it. The thought of being dumped out among thousands of voracious crocodiles was anything but agreeable, so a landing was quickly made to await the riding oxen that had been sent overland and were expected the following day.

True to appointment, the oxen came, but their condition was so bad from fly bites that they were scarcely able to walk, so that riding them was out of the question. The overland journey now began by ascending to the high plateau far above the falls. Baker and his wife were again stricken down with fever, so that she had to be carried, while he was barely able to proceed by the aid of a staff. In this miserable condition they continued on to the next village through a drenching rain. On reaching the village, they were placed in a hut so badly dilapidated that the clouds overhead were visible through its leaky roof; nevertheless, this was the best that could be done, and here they lay on an ox hide, spread upon the soggy ground, all night, while torrents of water poured over them continually.

At this place the guide and porters previously furnished by Kamrasi deserted them, the intention apparently being to leave them in this sickly and destitute locality until they

should either die or Baker with his force of thirteen men would agree to join the king in his war on Rionga. During their journey to the lake the latter had been reinforced by a party of Turks under a half-civilized leader named Debono, and Kamrasi found it impossible to withstand this combined force. He had sent repeatedly to Baker, asking his assistance, which the latter refused; but now it seemed that he was determined to force compliance with his wishes. But rather than die the death of a dog, or be forced to accede to the demands of the brutal Kamrasi, Baker determined, sick and feeble as he and his wife were, to move on and trust to providence.

A day's journey through grass eight feet high brought the party to a burned and deserted village, and here they halted in another torrent of rain, the invalids being now so sick that they could not bear even the motion of a litter. While in this most hopeless and wretched condition, one of Kamrasi's head men appeared and promised food and porters in abundance if Baker and his men would join the king in the war against Rionga and Debono. In the desperation of his situation, Baker asked to be taken to Kamrasi, leading the ambassador to believe that his terms would be accepted. A few hours afterward oxen were produced and slaughtered, while several cows were furnished to supply the party with milk. A feast followed, which came none too early, for the entire party were almost dead from starvation.

The travelers, being somewhat refreshed by the milk, were carried to another village to meet the king. On their arrival they found a hut fitted up with all the comforts possible in that country, and soon thereafter announcement was made that the king was present.

In a few moments the king entered the hut, and with a coarse laugh said: "Well, here you are at last. So you have been to the M'wootan N'zige! Well, you don't look much the better for it. Why, I should not have known you! ha! ha! ha!"

MEETING WITH A SPURIOUS KING. Baker was in no condition to enjoy facetious remarks, and upbraided the royal brute for so basely deceiving him and suffering him to almost die of starvation. "Never mind," he replied, "it's all over now; you really are thin, both of you; it was your own fault; why did you not agree to fight Rionga? You should have been supplied with fat cows and milk and butter, had you behaved well. I will have my men ready to attack Rionga to-morrow; the Turks have ten men; you have thirteen—thirteen and ten make twenty-three—you shall be carried if you can't walk, and we will give Rionga no chance—he must be killed—only kill him—and MY BROTHER will

give you half of his kingdom." He continued, "You shall have supplies to-morrow; I will go to my *brother*, who is the great M'Kamma Kamrasi, and he will send you all you require. I am a little man, he is a big one; I have nothing, he has everything, and he longs to see you; you must go to him directly; he lives close by." Baker hardly knew whether the man was drunk or sober—"my brother, the great M'Kamma Kamrasi!" He felt bewildered with astonishment, and asked, "If you are not Kamrasi, pray who are you?" "Who am I?" he replied; "that's very good; who am I?—why, I am M'Gambi, the brother of Kamrasi,—I am the younger brother, but *he is the king*."

**FIGHT RIONGA
OR STARVE.**

This circumstance illustrated the almost incredible deceit of the country. Baker had never actually seen the king up to this time, though he had given so many presents to the man who had personated Kamrasi, believing that by so doing he was securing the king's



AN AUDIENCE WITH KING KAMRASI.

friendship and aid. He hardly knew how to act, but the pale face of his very sick wife admonished prudence. He therefore requested to be taken to Kamrasi at once; but this was not according to royal custom, for the king had first to be apprised of the intended visit. A messenger being therefore dispatched, soon returned with word from Kamrasi to have the white man brought to his palace on the following day.

Baker's clothes had been worn to rags, and his wan and haggard features made him truly an ill-looking object; so he determined to present a somewhat improved appearance before the king. This he accomplished by putting off his rags and substituting a full-dress Highland suit, which he had carried with him, but never worn. The change thus effected was so great that his own men hardly recognized him. He was carried in the litter a half hour's journey from his hut and deposited at the palace door, and was soon thereafter in the presence of Kamrasi. The reception, instead of being cordial, was cold and formal. The

old king scowled on his guest, but gave him no greeting, nor did a single word pass between them for five minutes or more. M'Gambi, who had played king, was among the chiefs who surrounded Kamrasi, but he occupied a seat on the ground, thus proving how really unimportant he was.

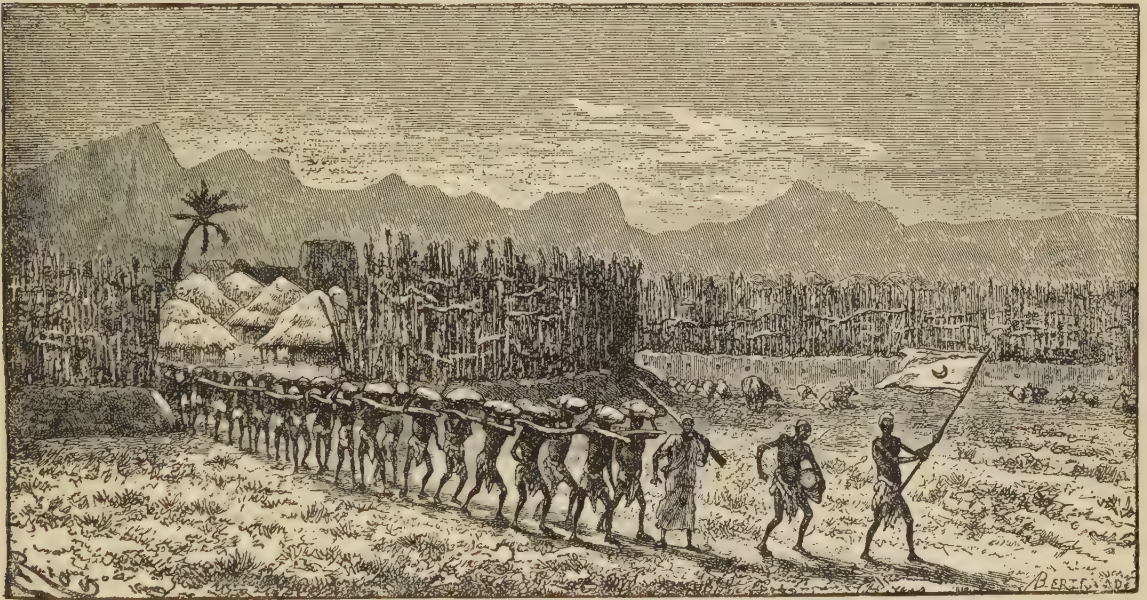
At length the king asked Baker why he had not visited him before. "Because I had been starved in this country and was unable to walk," was the reply. A conversation ensued, but of little satisfaction. Kamrasi justified the personating of himself by his brother upon the ground that he was not certain but that Baker was an ally of Debono. He then began to beg, as usual, asking for the Highland suit, watch, compass and rifle, all of which Baker refused, telling him that he was certainly not the real Kamrasi, as a great king could not be such an inveterate beggar.

In personal appearance Kamrasi was a remarkably fine-looking man, tall and well proportioned, with a handsome face of dark-brown color, but his expression was peculiarly sinister. He was beautifully clean, and instead of wearing the bark-cloth common among the Unyoro people, he was dressed with an elegant mantle of black and white goat-skins, as soft as chamois. His officers sat on the ground at some distance from his throne. When they approached to address him on any subject, they crawled upon their hands and knees to his feet, and touched the ground with their foreheads. Kamrasi, though acting very coolly, dismissed Baker with an assurance that his wants should be attended to, and on the same evening sent him two loads of flour, a goat and two jars of plantain cider.

Kisoonna was the name of the town where they were now encamped, and since the boats had no doubt already left Gondokoro, Baker gave himself no further concern about continuing his journey. The fever was still so tenacious in its hold upon himself and wife that they were unable to walk, but fortunately they had an abundance of milk, which being allowed to curdle before using, gave such nourishment that both rapidly increased in flesh, though but little in strength. Upon the recommendation of the Turks under Ibrahim, who had remained with Kamrasi during the journey to the lake, Baker procured a quantity of castor-oil plants, and every morning he had a portion of them boiled in a large pot, and then steamed himself over the vessel. This remedy proved to be so beneficial that in two weeks the fever had left him. The plantain cider was also health-giving, because it created an appetite, and was an excellent stimulant. The method of cider-making was simple. The fruit was buried in a deep hole and covered with straw and earth; at the expiration of about eight days the green plantains thus interred had become ripe; they were then peeled and pulped within a large wooden trough resembling a canoe; this was filled with water, and the pulp being well mashed and stirred, was left to ferment for two days, after which it was fit to drink. Throughout Unyoro plantains are the staple article of food. The natives invariably eat the unripe fruit, which, when boiled, is a good substitute for potatoes. Cider is made from ripe fruit only.

One day after Baker had recovered sufficiently to be able to walk about, he was visited by the king, who desired his assistance forthwith against Rionga. Baker tried to reason with him against the injustice of his request, reminding him that he was an explorer and a subject of the queen, and had no right to make offensive alliances against one who had done him no injury. But Kamrasi was still urgent, nor could he be pacified with trinkets, though he did not refuse any that were offered, nor neglect to ask for everything he saw. Among other articles which Baker gave him, was an ivory comb, which he at once applied to his wool,

and then handed it around to his officers, who also went through a vigorous scratching with it. To this present was added a quantity of ammunition and a looking-glass, besides several beads. But the comb pleased him most, and he wanted his guest to take back with him to England an elephant's tusk and have it made into combs for his majesty's use. The medicine chest had also to be inspected, and each powder, pill, and phial smelt of. He begged for some of the medicine, and Baker gave him several doses of tartar-emetic, with instructions not to use it until he had returned to the palace. The directions were faithfully followed, but the king took so large a dose of the medicine that it made him very sick, whereat he imagined that his guest had used "magic" against him, and was very unfriendly for several days. From that time Baker's supplies were cut off, and his subsistence was confined to such articles as he could buy from the natives, principally butter and plantains, which provided an exceedingly slim diet. About a week after these events he was suddenly roused one night by a horrible din of beating drums, blowing horns, and screaming natives. Gathering his rifle and cartridge belt, he rushed out to find Kamrasi's



THE TURKS MARCHING OUT OF KISOONA.

camp in a state of consternation, produced by the report that Debono, with a party of one hundred and fifty men, was marching on Kisoona with the intention of laying waste the country and killing Kamrasi. The old king was not long in making his appearance, dressed simply in a kilt of blue baize which Speke had given him. He was shaking with fright and implored aid. Baker commended his dress, and said it was well adapted to fighting. "*Fighting!*" the king exclaimed, with the horror of "Bob Acres," "I am not going to fight! I have dressed lightly to be able to run quickly. I mean to run away! Who can fight against guns? Those people have one hundred and fifty guns; you must run with me; we can do nothing against them; you have only thirteen men; Ibrahim has only ten; what can twenty-three do against a *hundred and fifty*? Pack up your things and run; we must be off into the high grass and hide at once; the enemy is expected every moment!" Baker frankly told Kamrasi that his cowardice ill became a king, and that

**KAMRASI IN RUNNING
DRESS.**

such a man was not a fit ruler for any people ; but this failed to reassure him. To prevent an attack, however, Baker sent eight of his men with Turkish guides to confer with Debono. On the next evening they returned with one of Debono's headmen, who stated that the Turks had no intention of disturbing Baker's party ; that indeed the report had reached them that both he and his wife had died several weeks before, from starvation, for which Kamrasi was responsible. Baker told the officer that Debono must at once recross the Nile and quit Kamrasi's country, as the right of trading therein had been secured to Ibrahim, and if the request was not complied with by the following day he would report the affair to the Turkish authorities and have Debono and his chief hanged. Baker then raised the British flag, and informed the Turks that he claimed the country by right of discovery, and ordered them to withdraw at once, which they did. The result of the stratagem so pleased Kamrasi that he sent a large supply of flour, goats, cows, and cider, accompanying them with his thanks and offering a portion of his kingdom to his white friend.

Shortly after the Turks had departed, news was received that Debono had quarreled with Rionga and a great battle had ensued, in which the Turks had gained a complete victory, and destroyed the power of the native chief. Kamrasi could

DEFEAT OF RIONGA. scarcely contain his joy at this piece of good news, while the entire village went into a delirium of celebration, and became royally drunk on the beer which the king had given for all to drink. Kamrasi visited Baker to acquaint him of his good fortune, but while so doing turned the subject suddenly by asking again for the rifle he had so long coveted. Baker was much irritated, and told him that he must never ask again for the gun, for under no circumstances would he part with it.

Just at this moment an uproar was heard outside, and loud screams and heavy blows. A man was dragged past the entrance of the court-yard bound hand and foot, and was immediately cudged to death by a crowd of natives. This operation

A BARBAROUS EXECUTION. continued for some minutes, until his bones had been thoroughly broken by the repeated blows of the clubs. The body was dragged to a grove of plantains, and was left there for the vultures, who in a few minutes congregated around it. It appeared that the offence thus summarily punished was the simple act of conversing with some of Rionga's men, who had come with Debono's messengers to see Baker. A conversation with one of the enemy was considered high treason, and was punished with immediate death. In such cases, where either Kamrasi or his brother determined upon the sudden execution of a criminal, the signal was given by touching the condemned with the point of a lance, whereupon the person who had been so unfortunate as to incur the king's displeasure was beaten to death upon the spot. Sometimes the condemned was touched by a stick instead of a lance-point ; this was a signal that he should be killed by the lance, and the sentence was carried out by thrusting him through the body with numerous spears ; thus the instrument used to slay the criminal was always contrary to the sign.

The victory over Rionga bore fruit which Kamrasi was not destined to partake of, for, while he was contending over the spoils, news came that Mtesa, of Uganda, hearing that

KAMRASI IN A COWARDLY RETREAT. Kamrasi had intercepted Baker and held him a prisoner in order to prevent him from visiting the former with presents, was coming to kill the perfidious king and take Baker to Uganda. This report, which was speedily confirmed, threw the cowardly Kamrasi into a panic again, and although Baker counseled a stand and offered to help him repel the invaders, he was

bent on beating a retreat to his fastness on the islands of the river; nor would anything stay his purpose. The grass huts were accordingly set on fire and the retreat began. Baker intended to proceed to Atada, Kamrasi have promised to send porters to carry his things, but when morning came the porters failed to report, and he at once saw that the king's promise was merely a ruse to keep him at the village and be first attacked by Mtesa. So incensed was he at such perfidy, that he sent a messenger to Kamrasi, telling him if the porters were not sent at once he would join Mtesa and attack him on the islands. This message frightened the king into a compliance.

The journey toward Atada was by a narrow pathway leading through very high grass. Mrs. Baker had yet to be carried on a litter, and their progress was very slow. After a short march it was discovered that Richarn, Baker's most faithful and serviceable man, was missing, and after a short search in a village near by, the ramrod of his gun was found broken and covered with blood, which indicated that he had been murdered. Two days were spent searching for him, and during this delay the porters which Kamrasi had provided deserted. To make matters still worse, the war drums of Mtesa were heard beating as his army advanced, and it therefore became necessary to abandon the luggage and branch off toward Foweera, where a part of Ibrahim's followers were encamped, as it was desirable to form a junction with them. After many tedious delays and incidents the party reached Foweera, where they were astonished to find Richarn. His disappearance was caused by a fight with some villagers, during which he killed the chief, and in order to escape their vengeance he had taken to the tall grass, lost his way, but finally reached his party again almost famished.

**RICHARN KILLS A
CHIEF.**

Ibrahim thought proper now to join Kamrasi against the enemy, and so well did he direct his forces that Mtesa was speedily driven out of the country and Kamrasi regained all that he had lost. For this service Ibrahim received an immense quantity of ivory, so that both parties were intensely pleased. In the fight many of Mtesa's men were captured, all of whom were led before the king and butchered in his presence without trial.

While these brutal operations were going on, Baker decided to make an effort to distill whiskey from sweet potatoes, believing that the spirit would benefit himself and wife in their weak condition. His still was an original one, made of pots and reeds, but it served all purposes, and a really excellent article of spirits was manufactured. Some of the liquor was given to Kamrasi, who promptly drank enough to make an elephant drunk, and when he had recovered from the comatose state into which it threw him, he vowed that every hill in his kingdom should be planted with potatoes, and that his subjects should devote themselves to manufacturing whiskey, in pursuance of which purpose one of Ibrahim's Turks was detailed to establish and undertake the direction of "King Kamrasi's Central African Unyoro Potato-Whiskey Company, unlimited."

It is a remarkable thing that all savage people like both the taste and effect of high wines, and from the beginning will make any sacrifices to obtain supplies. The contrary is true of civilized whites, especially, whose taste for whiskey is invariably an acquired one, which develops through perversity and becomes a habit by reason of desire to do evil rather than good. The African, like the Indian, has a thirst which is quite as strange as his appetite, and to be drunk is his attainment of perfect happiness; nor can a beastly condition of intoxication bring any disgrace to him, being beyond the limitations of social obligations. Thus, as king, Kamrasi might be drunk and claim the right as a royal prerogative, a pleasure to which it were disloyalty for his subjects to aspire, though all envied his privilege and bewailed his opportunity.

CHAPTER XIV.

HORRIFYING ATROCITIES OF THE VICTORS.

In the middle of November, at the end of the rainy season, after many months of suffering, Baker left Unyoro for Shooa, accompanied by Ibrahim, whose collection of ivory was so great that it required the services of 700 porters to carry it. Kamrasi came out to bid them adieu, and—to beg Baker once more for the little rifle, as he said the gun given him by Speke had bursted, which was true, for he had driven a ball into the muzzle and then fired it with disastrous results. But Baker would not yield the coveted weapon. The journey was through a dry country, and the difficulties of traveling were light in comparison to what they had been.

“On the fifth day’s march from the Victoria Nile,” says Baker, “we arrived at Shooa; the change was delightful after the wet and dense vegetation of Unyoro; the country was dry, and the grass low and of fine quality. We took possession of our camp, that had already been prepared for us in a large courtyard, well cemented with cow-dung and clay, and fenced with a strong row of palisades. A large tree grew in the centre. Several huts were erected for interpreters and servants, and a tolerably commodious hut, the roof overgrown with pumpkins, was arranged for our mansion. That evening the native women crowded to our camp to welcome my wife home, and to dance in honor of our return; for which exhibition they expected a present of a cow. They danced in a circle, holding each other’s hands, while three stood just outside the circle and directed the movements of the dancers. They were all quite naked except the little cloth in front and the tail-piece behind.”

At Shooa many of Ibrahim’s porters deserted, which left him in a sad plight. To compensate his loss, he sent 300 of his men upon a marauding expedition against a neighboring village that was under the rule of a brave chief named Werdalla. This man had been on several such expeditions himself, and possessed five stands of firearms, therefore, when the Turks attacked him, he hid his men behind rocks, and opened fire, killing five of the assailants with as many shots. The Turks retreated, but on the way back captured a beautiful young girl whom they put in chains, intending to make her a slave. On the next day her father came into camp to ransom his child, as is customary among these people. As soon as he appeared, his daughter rushed to him, and throwing her arms around his neck in the most affectionate manner, cried “Father!” as lovingly and earnestly as any civilized child could have done. But the brutal Turks tore him from her arms, tied him to a tree, and inhumanly butchered him before her eyes.

Another case of almost equal horror and brutality occurred on the following day. A woman, and her little boy not more than two years of age, had been captured in a battle with the natives and brought along as slaves by the Turks. This
MAN’S INHUMANITY. woman tried five times to escape with her child, but was each time apprehended, and being, at length, regarded as incorrigible, she was given 144 stripes with the coorbach (hippopotamus whip), and then sold to another Turkish party of traders. Mrs. Baker’s pity was excited and she took the little motherless boy under her care and gave him the name of Abbai, and by kind treatment soon reconciled him to his new condition. There were two little girls also in the camp whose history was

exceedingly pathetic. They were three and eight years of age respectively, and had fallen into the possession of Ibrahim under the following circumstances: They were daughters of Owine, one of the great chiefs who was allied with Rionga against Kamrasi. After the defeat of the former, Owine and many of his people quitted the country, and, forming an alliance with the Turk Mohamed, they settled in the neighborhood of his camp at Faloro, where they built a village.

For a time they were on the best of terms, but some cattle of the Turks being missing, suspicion fell upon the new settlers. Mohamed's men desired that they might be expelled, but in a moment of drunken frenzy he ordered them to be massacred. His men, eager for murder and plunder, immediately started upon their bloody errand, and surrounding the unsuspecting colony, they fired the huts, and killed every man, including chief Owine, capturing the women and children as slaves.



KILLING PRISONERS BEFORE KAMRASI'S PALACE.

The first day's journey toward Gondokoro was uneventful, but on the next the party was attacked by the implacable Bari people, who hung in great crowds on the flank and kept discharging their arrows. The Turks returned the fire with their guns, but only one casualty resulted. This, however, was only the **ATTACKED BY BARI SAVAGES.** beginning, for day by day the Baris kept up their annoyance, and at night continually threatened an attack. As the cavalcade, at length, came in sight of Gondokoro, there were loud huzzas and great rejoicings, especially expressed by Baker and his wife, for the journey had been so long and painful that home now seemed "just over the hill." The English flag was raised on a tall bamboo pole, and the march into Gondokoro was made like a victorious army returning from a bloody field. The Turks came out and saluted them with a lively popping of guns, which so frightened Mohamed's riding ox that it ran away and threw him over its head, greatly demoralizing the pompous Turk.

Baker's first inquiries were for letters from home, and a boat to descend the Nile. Before leaving Khartoum on his outward journey, he had left money with a merchant there to pay for sending a boat to Gondokoro to await his return; but he was now astonished and chagrined to find that neither boat nor letters were awaiting him. It was supposed that he and his wife were long since dead, as no tidings had been received from them since their departure from Obbo, three years before. Baker writes: "At this cold and barren reply I felt almost choked. We had looked forward to arriving at Gondokoro as to a home; we had expected that a boat would have been sent on the chance of finding us, but there was literally nothing to receive us, and we were helpless to return. We had worked for years in misery, such as I have but faintly described, to overcome the difficulties of this hitherto unconquerable exploration; we had succeeded—and what was the result? Not even a letter from home to welcome us if alive! As I sat beneath a tree and looked down upon the glorious Nile that flowed a few yards beneath my feet, I pondered upon the value of my toil. I had traced the river to its great Albert source, and as the mighty stream glided before me, the mystery that had ever shrouded its origin was dissolved. I no longer looked upon its waters with a feeling approaching to awe, for I knew its home and had visited its cradle. Had I overrated the importance of the discovery? and had I wasted some of the best years of my life to obtain a shadow? I recalled to recollection the practical question of Commoro, the chief of Latooka—'Suppose you get to the great lake, what will you do with it? What will be the good of it? If you find that the large river does flow from it, what then?'"

The plague had broken out among the natives at Gondokoro, and as they fell victims they were dragged to the edge of the cliff and thrown into the river, and the stench which arose from the festering bodies was absolutely stifling. Baker therefore determined to depart from this frightful place at all hazards.

PLAGUE.

By good chance there was an open boat lying at the wharf, that had come up to take a cargo of ivory to Khartoum, but as none was offering, Baker chartered the vessel for \$200. It was a desperate alternative, because several men had died of the plague on the boat during her trip up, so that a visitation of the dreadful disease promised to terminate the difficulties of the entire journey. But he ordered the boat to be thoroughly scrubbed with boiling water and sand, after which it was fumigated by burning several pounds of tobacco in the cabin.

On the third day out from Gondokoro a herd of antelope was discovered foraging in the vicinity of some ant-hills a hundred yards from the river. As meat had become scarce, Baker ordered the boat stopped, and, with his servant carrying a spare gun, he stalked the game until a fair shot was obtained at a large buck, which fell dead at the first fire. The herd seemed dazed, and did not break away until another one was killed. They then ran toward a covert, and in their flight he fired again, and by accident shot a doe in the neck at a distance of six hundred yards. As the herd gained the covert some native hunters, who were there concealed, charged them with spears, and drove them back again toward Baker, who succeeded in killing two more. This was five antelopes in one day, and they were now well supplied with meat for the trip.

On the following day one of Baker's men was seized with pains in the back and bleeding of the nose, and similar symptoms speedily developed in six others—the *plague had broken out*. In two days more the vessel became a hospital, and death followed death with fearful rapidity. Poor little Saat, whom Mrs. Baker had adopted at Khartoum, and

who had been so faithful throughout the three years' journeyings in Central Africa, fell also before the dreadful disease. Helplessly he lay upon a mat before his loved mistress, who watched with tenderest care and deep anxiety, moistening his parched lips and trying to cool his burning head, while the little fellow only muttered in a delirium from which he could not be roused. But at last she saw that he slept, and hoping that he would awaken refreshed and better, she kept everything quiet, that undisturbed sleep might bring him back to life. Old Karka, the good-natured slave woman, stole softly to the poor boy, stretched his legs into a straight position, and laid his arms close by his side. She then covered his face with a cloth. "Does he still sleep well?" asked Mrs. Baker; but the old slave answered only with her tears, for little Saat was dead. The faithful child had been taken from Paganism and died in Christianity; he was laid gently away in a grave on the banks of the Nile, with a rude cross for a grave-stone.

After many delays and difficulties, Baker reached Khartoum on the fifth of May, 1865. Here he found letters from friends in England, but the consolation these brought was marred by the report, already authenticated, that Speke was no longer among the living, having accidentally shot himself while hunting. Besides this deplorable news, there were obstacles to prevent Baker's immediate departure for England. An extraordinary drought of two years had created a famine throughout the land, attended by a disease among the camels and cattle, which had caused a commercial stagnation, as no goods could be transported from Khartoum. The plague, malignant typhus, had run riot in the town, and reduced the black troops from 4000 to less than 400. Yet in this place, reeking with filth, and death running riot in the streets, they were compelled to wait until there was a rise in the Nile that would enable boats to pass the cataracts between Khartoum and Berber. They were detained here for two months, subjected to intense heat and dust-storms. It seemed as if the plagues of Egypt had broken loose again. Respecting the dust-storms, Baker writes: "On the twenty-sixth of June we had the most extraordinary dust-storm that had ever been seen by the inhabitants. I was sitting in the courtyard of my agent's house at about 4.30 p. m.; there was no wind, and the sun was as bright as usual in this cloudless sky, when suddenly a gloom was cast over all—a dull yellow glare pervaded the atmosphere. Knowing that this effect portended a dust-storm, and that the present calm would be followed by a hurricane of wind, I rose to go home, intending to secure the shutters. Hardly had I risen, when I saw approaching, from the southwest, apparently a solid range of immense brown mountains, high in the air. So rapid was the passage of this extraordinary phenomenon, that in a few minutes we were in actual pitchy darkness. At first there was no wind, and the peculiar calm gave an oppressive character to the event. We were in 'a darkness that might be felt.' Suddenly the wind arrived, but not with the violence that I had expected. There were two persons with me, Michael Latfalla, my agent, and Monsieur Lombrosio. So intense was the darkness that we tried to distinguish our hands placed close before our eyes; not even an outline could be seen. This lasted for upwards of twenty minutes; it then rapidly passed away, and the sun shone as before; but we had *felt* the darkness that Moses had inflicted upon the Egyptians."

On June 30 they departed from Khartoum, and proceeded by boat to Berber, from which point they traveled overland on camels to Souakim, a considerable town, the houses of which are all built of coral. After two weeks' delay here, passage was secured on an Egyptian steam transport for Suez. The journey was now about ended, for in a few

days they reached Cairo, where Baker paid off his attendants, one of whom, Richarn, he saw married to a six-foot Dinga girl, who had accompanied him from Central Africa. Here he received notice that the Royal Geographical Society had awarded him the Victoria gold medal, at a time, too, when it was not known whether he was living or dead.

Baker is entitled to very great credit for the indomitable perseverance with which he overcame all obstacles and forced his way through Africa. He is also entitled to much consideration because his expedition was equipped at his own expense, and therefore he did not have the nation at his back, as did Speke; but did he discover the source of the Nile? By his own record he saw but an exceedingly small portion of the Albert N'yanza. He coasted it for only one hundred miles, and did not even visit the point where the lake takes its outlet into the Nile. Speke is chargeable with the same omission, for when he came in sight of the Victoria N'yanza, instead of coasting it he contented himself with a view of its waters, and did not even follow the stream which he assumed was the Nile. It is now well known that Central Africa is drained by numerous rivers, many of which are very eccentric in their sudden disappearance. For this reason it was the duty of Baker—if insurmountable obstacles did not preclude, and he does not mention any—to proceed to the river where it flows from the lake, as he claims that he saw it at a distance of thirty miles, and then follow the stream on his return journey, instead of leaving it, as he did. Of course it is impossible to judge correctly of the reasons which he had for taking certain courses on his return journey, but since he does not himself give us these very natural explanations, it must remain a source of wonder why he did not return from the Albert N'yanza by way of the Nile, as his spirited wife implored him to do. He had canoes, and though there were many obstructions in the river, no doubt these light boats might have been drawn over them, as they were in several places below Gondokoro. By adopting such a plan the source of the Nile would have been indisputable. The question which still continues undecided is this: Did Baker see the Nile, as it takes its source from Albert Lake, or was it the embouchure or outlet of some other stream, which gave him so much delight as his vision rested upon it from Magungo's heights?

CHAPTER XV.

ISMAILIA.—SIR SAMUEL BAKER'S SECOND EXPEDITION.

Sir Samuel Baker published the results of his explorations in Central Africa in a work entitled "The Albert N'yanza." The book had a large sale and gave him an importance—which he no doubt well deserved—greater than that of any other African explorer at that time. He had paid particular attention to the slave trade, which was productive of ruin and demoralization among the native tribes, and so faithfully and graphically did he describe the horrors attending the nefarious traffic, that England was aroused and threatened to take such severe measures against those who were engaged in it, that the Khedive of Egypt felt called upon to act, as the slave-hunters were nearly all his subjects. It is unfair, perhaps, to doubt the motives of the Khedive, but certain it is that Khartoum was long known to be a slave station, and that thousands of these poor creatures were sent from there to Cairo and Alexandria with the full knowledge of the Egyptian authorities, who never



BAKER ASCENDING THE NILE.

by word or deed attempted even to mitigate the curse. It was estimated that not less than 50,000 men, women, and children were kidnapped from the tribes of Central Africa annually, and brought captive into Khartoum; here they were confined in limited quarters reeking with pestilence and filth, so that nearly one-half of the whole number died, while the other half was being disposed of as slaves.

Baker's descriptions fired the English heart against these revolting cruelties, and the Prince of Wales, on a visit to Egypt, had a conference with the Khedive, in which the former plainly indicated that the slave trade had to be suppressed, either by the Egyptian Government or some other power. This conference stimulated Ismail, the Khedive, to action, who, sending for Sir Samuel Baker, had an interview with him, which resulted in

**BAKER IS EMPLOYED BY
THE KHEDIVE.**

placing him in command of an expedition for the suppression of the nefarious traffic. To effect this grand reform it would be necessary to annex the Soudan and all that country lying within the Nile basin, that it might be under the direct rulership of the Khedive.

The expedition was fitted out with a lavish hand, as Baker was directed to make all his preparations without regard to expense. Under such liberal instructions, he had specially built in England three small steamers and two lifeboats for navigating the Nile. These vessels were fitted with engines of the best construction, and were to be carried across the Nubian desert in plates and sections. In addition to the steamers were steam sawmills, with a boiler that weighed eight hundred pounds in one piece—all of which would have to be transported by camels for several hundred miles across the Nubian desert, and by boats and camels alternately from Alexandria to Gondokoro, a distance of about *three thousand miles*.

The English party accompanying the expedition consisted of Sir Samuel Baker and his courageous wife; Lieutenant Julian A. Baker, R. N.; Edward Higginbotham, civil engineer; Mr. Wood, secretary; Dr. Joseph Gedge, physician; Mr. Marcopolo, chief storekeeper and interpreter; Mr. McWilliam, chief engineer of steamers; Mr. Jarvis, chief shipwright; together with Messrs. Whitfield, Samson, Hitchman, and Ramsdell. Forty-five thousand dollars were expended in stores, calculated to last the expedition for four years.

Six steamers, varying from forty to eighty horse-power, were ordered to leave Cairo in June, together with fifteen sloops and fifteen diahbeeahs—total, thirty-six vessels—to ascend the cataracts of the Nile to Khartoum, a distance by river of about

AN IMPOSING FLOTILLA. one thousand four hundred and fifty miles. These vessels were to convey the whole of the merchandise. Twenty-five vessels were ordered to be in readiness at Khartoum, together with three steamers. The governor-general (Djiaffer Pasha) was to provide these vessels by a certain date, together with the camels and horses necessary for the land transport. Thus, when the fleet should arrive at Khartoum from Cairo, the total force of vessels would be nine steamers and fifty-five sailing vessels, the latter averaging about fifty tons each.

The military arrangements comprised a force of one thousand six hundred and forty-five troops, including a corps of two hundred irregular cavalry and two batteries of artillery. The infantry were two regiments, supposed to be well selected. The black, or Soudani, regiment included many officers and men who had served for some years in Mexico with the French army under Marshal Bazaine. The Egyptian regiment turned out to be for the most part convicted felons who had been transported for various crimes from Egypt to the Soudan.

The artillery were rifled mountain guns of bronze, the barrel weighing two hundred and thirty pounds, and throwing shells of eight and a quarter pounds. The authorities at

Woolwich had kindly supplied the expedition with two hundred Hale's rockets—three pounders—and fifty Snider rifles, together with fifty thousand rounds of Snider ammunition. The military force and supplies were to be massed in Khartoum ready to meet Baker upon his arrival.

This imposing army and flotilla left Suez on August 29, 1869, and proceeded on to Souakim, where, after a week's delay, camels were obtained to carry the expedition across the desert, two hundred and seventy-five miles, to Berber. Reaching this place, another fleet of thirty-three vessels of fifty and sixty tons burden was built, which carried the expedition to Gondokoro, one thousand four hundred and fifty miles from Berber. The trip to Gondokoro was full of incidents.

**DEPARTURE OF
THE FLEET.**

The start was made in the latter part of February, with so many sail-boats that the Nile was covered, apparently, for miles, as boat straggled behind boat, strung out until those in front could not be seen by the navigators of those in the rear. A few days after starting, one of the troopers, while lazily dangling his feet over the side of a boat, in the water, was seized by a crocodile and carried off, the poor fellow having no time to make any outcry; a little blood on the water was the last sign left of him. Three days later great excitement was created on the flag steamer by the attack of a hippopotamus.

Baker says: "At 1 p. m., as we were steaming easily, I happened to be asleep on the poop-deck, when I was suddenly awakened by a shock, succeeded almost immediately by the cry, 'The ship's sinking!' A hippopotamus had charged the steamer from the bottom, and had smashed several floats off her starboard paddle. A few seconds later he charged our diahbeeah, and striking her bottom about ten feet from the bow, he cut two holes through the iron plates with his tusks. There was no time to lose, as the water was rushing in with great force. Fortunately, in this land of marsh and floating grass, there were a few feet of tolerably firm ground rising from the deep water. Running alongside, all hands were soon hard at work discharging cargo with great rapidity, and bailing out with every conceivable utensil, until we obtained assistance from the steamer, whose large hand-pump and numerous buckets at length so far overcame the rush of water that we could discover the leaks."

**ATTACKED BY A
HIPPOPOTAMUS.**

A few days later, while the boats were passing through a lake, or sudden broadening of the river, Baker saw a hippopotamus emerge from a bank of high grass. Being in need of meat, he took a small boat and went after the behemoth. A few strokes placed him near the spot where the animal entered the water, and a moment after, with a snort, it arose to the surface fifty yards distant. A shot from his rifle was followed by the disappearance of the animal, and frequent soundings failed to discover the body. The boats lay by until morning, as it was now quite late, and just as dawn appeared the great beast was seen floating within a few feet of the flag boat. All hands turned out and towed it ashore, where they fell to and cut it up. As they were completing this job, a rustling in a pile of driftwood attracted their attention, and upon investigating the cause, they found a large crocodile wedged in so that it could not extricate itself. With pikes and poles it was speedily dispatched and cut up for food, as was the hippopotamus, the two furnishing meat for one day for the entire army. Soon after another crocodile was seen basking on the shore, which some of the men courageously caught by means of a noose fixed on the end of a long pole, and held while another man cut its spinal column with an ax.

The start for Gondokoro had been made at a very inopportune time, for the Nile was already falling and progress must be necessarily slow, as some of the boats drew more than four feet of water. After proceeding one-half the distance, the vegetation so obstructed the

river that it was impossible to proceed further, and a retreat had to be made back to the Shillook country, and there wait until the November inundation.

The water was soon receding so rapidly that the boats had to be pulled by a thousand men across the vegetable obstructions; in fact, it became almost dry-land steamboating, for every few miles the cables were run out and a long double line of men would seize them and force the boats across the barriers high and dry, into water again. Mr. and Mrs. Baker whiled away the tedium of the journey by shooting, every day killing hippopotami, crocodiles, antelopes, geese, and ducks, so that an abundance of fresh meat was always available. Mrs. Baker was as keen a lover of hunting as her husband, and was almost as good a shot, while her powers of endurance and courage were phenomenal.



CAPTURING A CROCODILE BY MEANS OF A NOOSE.

As the expedition approached the Shillook country, Baker was astounded to find that the governor of Fashoda was engaged in the capture of slaves. This discovery was made by accident. Baker saw an old man seated on the bank, who had apparently escaped from some bad master, and who told of his captivity and efforts to escape back to his people. The governor of Fashoda had been pretending, for years, that he was violently opposed to slave hunting and that no slave-traders could cross his country. He was taken by surprise, and in his pens were discovered 184 women and little children, whose village he had a few days before destroyed and taken them into captivity, after killing all but ten of the men. Baker set the poor people at liberty and reported the governor to the Khedive for punishment.

The boats were put into harbor and a town was begun, which, in honor of Ismail's youngest son, was called Tewfikéeyah. Here workshops, steam sawmills and huts soon

dotted the formerly barren ground. Boats were constructed to take the place of several that had been badly demoralized, gardens were planted and the hum of industry was heard on every side. Baker watched over his temporary colony with care and pride, but he did not wholly abandon the hunt. One morning, while riding out in the country with his second in command, Colonel Abd-el-Kader, he saw several ostriches feeding on the open plain; they were at a considerable distance, and the country was so open that it was impossible to stalk them. While gazing and longing, another ostrich was seen away off to the left at the edge of a covert. Immediately Baker dismounted and started through the woods, but when he approached within what he supposed was shooting distance of where the bird had been, he saw it running across the country, having taken fright without his knowledge. He walked on and soon saw another running over the plain, and at this he fired with success, the heavy bird falling so hard from its momentum that its feathers flew out in large quantities. A mounted orderly was dispatched to bring men and donkeys. When the bird was cut up, the two thighs and legs were a fair load for two donkeys. Its stomach—or craw—was filled with lizards, scorpions, beetles, leaves of trees, and quartz-pebbles. It must have recently traveled a great distance, because there were no pebbles within two hundred miles of the place.

Baker relates the following incident: "There was an old blind sheik who frequently visited us from the other side, and this poor fellow came to an untimely end when returning one day with his son from marketing at Tewfikayah. I was walking on the quay, when I heard a great commotion, and saw a splashing in the river, the surface of which was covered with the ambatch fragments of a native canoe. There were many canoes on the river, several of which immediately went to the assistance of the two men who were struggling in the water. A hippopotamus had wantonly charged the canoe; and seizing it in his mouth, together with the poor old blind sheik, who could not avoid the danger, crunched the frail boat to pieces, and so crushed and lacerated the old man that, although he was rescued by his comrades, he died during the night."

**FATE OF AN OLD
BLIND MAN.**

On the tenth of May a sail was reported by the sentries. The slave traders did not know that Baker had established a station, but supposed he had gone back to Khartoum. He was anxious to know if the governor of Fashoda would have the audacity to send any slaves down the Nile after his experience and orders to assist in suppressing the slave trade. He therefore sent a boat out to hail the strange craft, which being brought to was boarded and examined. The captain declared he had nothing on board but corn and ivory, but his protestations and avowals did not allay Baker's skepticism. The boat appeared to be suspiciously full of corn to be homeward bound, while about the closely-boarded forecastle there was a smell indicative of unwashed negroes. Colonel Abd-el-Kader drew a steel ramrod from a soldier's rifle, and probed sharply through the corn. A smothered cry from beneath, and a wriggling among the corn, was succeeded by a woolly head, as the strong Abd-el-Kader, having thrust his long arm into the grain, dragged forth by the wrist a negro woman. The corn was at once removed; the planks which boarded up the forecastle and the stern were broken down; and there was a mass of humanity exposed—boys, girls, and women—closely packed like herrings in a barrel, who, under the fear of threats, had remained perfectly silent until thus exposed. The sail attached to the mainyard of the vessel appeared full and heavy in the lower part; this was examined, and, upon unpacking, it yielded a young woman, who had thus been sewed up to avoid discovery.

CAPTURE OF A SLAVER.

Baker at once ordered the vessel to be unloaded. He found one hundred and fifty slaves stowed away in a most inconceivably small area. The stench was horrible when they began to move. Many were in irons; these were quickly released by the blacksmiths, to the astonishment of the captives, who did not appear to understand the proceedings. Baker ordered the vakeel and the reis, or captain, of the vessel to be put in irons. The slaves now comprehended that their captors were become captives. They began to speak, and many declared that the greater portion of the men of their villages had been killed by the slave-hunters. The vessel was sent to Khartoum to be confiscated as a slaver, while the slaves were taken off, ordered to wash, and clothes were then issued to the naked women. The result of this capture is described by Baker as follows: "On the following day I inspected the captives, and explained to them their exact position. They were free people, and if their homes were at a reasonable distance they should be returned. If not, they must make themselves generally useful, in return for which they would be fed and clothed. If any of the women wished to marry, there were many fine young men in the regiments who would make capital husbands. I gave each person a paper of freedom signed by myself. This was contained in a hollow reed, and suspended around their necks. Their names, approximate age, sex and country were registered in a book corresponding with the numbers on their papers.

"These arrangements occupied the whole morning. In the afternoon I again inspected them. Having asked the officer whether any of the negresses would wish to be married, he replied that all the women wished to marry, and that they had already selected their husbands! This was wholesale matrimony, that required a church as large as Westminster Abbey and a whole company of clergy for the ceremony! Fortunately, matters are briefly arranged in Africa. I saw the loving couples standing hand in hand. Some of the girls were pretty, and my black troops had shown good taste in their selection. Unfortunately, however, for the Egyptian regiment, the black ladies had a strong antipathy to brown men, and the suitors were all refused. This was a very awkward affair. The ladies having received their freedom, at once asserted 'woman's rights.' I was obliged to limit the matrimonial engagements. And those who were for a time condemned to single blessedness were placed in charge of certain officers, to perform the cooking for the troops and other domestic work. I divided the boys into classes; some I gave to the English workmen, to be instructed in carpenter's and blacksmith's work; others were apprenticed to tailors, shoemakers, etc., in the regiment, while the best looking were selected as domestic servants. A nice little girl, of about three years old, without parents, was taken care of by my wife."

It was not until December 11 that the Nile had risen sufficiently to permit a passage of the fleet, on which date the expedition again departed for Gondokoro, with a fleet of fifty-nine vessels, including the steamers, and seven small boats. Just as they were about to start, Dr. Gedge took suddenly ill and died, which was a great loss, as he was not only a most excellent physician, but equally well versed in botany and natural history.

Although the White Nile was very high, it was so full of drift and vegetation that a pathway had almost to be cut through it in scores of places. It was by no means easy sailing at any point, for the men generally were averse to the expedition, and showed neither skill nor energy in handling the boats. At one place the entire fleet grounded, and the vessels had to be pulled away, causing a delay of several days. Through inexcusable carelessness two boats were sunk, one of which carried a section of the steel cruiser that was

**THE EXPEDITION
MOVES FORWARD.**

intended to be put into service on Albert Lake. Thus a bad river and worse boatmen caused very slow progress.

Hippopotami and crocodiles were encountered in great numbers, affording sport to Baker and meat for the men. Several adventures were met with, but the most interesting is as follows, which is quoted from Baker's report :

"The night was cold, and the moon clear and bright ; every one was wrapped up in warm blankets, and I was so sound asleep that I cannot describe more until I was suddenly awakened by a tremendous splashing quite close to the diahbeeah, accompanied by the hoarse, wild snorting of a furious hippopotamus. I jumped up, and immediately perceived a hippo, which was apparently about to attack the vessel. The main-deck being crowded with people sleeping beneath their thick mosquito curtains, attached to the stairs of the poop-deck and to the rigging in all directions, rendered it impossible to descend. I at once tore away some of the ties and awakened the sleepy people. My servant, Suleiman, was sleeping next to the cabin door. I called to him

**ATTACKED BY A VICIOUS
HIPPOPOTAMUS.**

for a rifle. Before the afrighted Suleiman could bring the rifle, the hippopotamus dashed at us with indescribable fury. With one blow he capsized and sank the zinc boat with its cargo of flesh. In another instant he seized the dingy in his immense jaws, and the crash of splintered wood betokened the complete destruction of my favorite boat. By this time Suleiman appeared from the cabin with an unloaded gun in his hand,



NATIVES HARPOONING HIPPOPOTAMI.

and without ammunition. He was a very good man, but was never overburdened with presence of mind ; he was shaking so fearfully with nervousness that his senses had entirely abandoned him. All the people were shouting and endeavoring to scare the hippo, which attacked us without ceasing with a blind fury that I have never witnessed in any animal except a bull-dog.

"By this time I had procured a rifle from the cabin, where they were always kept fixed in a row, loaded, and ready for action, with bags of breech-loading ammunition on the same shelf. The movements of the animal were so rapid, as he charged and plunged alternately beneath the water in a cloud of foam and wave, that it was impossible to aim correctly at the small but fatal spot upon his head. The moon was extremely bright, and presently, as he charged straight at the diahbeeah, I stopped him with a No. 8 Reilly shell. To my surprise he soon recovered, and again commenced the attack. I fired shot after shot at him without apparent effect. The diahbeeah rocked about upon the waves raised by the efforts of so large an animal ; this movement rendered the aim uncertain. At length, apparently badly wounded, he retired to the high grass ; there he lay by the bank, at about twenty-five yards distance, snorting and blowing. I could not distinguish him, as merely

the head was above water, and this was concealed by the deep shadow thrown by the high grass. Thinking that he would die, I went to bed; but before this I took the precaution to arrange a white-paper sight upon the muzzle of my rifle, without which night-shooting is very uncertain. We had fallen asleep; but **A CREATURE WITH A HUNDRED LIVES.** in about half an hour we were awakened by another tremendous splash, and once more this mad beast came charging directly at us as though unhurt. In another instant he was at the diahbeeah; but I met him with a ball in the top of his head, which sent him rolling over and over, sometimes on his back, kicking with his four legs above the surface, and again producing waves which rocked the diahbeeah. In this helpless manner he rolled for about fifty yards down the stream, and we all thought him killed. To our amazement he recovered, and we heard him splashing as he moved slowly along the river through the high grass by the left bank. There he remained, snorting and blowing; and as the light of the moon was of no service in the dark shadows of the high grass, we waited for a considerable time, and then went to bed, with the rifle placed in readiness on deck. In a short time I heard louder splashing. I again got up, and perceived him about eighty yards distant, walking slowly across the river in the shallows. Having a fair shot at the shoulder, I fired right and left with the No. 8 Reilly rifle, and distinctly heard the bullets strike. He nevertheless reached the right bank, when he presently turned round and attempted to recross the shallows. This gave me a good chance at the shoulder, as his body was entirely exposed. This time he staggered forward at the shot and fell dead in the shallow flat of the river."

On the following morning Baker examined the animal and found that it had received three shots in the shoulder, four in the head, one of which had broken the lower jaw; another had passed through its nose and ranging downward had cut off one of the large tusks.

"I never witnessed such determined and unprovoked fury as was exhibited by this animal," says Baker; "he appeared to be raving mad. His body was a mass of frightful scars, the result of continual conflicts with bulls of his own species. I can only suppose that the attack upon the vessels was induced by the smell of the raw hippopotamus flesh which was hung in long strips about the rigging, and with which the zinc boat was filled. The dingy had lost a mouthful, as the hippopotamus had bitten out a portion of the side, including the gunwale of hard wood; he had munched out a piece like the port of a small vessel, which he accomplished with the same ease as though it had been a slice of toast."

CHAPTER XVI.

SERIOUS TROUBLE WITH THE BARIS.

After a tedious voyage of five months and twenty-two days, relieved only by sport among large game, the expedition reached Gondokoro. Four years had elapsed since Baker last saw this place, and in that time a change had occurred of a most surprising nature. Instead of a fairly prosperous headquarters for ivory and slave-traders, it had been desolated by the Loquias, all the good buildings being destroyed and nothing remaining but a few miserable huts occupied by the Baris.

Gondokoro was the place selected by Baker for his headquarters, but it was necessary for him to put up buildings, both for quarters and storehouses. The Baris sullenly objected

to his occupation of the town, and absolutely refused to sell a single cow or sheep, thousands of which dotted the surrounding plain. Baker had to take possession of the country in the name of the Khedive, and, to provide food, he put his soldiers to work cultivating a large section of land. After a thorough plowing of the soil, he planted corn, melons and various other products, including a large variety of garden vegetables.

Things would have shaped their course properly but for the continued hostile attitude which the Baris maintained. This tribe of savages are the most unruly of any in Africa; their occupation is war, for which they begin to prepare almost in their infancy. Their war drum, in the head chief's village, is so large that two men can scarcely carry it. This instrument, shaped like an egg with one end cut off, is placed beneath a shed near the centre of the village, and is in charge of the chief; in the morning he beats the signal that sends the women out to milk the cows; at another signal they drive them to pasture, etc., so that the drum signalizes nearly all their domestic—communistic—duties. But its most ominous notes, a prolonged, rapid pounding, brings every soldier quickly to his post, with their bows and poisoned arrows, and murderous-looking lances, which they can throw with deadly effect fifty yards.

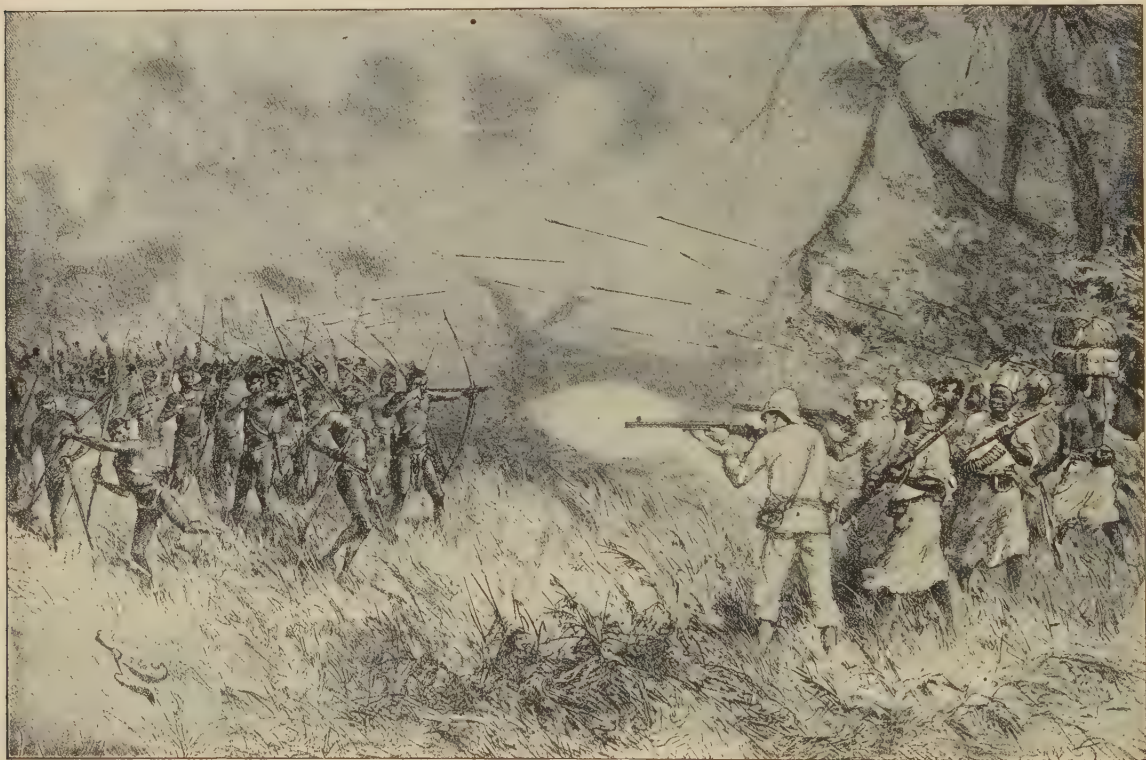
As the country had now been annexed to Egypt, Baker issued such orders as he considered necessary for its proper government, among others being one which prohibited the Baris from grazing their cattle on a certain piece of rich pasturage, which he reserved for the use of the stock belonging to the expedition. The savages **AN ATTACK BY THE BARIS.** paid no attention to this order, evidently thinking, and with apparent justice, that they had as much right to the country as the white man. But Baker was determined not to be outdone, so he directed his men to surround the cattle and drive them into his own kraal. This quickly brought all the chiefs to headquarters, for their cattle constituted their wealth. After a great deal of parleying they agreed, if their cattle were returned to them, that they would abandon the disputed pasturage and not interfere further. Baker consented to this arrangement, and their herds were turned loose; but they were driven at once to the same piece of ground. This was a challenge that Baker could not endure, and he again had the cattle seized and driven into his kraal.

It was now plain to be seen that serious trouble was brewing. Every day the great drum was beaten, summoning the Bari warriors to a meeting, at which they went through their war exercises of fighting an imaginary enemy. At length active hostilities were begun by a body of Baris attacking eighteen soldiers while the latter were engaged cutting tamarind trees for building purposes, about three miles from camp. A great many arrows were shot, happily without serious results, as the men were protected by a clump of trees and kept their assailants off by firing their guns.

On the following day, while the cattle were grazing in the beautiful park-like ground about a mile from headquarters, some Baris, who had stealthily approached the herd by stalking from bush to bush without being observed by the sleepy guards, made a sudden rush, with loud yells, among the cattle, and succeeded in driving off ten cows, with which they swam the river without a shot being fired by the unready soldiers. Every night after this there was an attack upon the kraal, and during one of these several of the savages were killed and others taken prisoners. But this did not deter them, for after resting one night, they again assailed the camp with great fury and succeeded in shooting two soldiers and releasing the cattle, which immediately stampeded and scattered over the country.

Baker now determined upon an expedition against the rebels, whose largest village was about twelve miles from Gondokoro. Taking seventy men and one piece of artillery, he

made a forced march at night to surprise them in the morning, but as he got in sight of the village a watchman gave the usual shrill whistle of alarm, and immediately the big drum sounded and the village was ready for the attack. A brisk battle followed, with bows and arrows on one side and Snider rifles on the other. At first Baker's attention was directed toward forcing the stockade, but the beating of drums now heard on every side told him that the whole country was aroused and that his force would soon be surrounded. Desperate efforts were made to force an entrance through the stockade, but the briars and hard wood resisted for a long while; skirmishers were thrown out around the circle eighty yards from the stockade to keep back the legions that were rushing to the rescue, but the soldiers would have been massacred by sheer force of numbers had it not been that the stockade yielded at a fortunate moment, and all of Baker's men rushed in, while the Baris inside



A HOT FIGHT WITH BARIS.

with equal alacrity rushed out. Protected as they now were, they could fight the battle their own way, and thus they gained a decided victory.

Savages were not the only enemies which they had to contend with, for crocodiles in the neighborhood were so numerous and ferocious that they were a source of great loss and constant danger. As the natives were in the habit of swimming to

SOLDIERS MUTILATED and fro with their cattle, these wily creatures had become accustomed to claim a toll in the shape of a cow, calf, or nigger. Two of Abou

BY CROCODILES.

Saood's sailors were carried off on two consecutive days. One of Baker's soldiers, while engaged with many others in the water, only hip deep, was seized by a crocodile. The man, being held by the leg below the knee, made a good fight, and thrust his fingers into the creature's eyes; his comrades at the same time assisted, and

rescued him from absolute destruction ; but the leg-bone was so mashed and splintered in many places that he was obliged to submit to amputation.

One of the sailors had a narrow escape. He and many others were engaged in collecting the leaves of a species of water-convolvulus that make an excellent spinach ; this plant is rooted on the muddy bank, but it runs upon the surface of the water, where its pink blossoms are very ornamental. The sailor was stooping from the bank to gather the floating leaves, when he was suddenly seized by the arm at the elbow-joint ; his friends immediately caught him round the waist, and their united efforts prevented him from being dragged into the water. The crocodile, having tasted blood, would not quit its hold, but tugged and wrenched the arm completely off at the elbow, and went away with its prize. The unfortunate man, in excruciating agony, was brought to the camp, where it was necessary to amputate another piece slightly above the lacerated joint.

Baker indulged very much in the sport of crocodile shooting, but though he killed many, they generally managed to get into deep water and thus prevented recovery of the body. On one occasion, passing along by some lily-pods, he saw the head of a crocodile protruding from the mass of vegetation and offering a beautiful shot. A bullet was placed just under its left eye, where-upon the ferocious beast turned over on its back apparently stone dead. Men were ordered to secure it with ropes, as the water was shallow, for it is a well-known fact that so tenacious of life are these creatures that though shot through the brain they will, after lying still a while, struggle violently, and even when dead spasmodic movements of their limbs will often carry them to deep water. A long rope was brought and two men waded into the shallow water to adjust it around the creature's body, but it began to struggle and open its dreadful jaws, which so terrified the men that they would have dropped the rope and fled, had not Baker shot it again in the shoulder, which ended its struggles. The rope was now put around the crocodile and a number of men hauled it ashore, where it was measured by Baker and proved to be twelve feet three inches long. The stomach contained about five pounds' weight of pebbles, as though it had fed upon flesh resting upon a gravel-bank, and had swallowed the pebbles that had adhered. Mixed with the pebbles was a greenish, slimy matter that appeared woolly. In the midst of these were three undeniable witnesses that convicted the crocodile of willful murder. A necklace and two armlets, such as are worn by the negro girls, were taken from the stomach ! The girl had been digested.

**GIRL EATEN BY A
CROCODILE.**

Crocodiles are frequently seen upward of eighteen feet in length, and there can be little doubt that they sometimes exceed twenty ; but a very small creature of this species may carry away a man while swimming. The crocodile does not attempt to swallow its prey at once ; but having carried the body to a favorite feeding place, generally in some deep hole, it tears it limb from limb with teeth and claws, and devours it at leisure.

In the middle of November Lieutenant Baker started with some troops to convey corn from a distant village, but he had proceeded only a short distance when he saw a herd of eleven bull elephants approaching from the west. Riding back quickly he informed Sir Samuel Baker, who at the time was enjoying a pipe on the poop-deck of his diahbeeah. Not being prepared for elephant-shooting, he recommended his lieutenant to return to his troops, who would be wasting their time. A half-hour afterward the elephants approached within four hundred yards of the camp, apparently unconscious of danger. Baker could not withstand the temptation, so ordering his favorite horse saddled, he seized two Holland

**ATTACK ON A
HERD OF ELEPHANTS.**

rifles which carried a half-pound iron, lead-coated explosive shell, and started after them. Several men were ordered to gain the rear of the herd, so as to turn them should they retreat, while others flanked to drive them toward the river. The brutes at first sight took to water, and Baker dismounted to fire when they should gain the opposite bank, on an island, which was less than one hundred yards distant. When they had crossed they found an unexpected difficulty, in the precipitous bank, which they were unable to scale. But they fell to with their tusks, and began tearing down the bank to an incline; and while thus engaged Baker secured several shots, which had no other effect, however, than to tumble one of them occasionally back into the water half stunned. After a while so much of the bank was torn away that the elephants began to mount, showing their bodies completely out of the water. Effective shooting now began, but when the second animal had been killed the ammunition gave out, and the hunt ended. The elephants were now butchered and the meat divided among the men.

From a distance the Baris watched the process, and so anxious did they finally become to share some of the spoils that several chiefs came down and sued for peace, declaring their friendship and a desire to live in friendly relations with the Khedive's General, winding up their peaceful protestations with requests for some elephant meat, which of course was given them. So the hunt had not only supplied the men with much-needed food, but it also secured a permanent peace with the surrounding tribes of savages, who, although very warlike, loved elephant meat better than fighting. This extraordinary craving for flesh would suggest that the Baris were devoid of cattle. On the contrary, there were countless herds throughout the country; but the natives have a great objection to killing them, and merely keep the cows for their milk, and the bullocks to bleed. The cows are also bled periodically, and the blood is boiled and eaten, much in the same manner that blood pudding is used throughout Europe. A herd of cattle will thus provide animal food without the necessity of slaughtering.

The great traveler, Bruce, was discredited for having described a fact of which he was an eye-witness. This was the vivisection of a cow driven by natives, who cut a steak out of her hindquarters. Baker had purchased a bull with a very large hump. This animal was very handsome, and was kept for stock. He observed that the skin of the hump showed a long jagged scar from end to end, and the natives assured him that the bull had frequently been operated upon. It had been the property of one of the slave-hunters' parties, and they had been in the habit of removing the hump as a surgeon would a tumor. This is the most delicate portion of the meat, and it would always be replaced by a similar growth after each operation.

Elephants were plenty in the vicinity of Gondokoro, and very bold, as the Bari people never hunt them, trusting entirely to pitfalls. Two large bull elephants actually had the effrontery to invade the camp one night, gaining access through the gate which a sleeping sentinel had left unguarded. An alarm was soon sounded, and the troops called out to meet the brutes; such firing was never before heard except in battle; so excited were the men that they fired hap-hazard, in every direction, with infinitely more danger to themselves than to the elephants, which, after nearly an hour's firing, escaped, very little the worse for their adventure. Baker relates the following incident, illustrative of the great strength of an elephant: "I once had an opportunity of witnessing an elephant's strength exerted in his search for a certain small fruit of which they are very fond. I was in the Shir country; and one evening, accompanied by Lieutenant Baker, I strolled into the forest about half a

**WONDERFUL STRENGTH
OF THE ELEPHANT.**

mile from our vessels, to watch for water-buck in a small glade where I had shot one on the previous evening. We had not long been concealed when I heard a peculiar noise in the thick forest that denoted the approach of elephants. We at once retreated to some rising ground about one hundred and fifty paces distant, as our small rifles would have been useless against such heavy game. In a short time several elephants appeared from various portions of the covert, and one of extraordinary size moved slowly toward us until he halted beneath a tall, spreading heglík. This tree must have been nearly three feet in diameter, and was about thirty feet high from the ground to the first branch; it was therefore impossible for the elephant to gather the coveted fruit. To root up such a tree would have been out of the question, and I should not have thought that the power of any animal could have affected it. The elephant paused for a short time, as though considering; he then butted his forehead suddenly against the trunk. I could not have believed the effect; this large tree, which was equal in appearance to the average size of park timber, quivered in every branch to such a degree, that had a person taken refuge in it, and thought himself secure in the top, he would have found it difficult to hold on."

Baker's original intention had been to establish a line of fortified posts, not more than three days' march apart, between Gondokoro and Albert Lake, but his force of twelve hundred men were now reduced to five hundred. Of this number



SLAVE GANG EN ROUTE FOR FASHODA.

three hundred were left to guard the base of supplies at Gondokoro, so that he was left with only two hundred men to make the advance south; nevertheless, with this small force he started, January 23, 1872, for the Albert Lake. The boats were loaded with necessary supplies, and the voyage up the river commenced. On the fourth day out they reached the first cataract, where a chief named Bedden had promised two thousand carriers to convey the boats—which were made in sections—and luggage to Lobore. But the old scoundrel disregarded his promise, and insolently told Baker that his people had quit being slaves for the Turks and certainly would not enter the service of Christians.

Traveling in Africa is always attended with the most provoking obstacles; Baker had learned this from a bitter experience, and was therefore not discouraged, though greatly angered at Bedden's deceit and treachery. He determined to establish a station here, and leave a strong guard to protect it and the boats, and then push on southward with a picked force of one hundred men.

The greatest difficulty was in securing reliable guides, without whom they could not move; but when Baker's arrangements were about completed he had the good fortune to obtain an excellent guide in the person of an old rain-maker. A tall old **A WONDERFUL** man of about seventy, or perhaps eighty, years had paid them a visit. From **RAIN-MAKER.** his appearance, and the numerous fetiches hung about his person, they knew that he was a rain-maker. His face was smeared with wood-ashes, and there was a good deal of the ideal demon in his personal exterior. Baker gave him a blue shirt and a glass of Marsala wine, thus appealing at once to his exterior and interior. It is always advisable to make friends of the rain-makers, as they are regarded by the natives as priests, and are considered with a certain respect. He was therefore given another glass of wine; or, to be more correct, he drank it from a tin that had contained preserved provisions. This caused him to blink his eyes and smack his lips, and he grinned a ghastly smile of admiration. His wood-ash-smeared features relaxed into an expression that denoted "more wine." That unfailing key, liquor, had established a confidential flow of conversation. The old fellow explained that he knew the entire country, and he had no objection to accompany the expedition to Lobore for a small consideration in the shape of a cow. He assured the people that if he were with them the natives would be civil throughout the journey. Baker asked him whether he would keep the rain away during the trip, as it would be very unpleasant should the soldiers' kits get wet. He immediately blew the rain-whistle that was suspended to his neck, and looked as though no one could longer doubt his capability. Baker then sent for a German horn from his cabin; this was a polished cow's horn, fitted with brass, which had cost a shilling; and begged the old rain-maker's acceptance of this instrument, which might be perhaps superior to his whistle.

The wine had so far warmed his blood that the ancient sorcerer was just in that state of good-will with all mankind which made him doubly grateful for so interesting a present. He blew the horn again and again, and grinned till the tears ran down his cheeks, and at once suspended the glittering toy around his neck. "Now," he said, "I am a great sheik; there is no rain-maker so great as I; you will travel with me, and this horn shall keep you dry. Don't trouble yourself about the Baris; they won't molest you; but start as soon as you can."

The old fellow's name was Lokko, and on February 8 the expedition started, the rain-maker leading the way, and waving a couple of thin, peeled sticks at a refractory black cloud that appeared determined to defy his rain-ruling powers. A few loud blasts upon the new horn, and a good deal of pantomime and gesticulation on the part of old Lokko, at length had the desired effect; the cloud went off about its business; and Lokko, having given his face an extra rub of fresh wood-ashes before starting, looked ugly enough to frighten any rain-devil out of his wits.

After a day's rest, the expedition moved on again through a lovely country in which buffaloes and antelopes abounded, many of which Baker shot, so that he kept his men supplied with meat without having to kill any of the cows or sheep **IN A NEST OF SLAVE** which he had with him. Eighty-five miles from Lobore, and one **HUNTERS.** hundred and sixty-five miles from Gondokoro, lay Fatiko, which was Abou Saood's headquarters for the slave trade of Central Africa. This place was reached before any knowledge of Baker's coming had been received by the old slaver, therefore he was wholly unprepared for his visitor. Baker saw active preparations going on for secreting the slaves, but it was too late. Abou Saood came out and greeted him in a most cordial manner, professing great delight at the visit. Baker, of course, knew

what this hypocrisy meant, but he received the advances with a similar manifestation of friendship. At the same time, however, he desired to show the slave hunter that he had a fairly well disciplined force, able to enforce such orders as might be necessary for the abolition of the nefarious trade which thrived at Fatiko. To do this, he had his soldiers go through certain military evolutions, scale the hill, and give a sham battle. To add effect to the display, the band discoursed several lively airs, which brought thousands of delighted natives to the scene. The band was composed of buglers, aided by cymbals, a bass drum, and several small drums. This would not be regarded as a very deliciously symphonious aggregation in a civilized country, but it was irresistible to the Africans. The natives are passionately fond of music; and the safest way to travel in those wild countries would be to play the cornet, if possible, without ceasing, which would insure a safe passage. A London organ-grinder might march through Central Africa without molestation, followed by an admiring and enthusiastic crowd, who, if his tunes were lively, would form a dancing escort of the most untiring material.

As the troops returned to their quarters, with the band still making a great noise, women were observed racing down from their villages, and gathering from all directions toward the common centre. As they approached nearer, the charms of music were overpowering, and, halting for an instant, they assumed what they considered the most graceful attitudes, and then danced up to the band. In a short time the buglers



MUSIC-CHARMED SAVAGES.

could hardly blow their instruments for laughing at the extraordinary effect of the performance. A fantastic crowd surrounded them, and every minute added to their number. The women were entirely naked; thus the effect of a female crowd, bounding madly about as musical enthusiasts, was very extraordinary. Even the babies were brought out to dance; and these infants, strapped to their mothers' backs, and covered with pumpkin-shells, like young tortoises, were jolted about without the slightest consideration for the weakness of their necks by their infatuated mothers. The men did not share in the dance, but squatted upon the rocks in great numbers to admire the music, and to witness the efforts of their wives and daughters. The men of Shooli and Fatiko are among the best proportioned in Africa; without the extreme height of the Shillooks or Dinkas, they are muscular and well knit, and generally their faces are handsome.

Inquiry developed the fact that the country had been almost ruined by Abou Saood, who had, generally by various alliances, despoiled the people of their cattle and ivory, and made slaves of nearly one-half the population. He had heard of Baker at Gondokoro, and knew the purposes of the expedition, but he had no doubt that by inciting the Baris to resist his advance and fight him

**ESTABLISHING A
GOVERNMENT.**

constantly, he would be forced to renounce his intentions and return to Gondokoro. But the old rascal had miscalculated. The chiefs quickly tendered their allegiance to Baker, who was thus enabled to establish a strong government in the name of the Khedive and to enforce a suspension, at least, of the slave trade.

At Fatiko he met with several messengers from Unyoro and Uganda, from whom he heard that Kamrasi had been dead more than two years, and was succeeded by his son, Kabba Rega, a man of less cupidity and of very much more intelligence, who was anxious to establish legitimate trade between his people and the whites. Other reports were to the effect that Mtesa, king of Uganda, had vastly improved through communication with the traders at Zanzibar. He had become a Mohammedan, and had built a mosque. Even his vizier said his daily prayers like a good Mussulman, and Mtesa no longer murdered his wives. If he cut the throat of either man or beast, it was now done in the name of God, and the king had become quite civilized, according to the report of the Arab envoys. He kept clerks who could correspond by letters in Arabic, and he had a regiment armed with a thousand guns, in addition to other large forces at his command.

Abou Saood's power was completely broken, his slaves released, and his actions reported to the Khedive. All the neighboring chiefs made bitter complaint against the slave traders, and begged the protection which Baker now afforded.

EN ROUTE FOR UNYORO. Feeling secure in the steps taken to establish good government at Fatiko, he placed a small garrison in the village and departed for Unyoro, which lay one hundred and sixty miles to the south. * Enough porters were engaged to insure a rapid conveyance of the luggage, if none deserted, which was always a probability. It was in the latter part of March that the expedition left Fatiko, when spring was being ushered in and all the world seemed bursting with gladness. The country was one of extraordinary beauty and large game could be seen in all directions. Antelopes were especially numerous, so that each day was spent by Baker in glorious sport, yielding fresh meat continually for all the men. But as the cavalcade reached the Unyoro country they found a remarkable change; spring had invested the earth with beautiful verdure, and nature seemed glad, but on every side were marks of war and desolation, burned and deserted villages, fallow fields and poverty. When Kamrasi died, he left a disputed inheritance to his two sons, Kabba Mero and Kabba Rega, who at once began a bitter struggle for the succession. Rionga, Kamrasi's brother and most bitter enemy, was still alive and as active as ever in fighting the Unyoros. Abou Saood had, in the meantime, espoused the cause of each in turn, as it suited his purposes best, and plundered them all. There had been incessant fighting for more than a year, during which time nearly everything in the country was destroyed, and many of the people were starving, while murder and pillage ran riot. But the famished condition of the country was not without benefit to Baker, as it enabled him to enlist a number of the natives as irregular soldiers, and to form posts that would open communication with Fatiko.

He halted within a short distance of Kabba Rega's palace, and sent messengers ahead to communicate with the king; but after waiting in vain several days for an invitation to enter his capital, Masindi, Baker broke camp and after a journey
A VISIT FROM KABBA REGA. of seventeen miles through the forest, came upon the village, which is situated on high, undulating land, bounded on the west by a range of mountains bordering the Albert N'yanza, which is not more than fifty miles distant. He called on the king directly after his arrival, and found him sitting on a divan within a large and neatly constructed hut. He was well clad in beautifully made

bark-cloth, striped with black; his person was also very neat, and his age not more than twenty years. Baker explained to him that his mission was to take possession of the country, which would thus be annexed to Egypt, and to not only free all the slaves he could find, but also to break up the slave trade and give peace and prosperity to the country. To all these reforms Kabba Rega gave his assent and promised such aid as he could supply.

On the next day the king arranged to return the visit, and in order to give the royal savage an impressive reception, the troops, in bright uniforms, were arranged in line on either side of the path by which the king would arrive. The sight of so many soldiers, armed with guns and bayonets, so alarmed his majesty, however, that he remained in his palace and sent excuses. Annoyed by the delay, Baker ordered the trumpets sounded,



PURSUIT OF A RHINOCEROS.

which so frightened the king and his courtiers that they construed it into an immediate summons. In a few minutes a great din of horns, drums and whistles announced his approach, and he was observed walking down the road with an extraordinary gait. He was taking enormous strides, as though imitating the walk of a giraffe. This was supposed to be a suggestion of Mtesa, the king of Uganda, who, in his younger days, attempted to walk like a lion. Kabba Rega thus stalked along, followed by his great chiefs, Kittakara, Matonse, Rahonka, Quonga, and a number of others. Upon arriving opposite the band, the bugles and drums suddenly commenced, and there followed such a clash of cymbals that he seemed startled, and entered the tent in the most undignified manner, with an air of extreme shyness, half concealed by audacity. He was trembling with nervous anxiety, and with some hesitation took his seat upon the divan that had been prepared for him. His principal chiefs sat upon skins and carpets arranged upon the ground.

**WALKING LIKE
A GIRAFFE.**

A crowd of about two thousand people had accompanied him, making a terrific noise with whistles, horns, and drums. These were now silenced, and the troops formed a guard around the tent to keep the mob at a respectful distance. Every now and then several men of Kabba Rega's bodyguard rushed into the crowd and laid about them with bludgeons five feet long, hitting to the right and left. This always chased the crowd away for a few minutes, until, by degrees, they resumed their position. Everybody was dressed up for a grand occasion, mostly in new clothes of bark-cloth, and many were in skins of wild animals, with their heads fantastically ornamented with the horns of goats or antelopes. The sorcerers were an important element. These rascals, who are the curse of the country,

were, as usual, in a curious masquerade, with fictitious beards, manufactured out of a number of bushy cow-tails.

Kabba Rega was about five feet ten inches in height, and of extremely light complexion. His eyes were very large, and projected in a disagreeable manner. A broad but low forehead and high cheek bones, added to a large mouth, with rather prominent but beautifully white teeth, complete the description of his face. His hands were perfectly shaped, and his finger-nails were carefully pared and scrupulously clean. The nails of his toes were



AN AUDIENCE WITH KABBA REGA.

equally well attended to. He wore sandals of raw buffalo hide, but neatly formed, and turned up round the edges.

The young king did not appear comfortable, but he was bold enough to ask Baker's assistance in expelling Rionga. Baker tried to turn the conversation, and offered him a handsome Turkish pipe, trimmed with blue silk and gold; but the king said **SUSPICIOUS.** he did not smoke for fear it would make his teeth black. Coffee and sherbet were then handed him, but he declined both, and insisted upon two of his chiefs drinking the whole, and during the operation he watched them attentively, as though expecting some evil effect.

The young king renewed his solicitation for assistance to capture or kill Rionga, declaring that no improvement in the country could take place until the rebel was exterminated; but with equal persistence Baker refused to consider the proposition, and in order to change the unpleasant subject again, he ordered in a metal box that was filled with an assortment of presents, including a watch. The new toy was ticking loudly, and it was, of course, handed round and held to the ear of each chief. Kabba Rega said he knew

Baker was a great friend of his father, Kamrasi, but it must not be forgotten that though his father was dead the son was still living; therefore all the presents intended for Kamrasi might be handed over to himself.

A large musical box, with drums and bells, was then exhibited. This was one of the best instruments of its kind, and it played a remarkably good selection of airs, which quite charmed the audience. Among the presents given to Kabba Rega was a small musical snuff-box. This was now wound up and exhibited, but the greedy young fellow at once asked, "Why don't you give me the large box?"

Baker gave the royal beggar many presents, and then tried to explain the importance to him of opening up the country to legitimate commerce, but to all his arguments Kabba Rega replied: "You were my father's friend and brother; your wife was the same. You drove back the slave-hunters under Mohamed by hoisting your flag. Since you left us, the slave-hunters have returned and ruined the country. My father is dead, but Rionga is still alive. Now you are my father, and your wife is my mother; will you allow your son's enemy to live?" It was quite useless to argue with this hardened young barbarian, who had not an idea of mercy in his disposition. As he had murdered his own relatives by the foulest treachery, so he would of course destroy any person who stood in his way.

Once more it was necessary to change the conversation. A number of buffoons that were kept about the court for the amusement of the young king now came forward. The crowd was driven back, and an open space having been thus cleared, they performed a curious theatrical scene, followed by a general fight **AN EXHIBITION OF** with clubs, until one man, having knocked down all the party, remained **BUFFOONS.** the victor. The scene terminated with an act of disgusting indecency, which created roars of laughter from the immense crowd, who evidently considered this was the great joke of the piece. Kabba Rega now took leave, and retired as he had come, with drums, whistles, horns, and flageolets, making a horrid din.

After the departure of the king, Baker engaged several of the chiefs in conversation, that he might learn more of the practices of the slave-hunters, and the general difficulties with which the government had to contend. Several of these assured him that Abou Saood's people had been in the habit of torturing people to extract from them the secret of the spot in which **TORTURES INFLICTED BY** their corn was concealed. Throughout Unyoro there were no gran- **SLAVE-HUNTERS.** aries exposed, as the country had been ravaged by civil war; thus all corn was buried in deep holes specially arranged for that purpose. When the slave-hunters sought for corn, they were in the habit of catching the villagers and holding them down on the mouth of a large earthen water-jar filled with glowing embers until they were nearly roasted. If this torture did not extract the secret, they generally cut the sufferer's throat to terrify his companions, who would then divulge the position of the hidden stores to avoid a similar fate. It is difficult to conceive the brutality of these brigands, who, relieved from the fear of punishment, exhibit their unbridled passions by every horrible crime.

Among other singular things the chiefs gave Baker a graphic account of the royal funeral that had taken place when Kamrasi was interred. When a king of Unyoro dies, the body is exposed upon a framework of green wood, like a gigantic gridiron, over a slow fire. It is thus gradually dried, until it resembles **A ROYAL FUNERAL.** an over-roasted hare. Thus mummified, it is wrapped in new bark-cloth, and the body lies in state within a large house built specially for its reception. The sons fight for the throne. The civil war may last for years, but during this period of anarchy

the late king's body lies still unburied. At length, when victory has decided in favor of one of his sons, the conqueror visits the hut in which his father's body lies in state. He approaches the corpse, and standing by its side sticks the butt-end of his spear in the ground, and leaves it thus fixed near the right hand of the dead king. This is symbolical of victory.

The son now ascends the throne, and the funeral of his father must be his first duty. An immense pit or trench is dug, capable of containing several hundred people. This pit is neatly lined with new bark-cloth. Several wives of the late king are seated together at the bottom, to bear upon their knees the body of their departed lord. The night previous to the funeral, the king's own regiment, or body-guard, surround many dwellings or villages, and seize the people indiscriminately as they issue from their doors in the early morning. These captives are brought to the pit's mouth. Their legs and arms are broken with clubs, and they are pushed into the pit on the top of the king's body and his wives. An immense din of drums, horns, flageolets, and whistles, mingled with the yells of a frantic crowd, drown the shrieks of the sufferers, upon whom the earth is shoveled and stamped down by thousands of cruel fanatics, who dance and jump upon the loose mould so as to force it into a compact mass and smother the victims. At length the mangled mass is buried and trodden down beneath a tumulus of earth, and all is still.

When the funeral rites of Kamrasi were over, Kabba Rega ascended the throne, and succeeded to all his father's wives, with the exception of his own mother. This is the invariable custom in Unyoro. The throne is composed of half copper and half wood. It is a small and ancient piece of furniture, that has been handed down for many generations, and is considered to be a cojoor, or talisman. There is also an ancient drum, which is regarded with reverence, as something uncanny; and the two articles are always jealously guarded by special soldiers, and are seldom used. Should the throne be lost or stolen, the authority of the king would disappear, together with the talisman, and disorder would reign throughout the country until the precious object should be restored.

CHAPTER XVII.

VALUE OF GIRLS IN AFRICA.

Baker at least partially secured the confidence of Kabba Rega, and was resolved to begin his reforms by ordering the immediate release of all slaves held at Fatiko, Fabbo, Faloro, and Farragenia, supposed to number about one thousand women and children. At the same time that Kabba Rega and his people were eager for the restoration of the numerous women and children that had been stolen from Unyoro, they were themselves great slave-dealers. In Unyoro there was an established value for healthy young girls. Such a person could be bought for one first-class elephant tusk or a new shirt. In the country of Uganda, where the natives are exceedingly clever as tailors and furriers, needles are in great demand. A handsome girl could be purchased there for thirteen English needles! Thus for slave-traders there existed an excellent opening for a profitable business. A girl might be bought for thirteen needles or a new shirt in Uganda, to be exchanged in Unyoro for an elephant's tusk that would bring \$100 or \$150 in England, and the poor slave never leave Central Africa, nor the dealer in ivory be aware that he was encouraging the slave-trade.

About Saood's brigands had been far too lawless even for this innocent traffic, and in default of the merchandise necessary for such profitable exchanges, they had found it more convenient to kidnap the young girls, which saved much trouble in bargaining for needles and shirts. Girls are always purchased, if required as wives. It would be quite impossible to obtain a wife for love from any tribe. "Blessed is he that hath his quiver full of them." A large family of girls is a source of wealth to the father, as he sells each daughter for twelve or fifteen cows to her suitor. Every girl is certain to marry; thus a dozen daughters will bring a fortune of at least one hundred and fifty cows to their parents.



BUYING ELEPHANTS' TUSKS.

in all pastoral countries. In Unyoro cattle are scarce, and they belong to the king; therefore the girls are purchased for various commodities—such as brass-coil bracelets, bark-cloths, cotton shirts, ivory, etc.

Slavery seems to be a natural institution of Africa. It is found almost everywhere in that miserable country. Baker relates that, while detained in Gondokoro, he had a conversation with an intelligent chief of one of the Bari tribes on the subject of the great curse, and the old chief seemed deeply moved as he depicted its horrors and expressed his determination to suppress the traffic in human beings. Many of the chief's women and children had been carried off by a neighboring tribe, and in the most interesting portion of the interview he suddenly proposed, with a burst of enthusiasm, that Baker should join

him with his men, and capture all the women and children that belonged to his enemies! He regarded slavery as wrong only when it affected himself.

Baker had tried every argument possible to convince Kabba Rega that nothing would bring peace and prosperity to his country so quickly as commercial intercourse with Arabian merchants, who had many beautiful and excellent things to exchange for ivory. But argument was never very effective with negroes, **A WONDERFUL ENTERTAINMENT.** even in a state of civilization, and much less among savages. Therefore, to convince the king, resort had to be made to something that would excite his admiration. This Baker accomplished by carefully arranging to show, with every possible advantage, all the various articles he had brought with him for the purpose of introducing legitimate barter, such as tin-plates, crockery, looking-glasses, knives, Indian scarfs, handkerchiefs, blankets of bright colors, clocks, tin whistles, and an immense assortment of toys, all of which delighted the king amazingly, and he immediately wanted the entire stock. Among other things was a magnetic battery which was explained to him. The king at once ordered all his chiefs to submit to a shock, at the same time telling Baker to give it to them strong, and as the savages writhed under the powerful current he fairly roared with laughter. But nothing could induce him to receive a shock himself.

He now requested permission to see the private apartments of Baker and his wife, and he and four of his chiefs and the interpreter were admitted. The first exclamation upon entering the room was one of surprise, "Wah! Wah!"—and Kabba Rega and his chiefs covered their mouths with one hand, according to their custom when expressing astonishment. The large looking-glasses were miracles. The king perceived a large number of Kabba Regas in the endless reflections of the two opposite mirrors. This was a great wonder and attracted particular attention. It was then discovered that every person was multiplied in a similar manner. This was of course "cojoor" (magic). It was difficult to draw them away from the looking-glass, but at length the pictures were examined. The Queen was exhibited and explained, her subjects being described as numerous as the white ants in Unyoro. One of the pictures was a three-quarter face, and they immediately asked why the lady had only one ear. The same question of unity was asked respecting the leg of a man on horseback—why he had only one leg.

Kabba Rega now asked why the women in various portraits all looked at him; wherever he moved their eyes followed him. His chiefs discovered that the faces in the pictures were also looking at them; and the eyes followed them, whether they moved to the right or left! This was "cojoor," which at first made them feel uncomfortable. One of Mrs. Baker's female servants would not remain by herself in this room, for fear of "the eyes that stared at her." The musical box played various delightful airs, and Kabba Rega remarked that it would be more convenient than an instrument which required the study of learning, as "you might set this going at night to play you to sleep, when you were too drunk to play an instrument yourself, even if you knew how to do it." This was his idea of happiness, to go to sleep drunk, assisted by the strains of a self-playing instrument.

Mrs. Baker's trinkets were begged for, but it was explained that such things were private property belonging to the Sit (lady). "The Sit! the Sit! the Sit!" the young cub peevishly exclaimed; "everything that is worth having seems to belong to the Sit!"

Everywhere the king went he was escorted by his bodyguards, called "bonosoora," who looked and acted more like devils than human beings. They were the same as the "satanic guard" furnished by Kamrasi to Baker on his first trip, to guard him from Unyoro to Lake Albert. The natives were in the habit of collecting in large crowds around

the camp, where they stood in open-mouthed wonder watching all the proceedings. Now and then great excitement would be produced by a rush of the "bonosoora" among the crowd, whom they belabored and chased, generally possessing themselves of the best garments of those who were captured, with which they returned to their quarters as lawful prizes. This daring system of thieving was regarded as great fun by all those members of the crowd who had escaped; and the unfortunates who had been reduced to nudity by the loss of their garments were jeered and ridiculed by the mob with true Unyoro want of charity. These bonosoora were an extraordinary force of scoundrels.

**KABBA REGA'S
SATANIC ESCORT.**

The exact number that formed Kabba Rega's celebrated regiment of blackguards could not be learned, but there were evidently above one thousand men who constantly surrounded him, and gained their living by pillaging others. Any slave who ran away from his master might find an asylum if he volunteered to enlist in the bonosoora. Every man who had committed some crime, or who would not pay his debts, could find a refuge by devoting himself to the personal care of the young king, and enrolling within the ranks of the royal guards. The general character of these ruffians may be easily imagined. They lounged away their time, and simply relieved the monotony of their existence by robbing passers-by of anything that attracted their cupidity. Hardly a night passed without some person being murdered by these people, who would always kill a man after dark unless he yielded up his property without resistance. The great number of vultures that continually hovered over the country were dreadful proofs of the hidden horrors that lay in the tall grass.



KABBA REGA'S "BONOSOORA" GUARD.

Hardly a night passed without some person being murdered by these people, who would always kill a man after dark unless he yielded up his property without resistance. The great number of vultures that continually hovered over the country were dreadful proofs of the hidden horrors that lay in the tall grass.

Kabba Rega was even more whimsical and treacherous in his nature than his capricious father, Kamrasi, had been, contrary to the reports which had been received at Fatiko giving him a generous and just character. The promises made by Baker, to bestow all the rich presents he had brought upon the young king, if he should conduct himself properly, did not aid materially in establishing a friendly or confidential feeling. Kabba Rega continued mistrustful, and at times positively threatening, not unfrequently disobeying Baker's orders, and at other times encouraging the natives to steal from the soldiers. His treacherous acts led Baker to pay more regard to the security of his position, and a fort was built which afforded some protection against the hordes of savages who might, at any time, attack him. At length the

**TREACHERY AND A
GREAT BATTLE.**

supply of food began to fail, although Kabba Rega had faithfully promised to provide liberally for the soldiers. Baker was compelled to complain to the king of his remissness, whereupon he expressed great regret that the supply of corn was very small just then, but promised that a great quantity should be delivered the next day, together with such other provisions as might be needed. With many assurances of regard he begged Baker to accept five jars of plantain cider for the soldiers, and at the same time again expressed his sorrow that he could not at once send them several loads of corn. Baker had the cider conveyed to the camp, and soon after the soldiers were regaling themselves with the pleasant beverage. In less than half an hour fully one-half of the entire garrison was down, some writhing in agony and others wholly unconscious. Baker at once knew that the soldiers had been poisoned by drinking the cider, and with all possible haste he opened his medicine-chest, and commenced dosing the patients with a decoction of mustard, salt and water, and following this with a dessert spoonful of water containing three grains of tartar-emetic. While thus employed the sentries were doubled in anticipation of an attack, for it was to be expected that the poisoning would be followed by some other hostile act. However, there was no attack then, and by night the men were all recovered.

Baker sent his most faithful adjutant to Motonse, Kabba Rega's chief minister, to ask for some explanation of the king's act, but the result was most deplorable, for the adjutant was treacherously murdered, as was also a soldier who was sent to accompany him. This was the signal for a general attack. Sharpshooters had been stationed in the grass by Kabba Rega to shoot Baker, but though they fired at him several times before he could reach the fort, none of the shots struck him, though his body-servant was killed.

The soldiers quickly formed in line at the bugle-call, and sallied out of the fort at double-quick. Fire was applied to the grass, while rockets were shot into the thatch-covered houses of the natives, and soon the entire town was enveloped in flames. Many of the natives had guns, but they were ineffective in their hands, while Baker's trained riflemen mowed down the treacherous savages by scores. Fighting continued until nearly midnight, when the natives retreated, leaving Masindi, the capital of Unyoro, in smoking ruins.

The treacherous Kabba Rega had made good his escape, but he sent back messengers declaring that the cider had been poisoned by his minister without his knowledge, and begging for the restoration of friendly relations. So persistently did the king declare his innocence that, half trusting him, Baker sent the large music-box by two men as a present, but the men were foully massacred, and following this base treachery several attempts were made to fire the houses in the camp.

Baker saw that if his men remained at the fort they must certainly starve, for though they could resist all the negroes in Africa should they attack them in their fortified position, yet provisions could only be obtained by foraging, which would be exceedingly dangerous, if not impossible, by reason of the overpowering numbers of the savages. Therefore, to secure relief, he resolved upon forming an alliance with Rionga, who was eighty miles to the south, and to do this it would be necessary to break camp and march through a line of hostile savages who would contest every mile of the road. It was now the rainy season, and the grass was eight feet high in many places, affording excellent means for ambush, and diminishing very much the superiority of guns over spears. The retreat was begun by firing the fort and buildings, everything being first prepared for as swift marching as possible. Every man had his instructions how to act in case of attack, and was impressed with the necessity of maintaining a solid line, which must, under no circumstances, be suffered to be broken by the

**CUTTING THEIR
WAY THROUGH.**

enemy. There were one hundred soldiers and about seventy carriers—not a large force, but their armament was splendid, of Spencer rifles, revolvers, and swords. Their movement was retarded, however, by the fact that they had to drive seventy-five cows before them, for food, and each man had to carry a load of nearly fifty pounds in addition to his arms.

On the first night's march little trouble was experienced, only a few lances being thrown, as the retreat was begun so unexpectedly to the natives that scarcely any of them knew it until the next morning, when thousands of savages followed his trail, and soon surrounded him. The grass hid them from view, **DESPERATE FIGHTING.** and lances began flying as if discharged from the ground. The guide was the first to fall, a lance striking in a fleshy portion of his arm and passing through his body protruded on the opposite side. The savage who threw it rushed toward his victim to recover the weapon, but the wounded man still had strength left to draw a revolver and kill his assailant. The enemy was dispersed by a raking fire, but less than a

mile beyond, when descending a hill in close order, an uproar broke out suddenly as if all the demons of hell had resolved upon a fight. Yells, screams, drums, horns, whistles, from many thousands of concealed savages for an instant startled the troops. Says

Baker: "A tre-

mendous rush in the grass gave notice of a general attack from an immensely powerful ambuscade. The officers did their duty. Every load was upon the ground, and in a moment alternate files were facing to the right and left, kneeling just as the lances began to fly across the path. The bugles rang out 'fire,' and the fight commenced on our side. I saw several lances pass within an inch or two of my wife's head; luckily we were kneeling on one knee. The file-firing was extremely good, and the Sniders rattled without intermission. The grass was so dense that simple buck-shot would be reduced to a very limited range, although excellent at close quarters. The servants quickly handed the elephant breech-loaders, and a double shot to the right and left was followed by the loud explosion of the picrate of potash shells against some unseen object, either men or trees. A quick repetition of the picrate shells seemed to affect the spirit of the attack. I imagine that the extremely loud explosion of the shells in the midst, and perhaps also in the rear of the enemy, led them to suppose that they were attacked from behind."



CUTTING A WAY THROUGH THE ENEMY.

It is difficult to say how long the attack continued, but a vast amount of ammunition was expended before the lances ceased to fly through the line, and the drums and horns were at length heard at a greater distance in the rear. The bugle at **MOWED DOWN BY** once sounded the "advance," and the men marched forward, crossing the stream, and gained the open, where they found themselves in a kind of **SNIDERS.** swampy field of about ten acres. "Ha!" exclaimed many of the soldiers, "if we could only get them on a clear space like this." The rear-guard had been hotly pressed, and the natives had rushed upon the path close to the Sniders, which had punished them severely. Had the soldiers depended upon muzzle-loading muskets, they must have been quickly destroyed; the sharp fire of the Sniders at close quarters must have caused immense loss at the first onset.

The enemy was again dispersed, but it was necessary to sacrifice nearly all the luggage to allow the men freer movement; accordingly, everything, except ammunition, was piled together, including even several bottles of cognac, and burned. Again the troops moved forward, but at every hill they were met by an ambush that had to be cleared, so that progress was wretchedly slow. At a stream, which was reached shortly before noon, the troops were attacked by a very strong force in ambuscade. Some of the enemy exposed themselves boldly, and rushed upon the soldiers just in front of the rear-guard. Several were shot by the Sniders; but one fellow, with unusual pluck, speared a soldier, whose musket had missed fire, through the chest. This poor fellow, thus mortally wounded, grappled with his assailant, and tugging the spear from his own wound, he drove it through the native's heart. The rear bugle sounded "halt," while the knapsack and cartouche-belt were detached from the gallant soldier, whose body was left by the side of his enemy.

Again the savages were scattered, and for half an hour there was no further trouble, but just as the party gained a broad road, that must have been recently prepared, a thousand **IMPALED BY SPEARS.** or more natives fell upon them again. A horse-keeper was wounded by a spear, which passed through his leg behind the knee, and cut the sinew, thus rendering him helpless. He was immediately placed upon a donkey. The unfortunate lad who led the horse a few paces before Baker now uttered a wild shriek, as a spear passed completely through his body. The poor boy crept to his commander on his hands and knees, and asked, "Shall I creep into the grass, Pasha?—where shall I go!" He had not another minute to live. A spear struck another horse-keeper on the hip, and the soft iron point turned up against the bone in a curve like a fish-hook. Lieutenant Mohammed Mustapha was also wounded. A spear had struck him behind the shoulder-joint, and had passed over the blade-bone and spine before making its exit by the right arm. It was a very bad wound and bled profusely, but the gallant lieutenant marched on after having it dressed and bandaged. One of the horses, carrying a heavy load, received a large hunting spear just behind the saddle, which had been thrown with such force that it penetrated a double blanket and passed entirely through the poor animal's body; still the horse was able to carry his load for more than a mile, to a good open camping place, where a halt was ordered.

There is a singular bird in this part of Africa, having a peculiar note that sounds like "Co-co-ma! co-co-ma!" and which the native warriors imitate with their antelope whistles just before making an attack on an enemy. The Bari porters who accompanied Baker said it meant "Look out! look out!" while his Soudan **THE ALARM BIRD.** soldiers declared that the bird exclaimed, "Shat-mo-koor!" which is the order, "Make ready!" Every time just before an attack this doleful sound of "Co-co-ma!

co-co-ma!" was heard in the high grass, to be followed immediately by a discharge of lances. The entire march was a continual fight, so that it would be tedious to narrate each special attack; but Baker at length reached Foweera, which was in Rionga's country, with a loss of ten killed and eleven wounded. Here he expected to find shelter and good houses, but instead nothing could be seen but blackened ashes, everything having been destroyed.

Baker built a stockade at Foweera, which was on the bank of the Victoria Nile, and then set about building canoes in which to cross over to the island where Rionga had his headquarters. Fortunately, while these preparations were being made, messengers arrived to ascertain Baker's intentions in coming to the country. By these he sent some presents to Rionga, and explained his reasons for desiring an alliance with him. A reply soon came back, for Rionga was delighted at the prospect of assistance from so powerful a force, and to show his friendship he sent Baker a considerable quantity of provisions, and begged him to cross over to his island, where he would receive him.

MEETING WITH RIONGA.

The canoes were now ready, and in them Baker and his party reached the island where they were most hospitably received and every want provided for. Rionga met him with a frank, manly assurance of his regard, and forthwith proposed to exchange blood in order that their friendship might be irrevocably sealed. This noble chief was dressed in a beautiful cloak of gold brocade, which Baker had sent him as a present from Foweera, together with a new tarboosh and sky-blue turban, while upon his feet were well-made sandals. He was a handsome man of about fifty, with none of the stiffness of Kamrasi, nor the gawky bearing of Kabba Rega, and was perfectly at his ease. With the natural politeness of a true gentleman, he thanked Baker for the handsome suit in which he was dressed, assuring him that without it he could not have appeared before him in a becoming manner, as the long-continued war of his brother and nephew against him had reduced him almost to poverty. He was well aware of Baker's repeated refusals to join in the struggle against him, and assured him that he fully appreciated his friendship. Rionga proved himself true and reliable, and remained the faithful ally and friend of the whites.

Baker had spent only two days with Rionga when messengers arrived from Fatiko with a report that Abou Saood had grown so insolent, under the belief that no one could now make him accountable for his acts, that the garrison was in grave danger, as Abdullah had already been threatened by the cruel Arab. His insolence had extended farther than a mere refusal to submit to the authority of Lieutenant Abdullah, for he had already enslaved nearly one hundred of the natives, and executed several others who had tried to evade the slave-sticks which he had prepared for them. This news moved Baker to immediate action, for he felt the necessity of hurrying with all possible speed to Fatiko to relieve the garrison, knowing that Abou Saood was eager to avenge himself for the loss of power and trade.

BATTLE WITH ABOU SAOOD.

Baker left Foweera with forty of his own men and as many more of Rionga's soldiers, and marched with such celerity that he reached Fatiko in two days, before Abou Saood had the least suspicion of his approach. As he came marching over the hill toward the village, Abou Saood was as much surprised as though he had risen from the ground, but he was quick to realize the danger which now threatened, as a punishment for his rebellious and brutal conduct. He acted upon the only means for evading the punishment circumstances offered, and accordingly attempted to destroy Baker by a sudden and impetuous attack. A big battle was the result, in which, however, Abou Saood was completely routed, and nearly all his officers and half of his fighting force were slain.

About Saood escaped with a few of his men and changed his headquarters to Fabbo, a village nearly twenty-five miles east of Fatiko. Here he collected a large quantity of ivory and then started for the Makkarika country, two hundred and fifty miles distant, to secure carriers to assist him in removing the ivory and resisting any attack that might be made upon him.

Baker's force, small when he entered the country, had been diminished by deaths in battle and from sickness until not more than two hundred remained, all told, who could be relied upon in a fight. Even this number was divided to garrison Fatiko, while sixty were left at Foweera with Rionga, so that there was constant danger of annihilation should combined attacks be made by the natives upon the scattered forces. He considered well his position and therefore sent a small party back to Gondokoro for a reinforcement of two hundred men, with instructions to bring some milch cows.

When About Saood left Fabbo the natives began to enlist under the government standard, and therefore, when news came that a large body of the Arab slave-hunters, including three thousand Makkarika cannibals, had arrived on the Nile from the far west to take the ivory, the people of Fabbo became very much alarmed; this fear was greatly increased by a second report that the cannibals had reached the Koshi country, which was separated from the Madi, in which Fabbo was situated, only by the Nile River.

Every day people arrived at Fatiko with horrible reports of the cannibals, who were devouring the children in the Koshi district. Spies went across the river and brought every intelligence. It appeared that three thousand Makkarikas had been engaged by Ali Emmeen under the pretence that they were to go to Fatiko and fight a chief called "the Pasha," who had enormous flocks and herds, together with thousands of beautiful women and other alluring spoil; but they had not heard that they were to carry three thousand elephants' tusks to the station of Atroosh. Baker's spies now told them the truth. "Fight the Pasha!" they exclaimed; "do you not know who he is? and that he could kill you all like fowls? He has no cows for you to carry off, but he has guns that are magic, and which load from behind instead of at the muzzle!"

This was a terrible disappointment to the deluded Makkarikas, which at once spread dissension among them when they found that they had been cajoled in order to transport the heavy loads of ivory. A providential punishment suddenly fell upon them. The small-pox broke out, and killed upward of eight hundred bloodthirsty cannibals who had been devouring the country. This visitation of small-pox created a panic that entirely broke up and dispersed the invading force, and defeated their intents.

About Saood's plans had failed, and there was now comparative peace, while prospects for the future were all flattering. Mtesa had sent a messenger to Baker offering his aid to destroy Kabba Rega, while Rionga had sworn allegiance to the Khedive, and had been made the vakeel, or ruler of the Unyoro country, so that Kabba Rega was really now only a wandering outcast, incapable of offering any serious resistance. Baker had won the good opinion and friendship of many natives during his first journey through Africa, by joining with them in the chase and so effectively killing and sharing with them the large game. It was now the hunting season, and as arrangements were being made for the great annual hunt, he resolved to participate with the natives, which gave them much pleasure, for they appreciated his gun, which was certain to secure for them considerable meat.

The natives, in their annual hunts, use a large net, or a number of nets, which are made fast successively to stakes so as to form a large quarter circle stretching across the

country which they have previously selected to beat. They then form a circle themselves, more than a mile in diameter, facing the nets, and fire the grass to windward. In the high grass the net would be invisible, until the game, in trying to escape, would rush into it, when they were checked and speared to death by hunters who were hidden in blinds, two to each section of netting.

After the grass had been burnt, large quantities of the crimson fruit of the wild ginger showed in many directions, growing half-exposed from the earth. This is a leathery, hard pod, about the size of a goose-egg, filled with a semi-transparent pulp of a sub-acid flavor, with a delicious perfume between pineapple and lemon-peel. It is very juicy and refreshing, and is decidedly the best wild fruit of Central Africa.

Everything was ready and the men had already been stationed at regular intervals about two miles to windward, where they waited with their fire-sticks ready for the appointed

signal. A shrill whistle disturbed the silence. This signal was repeated at intervals. In a few minutes after the signal a long line of separate thin pillars of smoke ascended into the blue sky, forming a band extending over about two miles of the horizon. The thin pillars rapidly thickened and be-



DRIVING ANTELOPES INTO THE NET.

came dense volumes, until at length they united and formed a long black cloud of smoke that drifted before the wind over the bright yellow surface of the high grass. The fire traveled at a rate of several miles an hour, and very soon, from an ant-hill which he had selected, Baker saw the startled game begin to move about. A rhinoceros was first to appear, but it was too far for a successful shot, and kept along an incline toward the nets; antelopes shot by, and presently a lion and lioness leaped into view, but just as Baker was about to fire, the head of a native rose in the direct line of aim. Beautiful lencotis, hartebeests and antelopes were now running on every side, affording excellent shots, which Baker thoroughly improved until he had brought down nearly a dozen of these animals without moving from the ant-hill. The natives killed many antelopes, but the rhinoceros ran through the net as though it had been a cobweb, followed by a number of buffaloes.

The results of the hunt were very gratifying, enough meat having been obtained to last the village for several days. The women who participated in the hunt, to carry the game,

took their babies with them, slung across their backs by a piece of bark-cloth and protected against rain by inverted gourd-shells; yet with this burden they managed also to carry large loads of meat. The treatment of children in Central Africa is

HOW THE NATIVES CARE FOR THEIR BABIES. most inhuman and accounts for the extraordinary mortality among them. According to the population of the village, there are certain

houses built upon pedestals, or stone supports, about three feet from the ground. In the clay wall of the circular building is a round hole about a foot in diameter; this is the only aperture. At sunset, when the children have been fed, they are put to bed in the simplest manner, by being thrust head-foremost through the hole in the wall, assisted, if refractory, by a smack behind, until the night-nursery shall have received the limited number. The aperture is then stopped up with a bundle of grass, if the nights are cool. The children lie together on the clay floor like a litter of young puppies, and breathe the foulest air until morning, at which time they are released from the suffocating oven, to be suddenly exposed to the chilly daybreak. Their naked little bodies shiver round a fire until the sun warms them, but the seeds of diarrhoea and dysentery are thus sown.

On December 30, a week after the hunt just described, another hunt was arranged for, which was attended with even greater excitement than the first, though the preparations were all the same. Baker had taken position on an ant-hill, and directly

ADVENTURE WITH A LIONESSE. after the grass was fired a beautiful picture was presented, for they had surrounded an unusually large number of animals, which advanced slowly, as the pace of the fire was hardly more than two miles an hour. As

Baker was firing with deadly effect upon a herd of antelopes, he saw a yellow tail rise suddenly from a water-hole not far distant, immediately followed by glimpses of an immense lion, which disappeared again in the grass, with its head in the direction of the hunter, as though approaching. Presently a rustling in the dry grass within forty yards of his stand, apprised him that the ferocious beast was coming nearer; he had three guns with him, suited for different kinds of game, and seizing a rifle which was specially suited for lion shooting, in another moment he caught a fair view of the animal and fired. Instead of being the one he had first seen, it proved to be a lioness; she rolled over backward and turned three convulsive somersaults, at the same time roaring furiously; she then recovered and rose as if unharmed; Baker fired again, but must have missed, for she charged at him, roaring all the while; a load of buck-shot, however, sent her back again and she disappeared in the high grass.

The lioness could be heard groaning at a short distance, so carefully picking his way, Baker approached near enough to get another shot, which broke her ankle joint, but again she got away. Several natives now came upon the scene, and locating the wounded beast, offered to throw their spears at her, which would result in bringing her out so that a fair shot could be secured. Baker would not allow this, but fired at her as she lay partially concealed in a bottom. The reply was an immediate charge, and the enraged brute came bounding toward him with savage roars. The natives threw their spears, but missed, and some one would have been badly torn had not a shot from a smooth-bore No. 10 gun caused her to retreat again into the grass. Baker now took his large rifle and followed stealthily until he saw the lioness sitting up on her haunches like a dog. A careful aim put a bullet in the back of her neck, from which she fell over dead. She measured nine feet six inches from nose to tail extremity, and upon being cut open, they found the half of a lencotis, which had simply been divided by her teeth into two-pound lumps. These were greedily

seized by the natives and divided between them as a particularly dainty dish. These hunts had a very beneficial influence, for they served to establish confidence in Baker on the part of the natives. The women were especially friendly and loyal, to such a degree that they visited him in a body and begged that he would not go upon the hunt again lest he should fall a victim to some wild animal, in which event they declared the slave-hunters would return and either kill or carry them again into captivity. They looked upon him as their sole protector, and therefore were ever anxious for his life.

A PEACEFUL GOVERNMENT.

Everything was now peaceful; there were no quarrels, no intoxication, no thieving. The troops were all Mohammedans without an opposing sect; therefore, for lack of opposition, they were lukewarm. The natives believed in nothing. Baker notes the following:



ADVENTURE WITH A LIONESS.

"The curious fact remained, that without the slightest principle of worship, or even a natural religious instinct, these people should be free from many vices that disgrace a civilized community. I endeavored to persuade the most intelligent of the existence of a deity who could reward or punish; but beyond this I dared not venture, as they would have asked practical questions, which I could not have explained to their material understanding."

On January 15, 1873, envoys arrived from Mtesa, bringing a letter offering an army of his men to Baker, with which to destroy Kabba Rega and place Rionga on the throne, as the Egyptian representative over Unyoro. He also desired Baker to visit him, and expressed much anxiety to promote such commercial intercourse as the Khedive desired to establish. All these matters had been arranged, for Kabba Rega had been deposed and Rionga

PREPARING TO RETURN TO ENGLAND.

was in full possession of Unyoro, which facts were communicated to Mtesa, with thanks for his very kind offer of assistance.

Baker had felt no little solicitude for Wat-el-Mek, whom he had sent to Gondokoro for reinforcements, double the time he had allowed for the return having now elapsed. At length, on March 8, on the ninety-second day after their departure, he was rejoiced to see the advance-guard approaching, and forming his troops quickly, he went out to give them a military welcome. After an inspection of the men, Baker was annoyed very much by the fact that not a single head of cattle had been brought with them; a quarrel had taken place between Wat-el-Mek and Tayib Agha, the two commanding officers, a Bari village had been burned, and in a battle with the natives twenty-eight of the soldiers had been killed, their arms taken, and all the cattle captured. The ill-feeling between the two officers was the cause of all their calamities.

There had been enough recruits brought from Gondokoro, however, to swell the total force to six hundred and twenty men, with which Baker strongly garrisoned Fatiko, Fabbo, and the stockade which he had built opposite Rionga's Island, at Foweera. Unyoro was now completely in the power of Riouga, and a route was opened from Fatiko to Zanzibar. Everything was in perfect order, so leaving Major Abdullah commandant at Fatiko, he gave him full instructions as to the government of Central Africa, and then departed with a small bodyguard for Gondokoro, which place was reached without special incident on April 1, 1873, the date on which his commission from the Khedive expired.

After turning over his effects to the government officers at Gondokoro, he secured a vessel and started for Khartoum. En route he overtook three vessels having on board seven hundred slaves, among whom the small-pox had broken out and the mortality was frightful. He hailed the slavers, and was astonished to learn that the vessels belonged to Abou Saood, who had been to Cairo and so established himself in the confidence of the authorities that he could continue his nefarious traffic without fear of any unpleasant results; nor was this the only discouraging news which Baker heard, for he learned positively that ever since his departure from Gondokoro for Fatiko the slave vessels had been carrying their human cargoes directly on to Alexandria or the Red Sea, meeting with no opposition which they could not easily overcome by bribery. He now saw that all his labors for a suppression of the slave trade in Central Africa had been without fruit; that the government, so far from rendering its aid to that end, had nullified its declarations and orders by refusing to punish convicted slavers, and by receiving them as worthy merchants at the Khedive's capital. Sick with disgust, he quitted Egypt and sailed for England.

Baker did not live to see much accomplishment in the way of destroying the slave traffic of Africa, nor could ordinary effort, however strongly reinforced, do more than run the practice to cover, where it would continue to flourish. But that which is vainly attempted to perform by force, has been completed by peaceable means, by the demands of civilization which is spreading its all-powerful influence over Africa and is fast bringing about the continent's redemption. The screech of the whistle, the puff of the locomotive, the tick of the telegraph, have affrightened the dealers in human flesh and their infamous occupation is no longer safe or profitable. Africa, at the close of the century, is a land of mighty promise, which is soon to assume a place of dignity among the sisterhood of civilized countries.

CHAPTER XVIII.

HUNTING BIG GAME IN ABYSSINIA.

Before entering upon his first expedition in quest of the Nile's source, Baker spent several months in Abyssinia, with the double intent of acquiring the Arab language, a familiarity with which was essential to his purpose of exploring Central Africa, and in fulfillment of his desire to follow the Blue Nile, whose source had not been previously determined. Being an ardent sportsman, and opportunity offering to indulge his strong propensities, Baker spent much of his time in pursuit of large game, which abounds in Abyssinia. His adventures while in that country were extremely exciting, and often perilous, report of which acquaints us with the people of that section of Africa with whom Italy has been waging a desperate war with a view to conquest, and also to the dangers attending the hunting of elephants and rhinoceri, adventures with which form the subject of this chapter, which are largely quotations from Baker's journal.

Two weeks after reaching the region of the Blue Nile, above its junction with the White Nile, Baker fell in with a party of Abyssinian hunters called aggageers, who use no other weapon than a long sword, which, however, they wield with a skill and daring almost incredible. He describes a pursuit of which he was a witness as follows:

"We had ridden about a mile, and were beginning to despair, when suddenly we turned a sharp angle in the watercourse, and Taher Sherrif (the chief hunter), who was leading, immediately reined in his horse and backed him toward the party. I followed his example, and we were at once concealed by the sharp bend of the river. He now whispered that a bull elephant was drinking from a hole it had scooped in the sand, not far round the corner. Without the slightest confusion, the hunters fell into their respective places, Taher Sherrif leading, while I followed closely in the rear; we were a party of seven horses.

**A BULL ELEPHANT
DISCOVERED.**

"Upon turning the corner, we at once perceived the elephant that was still drinking. It was a fine bull; the enormous ears were thrown forward, as the head was lowered in the act of drawing up the water through the trunk; these shaded the eyes, and with the wind favorable, we advanced noiselessly upon the sand to within twenty yards before we were perceived. The elephant then threw up its head, and with ears flapping forward, it raised its trunk for an instant, then slowly, but easily, ascended the steep bank and retreated. The aggageers now halted for a minute to confer together, and then followed in their original order up the crumbled bank. We were now on most unfavorable ground; the fire that had cleared the country we had hitherto traversed had been stopped by the bed of the torrent. We were thus plunged at once into withered grass above our heads, unless we stood in the stirrups; the ground was strewn with fragments of rocks, and altogether it was ill adapted for riding. However, Taher Sherrif broke into a trot, followed by the entire party, as the elephant was not in sight. We ascended a hill, and when near the summit we perceived the elephant about eighty yards ahead. It was looking behind during its retreat, by swinging its huge head from side to side, and upon seeing us approach, it turned suddenly round and halted. 'Be ready, and take care of the rocks!' said Taher Sherrif, as I rode forward by his side. Hardly had he uttered these words of caution when the bull gave a vicious jerk of the head, and with a shrill scream it charged down upon us.

with the greatest fury. Away we all went, helter skelter, through the dry grass, which whistled in my ears, over the hidden rocks at full gallop, with the elephant tearing after us, for about a hundred and eighty yards at a tremendous pace. Tetel was a sure-footed horse, and, being unshod, he never slipped upon the stones. Thus, as we all scattered in different directions, the elephant became confused, and relinquished the chase; it had been very near me at the time, and in such ground I was not sorry when it gave up the hunt. We now quickly united, and again followed the elephant, that had once more retreated. Advancing at a canter, we shortly came in view. Upon seeing the horses, the bull deliberately entered a stronghold composed of rocky and uneven ground, in the cliffs of which grew, thinly, a few leafless trees, the thickness of a man's leg. It then turned boldly toward us, and stood determinedly at bay.

"Now came the tug of war! Taher Sherrif came close to me and said, 'You had better shoot the elephant, as we shall have great difficulty in this rocky ground;' this I declined, as I wished to end the fight as it had been commenced, with the sword; and I proposed that he should endeavor to drive the animal to more favorable ground. 'Never mind,' replied Taher, 'Inshallah (please God) he shall not beat us.' He now advised me to keep as close to him as possible, and look sharp for a charge.

"The elephant stood facing us like a statue; it did not move a muscle beyond a quick and restless action of the eyes, that were watching all sides. Taher Sherrif and his younger brother, Ibrahim, now separated, and each took opposite sides of the elephant, and then joined each other twenty yards behind it; I accompanied them, until Taher advised me to keep about the same distance on the left flank. In front of the elephant were aggageers, one of whom was the renowned Rodur Sherrif, with the withered arm. All being ready for action Rodur now rode slowly toward the head of the cunning old bull, who was quietly awaiting an opportunity to make certain of some one, who might give him a good chance.

"Rodur Sherrif rode a bay mare that, having been trained to these encounters, was perfect at her work. Slowly and surely she advanced toward her wary antagonist, until within about eight or nine yards of the elephant's head. The creature never moved, and the *mise en scene* was beautiful; not a word was spoken, and we kept our places amidst utter stillness, which was at length broken by a snort from the mare, who gazed intently at the elephant, as though watching for the moment of attack.

"One more pace forward, and Rodur sat coolly upon his mare, with his eyes fixed upon those of the elephant. For an instant I saw the white of the eye nearest to me; 'Look out, Rodur! he's coming!' I exclaimed. With a shrill scream, the elephant dashed upon him like an avalanche.

DOWN RUSHES THE CHARGING ELEPHANT. "Round went the mare, as though upon a pivot, and away over rocks and stones, flying like a gazelle, with the monkey-like form of little Rodur Sherrif leaning forward, and looking over his left shoulder as the elephant rushed after him. For a moment I thought he must be caught. Had the mare stumbled, all were lost; but she gained in the race after a few bounding strides, and Rodur, still looking behind him, kept his distance so close to the elephant, that its outstretched trunk was within a few feet of the mare's tail.

"Taher Sherrif and his brother, Ibrahim, swept down, like falcons, in the rear. In full speed they dexterously avoided the trees, until they arrived upon open ground, when they dashed up close to the hindquarters of the furious elephant who, maddened with the excitement, heeded nothing but Rodur and his mare, that were almost within its grasp.



AN ACCAGEER HAM-CHURRING A CHARGING ELEPHANT.

When close to the tail of the elephant, Taher Sherrif's sword flashed from its sheath, as grasping his trusty blade he leaped nimbly to the ground, while Ibrahim caught the reins of his horse ; two or three bounds on foot, with the sword clutched in both hands, and he was close behind the elephant ; a bright glance shone like lightning, as the sun struck upon the descending steel ; this was followed by a dull crack, as the sword cut through skin and sinews, and settled deep in the bone, about twelve inches above the foot. At the next stride the elephant halted dead short in the midst of its tremendous charge. Taher had jumped quickly on one side, and had vaulted into the saddle with his naked sword in hand ; at the same moment Rodur, who had led the chase, turned sharp round, and again faced the elephant as before ; stooping quickly from his saddle, he picked up from the ground a handful of dirt, which he threw into the face of the vicious looking animal, that once more attempted to rush upon him. It was impossible ! The animal had been ham-strung, and the foot turned up in front like an old shoe. In an instant Taher was once more on the ground, and again the sharp sword slashed the remaining leg. The great bull-elephant



BRINGING THE ELEPHANT TO BAY.

could not move ! The first cut with the sword had utterly disabled it ; the second was its death blow ; the arteries of the leg were divided, and the blood spurted in jets from the wounds. I wished to terminate its misery by a bullet behind the ear, but Taher Sherrif begged me not to fire, as the elephant would quickly bleed to death without pain, and an unnecessary shot might attract the *Base* (a neighboring tribe), who would steal the flesh and ivory during our absence.

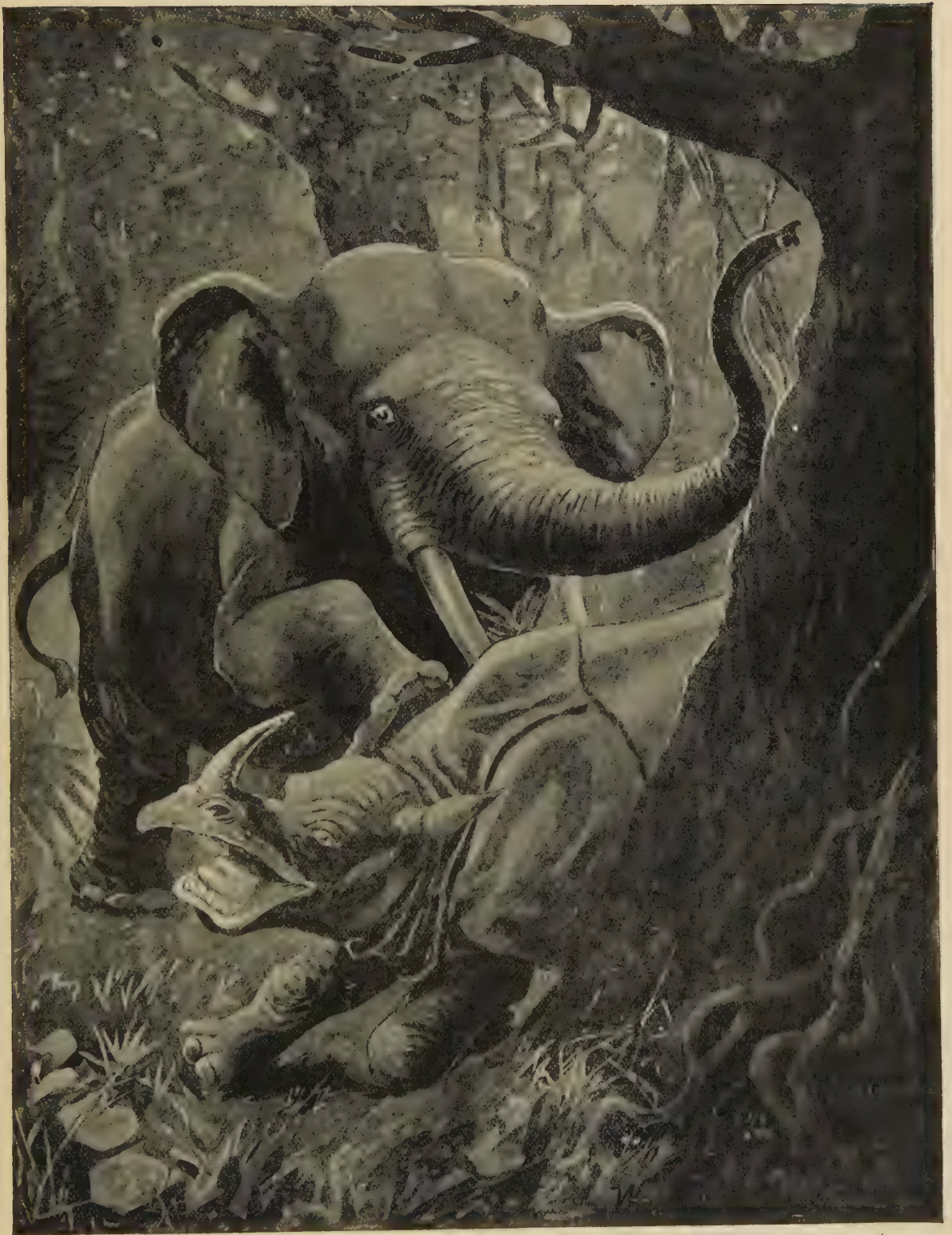
"The hunting of Taher Sherrif and his brothers was superlatively beautiful ; with an immense amount of dash, there

was a cool, sportsmanlike manner in their mode of attack that far excelled the impetuous and reckless onset of Abou Do ; it was difficult to decide which to admire the more, whether the coolness and courage of him who led the elephant, or the extraordinary skill and activity of the agageer who dealt the fatal blow."

The two most powerful animals that roam the jungles of Central Africa, or, indeed, that are to be met with in any region of the world, are the elephant and rhinoceros. The latter manifests greater timidity before man, but in his surly moods he does not disdain to engage in battle with the elephant and quite as frequently vanquishes his lordly adversary as he is himself beaten. The victory very much depends upon

BATTLES BETWEEN THE ELEPHANT AND RHINOCEROS.

which has the better weapons, but when each is well provided in this respect the contest is nothing short of terrible. At times the rhinoceros is found almost destitute of the nasal horn, due, perhaps, to natural causes, usually to his disposition to tear up young trees, excited by a parasite that frequently attacks his nostrils and causes him great pain. Age, also,



BATTLE BETWEEN AN ELEPHANT AND RHINOCEROS.

affects the growth of the horn, which becomes worn so much as to be fairly useless as a weapon. The elephant, however, is hardly less fortunate, for sometimes we find him illy provided with tusks, and at others with no tusks at all, having broken them off in uprooting trees, or in combat with those of his own species. Naturally the African rhinoceros is armed with a fearful weapon in the shape of a horn three or even four feet in length, terminating with a keen point, which he uses with desperate effect.

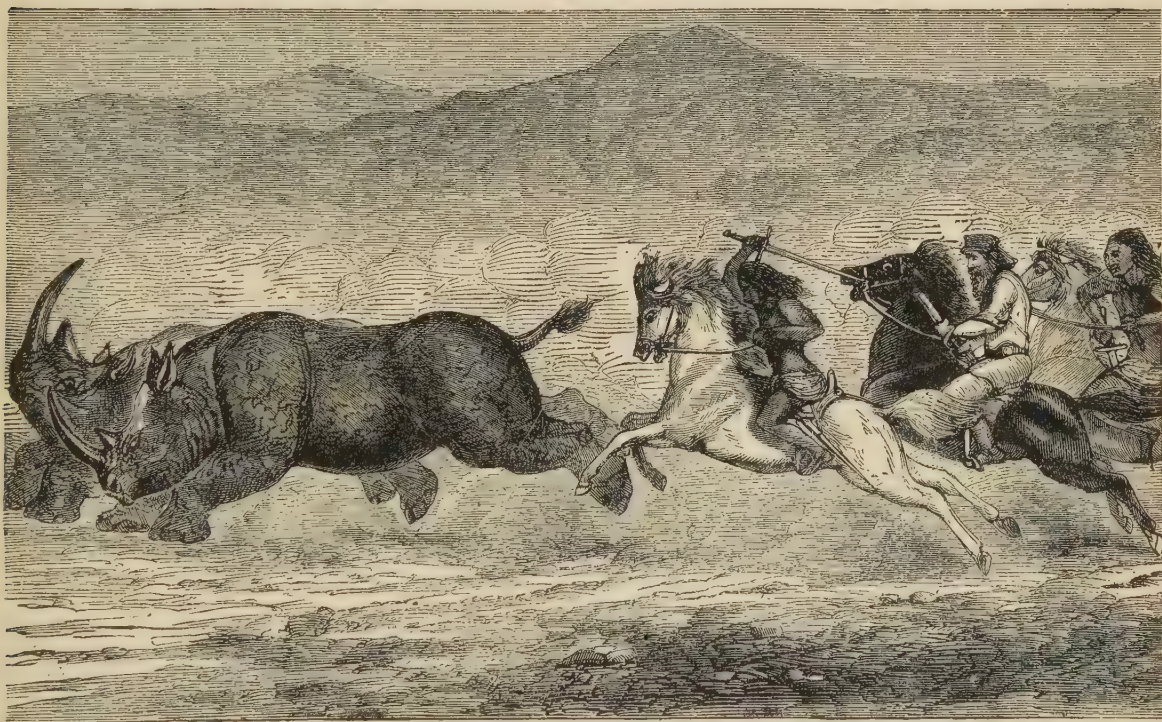
In waging battle neither animal seems to exhibit much strategy, since they blindly rush upon each other and strike wherever opportunity offers. Should the elephant succeed in catching his adversary in the side he quickly impales him with his terrible tusks and is invariably victorious; but so great an advantage is uncommon. Most generally the rhinoceros is struck about the shoulders, and it often happens that his thick hide deflects the thrust, when he rushes on and plunges his horn either into his antagonist's abdomen or rips his legs or breast. If the elephant turns to retreat he is certainly doomed, for then the rhinoceros attacks him in the rear or side and invariably tears him with his horn, nor ceases to ply this fearful weapon until the elephant is torn and gashed into an almost unrecognizable mass.

Having reproduced Sir Samuel Baker's description of the manner in which the aggageers (Abyssinian sword-hunters) kill the elephant, I have now to introduce these famously courageous sportsmen again as hunters of the rhinoceros, quoting from his journal the following thrilling description of
A THRILLINGLY EXCITING RHINOCEROS HUNT. a chase after two fierce animals: "We were thus leisurely returning home through alternate plains and low, open forests of mimosa, when Taher Sherrif, who was leading the party, suddenly reined up his horse and pointed to a thick bush, beneath which was a large gray, but shapeless, mass. He whispered, as I drew near, '*Oomgurriin*' (mother of the horn), their name for the rhinoceros. I immediately dismounted, and with the short No. 10 Totham rifle, I advanced as near as I could, followed by Suleiman, as I had sent all my gun-bearers direct home by the river when we had commenced this circuit. As I drew near, I discovered two rhinoceri asleep beneath a thick mass of bushes; they were lying like pigs, close together, so that at a distance I had been unable to distinguish any exact form. It was an awkward place, for if I were to take the wind fairly, I should have to fire through the thick bush, which would be useless; therefore, I was compelled to advance with the wind direct from me to them. The aggageers remained about a hundred yards distant, while I told Suleiman to return and hold my horse in readiness with his own. I then walked quietly to within about thirty yards of the rhinoceri, but so curiously were they lying that it was useless to attempt a shot. In their happy dreams they must have been suddenly disturbed by the scent of an enemy, for, without the least warning, they suddenly sprang to their feet with astonishing quickness, and with a loud and sharp whiff, whiff, whiff! one of them charged straight at me. I fired my right-hand barrel in his throat, as it was useless to aim at the head, protected by two horns at the nose. This turned him, but had no other effect, and the two animals thundered off together at a tremendous pace.

"Now for a tally-ho!" Our stock of guns was scattered on the ground, and away went the aggageers in full speed after the rhinoceri without waiting to reload. I quickly remounted my horse, Tetel, and, with Suleiman in company, I spurred hard to overtake the flying Arabs. Tetel was a good, strong cob, but not very fast; however, I believe he never went so well as upon that day, for, although an Abyssinian horse, I had a pair of English spurs which worked like missionaries, but with a more decided result. The ground was

awkward for riding at full speed, as it was an open forest of mimosas, which, although wide apart, were very difficult to avoid, owing to the low crowns of spreading branches; these, being armed with fish-hook thorns, would have been serious in a collision. I kept the party in view, until in about a mile we arrived upon open ground. I again applied the spurs, and by degrees I crept up, always gaining, until I, at length, joined the aggageers.

"Here was a sight to drive a hunter wild! The two rhinoceri were running neck and neck, like a pair of horses in harness, but bounding along at tremendous speed within ten yards of the leading hamran. This was Taher Sherrif, who, with his sword drawn, and his long hair flying wildly behind him, urged his horse forward **A SIGHT FOR A SPORTSMAN.** in the race, amidst a cloud of dust raised by the two huge but active beasts, that tried every sinew of the horses. Rodur Sherrif, with the withered arm, was second, with the reins hung upon the hawklike claw that was all that remained of a hand, but, with his naked sword grasped in his right, he kept close to his brother, ready to



HOT RACE AFTER A BRACE OF RHINOCERI.

second his blow. Abou Do was third; his hair flying in the wind—his heels dashing against the flanks of his horse, to which he shouted in his excitement to urge him to the front, while he leaned forward with his long sword, in the wild energy of the moment, as though hoping to reach the game against all possibility. Now for the spurs! and as these, vigorously applied, screwed an extra stride out of Tetel, I soon found myself in the ruck of men, horses and drawn swords. There were seven of us—and passing Abou Do, whose face wore an expression of agony at finding that his horse was failing, I quickly obtained a place between the two brothers, Taher and Rodur Sherrif. There had been a jealousy between the two parties of aggageers, and each was striving to outdo the other; thus Abou Do was driven almost to madness at the superiority of Taher's horse, while the latter, who was the

renowned hunter of the tribe, was determined that his sword should be first to taste blood. I tried to pass the rhinoceros on my left, so as to fire close into the shoulder my remaining barrel with my right hand, but it was impossible to overtake the animal, who bounded along with undiminished speed. With the greatest exertion of men and horses we could only retain our position within about three or four yards of their tails—just out of reach of the swords. The only chance in the race was to hold the pace until the rhinoceri should begin to fag. The horses were pressed to their utmost, but we had already run about two miles, and the game showed no signs of giving in. On they flew—sometimes over open ground, and then through low brush, which tried the horses severely; then through strips of open forest, until at length the party began to tail off, and only a select few kept their places. We arrived at the summit of a ridge, from which the ground sloped in a gentle inclination for about a mile toward the river; at the foot of this incline was a thick, thorny nabbuk jungle, for which impenetrable covert the rhinoceri pressed at their utmost speed. Never was there better ground for the finish of a race; the earth was sandy but firm, and as we saw the winning post in the jungle that must terminate the hunt, we redoubled our exertions to close with the unfagging game. Suleiman's horse gave in—

IN MAD PURSUIT OF A RHINOCEROS. we had been for about twenty minutes at a killing pace. Tetel, although not a fast horse, was good for a distance, and he now proved his power of endurance, as I was riding at least two stone (twenty-eight pounds) heavier than any of the party. Only four of the seven remained, and we swept down the incline, Taher Sherrif still leading, and Abou Do the last! His horse was done, but not the rider; for, springing to the ground while at full speed, sword in hand, he forsook his tired horse, and, preferring his own legs, he ran like an antelope, and, for the first hundred yards, I thought he would really pass us, and win the honor of first blow. It was of no use; the pace was too severe and, though running wonderfully, he was obliged to give way to the horses. Only three now followed the rhinoceri—Taher Sherrif and his brother, Rodur, and myself. I had been obliged to give the second place to Rodur, as he was a mere monkey in weight; but I was a close third. The excitement was intense—we neared the jungle, and the rhinoceri began to show signs of fagging, as the dust puffed up before their nostrils, and, with noses close to the ground, they snorted as they still galloped on. Oh, for a fresh horse! 'A horse, a horse! my kingdom for a horse!' We were within two hundred yards of the jungle; but the horses were all done. Tetel reeled as I urged him forward, Rodur pushed ahead; we were close to the dense thorns, and the rhinoceri broke into a trot; they were done. 'Now, Taher, for-r-a-a-r-r-d! for-r-a-a-r-r-d Taher!' Away he went—he was close to the very heels of the beasts; but his horse could do no more than his present pace; still he gained upon the nearest; he leaned forward with his sword raised for the blow—another moment and the jungle would be reached! One effort more, and the sword flashed in the sunshine, as the nearest rhinoceros disappeared in the thick screen of thorns, with a gash about four feet long upon his hindquarters. Taher Sherrif shook his bloody sword in triumph above his head; but the rhinoceri were gone. We were fairly beaten; regularly outpaced; but I believe another two hundred yards would have given us the victory. 'Bravo, Taher!' I shouted. He had ridden splendidly and his blow had been marvelously delivered at an extremely long reach, as he was nearly out of his saddle when he sprang forward to enable the blade to attain a cut at the last moment. He could not reach the hamstring, as his horse could not gain the proper position.

"Taher Sherrif explained that at all times the rhinoceros was the most difficult animal to saber, on account of his extraordinary swiftness, and, although he had killed many with

the sword, it was always after a long and fatiguing hunt ; at the close of which, the animal becoming tired, generally turned to bay, in which case one hunter occupied his attention, while another galloped up behind, and severed the hamstring. The rhinoceros, unlike the elephant, can go very well on three legs ; which enhances the danger, as one cut will not utterly disable him."

The two-horned black rhinoceros, as already observed, is an extremely fierce animal, apparently considering all creatures its enemies. It has been frequently observed by experienced hunters that this mad animal will nearly always charge down upon any object that it smells but does not see ; thus, when the animal is concealed either in high grass or thick jungle, should it scent a man who may be passing unseen to windward, it will rush down furiously upon the object it has winded, with three loud whiffs resembling a jet of steam from a safety-valve.. As it is most difficult, in fact next to impossible, to kill a

**FURIOUS DISPOSITION
OF THE RHINOCEROS.**



TAHER SLASHING THE NEAR BEAST.

rhinoceros when charging, he is a particularly unpleasant stranger to thus suddenly meet. Baker had an experience of this kind once which gave him a fright which he was a long time in recovering from.

While passing over some extremely rough country, covered with rocks and tall grass, Baker came upon the fresh tracks of a rhinoceros, which he was sure was still in the vicinity. While speculating with the aggageer-hunters as to its probable position, and thinking how extremely unpleasant an attack of the beast might prove in such a broken district, he was suddenly startled by a sharp whistling snort—whiff, whiff—and the great beast came thundering out of a thicket down upon him in a determined charge. There was no time left for giving battle, as the concern of getting away was all important. He

dug the spurs into his horse's flanks, and clasping his steed round the neck he started the retreat, blindly trusting to providence. The poor horse scrambled with all his power over the huge boulders, through kettar thorns and grass ten feet high, stimulated not only by the spurs in his flanks but by the snorts of the vicious animal that threatened to rip him in the rear. The aggageers were all scattered, and one of them was knocked over by the rhinoceros but not seriously hurt. All succeeded in making their escape, but they were so badly frightened that no attempt was afterward made to bring the animal to bay.

Sometimes, in fact often, it occurs that the rhinoceros will flee from the hunter, and thus become an innocent target for his sport, but the exception to this is by no means rare ;

indeed, no other animal charges so furiously nor so frequently as

**THE NERVE REQUIRED TO
SLAY A RHINOCEROS.**

the rhinoceros, and since it is the most difficult of all brutes to kill, the hunter who follows rhinoceros shooting must possess most remarkable nerve, a quick sight, and the activity of an acrobat.

The hide of the rhinoceros is less than an inch in thickness, but it is so extremely tough that it requires an extraordinary force to penetrate it. The head, though large, may be perforated by an ordinary bullet, yet, owing to the remarkable smallness of the brain, which is largely protected by the horn, a head shot is perhaps the least likely to prove fatal.

When the game is dangerous and a perfect shot is necessary, the greatest amount of nerve is required. The rhinoceros presents but one seriously vulnerable place—behind the shoulder—and to strike this spot fatally the hunter must be close to the animal. A wound is nearly always followed by a furious charge, and what on earth can be more terrible than a thrust from a horn four feet long and with a point as keen as a saber? Or, should the animal miss in striking with his horrible weapon, there is the ponderous body thundering on like a locomotive on the down grade in front of a heavy freight train, most likely to grind the hunter into a mangled mass.

Few, if any, men have exhibited greater courage and coolness under desperate situations than Sir Samuel Baker, the greater part of his life being spent among savage people and in pursuit of the noblest game of the jungle. His adventures and hair-breadth escapes, fortunately published in many books, are an unending source of interest, and will be read with a thrill of delight by every one who admires pluck and daring, for centuries to come. For this reason I am continually tempted to quote from his marvelous records the thrilling experiences of his life. As an illustration of the nerve he possessed, the following incident, extracted from his "Nile Tributaries of Abyssinia," will serve admirably :

" . . . To my astonishment there were the fresh tracks of a rhinoceros within a quarter of a mile of the camp ; this animal must have concealed itself in the bed of the

Royan during the fire, and had wandered forth when it had passed.

A SHOT I followed up the tracks with Bacheet and two of my *Tokrooris*. In
AT LONG RANGE. less than half a mile from the spot, I found it lying down behind a

bush. Creeping under cover of an ant-hill, I shot it through the shoulder with a Reilly No. 10 ; it immediately galloped off, but after running a couple of hundred yards it lay down on the edge of a thick, thorny jungle that bordered the margin of the Royan. I waited in the expectation that it would shortly die, but it suddenly rose and walked slowly into the thorns. Determined to cut off his retreat, I pushed through the bushes, intending to reach the dry bed of the Royan and shoot the rhinoceros as it crossed from the narrow belt of the jungle, into which it had retreated ; but I had hardly reached half way when I heard a sound in the bush upon my right, and I saw the wounded

beast coming straight for our position, but evidently unconscious of our presence, as we were to leeward. I immediately crouched down, as did my men likewise, lest the animal should observe us. Slowly, but surely, it came on exactly toward us, until it was at last so near as to be unpleasant. I looked behind me and saw by the expression of my men that they were thinking of retreat. I merely shook my fist and frowned at them to give them confidence, and I waited patiently for my opportunity. It was becoming too ridiculous; the rhinoceros was within five or six yards, and was slowly but steadily advancing direct upon us; at the next step that he made I raised my rifle to my shoulder and whistled sharply; in an instant it tossed its head up, and seeing nothing in front, as my clothes matched with the leafless branches, it turned its head to the left, and I immediately pulled the trigger. It fell as though smitten by a sledge hammer and lay struggling on the ground. Bacheet sprang forward, and with an Arab sword cut the hamstring of one



A MOMENT OF EXTREME PERIL.

leg. To the astonishment of us all, the rhinoceros jumped up, and on three legs it sprang quickly round and charged Bacheet, who skipped into the bushes, while I ran alongside the rhinoceros as it attempted to follow him, and, with the Fletcher No. 24, I fired through the shoulder, by placing the muzzle within a yard of the animal. It fell dead to the shot, which was another feather in the cap of the good little rifle. This rhinoceros had no ears, they having been bitten off close to the head by another of the same species, while fighting. This mutilation is by no means uncommon."

A few days after the occurrence just related, Baker participated with the Arab hunters in another chase after rhinoceri, in which all the honor fell to him of bagging two monstrous brutes. The country in which he was hunting being covered with tall, rank grass, so thick as to obscure any animal that might be passing through it, Baker determined to render the surface bare by setting fire to the dry vegetation, which being carried into effect,

a wonderful scene was at once presented. The smoke rolled away in tremendous waves, while from out the boiling clouds leaped lapping flames that spread with the rapidity of a slow-moving wind. The animals that were housed or browsing in the

AN EXCITING HUNT. grass, seeing the smoke and knowing what it portended, broke from the covert and sped away toward the hills—antelopes, blesboks, pallahs, hyenas, leopards, lions, rhinoceri, and many other kinds of game, so that the scene constituted a panorama of extraordinary interest. Two days after the fire had spent itself, Baker went in search of the large game which he knew would soon return to the burned district, and taking up a position on a hill, round the base of which the grass had escaped the devouring flames, he obtained a perfect view of an immense tract of country. From his description I extract :

“I had been observing the country for some time from my high position, when suddenly I perceived two rhinoceri emerge from a ravine; they walked slowly through a patch of high grass, and skirted the base of the hill upon which we were standing; presently they winded something, and, trotting back, stood concealed for a moment in the patch of grass. Although I had a good view of them from my present position, I knew that I should not be able to see them in their covert, if on the same level; I therefore determined to send to the tent for my other horses, and to ride them down, if I could not shoot them on foot; accordingly, I sent a man off, directing him to lead Tetel from the peak and to secure him to a tree at the foot of the hill, as I was afraid the rhinoceri might observe the horse on the sky-line. This he did, and we saw him tie the horse by the bridle to the branch of a tree below us, while he ran quickly toward the camp. In the meantime I watched the rhinoceri; both animals laid down in the yellow grass, resembling masses of stone. They had not been long in this position before we noticed two pigs wandering through the grass directly to windward, toward the sleeping rhinoceri; in an instant these animals winded the intruders, and starting up, looked in all directions, but could not see them, as they were concealed by the high grass. Having been thus disturbed, the rhinoceri moved their quarters, and walked slowly forward, occasionally halting and listening; one was about a hundred yards in advance of the other. They were taking a direction at the base of the hill that would lead them directly on the spot where Tetel was tied to the tree. I observed this to Taher Noor, as I feared they would kill the horse. ‘Oh, no,’ he replied, ‘they will lie down and sleep beneath the first tree, as they are seeking for shade—the sun is like fire.’ However, they still continued their advance, and, upon reaching some rising ground, the leading rhinoceros halted, and I felt sure he had a clear view of the horse, that was now about five hundred yards distant, tied to a tree. A ridge descended from the hill, parallel with the course the animals were taking; upon this I ran as quickly as the stony slope permitted, keeping my eye fixed on the leading rhinoceros, who, with his head raised, was advancing directly toward the horse. Tetel did not observe the rhinoceros, but was quietly standing beneath the tree. I ran as fast as I was able, and reached the bottom of the hill just as the willful brute was within fifty yards of the horse, which now for the first time saw the approaching danger; the rhinoceros had been advancing steadily at a walk, but he now lowered his head and charged at the horse at full speed.

“I was about two hundred yards distant, and for the moment I was afraid of shooting the horse, but I fired one of the Reilly No. 10 rifles; the bullet, missing the rhinoceros, dashed the sand and stones into his face, as it struck the ground exactly before his nose, when he appeared to be just upon the unfortunate Tetel. The horse in the same instant

reared and, breaking the bridle, dashed away in the direction of the camp, while the rhinoceros, astonished at the shot, and most likely half-blinded by the sand and splinters of rock, threw up his head, turned round, and trotted back upon the track by which he had arrived. He passed me at about a hundred yards distance, as I had run forward to a bush, by which he trotted with his head raised, seeking for the cause of his discomfiture. Crack! went a bullet against his side, as I fired my remaining barrel at his shoulder; he cocked his tail, and for a few yards he charged towards the shot; but he suddenly changed his course and ran round several times in a small circle; he then halted, and reeling to and fro, he retreated very slowly, and laid down about a hundred yards off. 'Well done, Reilly!' I knew that he had his *quietus*, but I was determined to bag his companion, who, in alarm, had now

**RHINOCEROS
ATTACKS A HORSE.**



THE RHINOCEROS CHARGING BAKER'S HORSE.

joined him, and stood looking in all quarters for the source of danger; but we were well concealed behind the bush. Presently, the wounded rhinoceros stood up, and walking very slowly, followed by his comrade, he crossed a portion of rising ground at the base of the hill, and both animals disappeared. I at once started off Hassan, who could run like an antelope, in search of Tetel, while I dispatched another man to the summit of the peak to see if the rhinoceri were in view; if not, I knew they must be among the small trees and bushes at the foot of the hill. I thus waited a long time, until at length the two grays arrived with my messenger from the camp. I tightened the girths of the Arab saddle upon Aggahr, and had just mounted, cursing all Arab stirrups, that are only made for the naked big toe, when my eyes were gladdened by the sight of Hassan cantering toward me on

Tetel, but from the exact direction the rhinoceri had taken. 'Quick! quick!' he cried, 'come along! one rhinoceros is lying dead close by, and the other is standing beneath a tree not far off.'

"I immediately jumped on Tetel, and, taking the little Fletcher rifle, as lighter and handier than the heavy No. 10, I ordered Taher Noor and Hassan to mount the other horses, and to follow me with spare rifles. I found the rhinoceros lying dead about two hundred yards from the spot where he had received the shot, and I immediately perceived the companion, that was standing beneath a small tree. The ground was firm and strong, all the grass having been burnt off, except in a few small patches, and the trees were not so thick together as to form a regular jungle.

"The rhinoceros saw us directly, and he valiantly stood and faced me as I rode up within fifty yards of him. Tetel was worth his weight in gold as a shooting horse; he

stands like a rock, and would face the devil. I was unable to take

WOUNDED, BUT ESCAPES. a shot in this position, therefore, I ordered the men to ride round a half-circle, as I knew the rhinoceros would turn toward

the gray horses, and thus expose his flank; this he did immediately, and firing exactly at his shoulder, I dropped him as though stone dead. Taher Noor shouted, 'Samme dur-rupto!' (well shot); the rhinoceros lay kicking upon the ground, and I thought he was bagged. Not a bit of it! the No. 24 bullet had not force to break the massive shoulder-bone, but had merely paralyzed it for a moment; up he jumped, and started off in full gallop.

"Now for a hunt! Up the hill he started obliquely; he chose a regular rhinoceros path, and scudded away, Tetel answering to the spurs and closing with him; through the trees, now down the hill over the loose rocks, where he gained considerably upon the horse. 'Easy down the hill, gently over the stones, Tetel,' and I took a pull at the reins until I reached the level ground beneath, which was firm and first-rate. I saw the rhinoceros pelting away about one hundred and twenty yards, when round he came with astonishing quickness, and charged straight at the horse. I was prepared for this, as was my horse also; we avoided him by a quick turn, and again renewed the chase, and regained our position within a few yards of the game. Thus the hunt continued for about one mile and a half, the rhinoceros occasionally charging, but always cleverly avoided by the horse. Tetel seemed to enjoy the fun, and hunted like a grayhound. Nevertheless, I had not been able to pass the rhinoceros, who had thundered along at a tremendous pace whenever I had attempted to close; however, the pace began to tell upon his wounded shoulder; he evidently went lame, and, as I had observed at some distance before us the commencement of the dark-colored, rotten ground, I felt sure that it would shortly be a case of stand-still. In this I was correct, for, upon reaching the deep and crumbling sod, he turned sharp round, made a clumsy charge that I easily avoided, and then stood panting at bay. Taher Noor was riding Gazelle; this was a very timid horse, and was utterly useless as a hunter, but, as it reared and plunged upon seeing the rhinoceros, that animal immediately turned toward it, with the intention of charging. Riding Tetel closely to his flank, I fired both barrels of the little Fletcher into the shoulder. He fell to the shots, and stretching out his legs convulsively, he died immediately."

Baker was a successful hunter of all kinds of large African game, and his descriptions are always of the most spirited character. His first adventure with hippopotami, which he met with in the bed of the Atbara River, then nearly dry, as it was midsummer, he relates as follows:

"Early in the morning I procured an Arab guide to search for the reported hippopotami. My tents were among a grove of dome palm on the margin of the river; thus I had a clear view of the bed for a distance of half a mile on either side. This portion of the Atbara was about five hundred yards in width, and the banks were thirty feet in perpendicular depth, while the bed of the river had caused the formation of a deep hollow on the side opposite my position, which now formed a pool, every other part being dry. This pool occupied about one-third the breadth of the river, bounded by the sand upon one side, and by a perpendicular cliff upon the other, upon which grew a fringe of green bushes similar to willows.

**BAKER'S FIRST ADVENTURE
WITH HIPPOPOTAMI.**

"We descended the steep, sandy bank in a spot that the Arabs had broken down to



A CLEAN SHOT IN THE OPEN.

reach the water, and, after trudging across about four hundred yards of deep sand, we reached the extreme northwest end of the pool; here for the first time I saw the peculiar four-toed print of the hippopotamus' foot. A bed of melons had been planted there by the Arabs in the moist sand near the water, but the fruit had been entirely robbed by the hippopotami. A melon is exactly adapted for the mouth of this animal, as he can crunch the largest at one squeeze, and revel in the juice. Not content with the simple fruits of the garden, a large bull-hippopotamus had recently killed the proprietor. The Arab wished to drive it from his plantation, but was immediately attacked by the animal, who caught him in his mouth and killed him by one crunch. This little incident had rendered the hippopotamus exceedingly daring, and it had upon several occasions charged out of the water, when the people had driven their goats to drink; therefore it would be the more satisfactory to obtain a shot, and to supply

**MAN BITTEN
TO DEATH.**

the hungry Arabs with meat at the expense of the enemy. At this early hour, 6 a. m., no one had descended to the pool, thus all the tracks upon the margin were fresh and undisturbed; there were the huge marks of crocodiles that had recently returned to the water, while many of great size were still lying upon the sand in the distance. The Arabs had dug small holes in the sand within a few yards of the water; these were the artificial drinking places for their goats and sheep, that would have been snapped up by the crocodiles had they ventured to drink in the pool of crowded monsters. The number and size of the fish, turtles, and crocodiles were extraordinary; many beautiful gazelles approached from all sides for their morning draught; wild geese, generally in pairs, disturbed the wary crocodiles by their cry of alarm.

"I had killed several wild geese for breakfast in the absence of the hippopotami, when I suddenly heard the peculiar loud snorting neigh of these animals in my rear; we had passed them unperceived, as they had been beneath the surface. After a quick walk of about half a mile, during which time the cry of the hippopotami had been several times repeated, I observed six of these curious animals standing in the water shoulder-deep.



ABYSSINIAN CROCODILE HUNTERS.

There was no cover, therefore I could only advance upon the sand without a chance of stalking them; this caused them to retreat to deeper water, but upon my arrival within about eighty yards, they raised their heads well up, and snorted an impudent challenge. I had my old Ceylon No. 10, double rifle, and taking a steady aim at the temple of one that appeared to be the largest, the ball cracked loudly upon its skull. Never had there been

such a commotion in the pool as now! At the report of the rifle, five heads sank and disappeared like stones, but the sixth hippo leaped half out of the water, and falling backward, commenced a series of violent struggles; now upon its back, then upon one side, with all four legs frantically paddling, and raising a cloud of spray and foam; then waltzing round and round with its huge jaws wide open, raising gigantic swells in the hitherto calm surface of the water. A quick shot with the left-hand barrel produced no effect, as the movements of the animal were too rapid to allow a steady aim at the forehead; I accordingly took my trusty little Fletcher double rifle No. 24, and running knee-deep into the water to obtain a close shot, I fired exactly between the eyes, near the crown of the head. At the report of the little Fletcher the hippo disappeared; the tiny waves raised by the commotion broke upon the sand but the game was gone.

"This being my first *vis-a-vis* with a hippopotamus, I was not certain whether I could claim a victory; he was gone, but where? However, while I was speculating upon the case, I heard a tremendous rush of water, and saw five hippopotami tearing along in full trot through a portion of the pool that was not deep enough to cover them above the

shoulder; this was the affair of about half a minute, as they quickly reached deep water and disappeared at one hundred and fifty yards distance. The fact of five hippos in retreat after I had counted six in the onset was conclusive that my waltzing friend was either dead or disabled; I accordingly lost no time in following the direction of the herd. Hardly had I arrived at the spot where they had disappeared, when first one and then another head popped up and again sank, until one, more hardy than the rest, ventured to appear within fifty yards, and to bellow before. Once more the No. 10 crashed through his head, and again the waltzing and as struggling commenced like the paddling of a steamer; this time, however, the stunned hippo in its convulsive efforts came so close to the shore that I killed it directly in shallow water, by a forehead shot with the little Fletcher. I concluded from this result that my first hippo must also be lying dead in deep water.

**AFTER A HERD
OF HIPPOPOTAMI.**

"The Arabs, having heard the shooting, had begun to gather toward the spot, and, upon my men shouting that a hippo was killed, crowds came running to the place with their knives and ropes, while others returned to their encampment to fetch camels and mat bags to convey the flesh. In half an hour at least three hundred Arabs were on the spot; the hippo had been hauled to shore by ropes, and, by the united efforts of the crowd, the heavy carcass had been rolled to the edge of the water. Here the attack commenced; no pack of hungry hyenas could have been more savage. I gave them permission to take the flesh, and in an instant a hundred knives were at work; they fought over the spoils like wolves. No sooner was the carcass flayed than the struggle commenced for the meat; the people were a mass of blood, as some stood thigh-deep in the reeking intestines wrestling for the fat, while many hacked at each other's hands for coveted portions that were striven for as a *bonne bouche*. I left the savage crowd in their ferocious enjoyment of flesh and blood, and returned to camp for breakfast, carrying some hippopotamus steaks.

"That morning my wife and I breakfasted upon our first hippopotamus, an animal that was destined to be our general food throughout our journey among the Abyssinian tributaries of the Nile."

The first hippopotamus, as Baker suspected, was killed by his second shot, and the body arose two hours afterward, affording a second feast for the hungry Arabs whose joys were now unbounded as meat was thus provided sufficient to last three hundred gourmands for a week.

The Arabs of Abyssinia possess few guns, and even those who are supplied with fire-arms can use them only indifferently, consequently, since their country is the home of the largest and fiercest kinds of wild beasts, they must make up in daring what they lack in opportunity and the skilful use of the best improved arms.

The aggageers, of whom I have already written, are no more courageous in their attacks upon the elephants and rhinoceri than are the professional hippopotami hunters, whose sole weapon against the mighty behemoth is the harpoon. The following particulars of a hunt participated in by Baker, as related by himself, will serve to illustrate the skill and daring of these Arabs:

"After walking about two miles we noticed a herd of hippopotami in a pool below a rapid, in the Settite River; this was surrounded by rocks, except upon one side, where the rush of waters had thrown up a bank of pebbles and sand. Our old Neptune (the Arab hunter) did not condescend to bestow the slightest attention when I pointed out these animals; they were too wideawake; but he immediately quitted the river's bed, and we

followed him quietly behind the fringe of bushes upon the border, from which we carefully examined the water. About half a mile below this spot, as we clambered over the intervening rocks, through a gorge which formed a powerful rapid, I observed, in a small pool just below the rapid, the immense head of a hippopotamus close to a perpendicular rock that formed a wall to the river, about six feet above the surface. I pointed out the hippo to old Abou Do, who had not seen it. At once the gravity of the old Arab disappeared, and the energy of the hunter was exhibited as he motioned us to remain, while he ran nimbly behind the thick screen of



A HOWARTI HARPOONING A HIPPOPOTAMUS.

bushes for about one hundred and fifty yards below the spot where the hippo was unconsciously basking, with his ugly head above the surface. Plunging into the rapid torrent, the veteran hunter was carried some distance down the stream, but breasting the powerful current he landed upon the rocks upon the opposite side, and retiring to some distance from the river, he quickly advanced toward the spot beneath which the hippopotamus was lying. I had a fine view of the scene, as I was lying concealed exactly opposite the hippo, who had disappeared beneath the water. Abou Do now stealthily approached the ledge of rocks beneath which he had expected to see the head of the animal; his long, sinewy arm was raised, with the harpoon ready to strike, as he carefully advanced. At length he reached the edge of the perpendicular rock; the hippo had vanished, but far from exhibiting surprise, the old Arab remained standing on the sharp ledge, unchanged in attitude. No figure of bronze could have been more rigid than that of the old river-king, as he stood erect upon the rock with the left foot advanced, and the harpoon poised in his ready right hand above his head, while in his left he held the loose coils of rope attached to the ambatch buoy. I watched eagerly for the reappearance of the hippopotamus; the surface of the water was still barren, when suddenly the right arm of the statue descended like lightning, and the harpoon shot perpendicularly into the pool with the speed of an arrow. What river fiend answered to the summons? In an instant an enormous pair of open jaws appeared, followed by the ungainly head and form of the furious hippopotamus, who, springing half out of the water, lashed the river into foam, and, disdaining the

but far from exhibiting surprise, the old Arab remained standing on the sharp ledge, unchanged in attitude. No figure of bronze could have been more rigid than that of the old river-king, as he stood erect upon the rock with the left foot advanced, and the harpoon poised in his ready right hand above his head, while in his left he held the loose coils of rope attached to the ambatch buoy. I watched eagerly for the reappearance of the hippopotamus; the surface of the water was still barren, when suddenly the right arm of the statue descended like lightning, and the harpoon shot perpendicularly into the pool with the speed of an arrow. What river fiend answered to the summons? In an instant an enormous pair of open jaws appeared, followed by the ungainly head and form of the furious hippopotamus, who, springing half out of the water, lashed the river into foam, and, disdaining the

concealment of the deep pool, he charged straight up the violent rapids. With extraordinary power he breasted the descending stream; gaining a footing in the rapids, about five feet deep, he ploughed his way against the broken waves, sending them in showers of spray upon all sides, and upon gaining broader shallows he tore along through the water, with the buoyant float hopping behind him along the surface, until he landed from the river, started at full gallop along the dry, shingly bed, and at length disappeared in the thorny nabbuk jungle.

"I never could have imagined that so unwieldy an animal could have exhibited such speed; no man would have had a chance of escape, and it was fortunate for our old Neptune that he was secure upon the high ledge of rock. The old man plunged into the deep pool just quitted by the hippo, and landed by our side. I congratulated him upon his dexterity; but much remained to be done. I proposed to cross the river, and to follow upon the tracks of the hippopotamus, as I imagined that the buoy and rope would catch in the thick jungle, and that we should find him entangled in the bush; but the old hunter quietly laid his hand upon my arm, and pointed up the bed of the river, explaining that the hippo would certainly return to the water after a short interval.

**A LONG CHASE
AFTER THE ANIMAL.**

"A few minutes later, at a distance of nearly half a mile, we observed the hippo emerge from the jungle, and descend at full trot to the bed of the river, making direct for the first rocky pool in which we had noticed the herd of hippopotami. Accompanied by the old howarti (hippo hunter), we walked quickly toward the spot. He explained to me that I must shoot the harpooned hippo, as we should not be able to secure him in the usual method by ropes, as nearly all our men were absent from camp, disposing of the dead elephants.

"Upon reaching the pool, which was about a hundred and thirty yards in diameter, we were immediately greeted by the hippo, who snorted and roared as we approached, but quickly dived, and the buoyant float ran along the surface, directing his course in the same manner as the cork of a trimmer with a pike upon the hook. Several times he appeared, but as he invariably faced us, I could not obtain a favorable shot; I therefore sent the old hunter around the pool, and he, swimming the river, advanced to the opposite side, and attracted the attention of the hippo, who immediately turned toward him. This afforded me a good chance, and I fired a steady shot behind the ear, at about seventy yards with a single-barreled rifle. As usual with hippopotami, whether dead or alive, he disappeared beneath the water at the shot. The crack of the ball and the absence of any splash from the bullet told me that he was hit; the ambatch float remained perfectly stationary upon the surface. I watched it for some minutes—it never moved; several heads of hippopotami appeared and vanished in different directions, but the float was still; it marked the spot where the grand old bull lay dead beneath."

After some hours of hard work the animal was finally drawn on shore, and being of such extraordinary proportions, Baker took some measurement of its body. He found its length, from the upper lip to the extremity of its tail, to be fourteen feet two inches. The head, measured from the front of the ear to the edge of the lip, was three feet one inch. The harpoon was still sticking in the nape of the animal's neck, having penetrated two and one-half inches beneath the hide, which was one and three-quarters inches thick. Baker declares it one of the finest specimens he ever saw, while the tusks were very much larger than any others he ever met. The head of this gigantic beast was taken to England, and, being mounted, took prominent place among hundreds of other hunting trophies in the Baker mansion, where it has since remained the object of greatest curiosity and interest in the collection.

Baker mentions, only incidentally, however, a terrible accident by which the father of the Sheik of Sofi lost his life through his daring. The man was a famous hippopotamus hunter, who attacked the huge game with no other weapon than a harpoon, in the use of which he was marvelously adept. On this fatal occasion he was hunting hippos in company with his son, in the Atbara River. The two rowed out to an island in the stream in a small canoe, where several hippopotami were seen basking in the sun. So clever was the hunters' approach that the animals did not discover them until the two were landed and ready to hurl their harpoons. Father and son, however, were separated, each

**FATAL ADVENTURE WITH
A SAVAGE HIPPOPOTAMUS.**



HARPOONING HIPPOPOTAMI IN THE ATBARA RIVER.

selecting his victim at opposite ends of the small island. The old man transfixed one very large bull, which appeared to be so badly wounded that it could not move, and to save the carcass from floating off he ran toward it for the purpose of cutting a strip in its hide, through which to pass a rope and thus anchor the body. The son, in the meantime, had also harpooned a smaller animal, which was engaging all his attention, when, suddenly he heard a despairing cry, and turned just in time to see the great beast close its horrid jaws on his father. The animal had evidently been paralyzed for the moment by the harpoon, and recovered its senses, as the old hunter approached, in time to seize the unfortunate man, who was fairly bitten in twain in an instant. This dreadful accident did not lessen the Sheik's love for adventure, for afterward he joined Baker and showed himself to be one of the most fearless of men in hunting the hippopotamus and all other large game.

Although the hippopotamus is generally harmless, the solitary old bulls are sometimes extremely vicious, especially when in the water. Baker says he has frequently known them to charge a boat, and that he has himself narrowly escaped being upset in a canoe by the attack of one of these creatures, without the slightest provocation. The females are extremely shy and they are most affectionate mothers ; the only instances believed to be known of females attacking man have been in cases where their calves have been stolen. To the Arabs these animals are very valuable, yielding, as they do, in addition to a large quantity of excellent flesh, about two hundred pounds of fat, and a hide that will produce generally two hundred koorbatches (whips).

**FIERCENESS OF THE
MALE HIPPOPOTAMUS.**

Although the hippopotamus is amphibious, he requires a large and constant supply of air ; the lungs are of enormous size, and the animal invariably inflates them before diving. From five to eight minutes is the time that he usually remains under water ; he then comes to the surface and expends the air in his lungs by blowing ; he again refills his lungs almost instantly, and if frightened he sinks at once. In places where they have become shy from being hunted or shot at, they seldom expose the head above the surface, but merely protrude the nose to breathe through the nostrils ; it is then impossible to shoot them. Their food consists of aquatic plants and grasses of many kinds. Not only do they visit the margin of rivers, but they wander great distances from the water by night, if attracted by good pasturage, and, although clumsy and ungainly in appearance, they manage to clamber up steep banks and precipitous ravines with astounding celerity and ease ; when undisturbed they enjoy basking in the sun, beneath inviting shades, and they also lie upon the surface of the water like turtles, when they very much resemble old logs. Occasionally they may be found on high ledges or precipitous banks overlooking the sea ; when suddenly alarmed they will leap headlong into the water, perhaps a distance of thirty feet, creating a splash that is audible for a mile or more.

Arabs attach little or no value to the tusks of the hippopotamus, though these are very much more valuable than elephant ivory, since they are less liable to crack and never change color. False teeth made of hippopotamus ivory are more perfect and beautiful than those from any other material.

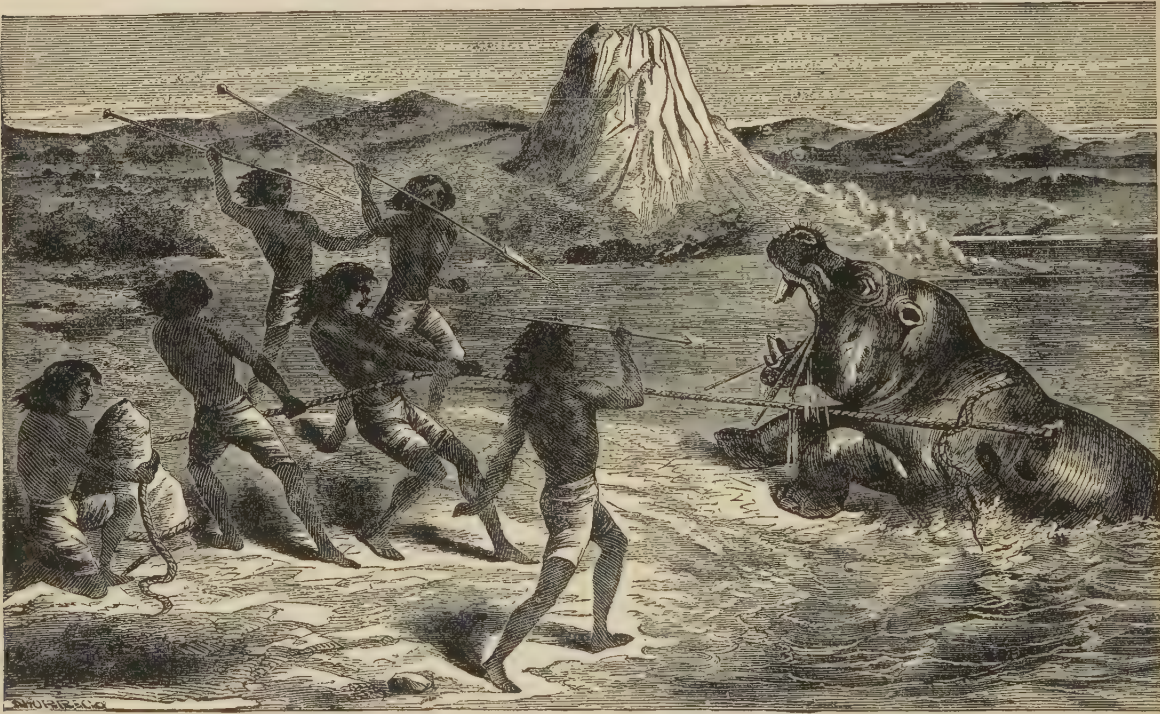
One of the most interesting hunts in which Baker participated during his sojourn in Africa, in which there was an extraordinary display of skill and daring, is thus described in his usual graphic and realistic manner :

“ A little after sunrise I accompanied the howartis (Arab professional hippopotamus hunters) for a day's sport. There were numbers of hippos in this part of the river, and we were not long finding a herd. The hunters failed in several attempts to harpoon them, however, and we had to go further up the stream. At length we arrived at a large pool in which were several sand-bars covered with rushes, and many rocky islands. Among these rocks was a herd of hippopotami, consisting of an old bull and several cows ; a young hippo was standing, like an ugly little statue, on a protruding rock, while another infant stood upon its mother's back, that listlessly floated on the water.

**AN EXCITING HOWARTIS HUNT
OF HIPPOPOTAMI.**

“ This was an admirable place for the hunters. They desired me to lie down, and they crept into the jungle, out of view of the river ; I presently observed them stealthily descending the dry bed about two hundred paces above the spot where the hippos were basking behind the rocks. They entered the river, and swam down the centre of the stream toward the rock. This was highly exciting—the hippos were quite unconscious of the

approaching danger, as steadily and rapidly the hunters floated down the strong current; they neared the rock, and both heads disappeared as they purposely sank out of view; in a few seconds they reappeared at the edge of the rock upon which the young hippo stood. It would be difficult to say which started first, the astonished young hippo into the water, or the harpoons from the hands of the howartis! It was the affair of a moment; the hunters dived directly they had hurled their harpoons, and, swimming for some distance under water, they came to the surface and hastened to the shore, lest an infuriated hippopotamus should follow them. One harpoon had missed; the other had fixed the bull of the herd, at which it had been surely aimed. This was grand sport! The bull was in the greatest fury, and rose to the surface, snorting and bellowing in his impotent rage; but as the ambatch float was exceedingly large, and this naturally accompanied his movements, he



DRAGGING BEHEMOTH ON SHORE.

tried to escape from his imaginary persecutor, and dived constantly, only to find his pertinacious attendant close to him upon regaining the surface. This was not to last long; the howartis were in earnest, and they at once called their party, who, with two of the aggageers, Abou Do and Suleiman, were near at hand. These men arrived with the long ropes that form a portion of the outfit for hippo hunting.

"The whole party now halted on the edge of the river, while two men swam across with one end of the long rope. Upon gaining the opposite bank, I observed that a second rope was made fast to the middle of the main line; thus upon our side

**A SINGULAR METHOD
OF HUNTING.**

we held the ends of two ropes, while on the opposite side they had only one; accordingly, the point of junction of the two ropes in the centre formed an acute angle. The object of this was soon practically explained. Two men upon our side now each held a rope, and one of these walked about ten yards before the other. Upon both sides of the river the people now advanced, dragging

the rope upon the surface of the water until they reached the ambatch float that was swimming to and fro, following the hippopotamus below. By a dexterous jerk of the main line, the float was now placed between the two ropes, and it was immediately secured in the acute angle by bringing together the ends of the ropes on our side.

"The men on the opposite banks now dropped their line, and our men hauled in upon the ambatch float that was held fast between the ropes. Thus cleverly made sure, we quickly brought a strain upon the hippo, and, although I have had some experiences in handling big fish, I never knew one to pull so lustily as the amphibious animal that we now alternately coaxed and bullied. He sprang out of the water, gnashed his huge jaws, snorted with tremendous rage, and lashed the river into foam; he then dived and foolishly approached us under water. We quickly gathered in the slack line, and took a round turn upon a large rock, within a few feet of the river. The hippo now arose to the surface, about ten yards from the hunters, and, jumping half out of the water, he snapped his great jaws together, endeavoring to catch the rope, but at the same instant two harpoons were launched into his side. Disdaining retreat, and maddened with rage, the furious animal charged from the depths of the river, and, gaining a footing, he reared his bulky form from the surface, came boldly upon the sand-bank, and attacked the hunters open-mouthed. He little knew his enemy; they were not the men to fear a pair of gaping jaws, armed with a deadly array of tusks, but half a dozen lances were hurled at him, some entering his mouth from a distance of five or six paces; at the same time several men threw handfuls of sand into his enormous eyes. This baffled him more than the lances; he crunched the shafts between his powerful jaws like straws, but he was beaten by the sand, and, shaking his huge head, he retreated to the river. During his sally upon the shore, two of the hunters had secured the ropes of the harpoons that had been fastened into his body just before his charge; he was now fixed with three of these deadly instruments, but suddenly one rope gave way, having been bitten through by the enraged beast, who was still beneath the water. Immediately after this he appeared on the surface, and, without a moment's hesitation, he once more charged furiously from the water straight at the hunters, with his huge mouth open to such an extent that he could have accommodated two inside passengers. Suleiman was wild with delight, and springing forward, lance in hand, he drove it against the head of the formidable beast, but without effect. At the same time Abou Do met the hippo, sword in hand, reminding one of Perseus slaying the sea-monster that would devour Andromeda, but the sword made a harmless gash, and the lance, already blunted against the rocks, refused to penetrate the tough hide; once more handfuls of sand were pelted upon his face, and again repulsed by this blinding attack, he was forced to retire to his deep hole and wash it from his eyes. Six times during the fight the valiant bull hippo quitted his watery fortress, and charged resolutely at his pursuers; he had broken several of their lances in his jaws, other lances had been hurled, and, falling upon the rocks, they were blunted and would not penetrate. The fight had continued for three hours, and the sun was about to set; accordingly, the hunters begged me to give him the *coup de grace*, as they had hauled him close to the shore, and they feared he would sever the rope with his teeth. I waited for a good opportunity, when he boldly raised his head from the water about three yards from the rifle, and a bullet from the little Fletcher between the eyes closed the last act."

**THE HIPPOPOTAMUS
CHARGES.**

Baker remained in Abyssinia for more than one year, followed the Blue Nile to its lake source, and remained so constantly in the company of Arabs that upon returning to

Egypt both he and his wife had acquired such a knowledge of the Arab language that they were able to use it with facility, thus giving them incalculable advantages in their subsequent journeys in Africa, as detailed in preceding chapters.

At the time of Baker's travels in Abyssinia the country was governed by one of the most powerful and adroit potentates of Africa, known as Emperor Theodore, who while accepting Mohammedanism still retained the ancient superstitions of his ancestors, and was as cruel as he was superstitious. He had made himself master of the kingdom by successful rebellion against Ras Ali, and by marriage with the daughter of the overthrown king. At the time of Theodore's elevation to the throne (1860) two Englishmen, Plowden, who was counsel, and Bell, a missionary, were killed in an emeute, and in 1863 Theodore ordered the imprisonment of all English missionaries in the Dembea district, which violence was soon followed by the seizure of Captain Cameron, who had been appointed Plowden's successor. The prisoners were confined in the fortress of Magdala where it was reported they were subjected to all manner of indignities. To rescue her subjects the Queen of England dispatched an expedition to Abyssinia under Sir Robert Napier, which force immediately laid siege to Magdala and after a spirited engagement reduced the fortress, and killed 700 of the enemy. To avoid falling into the hands of the English, Theodore, driven to the last extremity, placed the muzzle of a pistol to his mouth and blew his life out, which tragedy closed the war. His successor was chief of Tigre, named Kasa, who in turn was quickly displaced by another chief, who took the name of Menelek, who has to this time continued to hold his position as Emperor of Abyssinia notwithstanding the efforts of a powerful Italian army to accomplish his subjugation.

Baker was compelled to exercise the greatest circumspection in order to prevent falling under suspicion, for the country was greatly excited and a violent prejudice existed against Englishmen. He was therefore careful to avoid the villages and to encourage the amity of the native hunters by liberal presents and kindly conduct, by which means he secured their friendship and spent one year in perfect accord and delightful association with the Abyssinians whom he describes as a remarkable people amenable to Christian influence.

CHAPTER XIX.

STANLEY'S TRAVELS IN AFRICA.



JAMES GORDON BENNETT, JR., proprietor of the *New York Herald*, though often pronounced eccentric, is none the less a genius in making a great newspaper greater. He is an American in all that constitutes dash, pluck, energy, and bold conception, but he is also a cosmopolitan, having a home everywhere, so that the whole world is familiar to him.

For nearly two years the civilized world believed the common report that Livingstone was dead; this news was circulated at Zanzibar by traders coming from Central Africa. Baker, who had penetrated as far as the Albert N'yanza, inquired of natives concerning the lost white man, but no tidings from him could be gained, so that he, too, believed the great traveler had passed the bourne whence none return. Bennett alone believed that Living-

stone was still alive, and he conceived the idea of proving his belief by sending a man into Africa to find him.

Henry M. Stanley, a vigorous, daring, and most capable journalist, whose first schooling was received as a war correspondent of the *St. Louis Democrat*, had attracted the notice of Bennett, who gave him a roving commission through Europe as correspondent of the *Herald*. Bennett had so much confidence in Stanley, that he telegraphed him at Madrid, on the sixteenth of October, 1869, as follows: "*Come to Paris on important business.*" Responding to the order, Stanley reached Paris on the night of October 18, and going at once to Mr. Bennett's room in the Grand Hotel, he found him already retired. An interview took place, however, at which Mr. Bennett explained to Stanley his purpose of sending an expedition into Africa in search of Livingstone, and that he (Stanley) had been selected to command it. Stanley was dumfounded, and did not attempt to disguise his feelings; he confessed his belief in the popular opinion that Livingstone was dead, and besides, he urged, the expense of such an expedition would be enormous.

"What will it cost?" Bennett abruptly asked.

"Burton and Speke's journey to Central Africa cost between \$15,000 and \$25,000, and I fear it cannot be done under \$12,000," replied Stanley.

Bennett's order, after hearing this estimate of the cost, shows the character of the man. Said he:

"Well, I will tell you what you will do. Draw a thousand pounds now; and when you have gone through that, draw another thousand; and when that is spent, draw another thousand; and when you have finished that, draw another thousand, and so on; but, FIND LIVINGSTONE."

Mr. Bennett then gave Stanley several commissions in the East, such as reporting the ceremonies attending the opening of the Suez Canal, a visit to Jerusalem, Constantinople, the Crimea battle-grounds, Persia, India, Bagdad, etc. After giving these instructions, apparently laying out work enough to last a man a lifetime, Bennett went to bed and left Stanley to work out his own salvation, which he proved himself abundantly able to do.

He completed the first part of his commission in a little less than a year, arriving in Bombay, ready to start on his search for Livingstone, in August, 1870. Two months later, having purchased his supplies, he set sail for Zanzibar on the barque *Polly*, and reached his destination after a voyage of thirty-seven days.

Stanley was well received by the American consul at Zanzibar, who gave him a room in his own house and seemed to take delight in ministering to his needs. He had engaged one man, William L. Farquehar, on the barque *Polly*, to accompany him into Africa, but, with this single exception, he had to enlist his force at Zanzibar. John Shaw, an Englishman, was found adrift in this Arabian port, and, upon his application, was enlisted at a salary of \$300 per annum. It was desirable, however, to secure and equip an escort of twenty free blacks for the road. There were scores of such fellows offering, but they were very unreliable, and it



THE MARCH OUT OF BAGAMOYA.

was with no little pleasure that Stanley heard of several of Speke's "faithfuls" who would be glad to go upon another expedition. Five of these men were soon found and engaged at \$40 each per annum, and a few days later Bombay, who was Speke's head man, came to Zanzibar, and he, too, was enlisted and made captain of the black escort. Bombay suc-

ceeded in getting eighteen more free men to volunteer as "askari" (soldiers), men whom he knew would not desert and for whom he declared himself responsible. Their wages were set down at \$36 each per annum. Each soldier was provided with a flint-lock musket, powder-horn, bullet-pouch, knife, and hatchet, besides enough powder and ball for two hundred rounds. Bombay, in consideration of his rank and previous faithful services to Burton, Speke and Grant, was engaged at \$80 a year, half that sum in advance, and a good muzzle-loading rifle, a pistol, a knife and a hatchet were given him.

Two boats were purchased from the American consul, for \$120, one of which would carry twelve men and the other half as many more. These boats were stripped of their boards and tarred canvas substituted, as a much lighter material and less liable to leakage or rupture. These boats were intended for crossing streams and navigating rivers and lakes. Twenty donkeys were purchased, and a cart was constructed, eighteen inches wide and five feet long, to carry the narrow ammunition boxes along the goat paths. When his purchases were all completed Stanley found materials aggregating a weight of six tons, nearly all of

which had to be carried to the centre of Africa on the shoulders of men; and for this purpose one hundred and sixty carriers had to be engaged at Bagamoyo, situated on the mainland, across from the island of Zanzibar.

Twenty-eight days after his arrival in Zanzibar Stanley was ready to start upon his search for Livingstone, but before departing the Sultan gave him an audience, at which royal letters were prepared by his Highness commending Stanley to the gracious favor of all Arabs whom he might meet. The Sultan also gave him a beautiful horse, and an American merchant at Zanzibar added another, a fine, blooded animal, worth five hundred dollars. But when everything was ready, and the dhow that was to ferry the expedition to Bagamoyo was on the point of leaving, it was discovered that Farquehar and Shaw were missing; a long search finally revealed them in a beastly state of intoxication at one of the grogeries in a quiet corner of the town; they had to be led down to the boat.

The expedition reached Bagamoyo on February 6, 1871, but here most provoking delays occurred by reason of the numerous false promises made by native agents whom Stanley employed to engage carriers for him. He did not start the first caravan until February 18, and the fifth, or last, did not get away until March 21. The total number, inclusive of all souls connected with the expedition was 192. These, when together, presented an imposing appearance, headed by the American flag, which, for the first time, was carried into the wilds of Africa. The expedition was now on the road to Ujiji, by way of Unyamwebe.

**EN ROUTE FOR
THE INTERIOR.**

The first trouble encountered was at the turbid Kingani River. The jungle along its right bank was threaded some distance, when a narrow sluice of black mud, not more than eight feet broad, crossed the path, and to get the animals over this it was necessary to construct a bridge by felling trees and covering them with grass. Further on the river had to be crossed, which was effected after much patient labor, in one frail canoe, hollowed out of an immense tree.

After seeing the work of ferrying the expedition properly commenced, Stanley sat down on a condemned canoe to amuse himself with the hippopotami by peppering their thick skulls with his No. 12 smooth-bore. The Winchester rifle (calibre .44) did no more than slightly tap them, causing about as much injury as a boy's sling; it was perfect in its accuracy of fire, for ten times in succession he struck the tops of their heads between the ears. One old fellow, with the look of a sage, was hit close to the right ear by one of these bullets. Instead of submerging himself, as others had done, he coolly turned round his head as if to ask, "Why this waste of valuable cartridges on us?" The response to the mute inquiry of his sageship was an ounce-and-a-quarter bullet from the smooth-bore, which made him bellow with pain, and in a few moments he rose again tumbling in his death agonies. As his groans were so piteous, Stanley refrained from a useless sacrifice of life, and left the amphibious horde in peace.

The route he had chosen to reach Ugogo was a new one, never before traveled by a white man. The district traversed was thickly populated, which proved to be of no small advantage, for it enabled him to buy meat and save his herd of goats, which would be needed for food when the interior should be reached. The natives were in their fields, at labor, men and women in the scantiest costumes, compared to which Adam and Eve, in their fig-leaf apparel, would have been *en grande tenue*. Nor were they at all abashed by the devouring gaze of men who were strangers to clothless living bodies; they did not seem to comprehend why inordinate curiosity should be returned with more than interest.

**WONDERFUL CURIOSITY
OF THE WASUNGU.**

They left their work as the Wasungu (white men) drew nigh; such hybrids in solar topees, white flannels, and horse-boots were they! Had the Wasungu been desirous of studying the outlines of anatomy and physiology what a rich field was here! They laughed and giggled, and pointed their index finger at this and that, which to them seemed so strange and bizarre.

After crossing the Kingani they soon came to a village called Rosako, where they camped, and Stanley was much annoyed by the obtrusive curiosity of the natives. He says: "Among other experiments which I was about to try in Africa, was that of a good watch-dog on any unmannerly people who would insist upon coming into my tent at untimely hours and endangering valuables. Especially did I wish to try the effect of its bark on the mighty Ugogo, who, I was told by certain Arabs, would lift the door of the tent and enter whether you wished them or not; who would chuckle at the fear they inspired, and say to you, 'Hi, hi, white man, I never saw the like of you before; are there

many more like you? where do you come from?' Also would they take hold of your watch and ask you with a cheerful curiosity, 'What is this for, white man?' to which you, of course, would reply that it was to tell you the hour and minute. But the Ugogo, proud of his prowess, and more unmannerly than a brute, would answer you with a snort of insult, saying, 'Oh, you fool!' or, 'You be damned for a liar!' I thought of a watch-dog, and procured a good one at Bombay, not only as a



WASTING CARTRIDGES ON THE HIPPOPOTAMI.

faithful companion, but to threaten the heels of just such gentry." The dog proved to be not only a great wonder to the prying natives, but also served to keep them at a respectful distance.

The fine horse presented to Stanley by the Sultan was taken suddenly sick, April 1, and after a few hours of suffering died, a victim of the tsetse fly. Fifteen hours after the death of his Arabian horse, the other became violently sick, and died of convulsions the following morning.

They were now marching through thick jungle, the road being merely a goat-path, so narrow that a single man could hardly push his way through. This necessitated frequent halts to rearrange the loads of the donkeys, which were torn by the "wait-a-bit" thorns. Ten of the best men were stricken with fever, and the rest were almost worn out with fatigue and greatly discouraged. Their progress was very slow, only four or five miles a day. Shaw was in charge of the little cart, far in the rear, and he enlivened the march with a constant flow of the expressively wicked adjectives for which sailors are famous.

On the eighteenth of April they met a chained slave gang, bound east. The slaves did not appear to be in the least down-hearted; on the contrary, they seemed imbued with the philosophic jollity of the ever happy servant of Martin Chuzzlewit. Were it not for their chains it would have been difficult to discover master from slave; the physiognomic traits were alike; the mild benignity with which they regarded Stanley's party was equally visible on all faces. The chains were ponderous, they might have held elephants captive; but as few of the slaves carried anything else, the weight of these could not have been insupportable.

The expedition encamped one evening at a prettily situated village, named Kisemo. The district was extremely populous, there being five villages in a circuit of as many miles, each fortified by stakes and thorny abattis. The belles of Kisemo are famed for their extraordinary natural development, and their vanity finds expression in brass wire, which adorns their waists and ankles, while their less attractive brothers are content with such adornments as dingy cloths and split ears. A more comical picture is seldom presented than one of these highly dressed females with

THE BELLES OF KISEMO.



DRIVING A SLAVE GANG.

the magnificent developments already noted, engaged in the homely and necessary task of grinding corn for herself and family. The grinding apparatus consists of two portions: one, a thick pole of hard wood, about six feet long, answering for a pestle; the other, a capacious wooden mortar, three feet in height; and the swaying motion of the woman in handling this pestle forms a rare and ludicrous picture.

The fourth caravan, which had been making up for lost time by traveling ahead for several days, was come up with at the village of Muhalleh; several of the men had fallen sick, so that the caravan went into camp to await Stanley and the medicine chest. During a two days' encampment at this village Stanley met an Arab trader, bound eastward, with a large caravan carrying three hundred elephant tusks. This good Arab, besides welcoming the new-comer with a present of rice, gave him news of Livingstone. He had met the old traveler at Ujiji, had lived in the next hut to him for two weeks, described him as appearing old, with long gray moustache and beard, just recovered from severe illness, looking very wan; when fully recovered, Livingstone intended to visit a country called Manyema, by way of Marungu.

TIDINGS OF LIVINGSTONE.

The march now followed the valley of the Ungerengeri until the walled city of Simbamweni was reached. This is one of the wonderful cities of Africa. The town contains about one thousand houses, and a population of perhaps 5000. The **A WONDERFUL AFRICAN CITY.** houses are eminently African, but are strongly constructed. The fortifications are after an Arabic-Persian model—combining Arab neatness with Persian architecture. They are of stone, pierced with two rows of loop-holes for musketry. The area of the town is about half a square mile, its plan being quadrangular. Well-built towers of stone guard each corner; four gates, one facing each cardinal point, and set half-way between the several towers, permit ingress and egress for its inhabitants. The gates are closed with solid square doors, made of African teak, and carved with the infinitesimally fine and complicated devices of the Arabs, from which it is supposed that the doors were made either at Zanzibar or some other place on the coast, and conveyed to Simbamweni plank by plank; yet as there is much communication between Bagamoyo and Simbamweni, it is just possible that native artisans are the authors of this ornate workmanship, as several doors, chiseled and carved in the same manner, though not quite so elaborately, are visible in the largest houses of Zanzibar.

The Sultana, or ruler of this African city, was the eldest daughter of the famous Kisabengo, who was another Theodore on a small scale. Sprung from humble ancestry, he acquired distinction for his personal strength, his powers of harangue, and his amusing and versatile address, by which he gained great ascendancy over fugitive slaves, and was chosen a leader among them. Fleeing from justice which awaited him at the hands of the Zanzibar Sultan, he arrived in Ukami, and here he commenced a career of conquest, the result of which was the acquisition of an immense tract of fertile country. On its most desirable site, with the river flowing close under the wall, he built his capital, and called it Simbamweni, which means "The Lion," or the strongest city. In old age the successful robber and kidnapper changed his name of Kisabengo, which had gained such a notoriety, to Simbamweni, after his town; and when dying, after desiring that his eldest daughter should succeed him, he bestowed the name of the town upon her also.

Stanley, after praising the country for its great beauty and marvelous fertility, says: "A railroad from Bagamoyo to Simbamweni might be constructed with as much ease and rapidity as, and at far less cost than, the Union Pacific Railway, whose rapid strides day by day toward completion the world heard of and admired. A residence in this part of Africa, after a thorough system of drainage had been carried out, would not be attended with any more discomfort than generally follows upon the occupation of new land. The temperature at this season during the day never exceeded 85° Fahrenheit. The nights were pleasant—too cold without a pair of blankets for covering.

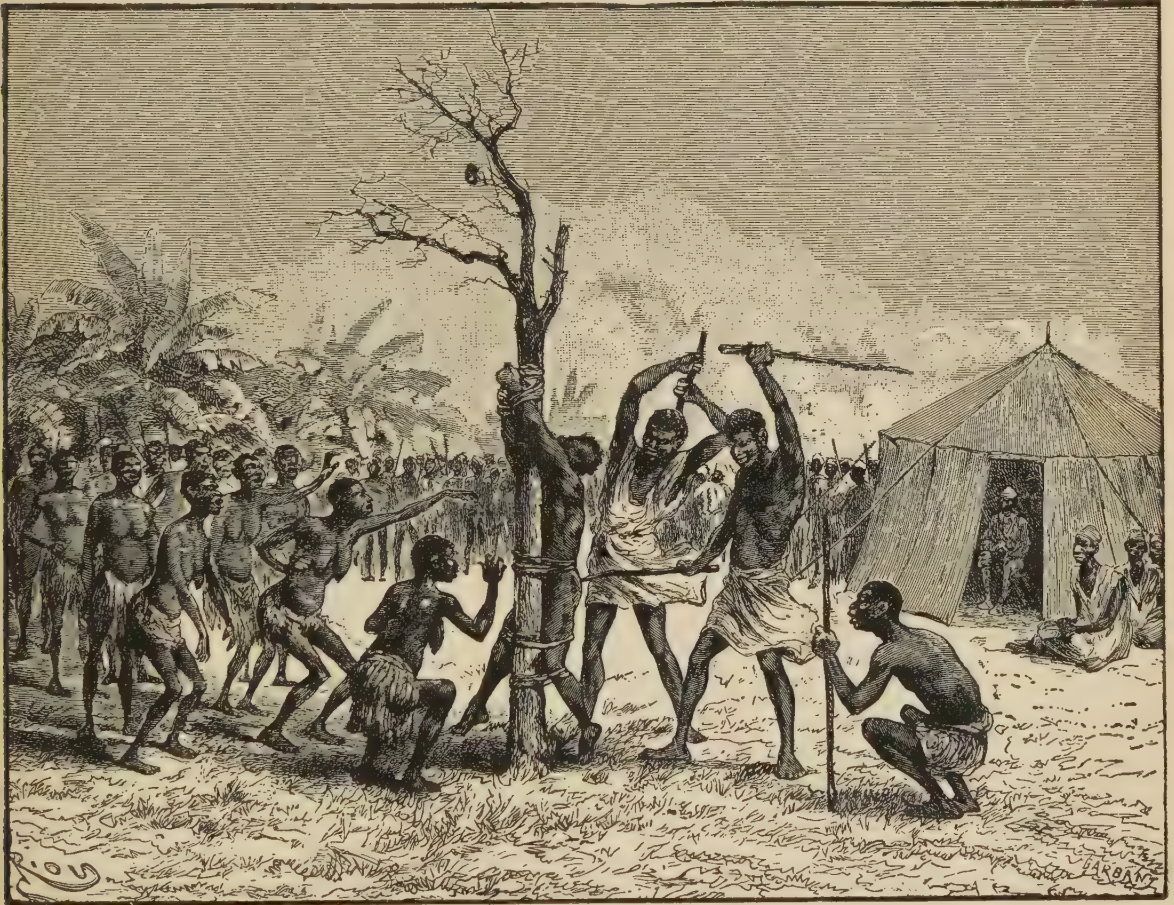
While going by Simbamweni, Stanley was accosted by some soldiers sent out by the Sultana to collect a tribute for the privilege of a passage. He refused to pay anything, and sent back word that he recognized no right by which such a demand should **THE SULTANA'S** be made. He heard nothing further at that time from the bold princess.

REVENGE.

Five miles further on, a cook belonging to the expedition was arrested for stealing. This being his fourth offence, Stanley ordered him to be flogged with a cowhide on his bare back, a punishment which was hardly as severe as the thief deserved; and in order to frighten him, Stanley told him that he must leave the camp and get back to Zanzibar the best way he could. The man, thinking the order was given in earnest, bolted off and disappeared in the jungle. Stanley knew that the man must perish if he really attempted to travel to Zanzibar, and supposing he would come back, left a donkey

tied to a tree, upon which he might ride and overtake the caravan. Directly after this incident Bombay came riding up to Stanley and reported the loss of a gun, a pistol, an American axe, a bale of cloth, and some beads; he explained that he had laid the articles down while going to a stream for water, and upon returning found them gone, stolen, he declared, by the subjects of the Sultana.

The caravan was now obliged to stop, while Stanley sent back three soldiers to recover the articles, if possible, and also to find the culprit, who had run off. After a search of two days the soldiers found the donkey and missing articles in possession of two natives, whom he took to the Sultana, where they were charged with murdering the missing man. This



PUNISHMENT ADMINISTERED FOR STEALING.

they strongly denied, but the Sultana believed them guilty and threw them into prison to await the next caravan going to Zanzibar, whither she would send them for sentence. The Sultana next ordered the three soldiers seized and placed in chains, and also confiscated their property, and declared she would detain them until their master should return and pay her the tribute she had demanded. The unfortunate soldiers were kept in chains in the market-place, exposed to the taunts of the servile multitude for sixteen hours, when they were discovered by a sheik who had passed Stanley five days before. This man recognized the soldiers as members of the expedition, and had an interview with them. After hearing

their story, the good-hearted sheik sought the presence of the Sultana, and informed her that she was doing very wrong—a wrong that could only terminate in blood. “The Musungu is strong,” he said, “very strong; he has got two guns which shoot forty times without stopping, carrying bullets half an hour’s distance; he has got several guns which carry bullets that burst and tear a man in pieces. He could go to the top of that mountain and could kill every man, woman and child in the town before one of your soldiers could reach the top. The road will then be stopped; Syed Burghash will march against your country; the Wadoe and Wakami will come and take revenge on what is left, and the place that your father made so strong will know the Waseguhha no more. Set free the Musungu’s soldiers; give them their food, and grain for the Musungu; return the guns to the men and let them go; for the white man may even now be on his way here.”

These exaggerated reports of Stanley’s power produced a good effect, for the soldiers were released, their arms and the donkeys restored, and sufficient food was furnished to last them for four days, until they could overtake the caravan. Stanley was very much exercised over the outrage which he felt had been committed on his men, but he was now so far advanced that he could not afford to turn back and obtain satisfaction. But the runaway cook was not found.

The expedition started again, after a delay of four days, for Ugogo, in the midst of a pelting rain storm which flooded the country and rendered traveling exceedingly difficult.

MARCHING They soon struck a swamp from which malarial exhalations rose so rank
THROUGH SWAMPS. that Shaw took sick, and the labor of driving the caravan fell entirely on Stanley. The donkeys stuck in the mire as if they were rooted to it. As fast as one was flogged from his stubborn position, prone to the depths fell another, so that the labor of extricating them was maddening under pelting rain, assisted by such inefficient men as Bombay and Uledi. Two hours of hardest labor enabled Stanley to drag his caravan over a savannah one mile and a half broad; but barely had he finished congratulating himself over his success before he was halted by a deep ditch, which, filled with rain-water from the inundated savannahs, had become a considerable stream, breast-deep, flowing swiftly into the Makata. Donkeys had to be unloaded, led through a torrent, and loaded again on the other bank—an operation which consumed a full hour. On the following day another part of the swamp was reached, which was five miles across and from one to four feet in depth; this was the sorest march made by the expedition, and so serious were its effects that two of the carriers (and the dog)

INTERNAL DISSENSIONS died, also twelve of the donkeys, and Stanley was brought to the
AND A FIGHT. brink of the grave with fever and acute dysentery.

On May 4, they ascended a gentle slope to a village named Reheuneko, where a halt of four days was made, to rest and recover from the effects of the fever with which all were suffering. It was a delightful place, most fortuitously reached, for another day in the swamps would, no doubt, have destroyed the expedition.

Farquehar, who had charge of the fourth caravan, had preceded Stanley about two days, but sent back word that all but one of his donkeys had died and his provisions were almost exhausted. Stanley was thus compelled to push on to Lake Ugombo, where he met Farquehar and found a most deplorable state of affairs. Farquehar was in a pitiable condition, barely able to stagger out of his tent. His legs and feet were swollen to frightful proportions from elephantiasis, but much of this trouble had been brought on by dissipation. Sluggish, cross and feeble, he had expended nearly all his goods, which should have lasted him to Ujiji, before he had gone over one-third the distance.

Shaw had also been remiss in all his duties, and was a sore drag upon the expedition. These two Englishmen, who should have been Stanley's mainstay, were worse than the native carriers, and as their worthlessness increased they became insolent. While camped on Ugombo Lake, Shaw insulted Stanley in his own tent, when the latter, feeling that this was the crowning act of the most inexcusable and contemptible insolence, struck him to the ground. The Englishman then demanded his discharge papers, which Stanley gave him, with great pleasure. Shaw packed his things and went away, declaring he would return to Zanzibar by the next Arab caravan. He soon changed his mind, however, and came back and humbly apologized for his unreasonable conduct, and begged to be taken again into service. Stanley reinstated him in charge of the third caravan. That night, when all the camp was still in slumber, Shaw stole out of his tent with a loaded gun



STANLEY'S EXPEDITION ON THE MOVE.

and tried to assassinate his leader, the bullet passing through the pillow on which Stanley's head was resting. Of course the entire camp was speedily aroused, and Stanley went straight to Shaw's tent, having been told who fired the shot. Shaw pretended to be soundly asleep, but being roused and confronted with indisputable evidence of his guilt—a warm gun with freshly burnt powder in the barrel—he declared he had been dreaming of a thief, whom he shot at. Stanley warned him not to indulge in such dreams again, intimating that it would be very unsafe for him to do so.

Farquhar was in no condition to travel, so, at his own request, he was left at a small native village in the Ugogo country, in charge of a kindly mannered old man. Six months' provisions, a rifle, with 300 cartridges, and an interpreter were left with him. The expedition now marched on to Chungo, where they joined a trading party of Arabs going west,

and twelve new carriers were engaged, so that the entire force was increased to four hundred souls, with flags, horns, drums, guns, etc., making a most formidable caravan for Central Africa.

The entrance into Ugogo was the very counterpart of a circus parade; Stanley rode at the head, and as he came in sight of the village its swarming inhabitants rushed out to meet him, shouting with all the strength of their lungs. The whole
ENTERING UGOGO. village was soon before, abreast and behind his heels, lullalooing and shouting in the most excited manner; for Stanley was the first white man they had ever seen. From village to village, which are in immediate succession and called Ugogo, the crowd kept gathering, until a furious mob of naked men, women, and children, their bodies ornately tattooed, pressed upon the white man. "Hitherto," says Stanley, "I had compared myself to a merchant of Bagdad, traveling among the Kurds of Kurdistan, selling his wares of Damascus silk, kefiyehs, etc., but now I was compelled to lower my standard, and thought myself not much better than the monkey in the zoological collection at Central Park, whose funny antics elicit such bursts of laughter from young New Yorkers. One of my soldiers requested them to lessen their vociferous noise; but the evil-minded race ordered him to shut up, as a thing unworthy to speak to the Wagogo! When I imploringly turned to the Arabs for counsel in this strait, old Sheikh Thani, always worldly-wise, said, "Heed them not; they are dogs who bite besides barking."

A camp was made, and negotiations with the natives soon began. The quantity and variety of provisions produced in the country was positively astonishing, proving Ugogo to be one of the very richest districts of all Africa. The natives brought and sold milk, both sour and sweet, honey, beans, Indian corn, a variety of peas, peanuts, bean nuts, pumpkins, water-melons, musk-melons, cucumbers, and many other kinds of vegetables. The Great Sultan of Mvumi, or ruler of Ugogo, was a most extortionate old relic of Arabic cupidity and autocracy, and compelled Stanley to pay a large tribute of cloth and beads for the privilege of crossing his country.

As the expedition continued its march each village was emptied of its inhabitants, who ran along staring at the Musungu (white man) and frequently committing insolent acts, until Stanley's patience with them became quite exhausted. He writes:
AN ENCOUNTER WITH THE NATIVES. "Hitherto those we had met had contented themselves with staring and shouting; but these outstepped all bounds, and my growing anger at their excessive insolence vented itself in gripping the rowdiest of them by the neck, and before he could recover from his astonishment administering a sound thrashing with my dog-whip, which he little relished. This proceeding educed from the tribe of starers all their native power of vituperation and abuse, in expressing which they were peculiar. Approaching in manner to angry tom-cats, they jerked their words with something of a splitting hiss and a half bark. The ejaculation, as near as I can spell it phonetically, was 'hahcht,' uttered in a shrill crescendo tone. They paced backward and forward, asking themselves, 'Are the Wagogo to be beaten like slaves by this Musungu! A Mgogo is a Mgwana (a free man); he is not used to be beaten,—hahcht.' But whenever I made a motion, flourishing my whip toward them, these mighty braggarts found it convenient to move to respectful distances from the irritated Musungu."

A march of three days brought the expedition to the Wahumba district, which is small, comprising only a few villages, and these not numerously inhabited; but the people are none the less remarkable. They live in huts, plastered with cow-dung, that are shaped like the Tartar tents of Turkestan. The men are remarkably well formed and handsome,

having clean limbs and the most exquisite features. Athletes from their youth, they intermarry and keep the race pure. The women are as handsome as the men, and have a clear ebon skin of an inky hue. Their ornaments consist of spiral rings of brass, pendant from the ears, brass ring collars about their necks, **A HANDSOME PEOPLE.** and a spiral cincture of brass around the loins, used as an ornament and also to keep the goat-skins folded about their persons in place; these skins depend from the shoulder and shade one-half the bosom.

CHAPTER XX.

THE CENTRAL AFRICAN TRIBES.

Mr. Stanley has injected into the record of his march to Ujiji, in a separate chapter following his arrival in Unyanyembe, much that is interesting, having immediate application to the ethnographical features of the country through which he had passed. Some of this, the more important, is here reproduced in a summary that cannot but prove valuable to every reader.

The tribes living within a hundred miles of the coast do not show any strongly marked distinguishing features by which to classify them; only the most critical observer will note the tribal connections—punctures of the ear, very little difference in garb, and tattoo marks. But as we approach near to the interior there is a very noticeable distinction, extending to habits of life, dress, disposition, and physical contour. Some of the people are frank and friendly, notably the Wasagara, who are peculiarly susceptible to missionary teachings. Their country is literally a land flowing with milk and honey, and a more trustworthy and kind people never lived. They are an exception. They are first met with at the village Mpwapwa.

Here the long slender ringlets, ornamented with brass and copper pendicles, balls, with bright pice from Zanzibar, with a thin line of miniature beads running here and there among the ringlets, are first seen. A youthful Wasagara, with a faint tinge of ochre embrowning the dull black hue of his face, with four or five bright copper coins ranged over his forehead, with a tiny gourd's neck in each ear, distending his ear-lobes, with a thousand ringlets well greased and ornamented with tiny bits of brass and copper, with a head well thrown back, broad breast thrown well forward, muscular arms, and full-proportioned limbs, represents the *beau ideal* of a handsome young African savage.

The Wasagara, male and female, tattoo the forehead, bosom, and arms. Besides inserting the neck of a gourd in each ear—which carries his little store of "tumbac," or tobacco and lime, which he has obtained by burning land shells—he carries quite a number of most primitive ornaments around his neck, such as two or three snowy cowrie-shells, carved pieces of wood, or a small goat's horn, or some remedies consecrated by the medicine-man of the tribe, a fundo of white or red beads, or two or three pierced Sungomazzi egg-beads, or a string of copper coin, and sometimes small brass chains, like Cheap-Jack watch-chains.

The Waseguhla are neighbors of the Wasagara, but they are one of the most treacherous and ferocious tribes of Africa, finding congenial occupation only in fighting and enslaving the neighboring tribes who are too weak to resist them.

The Wagogo are the most extortionate tribe in Africa; being numerous and good fighters, they show their strength by levying the heaviest burdens on all who enter their country. They are, physically and intellectually, the best of the races between Unyamwezi and the sea. Their color is a rich dark brown. **THE WONDERFUL WAGOGO TRIBE.** There is something in their frontal aspect which is almost leonine. Their faces are broad and intelligent. Their eyes are large and round. Their noses are flat, and their mouths are very large. For all this, though the Wagogo is a ferocious man, capable of proceeding to any length upon the slightest provocation, he is an attractive figure to the white traveler.

The Wagogo, or Mgogo, as he is more frequently called, makes a splendid soldier, for he is brave and cunning. Their weapons are a bow and sheaf of murderous-looking arrows, pointed, pronged, and barbed; a couple of light, beautifully made assegais, a broad, sword-like spear, with a blade over two feet long, a battle-axe, and a rungu, or knob-club. He has also a shield, painted with designs in black and white, oval-shaped, sometimes of rhinoceros, or elephant, or bull-hide. From the time he is a toddling urchin he is familiar with his weapons, and when fifteen years he is an adept in the use of them. The messenger from the chief darts from village to village and blows his ox-horn, the signal for war. The warrior hears it, throws his hoe over his shoulder, enters his house, and in a few seconds issues forth again, arrayed in war-paint and full fighting costume. Feathers of the ostrich, or the eagle, or the vulture, nod above his head; his long crimson robe streams behind him, his shield is on his left arm, his darting assegai in his left hand, and his ponderous man-cleaver—double-edged and pointed, heading a strong staff—is in his right hand; jingling bells are tied around his ankles and knees; ivory wristlets are on his arms, with which he sounds his approach. With the plodding peasant's hoe he has dropped the peasant's garb, and is now the proud, vain, exultant warrior—bounding aloft like a gymnast, eagerly sniffing the battle-field.

The tembe (dwelling-house) is divided into apartments, separated from each other by a wattled wall. Each apartment may contain a family of grown-up boys and girls, who form their beds on the floor out of dressed hides. The father of the family, only, has a katinda, or fixed cot, made of ox-hide stretched over a frame, or of the bark of the myombo tree. The floor is of tamped mud, and is exceedingly filthy, smelling strangely of every abomination. In the corners, suspended to the rafters, are the fine airy dwellings of black spiders of very large size, and other monstrous insects.

The Wagogo believe in the existence of a god, or sky-spirit, whom they call Mulungu. Their prayers are generally directed to him when their parents die. A Mgogo, after he has consigned his father to the grave, collects his father's chattels together, his **MATERIALIST BELIEFS.** cloth, his ivory, his knife, his jembe (hoe), his bows and arrows, his spears, and his cattle, and kneels before them, repeating a wish that Mulungu will increase his worldly wealth, that he may bless his labors, and make him successful in trade.

The following conversation occurred between Stanley and a Mgogo trader:

"Who do you suppose made your parents?"

"Why, Mulungu, white man!"

"Well, who made you?"

"If God made my father, God made me, didn't he?"

"That's very good. Where do you suppose your father is gone to, now that he is dead?"

"The dead die," said he solemnly: "they are no more. The Sultan dies, he becomes nothing—he is then no better than a dead dog, he is finished, his words are finished—there are no words from him." "It is true," he added, seeing a smile on Stanley's face, "the Sultan becomes nothing. He who says other words is a liar. There!"

"How do you bury a Mgogo?"

"His legs are tied together, his right arm to his body, and his left is put under his head. He is then rolled on his left side in the grave. His cloth he wore during his life is spread over him. We put the earth over him, and put thorn bushes over it to prevent the hyenas from getting at him. A woman is put on her right side in a grave apart from the man."

"In cases of murder, what do you do to the man who kills another?" **PUNISHMENT OF**

"The murderer has to pay fifty cows. If he is too poor to pay, the **CRIMINALS.** Sultan gives his permission to the murdered man's friends or relatives to kill him. If they catch him, they tie him to a tree and throw spears at him—one at a time first; they then spring on him, cut his head off, then his arms, and limbs, and scatter them about the country."

"How do you punish a thief?"

"If he is found stealing, he is killed at once, and nothing is said about it. Is he not a thief?"

"But suppose you do not know who the thief is?"

"If a man is brought before us accused of stealing, we kill a chicken. If the entrails are white, he is innocent—if yellow, he is guilty."

"Do you believe in witchcraft?"

"Of course we do, and punish the man with death if he bewitches cattle, or stops rain."

The Wakimbu are something like the Wasagara in appearance, and also in disposition, only much more industrious. They are the best agriculturists in Africa, and though their country is far from being the richest, by their industrious tillage they make it the most productive. But they are arrant cowards. Their bomas—communal dwellings—are so well constructed that it would require heavy cannon to break them down. They do little or no hunting, but are skillful in constructing traps for elephants and buffaloes, in which they also frequently catch lions and leopards.

Stanley was royally received at Unyanyembe by the Arab population, which numbered about five hundred out of a total of five thousand persons. The governor, Sayd bin Salim, invited him to his house, where a delightful repast awaited him, with accompanying condiments and delicious sherbet. Stanley entertained **A ROYAL RECEPTION.** the governor by relating to him the latest news concerning the personal and political affairs of Arabia and Egypt. When the entertainment was finished Sayd bin Salim showed him the house he was to occupy during his stay in Unyanyembe, and took great pride in calling his attention to its many rooms, as follows:

"Walk in, master, this is your house, now; here are your men's quarters; here you will receive the great Arabs; here is the cook-house; here is the store-house; here is the prison for the refractory; here are your white men's apartments; and these are your own; see, here is the bed-room, here is the gun-room, bath-room," etc.

Stanley now turned his attention to storing his goods and paying off his carriers, this being the end of the trade route from Bagamoyo. When they were dismissed his force was reduced to twenty-five men, all the caravans having arrived and reported.

"Just as I began to feel hungry again," says Stanley, "came several slaves in succession, bearing trays full of good things from the Arabs; first an enormous dish of rice, with a bowlful of curried chicken; another with a dozen huge wheaten cakes; another with a plateful of smoking hot crullers; another with papaws; another with pomegranates and lemons; after these came men driving five fat hump-backed oxen, eight sheep and ten goats, and another man came with a dozen chickens and a dozen fresh eggs. This was real, practical, noble courtesy, munificent hospitality, which quite took my gratitude by storm. My people were as delighted at the prodigal plentitude visible on my tables and in my yards as I was myself. And, as I saw their eyes light up at the unctuous anticipations presented to them by their riotous fancies, I ordered a bullock to be slaughtered and distributed."

Owing to sickness and a war that took place between the Arabs and a native chief named Mirambo, soon after Stanley's arrival, he was detained at Unyanyembe nearly three months, and was at last compelled, by the disturbed state into which this war threw the country, to abandon the regular route to Ujiji and make a long circuit to the southwest, in order to avoid coming in conflict with the terrible Mirambo, who had defeated the Arabs in two pitched battles, and who is described as the Napoleon of Africa. On the twentieth of September, having organized a new force, he started once more for Ujiji.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE LOST TRAVELER FOUND.

The march from Unyanyembe was begun under very unfavorable auspices, and evil circumstances arose one after another, until the end of the sixth day's march. Shaw was afflicted with hypochondria, and though his sickness was a brooding despondency, it preyed upon his nerves until he really was unfitted for travel; he frequently fell from his donkey, and groaned with such an agony of despair that, at his oft-repeated request, he was sent back to Unyanyembe, though Stanley warned him that in his condition, and among a barbarous people whose language he could not understand, he would be sure to die. This prediction was verified a few weeks later.

After passing Uganda, which is a well-fortified city of 3000 people, the troubles of the expedition gradually ceased, for the country became more elevated and healthful.

October 4 found Stanley on the hot plains of Manyara, which are on the margin of a great country abounding with large game. The village of Manyara is not large, but the country is rich and populous. He was denied admission at the village gate, and had to camp near a pool of clear water beside a number of ruined huts.

Owing to the general insecurity felt by every village since Mirambo had begun his guerilla warfare, the chief of Manyara refused to sell Stanley any grain or provisions, claiming that he was prohibited by the district governor from having any communication with caravans.

Stanley was much disappointed by this refusal, but relying on diplomacy to procure provisions, he selected two royal cloths from a bale and gave them to Bombay with an order to deliver them to the chief, with his compliments. Bombay carried out his master's orders, but the chief refused the presents, and in a husky voice told Bombay that he did not want to be bothered. In consequence of this futile effort to obtain food the men had to go

to bed supperless. On the following morning Stanley sent Bombay again, with four royal cloths and a quantity of brass, which the chief received with much delight, and sent in return a large supply of honey, fowls, goats, beans, etc., enough to last four days.

This evidence of astonishing liberality was shortly after followed by a visit from the chief himself, accompanied by several prominent natives. Stanley received them politely on a piece of Persian carpet and a bear-skin. They looked at him with great surprise, he being the first white man they had ever seen, and gave expression to their wonder by fits of laughter. The Winchester rifle elicited a thousand flattering remarks, while they looked upon the revolvers as pieces of magic. When a double-barreled shot-gun was discharged near them, they jumped with remarkable elasticity, but seeing no harm was done, they fell to laughing in the most immoderate manner. As their enthusiasm increased, they seized each other's index fingers, screwed them, and pulled at them until it seemed as if those useful members would be dislocated. After having explained to them the difference between white men and Arabs, Stanley pulled out his medicine chest, which evoked another burst of rapturous sighs at the cunning neatness of the array of vials. The chief asked what they meant.

"Dowa," replied Stanley, sententiously, a word which may be interpreted—medicine.

"Oh-h, oh-h," they murmured admiringly. "Dowa, dowa," they added.

"Here," said Stanley, uncorking a vial of medicinal brandy, "is the Kisingu pombe" (white man's beer); "take a spoonful and try it," at the same time handing it to the Sultan, who gulped down a large mouthful of it.

"Hacht, hacht, oh, hacht! what! eh! what strong beer the white men have! Oh, how my throat burns!" exclaimed the Sultan.

"Ah, but it is good," said Stanley, "a little of it makes men feel strong, and good; but too much of it makes men bad, and they die."

"Let me have some," said one of the chiefs; "and me," "and me," "and me," as soon as each had tasted.

He next produced a bottle of concentrated ammonia, which he explained was for snake-bites and headaches; the Sultan immediately complained that he had a headache, and must have a little. Telling him to close his eyes, Stanley suddenly uncorked the bottle and presented it to his Majesty's nose. The effect was magical, for he fell back as if shot, and such contortions as his features underwent are indescribable. His chiefs roared with laughter, and clapped their hands, pinched each other, snapped their fingers, and performed many other ludicrous actions.

HAVING FUN WITH THE SULTAN.



A VIEW OF UJJI.

One day's march from Manyara brought the caravan to the banks of the Yombe River, along which are thousands of hartebeests, buffaloes, giraffes, spring-boks, zebras and elands.

This was indeed a hunter's paradise; a fine, grassy plain, soft as velvet carpet, healthful and picturesque; no one could well resist the temptation which here offered for a hunt. Stanley made preparations for his camp, after which, taking up his double-barreled smooth-bore, he went out into the park-land. Scarcely had he entered a clump of brushwood, hardly one hundred yards from the camp, when three beautiful young spring-boks were seen browsing on the succulent grass. A quick shot brought one to the ground, the throat of which was reverently cut a moment after by the Arab gun-bearer with a fervent "Bismillah."

As it was nearly time for supper, Stanley hurried back to camp to have the fresh meat prepared; then followed a repast of delicious steak, hot corn cake and Mocha coffee, with a pipe of fine tobacco for dessert. Glorious life in Africa! On the following day and the next the royal sport was continued, but the Winchester was too small for the lordly forest game, as only a very few out of the hundreds wounded were killed. The animals taken to camp during the three days' sport were two buffaloes, two wild boars, three hartebeests, one zebra, and one pallah; besides which were shot eight guinea-fowls, three floricans, two fish eagles, one pelican, and one of the men caught a couple of large silurus (cat) fish. In the meantime the people had cut, sliced, and dried this bounteous store of meat for transit through the long wilderness before them.

One day during the hunt Stanley came upon the bank of the Yombe River, and the water looked so pure, cool and limpid that he decided to take a bath. He had divested himself of his clothes, and was just preparing for a headlong plunge, when he saw the indistinct form of a monster crocodile glide a few feet under the water and stop immediately under him, as if waiting for him to spring. If he had dived, as he intended, he would have gone into the very jaws of the ferocious reptile. With a shudder of horror he quickly dressed and left the seductive but dangerous spot.

NARROW ESCAPE FROM A CROCODILE.

On the seventh of October Stanley ordered his men to break camp and resume the march; an ominous silence followed; the order was repeated in a tone of severity, and the men moved off, but after proceeding a short distance they threw down their loads and refused to go any further. He saw at once that he was in the midst of a mutiny, and that Bombay was the leader. Shoving some buckshot shells into his gun, he walked quickly toward the head of the column, but was arrested by observing two guns pointed toward him from an ant-hill which partially screened two murderous guides. He threw his gun into position and threatened to blow their heads off if they did not come to him at once. Being too cowardly to shoot and take the chances, they sullenly left their hiding place and walked slowly forward. These two men were Asmani and his sworn companion, Mabruki. Stanley kept his eye on Asmani, and saw him move his finger to the trigger of his gun and bring the weapon to a "ready." Again Stanley lifted his gun, and threatened him with instant death if he did not drop his weapon.

Never was a man nearer his death than was Asmani during those few moments, and realizing the fact he obeyed. The truth was, they feared to proceed further on the road, and the only possible way of inducing them to move was by firmness and determination.

The men appeared all the better for this escapade, in which they had gained nothing, but learned that they were governed by a resolute leader. They marched with quick step, and even cheerful countenances, and gained Mrera on the seventeenth of October. Here

they were beyond the country so disturbed by Mirambo, and felt that all danger had been passed. Confidence returned, and Bombay was ready to embrace Stanley, to show his loyalty. The forests, too, were invitingly laden with wild fruits, among other kinds being the peach, which grew in great abundance and was most delicious in taste. The distance to Ujiji was now less than one hundred miles, and the guides declared they could already smell the fish in Lake Tanganyika. In short, everybody was happy.

October 22 brought the caravan to a small pellucid stream of water called Mtambu ; they had now reached the home of the lion, leopard, and wild boar. Here they went into camp in a beautiful spot, about one hundred yards from the river.

The herd-keeper drove the donkeys and goats down to the stream **A FRIGHTENED LEOPARD.** of water, to reach which they had to pass through a brake by a path made by elephants and rhinoceri. They had barely entered the dark passage when a black-spotted leopard sprang out and fastened its fangs in the neck of one of the donkeys, causing it to emit several loud, unearthly brays. The other donkeys joined their comrade in braying, and at the same time commenced a vigorous kicking, whereat the poor leopard became so frightened at the terrible and unusual noise that he released his victim and fled into the jungle. The donkey was badly bitten, but recovered from its hurts.

This incident led Stanley to take a stroll round the camp, to see what game he could discover, taking his boy Kalulu with him to carry an extra gun. They walked some time without seeing any kind of animal, and were on the point of returning to camp, when a troop of monkeys, perched in the branches of a tree overhead, **MONKEYS AND** disturbed by the sight of a white man, chattered and grimaced so vigor- **WILD BOARS.** ously that Stanley was provoked into a hearty laugh. As the monkeys were startled by a strange sight, so was Stanley, when, in turning from them, he discovered a huge, reddish-colored wild boar, armed with horrid tusks, standing near him. Recovering his self-possession, he advanced within forty yards of the beast and fired at its fore-shoulder. The boar made a furious bound, and then stood with his bristles erected and his tufted tail curved over his back. Another shot was planted in his chest, and ploughed its way entirely through his body ; but instead of falling, the boar charged at Stanley, and received another bullet through the body, whereupon it dropped, but as Stanley stooped to cut its throat, it sprang up and darted off into the jungle.

On the second of November the expedition reached the Malagazazi River, and in attempting to swim one of the donkeys over, a large crocodile seized it by the neck, and in spite of its terrific braying and struggling, and the efforts of the men in tugging on the rope, the poor donkey was carried under and devoured.

The following day Stanley met a caravan of eighty Waguhha, a tribe living in a district on the southwestern side of Lake Tanganyika. They had come direct from Ujiji, and reported the presence of a white man there who was very sick, having marched from a far country in the west and been deserted by his carriers. **LIVINGSTONE** Stanley questioned the captain of the caravan closely, and soon became **HEARD FROM.** convinced that the white man was none other than Livingstone. He was almost beside himself with joy over this news, and succeeded in imparting some of his enthusiasm to his men by promises of rewards and extra pay if they would push ahead under rapid marches for Ujiji. He hoped to reach that place without another halt, but they were soon detained by a warlike chief, who demanded excessive tribute for the privilege of passing through his country. Fifty robust and well-armed warriors appeared to enforce the demand, whereupon Stanley decided to camp for the night and endeavored to compromise

matters. He learned, also, that there were several other chiefs between him and Ujiji who would demand toll, and as his goods, which were his only means of traveling through the country, were running very low, matters were beginning to assume a serious aspect. Upon consulting with his men he learned that it would be possible to reach their destination by turning aside from the traveled road and pursuing some paths through the jungle, until they had passed the limits of the toll-demanding chiefs. He at once decided upon this course, and a native guide having been procured and the strictest silence imposed upon every member of the expedition, about midnight, after the moon had risen, they stole out of camp, in squads of four, and followed the new guide through the intricate paths of the jungle. By this means they succeeded in evading the unfriendly chiefs, and having passed their country, after a fatiguing and painful march, they again turned into the traveled road, and pushed on with light hearts for Ujiji.

Upon camping for a very much-needed rest, Stanley heard a noise in the west like distant thunder. Inquiring the cause, one of the guides told him it was Kabogo.

"Kabogo! What is that?"

"It is a great mountain on the other side of the Tanganyika, full of deep holes, into which the water rolls; and when there is wind on the Tanganyika there is a sound like *mvuha* (thunder). Many boats have been lost there, and it is a custom with Arabs and natives to throw cloth—Merikani and Kaniki—and especially white (Merikani) beads, to appease the *mulungu* (god) of the lake. Those who throw beads generally get past without trouble, but those who do not throw beads into the lake get lost and are drowned. Oh, it is a dreadful place!" This story was told by the ever-smiling Asmani, and was corroborated by other former mariners of the lake who were with the expedition. The distance from camp to Kabogo was fully one hundred miles. The noise is produced by the thundering waves dashing into the caves along the mountain side.

On the sixteenth of November they reached Ujiji, and marched into the village with flags flying, drums beating, and guns firing. Crowds of Arabs and natives came running to meet them, and upon arriving within a short distance of the huts of the village Stanley was startled to hear a pleasant "Good morning, sir," in **MEETING WITH LIVINGSTONE.** English, close to his side. Looking around he saw a very black man with an animated and joyous face, who proved to be Susi, Dr. Livingstone's faithful servant. From him Stanley soon learned that the Doctor was at his house in the village only a short distance from them. In a moment Chuma, another one of the Doctor's servants, appeared, and Stanley directed them to run and tell their master that he was coming. Then pushing his way through the crowd he walked toward a small group of Arabs, in front of whom stood a white man with gray beard. Approaching him, Stanley lifted his hat and said:

"Dr. Livingstone, I presume?"

"Yes," said he, lifting his cap and smiling.

They then shook hands, and Stanley exclaimed, "I thank God, Doctor, I have been permitted to see you."

"I feel thankful that I am here to welcome you," was the reply. **AND LIVINGSTONE WAS FOUND.**

Stanley says he had expected to find a haughty, reserved man who would probably resent his visit as an unnecessary intrusion; and it was his intention to simply interview him as he would any other distinguished stranger, and then return to America. But he was most agreeably surprised to find the Doctor a very congenial and pleasant companion.

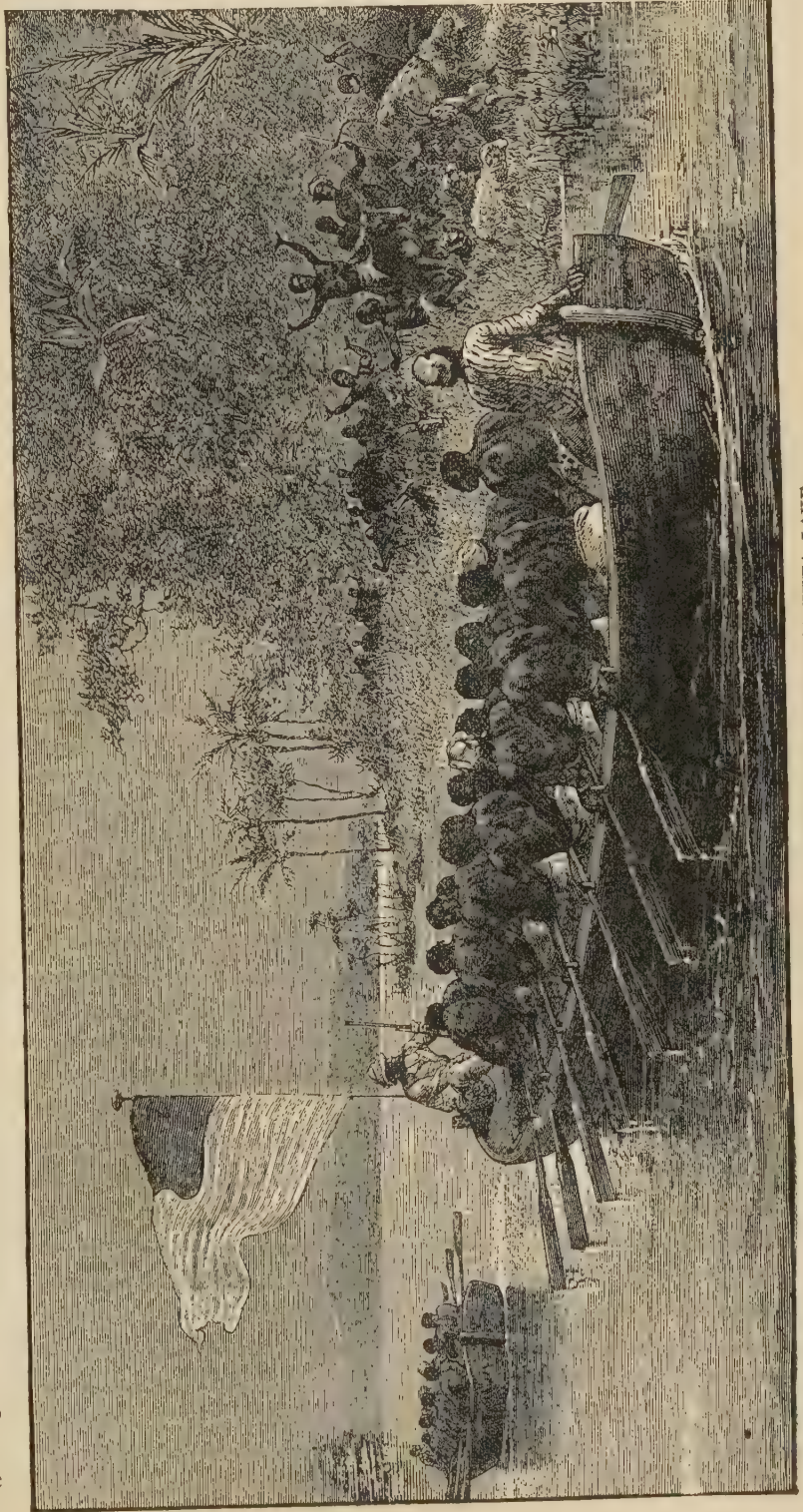
Stanley delivered the packet of letters which he had brought from Zanzibar, now 365 days old. Livingstone opened the bag and taking them out read one from his children, then laid the rest aside in order that he might hear the news of the world, which for two years had been as a sealed book to him. It was an animated conversation on both sides, equally interesting and refreshing. A repast was prepared and both indulged a vigorous appetite. Livingstone kept repeating, "You have brought me new life—you have brought me new life." Suddenly interrupting, Stanley exclaimed:

"Oh, by George! I have forgotten something. Hasten, Selim, and bring that bottle; you know which; and bring me the silver goblets. I brought this bottle on purpose for this event, which I hoped would come to pass, though often it seemed useless to expect it."

Selim knew where the bottle was, and he soon returned with it—a bottle of Sillery champagne; and, handing the Doctor a silver goblet brimful of the exhilarating wine, and pouring a small quantity into his own, he said:

"Dr. Livingstone, to your good health, sir."

"And to yours," he responded.



STANLEY AND LIVINGSTONE ON TANGANYIKA LAKE.

And the champagne, which had been treasured for this happy meeting, was drunk with hearty good wishes to each other.

Stanley remained with Livingstone in Ujiji for about a week, interviewing him each day as a voracious press reporter, anxious to obtain the incidents of his explorations and adventures for the *Herald*. In these daily intercourses he learned

JOINT EXPLORATIONS ON

TANGANYIKA LAKE.

to admire, indeed, almost to venerate the great Englishman, whose character, he declares, was as near angelic as mortals ever become.

Livingstone had reached Ujiji sick and so destitute that he was dependent upon the generosity of Sayd bin Majid, an Arab trader, who proved himself a most amiable and generous friend. In his impoverished condition, Livingstone could not renew his travels, and he was therefore in idleness, awaiting supplies from Zanzibar.

Stanley had reached Ujiji in the most opportune time, and perceiving the Doctor's poverty, suggested that they should make a joint exploration of the north end of Tanganyika Lake and settle the question of the

Rusizi River, after which they would return to Unyanyembe, where, from the many bales of goods left by Stanley, Livingstone could be well supplied for another year's campaign. To this proposition the Doctor assented, and, procuring a large canoe from Sayd bin Majid, capable of carrying sixteen men and the necessary provisions, the two set sail. The incidents of this trip have already been given in Livingstone's travels, and it is not necessary to repeat them here.



LOOK OUT FOR THE ELEPHANT.

They returned to Ujiji on the thirteenth of December, 1871, intending to start at once for Unyanyembe, but Stanley was taken sick and confined to his bed until Christmas, and even then he was unable to celebrate the day by a feast such as he had intended. On the twenty-sixth they began their preparations for the journey to Unyanyembe, having decided

to follow the lake south to a village called Urimba, and march overland from that point, in order to evade the tribute-gatherers on the regular route. They obtained two canoes from the Arabs, in which they embarked with a portion of their men, the remainder following along the shores of the lake to the starting point. They set sail on the twenty-seventh, Stanley in the larger canoe, with the American flag flying at the stern, and Livingstone in the smaller one, under the British flag. The men were greatly delighted over the shrewd evasion of the tribute-gatherers, and broke into an impromptu song, as follows:

"We have given the Waha, the slip! ha, ha!
The Wavinza will trouble us no more! oh, oh!
Mionvu can get no more cloth from us! hy, hy!
And Kiala will see us no more—never more! he, he!"

On the fifth of January, 1872, they reached Urimba, where an encampment was made and two days spent in hunting zebras and buffaloes, and enough meat was procured and

dried to last the caravan several days, thus saving the goats and sheep. On the seventh they started on the overland journey.

They had traveled several days, and after camping one afternoon, Stanley thought he would endeavor to procure some meat, which the interesting region where they then were seemed to promise. He sallied out with his little Winchester along the banks of the river eastward. After traveling for an hour or two, the prospect getting more picturesque and lovely, he went up a ravine which looked very promising. Unsuccessful, he strode up the bank, and to his astonishment found himself directly in front of an elephant, who had his large broad ears held out like studding sails—the colossal monster, the incarnation of might of the African world.

**ADVENTURE WITH
AN ELEPHANT.**

Kalulu, who was with his master, shouted, "Tembo! tembo! bana yango! Lo! an elephant! an elephant, my master!" For the young black rascal had fled as soon as he saw the awful colossus in such close vicinage. Recovering from his astonishment, Stanley thought it prudent to retire also—especially with a pea-shooter, loaded with treacherous sawdust cartridges, in his hand. As he looked behind, he saw the elephant waving his trunk, as much as to say, "Good-bye, young fellow, it is lucky for you that you went in time, for I was going to pound you to a jelly."

Upon arriving at camp he found the men grumbling; their provisions were ended, and there was no prospect for three days, at least, of procuring any. With the improvidence usual with the gluttons, they had eaten their rations of grain, all their store of zebra and dried buffalo meat, and were now crying out that they were famished.

The caravan was forced to subsist on short rations for two days, until Stanley shot a very large giraffe and some zebras, the flesh of which afforded food until they reached Uganda, where they were hospitably received and generously provided for. After leaving Uganda the slaughter of goats and sheep commenced, and these furnished abundant meat until they arrived at Unyanyembe.

They rested at Unyanyembe until March 18, when Stanley divided his goods with the Doctor and set out on a hurried march for Zanibar, where it was arranged that he should enlist a new company and send them back to the Doctor, with such additional supplies and goods as he needed. It was a sad farewell. A strong mutual attachment had sprung up between the two men, alone in the wilderness of Central Africa, and when the time came they found it hard to separate. Stanley was going home, to the comforts and pleasures of civilization, while his friend would again plunge into the dark forests in search of that ignis fatuus, the sources of the Nile. They walked together along the homeward route for some distance; then Livingstone stopped and held out his hand. The time to part had come. Words stuck fast in the throats of each during that silent, earnest grip of the hands. Livingstone turned his face to the west, and walked slowly back toward Unyanyembe, and descending a gentle slope he disappeared forever from the civilized world, while Stanley thoughtfully and sorrowfully turned his face to the east.

THE SEPARATION.

Everything went well with the returning expedition until the twenty-seventh, when the village of Kiwyeh, on the borders of Ugogo, was entered. They had barely encamped when they heard the booming, bellowing war-horns sounding everywhere, and espied messengers darting swiftly in all directions giving the alarm of war. When first informed that the horns were calling the people to arm themselves and prepare for war, Stanley half suspected that an attack was about to be made on the expedition; but the words "Urugu, warugu—(thief!

**THE POMP AND
CIRCUMSTANCE OF WAR.**

thieves!) bandied about, declared the cause. Mukondoku, the chief of the populous district two days to the northeast, was marching to attack the young Mtemi, Kiwyeh, and the latter's soldiers were called to the fight. The men rushed to their villages, and in a short time they were arrayed in full fighting costume. Feathers of the ostrich and the eagle waved over their fronts, or the mane of the zebra surrounded their heads; their knees and ankles were hung with little bells; joho robes floated behind, from their necks; spears, assegais, knob-sticks and bows were flourished over their heads, or held in their right hands, as if ready for hurling. On each flank of a large body which issued from the principal village, and which came at a uniform swinging double-quick, the ankle and knee-bells all chiming in admirable unison, were a cloud of skirmishers, consisting of the most enthusiastic, who exercised themselves in mimic war as they sped along. Column after column,



STANLEY'S PARTING WITH LIVINGSTONE ON THE SHORES OF TANGANYIKA LAKE.

companies and groups from every village hurried on past the camp, until probably there were nearly a thousand soldiers going to the war.

The alarm, very fortunately, proved a false one, and on the following day the march was renewed with the rapidity of a flying column. No further difficulties were experienced until April 13, when the caravan reached the valley of the Mukondokwa River. Here they had to wade through mire and water, sometimes up to a man's neck, while torrents of rain poured down incessantly.

It would be tedious to write more concerning the home march, as no incident of special interest occurred. Stanley reached Bagamoyo on May 7, in good health and astonishingly good spirits. He was much surprised to meet, among the first persons he saw in the village,

Lieutenant Henn, of the Royal Navy, and Mr. Oswald Livingstone, son of the Doctor, who had been dispatched to relieve the great traveler. The lieutenant, a young, dandyish-looking fellow, was delighted to learn that Stanley had accomplished the object for which the *Herald* had sent him, as it saved him a "nawsty twip among the howid people of Centwal Afwica." The English relief expedition was abandoned, and the young lieutenant and Oswald Livingstone both returned to England.

Stanley's success at first greatly aroused the jealousy of the English people. He being an American, they seemed to think it a piece of Yankee impertinence for him to try to find and save Livingstone. This jealousy even extended to the government, for in the instructions to the commander of the British relief expedition, **ENGLISH JEALOUSY.** not a word of reference was made to the American expedition. "In your orders," said Stanley to Lieutenant Henn, "is there nothing said as to what you were to do in the event of your meeting me?"

"Not a word, though they knew it well; for one of the members of the Royal Geographical Society suggested to me privately that I might possibly be able to relieve you. I knew nothing of your expedition except from your letter to the *Herald*; but we had been informed that you were sick from fever, and probably dead. When I arrived here I heard much about you, and we heard a report that you had found Livingstone the very day we came here; but we did not pay much attention to it. It was not until I talked with your own men that I came to the conclusion that I was not wanted, and therefore resigned."

"Why did they not mention my name in the instructions? They knew, according to what you say, that I was in the country; and, no matter how poor a traveler I might have been, it was a contingency that might arise."

"The truth is, they didn't want you to find him. You cannot imagine how jealous they are at home about this expedition of yours."

"Not find Livingstone! What does it matter to them who finds and helps him, so long as he is found and relieved?"

This was the first shock Stanley had received, and from this moment he regarded himself as a doomed man with the English people. That any one should have been so inhuman as to desire his failure, because it was an American expedition, was the remotest idea that could have been entertained. Until that moment he had never given a thought as to how people would regard his success or failure. He had been too busily employed in his work even to think of such a wild and improbable thing as that any people would rather hope that Dr. Livingstone should be irrevocably lost than that an American journalist should find him.

But he was not long at Zanzibar before he was thoroughly aware of the animus that prevailed in England. He was shown clippings from newspapers, wherein several members of the Royal Geographical Society had ridiculed the American expedition, and one member had even gone so far as to say that it required the "steel head of an Englishman" to penetrate Africa.

Englishmen are peculiar and sometimes distressingly stupid, but they are not always unjust, and sometimes—not often—change rashly formed opinions. In Stanley's case their jealousy was soon modified. He left Zanzibar on May 29, and after some trying delays arrived in England, and was afterward received with kindness and distinction by the English people; but it cannot be said that they have ever put a worthy estimate upon his labors in behalf of their distinguished fellow-countryman.

The above are not my own, but Stanley's strictures, and the injustice of his complaints is well proved by subsequent events, for not only was he taken up to lead a strictly English expedition into Africa, but he has been loaded with honors by the people he thus traduces, who indeed elected him to Parliament in 1894, which ambition induced him to surrender his American citizenship and renew his allegiance to the Queen.

CHAPTER XXII.

STANLEY'S SECOND EXPEDITION.

Stanley introduces his second famous expedition across the continent of Africa in the following words :

"While returning to England in April, '74, from the Ashantee War, the news reached me that Livingstone was dead—that his body was on its way to England !

"Livingstone had then fallen ! He was dead ! He had died by the shores of Lake Bemba (Bangweolo), on the threshold of the dark region he wished to explore ! The work he had promised to perform was only begun when death overtook him !

"The effect which this news had upon me, after the first shock had passed away, was to fire me with a resolution to complete his work, to be, if God willed it, the next martyr to geographical science, or, if my life was to be spared, to clear up not only the secrets of the Great River throughout its course, but also all that remained still problematic and incomplete of the discoveries of Burton and Speke, and Speke and Grant.

"The solemn day of the burial of the body of my great friend arrived. I was one of the pall-bearers in Westminster Abbey, and when I had seen the coffin lowered into the grave, and had heard the first handful of earth thrown over it, I walked away sorrowing over the fate of David Livingstone."

One day, strolling into the office of the London *Daily Telegraph*, Stanley engaged its proprietors, Messrs. Levy and Lawson, in conversation on his favorite subject, and before leaving they asked him how he would like to complete the labors left unfinished by Livingstone. The inquiry added fresh fuel to his most ardent desire, and the result was an arrangement between the proprietors of the *Telegraph* and the New York *Herald* by which he was commissioned to undertake an exploration of Central Africa with the special view of finding the Nile's source.

The preliminaries having been agreed upon, he was not long in making his departure. Applications poured in upon him from the adventure-loving spirits of Europe and America, begging permission to join the expedition, but he chose only three young Englishmen, John and Edward Pocock, and Frederick Barker. In the matter of dogs, however, he was more liberal, for he selected four, a mastiff, retriever, bull-terrier, and a bull-dog.

There was no lack of money at his disposal, and he was thereby enabled to equip his expedition with everything that he might by any possibility require ; and when he set sail on the fifteenth of August, 1874, for Zanzibar, he was better prepared for the work before him than had been any previous expedition. He arrived at Zanzibar on the twenty-first of September, and on November 12, more than 200 porters having been engaged, the expedition set sail for Bogamoyo. When ready to start for the interior, the expedition comprised 356 persons, among whom were thirty-six women, and when they marched out of

Bagamoyo, on the seventeenth of November, they formed a line half a mile in length. Among the heaviest articles was a boat, named *Lady Alice*, forty feet long, six feet beam, and thirty inches deep. It was made in twelve sections, and afterward cut into as many more, to facilitate its transportation.

Nothing out of the usual course of events in African travel occurred until the seventeenth of January, 1875, when Edward Pocock died of typhus fever, after a short illness. This deplorable event was intensified in its sadness by the facts connected with his enlistment. Possessing a laudable ambition to unite his name with discoveries that would benefit mankind, he had left England with a mother's blessing, to share the hardships and trials of the expedition across the Dark Continent. Although in the wilds of Africa when death struck him down, young Pocock had a Christian burial, and a brother and loving companions laid their tributes on his grave. He was buried by the foot of a large tree on which was cut the emblem of his faith, a cross, and there he rests, under the moving shadows of the swaying branches.

**DEATH OF
EDWARD POCKOCK.**



BURIAL OF EDWARD POCKOCK.

Upon reaching a village situated nearly midway between Bagamoyo and Ujiji, Stanley left the route by which he had previously traveled and took a due north course, by which he reached Victoria Lake on the twenty-eighth of February. The camping-place was at a village called Kagehyi, where provisions were plentiful enough but not obtainable except at a high price. This was the place where Speke first viewed the lake, and his stay there served to give the natives an idea of values, and made Stanley a victim to their extortions; but unpleasant things had to be endured, and it was important that the friendship of Prince Kaduma, who ruled that country, should be secured.

On the second day after the arrival the *Lady Alice* was prepared for sea, Stanley being determined to circumnavigate the lake. Kaduma declared the lake was so large that it would require years to cross it, while along its northern shores lived tribes so ferocious that no stranger dared approach them; some of these people were gifted with tails; others trained enormous and fierce dogs, while others preferred human flesh to all other kinds of meat. These superstitious fears had such an effect upon Stanley's men that, when he called for volunteers to accompany him on the voyage, not a single one came forward. Persuasion being of no avail, he was compelled to conscript ten of the young guides enlisted at Bagamoyo, who were boatmen, and on the eighth of March the lake voyage was begun. Five miles from Kagehyi they came to the village of Igusa, where, by offers of large rewards, a fisherman named Saramba, who had been much on the lake, was engaged as guide.

Interesting sights were often presented to view, but incidents of adventure were few. Hippopotami, crocodiles, and monitors were abundant along the shores. This latter animal is a species of lizard, which accompanies the crocodile and gives it warning of approaching danger. In this respect it is the crocodile's friend, but this friendship is an interested one, for it subsists almost exclusively off crocodile eggs. Stanley shot one of these singular and rare animals which measured seven feet in length.

The shores of the lake were thickly populated, there being village after village in almost unbroken continuity. Generally the people were disposed to be friendly, but occasional hostile parties were encountered, who resisted every attempt to
ENCOUNTER WITH land among them. Upon reaching a bay that lay within a border of a plain
WILD NATIVES. on one side, and a promontory on the other, in the extreme northeast corner of the lake, a people speaking the Usoga tongue were met, who were very kind and generous, and freely supplied Stanley with sheep and vegetables in exchange for blue beads. They were entirely naked, except that some of the women wore a kirtle of green banana leaves, which afforded barely the covering of a fig-leaf.

About five hours after leaving this pleasant people, a storm arose so fierce as to compel them to put into a small cove in an island. Within ten minutes after coming to anchor a small canoe, paddled by two men, approached from the shore. Stanley hailed them in mild tones, but nothing would induce them to come nearer than one hundred yards. Soon after another canoe, much larger than the first, containing forty men, all rowing, came up within fifty yards, and seizing long tufted lances and shields began swaying them in a menacing manner. Stanley's men made no demonstrations of resistance, while the hostile canoe approached within twenty yards, when the savages began to row in a circle around Stanley's boat, making hostile demonstrations. The quiet disposition of the *Lady Alice's* crew prompted the natives to come nearer and nearer, until the two boats were brought side by side. The paddlers, half of whom were intoxicated, laid their hands on everything within reach, not even excepting Stanley himself, whose person they felt with some astonishment but no less rudeness. This familiarity, which none of Stanley's party in the least resented, evidently led the natives to believe that they had inspired the white man with helpless terror. Reeling and jostling one another in their eagerness to offend, they seized their spears and shields, and began to chant in bacchanalian tones a song that was tipsily discordant. Some seized their slings and flung stones to a great distance, which Stanley applauded. Then one of them, under the influence of wine, and his spirits elated by the chant, waxed bolder, and looked as though he would aim at the white man, seated observant but mute in the stern of the boat. Stanley made a motion with his hand as though deprecating such an action. The sooty villain seemed to become at once animated by hysteric passion, and whirled a stone from his sling close over Stanley's head, a loud drunken cheer applauding his boldness.

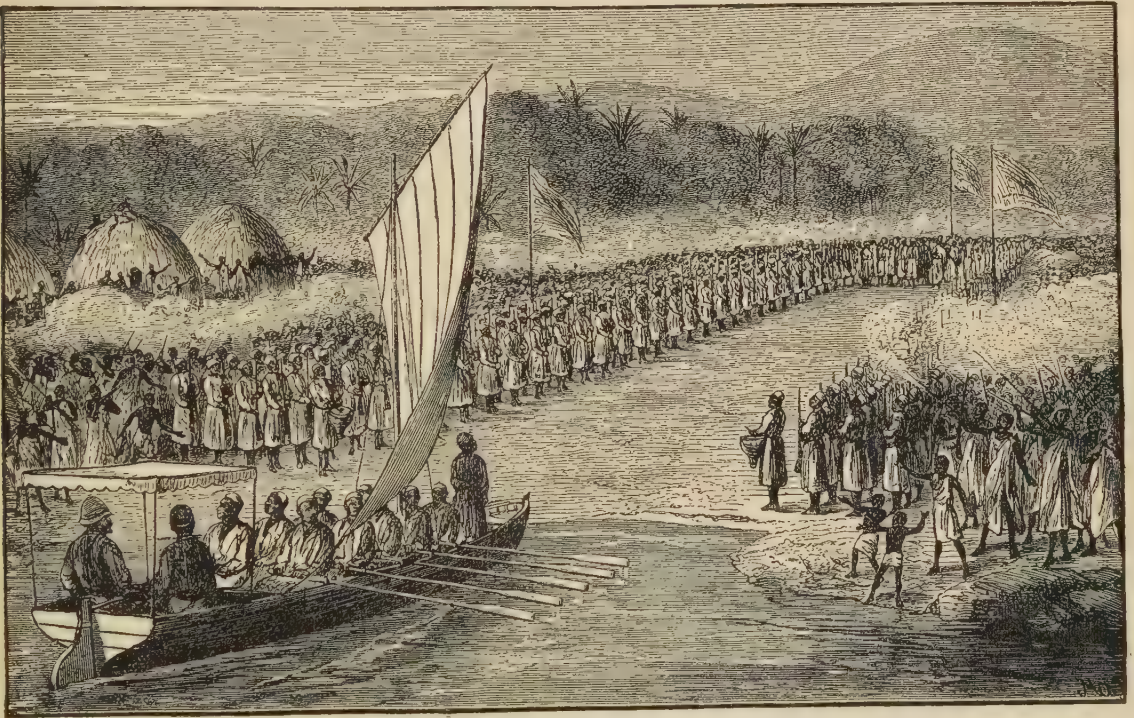
Perceiving that they were becoming wanton on account of his inaction, Stanley seized his revolver and fired rapidly into the water, in the direction the stone had been flung; the effect was painfully ludicrous. The bold, insolent bacchanals at the first shot had sprung overboard and were swimming for dear life, leaving their canoe unmanned. "Friends, come back, come back; why this fear?" cried out the interpreter; "we simply wished to show you that we had weapons as well as yourselves. Come, take your canoe; see, we push it away for you to seize it. The savages were eventually won back with smiles. They were now more respectful in their demeanor. They laughed, cried out admiringly, and imitated the pistol shots, "Bum, bum, bum." They then presented Stanley with a bunch of bananas!

A few days afterward, when moving under a swift breeze, Stanley's boat was hailed from the shore, and, the natives appearing friendly, he landed. Immediately they were attacked with stones, one of which badly wounded the steersman. Upon beginning the attack a large number of natives ran to the boat and seized the oars, while others began rifling the bales of goods. It was time for quick action; Stanley seized his gun and fired over their heads, which so alarmed them that they ran off a little distance, but began throwing their spears; a few shots from a large rifle doubled up a half-dozen, whereupon the rest ran off.

On the second of April the party proceeded in a happy mood along the beautiful shore until the village of Kerudo was reached, where they were received with much hospitality, and from which place the *Kabaka* (king) of Uganda was notified by messengers of the white man's approach.

A KING'S INVITATION.

Just as Stanley was about to depart, on the following morning, he perceived six beautiful canoes, crowded with men all dressed in white, approaching; they



STANLEY'S RECEPTION BY THE KING OF UGANDA.

were the Kabaka's people conveying a messenger who carried an invitation from the king of Uganda to Stanley, begging a visit from him. This messenger was gorgeously arrayed for the important occasion; he wore a bead-worked head-dress, above which long white cock's feathers waved, and a snowy white and long-haired goat-skin, intertwined with a crimson robe, depending from his shoulders, completed his costume. Approaching Stanley, he delivered his message thus:

"The Kabaka sends me with many salaams to you. He is in great hopes that you will visit him, and has encamped at Usavara, that he may be near the lake when you come. He does not know from what land you have come, but I have a swift messenger with a canoe

who will not stop until he gives all the news to the Kabaka. His mother dreamed a dream a few nights ago, and in her dream she saw a white man on this lake in a boat, coming this way, and the next morning she told the Kabaka, and lo! you have come. Give me your answer, that I may send the messenger. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi!" (Thanks, thanks, thanks.) Thus delivering himself, the messenger, whose name was Magassa, implored Stanley to remain one day longer, that he might show him the hospitalities of his country, and prepare him for a grand reception by the king, to which Stanley consented.

Magassa was in his glory now. His voice became imperious to his escort of 182 men; even the feathers of his curious head-dress waved prouder, and his robe had a sweeping dignity worthy of a Roman emperor's. Upon landing, Magassa's stick was employed frequently. The sub-chief of Kadzi was compelled to yield implicit obedience to his viceregal behests. "Bring out bullocks, sheep, and goats, milk, and the mellowest of your choicest bananas, and great jars of maramba, and let the white man and his boatmen eat, and taste of the hospitalities of Uganda. Shall a white man enter the Kabaka's presence with an empty belly? See how sallow and pinched his cheeks are. We want to see whether we cannot show him kindness superior to what the pagans have shown him."

On the following day Magassa, in his superb canoe, led the way, with Stanley following. When about two miles from Usavara, they saw what they estimated to be thousands of people arranging themselves in order on a gently rising ground. When
MTESA WELCOMES about a mile from the shore, Magassa gave the order to signal the advance
STANLEY. upon it with firearms, and was at once obeyed by a dozen musketeers.

Half a mile off Stanley saw that the people on the shore had formed themselves into two dense lines, at the ends of which stood several finely dressed men, arrayed in crimson and black and snowy white. As they neared the beach, volleys of musketry burst out from the long lines. Magassa's canoes steered outward to right and left, while two or three hundred heavily loaded guns announced to all around that the white man—whom Mtesa's mother had dreamed about—had landed. Numerous kettle and brass drums sounded a noisy welcome, and flags, banners, and bannerets waved, and the people gave a great shout. Very much amazed at all this ceremonious and pompous greeting, Stanley strode up toward the great standard, near which stood a short young man, dressed in a crimson robe which covered an immaculately white dress of bleached cotton, before whom Magassa, who had hurried ashore, kneeled reverently, and, turning to the visitor, begged him to understand that this short young man was the *Katekiro* (Prime Minister).

A dozen well-dressed officers came forward, and, grasping Stanley's hand, welcomed him to Uganda. By these he was conducted to a courtyard, surrounded by a circle of grass-thatched huts, in the midst of which was a larger house where he was invited to make his quarters. He was soon besieged by all manner of questions concerning the earth, air, and the heavens, which he apparently answered to the satisfaction of the natives, for they went immediately to the king (Mtesa) and told him the white man knew everything; at this his Majesty rubbed his hands as though he had just come into possession of a treasure, and sent fourteen fat oxen, sixteen goats and sheep, a hundred bunches of bananas, three dozen fowls, four wooden jars of milk, four baskets of sweet potatoes, fifty ears of green Indian corn, a basket of rice, twenty fresh eggs, and ten pots of maramba wine. Kauta, Mtesa's steward or butler, at the head of the drovers and bearers of these various provisions, fell on his knees before Stanley and said:

"The Kabaka sends salaams unto his friend who has traveled so far to see him. The Kabaka cannot see the face of his friend until he has eaten and is satisfied. The Kabaka

has sent his slave with these few things to his friend that he may eat, and at the ninth hour, after his friend has rested, the Kabaka will send and call for him to appear at the burzah. I have spoken. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi !”

The appointed time approached, and Stanley was prepared for the memorable hour when he should meet the Foremost Man of Equatorial Africa. Two of the Kabaka's pages came to announce that everything was ready. Forthwith issued from the courtyard five of the boat's crew on each side of Stanley, armed with Snider rifles. They reached a short broad street, at the end of which was a hut. Here the Kabaka was seated, while a multitude of chiefs, Wakungu (generals), and Watongoleh (colonels), ranked from the throne in two opposing kneeling or seated lines, the ends being closed in by drummers, guards, executioners, pages, etc. As they approached the nearest group it opened and the drummers beat mighty sounds. The Foremost Man of Equatorial Africa arose and advanced, whereupon all the kneeling and seated lines arose—generals, colonels, chiefs, cooks, butlers, pages, executioners, etc.

Mtesa took a deliberate view of Stanley, as if studying him, while the compliment was reciprocated, since the latter was no less interested in the king. After the audience Stanley repaired to his hut and wrote the following: “As I had read Speke's book for the sake of its geographical information, I retained but a dim remembrance **AN AUDIENCE** of his description of his life in Uganda. If I remember rightly, Speke **WITH MTESA.** described a youthful prince, vain and heartless, a wholesale murderer and tyrant, one who delighted in fat women. Doubtless he described what he saw, but it is far from being the state of things now. Mtesa has impressed me as being an intelligent and distinguished prince, who, if aided in time by virtuous philanthropists, will do more for Central Africa than fifty years of gospel teaching, unaided by such authority, can do. I think I see in him the light that shall lighten the darkness of this benighted region; a prince well worthy the most hearty sympathies that Europe can give him. In this man I see the possible fruition of Livingstone's hopes, for with his aid the civilization of Equatorial Africa becomes feasible. I remember the ardor and love which animated Livingstone when he spoke of Sekeletu; had he seen Mtesa, his ardor and love had been for him tenfold, and his pen and tongue would have been employed in calling all good men to assist him.”

Five days later Stanley added to his observations the following: “I see that Mtesa is a powerful emperor, with great influence over his neighbors. I have to-day seen the turbulent Mankorongo, king of Usui, and Mirambo, that terrible phantom who disturbs men's minds in Unyamwezi, through their embassies, kneeling and tendering their tribute to him. I saw over three thousand soldiers of Mtesa nearly half civilized. I saw about a hundred chiefs who might be classed in the same scale as the men of Zanzibar and Oman, clad in as rich robes, and armed in the same fashion, and have witnessed with astonishment such order and law as is obtainable in semi-civilized countries. All this is the result of a poor Muslim's labor; his name is Muley bin Salim. He it was who first began teaching here the doctrines of Islam. False and contemptible as these doctrines are, they are preferable to the ruthless instincts of a savage despot, whom Speke and Grant left wallowing in the blood of women, and I honor the memory of Muley bin Salim—Muslim and slaver-trader though he be—the poor priest who has wrought this happy change. With a strong desire to improve still more the character of Mtesa, I shall begin building on the foundation stones laid by Muley bin Salim. I shall destroy his belief in Islam, and teach the doctrines of Jesus of Nazareth.”

Colonel Long, an officer of the Egyptian army, under General Gordon, had visited Mtesa nearly a year previous to Stanley's arrival, and he describes the emperor as exceedingly fierce and brutal, altogether different from Stanley's conceptions of the great African ruler. Colonel Long traveled on horseback from Gondokoro to Mtesa's capital, and as the horse is an unknown animal in Central Africa, the natives at first supposed that the gallant colonel and his steed were united in some mysterious manner, and concluding from this that he was an extraordinary being they gave him an unusually grand reception. Mtesa ordered thirty human beings to be slain in honor of his visit, the victims being selected from among prisoners captured in war. Colonel Long, being unaccompanied except by a few native servants, did not consider it prudent to interfere with the shocking ceremony, but was compelled to be an unwilling witness of this horrible brutality. He describes the executioners as exceedingly ferocious in dress and appearance, with a wild glare of brutality in their gleaming eyes, and a long black beard proclaiming them of other origin than the Ugandi, undoubtedly Malay. Their dress consists of a pantaloons of red and black flannel, bordered with black; a tunic of red flannel with black stripes, dolman-like across the breast, from which hangs a fringe of peculiar monkey skin; a red cloth turban, around which is wound in tasteful coils a finely plated rope-cord, badge and instrument of their deadly office. These monsters surround Mtesa on all public occasions, and at a nod from their master they rush upon their victims and behead them with their long keen-bladed knives.

This incident is so utterly at variance with the character given to Mtesa by Stanley and other explorers, that it seems hardly worthy of credit; yet Captain Speke, represented the great African ruler as the most bloodthirsty and inhuman of monsters. It is evident that he is a man of varying moods, since each visitor gives him a different character. He has also been improved by intercourse with foreigners, and having but recently embraced the Muslim faith, he was on his best behavior when Stanley saw him.

On the seventh of April Mtesa invited Stanley to witness a sham naval battle, between forty magnificent canoes, each containing thirty soldiers, so that twelve hundred men were engaged. The captain of each canoe was dressed in a white cotton shirt and a cloth head-cover, neatly folded turban-fashion, while the admiral wore over his shirt a crimson jacket, profusely decorated with gold braid, and on his head the red fez of Zanzibar. Each captain, as he passed, seized shield and spear, and went through the performance of defence and attack by water. The admiral won the greatest applause, for he was the Hector of the fleet, and his actions, though not remarkably graceful, were certainly remarkably extravagant. The naval review over, Mtesa commanded one of the captains of the canoes to try and discover a crocodile or a hippopotamus. After fifteen minutes he returned with the report that there was a young crocodile asleep on a rock about two hundred yards away. "Now, Stanley," said Mtesa, "show my women how white men can shoot." Stanley fired a three-ounce ball with such admirable precision that the head of the crocodile was almost severed, though the distance was full fifty yards.

Mtesa conceived a strong affection for Stanley, and repeatedly invited him to his palace, where much of the time was devoted to a discussion of religion, and so earnestly did Stanley relate the story of Christ's life and sufferings that he won the king over from Mohammedanism to the Christian faith.

Upon Stanley's departure for his camp at the southern extremity of Victoria Lake, Mtesa supplied him with thirty canoes and a large force of men under the leadership of

Magassa, but this fellow, who had been promoted, proved to be an obstinate, lazy, and most unreliable officer, whom Stanley had to frequently scold and threaten, and finally to send back to Uganda. The escort of thirty canoes did not accompany him more than fifty miles, when he was left alone again to complete the exploration of the lake.

**ATTACKED BY SAVAGES
OF THE LAKE.**

Nothing occurred to arrest their progress until the twenty-eighth of April, when hunger induced them to steer for an island in quest of food. When fifty yards from shore, a great number of natives rushed down the slopes, uttering fierce ejaculations and war cries. As this was a common circumstance, Stanley thought but little of it, having no doubt that the natives would be speedily reconciled by the payment of a few yards of cloth and strings of beads.



CONFLICT WITH THE ISLANDERS.

As the boat came near the shore, several rushed into the water, and, seizing it, dragged it about twenty yards over the rocky beach, high and dry. Then ensued an indescribable scene; a thousand black devils, armed with bows, spears and knotty war-clubs, swarmed around the boat, with threatening gestures, and yelling like demons. Stanley arose to confront them, with a revolver in each hand, but his guides restrained him, as any resistance would have only invited a massacre. At length an old man, who was a leader of the warlike host, was somewhat placated by a liberal present of beads and cloth, and through his influence the crowd was drawn off a little way for a council. Stanley seized this opportunity to effect his escape; he ordered his men to push the boat again into the water with all possible speed. This scheme succeeded so well that the boat was out in the lake before the natives could reach the water. A fight now took place that was very lively for

a time. Stanley fired his Reilley rifle four times and killed five men. A shotgun loaded with buckshot was brought to bear on them next, by which several more were slain. This served to stop their attempts to reach the boat by wading, but others quickly manned a half-dozen canoes and shot out from shore to continue the battle.

SINKING BOATS BY RIFLE SHOTS. Two of these canoes Stanley sunk with the shell-bullets from his Reilley gun. In the midst of the fight two monster hippopotami were observed advancing with wide-open mouths upon the *Lady Alice*, their anger having no doubt been excited by the booming of firearms. Stanley shot one through the brain when it was hardly more than a yard distant, and so badly wounded the other that it sank and retreated. The result of these two shots seemed to produce a panic among the natives, for they immediately relinquished the attack and the canoes were put back to shore with great energy. It was a narrow escape.

At the end of fifty-seven days the circumnavigation of Victoria N'yanza was completed, the distance being 1000 miles. As the boat came in sight of the camp at Kagehyi, a joyful shout was sent up, and when they landed, Stanley was raised upon the shoulders of several men and carried triumphantly around the camp, while salutes were fired from all the muskets. This joyful return was sadly marred, however, by news of the death of Frederick Barker, who had died twelve days before. Six other members of the expeditions has also fallen victims of dysentery.

CHAPTER XXIII.

LUKONGEH, THE ROYAL SORCERER.

It was Stanley's intention to return to Mtesa's with his expedition in boats, but as Magassa had deserted him with the canoes furnished by Mtesa, he was compelled to look elsewhere. The chief of the village where his camp was located had no boats, but he informed Stanley that he could obtain all the canoes he would need from Lukongeh, king of Ukerewe, whose capital was about fifty miles distant. Accordingly, on May 29, Stanley set out for Lukongeh's palace, where he arrived on the evening of the thirty-first, but found the king indisposed, his Majesty being on a royal drunk, so that an audience could not be had until the third day afterward. Then Stanley showed Lukongeh the presents he had brought for him, the magnificence of which so astonished the king that he hastily motioned for them to be covered up again, lest his subjects should see them and become jealous. He whispered to Stanley that he would come to his hut after dark and see them; and, true to his promise, on the succeeding night, accompanied by five of his principal chiefs, he made his appearance. Stanley presented each of them with a quantity of fine cloths, beads, wire, two rugs, two red blankets, and some copper ornaments. His munificence pleased them amazingly, and in the exuberance of his feelings Lukongeh promised Stanley that he should have all the canoes he wanted; but first he desired to sit by the fountain of wisdom, which he considered the white man to be, and drink great draughts of learning. To this end he came nearly every hour to talk and ask questions, by which Stanley perceived that the king would prove an easy subject for conversion to the Christian faith.

The king was supposed, by his subjects, to be endowed with supernatural power, and Lukongeh made no effort to lessen this belief. His people imagined that he could parch

the land with drought, or flood it with rain at will. Aware of the value of his reputation as rain-maker, he was ambitious to add to it that of "great medicine man," and he besought Stanley earnestly to impart to him some of the grand secrets of Europe—such as how to transform men into lions and leopards, to cause the rains

**SOME WONDERFUL
SUPERSTITIONS.**

to fall or cease, the winds to blow, to give fruitfulness to women and virility to men. Demands of this character are frequently made by African chiefs. When Stanley declared his inability to comply with his requests, he whispered to his chiefs: "He will not give me what I ask, because he is afraid that he will not get the canoes; but you will see when my men return from Uganda he will give me all I ask."

The custom of greeting this king is a most curious one, differing from any observed elsewhere in Africa. His people, after advancing close to him, clap their hands and kneel to him. If the king is pleased, he manifests his satisfaction by blowing and spitting into their hands, with which they affect to anoint their faces and eyes. They seem to believe that the king's saliva is a good thing for the eyes. To each other the Wakerewe kneel, clap hands, and cry, "Wache! wache!" "Wache sug!" "Mohoro!" "Eg sura?" which, translated, signifies, "Morning! morning!" "Good morning!" "A good day!" "Are you well?"



NATURAL BRIDGE ON THE ISLAND.

The stories current in this country about the witchcraft practiced by the people of Ukara Island prove that those islanders have been at pains to spread abroad a good reputation for themselves, and, aware that superstition is a weakness of human nature, have sought to thrive upon it. One of the king's officers, named Khamis, upon oath declared that a crocodile once lived in the house of a Ukara chief, which fed from his hand, and was as docile and obedient as a dog, and as intelligent as a man. Lukongeh had once a pretty woman in his harem, who was coveted by the Ukara chief, but the latter could devise no means to possess her, until he thought of his crocodile. He immediately communicated his desire to the reptile, and bade him lie in wait in the rushes near Msossi until the woman approached the lake to bathe, as was her daily custom, and then to seize and convey her without injury across the eight mile channel to Ukara. The next day, at noon, the woman was in the Ukara chief's house. "Ask Lukongeh, and he will confirm what I have told you," said the honest Khamis. He then added, "Machunda, Lukongeh's father, owned a crocodile that stole an Arab's wife and carried her across the country to the king's house." Kaduma of Kagehyi, according to Khamis, possessed a hippopotamus which came to him each morning, for a long period, to be milked!

**LEGENDS OF THE UKARA
ISLANDERS.**

Families in mourning are distinguished by bands of plantain leaf around their heads, and by a sable pigment of a mixture of pulverized charcoal and butter. The clothing of men and women consists of half-dressed ox-hides, goat-skins, a cincture of banana leaves, or kirtles of a coarsely made grass cloth.

On the seventh of June Stanley obtained twenty-seven canoes from the king, who cautioned him particularly against allowing any of his subjects to know that they were to be used for any purpose except to convey him back to his camp, as they were a very suspicious people and might raise a disturbance. In the canoes, accompanied by 216 of Lukongeh's men, Stanley returned to his camp, and as a preliminary to securing the vessels he had them hauled about two hundred yards on shore, and the paddles stored in a strong house. The natives were not long in discovering that something was wrong; they then raised a big row and threatened blood-shed, which was only averted by a strong show of force backed by numerous guns.

Having got rid of the dissatisfied and quarrelsome Ukereweans by intimidating some and hiring others, Stanley prepared for the lake voyage to Uganda, and on the morning of June 20 embarked his entire force of 150 men, women and children in **A SAIL TO UGANDA.** the canoes and led the flotilla with the *Lady Alice*, which carried fifteen persons and the ammunition. Owing to the very bad condition of the canoes five of them sank the first night out, and several persons came near being drowned; but other canoes were secured without serious delay. Stanley stopped at Bumbireh Island for provisions; this is the place where he so narrowly escaped death on his return from Uganda; but his force was now strong enough for defensive purposes, and he felt secure. On the evening of July 22 several natives appeared in canoes, but seeing they were likely to meet a dangerous foe, should an attack be made, they tried to hold a parley, at which they insolently declared that although they would bring some food, their king was brave and powerful, and was disposed to fight the white man.

The following morning another canoe, containing fifteen men, approached in a bold, defiant manner. Stanley asked their crew if they brought food for sale. They replied, "No; but you will get food in plenty by and by." After taking a searching look at the camp they turned away, giving expression to their contempt by a method which obtains all round the Uvuma, Uganda, Uzongora, and Wakerewe coasts, viz., by throwing up water behind them in the air with their paddles, which is as well understood as the American youth's gesture of placing a thumb to his nose.

Stanley was kept in close quarters for several days, during which time Magassa, who had been sent by Mtesa to search for him, came to the island with 300 men. These recruits were of great service to Stanley, who was almost at the mercy of 3000 natives, for they held a passage which he was compelled to go through to reach Uganda. Mustering his force, which now numbered 300 men, all told, he started again. At the narrow part of the passageway thousands of natives rushed down with spears, bows, and slings, and in defiant tones hailed the white man, As the canoes came near the shore, arrows, stones and spears began to fly, in answer to which Stanley opened a brisk fire with his guns, that fairly mowed the fierce Bumbirehans with swaths of flame, and put them to route so completely that they gave him no further trouble.

The expedition reached Mtesa's on the twenty-third of August, and the king received Stanley in his council chamber with great ceremony and many evidences of friendship. Stanley took this occasion to inform him of the object of his visit, which was to procure guides and an escort to conduct him to Albert Lake. Mtesa replied that he was now

engaged in a war with the rebellious people of Uvuma, who refused to pay their tribute, harassed the coast of Chagwe, and abducted his people, "selling them afterward for a few bunches of bananas," and that it was not customary in Uganda to permit strangers to proceed on their journeys while the Kabaka was engaged in **WAR IN AFRICA.** war; but as soon as peace should be obtained he would send a chief with an army to give him safe conduct by the shortest route to the lake. Being assured that the war would not last long, Stanley resolved to stay and witness it as a novelty, and take advantage of the time to acquire information about the country and its people.

On the twenty-seventh of August Mtesa struck his camp, and began the march to Nakaranga, a point of land lying within seven hundred yards of the island of Ingira, which had been chosen by the Wavuma as their depot and stronghold. He had collected an army



STANLEY'S CONFERENCE WITH MTESA'S PRIME MINISTER.

numbering 150,000 warriors, as it was expected that he would have to fight the rebellious Wasoga as well as the Wavuma. Besides this great army must be reckoned nearly 50,000 women, and about as many children and slaves of both sexes, so that at a rough guess, after looking at all the camps and various tributary nations which, at Mtesa's command, had contributed their quotas, the number of souls in Mtesa's camp must have been about 250,000. Stanley had the pleasure of reviewing this immense army as it was put in motion toward the battle-ground. He describes the officers and troops in the following graphic style:

"The advance-guard had departed too early for me to see them, but, curious to see the main body of this great army pass, I stationed myself at an early hour at the extreme limit of the camp.

"First with his legion, came Mkwenda, who guards the frontier between the Katonga Valley and Willimiesi against the Wanyoro. He is a stout, burly young man, brave as a lion, having much experience of wars, and cunning and adroit in their conduct, accomplished with the spear, and possessing, besides, other excellent fighting qualities. I noticed that the Waganda chiefs, though Muslimized, clung to their war-paint and national charms, for each warrior, as he passed by on the trot, was most villainously bedaubed with ochre and pipe-clay. The force under the command of Mkwenda might be roughly numbered at 30,000 warriors and camp-followers, and though the path was a mere goat-track, the rush of this legion on the half-trot soon crushed out a broad avenue.

"The old general, Kangau, who defends the country between Willimiesi and the Victoria Nile, came next with his following, their banners flying, drums beating, and pipes playing, he and his warriors stripped for action, their bodies and faces daubed with white, black, and ochreous war-paint.

"Next came a rush of about 2000 chosen warriors, all tall men, expert with spear and shield, lithe of body and nimble of foot, shouting as they trotted past their war-cry of 'Kavya, kavya' (the two last syllables of Mtesa's title when young—Mukavya, 'king'), and rattling their spears. Behind them, at a quick march, came the musket-armed body-guard of the Emperor, about two hundred in front, a hundred on either side of the road, enclosing Mtesa and his Katekiro, and two hundred bringing up the rear, with their drums beating, pipes playing, and standards flying, and forming quite an imposing and warlike procession.

"Mtesa marched on foot, bare-headed, and clad in a dress of blue checked cloth, with a black belt of English make round his waist, and—like the Roman emperors, who, when returning in triumph, painted their faces a deep vermilion—his face dyed a bright red. The Katekiro preceded him, and wore a dark-gray cashmere coat. I think this arrangement was made to deceive any assassin who might be lurking in the bushes. If this was the case, the precaution seemed wholly unnecessary, as the march was so quick that nothing but a gun would have been effective, and the Wavuma and Wasoga have no such weapons.

"After Mtesa's body-guard had passed by, chief after chief, legion after legion, followed, each distinguished to the native ear by its different and peculiar drum-beat. They came on at an extraordinary pace, more like warriors hurrying up into action than on the march, and it is their custom, I am told, to move always at a trot when on an enterprise of a warlike nature."

The war-cries of the Waganda begin by shouting the full title of their respective chiefs, and end with the last syllable, thus:

"Mukavya, kavya, kavya!"
 "Ohamburango, angoo, angoo!"
 "Mkwenda, kwenda, kwenda!"
 "Sekibobo, bobo, bobo!"
 "Kitunzi, tunzi, tunzi!"

This perhaps explains why Speke spells *thanks* "n'yanzig," for the Waganda return thanks by first saying, "twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi," and this, when repeated rapidly, sounds like "n'yanzig."

About two hours after the main body began its march, Kasuju, the guardian of the young princes and Mtesa's women, preceded by a thousand spears and followed by a similar

number, trotted by. The women numbered about 5000, but not more than 500 were wives of the king; the others were for the duties of the household.

In Mtesa's immense army there were but few warriors who had ever had any experience on water, most of them coming from the interior. His enemies, on the contrary, inhabited large islands in Victoria Lake, which were natural fortresses, and the warriors were in their element when fighting on water. Their **A GREAT NAVAL BATTLE.** number did not exceed thirty thousand fighting men, but nevertheless, they presented a formidable force against the inexperienced army sent against them. To add to his disadvantage, Mtesa had only three hundred canoes, capable of carrying less than nine hundred men. Many of these boats were seventy feet in length and of corresponding breadth and depth, but they were badly manned. Upon reaching the lake, the boats were filled with soldiers and sent across to make a landing on the island, but they were promptly met by the enemy and in the skirmish Mtesa's men were defeated, and thirteen of his canoes captured. This so discouraged him that, at Stanley's suggestion, he tried to build a causeway of stones and trees across the five hundred yards which separated the island from the main shore, but abandoned it after one hundred and thirty yards had been filled. A long period of inaction now ensued, during which Stanley taught Mtesa the principles of Christianity and had a considerable portion of the New Testament translated for his benefit.

It was not until the fourteenth of September that Mtesa renewed the war, having found agreeable relaxation from offensive preparations in the pleasant teachings of Stanley. In the morning, in accordance with Mtesa's orders, forty Waganda canoes sallied out from the beach in front of his camps to Nakaranga Point, where they formed in line of battle before the causeway, with the sterns of their canoes fronting Ingira Island.

Mtesa was followed by about three-fourths of his army when he proceeded to the point to view the battle, and with him went the great war-drums, to the number of fifty or thereabouts, and fifes about a hundred, and a great number of men shaking gourds filled with pebbles, and the court-criers and mad-charmers against evil were not wanting to create din and noise, and to celebrate victory.

A hut of ample size had been erected on the mountain slope overlooking the strait, into which Mtesa and his favorite women retired. When the Emperor was seated, the "prophets of Baal," or the priests and priestesses of the Muzimu, or witchcraft, came up, more than a hundred in number, and offered the charms to Mtesa one after another in a most tedious, ceremonious way, and to all of them Mtesa condescended to point his imperial forefinger. The chief priest was a most wonderfully dressed madman. On his head he wore a huge crown of feathers, curiously and fantastically arranged; in his ears and around his neck were hung long strings of beads; his ankles, wrists, and arms were adorned with brass rings, from which depended bits of bone, teeth of **TOGGERY OF THE** animals, and other charms; around his loins was girded a leopard skin **CHIEF PRIEST.** with the tail in front, while in his right hand he carried a native harp, on one end of which was a well-carved imitation of a human head. This fantastic old villain was a rain-doctor as well as a priest, and exercised a wonderful influence over the ignorant savages who believed in his supernatural powers. It is customary before commencing a battle to carry all the potent medicines or charms of Uganda (thus propitiating the dreadful Muzimu, or evil spirits) to the monarch, that he may touch or point his forefinger at them. They consist of dead lizards, bits of wood, hide, nails of dead people, claws of animals, and beaks of birds, a hideous miscellany, with mysterious compounds of herbs and leaves carefully enclosed in vessels ornamented with varicolored beads. During the battle these

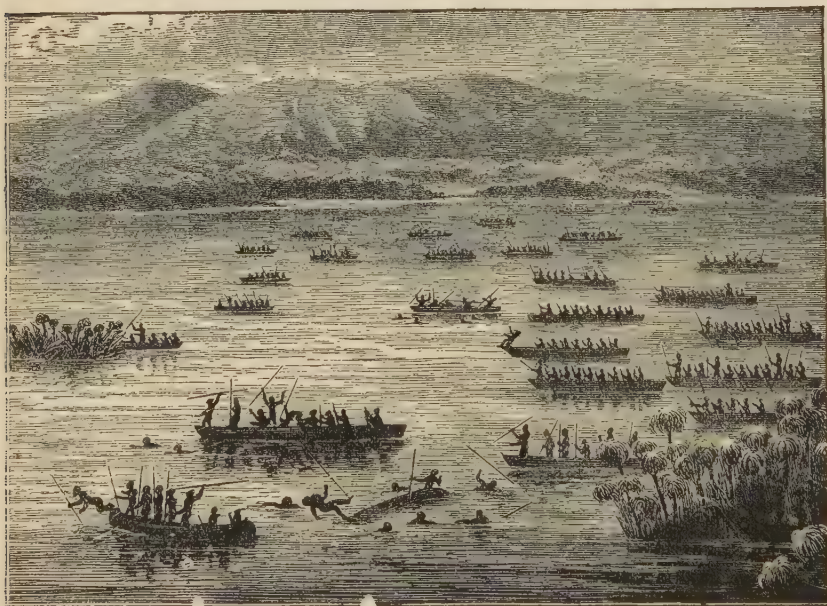
wizards and witches chant their incantations, and exhibit their medicines on high before the foe, while the gourd-and-pebble bearers sound a hideous alarm, enough to cause the nerves of any man except an African to relax at once.

Mtesa and his army were in full war-paint, and the principal men wore splendid leopard-skins over their backs, but the Wasoga bore the palm for splendor of dress and ornate equipments. Ankori, the chief, and his officers were wonderfully gay. Snow-white ostrich plumes decorated their heads, and lion and leopard-skins covered their backs, while their loins were girded with snow-white, long-haired monkey- and goat-skins; even the staves of their lances were ornamented with feathers and rings of white monkey-skin.

The fleet, bearing Mtesa's men, numbering 230 canoes, moved across the water again; hardly a Uvuma (generally written Wavuma) was to be seen and only the prows of a few of their boats were visible among the tall reeds on the other side. As the Waganda (Mtesa's forces) approached near the opposite shore, however, 192 boats shot out from among the

reeds and made an impetuous dash upon the superior force, which drove them rapidly to Nakarang Point, where their retreat was covered by a large body of soldiers with muskets and four small cannons. Thus the second attack terminated, leaving the Wavuma masters of the situation.

Mtesa was dreadfully affected by this second defeat, and calling his men about him, he berated them soundly for their cowardice, reminding them that everything they



NAVAL FIGHT BETWEEN THE WAGANDA AND WAVUMA FORCES.

had was due to his generosity, and swearing that if any of them again showed the least symptom of fear he would roast them over a slow fire.

On the eighteenth the battle was renewed again. The Waganda manned their 230 canoes and advanced resolutely toward the island, but in mid-channel they were met by the Wavuma with 196 canoes. This time the Waganda carried two howitzers with them, each in a large canoe, and these were used with such extraordinary effect that ten canoes were sunk and the Wavuma were driven back in confusion. Instead of following up their advantage by charging the panic-stricken Wavuma, the Waganda returned to the shore to receive the congratulations of Mtesa.

The war was continued in a desultory manner until the fifth of October, when Stanley called upon Mtesa and said: "Send me 2000 men and to-morrow I will begin the construction of such a wonderful war-boat that the mere appearance of it will bring the Wavuma quickly to terms and establish peace in your kingdom."

This proposition gave Mtesa intense delight, for he had begun to entertain grave doubts of being able to subjugate the brave rebels. The 2000 men being furnished, Stanley set them to cutting trees and poles, which were peeled and the bark used for ropes. He lashed three canoes, of seventy feet length and six and a half feet breadth, four feet from each other. Around the edge of these he caused a stockade to be made of strong poles set in upright, and then intertwined these with smaller poles and rope bark. This made the floating stockade seventy feet long and twenty-seven feet wide, and so strong that spears could not penetrate it. This novel craft floated with much grace, and as the men paddled in the spaces between the boats they could not be perceived by the enemy, who thought it must be propelled by some supernatural agency. It was manned by two hundred and fourteen persons, and moved across the channel like a thing of life.

**STANLEY'S
STRATEGIC ASSISTANCE**

As this terrible monster of the deep approached the enemy, Stanley caused a proclamation to be made to them, in deep and awful tones, that if they did not surrender at once their whole island would be blown to pieces. The stratagem had the desired effect; the Wavuma were terror-stricken and surrendered unconditionally. Two hours later they sent a canoe and fifty men with the tribute demanded. Thus ended the war on the thirteenth day of October, 1875.

At a levee held on the last day of October, Stanley reminded Mtesa of his promise to send a suitable escort to conduct him through the Unyoro country to the Muta Nzige Lake. The king not only renewed his promise, but immediately sent for Sambuzi, one of his leading generals, and ordered him to muster a thousand men at once for the service. Preparations were made with such celerity that on November 2 the expedition moved toward the lake which Stanley was so eager to explore. The march was begun with a total force of 2800 souls, 2300 of whom were Mtesa's warriors, but at the first intimation of danger, in a threatened attack from the king of Uzimba and his ally, the king of Unyampaka, the greater portion deserted, including General Sambuzi, who, though an irrepressible boaster, was also an arrant coward.

**DEPARTURE FOR
THE WEST.**

On the twenty-eighth of February Stanley reached Kafurro, where he remained a month, the guest of the kind old king Rumanika, who was a giant in height (six feet six inches), but a man of great benevolence and peacefully disposed nature; in fact, an African gentleman.

One day after leaving Rumanika's country, Stanley shot three rhinoceri, from the bodies of which he obtained ample supplies of meat for the journey through the wilderness of Uhimba. One of these enormous brutes possessed a horn two feet long, with a sharp dagger-like point, and below that a stunted horn, nine inches in length. He appeared to have had a tussle with some wild beast, for a hand's breadth of hide was torn from his rump.

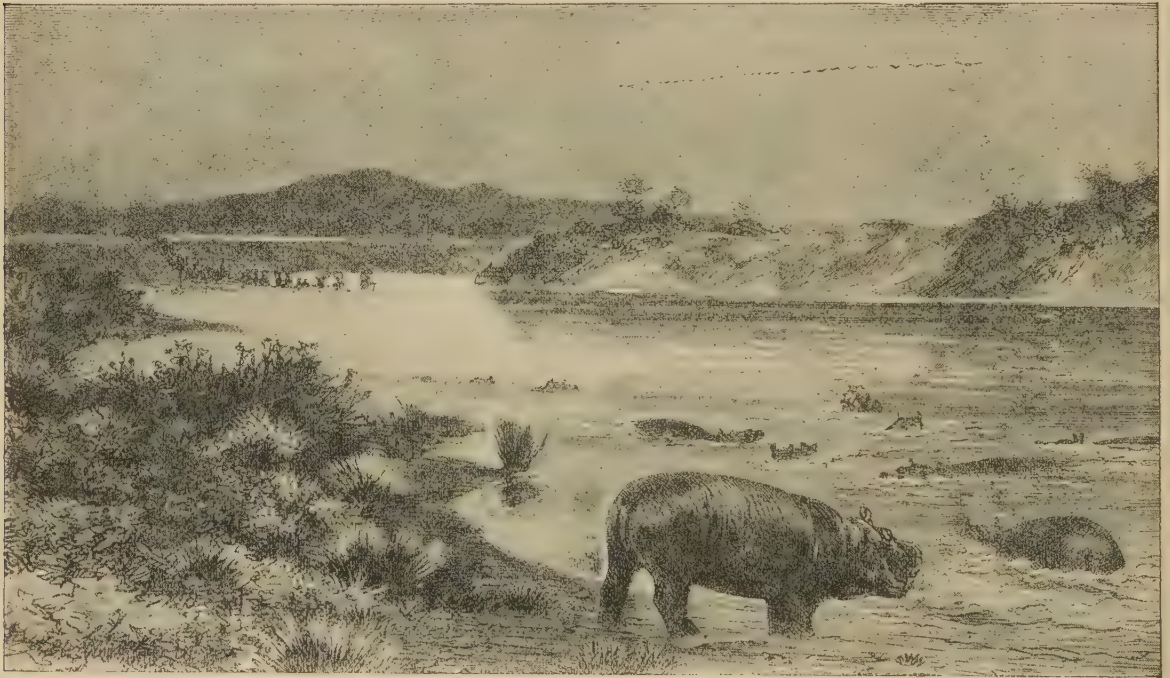
SOME NATIVE STORIES.

The natives of this country informed Stanley, with the utmost gravity, that the elephant maltreats the rhinoceros frequently, because of the jealousy that the former entertains of his fiery cousin. It is said that if the elephant observes the excrement of the rhinoceros unscattered, he waxes furious, and proceeds instantly in search of the criminal, when woe befall him if he is sulky and disposed to battle for the proud privilege of leaving his droppings as they fall! The elephant in that case breaks off a heavy branch of a tree, or uproots a stout sapling like a boat's mast, and belabors the unfortunate beast until he is glad to save himself by hurried flight. For this reason, the natives say, the rhinoceros always turns round and thoroughly scatters what he has dropped.

Should a rhinoceros meet an elephant, he must observe the rule of the road and walk away, for the latter brooks no rivalry; but the former is sometimes headstrong, and the elephant then dispatches him with his tusks by forcing him against a tree and goring him, or by upsetting him, and leisurely crushing him.

Arriving at Serombo, April 20, Stanley learned that the great Napoleonic bandit king, Mirambo, the mighty warrior of Unyamwezi, was in the neighborhood; this report greatly frightened the Waganda soldiers who had been sent with Stanley by Mtesa, and had been obedient enough to remain with him.

MEETING WITH MIRAMBO, THE BANDIT KING. They now felt more disposed than ever to desert, but on the following day their fears were dissipated by a friendly message from Mirambo. His ambassadors, three fine-looking young men, were handsomely dressed in fine red and blue cloth coats, and snowy white shirts, with ample turbans around their heads. They were confidential captains of Mirambo's bodyguard.



THE EXPEDITION CROSSING A STREAM IN THE UNYORO COUNTRY.

"Mirambo sends his salaams to the white man," said the principal of them. "He hopes the white man is friendly to him, and that he does not share the prejudices of the Arabs, and believe Mirambo a bad man. If it is agreeable to the white man, he will send words of peace to Mirambo!"

"Tell Mirambo," replied Stanley, "that I am eager to see him, and would be glad to shake hands with so great a man, and as I have made strong friendship with Mtesa and Rumanika, I shall be rejoiced to do likewise with Mirambo. Tell him I hope he will come and see me as soon as he can." The next day Mirambo, having dispatched Ruga-Ruga (one of his captains) to announce his coming, appeared with about twenty of his principal men. Stanley shook hands with him with fervor, which drew a smile from the chief, as he

**A THOROUGH
AFRICAN GENTLEMAN.**

said, "The white man shakes hands like a strong friend." His person quite captivated Stanley, for he was a thorough African *gentleman* in appearance, very different from any conception of the terrible bandit who had struck his telling blows at native chiefs and Arabs with all the rapidity of a Frederick the Great environed by foes.

The interview was of the most friendly character, and they parted each with a high regard for the other. On the following day Stanley returned the visit, and the ceremony of blood-brotherhood was performed. On leaving Serombo, Mirambo accompanied Stanley a considerable distance outside the village, gave him several presents, and otherwise showed the kind and friendly feeling which he really felt for the white man.

Such excellent progress was made, that on May 2 the expedition approached Ubagwe, which is the capital of the Watuta country. This tribe is composed of genuine Ishmaels, for their hands are against every man, and every man's hand appears to be against them. The Arabs kill Watutas as they do snakes, and it may be also said that the Watutas kill Arabs in the same way. While traveling through the country of this ferocious people there is need for coolness and bravery, for a show of force will not intimidate them. They cultivate their fields with spear in hand, always prepared to fight. Fortunately Stanley was skillful enough to evade their village, and passed through the country undiscovered.

On the twenty-seventh of May the expedition reached Ujiji, having skirted Lake Tanganyika from the northern point where the Rusizi River empties into it. No great changes had occurred, except the ever-changing mud tembes of the Arabs. The square or plaza where Stanley met Livingstone in November, 1871, was now occupied by large dwellings, but the house in which they sojourned had long ago been burnt down, and in its place there remained only a few embers and a hideous void.

CHAPTER XXIV.

INTO LANDS OF THE UNKNOWN.

Stanley was sorely disappointed to find that not a single letter awaited him after an absence of seventeen months. Before leaving Unyanyembe he had requested the governor to forward all his mail to Ujiji, but this he had neglected to do. Eager for the news which he knew the letters must contain, he dispatched ten men to Unyanyembe, but they never returned.

On the eleventh of June he launched his boat, the *Lady Alice*, on the beautiful waters of Tanganyika Lake, with the intention of circumnavigating it to find its outlet. He also secured a large canoe to carry provisions, and started southward on his voyage of exploration.

In the afternoon of the nineteenth they came in sight of a village called Kiwesa, which occupied a position on the apex of a high hill. Landing, and making the ascent with the hope of purchasing milk, they were astounded to find a population of dead men. Some ruthless enemies had attacked the village a few days before and massacred its inhabitants, regardless of sex or age; in the streets were seen the bodies of men, women and children, recently killed, many of whom were horribly mutilated with knife and spear. Not a living thing, save one black cat, was to be seen, the desolation being so complete.

Continuing on, nothing occurred to interrupt their journey until July 27, when, coasting along Burton Gulf, near a village on the west bank of the Kasansagara River, they were warned by the people against landing. These were the Wabembe cannibals.

THE WABEMBE CANNIBALS. On nearing the shore the boats were attacked by the cannibals, many of whom hurled heavy stones, while others showed their defiance by striking the ground with their spears, hopping up and down and beating the water. The interpreter explained that the white man was very much shocked at such rudeness, that his visit was a peaceable one, with no other desire than to buy grain of them, if they would sell. This speech did not mollify their anger, for they shouted back that they were not slaves and had not sown their land to sell the grain to strangers. Stanley attempted to proceed quietly



A WABEMBE BAND.

out of their reach, but several canoes were launched and filled with warriors who were anxious for a fight; they evidently wanted a fresh supply of human meat, and desired particularly to sample a white man. A brisk breeze was blowing, which enabled Stanley to sail away from his pursuers, while his large canoe was manned by such excellent boatmen that it bounded over the water with equal swiftness away from the hungry man-eaters.

At the end of fifty-one days from the time of departure from Ujiji, Stanley had completed the circumnavigation of the lake and returned to his old camp. He found the extreme length of the lake to be 810 miles and the coast line 930; its breadth ranges from ten to forty-five miles, with an average of twenty-eight miles, making its superficial area 9240 miles. Repeated soundings with a plummet line over 1200 feet in length failed to find any bottom one mile from shore.

Stanley proved by his careful explorations of the lake that it had no outlet at the time he was there. The body of water had formerly occupied a much higher altitude, and then had an outlet through the Lukuga River, on the west coast, which flowed into the Livingstone, or Congo River; but an earthquake, or some great internal disturbance, at some remote period, had sunk the bed of the lake until its waters fell below the level of the river, and it was in that condition when first discovered by Burton and Speke. Several large rivers, however, continued to pour their waters into the lake, which had risen to such an extent during the interval of four years between Stanley's first and second expeditions, as to cover large tracts of land that had formerly lain high and dry. The lake had gained a sufficient altitude in

**FACTS ABOUT
LAKE TANGANYIKA.**



SCENE ON A BAYOU OF LAKE TANGANYIKA.

1875 to again extend its waters into the dry bed of the Lukuga River, and Stanley estimated that in a very short time this ancient outlet would once more resume its function, and become a rapidly flowing affluent of the Livingstone, or Congo. These facts are interesting, as settling beyond dispute the sources of the Nile. Stanley circumnavigated the lake, closely examining every stream connected with it, and while he found a number that flowed into it from various directions, there were none flowing out, though, as just stated, if the lake continued to rise, it would soon find an outlet through the Lukuga and the Livingstone, thus pouring its waters into the Atlantic Ocean instead of the Nile and the Mediterranean Sea, as Livingstone and others had supposed. The question, therefore, of the Nile's sources is definitely settled in favor of Speke and Sir Samuel Baker, the discoverers, respectively, of Lakes Victoria and Albert.

On returning to Ujiji Stanley found Frank Pocock, who had been left in charge of the expedition during his absence, pale and haggard from a long spell of fever, five of the Wagwara soldiers had died of small-pox, and six others were down with the dreadful scourge, which was also decimating the population of the town. Stanley was stricken with fever the day after his arrival, but was again on his feet at the end of five days. He now decided to cross the lake, and push westward as quickly as possible, and so announced to his men. This created a panic among them, for they fully believed that if they went among the cannibals they would be roasted and eaten. Thirty-eight had already deserted during his absence, and many of the others now threatened to do likewise. As a precaution against further desertions, he had those whom he suspected of being untrustworthy arrested and put into a large hut, where they were guarded until he was ready to depart.

Everything at last being ready, they crossed the lake on the twenty-fifth of August, and after a necessary halt of a few days to rest and organize, the expedition pushed westward through the wilderness toward the Manyuema country, for the purpose of exploring the great river flowing to the northwest through that region, and from which Livingstone had been driven back by the war between the Arabs and natives previous to his meeting with Stanley. The Manyuema nation is composed of a number of tribes, varying greatly in disposition and general appearance. Some are handsome and intelligent, others are filthy, ugly and degraded; but, with a few exceptions, all are mild and gentle in disposition, although universally addicted to cannibalism. Stanley's acquaintance with them commenced at the village of Lambo. "In these people," says he, "we first saw the mild, amiable, unsophisticated innocence of this part of Central Africa, and their behavior was exactly the reverse of the wild, ferocious, cannibalistic races the Arabs had described to us."

In passing through the country they came to a village which consisted of a number of low, conical grass huts, ranged round a circular common, in the centre of which were three or four fig-trees, kept for the double purpose of supplying shade to the community and bark-cloth to the chief. The doorways to the huts were very low, scarcely thirty inches high. On presenting himself in the common, Stanley attracted out of doors the owners and ordinary inhabitants of each hut, until he found himself the centre of quite a promiscuous population of naked men, women, children, and infants. Though he had appeared for the purpose of studying these people, and making a treaty of friendship with the chief, the villagers seemed to think he had come merely to make a free exhibition of himself as some natural monstrosity.

Hundreds of people of the most degraded and unpresentable type crowded around the traveler and gazed with open mouths at his wonderful white skin. Turning to an aged savage, whose amazed countenance was pushed close to his face, Stanley said, "My brother, sit you down on this mat, and let us be friendly and sociable," at the same time thrusting into his wide-open hand a number of beads, the currency of that country. As Stanley looked at his huge, rough hand, he imagined that he could carve a more comely one out of rhinoceros hide. The thick black skin of his face resembled an extravagant mask, and his nose was so flat that Stanley asked him the reason for such a feature. "Ah," said he, with a sly laugh, "it is the fault of my mother, who, when I was young, bound me too tight to her back." Descending from the face, which crude, large-featured, rough-hewn as it was, bore witness to the possession of much sly humor and a kindly disposition, Stanley's eyes fastened on his naked body. Through the ochreous daubs could be detected strange freaks

**INTO THE COUNTRY OF
THE CANNIBALS.**

**THE WHITE MAN A
CURIOSITY.**

of pricking, circles and squares and crosses, while he traced with wonder the many hard lines and puckers created by age, weather, ill-usage, and rude keeping. His feet were monstrous abortions, with soles as hard as hoofs, and his legs, as high up as his knees, were plastered with successive strata of dirt; his loin-cover, or the queer "girding-tackle," need not be described. It was absolutely appalling to good taste, and the most ragged British beggar or Neapolitan lazzarone is sumptuously clothed in comparison to this African "king." The subjects of this mighty monarch wore around their waists tags of monkey-skin, bits of gorilla bone, goat horns, and shells, while around their necks were strung skins of vipers, and other hideous contrivances. As they gazed and crowded and jostled one another, they exclaimed, "Wa-a-a-antu!" (men). "Eha-a! and these are men!" Presently a dead silence prevailed for an instant, during which the females of this strange group



A MANYRUMA VILLAGE.

dropped their lower jaws far down, and then cried out again, "Wa-a-a-a-antu!" (men). Their jaws dropped so low that when, in a posture of reflection, they put their hands up to their chins, it really looked as if they had done so to lift the jaws up to their proper place and to sustain them there. And in that position they pondered upon the fact that there were men "white all over" in this queer world!

The uncontrollable, irrepressible wonder of the juvenile part of the population seemed to find its natural expression in hopping on one leg, thrusting their right thumbs into their mouths to repress the rising scream, and slapping the hinder side of the thighs to express or give emphasis to what was speechless. While thus engaged, one of these restless youths stumbled across a long heavy pole which was leaning insecurely against one of the trees.

The pole fell, striking one of Stanley's men severely on the head. All at once there went up from the women a genuine and unaffected cry of pity, while their faces expressed a lively sense of tender sympathy with the wounded man, showing through the disguise of filth, nakedness, and ochre, the human heart beating for another's suffering, causing Stanley to recognize and hail them, though poor and degraded, as indeed sisters. The women tenderly cared for the man's wounds, and before the expedition departed from the village the chief and his people loaded the men with bounties of bananas, chickens, Indian corn, and malafu (palm-wine), and escorted them respectfully far beyond the precincts of the village and their fields, parting at last with the assurance that, should they ever happen to return by their country, they would endeavor to make the second visit much more agreeable than the first had been.

The Manyuema have several very noteworthy peculiarities. Their weapons are a short sword scabbarded with wood, to which is hung small brass and iron bells; a light, beautifully balanced spear—probably, next to the spear of Uganda, the most perfect in the world. Their shields are veritable wooden doors. Their dress consists of a narrow apron of antelope skin or finely made grass cloth. They wear knobs, cones, and patches of mud attached to their beards, back hair, and behind the ears. The old chief had rolled his beard in a ball of dark mud; his children wore their hair in braids with mud fringes. His drummer had a great crescent-shaped patch of mud at the back of the head. At another village, the natives had horns and cones of mud on the tops of their heads. Others, more ambitious, covered the entire head with a crown of mud.

The women, blessed with an abundance of hair, manufacture it with a stiffening of light cane into a bonnet-shaped head-dress, allowing the back hair to flow down to the waist in masses of ringlets. They seem to do all the work of life, for at all hours they may be seen, with their large wicker baskets behind them, setting out for the rivers or creeks to catch fish, or returning with their fuel baskets strapped on across their foreheads.

Some tribes of the Manyuema are addicted to cannibalism in its most horrid features. They carry on predatory wars against their neighbors, and the dead bodies of the slain are always eaten. In the mad frenzy of their cannibalistic propensities they impale tender infants on their horrid spears, and tear the bodies of the slain limb from limb. Even the women take a prominent part in these terrible orgies.

Near the middle of October Stanley arrived at Mkwanga, which is only eight miles from the confluence of the Luama and the Lualaba rivers, the latter being the one that Stanley intended to explore. While encamped here two Wangwana arrived with the news that a party of Arabs were encamped at a village called Mwana Mamba, eighteen miles distant, and forthwith Stanley decided to join them, which he did on the following day, meeting with a very cordial welcome. The leader of the Arabs, Tipo-Tib, had escorted Lieutenant Cameron across to Lualaba River and as far as Utotera, south latitude 5°, and east longitude 25° 54'. He was dressed in clothes of spotless white, his waist was encircled by a rich dowe, his dagger was splendid with silver filigree, and his head was adorned by a beautiful new fez, giving him the air of a sultan or rich Arab gentleman.

The reader will remember Livingstone's painful disappointment at being unable to procure canoes from the Manyuema in which to explore the Lualaba River, even after he had saved many of them from massacre at the hands of the bloodthirsty Arabs. Stanley anticipated similar trouble, and also feared that he would not be able to pass through their country

with his small force. He therefore made the Arab leader a liberal offer to accompany him a certain distance toward the north with his entire company.

Tipo-Tib listened respectfully to Stanley's proposition, and then called in one of his officers who had been to the far north along the river, requesting him to impart such information as he possessed in regard to the people inhabiting the country. This man told a marvelous tale, almost rivaling the wonderful stories of the Arabian Nights; much of which Stanley subsequently learned by his own experience was true.

**TIPO-TIB'S STORY
OF LILLIPUT.**

"The great river," said he, "goes always toward the north, until it empties into the sea. We first reached Uregga, a forest land, where there is nothing but woods, and woods, and woods, for days and weeks and months. There was no end to the woods. In a month



DESCENDING THE LIVINGSTONE RIVER.

we reached Usongora Meno, and here we fought day after day. They are fearful fellows and desperate. We lost many men, and all who were slain were eaten. But we were brave, and pushed on. When we came to Kima-Kima we heard of the land of the little men, where a tusk of ivory could be purchased for a single cowrie (shell). Nothing now could hold us back. We crossed the Lumami, and came to the land of the Wakuma. The Wakuma are big men themselves, but among them we saw some of the dwarfs, the queerest creatures alive, just a yard high, with long beards and large heads. The dwarfs seem to be plucky little devils, and asked us many questions about where we were going and what we wanted. They told us that in their country there was so much ivory we had not men enough to carry it; 'but what do you want with it, do you eat it?' said they. 'No, we make charms of it, and will give you beads to show us the way.' 'Good, come along.'

"We followed the little devils six days, when we came to their country, and they stopped and said we could go no further until they had seen their king. Then they left us, and after three days they came back and took us to their village, and gave us a house to live in. Then the dwarfs came from all parts. Oh! it is a big country! and everybody

brought ivory, until we had about four hundred tusks, big and little, as much as we could carry. We bought it with copper, beads, and cowries. No cloths, for the dwarfs were all naked, king and all. We did not starve in the dwarf land the first ten days. Bananas as long as my arm, and plantains as long as the dwarfs were tall. One plantain was sufficient for a man for one day.

"When we had sufficient ivory and wanted to go, the little king said: 'No; this is my country, and you shall not go until I say. You must buy all I have got; I want more cowries;' and he ground his teeth and looked just like a wild monkey. We laughed at him, for he was very funny, but he would not let us go. Presently we heard a woman scream, and rushing out of our house, we saw a woman running with a dwarf's arrow in her bosom. Some of our men shouted, 'The dwarfs are coming from all the villages in great numbers; it is war—prepare!' We had scarcely got our guns before the little wretches were upon us, shooting their arrows in clouds. They screamed and yelled like monkeys. Their arrows were



A RAID ON TREE-DWELLING DWARFS.

poisoned, and many of our men who were hit died. Our captain brandished his two-handed sword, and cleaved them as you would cleave a banana. The arrows passed through his shirt in many places. We had many good fellows, and they fought well; but it was of no use. The dwarfs were firing from the tops of the trees; they crept through the tall grass close to us, and shot their arrows in our faces. Then some hundred of us cut down

banana trees, tore doors out and houses down, and formed a boma at each end of the street, and then we were a little better off, for it was not such rapid, random shooting; we fired more deliberately, and after several hours drove them off.

"But they soon came back and fought us all that night, so that we could get no water, until our captain—oh! he was a brave man, he was a lion!—held up a shield before him, and looking around, he just ran straight where the crowd was thickest; and he seized two of the dwarfs, and we who followed him caught several more, for they would not run away until they saw what our design was, and then they left the water clear. We filled our pots and carried the little Shaitans (devils) into the boma; and there we found we had caught the king. We wanted to kill him, but our captain said no, kill the others and toss their heads over the wall; but the king was not touched.

"Then the dwarfs wanted to make peace, but they were on us again in the middle of the night, and their arrows sounded 'twit,' 'twit,' in all directions. At last we ran away, throwing down everything but our guns and swords. But many of our men were so weak by hunger and thirst that they burst their hearts running, and died. Others lying down to rest found the little devils close to them when too late, and were killed. Out of our great number of people only thirty returned alive, and I am one of them."

Stanley listened with rapt attention to the recital of this wonderful story, and at its conclusion he said: "Ah! good. Did you see anything else very wonderful on your journey?"

"Oh, yes! There are monstrous large boa-constrictors in the forest of Uregga, suspended by their tails to the branches, waiting for the passer-by or for a stray antelope. The ants in the forest are not to be despised. You cannot travel without your body being covered with them, when they sting you like wasps. **ENORMOUS SNAKES.** The leopards are so numerous that you cannot go very far without seeing one. Almost every native wears a leopard-skin cap. The sokos (gorillas) are in the woods, and woe befall the man or woman met alone by them; for they run up to you and seize your hands, and bite the fingers off one by one, and as fast as they bite one off they spit it out. The Wasongora Meno and Waregga are cannibals, and unless the force is very strong, they never let strangers pass. It is nothing but constant fighting. Only two years ago a party armed with three hundred guns started north of Usongora Meno; they only brought sixty guns back, and no ivory. If one tries to go by the river, there are falls after falls, which carry the people over and drown them."

These were sorry stories for men to listen to who were then contemplating a trip that would lead them directly through all these dreadful obstacles. Stanley knew that if he depended alone on his own force, his expedition must fail, and disaster would no doubt follow failure. After a lengthy interview with Tipo-Tib, a contract was drawn up between them by which Stanley agreed to pay the Arab \$5000 for an escort of 140 guns and 70 spearmen a distance of sixty marches of four hours each, which would be equivalent to nearly five hundred miles. This force added to his own would furnish him with such protection as was needed.

The expedition now marched to Nyangwe, where another section of the Arab party was encamped; Tipo-Tib's party consisted of seven hundred persons when united. Nyangwe is a village of three hundred huts and nearly two thousand people; it is a great market for slaves, and is the westernmost Arab trading station on the road from the east. As the village is situated on the Lualaba River, Stanley here launched his boat, the *Lady Alice*, to make soundings. He found the river studded with large islands, and its mean

depth, taken in thirty-six soundings, was 18 feet 9 inches, while its breadth was from four to five thousand yards, making it one of the greatest rivers of the earth.

On the morning of November 5, 1876, the combined expedition broke camp and marched out of Nyangwe. Stanley says: "The object of this desperate journey is to flash

**AMONG THE CANNIBALS
OF UREGGA.**

a torch of light across the western half of the Dark Continent. For from Nyangwe east, along the fourth parallel of south latitude, are some eight hundred and thirty geographical miles, discovered, explored, and surveyed, but westward to the Atlantic Ocean, along the same latitude, are

nine hundred and fifty-six miles, over nine hundred geographical miles of which are absolutely unknown. Instead, however, of striking directly west, we are about to travel north on the eastern side of the river, to prevent it bending easterly to Muta Nzige, or Nilewards, unknown to us, and to ascertain, if the river really runs westward, what affluents flow to it from the east; and to deduce from their size and volume some idea of the extent of country which they drain, and the locality of their sources."



HEWING A ROAD ON THE WAY TO UREGGA.

After five days' marching through dense, almost impenetrable forests, where they were compelled to hew their way with axes step by step, they came to the country of Uregga, and halted to rest. The inhabitants of this country live as secluded in their dark forests as the chimpanzees; but they provide themselves with comforts unknown to other African tribes. Their houses, in the villages, are all connected together in one block, from fifty to three hundred yards in length, and are covered with a kind of pitch. They furnish their homes with many luxuries known to civilization, such as cane settees, beautifully covered

stools, sociable benches, exquisitely carved spoons, etc. The women of Uregga wear only aprons, four inches square, of bark or grass cloth, fastened by cords of palm fibre. The men wear skins of civet, or monkey, in front and rear, the tails downward. It may have been from a hasty glance of a rapidly disappearing form of one of these people in the wild woods that native travelers in the lake regions felt persuaded that they had seen "men with tails."

At Wane-Kirumbu, the Waregga were engaged chiefly in iron-working, in which they seem to be very expert, making hammers, axes, hatchets, spears, knives, swords, wire, iron-balls with spikes, leglets, armlets, and iron beads. At every village there was a furnace in full blast, charcoal being the fuel used.

Kampunzee is a village about five hundred yards in length, formed of one street thirty feet wide, flanked by a row of gable roofed but low houses. Stanley was astonished to see in this village two rows of what appeared to be human skulls, placed about ten feet apart, and running the entire length of the street. He counted 186 of them. Addressing the chief of the village, he said:

"My friend, what are those things with which you adorn the streets of your village?"

He replied, "Nyama" (meat).

DESCRIPTION OF A "Nyama! Nyama of what?"

STRANGE ANIMAL. "Nyama of the forest."

"Of the forest! What kind of a thing is this Nyama of the forest?"

"It is about the size of this boy," pointing to Mabruki, who was four feet ten inches in height. "He walks like a man, and goes about with a stick, with which he beats the trees in the forest, and makes hideous noises. The Nyama eat our bananas, and we hunt them, kill them, and eat them."

The animal thus described by the chief is the soko, or gorilla; but with his utmost efforts Stanley was unable to secure one, or even to see any indications of them in the woods. He therefore concluded that the horrible relics along the street were human skulls, and procuring several of them he took them with him and had them examined by the distinguished scientist, Professor Huxley, after his return to England. He confirmed Stanley's suspicions, by pronouncing them skulls of human beings, and stated that more than half of those examined by him bore marks of a hatchet which had been driven into the head while the victims were alive.

On the nineteenth, a march of five miles through the forest west from Kampunzu brought the expedition to the Lualaba, in south latitude $3^{\circ} 35'$, just forty-one geographical miles north of the Arab depot Myangwe. An afternoon observation for longitude showed east longitude $25^{\circ} 49'$. The name Lualaba terminates here. Thenceforth Stanley speaks of it as the Livingstone River, which name he gave it.

Arrangements were made to cross the river by launching the *Lady Alice* and calling upon the people of a small village on the opposite shore for assistance with their canoes. After a long talk and the giving of many presents, canoes were furnished to cross the caravan, but scarcely had they landed when an attack was made upon them by a thousand or more natives, who, however, were soon driven off. They were now in the Ukusee country among savages whose lives were apparently devoted to slaughter, and whose choice meat was human flesh. Each village street was ornamented with two rows of bleached trophies of eaten humanity, forming a ghastly imitation of shell decorations along the paths of our parks and gardens.

A sufficient number of canoes having been secured, Stanley embarked his expedition, with the intention of completing his explorations by following the course of the river, no

matter where it might lead him. Besides, they were safer on the river than on the land, as they could keep beyond the range of the arrows of the venomous cannibals through whose country they were passing, and avoid ambushes and sudden surprises. As they floated down with the current, from the villages below rang out the strange war-cries, "Ooh-hu-hu! Ooh-hu-hu!" and the savages decamped into the bush, leaving everything they possessed *in situ*. This, however, was only to lure the travelers to their destruction, but they were not to be thus tempted, and quietly floated down past them.

Stanley relates the remarkable fact that among many of the tribes in this part of



PORTAGE OF THE LADY ALICE.

Africa the rite of circumcision is practiced in the same manner that it was among the ancient Israelites, and apparently as a similar religious rite; but he could not ascertain how the ceremony originated. Those who performed it only knew that it had always been so. The circumcised tribes, like the Israelites, were "a peculiar people," having but little intercourse with their neighbors; in fact, a perpetual war seemed to be raging between them and the other tribes.

On November 26 they reached the village of Nakaupemba, which presented the usual horrible picture of streets lined with human skulls, the dread relics of many a feast; throughout this barbaric country human flesh seemed to be a common dish at nearly every man's table.

The numerous rapids encountered in this part of the river added greatly to the dangers and trials of the voyage. On approaching the rapids they were compelled to land and carry the boats around them, frequently for a distance of several miles, over rocky hills and

through thick brush, in which excessive and exhausting labor the men suffered greatly. Small-pox and dysentery were also thinning their ranks, and the outlook for the future was anything but promising.

About noon one day, while they were on shore repairing a canoe, a curious little savage was found concealed in the bushes, and was captured and brought to camp. He was armed with a small bow and a quiver of miniature arrows, the points of the latter being carefully rolled in leaves. This led to a suspicion that **CAPTURE OF A DWARF.** they were poisoned, and in order to verify his belief, Stanley uncovered one of the points, and grasping the little savage's arm pretended to be about to inoculate him with the dark substance that stained the point of the weapon, and which had an odor resembling that of cantharides. His loud screams, visible terror, and cries of "Mabi! mabi!" (bad! bad!) with a persuasive eloquence of gesture, left no doubt as to the character of the dark substance.

This strange creature stood, when measured, four feet six-and-a-half inches in height, and proved to be fully a head taller than the average of his people. His head was large, his face decked with a scraggy fringe of whiskers, and his complexion was a light chocolate. He was exceedingly bow-legged and thin-shanked, and was altogether a hideous looking fiend and ugly little savage brute, for in point of intelligence he was very little above the beasts of the forest. Stanley retained him as a prisoner and guide for several days, but finally dismissed him and sent him home with a handful of beads and shells and some bead necklaces. He had expected to be eaten, according to the custom of his country, and though his captors shook hands with him at parting, and smiled, and patted him on the shoulder, he could not comprehend why he had not furnished a feast for them, and evidently did not feel safe until he had plunged out of sight into his native woods.

On the twenty-sixth of December, Tipo-Tib and his Arabs bade farewell to Stanley, and started on their return. They had not fully kept their contract, but their excessive fear of the cannibals and the dwarfs was having a bad effect on Stanley's men, and he decided to let them go; so, after a grand banquet in the **INTO THE UNKNOWN.** wilderness, they shook hands and parted. At this time Stanley was not sure whether the stream that he was following would empty into the Niger or the Congo, as everything in advance of him was unknown and doubtful; but he determined to proceed and let the future take care of itself. His force now consisted of one hundred and forty-nine persons in twenty-three boats, and on the departure of the Arabs, they embarked and commenced their long and dangerous drift toward the unknown.

Standing up in his boat, Stanley surveyed his people. How few they appeared to dare the region of fable and darkness! They were nearly all sobbing. They were leaning forward, bowed, as it seemed, with grief and heavy hearts. He spoke to them words of encouragement; told them of their past brave deeds, and exhorted them to be men. But it was with wan smiles that they responded to his words, and feebly they paddled down the dark-brown current. Poor fellows! Many of them were indeed going into the land of the Unknown.

The river soon assumed a breadth of 1800 yards, and the banks were thickly populated. Directly the great war-drums, hollowed out of huge trees, thundered the signal along the shores, and they could see the savage cannibals rushing to arms and leaping and gesticulating in their frenzied war dances. Presently a canoe **CANNIBALS AGAIN.** dashed out from the shore, filled with warriors armed with broad black wooden shields and long spears. As they approached, Stanley's interpreter cried out,

"Sennenneh!" (peace!), but they paid no attention to the peaceful overture. Dashing up near Stanley's boat, they ordered him, in peremptory tones, to go back with them.

"It is the river that takes us down," said he; "the river will not stop and go back."

"If you don't go back we will fight you," they exclaimed.

"No; let us be friends."

"We don't want you for our friends; we will eat you."

But as they talked and gazed at the wonderful white man, the current carried them far beyond their village, seeing which, they nervously turned and paddled back.

At the next village, as soon as the boats approached within fifty yards of the bank, the savages threw their spears, and cried out, "Meat! meat! Ah! ha! We shall have plenty of meat! Bo-bo-bo-bo, Bo-bo-bo-bo-o-o!"



RUNNING A GAUNTLET OF CANNIBALS.

Day after day they were compelled to fight as they floated down the stream, the savages seeming bent on securing their bodies for a feast. On the first of January, as they were passing a village, the war canoes came out as usual to attack them. Stanley instructed his interpreter to be mild in voice and pacific in gesture, hoping to conquer these savages with kindness; but they brandished their spears and cried out, "We shall eat Wajiwa meat to-day. Oho, we shall eat Wajiwa meat!" and then an old chief gave some word of command, and at once 100 paddles beat the water into foam, and the canoes darted onward. But the contest was short; one well-directed volley from the guns so frightened those who were not killed that they sprang into the water and swam ashore. They did not eat Wajiwa meat that day.

On arriving at a village called Kankore, Stanley was agreeably surprised to find the people mild and friendly. They came to his boats unarmed, as an evidence of their peaceful

disposition, and supplied his men with food in abundance. These people were not cannibals, but, on the contrary, they regarded the horrible man-eating customs of their neighbors with the utmost loathing, and refused to have any intercourse with them. But, strangely enough, they were sandwiched in between tribes of the most disgusting cannibalistic tendencies, and soon after leaving their village Stanley's party was again attacked.

At one place the savages paraded up and down the banks holding up to the view of Stanley and his people bright spear-blades, six feet long and six inches broad, with edges as sharp as razors. Realizing the danger of being attacked with such weapons, Stanley had his camps fortified at night, while passing through that country, **HUGE SPEARS.** by surrounding them with a circle of felled trees and interlaced branches. But in spite of these precautions, one of his best men was killed in a night attack by one of these spears striking him in the abdomen and cutting his body almost in two.

Evidences of cannibalism were on every hand in the human skulls that grinned on many poles, and the bones that were so freely scattered near the village garbage-heaps and the river banks, where one might suppose hungry canoemen to have enjoyed a cold collation of ancient matron's arm; a positive and downright evidence of this hideous practice was discovered in a thin forearm of a person that was picked up near a fire, with certain scorched ribs which might have been tossed into the fire after being gnawed. The explorers were constantly taunted with threats that they would furnish "meat" for the savages, that word having but a slight dialectic difference in many of their languages.

Upon coming to anchor one day about fifty yards from shore, two old, queer-looking men came down the steep bank from a neighboring village, and rattled pebbles, enclosed in basket-work, toward them, hoping to charm the strangers away. But the interpreter soon quieted the fears of the old men, and Stanley succeeded in obtaining some very important information from them in regard to the direction and character of the river below.

While passing through the cannibal country it was almost impossible to procure food, and the expedition was reduced nearly to the point of starvation. Therefore, on arriving at a village called Rubunga, Stanley determined to make a desperate effort to obtain provisions, and having anchored the boats some distance out in the river, he began to make signs to the crowd of savages on the shore, indicating **NATIVES OF RUBUNGA.** that he was hungry and wanted something to eat. At length an old chief came down the high bank to the lower landing near some rocks. Other elders of the people, in head-dresses of leopard and civet skin, joined him soon, and then all sat down. The old chief nodded his head. In an instant the anchor of the *Lady Alice* was raised, and with two strokes of the oars Stanley was on shore, and seizing the skinny hand of the old chief pressed it for joy. These people were friendly and hospitable, and gladly received beads in exchange for such food as fresh and dried fish, snails, oysters, mussels, dried dog-meat, live dogs and goats, bananas, plantains, cassava tubers, flour, and bread of the consistence of sailor's "duff," and other articles. The knives of these people were singular specimens of the African smith's art, being of a waving sickle-shaped pattern, while the principal men carried brass-handled weapons, eighteen inches long, double-edged, and rather wide-pointed, with two blood-channels along the centre of the broad blade, while near the hilt the blade-shaft was pierced by two quarter-circular holes, and the top of the shaft was ornamented with the fur of the otter.

To add to the atrocious bad taste of these aborigines, their necklaces consisted of human, gorilla, and crocodile teeth, in such quantity in many cases that little or nothing could be seen of the neck. A few possessed polished boars' tusks, with the points made to

meet from each side of the neck, imparting to the wearers a frightfully hideous appearance. The most curious objects discovered at Rubunga were four ancient Portuguese muskets, at the sight of which the people of the expedition raised a glad shout. These appeared to them certain signs that they had not lost the road, that the great river did really reach the sea, and that their master was not deluding them, when he told them that some day they would see the ocean. But after leaving this village, in nearly all their subsequent

A FIGHT ON THE RIVER. combats with the savages, muskets were used against them, often with deadly effect. On the fourteenth of February they were attacked by a fleet of canoes, filled with desperate savages, many of whom were armed with sixty guns. They approached at a furious pace shouting their war-cry of "Yaha-ha-ha! Ya Bangia!" "Ya Bangial! Yaha-ha-ha!" and a desperate fight took place. One young chief in particular fought with extraordinary bravery. He wore a head-dress of white goat-skin, and a short mantle of the same material, and wreaths of thick brass wire on his neck, arms, and legs, sufficient, indeed, to have protected those parts from slugs, and proving him to be a man of consequence. He was finally wounded with a Snider bullet, in the thigh, when he coolly took a piece of cloth and deliberately bandaged it, and then calmly retreated toward shore. Stanley was so impressed by the bravery of this young chief, that he ordered his men not to fire on him again, and soon afterward the savages followed their leader and retired to the shore.

The January 15 they made a camp on shore without molestation, but great was their astonishment in the morning to find that during the night a network of rope had been set around the camp, in which the natives expected to ensnare the entire expedition, like so many wild animals. In a short fight which now took place eight of the cannibals were captured, who, upon being questioned, admitted that they had set their nets for man-meat. They also declared that their village was an hour's journey from the camp, that they ate old men and old women, as well as every stranger captured in the woods. The three donkeys which Stanley had with him struck the captives with great awe and terror, and when they were led up to the animals they cried out in such pitiable accents and begged so hard for mercy that they elicited Stanley's sympathy; but they were taken along to pilot the expedition to the next falls, which were soon reached, and being the most picturesque as well as the largest in the river, were named, in honor of the explorer, Stanley Falls.

At Yalaba they were rejoiced to find a humane old king, named Chumbiri, who treated Stanley with such large hospitality that he was induced to camp there for several days.

The king came to visit him in great state, having a large escort of musketeers who were dressed in bright-colored cloths. The old man was a **KING CHUMBIRI.** character, even for Africa. He wore a singular looking tall hat, fashioned like those worn by Armenian priests. It was constructed out of close-plaited hyphene-palm fibre, sufficiently durable to outlast his life, though he might live a century. From his left shoulder across his chest, was suspended a sword of the bill-hook pattern. Above his shoulder stood upright the bristles of an elephant's tail. His hand was armed with a buffalo's tail, made into a fly-flapper, to whisk mosquitoes and gnats off the royal face. To his wrist were attached the odds and ends which the laws of superstition had enjoined upon him, such as charm-guards, charm-powders in bits of red and black flannel, and a collection of wooden amulets, besides a snuff-gourd and a parcel of tobacco-leaves. He was constantly filling his nose with snuff and then sneezing it out again. He also carried a pipe six feet long, decorated with brass tacks. From this pipe he would draw long whiffs until his cheeks were distended, and then fumigate his charms with the smoke. He had forty



A BOY IN THE COILS OF A PYTHON.

wives, each of whom was permanently collared with thick brass rings, which must have weighed as much as twenty pounds.

Soon after going into camp after the first day's march from Balobo, everybody was thrown into a state of nervous excitement by the terrible shrieks of a boy, and upon rushing to the spot from whence the alarm came Stanley was horrified to see a huge python uncoil itself from the body of one of the black boys of the expedition and glide off quickly into the jungle. In the darkness the boy had mistaken the snake for one of his companions, as it reared its horrid head to the height of a man, and he approached so near that it seized him in its dreadful folds. His screams and the rush of men to his assistance so alarmed the reptile that it released its hold and fled. In half an hour the python, or another one, was



KALULU CARRIED OVER THE FALLS.

discovered, in a different part of the camp, about to embrace a woman in its folds; but this time, after tremendous excitement, the monster was dispatched. It measured thirteen feet six inches in length, and fifteen inches round the thickest part of the body.

On the thirteenth of March the expedition reached the first cataract of the Livingstone Falls, and more than a month was consumed in passing the long series of cataracts that break the flow of the river here. The passage of this part of the river

DEATH OF KALULU. was saddened by the loss of many good men. On the twenty-eighth of March one of the large canoes, called the *Crocodile*, containing the boy Kalulu and five other favorite members of the expedition, was swept over a cataract and all were drowned. Stanley felt this loss keenly, for he loved Kalulu almost like a younger brother. The boy had been presented to him by the Arabs of Unyanyembe on the occasion of his first visit there in search of Livingstone. He was then a mere child, but very bright

and quick for one of his race and age. Stanley took him to the United States, where he attended school eighteen months, and rapidly developed into an intelligent and quick-witted youth. When Stanley was preparing for his second expedition Kalulu begged to be allowed to accompany him, and he cheerfully granted his request. His untimely death made so deep an impression upon Stanley that he named the fatal cataract Kalulu Falls in honor of his memory.

After leaving Kalulu Falls the expedition experienced but few difficulties until the latter part of May, when they arrived at a village called Mowa, the people of which were very hospitable, but wondrously superstitious. They furnished the party with food in abundance and manifested their peaceable inclinations in many ways. It was Stanley's custom to employ himself with his note book almost constantly when his attention was not otherwise required, making sketches, memoranda, or preparing vocabularies of the various languages he met with. During his short stay among the Mowa he was thus engaged one afternoon, when, being observed by some of the savages, they immediately set up a hallooing, the war drums began to beat and the people prepared for fighting. Stanley was astounded at this surprising action from natives who had received him with such kindness. He called them to him and asked one of the chiefs the cause of the sudden outbreak.

"Our people," said the chief, "saw you yesterday make marks on some tara-tara (paper). This is very bad. Our country will waste, our goats will die, our bananas will rot, and our women will dry up. What have we done to you, that you should wish to kill us? We have sold you food, and we have brought you wine, each day. Your people are allowed to wander where they please, without trouble. Why is the Mundele so wicked? We have gathered to fight you if you do not burn that tara-tara now before our eyes. If you burn it we go away, and shall be friends as heretofore."

Stanley requested them to allow him a moment to visit his tent, and he would then satisfy them that he had no desire to do anything that would cause them injury. Having a copy of Shakespeare in his tent, he took this and holding it up asked if that was the tara-tara they wished burnt.

"Yes, yes, that is it."

"Well, take it and burn it as you desire."

"M—m! no, no, no. We will not touch it. It is fetich. You must burn it."

To satisfy their superstitious fears he was compelled to sacrifice his Shakespeare, but it was the means of saving his valuable note book.

On June 3 another accident occurred at Masassa whirlpool, which was more deplorable than all the others. Frank Pocock, who had been Stanley's mainstay and next in command to himself, attempted to drive the rapids against the advice of his experienced boatman, Uledi, who was the bravest native connected with the expedition, though a Zanzibar freedman. Pocock was warned of the danger of such an undertaking; but with a rashness quite unlike himself he ordered the canoe pushed out into the stream. As they approached nearer and nearer the mad breakers, Frank realized his peril, but it was too late. They were soon caught in the dreadful whirl of waters and sucked under with a mighty force sufficient to swallow up a ship. Pocock was an expert swimmer, but his art did not now avail him, for he was swept away to his death, though his eight companions saved themselves.

**TERRIBLE DEATH OF
FRANK POCKOCK.**

The dreadful news was borne to Stanley by the brave Uledi. This last and greatest calamity, coming in the midst of his already heavy weight of woe, so overcame the great explorer that he wept bitter tears of anguish.

" "My brave, honest, kindly-natured Frank," he exclaimed, "have you left me so? Oh, my long-tried friend, what fatal rashness! Ah, Uledi, had you but saved him, I should have made you a rich man."

Of the three brave boys who sailed away from England with Stanley to win the laurels of discovery in the unknown wilds of Africa, not one was left, but all were now slumbering for eternity in that strange land, where the tears of sorrowing friends and relatives could never moisten their rude beds of earth.

The repeated calamities of the expedition had by this time so discouraged the people that it was with the greatest effort Stanley could induce them to proceed. They seemed to think they were going to certain destruction, and became languid, sullen, and despondent. On the twentieth of June thirty-one of them deserted in a body, but returned a few days afterward, having met with anything but a friendly reception from the natives. Stanley's great leadership now manifested itself in keeping his people together, quieting their complaints, and infusing enough energy and determination into their wasted bodies to induce them to push on to the ocean. Famine stared them in the face, and he knew that nothing but a persevering, persistent, impetuous advance toward the sea could save them.

About the middle of July they reached the district of Ngoyo, where they found a very amiable and friendly people, almost as innocent of clothing as our first parents, and whose principal decorations consisted in boring their ears and noses.

SINGULAR DECORATIONS. These people supplied the almost famished travelers with bananas, pineapples, guavas, limes, onions, fish, cassava bread, ground-nuts, and palm-butter in abundance. They were exceedingly well-behaved and gentle, and many of them were handsome. The fishing, as well as all other work, was done by the women. Their nets were constructed of palm-fibres and bark, cone-shaped, and open at the bottom. When fishing the women waded in the shallow water near the shore, and entrapped the fish by dropping the open mouth of the net down over them.

There were some dangerous falls near this village, and the natives, to the number of more than four hundred, volunteered to convey Stanley's boats below the point of danger, which they did in admirable style, though unfortunately one small canoe was wrecked. They expressed much concern about the accident, as though they had been the authors of it; but Stanley reassured them and paid them liberally for their services. He declares that they were the politest people he encountered in Africa.

On the thirty-first of July, 1877, having explored the river to Isangila Falls, and proved that it was the Congo, Stanley decided to leave the water and proceed overland by a direct route to Embomma, a Portuguese settlement on the coast, and only a few days' march distant. The delight of the people at this announcement manifested itself in loud and fervid exclamations of gratitude to Allah!

It was a wayworn, feeble and suffering column that filed across the rocky terrace of Isangila and sloping-plain the following day, and strode up the ascent to the table-land. Nearly forty men filled the sick list with dysentery, ulcers, and scurvy, and the victims of the latter disease were steadily increasing.

They found the coast natives so degraded that they would not exchange food for any article except rum, the use of which they had derived from the Portuguese traders; so that starvation soon stared them in the face. On the evening of the third day they reached the village of Nsanda, and marching through the one street in melancholy and silent procession, voiceless as sphinxes, they felt their way down into a deep gully, and crawled up again to the level of the village site, and camped about two hundred yards away. They



A PORTAGE OF THE BOATS AROUND THE FALLS.

were soon visited by the chief, a young, slightly made man, much given to singing, being normally drunk from an excess of palm-wine. He was kindly, sociable—laughed, giggled, and was amusing, but would not furnish food to the starving travelers unless they would give him rum. Having no rum, they were compelled to go hungry.

From this point Stanley sent a letter, written in English, French, and Spanish, by three of his best men, to Embomma, asking relief for his starving people. The men set out about

noon on August 4, and reached the settlement the next day after sundown. Here they were shown to the factory, or store, of Messrs.

RELIEF IN THE HOUR

OF PERIL.

Hatton & Cookson, an English firm, represented by Mr. John W. Harrison, of Liverpool. That night an abundance of provisions was prepared and packed, and early the next morning Stanley's men were started on their return with full stomachs and accompanied by a number of stout men carrying everything that was needed. They met the starving expedition late the next evening, after they had camped, and a lively scene ensued, as preparations were begun for a royal supper. Relief had come, and all were happy.

On the ninth of August, 1877, the nine hundred and ninety-ninth day from the date of his departure from Zanzibar, Stanley prepared to greet the van of civilization, and was received by Mr. Harrison and the Portuguese residents with great *eclat*. They insisted upon carrying him through the town in a swinging hammock, as a mark of special honor, and afterward a grand banquet was provided for him.

After enjoying the generous hospitality of these people for two days, Stanley was ready to depart, but he first strolled down to the river, on the banks of which Embomma is situated, to take a farewell look at its broad and placid waters. "Glancing at the mighty river on whose brown bosom we had endured so much," said he, "I saw it approach, awed and humbled, the threshold of the watery immensity, to whose immeasurable volume and illimitable expanse, awful as had been its power, and terrible as had been its fury, its flood was but a drop. And I felt my heart suffused with purest gratitude to Him whose hand had protected us, and who had enabled us to pierce the Dark Continent from east to west, and to trace its mightiest river to its Ocean bourne."

He proceeded with his company on a steamer to Kabinda, and thence to Loanda, where his sick and suffering people were received into the Portuguese hospital, and remained until September 27, five of them dying in the meantime. From Loanda the expedition sailed to Cape Town, and thence back to Zanzibar, where the people were paid off and discharged. Stanley started for England December 13, 1877, and upon his arrival in London was received with distinguished honors, such as he well deserved. He had fairly won the English heart as well as the heartiest praise of his own country. He had proved himself, next to Livingstone, the greatest explorer that ever penetrated Africa.

The two expeditions which Stanley conducted so successfully into the heart of Africa, not only brought him great fame, but also substantial rewards in the way of financial

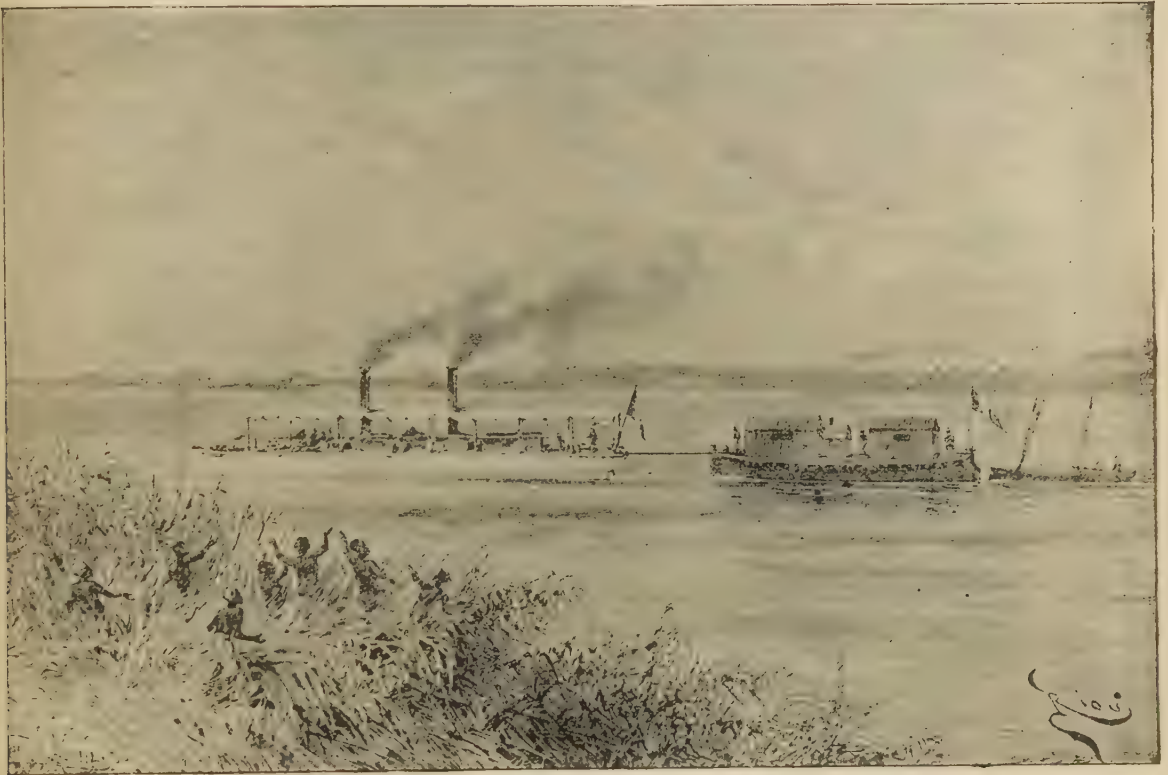
benefits. He had numerous offers to deliver lectures upon his travels, one of which, from an American bureau, he accepted and it was while fulfilling this contract that he received a proposal from England to head another expedition into Africa ostensibly for the relief of Emin Bey. Stanley

STANLEY'S THIRD

EXPEDITION.

departed from England on this third expedition on the twenty-second of January 1887, and proceeded first to Cairo, thence to Zanzibar to recruit his force of porters and soldiers, thence to the mouth of the Congo, on the west coast of Africa, which river he followed to its source in the lake region. He found Emin on the shore of Albert Lake, in July, 1889, but

instead of requiring relief, Emin was in better condition to relieve Stanley, so far as provisions went. This last expedition developed the most condemnable purpose of its promoters, and the results are a cloud upon Stanley's reputation which can never be dissipated. Almost from the beginning there was jealousy, cross-purpose, cruelty and horrible bestiality, leading to assassination, and the preferring of many grave criminal charges. It developed that the prime objects of the expedition was, secretly, to secure possession of a vast store of ivory which it had been reported Emin Bey had accumulated. When Stanley met the Pasha and explained his intention to conduct him and his people to Zanzibar, the Pasha strongly objected to being thus removed from the field of his successful

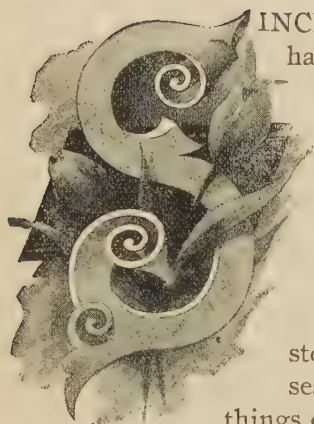


STANLEY PROCEEDING UP THE CONGO ON HIS THIRD EXPEDITION.

labors, insisting that his position as governor of Equatorial Africa was a secure one, and that his removal at this juncture would be the quick undoing of much of the good work he had accomplished in the way of restricting the slave-trade. But Stanley insisted even to the point of using force, and as his army was considerably greater than that of Emin's the latter was compelled to accompany Stanley to Zanzibar, *as a proof of the success of the expedition*. The large store of ivory, however, was not permitted to fall into the hands of the avaricious rescuer, having been dumped into the Victoria Lake to save it, and after recovery from the effects of a mysterious accident which befel Emin at Zanzibar, December 4, 1889, he returned immediately to his former station on Lake Victoria where he remained until his death in 1893.

PARADISE OF THE PACIFIC.

WONDERS OF THE OCEAN ARCHIPELAGOES.



SINCE the days of Bougainville, Tasman, Cook, and Magellan, those hardy navigators of what were then unknown seas, a wonderful change has taken place in the character of the life that distinguished the South Sea Islands. All the early explorers found these lands peopled by savage races, many of whom were cannibals, and all were cruel, and in contests with these always hostile natives Magellan and Cook lost their lives, as did many other navigators. And how many wonderful reports were brought back to Europe concerning the islands and the marvelous things to be found on and about them! By these astonishing stories the whole civilized world came to believe that these unfamiliar seas were teeming with gryphons, mermaids, serpents, and nameless things of the most grotesque and awful shapes. Nor were the tales told of the islanders less remarkable, for they were represented as being, in many cases, both monstrous and infernal. The people of Patagonia were declared to be giants of almost inconceivable strength, while in strange contrast the Fuegians were said to be of diminutive stature, and so inured to the severe cold of their antarctic country that they seldom wore clothes of any kind, while their huts were so loosely constructed as to afford no protection whatever.

A thousand silly beliefs long obtained respecting the peoples of the Pacific, and it was not until missionaries were settled on most of the islands that we came to know anything reliable about them. Captain Cook had proven himself to be a close student of the ethnographic features of the South Sea, but his labors were brought to a sudden end by his death at the hands of treacherous natives of Hawaii, which painful incident caused reports of a savagery of the people of which they really were not guilty.

Ships now ply the ocean everywhere and extension of trade to the islands of the Pacific has been followed by a rapid advance toward civilization of all the islanders, until we have come to know and to value these picturesque and paradisaic spots as the most productive and delightful parts of the earth's surface.

Public interest within the United States has, for a considerable time, been occupied with the question of annexation of the Sandwich Group, of which Hawaii is chief and Honolulu the capital. The chain comprises eight populated islands, that have a total area of 7600 square miles, as follows: Hawaii, 4850; Maui, 750; Oahu, 700; Kauai, 780; Molokai, 170; Lanai, 170; Nuhau, 100, and Kahulawi, 40 square miles. The present population is estimated at 75,000. These islands were discovered by Captain Cook in 1778, and became the scene of his death February 13, 1779, at the hands of the natives. The most remarkable features of these mid-pacific lands, are two mountains, named respectively Mauna Kea and Mauna Loa, both of which rear their heads to the amazing height of 14,000 feet. The latter is joined to Kilauea, on Hawaii,

and is the largest active volcano in the world, having an oval-shaped crater nine miles in circumference that is a vast sea of turbulent lava. On the island of Mani is the crater of Haleakala, or House of the Sun, that has a circumference of nearly thirty miles, and a depth of three thousand feet, but it is no longer active.

When first discovered each island of the group was governed by a separate chief, and some of the people were undoubted cannibals, as their mortuaries showed, while the custom of cooking human bodies was also explained to Captain Cook by the natives, who defended the practice of thus destroying their enemies.



MURDER OF CAPTAIN COOK BY HAWAIIANS.

In 1806 a powerful chief, named Kamehameha, succeeded in subduing all the independent chiefs and in founding a kingdom of which he became head of the dynasty.

FOUNDING OF THE KINGDOM. In 1810 Kamehameha, known as the First, officially communicated to George III. his desire to acknowledge the sovereignty of England, which being accepted the islands became a protectorate of Great Britain, and so continued until 1844 when the independence of the Hawaiian Kingdom was simultaneously declared by England, France, and the United States.

Kamehameha I. died in 1819 and was succeeded by his son Liholiho, who adopted the designation of his father and thus became Kamehameha II. Idolatry and fetich worship had prevailed among the islanders up to this time, but Kamehameha II. embraced Christianity and so encouraged missionary labor, which began in 1820, that even during his short reign idolatry was entirely abolished.



GROUP OF HAWAII GIRLS PLAYING CARDS IN A BANANA GROVE.

The king was alert to the needs of his insular country, and to acquire information that would enable him to govern more wisely, with his queen he visited America in the latter part of 1823 and continued their tour to Europe, but both died of measles in London, July, 1824. He was succeeded by Kamehameha III. who was likewise a conservative ruler, and favored missionary influence which made such rapid progress that in a few years the natives not only embraced Christianity but learned to read and write the English language, and became wholly amenable to English customs and beliefs.

Until 1838 the government had existed as a despotism, but in 1840 Kamehameha gave his sanction to the formation of a constitution which upon adoption provided for a representative council formed of nobles, after the scheme of the English parliament. Subsequent rulers of Hawaii have been Kamehameha IV., 1854-63; his brother Kamehameha V., 1863-73; Lunalilo elected in 1873, who lived one year and was succeeded on his death by Kalakaua 1874, and upon his decease in 1891, without issue, the crown descended to his eldest sister, Lilliokoulani, who was forced to resign in 1893, and on July 4, 1894, a republic was formed, of which Sanford P. Dole was elected president.

The Hawaiian group lies two thousand miles west of San Francisco in the warm current of the Kiwo Sero and is bathed with perpetual sunshine. Though of volcanic origin the soil is of extraordinary fertility, specially adapted to cane cultivation, of which great quantities are there grown, so that it has in a few years become a fair rival of Cuba. Rice is also cultivated to a considerable extent, and the raising of cattle is a profitable industry. Being on the highway of ocean travel between San Francisco and Australia and New Zealand, and possessing an excellent harbor, the Hawaiian group have come to attain great importance and the tide of immigration has poured upon them steadily from east and west until the population has grown rapidly into a strange mixture of occident and orient surplusage. Disturbances became so common that finally, in 1893, necessity was shown for an exhibition of force to restrain the turbulent element that had assumed a serious attitude toward the queen because of her action in attempting to force a new constitution upon her subjects, under which her prerogatives would have been greatly enlarged and those of her subjects correspondingly diminished. The result of this trouble was the landing of a body of marines from a United States man-of-war, the deposition of Queen Lilliokoulani, and the formation of a cabinet which chose a provisional president, under whom the government has been since administered.

The question of annexation has agitated Americans during two administrations, and both royalists and annexationists have sent committees from Hawaii to plead their respective causes before the United States Congress. The dispute may be narrowed down to the two following contentions: The royalists favor the restoration of their deposed queen upon the ground that they are a free people, capable of managing their own affairs, and maintain that an outrage was perpetrated, in the interest of a corrupt coterie of sugar speculators, when our government forced her deposition. Other objections, made by persons in the United States, are urged upon the ground of inexpediency; that annexation would mean the admission of the Chinese and Japanese population of the islands, 40,000 in number, which are barred out of our country by the exclusion act, and that maintenance of our power and authority would require the constant service of a war fleet at the islands and the construction of an elaborate system of coast defences about the harbor.

The other side of this spirited question may be thus stated: Commercial considerations have a large place in the conclusions of the annexationists, but political reasons are

paramount. The islands would be of incalculable advantage to the United States in case of war with any country that should attempt an attack upon the western coast, both as a base for supplies and as a coaling station, while their occupation by an unfriendly power would give to the enemy that possessed them a correspondingly great advantage. Indeed, it is maintained that it would be impossible to protect our Pacific coast from the ravages of a first class power holding possession of these islands, since they would constitute a strategic key to all naval operations conducted on the Pacific, and their capture by the United States would therefore become necessary before we could hope to maintain ourselves in the struggle.

The purely Hawaiian race are rapidly disappearing by absorption into the American, English, and German, and the reddish-brown skin, or tarnished copper hue which originally distinguished them is no longer commonly seen, nor are the facial characteristics of flattened nose, thick lips, raven hair, and broad face so prominent as were noticeable even twenty years ago. The original inhabitants bear considerable resemblance to the Maoris, of New Zealand, large of stature, well developed, and in every respect they are physically among the finest people of the earth. Formerly they tat-



HAWAIIAN GIRLS BATHING.

tooed their bodies, though in an inartistic manner, and this practice is still noticed, to a limited extent, among the lower classes on the small islands.

The Hawaiian islands are not all alike fertile, though of volcanic origin, for some are comparatively sterile and may be made to yield such products as yams, arums and sweet potatoes only by careful cultivation. But the people, unlike nearly all other Pacific islanders, are both frugal and industrious, and possess a high degree of intelligence. Their morals were never good, however, and European influence has failed to improve them, except where the effect of missionary teachings is most pronounced. Polygamy was a common practice, and women were subjected to humiliation and privation that repressed any naturally moral instinct which they might have had. To such an extent were women in subjection that the killing of female infants was common, and licentiousness was shockingly prevalent.

Religion of the Hawaiians was a kind of fetichism, in which barbarous and sanguinary observances and sacrifices constituted a chief part, and cannibalism was not unknown,

though not general. They worshiped small images as the material evidence of their deities, but they also had a spiritual theism, believing that the superior gods resided in the subterranean fires that raged in the ever active volcanoes. These fiery gods were regarded with great terror by the people, who sought to propitiate their anger, when exhibited by

violent eruptions, by the sacrifice of human victims and offerings of fruits of the land, which were accompanied by horrible rites both bloody and degrading. They believed in a future state, those who found favor with the gods being conveyed after death to a land of ineffable delights, there to continue in a state of unending happiness; while those who incurred their enmity were after death consigned to the volcanic furnaces, and became slaves to the mountain gods who cooked them one day and devoured them the next throughout eternity.

It is a remarkable thing that in some respects the religious life of the Hawaiians was very similar to that of the very ancient Hebrews; they had their household idols, which they reverently regarded, and they maintained places of refuge identical with the practice



HAWAIIAN GIRLS ON HORSEBACK.

of the Israelites. These resorts were sacred enclosures in which any one might take refuge either in time of war or after committing a criminal act, and remain there safe from pursuit.

Cannibalism of the Hawaiians never extended to the devouring of human flesh to satisfy appetite, but was generally practiced as a religious rite or with the expectation of

absorbing the virtues or courage of the victim. Thus the heart and liver of human victims were eaten upon certain days in the temple, and parts of warriors slain in battle were devoured by the victors. Even so late as 1819, when Kamehameha I. died, all the island chiefs assembled to serious debate what should be done with the remains, in order to preserve the virtues of their king to the people. Several favored the suggestion of eating the body, and it was by a small majority vote that this horrible proposal was defeated.

**A PROPOSAL
TO EAT THE KING.**

The Hawaiians are really a pleasant people, being generally amiable, hospitable, and sympathetic, and are extremely fond of music, and sports of every kind. The women are comely,



CENTRAL STREET, HONOLULU.

splendid of figure, and so good-tempered that it is a rare thing to see one in anger. Both sexes have a passion for bathing where the surf runs highest, and of riding spirited horses, in which latter exercise both ride astride and generally without saddles. Formerly, the men wore no other clothes than a small breech-clout, and the women dressed in short petticoats of *tapa*, which is a cloth made from the inner bark of the paper mulberry. Now, however, Hawaiian men affect the clothes of Europeans, while the females almost universally clothe themselves in the *holoka*, which is a loose, mother-hubbard garment reaching from the neck to the feet, but in addition to this form of dress both sexes commonly wear garlands of flowers and necklaces of colored seeds. The principal food of Hawaiians is pork, fish, bananas, sweet potatoes, bread-fruit, and cocoanuts, but formerly it was a common thing for the natives to

eat dogs, which they esteemed above all other kinds of meat, and some do not disdain such food now. For beverage they make a liquor, from bananas, called *kava*, which is as intoxicating as it is filthy, and its manufacture is prohibited, under severe penalty, except under license, but large quantities are distilled clandestinely and its use causes great degradation. The common classes live in huts that have a wood skeleton thatched with grass on the roof and sides, and being inexpensive they usually last only one year, when they become so infested with fleas and vermin that it is the practice to burn them, and rebuild on the spot, or near by. Chief productions of the islands are sugar and rice, but labor is scarce, which makes agriculture expensive. The *kalo* plant is extensively grown, in wet places, which yields so abundantly that forty square yards planted with this tuber, produces enough food to sustain one native for a whole year. Corn and wheat are also grown, but not extensively. Pineapples, oranges, mangoes and guavas flourish under cultivation. On the mountains there are wild cattle which are shot, lassoed, or trapped in pits dug near pools of water. There are also wild goats and hogs, which being little hunted are on the increase and often do considerable damage to crops.



FIERY LAKE OF KILAUEA.

Honolulu is the capital and largest city on the islands, having a population of nearly 20,000, and is beautifully situated on a magnificent harbor. The houses, though nearly all frame structures, are often handsome, the streets are straight and clean, and the city enjoys all the modern luxuries of gas, electric light, and water-works, and being on the highway of travel between San Francisco and the Orient, and possessing a delicious climate, the place has a large floating population. American influence is predominant but the Chinese are most numerous, and they also represent a large amount of the wealth and industry of the islands.

The most remarkable natural features of the Hawaiian group are the great craters of Mauna Loa and Kilauea, the largest and most powerful in the world. As before stated, the former has a basin of molten lava that is 8000 feet in diameter, the walls of which rise vertically to a height of 600 feet. The floor of this enormous crater is diversified with small cones rising out of a sea of lava, from crevices of which sulphurous smoke constantly issues. There is no record of any eruption of Mauna Loa prior to 1832, but since that date it has several times been in a state of great paroxysm. In the outburst of 1843, lava



CENTRAL CRATER OF KILAUEA.

overflowed the crater and descended every side in streams six miles wide and thirty miles long, carrying devastation over a large territory and affording a spectacle of incomparable awfulness. Other eruptions occurred in 1851, 1852, 1855, 1859, 1868, and 1877. During the eruption of 1868 several terrible earthquakes occurred of such frightful force that a sea wave was raised to a height of forty feet that broke upon the shore with frightfully devastating effect, causing great loss of life and property, and showed its destructive influence as far east as the California shore.

Sixteen miles from Mauna Loa is the volcano of Kilauea, the largest active crater in



BASIN OF MAUNA LOA.

the world, which though manifestly connected with Mauna Loa has distinct times of activity, except in 1832 when the two were in conjunction in exciting the world of the Pacific. The crater is nine miles in diameter enclosed by vertical walls 1000 feet deep, the bottom of which is an ocean of boiling lava from which arises tongues of flame at night and pillars of smoke by day. About the edges of this fiery basin are fifty-one cones from which issue flames, smoke, and lava, quantities of the latter running off by subterranean channels to the sea, where it forms the coast. That the surrounding country is supported above a lake of unquenchable fire is proved by the fact that in 1840 there was an outburst from a small crater eight miles distant from Kilauea that threw out a river of lava one-half mile wide and forty miles long, being arrested only when falling into the ocean.

Equally remarkable, and quite unaccountable is the fact that over the whole of the summit of Hualalai are many pit craters that are from 300 to 600 feet deep and 700 to 1000 feet in diameter. On the edge of one of these strange craters is a secondary mountain which

has apparently been built up by deposition of lava which first being thrown out was in some manner arrested and congealed in sections of richest colors, yellow, red, blue, and black. Strange to relate, in the centre, or cone, of this secondary mound, is a blow-hole twenty-five feet in diameter and about 2000 feet deep, the sides of which are slightly grooved, but as smooth as if bored by human means.

The lava ejected by the volcanoes of Hawaii is not all the same kind in appearance or character, but consists of quite dissimilar composition and consistency. There is, for example, the scoriae proper, which is clinkerous and extremely rough, usually found where the flowing lava has met impediments, causing it to pile, or where explosions of gas have thrown the flow into confusion.

PELE, GODDESS OF VOLCANOES.

Another kind of lava is that which passes over smooth ground or down a gentle slope, which causes it to assume a velvety appearance, slightly twisted into graceful forms as though it might have congealed when in a state like molasses-candy ready for pulling. A third form is of a glassy character, the product of ejection in a viscous state caught by the wind that spins it into the most delicate fibres called by the natives "Pele's hair." This name is derivable from the goddess of the volcanoes, whom Hawaiians formerly sought to propitiate with sacrifices as already described, a dreadful creature, beautiful of form and face, but tigerish in disposition, who was peaceful only when gluttoned. It is a singular fact that the natives are in the habit of cutting holes in the spongy lava, which in places covers thousands of acres, and setting therein banana shoots and sweet potato cuttings, which flourish without any earth nourishment.

The mean temperature of the coldest month during five years was 62° Fahrenheit and the highest temperature within the same time was 81° Fahrenheit. Strong winds occasionally blow during winter, but violent hurricanes have never been known to sweep the islands, so that for climate and natural productions the islands are almost Edenic. But while the climate is salubrious one of the most

THE LEPERS OF MOLOKAI.

dreadful of all human diseases is so prevalent on the group that Molokai, one of the chain, has been set apart for the confinement of those afflicted with the plague. Leprosy, which is the Hawaiian pest, is a disease that has remained confined to that portion of the temperate globe east of the Mediterranean Sea, and west of the Pacific coast of the Americas. It has frequently been met with outside of this hemispheric zone, but only sporadic cases, and never as a contagion. On all the Pacific islands the disease is common, but nowhere else is it so prevalent as on the Sandwich group, and as medical science has discovered no means of arresting its progress or mitigating its ravages the plague, like that of cancer, to which it is no doubt allied, is on the increase.

Molokai is a small island, of some 200,000 acres, distinguished by a high ridge of hills, at the west end of which a peak rises to a height of 3500 feet. As there is little cultivation of the land, the country is a comparative wilderness, on the hills of which are numbers of wild deer, descendants of tame animals brought to the islands by Kamehameha III.

There is no more pathetic sight in all the world than that presented by the leper settlement on Molokai, which is a colony of unutterable woe, where every member is doomed and dying, inch by inch, hopeless, ghastly to the sight and terrible in the reflection that death approaches in his most horrent form. It was a

HOW THE OUTCASTS ARE CARED FOR.

provision of mercy as well as of protection that the Government of Hawaii understood the care of its plague-stricken by isolating the victims, and providing for them in the fullest measure of sympathy and tenderness. As soon as the fell disease is detected the unfortunate person is compelled to renounce the world so

to speak, by becoming an exile on lonely Molokai's shores. But this banishment is done in a spirit of regard for both the whole and the afflicted. The government supports the colony in a most liberal manner, granting large allowance of food and encouraging every form of amusements. The lepers, too, are not entirely miserable, for they have their pleasures, though we may imagine that even the happiest moment of these victims is clouded by the ever present remembrance of their inevitable doom. They have their theatricals, bands of music, churches, schools, and marry and raise families, the children becoming nearly all lepers. No distinction is made of social degrees among the plague-begotten or those afflicted, and so there have been persons of great prominence who were compelled to spend the last years of their lives as members of the colony, among the number being both men and women who belonged to the royal family. There are about one thousand lepers on Molokai, enough to make a village, where every laugh might better be a groan, where every hope might be a prayer for the quick coming of death, for the disease fulfills its devilish purpose by slow progress, giving the victim from five to fifteen years of agony, of dying, for "all who enter there leave hope behind."

EDENIC ISLES OF TAHITI.

It is one of the mysteries of nature that the most beautiful and delicious things which she produces are often placed so as to be least accessible, or where they require greatest effort or even danger to attain. Not only does fruit grow out of reach, and roses have thorns, but especially remarkable is the fact that the most delightful, equable, salubrious, and paradisaic spots of the earth are upon islands that God has set as jewels upon the face of the deep, where, like precious stones, they are difficult to reach, and too small to support a considerable number of persons.

The Pacific Ocean received its name from Balboa, who chanced to discover it when in its most amiable mood, but in fact that ocean is no more peaceful than the Atlantic, and probably is swept by more terrible hurricanes, though they are less frequent. But these displays of elemental fury are circumscribed; that is to say, they seem to have a well-defined limit, rarely if ever appearing in the Pacific above the equator, while below that imaginary line the sea is subject to storms of extraordinary violence. There is also a marked difference of climate between the Atlantic and Pacific, due, of course, to ocean currents that are supposed to have their births in the Indian Sea, which lose some of their force on their westward course by striking the peninsula of Africa, whereas eastward they have an unobstructed flow.

In the Pacific, also, are thousands of islands in small clusters, and vast archipelagoes, high table-lands, no doubt, of what was once a great continent, sunk by some dreadful cataclysm of which history is too recent in its records to give us any account. Though there are evidences, exhibited by deep sea soundings, that Africa and South America were, at some long past period in the earth's existence, connected by a broad strip of land, yet the sinking of this connecting band has left few high peaks visible above the water, and so the Atlantic is diversified with less than half a dozen island groups, if we except the shore chains of America. These are surprising facts of geography, and astonishing truths of physical conformation and influence, the further marked results of which are shown in the warm, little variable, generally humid, climate of the Pacific Ocean as far northward as Behring Sea.

We have seen, by statements in the preceding chapter, how perfect a climate is enjoyed by Hawaii, which is in latitude 20° north, and are thereby prepared, in a way, to receive similar reports of equable temperature in islands lying 20° south of the equator. This is true; but while there is small difference in climate, there is great difference in other respects, viz: Many of the islands lying south of this line are of coral formation, joined to larger ones of volcanic origin, and are subject to frightfully devastating hurricanes, while those above the equator are exclusively volcanic and are practically exempt from storms.



TAHITIANS DANCING BEFORE BLIGH.

Almost directly south of Hawaii, a distance of 2500 miles, lies the Society Group of Islands—seventeen degrees under the equator—eleven in number, of which Tahiti is chief, comprising indeed 600 of the 650 square miles of total area of the chain. They occupy a central position in the Pacific, being about thirty-four hundred miles from Australia (Sidney) and forty-six hundred miles from Panama. The group was first seen by a Spaniard, de Quiros, in 1607, re-discovered by Wallis, an Englishman, in 1767, and visited by Bougainville in the following year, each in turn claiming the islands as possessions of their respective countries. Cook landed upon the principal island in 1769, 1773, 1774, and 1777; and in 1778, Bligh, of the *Bounty*, visited the islands, and remained for a period of five months. Afterward, when the mutiny occurred, the *Bounty* put back to Tahiti, where Bligh afforded such aid to Pomare, ruler of the island, that a famous chief named Eimeo was subjugated, and thereafter Bligh became a power with the island king, where he remained until 1791, when the *Pandora* carried away fourteen of the *Bounty* mutineers. The islands have been under French protection since 1838, but they have never been able to control the trade, which remains in

**TAHITI, THE
BEAUTIFUL LAND.**

the hands of the English and Germans, though Tahiti is the residence of the governor-general of the French dependencies of the Pacific.

Their formation being principally volcanic, the Society Group is distinguished by lofty peaks, but none show signs of having been in eruption for many centuries, the loftiest being Orohena, which has an altitude of 7340 feet. There is sufficient diversity of landscape, of mountain, valley, forest, running stream, and the soil is wondrously fertile, while some of the small islands are surrounded by coral reefs that prevent heavy seas from beating their main shores, and at the same time afford most perfect harborage for vessels of even the largest size.

Along the coast of Tahiti proper may be seen a chain of villages occupying the flat land that extends for nearly four miles inland, and about the houses are beautiful gardens of rich tropical growths, above which the tops of towering palms wave in graceful grandeur. Good roads surround the island and connect its eight political divisions, and recently a small railroad has been built across the island that brings the two principal towns and harbors into rapid communication, although the total population does not exceed 12,000. The chief exports are cocoanuts, mother-of-pearl, cotton, oranges, and sugar, the latter industry being now in a condition of rapid development. Papeete is the capital, with a population of 3500, of which number less than 1000 are whites, the others being of mixed nationality.

Few people are more interesting than the original Tahitians, who are perhaps the handsomest of the South seas, and in physical development they are not surpassed by even civilized races. It is singular, too, that though they belong to the Poly-
THE ORIGINAL nesian race, in customs, appearance and language they exhibit a wide
TAHITIANS. divergence. The women, especially when young, are remarkably beautiful of face and figure, and the men are Apollos of size and strength. The skin is of a soft olive color among the better classes, and of a rich brown among the common people, but enormous corpulence is common, which fortunately is concealed by the *tiputa*, which is a gown of bark cloth that covers the person from neck to feet, worn by both men and women of the higher class. A strange custom has existed among the women ever since discovery of the islands of covering the breasts with shields made from feathers of the frigate bird, which, however, may not be worn in the presence of superiors. The chiefs were distinguished by short feather cloaks, and the priests by cylindrical hats a yard high, made of light wickerwork. An equally remarkable custom is that of circumcision, which the Tahitians have practiced from time immemorial, and tattooing of both sexes is almost universal. They are a light-hearted, hospitable and kindly people, extremely fond of amusement, and passionate lovers of music, but they are lacking in ingenuity, and their every article of household use was of the most primitive character, for pottery was unknown. The principal musical instrument was a flute played by the nose, usually accompanied by song, and by beating a drum made of a hollow cylinder covered at one end with shark's skin. Their favorite weapon, before the coming of Europeans, was the sling, which they used with great skill and considerable effect. When Bougainville anchored his warship among them, he was valorously attacked by crowds of native warriors, who advanced in large canoes up to the very side of his vessel and sent against it a hail of stones. Some of these canoes were as much as seventy feet in length and handsomely painted, capable of navigating the seas between the several islands. The sterns, and sometimes the bows also, were carried up to a height of twenty feet and carved with strange figures, to represent their gods.

The natives, at the time of discovery, lived in low huts, having one side open, and their chief vegetable food was bread-fruit, yams, and arrow-root, while for meat they used the flesh of dogs, of which they were so inordinately fond that these animals, of the voiceless species, like the dingo, were raised with the greatest care, women frequently giving the puppies nurse, to the neglect of their own children. They also ate fish and turtles, the latter being regarded as sacred food. Their favorite beverage was *kava*, brewed from plantains, and a dish prepared of cocoanut and bananas was also popular, which when allowed to stand a while fermented and became slightly intoxicating.



BOUGAINVILLE ATTACKED BY TAHITIAN SLINGERS.

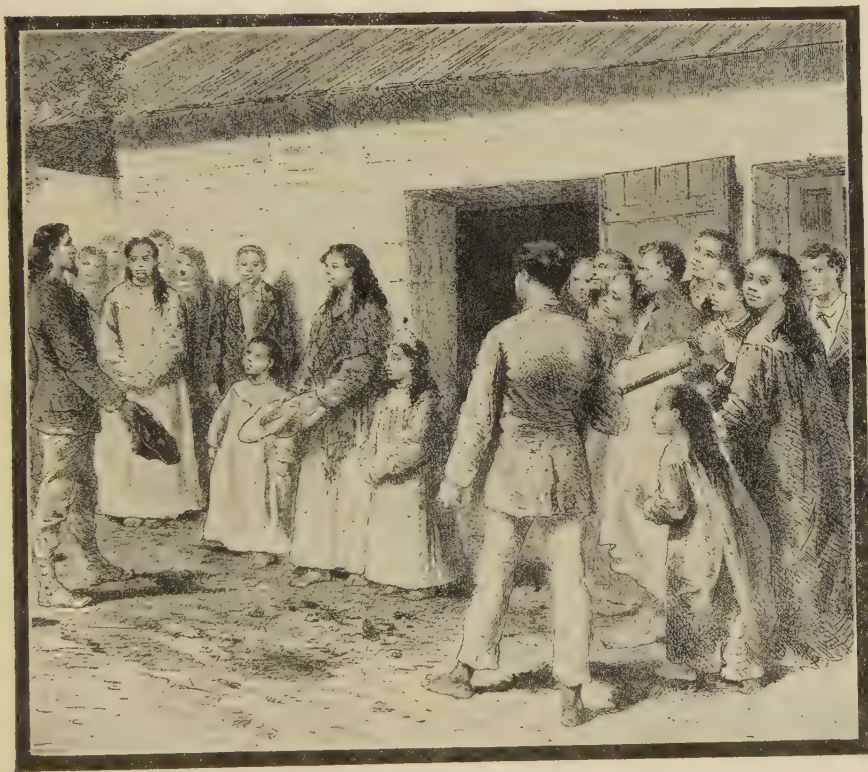
The Tahitians were no doubt cannibals at one time in their history, relics of which survived until the influence of Christian missionaries began to become pronounced. But the practice was probably never general, and existed only in connection with their religious ceremonies. When first visited, by French, Spanish, and English explorers, the Tahitians were divided into castes as well defined as among the people of India. There were four distinct classes, viz: the *huiari*, who were the reigning chiefs of the eight districts; these were regarded as being of divine origin, and bore a semi-sacred as well as a political relation toward their subjects; the second class were the *raatira*, who comprised the landed gentry, so to speak, and who enjoyed the monopoly of building canoes and supplying arms. The third class were the *tahora*, composed of priests and sorcerers; and the fourth distinction comprehended the fishermen and slaves. This latter class, which included the masses, gradually acquired privileges, and rose out of their original condition of servitude by reason of their useful services in times of war. The practice of infanticide served to reduce the

**RELIGIOUS OBSERVANCE
AND BELIEFS.**

population, while internecine strife, or the warring of chief against chief, called into service every one capable of bearing arms, and the lowest class were therefore rewarded for their valor by liberation from servitude and allotments of land, so that in time, through this process, those that were once under masters became proprietors and were merged into the second class, the fourth thus disappearing entirely.

So highly did the Tahitians regard their rulers that the greatest care was exercised to prevent mixture of royal blood with an impure strain. Like the ancient Egyptians there was not only the intermarriage of royal families, but brother and sister, when prince and princess, might marry. The king was supreme, but the queen ruled in his absence, whose authority was no less absolute, although among the common people women sat apart as inferiors. The king was revered as a divine representative, was carried from place to place upon the shoulders of his

REVERENCE FOR THE TAHITI KING.



BLIGH BEFORE THE QUEEN OF TAHITI.

subjects, and was fed by the hands of his concubines, of which he was allowed several. When the king died his body was embalmed and then exposed for several days on an altar in the *marai*, or place of council and worship, during which exposure the people went into mourning and paid the most extravagant honors, by sacrifice and demonstrations, to the body, which was afterward buried in a sitting posture. Honors of like character, of lesser degree, were also paid to the bodies of dead chiefs, which were deposited

in a burying ground set apart for the distinguished dead, but in all cases the skulls were preserved by relatives of the deceased.

During the early history of Tahiti there was an immense stone structure called the *Great Marai*, at Atahura, which was 270 feet long, 100 feet wide and 50 feet high, in the rear end of which was an altar of stone, the summit of which was reached by a flight of coral steps. At certain intervals the most imposing ceremonies, of a fanatical character, were here performed, including human sacrifices. Among the most revolting features of the rites was the removal of an eye of the victim offered up, which was then placed within the mouth of the king by the officiating priest, but for what object not even the missionaries

were ever able to ascertain, but it is probable the eye was a symbol of knowledge, and the belief may have prevailed that the king was enabled to look into the future, or view the world of mystery, through the eye of the dead.

The Tahitians had many gods, of which there was a superior deity called *Oro*, which was never represented by graven image; the household deities, on the other hand, were symbolized by small idols cut in the crude form of human figures and clothed with feathers. There was also a kind of religious body known as the *areoi*, which numbered among its ranks the chief priests and the upper classes of society, whose observances consisted of the most shocking exhibitions and licentious indulgences, and these celebrants also practiced infanticide to a terrible extent, sparing neither sex. In few respects did the Tahitians exhibit any sense of morality, nor has European influence served to diminish the laxity of their social life. The women formerly performed a costume dance called the *heivaa*, that was terrible in its bestiality, and while this shameless carnival has been suppressed, other no less licentious customs have taken its place, which have been encouraged by depraved visitors from our so-called civilized lands, and Tahiti morals cannot be said to have improved under European influence. It is lamentable to know that these islands, so highly favored by nature, where nothing is withheld that might contribute to human content and happiness, produces a people as degraded as were the degenerates of Sodom, who, not requiring an ambition to better their natural condition, since nature provides food without labor, have fallen under an engrossment of extreme sensuality.

**LICENTIOUS
CARNIVALS.**

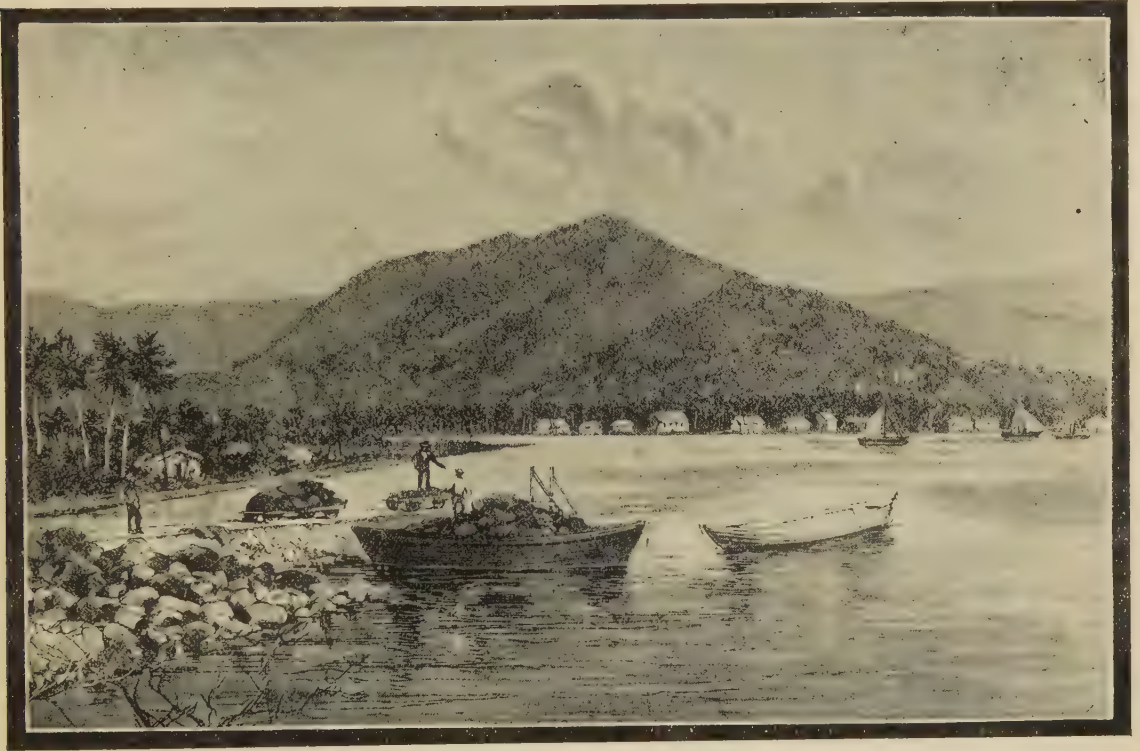
SAMOA AND FIJI.

A little west of the Society Islands is the Navigator group of thirteen islands, only three of which, however, Sawaii, Upolo, and Tutuila are of much importance, and these are mountainous, diversified with few fertile valleys. They were first sighted by Roggeveen, a Dutch navigator, in 1722, but Bougainville was the first European visitor, in 1768, who gave them the name by which they have ever since been known. Upolo, though not so large as Sawaii, is the principal island of the group, because of its greater fertility, and because Apia, the capital of the archipelago, is located upon this island. The largest and best harbor, however, is that of Pago-Pago, on the coast of Tutuila. Apia is famous as being the scene of one of the most disastrous storms in history, which raged with such violence March 16, 1889, that all the shipping in the harbor was entirely destroyed, with great loss of life, including two German war vessels, and three battle ships belonging to the American navy. The area of Sawaii is 700 square miles; of Upolo, 550 square miles, and of Tutuila, 55 square miles, and the total population is about thirty thousand. Since 1879 the islands, while nominally governed by a native king, have really been under the joint control of Germany, Great Britain and the United States, whose interference has perhaps saved the population from extinction by suppressing the wars which in thirty years reduced the number of inhabitants one-half.

Apia is a town of nearly three thousand people, and enjoys a considerable trade, which is largely in the hands of Germans. The natives comprise not more than one-half the population, and these are fast disappearing by intermarriage with foreigners. There is a similarity of appearance between the Tahitians and Samoans, both being distinguished by a rich copper color, and large frame, the men often exceeding six feet in height, and are strong in proportion. The women are not so handsome as those of the Society group, being heavy, coarse, thick-lipped,

**FACTS ABOUT
THE SAMOANS.**

and of massive physique. In the country districts, which signifies removed from Apia, the people are more comely, probably because the type is less affected by contact with Europeans. But while there is similarity in point of appearance, in customs there is marked difference between the Samoans and Tahitians. The former were never cannibals, so far as evidence or tradition can determine, nor were they ever very strongly inclined to any kind of religion, as there are no remains of temples, or places of worship, nor were funerals occasions of much display. Yet they were not materialistic, nor were they warlike, but so hospitable that the first European visitors were received with marks of great kindness, and their wants freely satisfied by bountiful gifts of fruits of the islands.



VIEW OF APIA AND THE HARBOR.

The native Samoans were more ingenious and industrial than other peoples of neighboring archipelagoes, and were very much in advance of the Tahitians. Their morals may not be approved, but they were more careful to hide their nakedness, and indulged in no such carnivals of licentiousness as distinguished the people of the Society group. They were expert weavers, and had great artistic taste, particularly displayed in the coloring of the cloth which they manufactured from the inner bark, or fibre, of the cocoanut palm, and of the mulberry. It is surprising how great is their imitation of muslins and other cotton materials by the use of this fibre. The women made all their handsomest clothes of this material, which they colored in many beautiful designs that made their dresses resemble the brightest calicoes.

Being of an amiable disposition, the Samoans were easily influenced by missionaries sent among them, and very soon came to embrace Christianity, which practically all the people now profess; they are therefore well supplied with churches, and all the adjuncts of

civilization, but while improved in some respects, they show deterioration in others, and the race is accordingly rapidly disappearing, by reason of rum and cupidity being introduced among them. It is a well-established fact that Europeans have never failed to act as a blight upon every simple and barbarous people they have sought to civilize, the good work of missionaries being circumvented or nullified by the evil and destructive influence of traders, whose most effective agent has ever been rum, and incitement to war of one tribe against another.

Three hundred miles westward of the Navigator Islands is the extensive Fijian group, comprising some two hundred and fifty islands, first seen by Tasman, in 1643, but not visited by any European until the coming of Cook in 1773. The islands, though numerous, cover an area of only 7400 square miles, and only eighty are inhabited, while the arable districts are limited by the encroachment of volcanic mountains. The rich tracts are along the coasts, and confined chiefly to two of the largest islands, Viti Levu and Vanua Levu, both of which have excellent harbors, and are adorned with the most charming scenery of valley, peak, precipice, waterfalls, limpid streams, and a luxuriant vegetation of beautiful diversity. The islands escape the monsoons, but they are within the region of greatest disturbance, and frequently experience terrible earthquakes and hurricanes. The climate is enervating, but not unhealthy, and there are only three diseases very prevalent, viz : influenza, dysentery, unknown before the advent of Europeans, and elephantiasis, all

of which are now common and peculiarly virulent. The latter disease, which is closely related to leprosy, is believed to be caused by the immoderate use of *kava*. This drink is the product of the *kava* root, which is gathered at the proper season and reduced to a beverage by a most disgusting process. The root is chewed by girls, generally, and the juice thus expressed is expectorated into a bowl, where it is allowed to remain until fermentation takes place, when it is strained and then becomes ready to be drunk as an



SAMOANS IN CLOTHES OF PALM FIBER.

intoxicant. *Kava* is extensively used in all the Pacific islands, but it is not always prepared in the same manner, nor is it made exclusively of the *kava* root, other vegetable fermentations often taking its place.

Ethnologists have attempted to show that nearly all Pacific islanders are descended from the Malay race, and thus having a common racial ancestry they must have become distributed through some cataclysmal cause. The more general belief prevails, as previously explained, that all the islands of the Pacific are the high lands of what was once a continent connected with Asia, which was sunk by some dreadful convulsion of nature. Not a few maintain, however, that the distribution of people was most probably accomplished by the accidental driving,

**SAVAGERY OF
THE FIJIANS.**



GROUP OF SAMOA GIRLS MAKING KAVA.

by storm, of canoes laden with natives from one shore to another, which is not an uncommon occurrence. But if this latter be the fact, whence came the bird and animal life on these islands? We shall not tarry to present metaphysical explanations, which, after all, could not determine the dispute. It may be proper to observe, however, that if all these people are of a common origin, it is most astonishing that the different islanders should develop such variableness of belief, tradition, and nature, especially where climatic conditions remain identical. How can we account for the indescribable savagery of the Fijian, as distinguished from the amiability of the Samoans? Why should the people of these islands have been merciless, warlike, and confirmed cannibals, when their nearest neighbors, whose lands

produced the same vegetables, and whose natural advantages were identical, should show directly opposite habits and characteristics?

The Samoans entertained only a shadowy form of religious beliefs, which was too vague to require ceremonies, in contradistinction with which the Fijians were besotted with the most cruel superstitions that found exercise in many forms of bloody sacrifice. They paid reverence to one chief god, which was supposed to exist in the guise of a serpent, but they had many minor deities that had once been incarnate as chiefs and warriors.

**REMARKABLE CUSTOMS
OF THE ISLANDERS.**

Certain groves were held sacred, to which, at stated intervals, the priests repaired to receive communications from these lesser deities, which concerned both private and political life.

They believed implicitly in the *Tabu*, which may be described as faith in charms, and the evil eye. Anything that was pronounced *tabued* by the priest, might not be touched, lest it bring calamity upon the person so offending. They had a temple called *mbure*, which also served the purpose of council chamber, in which human sacrifices were made, and the religious rites extended to the cooking and



A GROUP OF FIJIANS.

eating of victims. An observance thus sanctioned by religion soon developed an appetite for human flesh, and cannibalism accordingly became general.

So confirmed did they become in their cannibal propensities, that to procure this favored meat Fijians did not hesitate to perpetrate the most shocking crimes. Persons shipwrecked upon their shores were certain to become victims of this horrid passion. But more terrible still was the habit of strangling widows upon the death of their husbands; slaves were killed by their masters, aged parents were murdered by their children, and large numbers of victims were slain during the visits of embassies from other tribes, or at the building of a temple, the bodies being used in every case to provide a private or a public feast. The custom also obtained of burying prisoners alive, and afterward digging up the bodies to devour them. Indeed, degeneration could go no further, so far as sensuality and dehumanization was concerned, than is illustrated by the native Fijian prior to the operation of the uplifting influence of the missionaries, which has finally almost completely destroyed all the former savagery of the people.

**MURDER AND
CANNIBALISM.**

While the Fijians and their Tongan neighbors were the most vicious peoples of the South Sea, they were at the same time the most intellectual. Their government was

administered upon communal principles, as applied to the upper classes, but also combined the feudal, in the relation that existed between the higher and lower classes. War

ASTONISHING LEGENDS. was with them both a science and a natural condition, in which they recognized many diplomatic formalities when treating with their enemies, and their fortifications were constructed with considerable skill. They manufactured a superior kind of pottery ; their houses were ingeniously built

of timber framework, over which was lattice or thatch, and the interiors were ornamented with great taste and furnished with many comforts. But while we are surprised to find so much attention paid to civil government and home provisions by a people of such bloody instincts, our astonishment is much increased by the traditions which were current among them when first visited by Europeans. They knew the story of creation very much as it is related in the Bible, and located the Garden of Eden in a beautiful valley of Vanua Levu ; they recited to the earliest European visitors the story of the deluge, the building of the Tower of Babel, and the confusion of tongues, locating the scenes of these mighty events in their own islands, having no knowledge at the time of any other lands. They also prac-



A FIJIAN SUB-CHIEF ON THE WHARF OF LEVUKA.

ticed circumcision, but in all other respects connection with continental peoples, by custom or tradition, was lost. The Fiji group belong to Great Britain, and contain a population of about one hundred thousand souls, or less than one-half the number that occupied the

islands at the time of their discovery, while the diminution continues from the same causes that have operated to reduce the population of other Pacific islands. The principal city is Levuka, with nearly eight thousand people, from which there is a large export of copra (dried kernel of the cocoanut), sugar, maize, cotton, arrow-root, pineapples, and mother-of-pearl. The bays abound with excellent fishes, which comprise a considerable part of the food of the natives, and the marine life is of infinite wonder and variety. The most dangerous species are sharks, which grow to great size, and octopi, of which astounding stories are told. Captain Cook relates that he saw one of these infernal radiate, eight-armed monsters, dying upon the surface of a Fijian bay, beset by many sea-gulls, to whose attack its death was attributed. This supposition of Captain Cook's was based upon the disposition of these birds to give assistance to their kind when in distress. If the octopus had seized a gull while sitting on the water, its struggles would have certainly brought scores to its aid, and a combined attack from these would be sufficient to destroy a very large and formidable animal.

HOW GULLS KILLED
AN OCTOPUS.

THE STORY OF NEW ZEALAND.

The voyage westward from Fiji is by many inhabited islands, whose people have their distinct peculiarities, those of no two groups exhibiting identity of origin by either their appearance or customs. Yet an imperfect connection is traceable in similarity of speech, construction of their boats and in a few legends. Directly south of the Fiji archipelago, about fifteen degrees, is the large, boot-shaped island of New Zealand, which, like the Fiji group, was discovered by Tasman, but first visited by Captain Cook in 1769, who took possession of the land in the name of George III.

New Zealand consists of two large islands, North, and South New Zealand, and the colony also includes several smaller islands, such as the Auckland, Steward, and Chatham groups, the total area of which is about one hundred thousand square miles, or sixty-four million acres—nearly three times greater than the size of Indiana. Extending over so many degrees of latitude, New Zealand has a climate both warm and cold, the South Island corresponding in temperature to that of New York. Nearly four-fifths of South Island is extremely mountainous, but all parts are covered with fine pastures, upon which range vast herds of sheep. The highest peak is Mount Cook, 12,349 feet, which is part of a mountain chain extending north and south, but bisected at frequent intervals by easy passes. North Island is less broken, but both divisions have large tracts of rich lands, well adapted to such agriculture as is followed in the United States. The southwestern coast is almost precipitous, but indented by numerous fiords, entrance to which is often through narrow defiles, affording scenery of almost incomparable grandeur. On both sides the mountains rise abruptly from the sea to a height of six thousand feet, where the summits are perpetually white with snow, and to which no man has ever ascended. Milford Sound is especially beautiful, probably excelling in mighty magnificence all other scenery to be found in islands of the Pacific. The country is further diversified by large lakes, and by beautiful water-courses, none of which latter, however, are large enough to permit the navigation of any other than small boats. The population of New Zealand is about six hundred thousand, of which number probably forty thousand are aboriginals, that are steadily diminishing from causes already noted.

The original natives, as Cook found them, were large of stature, fierce of aspect, and cruel in disposition. It is a strange fact that they claimed descent from *Hawaiki*, which

seems to suggest Hawaii, an intimation that is strengthened by a similarity of language between the two peoples thus far removed. It is said that natives of Hawaii, the

Navigator Group, and of New Zealand, though speaking a different dialect, can yet understand each other. Tracing back similarities, we find that

THE WILD RACE there is a likeness of facial features, and other physiologic connection

OF MAORIS. between the Maoris of New Zealand and the aborigines of Malay, though there is no longer any lingual sameness.

When Cook visited New Zealand, he introduced upon the island dogs, pigs, fowls, potatoes, turnips, and cabbage, all of which flourished and are still grown by the natives. Having a considerable and well-armed force, he made several incursions into the interior,



SEA-GULLS FIGHTING AN OCTOPUS.

but was frequently intercepted by the natives, who maintained a hostile attitude, despite his overtures of peace and gifts of many articles. At one place, while their yawl was made fast to the shore of a little cove, Cook and his party found themselves suddenly beset by three hundred natives, who brandished their spears and clubs in a most threatening manner, all the while singing their war songs and manifesting an unmistakable intention of making a feast off white men's flesh. To save themselves Cook's party were compelled to send a volley into the savages, which had the effect of killing several and throwing the rest into a panic and rout.

At another point on the coast where he anchored, Cook was visited on board his ship by a company of Maoris, who brought with them the head of a man whose body had been eaten, which the visiting natives had the audacity to cook in the presence of the sailors, who



PINK TERRACE OF NEW ZEALAND, NEAR THE HOT BATHS.

permitted the abominable act in order to discover the extent to which the practice of cannibalism was carried. Very shortly afterward a party of nine of Cook's men, who had gone on shore for food and water, were set upon so suddenly that, though the Spaniards made a valorous defense, they were at length overpowered by numbers, and after being massacred were eaten, full circumstances of which tragic event Cook had repeated to him by a native participant who afterwards fell into his hands. From this native Cook was made acquainted with the manner in which New Zealanders go to war, and of their treatment of prisoners, which he describes

**SCENES OF
CANNIBALISM.**



COOK'S PARTY ATTACKED BY NEW
ZEALANDERS.

as being horrible in the extreme. Prior to their conversion to Christianity, the Maoris had no well-defined religious belief, and no idea whatever respecting a supreme being, though they entertained a kind of faith in the operation of spirits among the affairs of men, to benefit the good and to punish the evil-doer. Singular to relate, they had a notion amounting almost to theory and belief, that every living thing was the result of evolution, out of nothingness and darkness; that when a person died his spirit survived, but retired to some secret place, from which it issued upon occasions to

reward or punish the living. But they had no thought of propitiation, nor was their hazy beliefs accompanied by any form of worship or ceremony.

The Maoris were divided into tribes which had their chiefs and magicians, the latter acting in the dual capacity of doctors and elemental controllers. Each tribe was governed by an unwritten law regarding both land ownership and social relations, the results of which were to keep the tribes in constant warfare, since their laws were conflicting and the tenure of property was largely by might rather than by deed. The bodies of chiefs received special marks of honor by being embalmed and exposed for a time upon platforms erected for the purpose, after which their remains were taken in charge by the magicians, or priests, and deposited in caves or other hidden places. Whatever the chiefs possessed in life was rendered sacred by their deaths, every article being considered *tapued* (or *tabued*), the touching of which was an offence punished by both men and spirits. Slavery was practiced to a limited extent, prisoners of war being reduced to servitude, unless put to the more infamous purpose of gratifying cannibal propensities, which was more common.

In February, 1840, all the chiefs of New Zealand gathered in conclave at Waitangi, and there acknowledged their submission to Great Britain, by which act the Queen recognized the rights of the natives to their lands, which has ever since been respected, though it applies almost wholly to the uncultivated regions, after the manner of allotments to the Indians by the United States. There have been a few though unimportant insurrections, but the English colony has been able to provide amply for its internal defence, and serious conflicts are no longer probable. In the mid-interior Maoris of unmixed blood may still be found, but while uncivilized, they have ceased their former abominations and live at peace.

The country is rapidly developing, South New Zealand being ramified by railroads, and large cities, such as Wellington, Dunedin, Napier, Canterbury, and others having good harbors, are located on the coast of the two islands, and enjoy a large and rapidly growing commerce with both Europe and America. God hath wrought a wondrous thing in New Zealand!

THE GREAT ISLAND CONTINENT.

Twelve hundred miles due east of New Zealand lies Australia, the largest island of the world, which has not improperly been called the sixth continent. Its greatest breadth, from east to west, is twenty-five hundred miles, and north and south the island measures two thousand miles, thus giving it an area of about three million square miles, or about the same as that of the United States. There are many strange things connected with this large country, among which may be briefly enumerated the following: It has been indistinctly known since the time of Ptolemy, in the second century, referred to by Marco Polo, visited by several early navigators, and yet the honor of its discovery cannot be definitely placed.

Long as the island has been known, and lying under favorable climatic influence, yet quite two-thirds remains a *terra incognita*. This is remarkable, but not so wonderful as the fact that the animal life of Australia shows the most extraordinary, paradoxical, variance from that found upon all other lands of the earth. The kangaroo and opossum carry their young in belly pouches; the platypus, or duck-billed mole, lays eggs and hatches by incubation; the dogs are voiceless; the birds are without song, save the laughing jackass, which is a bird whose notes wake the silent shores and echo far over the waters which it frequents in quest of fish, until those who hear its cry for the first time imagine that it proceeds from a brazen throat of trumpet volume, or a donkey calling its mate from a foreign shore. Another

creature, belonging to the monotremes, nurses its young, not by teats, but by a distillation of milk from the mammary glands into the pouches that carry the young.

The first white persons to accomplish a passage of the continent from north to south was an expedition led by Burke and Willis in 1860, of which only one member (Mr. King) survived the return journey, all the others perishing in the desert. Other expeditions, in 1862 and 1873, traversed the island and succeeded in connecting the Gulf of Carpentaria on the north with Sidney, Melbourne, and other cities of the southeast coast by telegraph.

There is indisputable reason for believing that Australia is a comparatively modern production of the sea, for in not a few respects it has a marked resemblance to Sahara Desert, from which the ocean has receded in recent geologic times. Covering a great extent of territory, from the tropics almost to the Antarctic, it might be expected to have great diversity of climate, but in this natural inference we are disappointed, for Australia is uniformly hot, except the southeast region, which being mountainous is swept by the rigors

of winter. Generally, the continent presents a flat surface which prevents a play of air currents, and the heat is therefore in suspension during the day so that in summer, especially, the soil is subjected to the fiercest temperature as though it were furnace-heated. For the same reason, rain falls in small quantity, there being no mountains to cause a condensation of the clouds that float above the sandy plains, which sometimes have a temperature as high as 140° Fahrenheit in the shade, and life becomes insupportable. Under such conditions vegetation presents phases as curious as we have noticed in the animal life. Strange it is that notwithstanding the aridness of the soil, nearly all Australian trees are evergreens; but their leaves hang vertically, and present their edges to the sun; the eucalypti never drop their leaves, but shed the bark instead; the lily, tulip, and honeysuckle do not grow as plants, but as trees of large size; grass



THE LAUGHING JACKASS.

never grows in continuous swards as in other countries, but in tufts, or small detached clumps; the fruits and roots are medicinal, but few if any are edible.

The singularity of animal and vegetable life in Australia extends also to the reptiles, which are curious and often dangerous. Of sixty-three species of snakes forty-two are

STRANGE REPTILES OF AUSTRALIA.

venomous, and in the north country large pythons, capable of swallowing a medium-sized dog, are not uncommon. Among the several kinds of frogs there is one of a large species which is distinguished by having bright blue legs and a golden back. There are tortoises in abundance, and one turtle that grows to a length of nine feet. The most formidable creature, however, is a crocodile, found in the waters about Queensland, that grows to a length of thirty feet and is correspondingly ferocious. The monitor lizard, similar to its congener of the Nile, is

eight or nine feet long, burrows in the earth, and can swim or climb trees with equal ease. There are as many as fifty different species of lizards, one of which utters a shrill cry when injured or alarmed, and another that has a large frill about its neck which can be erected at will, and hops like a kangaroo, and still another that has the power of changing its color with great quickness from light to dark, or from yellow, gray, or deep red.

The original Australians came from the east, or from the northeast, certainly not from Asia. They have all the negroid characteristics except the woolly hair, theirs being generally long and straight. They practiced circumcision, and tattooing by scarifying the skin with shells, which instead of ornamenting seriously disfigured the face and body. Astonishing is the fact that the Bushmen, or original Australian, never cultivated the soil, raised any kind of food products, or kept any domestic animal except the dog, and nowhere built permanent dwellings, being content with the flimsiest temporary shelters. Being wholly without ingenuity they manufactured nothing except stone axes, lances, boomerangs, and a few simple utensils for household use which might be carried upon the person. The dress of both sexes was the same, being a skin or matting thrown around the body and fastened by a skewer at the open side. Their nets, made by women, were of the tendons of animals and sufficiently strong to hold the largest fish or animal, while their canoes were of considerable size and might be safely trusted in



EXPLORER KING AMONG THE BUSHMEN.

ordinary seas. A remarkable custom which they practiced was initiating young men, upon the attainment of their majority, by subjecting them to the severest ordeals of suffering. Oftentimes this introduction consisted in forcing the young men candidates to belabor each other with whips or cudgels until they were horribly cut and exhausted from loss of blood.

The Australians permitted a perfect license between the sexes before marriage, but after taking a husband chastity was required of the wife under penalty of death. Polygamy was allowed but it was not generally practiced. Whenever a native died from disease the sorcerers called a public inquest to view the body, at which questions were put to the dead man with the view of determining the cause of death. These inquisitions always resulted in creating great excitement both upon the part of the public as well as of the relatives, as the sorcerers, playing their part, never omitted to specify the tribe or person guilty of causing the death, in consequence of which neighboring tribes were in perpetual conflict. Bodies of those

**WITCHCRAFT AND
MORALS.**

slain in battle were often eaten, and the fat about the kidneys was preserved as having magic properties when smeared upon their weapons.

The Bushmen, like most Pacific islanders, had a very imperfect idea of a hereafter, and no religious beliefs. They had an indistinct superstition of a god called *Buddai* (probably derived from Buddha), which was represented as a titanic old man lying asleep somewhere with his head on his arm, who would some day awaken so hungry that he would eat up the world. Of the number of probably two hundred thousand aboriginals who are supposed to have lived in Australia when first visited by Europeans, less than seventy-five thousand remain, but these are distributed through all the provinces, and of course are rapidly disappearing. These, however, are intractable to Christian influence, and therefore continue



CORROBOREE DANCE OF NATIVE AUSTRALIANS.

in their original barbarism, living in huts of grass, moving from place to place in quest of food, and following the customs of their ancestors. Their most ancient amusements are still indulged, and their clothing is scarcely sufficient to cover their nakedness. In the native villages may still be witnessed the corroboree dance and also the ordeal of initiation, already described, so that in no respect do the Bushmen manifest the slightest civilizing tendencies.

Captain Cook explored the east coast of Australia in 1773, and eighteen years later, upon his recommendation, Port Jackson was founded as an English penal station. This was the beginning of British occupation of the island, which increased rapidly during the

succeeding fifty years, and by 1821 had begun to develop great industrial progress. In 1803, Van Dieman's Land, or Tasmania, was made an auxiliary penal station and so continued until 1825, when it became a separate province. Developments followed fast thereafter, as new settlements were formed one after another in New South Wales, and when in 1839 the system of penal colonization was abolished, a fresh impetus was given to industry, which was tremendously increased by discovery of gold in February, 1851, by E. Hargraves, of California, on Summerhill Creek. News of the discovery was not generally known until the following May, when there immediately succeeded such a stampede to the gold fields that business in the settlements and cities became paralyzed for lack of people. In August gold was found on Anderson's Creek, near Melbourne, and a few weeks later came the news of great gold discoveries in the Ballarat field, eighty miles west of Melbourne, and at Bendigo, now called Sandhurst, on the north. The excitement was only paralleled by that which broke forth over discoveries in California, by reason of which the population of Victoria was doubled in twelve months and her exports and imports were multiplied tenfold.

Although Australia received its greatest impetus from the rush of gold seekers, to which the country owes very much, it is a noteworthy fact that those provinces less rich in gold than Victoria have shown the largest prosperity since subsidence of the first excitement. New South Wales possesses great quantities of both coal and iron, which are mined with immense profit, and have led to it becoming a seat of manufactures. Queensland has also proved to be rich with minerals, of which tin is the most valuable. South Australia, besides having many large copper mines, has become the great pastoral and agricultural region of the continent. Wheat is now raised in such quantities as to make Australia a strong competitor of the United States, while the plains are covered with sheep, the wool industry now exceeding in importance all others of the island, and leading the world. Thus while the earliest fame of Australia was due to the finding of large gold deposits, she has developed into a great pastoral and agricultural country, in which her chief wealth and importance resides.

COLONIZATION OF AUSTRALIA.



AUSTRALIAN ABORIGINAL.

THE GREAT WOOL INDUSTRY.

ISLAND LANDS OF THE ORIENT.

PEOPLES OF THE PHILIPPINES.



THE ethnographic connection, sometimes pronounced, and again fading into less distinctness, that exists between islanders of the Pacific has been noticed, but we have now to observe that this line of relationship is broken at Australia. And it is astonishing that there should be small apparent connection, tribal or racial, between the islanders of the Malay Archipelago and peoples of the Asiatic continent, who are separated by straits which may be easily passed in large canoes, while racial traits are maintained between Pacific islanders separated by thousands of miles.

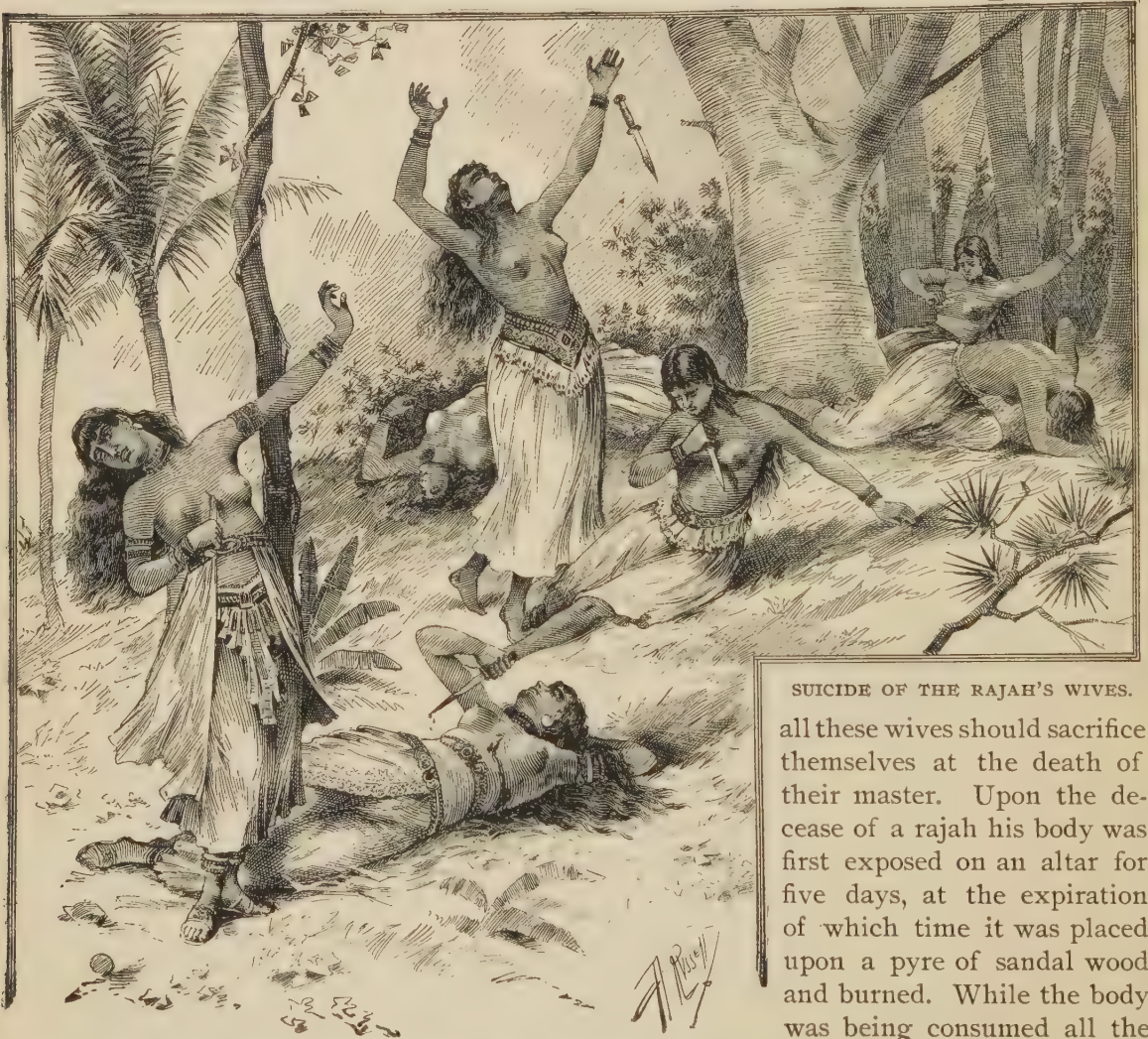
Directly north of Australia is the large island of New Guinea, land of the Papuans, a distinct people who show complete divergence from the Malayan type. West of New Guinea is Java, which again shows a remarkable dissimilarity in type and character from their nearest neighbors. Neither in Sumatra, Borneo, New Guinea, nor the Celebes, have the original inhabitants shown any civilized tendencies, whereas in Java the reverse obtains. In the interior are ruins of palaces that were little inferior to the most magnificent temples and structures of India; buildings of enormous proportions and constructed of immense stones, carved in a wondrous manner, and approached by flights of steps so long as to give a wondrous perspective view, imposing as it was magnificent. In some respects these Javan ruins are comparable, in both character and design, with the teocallis of South and Central America, which were reared, not by barbarians, but manifestly by peoples who had arrived at an advanced state of cultivation in the arts and sciences.

But while these ancient races were to an extent refined, industrious, and rich, they entertained beliefs that brought them back to savagery. Nothing else is so powerful in its influence upon mankind as religion, which so controls the mind as to bring every aspiration into subjection. Thus, however advantaged may be a people, by climate, soil, mineral wealth, topography, and even association, if they hold to a religion founded upon cruel superstition their development toward high conditions will be slow, and in proportion to the advance or decline of the slavish belief. On the other hand, a religion that is founded upon the noblest attributes of man will exert a tremendously uplifting influence, and speedily advance the most degraded people to a position of social betterment. To conflict of religious belief, no doubt, is as largely due the rise and fall of peoples as to war and plague. A refined race may be overwhelmed by barbarian hordes, as has been frequently done, and the civilization that required centuries to construct may be destroyed almost in a night, and morality, charity, godliness may, in the same way, be obliterated by subjection to the debasing influence of conquerors besotted by a vile religion.

When Cavendish, in 1588, landed on the shore of Java, he was astonished to learn of the palaces that were in ruins, near enough to the coast to permit him to visit them, and he

availed himself of the opportunity to examine these surprising monumental relics of what were once a civilized people. At this time Portuguese merchants had established a considerable trade in Java, and some of these entertained Cavendish during his stay. Considerable information was obtained respecting the natives whose degeneracy was an evidence of the effects of debasing superstitions. At the time of Cavendish's visit, that portion of Java where he stopped was governed by a rajah named Bolamboam, who was reputed to be one hundred and fifty years of age, and so venerated that no enterprise was undertaken by the Javanese without his sanction. Old as he was said to be, the rajah maintained a hundred wives, and his son half as many, from whom not only was the strictest obedience exacted, but custom required that

SUICIDE OF A HUNDRED WIVES.



SUICIDE OF THE RAJAH'S WIVES.

all these wives should sacrifice themselves at the death of their master. Upon the decease of a rajah his body was first exposed on an altar for five days, at the expiration of which time it was placed upon a pyre of sandal wood and burned. While the body was being consumed all the

wives filled the air with lamentations, and afterward repaired to a wood, where, at a signal given by the principal, who threw a sacred ball into their midst, they turned their exposed breasts toward the east, and each plunged a dagger into her heart, thus dying to accompany her lord into the spirit world. Whether the bodies were buried or burned Cavendish neglected to make report.

The Philippines comprise an archipelago of about fourteen hundred islands north of New Guinea and east of China, the southernmost chain approaching very near the east coast of Borneo. The population is estimated approximately at 11,000,000, of which number probably less than 2,000,000 are of the aboriginal race, though owing to the fact that several of the islands have never been explored, the estimating of the population is little better than guess work, nor is the statement of Domann, that the total area is 114,356 square miles any more reliable. The curious fact remains that while the Philippines are perhaps the richest and most important islands of the Pacific, we know least about the natives, and almost nothing of the fauna and flora.

All the islands are mountainous, but the highest peaks do not exceed 9000 feet, and the elevation of coral reefs into raised beaches, as well also the number of sea shells found upon the ridges, lead to the belief that most of the islands have been heaved from below the sea-level within comparatively recent times. Volcanic forces have had powerful effect throughout the Philippines and several continue their activity with at times terribly destructive results. Luzon is the largest island of the archipelago, and likewise the most important, for Manilla, the capital, is located thereon; it is also famous for its burning volcano, known as Monte Cagua, which discharges great quantities of smoke perpetually. Of still greater curiosity are three burning mountains of Southern Luzon, one of which, called Taal, forty-five miles south of Manilla is only 850 feet high and therefore has the distinction of being the lowest volcano in the world.

The three craters of South Luzon are situated in a small island that rises out of Lake Bongbong which covers an area of 100 square miles and has an extreme depth of 600 feet.

FRIGHTFUL DESTRUCTION FROM ERUPTIONS. It is said that this large lake was the result of a terrible volcanic eruption in the year 1700, which precipitated a mountain 9000 feet high and left a deep basin which afterward filled with water from subterranean springs. Near the lake is an extinct volcano from the base of which issues a large stream of hot water, used for bathing purposes.

There are probably fifty volcanic peaks on the islands of which nearly a dozen continue active, and some have caused appalling calamities. An eruption that took place in February, 1814, partially destroyed five towns on Luzon, and caused the loss of 12,000 lives, the scoria ejected being in such quantities that whole forests were so entirely covered that the tops of the loftiest trees were hidden. A similar fate befell the same district in 1867, and the calamity was again repeated, though with less loss of life, in 1881.

Volcanoes have been a source of great danger in the Philippines ever since their discovery, but to these perils are added those of storms and earthquakes. In October, 1876, the islands were swept by one of the most direful storms of history, during which a dozen towns were laid waste and 6000 houses were destroyed. The number of persons who perished has never been accurately reported but it is supposed to have exceeded 20,000. Earthquakes are frequent but much less destructive, the most disastrous being that of 1871, when the town of Cottobato was devastated, and in July, 1880, the central part of Luzon, Manilla, and other towns, received great damage.

HISTORY OF THE PEOPLE. The discovery and conquest of the Philippines are subjects of stirring interest, both romantic and bloody. The first European to sight their shores was Ferdinand Magellan, March 12, 1521, who landed at Simar. He was now directly north of the Moluccas, though unaware of their proximity, but nevertheless he knew that he had accomplished the end proposed, and that his fame was



ERUPTION OF MONTE CAGUA, THAT DESTROYED 12,000 LIVES.

secure as the first navigator who had reached the east by way of the west. His chief ambition being thus satisfied, Magellan addressed himself to the task of making conquests for his master. Thenceforth he took possession of every island he visited in the name of the king of Spain, and planted the cross as a symbol of its conquest and annexation. After thus formerly establishing the control of Spain over several of the Philippines, he arrived, on April 7, at the island of Zebu. Here he at once opened negotiations with the king, showed him the benefits that would accrue from a Spanish protectorate, and so cleverly were his arguments stated that the king not only consented to become a Spanish vassal, but also to embrace Christianity. This was a piece of unexpected good fortune, for to make converts was as much a part of Magellan's duty as to complete conquests. A large tent formed of the sails of the ships was set upon the shore, under which the king was baptized and named King Charles, and twenty-three hundred of his people were in one day added to the number of believers. Great was the rejoicing. Imposing were the ceremonials. All the guns of the fleet were loaded and fired again and again in honor of the occasion; all the flags were displayed; all the crews paraded in their finest uniforms. The sermon of the officiating priest compared the day to that of Pentecost. Valuable presents were given by Magellan and the captains to the king, who in return sent them whole cargoes of fruits, besides spices, wine, oil, and what more than all excited the cupidity of the Spaniards, several bags of gold dust. Visits of ceremony were exchanged between the king and the admiral; and the queen, delighted beyond expression with the gift of a looking-glass, insisted that she too must be baptized, and a day was appointed for the public ceremony. Clad in costly garments and attended by forty of her ladies, she submitted to the rite, and another great festival was held. Never had the like been known, for besides adding this wealthy island to the crown of Spain, Magellan had converted its entire population to the faith.

Emboldened by his splendid success, he determined that this should be but the beginning of his conquests; that as Columbus had added a world to Spain, so would he; nor would he stop till all the islands which surrounded him on every hand should admit his authority. A man of resolute purpose and prompt action, to conceive was to carry into execution. He persuaded the king of Zebu that as he was now a Christian, all the neighboring islands ought to be subject to him, and offered to help him conquer them. The proposition was favorably considered by the king, who, although conversion to Christianity had not induced him to dispense with his idols in spite of the remonstrances of Magellan, evidently thought himself enough of a Christian to govern the neighboring islands if they could be conquered. The admiral had little confidence in the religious professions of the dusky monarch, but thinking he might be used as a convenient tool, determined to undertake the task of subjugating the surrounding islands and conciliating them under one rule.

Messengers were therefore sent to the island of Matan, which was in sight, requiring its king to submit and pay tribute to Magellan, and to the king of Zebu, who had formerly been his vassal. He refused, whereupon Magellan entered at once upon an intended career of conquest by arming sixty of his men, and with a large force of friendly Indians proceeded to Matan to make an attack. Confident of the superiority of his men and arms, he requested his savage allies to remain in their canoes and witness with what ease the Spaniards could overcome an enemy. The water was shallow, and the boats were compelled to remain two bow shots from the shore. Magellan with forty-two Spaniards landed about three hours before daylight, and sent messengers to the people of Matan, desiring that they reconsider their refusal to submit,

A BATTLE WITH THE NATIVES.

otherwise they should learn how Spanish lances and bullets could wound. A fierce reply came back, and as soon as day broke the Spaniards beheld a strange spectacle. As far as the eye could reach up the beach, from the seashore to the jungle of the interior, a solid mass of footmen presented itself to their gaze. A forest of lances waved as the savage warriors danced and shouted, and ere the battle began the air was filled with flying arrows and javelins. Singing, dancing and shouting, waving their shields and feathery banners in the air, the savages advanced to the attack, two thousand five hundred strong. Like a wave of

the ocean they rolled upon and around the little group of Spaniards on the beach. Bravely the whites resisted; they fired again and again, but their powder was bad, and the balls did not penetrate the shields of dry hide. Finding themselves unhurt even after repeated discharges of the Spanish fire-arms, the Indians, grown bolder, fell on the Spaniards with lance, arrow, and club. Armor was no protection, for the Indians, perceiving they could

**HORRIBLE BUT HEROIC
DEATH OF MAGELLAN.**



DEATH OF MAGELLAN AT THE HANDS OF PHILIPPINE ISLANDERS.

not wound the bodies of their foes, struck at their legs and arms. With heroic valor the Spaniards resisted, but by sheer force of numbers were slowly pressed into the water. Back to back, the Spanish kept up the battle, no longer for conquest, but for life. In the front rank stood the admiral in his white armor and gilded helmet blazing in the sun, a conspicuous mark for hostile missiles. A hundred lances were leveled at him; but he withstood them all, until at last an Indian from behind struck a javelin deep into his sword-arm, while

another in front wounded him in the face with a lance. Magellan's arm fell helpless and at the same time a tall savage with a coronet of feathers struck a terrific blow on the admiral's leg. The brave Magellan sank down, still fighting; a dozen savages threw themselves on him, and yet they could not overcome him before he had killed several of his foes. Deserted by his men, overwhelmed by his foes, he kept up the hopeless struggle; but the end came when a savage, with face painted red, struck the old soldier on the head with a huge club, crushing helmet and skull, and the gallant captain fell dead in the water.

After the death of Magellan the natives consolidated their forces in an attempt to expel the Spaniards, and there being no one competent to take the place of the fallen commander, they suffered the loss of thirty-two men in two days, which so reduced their force that one of



CAPTURE AND SACK OF CEBU.

the three ships was burned because there was now not enough sailors to man them, and the expedition returned home without further efforts at aggrandizement.

The most glowing reports were spread in Spain by returned members of the Magellan expedition, of the wealth that might be obtained by traffic with natives of the oriental islands, which incitements to adventure led Portuguese navigators to extend their enterprises of exploration into those parts, the results of which was the occupation by traders of that nationality of several of the islands and the development of a considerable influence, much to the jealous regret of the Spaniards. Finally, upon the accession of Philip II. to the throne of Spain, he decided upon making an effort to destroy all Portuguese interests in

SPANISH ATROCITIES IN THE PHILIPPINES.

the Philippines, and to enter upon a conquest of the islands for the "Glory of God and the gain of Spanish interests." By the king's orders an expedition set sail in the latter part of 1564, and in January following discovered a small island which Legaspi named De los Barbudos. On the following morning they came in sight of a chain of islands which, because of the shoals that surrounded them, they called De los Plazeres. Two days later, another chain of islands was found, which the Spaniards named The Sisters. These islands are supposed to be the Piscadores and the Arrescifes of modern charts. The fleet finally landed at the Ladrones, where it was decided to form a settlement; but the sealed orders of the king being opened here, they found that the decree ordered the establishment of a settlement in the Philippines. The natives proved to be kindly and hospitable, but were such consummate thieves that from this propensity the islands received their European



PHILIPPINE ISLANDERS SENDING FRUITS TO THE SPIRIT OF THE SEA.

designation. Their dwellings were handsomely formed and lofty, being raised some distance from the ground by stone pillars, and divided into square chambers, which were usually occupied by several families, living in a strictly communal state. The only creatures which they found among them were parrots, which the natives kept in cages and taught to speak, and a few chickens. The islanders had an extremely rude kind of religion, consisting, it would seem, of the worship of the bones of their ancestors. This would appear, however, to have been more of the nature of reverence than a system of worship, as they seemed to have no idea of a spiritual existence. In February the fleet anchored off the eastern shore of the island of Tandaya, which is one of the Philippines. The natives received them with manifestations of friendship, and at the solicitation of Legaspi they entered into

an alliance, which was attested by the chiefs and the commander drawing blood from their arms and breasts and mingling it with wine or water, and drinking it together as a pledge of mutual fidelity. This bond, however solemnly made, was not faithfully kept; for the natives soon discovered the avaricious policy of the Europeans and directly accused them of giving good words, but performing bad deeds. The fleet sailed from one island to another, but the inhabitants of each exhibited a similar want of confidence in the Spaniards, so that one station after another was abandoned, until at last Zebu was selected as the place for a settlement. The natives here were no more disposed to enter into friendly relations with the Spaniards than on the other islands, so that, losing faith in peaceful methods, the Spaniards found a pretext for aggression, and the foundation of the first settlement of the Spaniards in the Philippines was made in the smouldering ashes of the sacked capital of Zebu. The capital which was founded at Zebu, or Cebu as it is frequently spelled, was removed by Legaspi in 1571, to Manilla on account of the superior harborage of this place, which has grown rapidly, in recent years especially, and now has a population of 300,000, with all the facilities and luxuries of a great city.

The aboriginals of the Philippine archipelago are dark, almost black, but they are neither Papuan, Chinese, nor negroes. Their total number at this time probably does not

exceed 25,000 for they have disappeared rapidly under the oppressions of
PEOPLE OF THE their conquerors. In size they are more diminutive than even their
PHILIPPINES. Corean neighbors, averaging in height considerably less than five feet, and

their limbs are as small as those of children ten years of age. The nose is flat as the negro's, lips thick, hair black and frizzled and their feet large, and what is particularly remarkable is the fact that they have prehensile toes, by which provision they are enabled to grasp an object with almost as much facility by means of their toes as with their hands. They wear little clothing, tattoo themselves, have no permanent abode, and subsist chiefly on honey, game, fish, wild fruits, palm-cabbage, and arum root. Wars with neighboring Malays drove the people to take refuge in the least accessible parts of the islands, and in these sections the aboriginals are now to be found. Others, that have assimilated somewhat with the Malays, inhabit the low-lands and live in houses built upon piles above water, after the manner of the Dyaks. Externally all the islanders are Roman Catholics, but nevertheless they retain many of their ancient superstitions, but are careful to practice their forms of religious ceremony in secret. One of their strangest ceremonies, not completely understood is the offering of fruits to the spirit of the sea, which is practiced by a few of the tribes who occupy some of the small islands where missionary influence has been but slightly felt. This strange sacrifice is made at night at the time of full moon, when a native priest leads a company of devotees to some still portion of the beach, where he constructs a small bamboo raft upon which are placed a variety of fruits of the season, and two or three young chickens. When completed the raft is pushed into the water by the priest, who with prayers of a propitiatory character solemnly makes his offerings to the spirit of the sea. The far interior tribes also make similar offerings to the spirits of the lakes, but no white person has been able to obtain a satisfactory explanation of either the ceremony, or of the native conception of the deity whom they worship, or thus seek to propitiate.

The native islanders are a people especially fond of music and amusements, cock-fighting and theatricals being in especial favor. The three chief tribes are the Tagals, the Visayas, and the Igalotes, the latter showing traces of Chinese and Japanese intermixtures. These are dirty and savage looking but they are industrious agriculturists, construct

irrigation canals with great skill, and also excel as metal workers. Their morals are in striking contrast with those which distinguish the licentious Malays, for they are monogomists, allow no divorce, and severely punish infidelity. In conducting agricultural pursuits they show ingenuity, industry, and persistence, for their forms are models of careful cultivation. But while work appears to be a pleasure, music is a passion, which they combine even in the field, so that it is not an unusual thing to see a brass-band discoursing before a horde of laborers gathering the rice plant. Proprietors of large estates frequently employ the incentive of music to stimulate his male and female field hands and finds it profitable to do so.

The Chinese, in spite of massacres and administrative restrictions, compose a considerable element in the Philippines, not only being a large part of the present population, but



PHILIPPINE ISLANDERS GATHERING RICE TO THE ACCOMPANIMENT OF A BRASS-BAND.

in their hands is the principal banking interests of the islands. The principal productions are rice, hemp, tobacco, coffee, sugar, and cocoa. Tobacco was a government monopoly of Spain from 1781 until 1882, under which drastic operations, while any one might raise tobacco, the government alone could buy, and not only was this right reserved, but the government also fixed the price, and paid for the purchases whenever it suited the convenience of the exchequer, which sometimes was not until two or three years. Besides this, a tribute of 2,500,000 pounds was annually sent to Spain, which was a tenth of the entire product, and as each district was required to furnish a certain quantity of the leaf, the peasant was often compelled to cultivate tobacco when other crops might be more profitable, severe penalties being provided for refusal to comply with the government's exactions. Since abolition

**PRODUCTIONS OF
THE ISLANDS.**

of the monopoly the manufacture of tobacco into cigars and cigarettes has grown to extraordinary proportions, twenty thousand persons being engaged in the industry in Manilla alone. Manilla-hemp, coffee, and sugar comprise the chief exports, next to cigars, and to accommodate the commerce of the islands a thousand vessels are required.



PHILIPPINE INSURGENTS SLAUGHTERED IN SPANISH STOCKADES.

of shameful oppressions. One of the most serious uprisings took place in 1876, which was put down by the mailed hand of General Weyler, who adopted the same cruel methods that he used so savagely, but vainly, in Cuba. The people of these islands, however, lack the spirit and endurance that has so markedly distinguished the Cubans, and speedily succumbed

The political conditions which obtain in the Philippines are identical with those that have caused so much suffering in Cuba. The home government has imposed the most onerous burdens upon the people, has compelled them to support a profligate Captain-General with numerous attaches, and to provide places at high salaries for broken-down aristocrats, who must fatten from the public revenues. A large standing army is also kept on the island, and heavy issues of bonds have been made from time to time to pay the expenses of government exploitation in other fields. To no single cause, therefore, can the frequent rebellions that take place on the islands be attributed, but may be comprehended under the general charge

before the bloody knife, the dripping bayonet, and the Gatling guns turned loose upon them. This prompt quelling of the Philippine insurgents gave to General Weyler the reputation of being a resolute and adroit commander, and he was crowned with extravagant honors upon his return to Spain. During his Captain-Generalship in the Philippines, he placed the islands in a more perfect state of defence, and inaugurated a system for the hygienic betterment of the previously extremely filthy people of Manilla, that has reduced the death rate materially. Other reforms were established of scarcely less importance to the inhabitants, and in these respects General Weyler's rule, both as Governor-General and Captain-General, was highly beneficial to Manilla in particular, and to the islands as well.

The old abuses, continued, however, no attempt having been made to lift the unequal burdens that Spain chose to impose upon her island colonies. The collection of tribute is no longer in force, but the government abolished one kind of tax only to lay another, and, as before explained, the system so iniquitously established of issuing bonds without material benefits to the islanders, to replenish the home treasury, exhausted by emprises in other parts of the world, and to support government favorites, has reduced the people to such a state of exasperation that rebellion is either open or in a quiescent state, ready to break out at the call of any trusted leader.

When General Weyler was ordered to Cuba to relieve General Campos, and the people of the Philippines realized that his mailed hand had lost its grip upon their throats, the tocsin of civil war was immediately rung, and rebellious clans hurried to their rendezvous to start afresh the flames that needed little fanning. The action of the insurgents, however, was not energetic, but desultory, and no striking or decisive events have succeeded. A large army is maintained upon the islands, to which accessions have been made as the exigencies required. The natives, while numerous, are under disadvantages which no amount of patriotic daring can remove, among which may be noted: The population is so mixed—aboriginals, Chinese, Japanese, and Malays,—that there can be no assimilation, either in spirit or purpose, for diverse religions give diversity of sentiment, so that while the main object is independence, there is no perfect union to accomplish this end. The islands are situated where they can obtain few supplies except through legitimate channels, and for this lack of outside aid the insurgents are driven to the extremity of conserving their limited stores of arms and ammunition by resorting to guerilla tactics, and striking only the most exposed places, devastating unprotected districts and raiding helpless villages. But this mode of warfare makes it impossible for the government forces to strike effective blows, for it is the slow movement of an army against the quick stroke and retreat of a squad which, scattering like a covey of frightened quails, finds refuge in secret places.

**THE REBELLION
OF 1896.**

And thus the rebellion continues, which, when suppressed, will very soon break out again, for peace cannot come to any country that is under the fierce oppressions of Spanish domination. In the meantime these fertile and beautiful islands, like Cuba, are scenes of desolation, whereas, under just laws, they would rank among the most prosperous lands of the earth.

THE EMPIRE OF LITTLE GIANTS.

THE JAPANESE, A PEOPLE OF WONDROUS RESOURCES.



Since the many empires and independent governments of the earth, there are only two that are insular, namely, Great Britain and Japan; and the coincidence that both have nearly the same population, is worthy to be noted, and, it may be added, each are masters of their respective seas. In some respects, as recent developments have abundantly shown, the Japanese—who must rightly be treated as a nation, rather than as islanders—are the most wonderful people of the globe, whose origin is as difficult to determine as their remarkable development is impossible to comprehend. Thirty, certainly forty, years ago Japan was regarded with much less interest than Australia, and the small consideration the country received was chiefly as a benighted land offering advantages to European explorers. Almost at a bound she has burst upon us as a nation of extraordinary virility, permanence, and intellectual activity, that has forced her way suddenly, almost meteorically, into prominence as a great power, both commercially and military. She is to-day the only really great nation—for China is not to be thus reckoned—that remains without the pale of Christianity; upon the people of which heroic missionaries have exerted their influence without wholesome results, or material effect. Such a country must have the largest interest for all who are concerned in the progress of civilization, and the following cursory history of the Japanese is, therefore, attempted with the hope of inspiring a greater desire to know more about the nation rather than with the thought of satisfying that which has been aroused by recent events.

The question, whence the origin of the Japanese, must be asked in vain, for the most diligent investigation of centuries has signally failed to trace the people to their source, and while many theories have been advanced not one is satisfying.

WHENCE CAME THE JAPANESE?

Their traditions teach them that they are children of the sun, just as the Chinese maintain that they are themselves heaven-born, celestials, the God-begotten. They have a very ancient history, but it is so mythological as to be wholly untrustworthy and therefore affords no starting point from which to study their origin. By their legends we are told of their heavenly descent, and their pedigree is thus traced back to their first sovereign, called *Tensho Daijin*, who was the sun goddess. Their ancient annals represent that the beginning of the world was succeeded by the rule of seven generations of heavenly deities, who in turn were replaced by five generations of earthly deities, from whom were descended the mortal sovereigns, of which their present emperor is the one hundred and twenty-third. From chronology that we have reason to believe is reliable the first emperor, of which history gives any authentic account, was Jimmu, who came to the Japanese throne about 660 B. C., so that the present year (1898) would be the 2558th of their era.

It is not unreasonable to believe that, instead of being descended from a primary stock, the Japanese are an amalgamation of several races, of which the *Ainos*, of the island of Yezo, are the most ancient, and who may therefore be regarded, for the sake of classification and study, as the indigenous people. There is a probability that the country was invaded from the south by the Papuans, and from the west by peoples of Asia, who, advancing northward, drove the Ainos northward to the more rigorous and less fertile island of Yezo, where they have since remained, and in a condition of original savagery. The conquerors seem to have settled in the region of Kioto, from whom the modern Japanese are descended.

It was at Kioto that the emperor, called *Mikado* (signifying, Son of the Sun) established his court and exacted allegiance from everyone in the empire, though he was distinguished for the simplicity of his style of living which, so far as food and dress were concerned, was scarcely above that of his humblest subjects. Subsequently a powerful military class arose, which so far obtained dominion over the people that the Mikado became no more than a figure-head, and was, in fact, a prisoner in his palace. Ambition and jealousy presently led to the formation of a rival military organization, which precipitated a rebellion in the twelfth century that raged with such violence that the adherents of the Taira clan were annihilated, and the Minamoto became supreme. Thus the country continued in the throes of rebellion and suffered from the oppressions of self-constituted authority until 1868, when the people rallied to the support of the Mikado and defeating the Tokugawa clan, which had long been in power, restored the emperor to all his sovereign rights, which have never since been disputed.



JAPANESE BELLES.

The Japanese Empire comprises about three thousand islands in the Pacific off the coast of China, and a population of about forty million souls. A considerable number of the islands, particularly the Kurile group, are barren rocks, and others are so small as to be incapable of supporting any inhabitants, but others are of great size and are generally exceedingly fertile. Complete surveys have not been made, but the total area is computed to be 148,456 square miles, which area is about 30,000 square miles greater than the aggregate

of England, Scotland, and Ireland. The claim heretofore made of the denseness of population of Japan has been thoroughly disproved, the opinion formerly entertained having been based upon the superficial observation of travelers who had confined their investigations to the cities and principal highways. It is a fact, as represented, that the suburban districts are not only densely populated, but

**EXTENT OF THE
EMPIRE.**

along the kept roads the houses are so numerous that the families are restricted to the cultivation of very small gardens, but off these the country is so thinly settled that many miles often intervene between farm-houses. The density of the urban population, however, is astonishingly great, in which respect Japan resembles China. The largest cities are Tokio, formerly called Yedo, which is now the capital, Ozaka, and Kioto, and for purposes of administration the empire is divided into three municipal provinces under the sub-government of thirty-five prefectures, who are answerable to the emperor, a system which went into effect after the opening of the treaty ports in 1859, and has been

found to work with great satisfaction, by enabling the government to keep more thoroughly informed of the needs of the several provinces, and thus answers, to an extent, the same purpose obtained by parliamentary representatives, or congressmen elected to represent respective districts.

The population of Japanese cities, like those of China, can only be approximated, as no exact census is taken in



JAPANESE DOMESTICS.

those countries. The most careful estimates made by government officials gives the following results: Tokio, 1,500,000; Ozaba, 373,000; Kioto, 370,000; Yokohama, 60,000. Kioto is not a treaty port, and foreigners may not reside within the city unless under Japanese employ.

Mighty forces of nature have been in operation in Japan to build up and to devastate, the country showing the effects of the mightiest cataclysms that have rent the earth. But while great mountains have been upheaved, vast plains are left by the receding sea, and the fertility of these is compensation for the aridity of lofty mountains, which occupy so large a part of the area. The scenery, too, is almost incomparably beautiful, equaling in grandeur the most picturesque sections of the Bernese Alps.

The most famous mountain of Japan is Fujisan, often written Fusi-no-yama, which attains an elevation of 12,000 feet, rising in a symmetrical truncated cone, with a central

**DANGEROUS VOLCANOES
OF JAPAN.**

crater 500 feet deep, and visible from the sea at a distance of nearly one hundred miles. The importance of this mountain is not confined to its prominence, but rather to the sacred regard in which it is held by all Japanese, thousands of whom make annual pilgrimages to its lotus-shaped apex. The volcano is now quiescent, but history gives the record of several terrible eruptions, during which Fujisan carried destruction to a large district. The last of these paroxysms occurred in 1707, when the whole summit suddenly burst into flames, and vomited forth such quantities of rock, scorie, and lava that the country for miles around was overwhelmed, and ashes fell in Yedo, sixty miles distant, to a depth of six inches.

According to a generally accepted tradition of the people, Fujisan was raised from the sea in a single night some two thousand years ago, and the more ignorant add to this tradition the legend that the devil, or spirit of the sea, thus exhibited his power over earth and water as a warning of greater calamity to come unless the people should give more loyal allegiance to their emperor. This legend, no doubt, is the origin of the sacred feeling which Japanese entertain for the mountain. It is an interesting sight to watch the pilgrims, and to observe the provisions made to encourage their devotion. Before starting upon their journey pilgrims must undergo seven days of purification, and are then invested with white robes, upon which priests stamp various seals and images, and these are ever after carefully preserved as testimonies of duty performed in paying devotion to the mountain. There are three different routes of ascent, along all of which are scattered at intervals temporary bazars and restaurants to supply refreshments to the pilgrims, and as the journey must be made

some time between the first of July and the first of September, when the heat of summer is greatest, the business of these refreshment stands is chiefly in dispensing cooling drinks, but no intoxicants.

The largest active volcano in Japan is Asama-yama, 8500 feet in height, the eruptive periods of which are a century or more apart. The earliest record of activity is 1650, when the mountain did great damage by pouring out lava that destroyed several villages and overflowed a large extent of country. A more violent eruption occurred in 1783, and



JAPANESE NURSE GIRLS.

in 1870 took place a third outburst, accompanied by severe earthquake shocks that did considerable damage to the treaty port of Yokohama. The volcano is never completely at rest, for there constantly issues from its deep throat stifling sulphur fumes that so impregnate the air with poison vapors that no vegetation can thrive within a mile of the mountain.

The four largest islands of the empire are well watered, and though generally narrow they are ramified by considerable rivers, some of which are as much as one hundred and fifty miles long and of a depth sufficient to permit navigation of steamers drawing two feet of water, thus affording splendid transportation facilities between the interior and the coast. The large streams, however, are usually narrow, except near their mouths, and, being fed by countless tributaries, they are subject to frequent overflows that cause great loss of property. It is singular that notwithstanding the annual recurrence of such disasters no provision is made

RIVERS AND LAKES.

to guard against them. These river valleys being wonderfully rich, the people attach themselves to bottom lands and cannot be induced to remove therefrom, nor to protect themselves by building levees, so that to the destruction of property there is to be added the loss of life, which is great. The principal crop raised on these lowlands is rice, vast fields of which are cultivated by admitting the



JAPANESE FRUIT STAND.

overflow of lateral streams, which are easily controlled except during periods of freshets.

Japan is watered by numerous lakes, in addition to its rivers, the largest of which is Biwa, fifty miles long and twenty miles wide, which tradition declares was formed at the same time that Fujisan was raised out of the sea by the hand of the ocean spirit. It is one of the most beautiful bodies of water in the world, surrounded by magnificent scenery, and is a favorite resort of the wealthy residents of Kioto, who boat and bathe in the waters, and in the fall shoot wild fowl that are found plentiful on its surface and shores.

The Empire of Japan extends north and south a distance of nearly fifteen hundred miles, and therefore while the extreme northern portion has a rigorous climate during winter, the southern islands bask in perpetual summer. But the section thus favored by a genial sun is subject to violent storms and earthquakes, the former occurring during July, August, and September in the form of revolving typhoons, which exert such fearful force as to uproot, or twist in twain, the largest trees and cause terrible damage to shipping. Earthquakes were formerly

CLIMATE AND EARTHQUAKES.

much more frequent and severe than at the present time. In the year 416 the imperial palace at Kioto was demolished, and in 599 nearly all the buildings throughout the province of Yamato were destroyed, which created such fear that by imperial decree the people offered up petitions to the deity of earthquakes to spare the land. In 679 a shock caused the earth to open in a vast chasm four miles long and twenty feet deep, into which many houses were tumbled. A similar catastrophe took place in the year 829 in the northern province of Dewa, when among other damage wrought the castle of Akita was destroyed and the river Akita was dried up. In more recent times earthquakes of as great violence have visited Japan; thus in the year 1702 the strong walls and deep moat that surrounded the castle of Yedo were annihilated, and a great tidal wave broke upon the coast with such power as to change the surface of the earth in the vicinity. In 1854 seven provinces were laid waste by an earthquake visitation, which besides demolishing the town of Shimoda, the first port opened to foreign trade, wrecked the Russian frigate *Diana*, which at the time was anchored in the harbor. In the following year a more violent shock occurred in the vicinity of Yedo and extended as far west as Tokaido,



A JINRIKISHA.

which caused the destruction of 14,241 dwellings and 1649 fire-proof storehouses, followed by a fire that raged with incredible fury, to the great increase of loss of property and life.

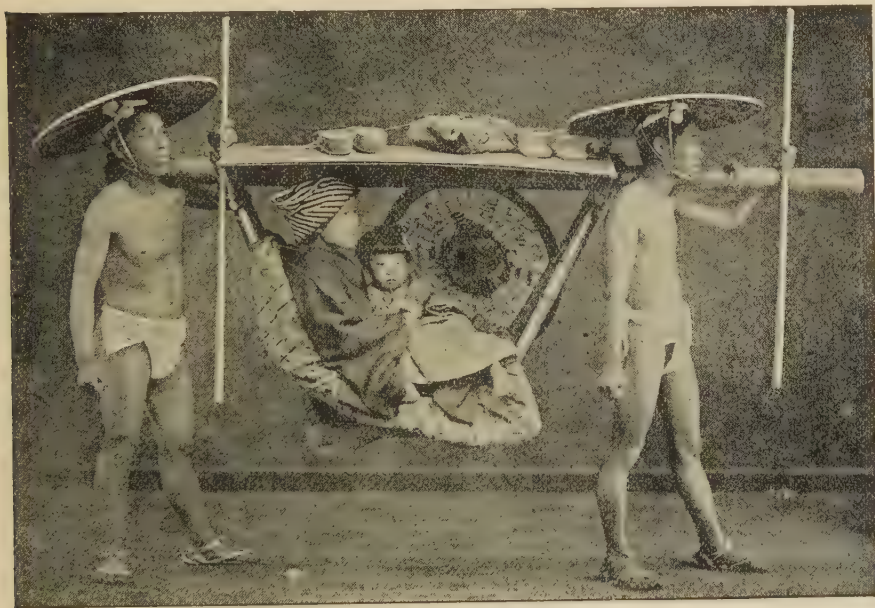
The introduction of railways in recent years has served to immensely increase facilities of transportation and travel, but ancient means of conveyance are still extensively used in every part of the empire. On the national roads small wagons are employed to haul passengers, drawn by one or two bullocks, or by ponies. In the large cities the principal vehicle for passengers is a small two-wheeled gig called *jinrikisha* which is drawn by one or two coolies (natives), and so popular have they become since their introduction in 1870, that as many as twelve thousand are now in use in Tokio alone, and in other cities of the empire they are regarded with equal favor. They are drawn at a speed of six miles an hour, and the charge for one or two persons is usually four cents per mile. Other forms of conveyance are the palanquin, the larger kind, borne by four coolies, being employed to carry the wealthy class, and a small basket-work litter called a *kago* slung from a pole across the shoulders of two men, used most generally in the suburban districts, and by the poorer classes in the cities. In the country, especially where the roads are narrow and stony, pack-horses are employed extensively, which are shod

**CONVEYANCES
IN JAPAN.**

with sandals of straw to protect the frog of the foot, and around the necks of which is a string of small bells, to herald approach at particularly narrow passes. Oxen, similarly shod, are also used in the same districts, and when too poor to afford animals of burden, the natives carry heavy packages fixed upon the two ends of a pole with the centre resting upon their shoulders.

While the cities of Japan are great centres of active industry, in which may now be found evidences of wealth, refinement, and comfort, the villages exhibit an opposite extreme, while rural life is hard, and dreadfully slavish. The houses are no more than temporary huts of poles and grass, the food is meagre, and for clothing anything is used that will tie up nakedness. These hard conditions compel every one to work incessantly, and to subsist on the most inexpensive diet, for with the agriculturists it is less a question of profit-making than of bare means of supporting life. In this conflict with poverty, children and women

**VILLAGE AND RURAL
LIFE.**



JAPANESE CARRYING A LADY AND CHILD.

take a part from daylight until darkness, and though rice is the principal thing cultivated, the producers cannot afford even so cheap a food, and hence their chief diet is millet, mixed with coarse barley, which is nourishing but not appetizing. Their farming implements are extremely primitive, consisting of a small plow having one handle, that is dragged through the mud of the rice fields

by pony, ox, or coolie. For separating the grain from the stalks a handmade machine is used, consisting of long iron teeth set in a log, through which the stalks are drawn by hand, thus shelling out the grain, which is then winnowed by equally primitive fans. Hoes and spades are well made, but their sickles are straight iron blades, four inches long, sharpened on one side and set in a handle fifteen inches long. Where so much poverty abounds, and the rewards of labor are so starvingly small, it is not surprising that shortness of crops are frequently followed by agrarian riots, during which the hungry peasants often burn and pillage the residences of the officials who collect the fixed land tax levied by the government. But hard as is the condition of the peasantry now, it is much less severe than formerly, when the feudal system obtained, under which the most merciless exactions were made, in consequence of which starvation was common. The government is proceeding on generous lines to ameliorate the poverty of the agricultural classes, by extending aid in the event of inundations, poor harvests, or other calamities, and has established a system of free schools little inferior to that in operation in the United

States, while the Japanese judicial administration is also similar to that of Great Britain and America.

The Japanese have resisted the influence of Christianity, and so opposed were they to its introduction that many of the early missionaries sent among them were murdered ; but since the opening of treaty ports (1859) to the commerce of the world, all religions are tolerated and no restrictions are laid upon any beliefs. The earliest form of religious faith embraced by the Japanese was *Shintoism*, the literal significance of which is "the way of the gods." By this form of teaching, which is but a shadow of religion, there is no need for a code of morals, since every one acts according to the dictates of conscience. Japan was believed to be the country of the gods, and the *mikado* was declared to be not only directly descended from, but the actual representative of the sun goddess. This side of *Shintoism* embraces hero-worship, not only of the *mikado*, but also of renowned warriors and other personages, who have been exalted to the position of demi-gods. But it has also a spiritual side, in which there is a form of worship and propitiation, reverence being paid to spirits that are supposed to control the elements and natural phenomena. This form of worship is very crude, consisting of no observance, but the setting up of shrines in which the deity of their ill-defined belief is supposed to reside, the largest of which, in the province of Ise, is maintained by the government.

Buddhism was brought to Japan

from Corea in the year 552 and very soon spread among the people, but in the beginning of the ninth century a priest known as Kobo-Daishi compounded a doctrine out of Buddhism, Confucianism, and Shintoism, which immediately took a firm hold and became the dominant faith.

Those holding to the *Shinto* faith were easily persuaded to adopt the new religion, through the representations of Kobo-Daishi that the Shinto deities were only transmigrations of Buddhist divinities, which theory was so promptly accepted that Buddhism became the faith of the country and so continued until 1874, when its disestablishment was declared. Thus, while Christianity has never obtained a strong foothold among the Japanese, the influence of foreigners has led to a practical renunciation of the ancient religion of the Empire, and the door being now open the faith of Christ will no doubt presently possess the country.



A BULLOCK CART.

Strange customs have prevailed in Japan from time immemorial, in which their sense of propriety and family regard is at such variance with our own that it is almost impossible for us to conceive how a measurably enlightened people can tolerate such social laxities as there obtain. The Japanese have very much to commend them to the kindly consideration of Americans and Europeans, and while some of their customs shock our morals, in a few respects we might with advantage adopt their virtues. They are a wonderfully industrious and economical people, and for ingenuity and patience they are unequaled. Honesty is a characteristic as is also truthfulness, and their respect for superiors and the aged is greater than may be seen among any other race. Obedience to parents is not only exacted but children appear to find delight in manifesting submission and devotion, for which reason Japanese families live in the most beautiful accord. Women are in subjection to their husbands, and may not even eat in their presence, but this does not appear to alter their regard for one another. Daughters are



JAPANESE PRIMARY SCHOOL.

preferred above boys by the common classes, but in this preference we observe the most reprehensible trait in Japanese character, for the parents not infrequently accept the rewards of shame brought to them by the hire of daughters. Indeed, chastity is so little esteemed that it may be said to begin only with marriage. An unmarried woman's conduct is circumscribed by no limitations, but

after entering matrimony any violation of her bond subjects the wife to severe penalty and social ostracism. But being extremely affectionate in disposition Japanese girls make the best and truest wives, whose concern for their husbands is constant and undivided, so that the anomaly exists of the Japanese being at once astonishingly immoral and remarkably virtuous.

The homes of the wealthy are rarely imposing from an exterior view, but are models of comfort and ornamentation within, for they are a wonderfully artistic people, and the acme of refinement is to be found among the aristocratic class. They are passionately fond of flowers, music, and art, and this instinct of elegance finds cultivation in their social relations which are chivalrous, deferential, and unselfish. In person, also, they are cleanly to the point of nicety, and circumspect of their conduct and carriage before strangers, to such an extent that much traveled persons who have visited among them declare that the Japanese are the most courtly, amiable, and punctilious people of the earth. These observations apply of course

HOME LIFE OF THE BEST CLASSES.

to the educated and wealthy; among the laboring and ignorant class there is immorality and vice, with great squalor in the living quarters of great cities, where humanity burrows like rats and lives like scavengers.

The manufacturing interests of Japan are increasing rapidly since trade relations were established with Europe and America. In the production of not a few specialties these ingenious people have the field of trade practically to themselves. They are both artful and imaginative, and produce the most beautiful articles in ivory, porcelain, bronzes, textile fabrics, and decorative wall-papers. They are also excellent weavers and show remarkable capacity for designing both in metals and fabrics, but their labor is poorly recompensed, for the most skillful



JAPANESE VEGETABLE HAWKER.

are paid wages insufficient to provide the simplest comforts, either of food, shelter, or clothing. Ordinary mechanics rarely receive more than five cents per day, and twenty-five cents is considered large wages for expert workers of metals or cloth fabrications.

WAR BETWEEN CHINA AND JAPAN.

There has long been a hatred, political as well as personal, between China and Japan that has made itself manifest in many ways, but chiefly through military prejudices. This feeling while very long existing was under repression until in 1894 the fuel that was needed to feed the flames of war was added in the form of a rupture over the enforcement of administrative reforms in Corea.

If there is any country more peculiar than China, more benighted, and impervious to progressive influences of the century, Corea must bear this dishonorable distinction. Joined to China by nature, this miserable land of languor and self-sufficiency is even more besotted with indolent indifference to the affairs of the bustling world. The customs, life, manners, and religion of the Coreans are alike remarkable. Their most striking characteristic is laziness, but they are peaceable, amiable, kind-hearted and cannot be forced to fight, except under the greatest provocation. Everybody smokes in Corea, and their pipes, of which they are inordinately fond, have large bowls supported by stems a yard long, quite sufficient leverage, it would appear, to break their teeth.

It may be remarked that their clothes are not sewn together, but are glued at the seams with rice paste; for a Corean tailor would never be at the pains of stitching. Persons of the

upper and middle classes wear a large conical black hat, which is transparent, being curiously made of horse-hair, of much the same texture as the seat of a cane-bottom chair, and plaited quite open. The beauty of this hat is that it excludes neither air, sun, nor rain. The people feed largely on crushed beans and bacon or fish. They dwell in huts or cabins built of hardened mud, and every family keeps a pig. The Buddhist priests are forbidden, on pain of death, to enter Seoul, owing to their once having stirred up a rebellion in that city. Only a small proportion of the people are Buddhists. This religion, as practiced in Corea, is of a very debased type. The lower orders of the people, with the exception of those who are Buddhists, believe only in the powers of evil, and have no conception of a beneficent deity. The devils are supposed by them to inhabit certain withered trees; and in order to propitiate them, passers-by throw stones at the tree, or tie pieces of colored rag to its branches, and when in trouble they place offerings of rice and wine in a little house put up at the foot of the tree. The "Ki-Sang," or Corean dancing-women, are usually the



HOME MUSIC OF THE JAPANESE

wives of court retainers, and are employed to amuse the guests at official dinners. In Corean dancing, the feet are scarcely moved at all, the body swaying to the music. This dancing is not ungraceful, and closely resembles that of the Japanese. The court dress of an official personage of high rank is rather costly. The badges in the front of the robes are of fine embroidery, very dark blue in color, and are made of thick silk gauze. The most curious part of this

court dress is the belt, which stands out two inches from the body all round, and is supported by tags made of wood, covered with leather, and ornamented with tortoise-shell, jade, or gems, according to the owner's dignity. The hat is of camel's-wool felt, and is surmounted by red and blue feathers and a button of the appropriate color. The chin-strap is composed of jade beads, and is made a great deal too loose. Coreans have the habit of going about with their mouths open in order to keep their hats on. The Corean army, except the palace guards at Seoul (the Capital), has only swords and bows and arrows, and is of no account as a military force.

The mutual hatreds and jealousies between China and Japan must discover some common ground upon which to set up their defiances, and finding Corea a submissive instrument they both entered upon this foreign soil to use the country as a shuttlecock. Fearing that the purpose of Japan and China was to dismember his empire the Corean autocrat with great humility entered into a compact whereby he became obligated to pay an annual



JAPANESE ATTACKING THE CHINESE FORTS AT WEI-HAI-WEI, AUGUST 17, 1894.

subsidy to both alien governments to escape molestation. By this agreement China and Japan occupied the position of joint protectors, and thus possessing a colorable right to interfere with the local administration, it was only a short while before the

IMMEDIATE CAUSE OF THE WAR. two dogs began growling over the Korean bone. Japan accused the vassal Emperor of according special privileges to the Chinese Mogul, and to cut off this advantage by a quick stroke, the Mikado demanded radical reforms in the Imperial administration. China met this interference with a protest, and threat to invade Korea, whereupon Japan acted with celerity and on the twelfth of July,

1894, declared war against China. The issues thus being made up, there was a quick marshaling of forces and the civilized world looked on with interest to observe the results of modern weaponry in the gauge of actual battle. Since the Taiping rebellion, in which General Gordon fought so valorously, China has been drilling her army under German tactics by German officers. She



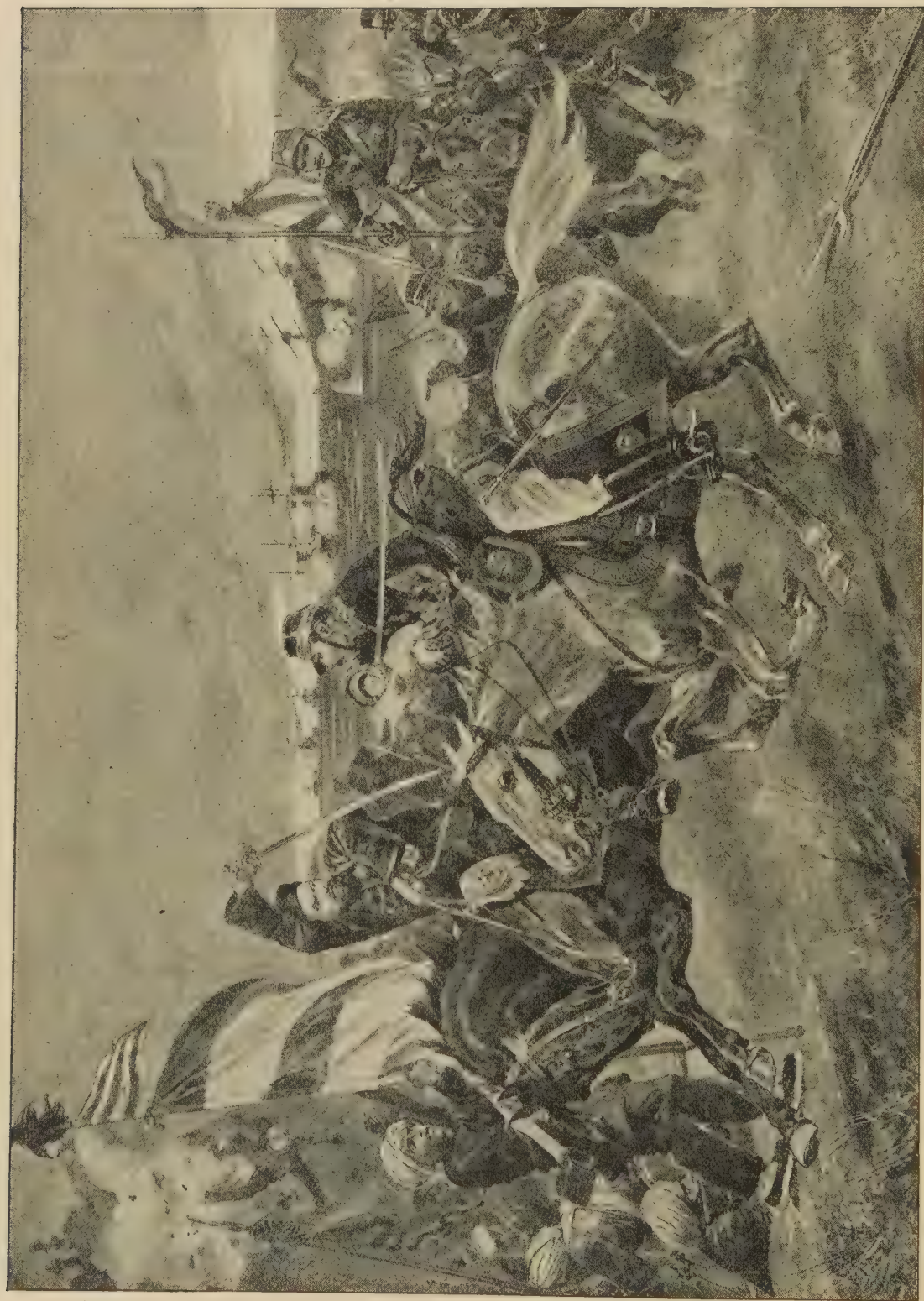
JAPANESE GIRLS LUNCHING.

had also assembled a considerable navy of English built battleships of the most powerful guns and armament, and it was believed that with her vast resources, and a population of four hundred millions, she could easily assert her mastery in the East.

But Japan, always alert and anticipating the day when hostilities must break the truce of preparation, had not been idle, and when the war drums beat she too presented a formidable front of swift and powerful cruisers equipped with the best

FIGHTING QUALITIES OF THE JAPANESE. modern weaponry, and an army well armed and magnificently disciplined. Moving with greater rapidity of action as well as of thought Japan took

the offensive by throwing a strong force into Korea to overawe that nation, and at the same time made a bold invasion of her giant enemy's territory. The key to the situation was Wei-hai-wei, which as will be seen by the accompanying map was the fortress commanding the entrance to the Gulf of Pechili, and toward this post the Japanese therefore directed a heavy movement, by massing several of their best ships at Chemulpo to act in conjunction with a strong land force. A naval skirmish took place between Chinese and Japanese men-of-war before Chemulpo on July 23, in which the former were easily beaten, without serious loss, however, and two days later a fight occurred between Chinese outposts and Japanese reconnoissance in force, that also resulted favorably to the latter. Operations in Korea between the opposing armies were resolutely prosecuted, the Koreans being compelled to observe a strict neutrality, but no important engagement took place



CAPTURE OF PING-YANG, COREA, BY THE JAPANESE ARMY, SEPTEMBER 16, 1894.

within that territory until September, when a decisive victory was gained by the Japanese at Ping-Yang. In the meantime the advance continued toward the strategic key, and on August 17, the Japanese fleet began a fierce bombardment of Wei-hai-wei which was soon knocked to pieces and surrendered, though the forts made a strong resistance. The next attack was upon Port Arthur, which was taken by the land force while the Japanese fleet gave battle to the best ships that China could bring into action, the most powerful of which was sunk in an attempt to ram one of the Japanese cruisers, the large troop ship *Kow-shing* was blown to pieces and the harbor was strewn with dead and wreckage of the Chinese navy, while the casualties to the Japanese were so small as to be unimportant. The advance toward Tientsin received no check whatever and in less than three months after the inauguration of hostilities Japan's victorious army had invested Peking, and China had become an humble petitioner for peace.



MAP OF THE SEAT OF WAR BETWEEN JAPAN AND CHINA, 1894.

It is a remarkable fact that, notwithstanding the tremendous disproportion between the opposing forces, China never once beat the Japanese either in battle or skirmish, and though the terms of peace were not settled for almost a year, the war was practically over in ninety days after the affair at Chemulpo. Peace commissioners, meeting in Tokio, finally agreed upon an indemnity amounting to four hundred million dollars which Japan, with some magnanimity, permitted her conquered foe to settle by long deferred payments, the Chinese exchequer at the time being so nearly exhausted that a prompt liquidation was impossible.

China had made the discovery that paper dragons are a miserable defense against shot and shell; that children of superstition may flee before hideous images carried by noisy processions, but that invaders who have grown out of the simplicity of believing in hob-goblins cannot be expelled by such shadows. And the benefit has become hers, for she is thus brought to a realization of the fatality of ignorance, and is preparing to adapt herself to a régime inaugurated by her more progressive, energetic, and victorious neighbor.

KINGDOM OF THE YELLOW ROBE.

The war that brought Japan into such pronounced prominence as a nation of little giants served equally to give the civilized world a clearer understanding of the great, unwieldy, and, to an extent, mysterious kingdom of China. From the latest and most reliable statistics we are informed that the empire is composed of nineteen provinces, which have an aggregate population of approximately 400,000,000 souls, and a total area of 4,400,000 square miles. This statement, however, does not properly represent the density in which the people live, for it must be understood that a very large part of western China is thinly settled.

While the aborigines were undoubtedly nomadic and pastoral the Chinese of to-day are decidedly urban in disposition, for which reason China is peculiarly a country of large cities. So hived are the people by this characteristic of extreme gregariousness, that in many of the cities, located upon the banks of rivers, thousands are driven to make their homes in boats, thereby escaping the expense of maintain-



FLOATING CITY IN THE HARBOR OF CANTON.

ing habitations on shore, so that in more respects than one the large cities contain a considerable floating population.

The government of China is based upon the central idea of patriarchal rule, the embodiment of which may be found in parental and filial piety. The emperor is regarded as a son of heaven, who in turn is father of his people. He sacrifices and prays to the Supreme Being, with ceremonies of the most **THE PATRIARCHAL IDEA.** elaborate kind, and his subjects render to him equal reverence. Children likewise have a devotional regard for parents, which relationship is beneficent, for obedience prevents indulgences of drink and other evil habits that cause so much sorrow and disgrace to parents in more civilized countries.

While the Chinese are industrious, frugal, and obedient, these virtues do not wholly compensate their faults. They have no respect for truth and are so callous of heart as to take a pleasure in seeing punishment inflicted. Their laws are extremely severe, corruption in office is universal, and dishonesty among all classes is the rule. An oath has no value, accordingly the courts apply the ordeal of torture to compel witnesses to give truthful evidence, whenever their statements are doubted. The usual mode is by flogging the thighs

with cudgels of split bamboo. Other means of torture are, suspending witnesses by the thumbs, or toes, and by squeezing the fingers; but women are punished with less severity, as a rule, the favorite method being by placing their necks in a heavy pillory. This punishment is also inflicted for simple offences.

Where torture is applied to induce truthful testimony we may expect the most fearful cruelty to be practiced upon criminals; nor is this expectation disappointed. For theft the penalty is suspension by the neck with the toes touching the ground, until death intervenes from starvation and suffering. Capital offences are punished by cutting the offender in pieces,



A CHINESE EXECUTION IN CANTON.

by crucifixion, starvation, strangulation, and by beheading. In executing the latter sentence no block or resting place for the head is used, but the victim kneels and is made to stretch forth his neck, whereupon with a single blow of the executioner's heavy sword death is instantaneous. While ghastly this mode of capital punishment is more swift and humane than any of the means employed in Europe or America.

Although the Chinese are cruel and untruthful, there is much domestic happiness, due to the affection that binds families together, and the devotion of children to parents. The desire for sons is very great, as these willingly support their parents, when old enough to

labor, and the father wishes above all other things to have a son perform the customary rites and offer the prescribed sacrifices upon his death. Marriage is never a matter of natural selection, but is arranged by professional match-makers, whose efforts are considered successful when cards pass between the couple, bearing the emblems of conjugal fidelity, viz., a dragon on one sent to the lady, and a phoenix on the one sent to the gentleman. **SOCIAL AND DOMESTIC LIFE.**

Nearly all Chinese customs are the reverse of ours, but yet they present good reasons for what they do. The poor class live almost exclusively on rice, to which is added, at times,



CHINESE WOMEN IN A PILLORY.

fish and rats, and dog flesh is also esteemed. Their clothes are of the flimsiest kind, and their crowded apartments, in alleys, tunnels, and caves, reek with noisome odors. They use little wine or strong drink, but have the more injurious habit of smoking opium, which, when once acquired, is seldom overcome. Living on refuse and in holes, their expenses are almost nothing, and being both industrious and saving they are willing to labor for a pittance, and thus become a serious menace to workmen of other nationalities, who cannot compete with them. With a spirit of inscrutable egotism the Chinese believe themselves to be not only heaven descended, but regard their country with such reverence that very few renounce their native allegiance, and it is the ambition of every Chinaman dying in foreign

lands to have his bones returned, and his accumulations also. For these several reasons they are excluded from citizenship in the United States, nor are they encouraged by other countries.

Among the country people curious observances and amusements may be witnessed, the most singular of which is that represented in the accompanying illustration. This spectacle combines both amusement and wailing, in which respect it may be likened to the Irish wake. The ceremony takes place upon the death of an important person of a district or village, whose body being given to the flames, there takes place in the immediate vicinity a carnival of athletic sports, usually wrestling and jumping, the contestants being surrounded by a circle of friends of the deceased, who at intervals lift their voices in lamentations, and at other

**AN ASTONISHING
FUNERAL CEREMONY.**



CHINESE CEREMONY OF LAMENTATION.

times applaud the performers. It is probable the Chinese themselves do not know the origin or significance of this strange observance, which may be a relic of the wild ceremonies that were common to the ancient life of the people, connected with their primitive form of nature worship.

A Chinaman sets as much value upon his queue as he does upon his soul, notwithstanding it was originally a badge of servitude, and shaving the head was also a compulsory act instituted by their Mongol conquerors, but is now more general than is the custom of shaving the face among highly civilized people.

So impervious have the Chinese been to foreign influence that the empire continued in almost complete isolation from the rest of the world until English guns made a breach in the exclusion laws of the country, and in 1860 compelled an opening to commerce of

some of the chief ports. This segregation had its beginning in the third century, when the kingdom was so harassed by incursions of the Tartars that Che Hwang-te, the "first universal emperor," as he was called, built a great wall across the whole northern limit of the empire, from the sea to the western limit of the modern province of Kan-suh, a distance of more than 1200 miles. This work was begun in the year 214 B. C., and though energetically prosecuted the emperor died before its completion. This gigantic feat of engineering, as well as of construction, must remain for all time one of the wonders of the world. Not only is the wall of solid masonry, and extends over mountains and across rivers, but its massiveness and magnitude is equally surprising. The wall is about fifty feet high, and as many wide, strengthened by watch-towers, and has a roadway on the top to accommodate a marching army of infantry

**THE GREAT
CHINESE WALL.**



ENTRANCE GATE TO PEKIN FROM CHINESE TARTARY.

or cavalry. The wall is pierced at intervals by arched gates and it has all the strong defences of ancient castles, except the moat, which it would have been impossible to fill with water on the mountains. The wall, though it long ago ceased to serve as a barrier against invaders, and is broken in many places, has left an enduring influence upon the people which only forcible means employed by civilized countries can destroy.

The war between China and Japan, while humbling the greater empire, brought incalculable benefits to the nation, as a whipping sometimes greatly improves a spoiled child. The large indemnity exacted by Japan compelled China to seek the means of payment from European nations, who in turn looked longingly towards the Yellow Kingdom for trade if not territorial possessions. Being self-possessed, and existing in a state of seclusion,

China remained hostile to all attempts of foreigners to introduce railroads, telegraphs, or steamboats, nor was this prejudice affected by the opening of treaty ports in 1860. After the war with Japan, however, the covetous attitudes assumed by Russia, Germany, France, and England, each of whom sought to obtain a strong footing in China without breaking the European peace, and especially by reason of the enlightenment gained by Li Hung Chang, Chancellor of the Empire, during his tour of the world, in 1896, the imperial counsellors recommended a modification of the immemorial policy of exclusion. By their advice the Emperor granted valuable concessions to foreigners, who immediately proceeded to build railroads and

**THE RECLAMATION
OF CHINA.**



A CHINESE BARBER SHOP.

telegraph lines between the principal cities, and by royal edict the chief rivers were opened to unrestricted navigation, this permission to take effect in 1899. Thus China has become, through necessity, a progressive nation, and now offers many opportunities for the profitable employment of foreign capital, and presents favorable openings for engineers and skilled tradesmen such as she cannot herself supply. But in this change of policy there follows the danger of European acquisition, and a possible dismemberment of the Empire as a sacrifice to the greed of commercial nations.

RUSSIA AND SIBERIA.



SHUDDER and chill seize us at the very mention of Siberia, land of exile, country of lonely desolation, region of snow, and wilderness of savagery. We read with intense interest of heroic efforts to reach the North Pole, and admiration is excited by stories of Arctic exploration, with which we have become familiar through books of travel, but when we come to contemplate Siberia, there arises before our startled senses visions of human cruelty, ice-bound prairies, wild races, and ravening wolves. It is a singular thing how strong the influence of usage becomes. That which shocks when first seen may soon be accepted as commonplace through repetition, while the terror inspired by rare occurrence remains, and grows with age. To this peculiarity of human nature must be attributed the fact that adventures in Polar regions fail to thrill us as do the more seldom told stories of exploits in Siberia; nor does even the cold of the highest latitudes seem so severe, nor the possibility of suffering appear so great.

The magnitude of the Russian Empire is difficult to appreciate except by comparison with other countries, for mere figures lose much of their significance when they fall into millions. Observe therefore, the following: The United States has a total area of 3,607,604 square miles, Europe 3,778,561 square miles, of which Russia alone has 2,041,402 square miles or considerably more than one half. But Siberia comprises 4,824,570 square miles, so that the total area of the Russian Empire is almost 7,000,000 square miles, or nearly twice that of the whole United States. In population, however, it exceeds that of our country by little more than 25,000,000, of which Siberia contains about 5,000,000, or less than one person to the square mile, while Russia proper has 47 to the square mile.

The impression prevalent that Siberia is an Arctic and sterile country is so far erroneous that the very opposite is true, nor is it an exaggeration to state that in point of fertility and salubrity it is not exceeded by any land of the earth. In southeast Russia the soil has long been regarded as being too rich for the cereals, and the same is to an extent true of the black-earth district of Siberia which is comprehended in the Tobol and Ishim region, which has an extent of 25,000,000 acres. In the middle district, of the Amoor and Usuri, there is likewise great fertility, specially adapted to vine growing, while the valleys of the Altai, as well also much of the high table-lands, are very rich, and yield bountifully of wheat, oats, and rye. The lower plateaus are best suited to cattle, being covered with succulent grasses, and during the spring the land is aflame with a great variety of flowers.

THE BLEAK BARRENS
OF SIBERIA. It must be understood that Siberia is a vast empire within itself, extending north and south over forty degrees, or 2500 miles, while the distance between its east and west extremities is about 4000 miles.

A country of such vast extent must of necessity embrace different climates and great diversity of topography, and so we find that southern Siberia possesses a temperate climate,

little colder than that of the United States, while that portion lying north of the sixty-sixth parallel, or the Arctic Circle, is a land of perpetual ice and snow. From this latter fact, and the general lack of information about the country, Siberia obtains the reputation of being a bleak desolation.

Siberia is the home of many animals, but few birds. The most common are, the reindeer, which is both wild and domestic, the bear, wild sheep, wolf, beaver, lemming, weasel, sable, lynx, hare, fox, otter, ermine, badger, and squirrel, and occasionally a tiger is found along the southern border. Of birds there are snow-owls, ravens, snow-buntings, falcons, and ptarmigans. Because of the sparse settlement and wild character of the country, especially toward the north, hunting is a favorite occupation of the native people, who for lack of firearms adopt cunning expedients to capture fur-bearing animals, and to kill the more dangerous game. In this pursuit they take advantage of the severity of their climate, which, about the Arctic Circle, and especially in the neighborhood of Yakoutsck, is the coldest part of the earth, where the thermometer frequently registers as low a temperature as -85° , while the mean temperature of winter is about -40° . The rivers are congealed to the bottom, the largest trees become frozen to the very heart, and the earth freezes to a depth of ten feet or more. Thus the land becomes a frozen desolation, which is subjected likewise to bitter blasts and furious snow-storms, that overwhelm and destroy great herds of cattle, horses, and not infrequently travelers lose their way and perish in the snow.

The natives, the Tungues, Ostjaks, and Yakoots, of the northern region, follow the occupation of hunting most successfully when the winter is most rigorous, for, being clothed in heaviest furs and used to exposure, they travel over the tundras on snow-shoes or by sledges, and pursue the game through snows so deep that even the reindeer becomes quickly tired and easily overtaken. In severest weather, too, reindeer go in vast herds, and are then driven without difficulty into corrals, where they are either slaughtered or captured alive to afterwards become domesticated.

Siberia is the home of wolves of great size and terrible ferocity, that in times of hunger not only ravage the country, but when traveling in vast droves they do not hesitate to attack persons and even villages, while stock is destroyed by them in great numbers. The natives, to protect their flocks, are compelled to do battle with these voracious animals, whose skins, unfortunately, are of little value, so that there is no compensation in the killings except the protection which their destruction gives. Wolves flee before snow-storms, as do nearly all large game, and it is therefore during the severest spells of winter that hunters pursue them. Firearms are seldom seen in Siberia, and hunting is therefore done by the use of bows and arrows, lances, and whips. This latter weapon is quite as effective in the hands of an expert as a gun, which is employed both to kill and to capture. The cracker-tip is of rawhide loaded with an ounce bullet, and has a length of twelve or more feet. The hunter, when overtaking a wolf in the deep snow, uses his whip so as to strike the jaded animal in the head, the bullet being given a force almost equal to that of a rifle. Bears, which are also numerous in Siberia, are hunted in the same manner, except that instead of being killed they are usually captured by men on horseback, who, riding sufficiently near the fleeing animal, dexterously throw out the whip in such a manner that the lash folds about the bear's neck, while the bullet-weighted tip serves to convert it into a lasso. Having thus made fast to his quarry, the rider spurs his horse forward, and by dragging the bear soon strangles it to death. Hunting of this kind is only done in the open, as it would

CAPTURING WOLVES AND BEARS.

be very difficult, if not impossible, to manage successfully in a wood, but yet it is not uncommon in severe winter, for bears are often driven by hunger to leave the forests and to make forays upon farmyards, and even to enter small villages.

Bear hunting by the Gilyak tribe is particularly exciting sport, because of its great novelty and the purposes of the pursuit. Their weapon consists of a long pole, to one end of which is attached, by means of small strips of rawhide, a steel spear four inches long and two inches broad; there is also another weapon used, but not so commonly as the former, which is made by wrapping several sharp-pointed spikes together so that their points will extend outward something like the bristles of a hedge-hog when rolled up; this chevaux-de-frize is firmly fastened to a long pole, which is then used like the spear. This latter weapon is employed

**THE GILYAK
BEAR HUNTERS.**



SIBERIANS HUNTING THE BEAR WITH WHIPS.

to worry the bear by first irritating the animal until, enraged, it rushes upon its assailant; the Gilyak hunter then defends himself by presenting his spiked weapon, which the bear seizes only to wound itself; more violently enraged with these self-inflicted injuries, the bear endeavors to destroy the spikes by biting and squeezing them, until it actually kills itself.

In using the spear there is really more danger incurred than from the spiked weapon, for when a bear is wounded with such a weapon it attacks the hunter, who sometimes becomes the victim. Nothing can equal, for ferocity and vitality, the grizzly bear of North America, but next to this animal certainly comes the Russian bear, which is equal in all respects to the grizzly, except in vital powers. Yet terrible as it is when fully aroused, the Gilyaks not only attack and slay, with no other weapon than a long spear, the most powerful

Russian bears, but they also capture them alive to provide amusement at annual feasts. To capture these dangerous animals a party of eight to a dozen men provide themselves with lassoes, chains, collars, and a muzzle, and in company seek their game. Upon finding a bear, however large it may be, they proceed to take it prisoner in the following manner: Scattering out in a circle they surround the bear and gradually contract the circle by driving the animal toward the centre, always taking great care not to excite it. Dogs are not used at such times, because they would enrage the bear and cause it to break precipitately, so that a capture would be impossible. When the circle becomes sufficiently contracted everything is made ready for two men to cast their lassoes, and while the attention



TENTS OF TSCHUKSCHIS, ON THE SIBERIAN TUNDRAS.

of the bear is directed to one or more persons, another of the party nimbly leaps upon the bear's back, as the lassoes are thrown, and catching bruin by the ears, holds his head, assisted by others with the lassoes; a collar and muzzle are next adjusted on poor bruin, and he then becomes a helpless captive. Should any of the hunters be wounded in these dangerous attempts, which they very frequently are, they

think themselves lucky, as such wounds are considered evidences of prowess, and to be killed by a bear is esteemed a happy death.

Bears thus caught are taken to the nearest village, where they are kept and fattened on fish, for the approaching festival. The most important fête day among those strange people occurs early in January, but on no particular date, as the Gilyaks reckon time

FESTIVAL OF THE BEAR. by the moon. On this occasion the captured bear is taken from its cage and shackled so it can commit no harm, is dragged or driven all around the village and halted before each house, where some cabalistic words are repeated, supposed to bring good luck. After this part of the ceremony is completed, they lead the animal to some place for water, and also serve it with a platter of food; should the bear take both water and food the sacrifice is postponed, but owing to its anger it always refuses. The bear is now dragged to the place of sacrifice, where it is made fast between two posts by means of rawhide ropes connected with its collar. Then succeed orgies not unlike those practiced by several tribes of Indians about their sacrifices. The bear is beaten with sticks and stones in order to make it growl, for manifestations of pain and anger from the animal are taken as answers to the entreaties of those engaged in the sacrifice for good luck.



ON THE BRINK OF A CHASM, VALLEY OF THE YENISEI.

When at length the bear becomes exhausted, the honor of shooting it through the heart with an arrow is accorded to one who is chosen chief of the ceremonies for that day. After its death the bear's head and paws are cut off, the former being presented to the village patriarch, and to which prayers are offered for a period of six weeks. The paws are divided between four popular persons at the feast, who keep them for good luck, sometimes wearing them for years tied to a string about the neck. In passing through a Gilyak settlement it is very common to find the ears, jaw-bones, skulls, and paws of bears killed at such sacrifices as I have described, hung up in trees, where they are supposed to exercise a most serviceable influence in keeping off evil spirits and bringing good luck to the village.

In the Island of Saghalein these ceremonials of bear-killing are much more frequent than on the Siberian shore, for the reason, perhaps, that the Gilyaks are more numerous on Saghalein and because their customs are not interfered with or influenced by neighboring tribes.

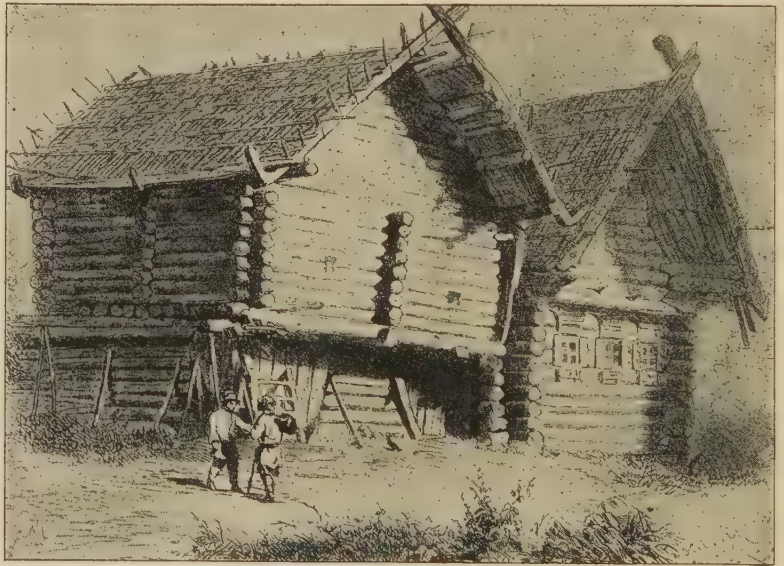
In the year 1882 I made an extensive tour in Siberia, traveling as far east as Irkoutsk, which is nearly two thousand miles east of Moscow, and during this long journey in vehicles peculiar to the country, by tarantas, tumbil, and troika, I not only visited a number of the largest mines of gold, silver, malachite, copper, and coal, but **ADVENTURES WITH WOLVES.** also made a trip down the Yenisei River to the borders of the tundras. There are few settlements in Siberia off the main overland route, and traveling northward along the river, which is skirted by heavy woods of pine and birch, is dreary and often dangerous, for these solitudes are the haunts of bears and wolves which when hungry do not hesitate to attack travelers. When food is particularly scarce wolves go in great packs, numbers giving them courage to brave any danger, and it is then they are to be feared by any company of men however large.

I traveled northward as far as the town of Yeniseisk to visit a colony of exiles and to observe the working of a large placer gold mine in the vicinity, taking with me as guide and interpreter a German named Schleuter whom I had engaged at Tobolsk, who by long residence and travel in Siberia was able to speak nearly all of the twenty different languages of the country. During the visit I interviewed an intelligent exile, who having served a ten-year sentence in the mines at Udinsk, had nine years of exile life still before him, compelled for this time to remain within a defined district, but without enforced labor. His hut was some five miles from Yeniseisk, and so interested was I in the exile's story that but for the snow on the ground it would have been quite dark when we left his abode to drive back to Yeniseisk. The way was not marked by any semblance of a road, but I anticipated no difficulty in making the return trip safely and speedily. Our horses had been chilled by so long standing in the raw atmosphere, and when we started them they broke away in a run which threatened destruction to our tumbil and injury to ourselves. We got them checked finally, however, and were bowling along in a hilarious spirit until, reaching the apex of a hill, I looked out over the glinting landscape, and was upon the point of making some observation on the beautiful scene, when I descried three black objects nearly two hundred yards distant, which I thought were dogs. But Schleuter was too old a traveler in Siberia to be deceived, and immediately upon seeing them he exclaimed: "Wolves! Get your pistol ready, for we may be in for it to-night."

I must confess that his remark excited some fear in me, for with it the stories I had read of travelers being chased and eaten by these voracious beasts, came back to me with chromatic exaggeration. This partially subsided when I saw the wolves making off from us, and to facilitate their retreat I fired two shots at them, but without effect.

However, we had not proceeded more than two miles further, when I saw standing in the way we were going two more wolves, which were so bold that I shot one of them not more than twenty feet from our vehicle, while the other trotted off slowly, notwithstanding the shots I fired at it. We had twelve miles to go before arriving at Yeniseisk, and I saw on the route, altogether, not less than fifty wolves, all of the large, ferocious species which does not hesitate to attack travelers, when slightly pressed by hunger. Arriving at the city about eleven o'clock, we related our experience with the wolves, when the landlord told us that a courier had just come in who had been set upon by a pack nearly twenty miles south of Yeniseisk, while on his way from Irkoutsk, and that to save himself he had ridden his horse almost to death.

Any mention of wolves before a crowd in a Siberian inn is sure to call forth from one or more persons, who may be present, stories of personal experience with the dreadful creatures, in which hair-breadth escapes figure very prominently, but as wolves are more plentiful in Siberia than squirrels are in our Western States, such relations are made more out of vaunting ambition than with an expectation of interesting those who listen to them. But for me stories of wolf and bear hunting are always entertaining, and I was therefore very much delighted to hear second-hand—through my interpreter—the following, told by an *Ispravnik* (Governor) from the Tomsk Government. It chanced that this distinguished functionary had arrived at Yeniseisk on the day I visited



HOUSES OF RUSSIAN PEASANTS.

the mines, and was a guest of the inn at which I was stopping. He had four servants with him, all exiles, and otherwise manifested the dignity of his magisterial office, so that when he spoke all gave him a respectful hearing. To preserve the identity of the relator I will give the story in the first person :

“ It has now been just two years since business, connected with the government, called me to Irkoutsk, and from thence to the Alexandreffsky Central prison, which is nearly one hundred versts north of the city. The winter, you remember, set in unusually early in 1880, and when I started from Tomsk there was so much snow on the ground that a *troika* could be used. I met with no adventure on the trip to Irkoutsk, where my business was speedily transacted. The Governor at Irkoutsk placed his own private team at my disposal for the trip to Alexandreffsky, and with a good driver I started out early in the morning, calculating to reach my destination before night set in, as I never fancied driving on a lonely highway even in the moonlight. It has been my rule, whenever traveling through any of the Siberia governments, to carry with me a trusty rifle, which I purchased on my last visit to St.

**THE GOVERNOR'S
STORY.**

Petersburg, because it has more than once served me well in the midst of imminent danger, but unfortunately, on the occasion which I am now about to relate, I failed to provide myself with the usual complement of cartridges, taking less than twenty, when I generally carry as many as fifty.

"We started out from Irkoutsk in high glee, taking with us a good quantity of *quass* and *vodka*, which serves one so well, you know, on a journey of the character I was about to take. Nothing whatever occurred to impede our progress until nearly three o'clock in the afternoon, when my driver became so confused by the *vodka* he had intemperately indulged that he left the road and ran the *troika* over a log, upsetting it into a bank of snow, but we escaped injury. This episode was too commonplace to be mentioned but for the fact that our vehicle was so badly broken that we stopped nearly two hours making repairs, and after going only a short distance further we met with another mishap, our trouble this time being a broken shaft and tug, which was caused by the fractious capers of one of the horses.

"It was nearly seven o'clock in the afternoon when I heard the prolonged howl of a wolf, which was directly answered by several others in different directions. These sounds,

however, did not alarm me in the least, for I have heard them

THE LEADER frequently; but it was not long before I saw crossing the roadway ahead of
CALLS HIS PACK. us packs of five and six wolves, while others trotted along behind us in a sneaking manner. I knew these were the skirmishing forces and refrained from shooting, realizing full well that if I should kill one the others would devour him, and once tasting blood and flesh they would seek to finish their repast on us.

"My driver kept the horses in a brisk gallop, appreciating more than I did the danger which now threatened. Growing more bold each minute as their numbers increased, the wolves appeared on every side, some coming up within a few feet of our *troika* and then stopping suddenly to stare at us. Such howling I never before or since heard, the forest being apparently full of the hateful brutes, and every howl seemed to multiply the number. At length they grew so fearless that several would run out quickly and snap at the horses and then dart back again. I now saw that it was full time for action, as each moment served to embolden them, and once they should attack our horses little chance would remain for escape. Bringing my gun up, therefore, I shot one of the wolves, and scarcely did his blood stain the snow before not less than one hundred piled on the wounded animal and tore him limb from limb almost instantly. I then fired two other shots into the pack and must have wounded several others, judging from the snarling and growling which succeeded. Looking back to observe the effects of my shots I could see a myriad of wolves running to where the others were feasting, until they were like flies in summer time swarming over a putrefying carcass. It was only a few minutes after I had shot, and before we got out of sight of the pack, when every vestige of the wounded wolves had disappeared in the voracious maws of their comrades, and the latter were again howling after us.

WOLVES DEVOUR "The rest which our horses had by reason of the accidents already
THE DEAD. described was very advantageous to us, for they were now put to their full speed without showing any suffering; but this pace could not avail against

the wolves, which gained on us so rapidly that before we had gone six versts from where I fired my first shot they were upon us again. When they reached the *troika* and were ready to spring in, I shot two more, which were immediately pounced upon by the entire pack, so we made another gain of two versts before they left this second feast and were upon us again.

"I had every reason for husbanding my shots, for our escape lay in keeping the wolves from us by killing one of their number at a time, so as to distract the pack. I therefore



continued this desultory warfare until my last cartridge had been fired, and we were yet nearly ten versts from Alexandreffsky. I had caused the death of perhaps twenty-five or more wolves, but there was no apparent diminution in number, nor were there any manifestations of abandoning the attack on the part of those that had survived. Our horses had now become badly jaded, my driver almost lost his reason through fright, and the little hope I had left was hardly bright enough to show on a background of despondency. I was not permitted to lapse into a reflective mood, however, for the hungry, carnivorous, blood-loving wolves came after us on lightning feet, their red tongues lolling out between vicious fangs which sometimes snapped together as though they felt our flesh already between their teeth.

My gun was now useless, but I carried it in my muffled robes until the wolves came so near that they tried to leap upon me; then I wielded it as a bludgeon **CLUBBING THE MOST DARING.** with excellent effect, killing three, or wounding them so that they were fallen upon and quickly devoured. But this successful way of repelling their

attacks did not avail us long, for while I combated with more than a score, nearly ten times that number ran ahead and attacked the horses. I now felt that it was time to abandon hope, cross myself and fall to praying, but our poor horses battled so nobly for life that I was encouraged by their acts. The two outsiders ran on at full speed for nearly a verst, while wolves were hanging at their haunches and throats or cutting great gashes in their legs and sides. I was astonished to see the horses survive so long, but when one fell at length the others could go no further, and here our last efforts were made to protect our lives. My driver, having nothing with which to defend himself, was, despite my exertions, dragged

from his seat by three strong wolves, and as he fell upon the snow his cries **A DREADFUL BATTLE FOR LIFE.** for aid almost set me wild. Oh, how the poor fellow prayed and called to me while the ferocious beasts stripped the flesh from his bones until death ended the torture he endured. Our horses shared my driver's fate, while

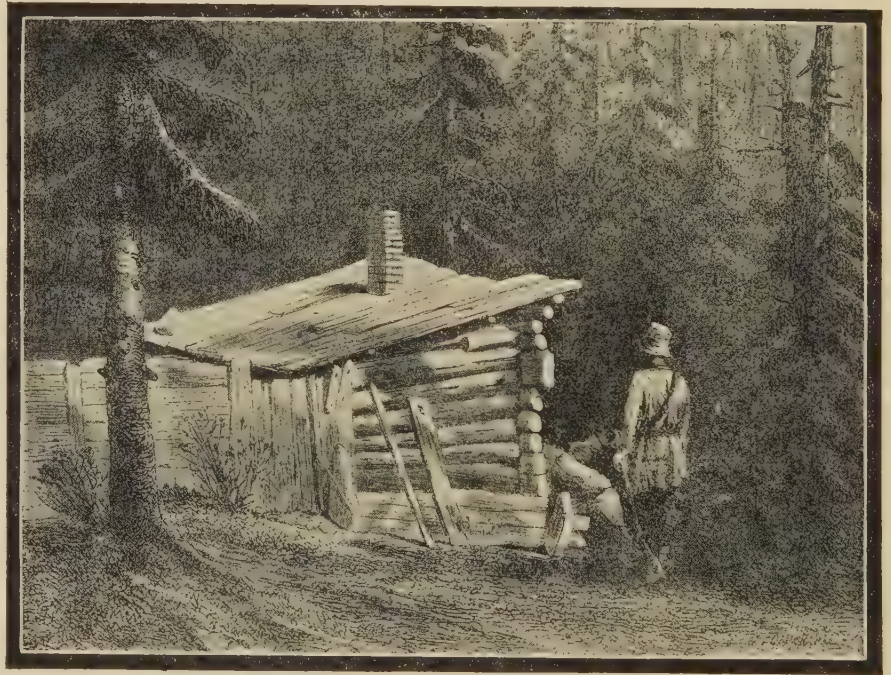
with almost superhuman strength I wielded my gun and scattered about me nearly fifty of the wolves that had attacked myself and driver. How I came out of that fiery furnace alive it is almost impossible for me to say, for I fought for many minutes, which seemed an age, before assistance came in the person of two exile *moujiks* who bravely seized clubs and rushed to my aid. We were almost on the outskirts of Alexandreffsky, and the noise created by our terrible encounter soon brought others to the scene of action. My escape was chiefly due to the successful attack on the horses and driver, their bodies serving to draw away from me nearly all the pack. But when relieved at last, upon examination I found that my clothes were literally in shreds, and on my hands and legs were several severe scratches which, in my excited condition, I had not before discovered.

"The wolves were driven away by shooting and beating, but not until the horses had been almost entirely devoured, and of the guide there only remained a grinning skull bare of flesh, the half of one hand, and a portion of his back and pelvic bone; his limbs had been torn asunder and carried off by greedy members of the pack to some place where they could munch the bones undisturbed. Of my rifle there remained only the barrel, the stock having been broken and lost, and nothing in my possession do I esteem so valuable as this relic of the saddest experience and most terrible adventure of my life."

The world has come to regard Siberia probably less for its Arctic climate than for the exile life with which it is associated. There are many places upon the earth infinitely more terrible, inclement, deadly, than Siberia, to which European nations transport their criminals, and in doing so consign them to lingering deaths. Fernando Po, a torrid island off the miasmatic west coast, and Ceuta, on the northwest coast of Africa, Isle le Diable, off

the coast of French Guiana, where, at this writing, Dreyfus is confined, are examples of some of the worst places selected for the punishment, by isolation, of persons convicted of crimes, but we hear comparatively little about them. Siberia, on the other hand, being an extensive country, has attracted the attention of romancers like Kennan, Jules Verne, and Madame Blavatsky, who have written novels, and so perverted facts in effort to picture the barbarities of Russian administration, that the impression has been established that those doomed to service in Siberian mines are the most miserable of God's creatures. The truth is pity-compelling, and need not be transcended, as these writers have done, but against the hardships which exiles do suffer in Siberia must in justice be placed the following facts: The country is wonderfully salubrious, not a single district being marshy, or subject to any unhealthy or rigorous influences except that of cold. It must also be understood that a very small per cent of those sent into exile in Siberia are required to perform any labor, the idea which first prompted Russia to send her convicts to that region being to force a settlement of the country. A very large proportion of those thus banished are therefore merely compelled, for a period, to reside within specified districts, where they become agriculturists, or engage in various occupations. This policy of enforced settlement has been followed by many

**EXILE LIFE
IN SIBERIA.**



AN EXILE'S CABIN IN THE FOREST.

excellent results, chief of which is that of demonstrating the fertility and great mineral resources of the country, and the building of several large cities, such as Tobolsk, Tomsk, Irbit, Krasnoiarsk, Yeniseisk, Irkoutsk. and Yakoutsck.

Mining has been extensively prosecuted in Siberia for nearly half a century, all the properties belonging to the government and worked exclusively by convict labor. Gold and silver are the principal products, though copper has been found in considerable quantity, and coal exists in every province, but has not been mined because of a lack of transportation facilities, which, however, will be soon furnished by the cross-country railway now building. Gold abounds both in placers and veins, the production of which, even with present disadvantages, exceeds \$15,000,000 annually. The most noted mines are those located in the Kara district, of East Siberia, to which are sent condemned criminals convicted of the most serious offences,

THE MINES OF SIBERIA.

such as murder, and leaders of insurrections, where they are compelled to work, frequently in chains, and some are not permitted to appear above ground. Terrible hardships are undoubtedly imposed, but these are being gradually mitigated, and it is doubtful if the treatment accorded Russian exiles is now more severe than that frequently administered in European or American prisons, notwithstanding the contrary opinion expressed by sensational writers and attic travelers.

Although Siberia has no railroads, the country is intersected by three of the great rivers of the world, viz., the Obi, Lena, and the Yenisei, all taking their source in the southern part and discharging their waters into the Arctic Sea. Along the southern boundary, rising near Lake Baikal, is the Amoor, which flows eastward and empties into the Gulf of



THE SIBERIAN PONY EXPRESS.

Tartary. All of these rivers are nearly two thousand miles in length, and are traversed by several steamboats, especially the Amoor, which carries a large commerce, in connection with the great overland caravan route between China and Russia proper. There are also several telegraph lines, and pony expresses similar to that maintained across the American plains before the building of the Union Pacific Railroad. The mail is carried with extraordinary expedition, relays being provided at such brief intervals as to permit the fleetest riding, ten miles an hour being the usual time made between principal cities.

Siberia is to-day a country of great opportunities for it is developing at a marvelous pace and in a few years it will have the advantages that rapid transportation can supply. This condition is already within sight, and will be accomplished before the expiration of the



century by completion of the trans-Siberian railway, the largest enterprise ever undertaken by any government, and destined to bring proportionate benefits. Russia has been moved to this gigantic undertaking by her need for an outlet to the Pacific, as well also by the benefit which she must reap by a development of her greater empire and the reducing of her vast territory, which has heretofore been segregated, to a unified whole.

THE TRANS-SIBERIAN RAILROAD.

The work of building the trans-Siberian railway, which upon completion is to connect Moscow on the west with the port of Vladivostock on the Japanese Sea, a distance of 4000 miles, was begun in May, 1891, from both ends of the line. Work was resolutely pushed upon the western division and on January 1, 1898, trains were running east to Krasnoiorsk, and on the eastern division there was train service between Vladivostock and Iman, a distance of 265 miles. Some time in 1899 the whole line will be completed, with the exception of a break at Lake Baikal, the district being so mountainous that the cost of constructing the road around the south shore of the lake is too great to justify its immediate building. For a while therefore immense transfer boats will be used to carry the cars across the lake between the rail termini. These boats will have twin screws, with a supplementary screw set in the rudder to facilitate steerage, as they are built to act as rams in breaking the four and five feet of ice that covers Lake Baikal during winter. The cars for this great road are built at the Russo-Baltic works of Riga, but nearly all the locomotives, and a great part of the steel rails, are supplied by the United States. The track is single and the most distant stations are thirty-three miles apart, with three trains a day run in each direction; the work, it must be understood, is largely done by the employment of convict labor.

The oriental express, when the line is completed, will carry passengers from Paris to Vladivostock in ten days, by which added facility to travel it will be possible to make a circuit of the earth in forty days. Vladivostock, which signifies "Ruler of the East," promises to become the Golden Horn of Russia, in anticipation of which the strait that separates the island of Kozakovitch, opposite Vladivostock, from the main shore has received the designation of "Eastern Bosphorus." Thus, since Russia has been kept out of Turkish Constantinople, she will build a Constantinople of her own on the Pacific. Nikolaievesk, at the mouth of the Amoor is, however, a strong competitor for the commercial honors, but this city has the disadvantage of having a port that is closed by ice for six months of the year, while Vladivostock is ice bound only a single month of the year, and many winters her harbor is not obstructed at all. In addition to this advantage a railroad is building to connect Manchooria with Vladivostock which will, beyond question, make this city the greatest port on the Pacific coast, a prophecy so generally believed that its growth is now phenomenally rapid.

The political as well as the commercial benefits to be reaped by Russia through the construction of this line of railway are almost beyond calculation. Not only does it effect a coalescence of Siberia with Russia proper, which is of prime importance, but it insures a rapid and tremendous increase of population, with a corresponding development and enlargement of the nation's resources. In nearly all respects the benefits thus accruing to Russia are identical with those gained to the United States by the building of the Union Pacific, which brought about a settlement and cultivation of a vast western territory previously unused. The political aspect of the road is of equal interest, which has assumed an emphatic importance since the Chinese-Japanese war, because of an impending crisis in the far East.

The progress of Russia has been retarded by her lack of ocean ports. Her outlet by way of the Baltic Sea is tedious for its length, besides offering obstructions during the long winter, while the great extent of northern coast is of no advantage, because it is ice-bound about eight months in the year. All these difficulties, however, will be removed by the building of a trans-Siberian railway, which will open to Russia probably the finest port on the east Pacific, and maintain it by shipments of Siberian productions, mineral and agricultural. Construction of this through trunk line will be followed by the building of lateral branches, until in a few years Siberia will have all the transportation facilities required for the fullest development of the country. This means that Siberia will presently become a strong competitor of the United States in the raising of all the cereals, potatoes, and cattle, for no land of the earth is better adapted for these.

It is represented with good reason that Russia will build a branch from the main line to terminate at Port Arthur, which determination will invite strong protests from other European powers, especially from France, Germany, and Great Britain, who will not fail to perceive the political intention which prompts this move. All these several nations are watching with covetous eyes for opportunity and pretext to occupy Chinese territory, while a Chinese loan, to pay the Japanese indemnity, is sought to be made a vehicle upon which to ride into China with boots and saddles.

**POLITICAL BENEFITS OF
THE TRANS-SIBERIAN ROAD.**

Japan manifested great irritation over concessions made by China to Russia and Germany, by which the latter obtained control of Kiao-Chou, and the former was admitted to Ta-Lien-Wan, besides obtaining title to Deer Island. This appearance of dissatisfaction, while to an extent sincere and may lead to serious complications, certainly foreshadows the expectation of Japan to have a share of territory in the event of a dismemberment of China, and also a determination to maintain her supremacy in Corea as the substantial fruits of her victory. The situation, therefore, about the storm-centre of China is full of peril to the present armed peace, and the next great war promises to be upon fields and waters of the Orient.

While the leasing of any of her ports to foreign powers is a natural cause for intense jealousies, and the gaining of such distinct advantage by any one nation is likely to provoke a breach of the European peace, yet Russia is better prepared to maintain her position in the East, however hostile, by the building of a railway that provides the means of swift concentration of supplies and soldiery upon the coast, and recognition of this advantage will cause her opponents to hesitate to send a navy so far from home upon a doubtful emprise. In the meantime Japan has her eyes upon Corea, and the United States is waiting a culmination of the Eastern dispute, with expectation of reaping commercial benefits by observing a strict neutrality.

THE STORY OF POOR CUBA.



O country of the world possesses a fairer face, a richer soil, and more valuable productions than does Cuba. She has been called "Queen of the Antilles," but the title is by courtesy, seemingly to taunt her as did the enemies of our Saviour who set upon His cross the ironical legend, "Hail, King of the Jews!" God bestowed His best gifts upon beautiful Cuba, filled the land with flowers, and made its earth bring forth in such abundance that there was perpetual harvest. But the devil stole into this charming Eden, not in the shape of a serpent, but in the guise of a Spaniard, and sowed the island with tares, and made of it a land of oppression, starvation, and murder. When Columbus landed in Cuba he found a people whose hospitality was unbounded; who gave him of the best of their fruits, were untiring in their kindnesses, and brought their gold to lay as an offering at his feet. Gold! Gold! Gold! At sight of the precious metal Columbus and his companions became the quick emissaries of Satan, to cruelly maltreat and subject to slavery these innocent, hospitable, generous and happy people. They were forced to reveal the sources of their wealth, and were then driven to mining regardless of age, sex, or physical condition, and every one was compelled to produce and deliver to their iron-gloved taskmasters a certain quantity of gold every week. Failure to fulfill all these hard conditions was punished by every conceivable kind of torture, and through these almost unexampled hardships, and other brutalities inflicted upon them, nearly one-half the whole population of the island was destroyed, and the survivors became slaves. The Mohammedan slave-drivers and kidnappers of Africa were never more cruel, more avaricious, more damnable, than have been the Spaniards in Cuba. They have laid burdens upon the people beyond their physical abilities to bear; they have harrowed them with steel, and threshed them with horribly oppressive and confiscatory laws; denied them every form of redress, and wrung from them with sweat and blood the wealth that enabled Spanish grandees, and aristocrats, and an innumerable horde of official drones to live in luxury. And this unexampled cruelty, this shame of the century, this infamy of all time, has been permitted to continue without a single demonstration of interference upon the part of any American Republic. The oppressor has been driven from every other country of the Western hemisphere; Mexico was saved from the Maximilian yoke, that had been prepared for her, through the intervention of the United States; Hayti did not appeal in vain; Venezuela has received our needed help; Hawaii secured free government through a show of force, made by our guns of war; Nicaragua was saved from anarchy and humiliation by our mediation, but poor, suffering Cuba, wrecked and desolated, her fields winnowed, her children massacred, stretches her bleeding hands toward us and implores our aid, to save her from starvation; death, annihilation. Vainly does she remind us of the days when out of the depths of our despair we cried for help and was answered by the humanity of France coming to our assistance; hoping ever, though almost discouraged, she pleads for a

fulfillment of our boast of sympathy for all peoples struggling for liberty ; but the crying, the pleading, and the hoping fails to awaken our government to its duty, and so the shooting down of innocence, the devastation of fields, the slaughter of the helpless, the brutal abuses of women, the imprisonment of children, the riot of savagery goes on, and Christianity is disgraced by our supineness.

President McKinley, in his message to Congress of December 6, 1897, reviewed the Cuban situation in the following language: **PRESIDENT MCKINLEY'S CUBAN MESSAGE.**

The most important problem with which this government is now called upon to deal pertaining to its foreign relations concerns its duty towards Spain and the Cuban insurrection. Problems



AFTER THE BATTLE OF CAMAJUANI.

and conditions more or less in common with those now existing have confronted this government at various times in the past.

The story of Cuba for many years has been one of unrest, growing discontent, an effort toward a larger enjoyment of liberty and self-control, of organized resistance to the mother country, of depression after distress and warfare and of ineffectual settlement, to be followed by renewed revolt.

The prospect from time to time that the weakness of Spain's hold upon the island and the present vicissitudes and embarrassments of the home government might lead to the transfer of Cuba to a Continental power, called forth between 1823 and 1860 various emphatic declarations of the policy of the United States to permit no disturbance of Cuba's connection with Spain unless in the direction of independence or acquisition by us through purchase; nor has there been any change of this declared policy since upon the part of the government.

The revolution which began in 1868 lasted ten years, despite the strenuous efforts of the successive Peninsular Governments to suppress it. Then, as now, the Government of the United States testified its grave concern and offered its aid to put an end to bloodshed in Cuba.

The present insurrection broke out in February, 1895. It is not my purpose at this time to recall its remarkable increase, or to characterize its tenacious resistance against the enormous forces massed against it by Spain. The revolt and the efforts to subdue it carried destruction to every quarter of the island, developing wide proportions and defying the efforts of Spain for its suppression. The civilized code of war has been disregarded, no less so by the Spaniards than by the Cubans. The existing conditions cannot but fill this government and the American people with the gravest apprehension. There is no desire on the part of our people to profit by the misfortunes of Spain. We have only the desire to see the Cubans prosperous and contented, enjoying that measure of self-control which is the inalienable right of man, protected in their right to reap the benefit of the exhaustless treasures of their country. The offer made by my predecessor in April, 1896, tendering the friendly offices of this government, failed. Any mediation on our part was not accepted. In brief, the answer read: "There is no effectual way to pacify Cuba unless it begins with the actual submission of the rebels to the mother country." Then only could Spain act in the promised direction, of her own motion and after her own plans.

The cruel policy of concentration was initiated February 16, 1896. This policy the late Cabinet of Spain justified as a necessary measure of war and as a means of cutting off supplies from the insurgents. It has utterly failed

THE INHUMAN POLICY OF CONCENTRATION.



A CHARGE OF CUBAN CAVALRY.

as a war measure. It was not civilized warfare. It was extermination. Against this abuse of the rights of war I have felt constrained on repeated occasions to enter the firm and earnest protest of this government. There was much of public condemnation of the treatment of American citizens by alleged illegal arrests and long imprisonment awaiting trial or pending protracted judicial proceedings. I felt it my first duty to make instant demand for the release or speedy trial of all American citizens under arrest. Before the change of the Spanish Cabinet in October last, twenty-two prisoners, citizens of the United States, had been given their freedom.

The instructions given to our new Minister to Spain before his departure for his post directed him to impress upon that government the sincere wish of the United States to lend its aid toward the ending of the war in Cuba by reaching a peaceful and lasting result, just and honorable alike to Spain and to the Cuban people.

These instructions recited the character and duration of the contest, the widespread losses it entails, the burdens and restraints it imposes upon us, with constant disturbances of national interests and the injury resulting from an indefinite continuance of this state of things.

It was stated that at this juncture our government was constrained to seriously inquire if the time was not ripe when Spain, of her own volition, moved by her own interests and every sentiment of humanity, should put a stop

to this destructive war and make proposals of settlement honorable to herself and just to her Cuban colony. It was urged that as a neighboring nation, with large interests in Cuba, we could be required to wait only a reasonable time for the mother country to establish its authority and restore peace and order within the borders of the island; that we could not contemplate an indefinite period for the accomplishment of this result.

No solution was proposed to which the slightest idea of humiliation to Spain could attach, and indeed the precise proposals were withheld to avoid embarrassment to that government. All that was asked or expected was that some safe way might be speedily provided and permanent peace restored.

Between the departure of General Woodford, the new Envoy, and his arrival in Spain, the statesman who had shaped the policy of his country fell by the hand of an assassin, and although the Cabinet of the late Premier still held office and received from our Envoy the proposals he bore, that Cabinet gave place within a few days thereafter to a new Administration under the leadership of Sagasta. The reply to our note was received on October 23. It is in the direction of a better understanding. It appreciates the friendly purposes of this government. It admits that our country is deeply affected by the war in Cuba and that its desires for peace are just. It declares that the present Spanish Government is bound by every consideration to a change of policy that should satisfy the United States and pacify Cuba within a reasonable time. To this end Spain has decided to put into effect the political reforms heretofore advocated by the present Premier, without halting for any



CUBANS BRINGING IN SPANISH PRISONERS.

consideration in the path which in its judgment leads to peace. The military operations, it is said, will continue, but will be humane and conducted with all regard for private rights, being accompanied by political action leading to the autonomy of Cuba while guarding Spanish sovereignty. This, it is claimed, will result in investing Cuba with a distinct personality, the island to be governed by an executive and a local council or chamber, reserving to Spain the control of the foreign relations, the army and navy and the judicial administration. To accomplish this the present government proposes to modify existing legislation by decree, leaving the Spanish Cortes, with the aid of Cuban senators and deputies, to solve the economic problem and properly distribute the existing debt.

SPAIN'S PROMISES OF AUTONOMY.

In the absence of a declaration of the measures that this government proposes to take in carrying out its proffer of good offices, it suggests that Spain be left free to conduct military operations and grant political reforms, while the United States for its part shall enforce the neutral obligations and cut off the assistance which it is asserted the insurgents receive from this country. The supposition of an indefinite prolongation of the war is denied. The immediate amelioration of existing conditions under the new administration of Cuban affairs is predicted, and therewithal the disturbance and all occasion for any change of attitude on the part of the United States.

Discussion of the question of the international duties and responsibilities of the United States, as Spain understands them, is presented with an apparent disposition to charge us with failure in this regard. This charge is without any basis in fact. It could not have been made if Spain had been cognizant of the constant efforts this government has made at the cost of millions and by the employment of the administrative ministry of the nation

at command to perform its full duty according to the law of nations. That it has successfully prevented the departure of a single military expedition or armed vessel from our shores in violation of our laws would seem to be a sufficient answer.

Of the untried measures there remain only recognition of the insurgents as belligerents, recognition of the independence of Cuba, neutral intervention to end the war by imposing a rational compromise between the contestants, and intervention in favor of one or the other party. I speak not of forcible annexation, for that cannot be thought of. That, by our code of morality, would be criminal aggression. Recognition of the belligerency of the Cuban insurgents has often been canvassed as a possible if not inevitable step, both in regard to the previous ten-years' struggle and during the present war. I am not unmindful that the two houses of Congress in the spring of 1896 expressed the opinion, by concurrent resolution, that a condition of public war existed, requiring or justifying the recognition of a state of belligerency in Cuba, and during the extra session the Senate voted a joint resolution of like import, which, however, was not brought to a vote in the House of Representatives.

President McKinley has admirably and ably pictured the situation, and his sympathy for the Cuban patriots is apparent in every line of this part of his message. If there were no others to consult, no conflicting interests to restrain, beyond doubt the President would promptly recommend drastic measures to end the carnage and the shocking shame, but it is Congress alone that can enact measures providing for national interference, or to coerce Spain into granting the liberties that the patriotic Cubans demand and deserve.

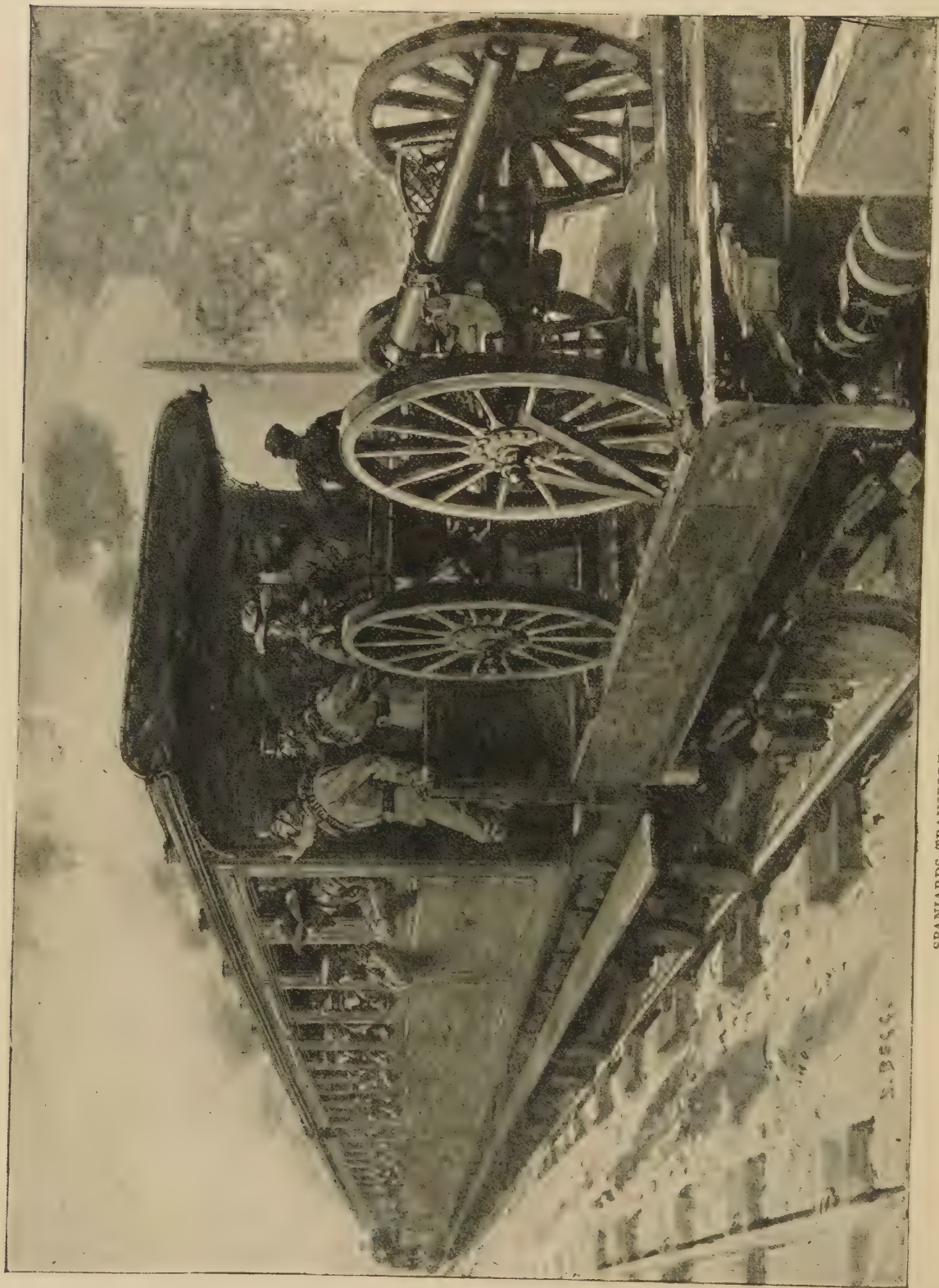
To give a complete history of Cuba, and the rebellions that have taken place in vain efforts to throw off the galling yoke of Spanish oppressors, would require more than a single volume, hence in the small space at my command I can

THE TEN-YEARS' WAR. present only the most pronounced incidents and influences that have affected the people of that island. The first great rebellion in Cuba had its beginning in 1868, and continued, though in a desultory way, until 1878, when the Spaniards, being unable to rout the rebels and restore peace by forcible means, conciliated them by unctuous promises of reform and autonomy, almost identical with the humane and just promises of the Sagasta ministry. These assurances were given as pledges of the nation, and trusting to the honor of their oppressors, the rebels laid down their arms and peacefully waited the putting into effect the reforms by which Spain stood so firmly bound. But, like other promises made to be broken by that treacherous nation, this one proved to have been no more than an expedient to deceive, to induce a disbandment of the rebel army, thus permitting a reorganization of the government of Cuba in the Spanish interest and a reinstitution of the old oppressive laws that had caused the ten-year war. The only condition in the compact that Spain even recognized was the one that provided for an abolition of slavery on the island. This clause, however, was not fully observed, but was modified so that its effect was to give freedom to all slaves over sixty years of age, who were really charges upon their masters, and to declare that all children born after 1870 should be free, thus leaving all the able-bodied slaves still in bondage, working for their cruel and extravagant masters. This shameful condition, however, was corrected in 1886, when slavery was abolished by statute, but the exasperating restrictions and burdensome debts that so grievously oppress the people of Cuba were allowed to remain, and it was in an effort to throw off these that the rebellion beginning February 20, 1895, was begun.

The abuses and oppressions of which the Cubans justly complain are described in a general way by Ramon O. Williams, our Consul General to the island in 1885, in an official report to the Department of State :

* * * * *

"There is a system of oppression and torture which enters every phase of life, eats into the soul of every Cuban, mortifies, injures, and insults him every hour, impoverishes him and his family from day to day, threatens the rich man with bankruptcy and the poor



SPANIARDS TRANSPORTING SOLDIERS AND ARTILLERY TO EAST CUBA.

man with beggary. The exactions of the Spanish Government and the illegal outrages of its officers are, in fact, intolerable. They have reduced the island to despondency and ruin. The government at Madrid is directly answerable for the misery of Cuba and for the rapacity and venality of its subordinates. No well-informed Spaniard imagines that Cuba will long continue to submit to this tyranny, or, at least, that she will long be able to yield this harvest to her oppressors. Spain cares nothing whatever for the interests, the prosperity, or the suffering of her colony. The government does almost nothing to ameliorate any of the evils of the country. The roads are no roads at all. Every interest which might enrich and improve the island is looked upon by officials as one more mine to exploit. *Cuba is held solely for the benefit of Spain and Spanish interests, for the sake of Spanish adventurers.* Against this all rebel in thought and feeling, if not yet in fact and deed. They wish protection from the grasping rapacity of Spain, and see no way to attain it except by our aid."

The peace of 1878, obtained by false pretences and promises, to be soon broken, was so brief that the air of freedom had scarcely stirred upon the island before the Cubans were made to realize the emptiness of Spanish pledges. The first election thereafter was rendered farcical by the imposition of a poll tax of twenty-five dollars, the payment of which was a qualification precedent to the voting franchise. By this expedient the ballot was given exclusively to the rich, for all Cubans had been impoverished by war and tax impositions. But the application of the poll tax was made to apply almost entirely to Cubans, for Spaniards were able to avoid it by the head of a rich house paying the tax for himself and obtaining the privilege to vote all his employes upon this single payment. In other words, the law was outrageously formed so as to give the rich exclusive rights to the ballot, for their employes were required to vote as the master dictated, which the Spanish employes, however poor, were glad to do. The Cuban members of the Spanish Congress were by this expedient all Spaniards.

All officers of any consequence on the island are and always have been Spaniards. The estimates of the annual expenditures prior to the present rebellion were approximately \$25,000,000, divided as follows: The Spanish civil officials drew \$4,000,000, the list being headed by the Governor General, whose salary is \$50,000. The army, nearly all Spanish, absorb \$7,000,000; interest on the Spanish debt \$10,000,000; pensions, all to Spaniards, \$2,000,000; treasury administration \$1,000,000; judiciary \$1,000,000. This consumed the total appropriations but the enumerations here did not complete the expenses. There was usually an appropriation, of about \$1,000,000 for internal improvement, bills innumerable in the shape of private claims, but not one penny for education. The deficit, which was unfailling every year, amounted to an average of \$7,000,000 for ten years, which was met by an issue of Cuban bonds, so that the burden of debt has never ceased to increase while the ability to meet it has been curtailed by innumerable restrictions laid upon the native Cubans for the benefit of Spanish traders.

It is asserted that for a series of several years not more than five per cent of the taxes extorted from the island were spent for the benefit of its people, and that only four per cent of the productions of the island were used by those to whom they rightfully belonged, the ninety-six per cent being consumed in taxes and other forms of Spanish impositions.

Goaded by their cruel taskmasters to a desperation beyond restraint, the Cubans rose in insurrection in 1879 but their lack of means and organization made the struggle futile,

or they were speedily crushed by the strong military hand that was held above them to punish the patriots at the first signs of rebellion. Nor did the effort that was made in 1880 prove any more successful.

Sympathy for the Cubans has for a long while been both strong and active in the United States, but it has generally been confined to peace offerings. In 1848 President Polk authorized the American Minister at Madrid to offer the sum of one hundred millions of dollars for Cuba, but the proposition met with no consideration. Mr. Slidell, of Louisiana, introduced a bill in the Senate in 1858, looking to an acquisition of the island by purchase but subsequently withdrew it, and in 1889 Mr. Blaine, who was then Secretary of State, and an active Cuban sympathizer, attempted to secure the independence of the island through a purchase, by the natives, under a guarantee of payment by the United States; but, like other proposals, this one failed to receive consideration at the hands of Spain. In the meantime insurrection after insurrection followed, in some of which citizens of the United States were deeply involved, the most serious of which was the so-called "Virginus massacre" in November, 1873. The *Virginus* was a vessel engaged in trade in the Carribean sea, and, flying the American flag, had started upon a voyage to New York. She was in command of Joseph Fry, of Louisiana, and had on board 130 passengers and a crew of thirty men. When steaming out of Kingston, Jamaica, where she had put in to make some repairs, she was pursued by the Spanish man-of-war *Tornado* and after a long chase was captured.

All the passengers and crew were taken to Santiago de Cuba where two days later they were convicted, before a court-martial, of piracy and sentenced to be shot. The execution began on November 7, by the shooting of Captain Fry and all the crew of his vessel, whose bodies were afterwards horribly mutilated by a company of artillery driving the wheels of heavy gun carriages over them. A second detail, sixteen passengers, was executed in a similar manner on the following day, but further massacre was prevented by the commander of the British warship *Niobe*, who peremptorily demanded that the survivors be spared until the matter could be referred to the home authorities. When the slaughter was reported, and all its horribly brutal particulars were known in the United States, the country became almost immediately frenzied with excitement and more than one hundred thousand volunteers offered their services to punish Spain for the cruelty. The result was that Spain not only surrendered the surviving prisoners to the United States, but in addition made an apology and gave an indemnity of \$80,000, whereupon the affair was considered terminated.

The unrest in Cuba has continued with small interruption since the year 1849, but there have been times during this interval when the people seemed to have accepted their hard fate because they were unable to amend it; but all the while there were bitter hatreds

INSURRECTIONS FOLLOWING THE PEACE OF ZANJON.



ANTONIO MACEO.

and anxious anticipation of coming opportunity to try the issue again with their inhuman tormentors. Spain was not insensible of this patriotic spirit that pervaded the whole island

**A SPECIFIC CAUSE OF THE
'95 REBELLION.**

and to keep it in subjection she garrisoned all the Cuban posts and crowded the prisons with suspects by way of intimidation. In the meantime Spain was ever conceiving and proposing new *reforms*, which in reality were but cunning legal devices designed with the view of extorting more blood money from the poor islanders. The last so-called *reform*, adopted in 1894, was to form a *Council* with power to administer the affairs of the island, this Council to be composed of thirty members, fifteen of whom were to be appointed by Spain, and the other fifteen to be elected by the Cubans. This might be considered as a concession, but mark the limitations! It was a condition of this reform measure that the Governor-General should be ex-officio president of the Council, with the right of veto as well as having the casting vote. This gave the Spaniards all the power that they really required, but the poll-tax qualification, as before explained, enabled the Spaniards to elect not less than twelve members of the fifteen, who should be Cubans, besides which the Governor-General was given the right to suspend indefinitely, if he chose, any number of members of the Council not to exceed ten.

The Cubans saw in this arbitrary action not only the cloven foot, but the full figure of the devil, and an explanation soon followed. At this time there were held in Europe no less than \$200,000,000 of Cuban bonds, all of which represented debts contracted by Spanish officials and the Spanish Government in the military operations against Mexico, Peru, and San Domingo, in which the island itself had neither benefit nor interest, notwithstanding the whole amount was secured by pledging the revenues of Cuba. But as more money was required the Council of Administration was formed to increase the Cuban burdens by an additional issue of bonds, amounting to \$100,000,000, thus making the total bonded debt \$300,000,000, which 1,500,000 already impoverished people were to bear like a cross to the Golgotha of their crucifixion.

TO ARMS! At these fresh iniquities liberty's torch was lighted to spread the flames of revolution through the distracted island. Jose Marti, who had been twice banished by the Spanish Government, became the head of a Cuban Junta in New York City and by pen and speech fired the popular heart, by reciting the wrongs of his loved but suffering island country. Neither leaders nor volunteers were lacking in the hour of need. Cisneros Betancourt, and the two Maceo brothers, Antonio and Jose, took up the cry of *Cuba libre* and soon organized the patriots into a fighting force. The first rebellious demonstrations took place in Eastern Cuba, in February, 1895, which Governor-General Calleja tried to suppress by suspending personal guaranties and banishing suspects to the prisons of Cueta, north Africa. In April following Calleja was recalled and General Martinez Campos was placed in command, but notwithstanding his activity, and the numerous and constantly swelling forces sent to his assistance, he was unable to check the movements of the patriotic insurgents. Gomez and Antonio Maceo, the latter a half-breed, were by universal consent given command of the insurrectionary army, with Jose Maceo and Marti taking charge of the provisional government which it was necessary to immediately establish.

It was the policy of the insurgents to worry rather than to fight their adversaries, until they could sufficiently increase and arm their forces for field operations, as their numbers were comparatively small and their equipment woefully insufficient to cope with so large a disciplined army as had been sent against them. In May the first engagement was fought

at Dos Rios in which the brave and energetic Marti was killed, which aside from the great loss to the patriots caused a serious delay in the organization of the civil government. It was therefore not until September following that the constituent assembly met in Camaguey, which after adopting a constitution elected officers of the declared Republic and divided the island into states and districts and provided for all the functions of government.

Being seldom able to engage the insurgents in pitched battles General Campos sought to confine them to the province of Santiago, to which end he built two trochas, of barbed wire and earth walls, across the island, and protected it with a line of soldiers and with forts at short intervals. These means proved of no avail, for Gomez charged through the lines and easily formed a junction with Betancourt in the province of Puerto Principe. Desultory warfare now succeeded, which has continued for three years, relieved by occasional dashes, but nearly always the collisions have resulted to the advantage



DEATH OF HENRI MARTI.

of the insurgents, as is proved by an official Spanish report made to Madrid under date of February, 1896, summarizing the results of the first year of the rebellion: Spanish loss, 3877, of which number 286 were killed in battle, 119 died of wounds, 3190 died of yellow

fever, and 282 of other diseases. Within this time 120,000 regular soldiers had been sent to Cuba, in addition to the Spanish volunteers on the island, estimated at 35,000, and the military operations had cost the sum of \$75,000,000. Statistics are not procurable showing the loss to the insurgents, nor their expenditures, but officials maintain that they suffered the loss of not more than 700 men all told during the first year, while the expenditures

have been confined almost entirely to contributions made by sympathizers in other countries.

General Campos conducted the war generally on humane principles, and he was vigilant, daring, and capable; yet he had to contend with so many disadvantages that no amount of military skill or stratagem could be made effective against the equally skillful tactics of Gomez and Maceo, who not only fought the good fight under patriotic inspiration, but who also had for their aids the helpful sympathies of all Cubans. Besides these advantages, the insurgents possessed the greater one of fighting for their homes, and of knowing the country so thoroughly, that they were able



CUBANS ATTACKING A SPANISH POST AT VUELTAS.

to scatter and to unite at designated points in the forests and swamps, where an army could not follow. They were also inured to the climate, and could endure the exposures incident to guerilla warfare without injury to health or at the expense of vigor.

In the spring of 1896 Spain lost confidence in the military abilities of Campos to cope with the insurgents, and recalling him, appointed Valeriano Weyler Governor-General in his stead. Weyler had made a reputation as an effective and iron-handed commander in the



SPANISH CAVALRY AMBUSHED BY CUTTHROATS

ten-years' war in Cuba and in establishing Spanish rule in the Philippine Islands; so that expectation was great at Madrid that he would make short work of the patriots. And Weyler himself was boastful of his power and determination to speedily crush the rebels by inaugurating a ruthless warfare of extermination.

In pursuance of his threats he built trochas, guarded the highways, and destroyed plantations; butchered every suspect taken, whether man, woman, or child; filled prisons with the helpless; pillaged, plundered, outraged, and devastated without ceasing. These infamous methods of the savage failing him, he adopted another, no less cruel, of depopulating all the country districts, firing the villages, and concentrating all the miserable, homeless people in strongly garrisoned cities, where they were left to starve, for, in their extreme poverty,

THE FURY OF HELL

LET LOOSE.

provisions were not obtainable. Gaunt famine now stalked through this once beautiful land, thousands died of starvation in a country so rich that every seed put into the ground may bring forth a thousand fold. Little children died upon mothers' breasts because starving had dried up all nourishment; corpses lay everywhere, and only vultures grew fat, finding food plentiful; women were violated, and men were chopped to pieces in the field, on the highway, in their homes, and wherever found. Gun, saber and machete were the only implements now in use, and the fury of hell, the horror of massacre, the stench of death covered poor Cuba. Weyler seldom ventured forth from his palace to personally conduct

campaigns, and when he did enter the enemy's territory he kept well out of danger and was always surrounded by a heavy bodyguard, while the most he accomplished was the raiding of some plantation, or a descent upon a hospital and the murdering of the helpless inmates.

THE ASSASSINATION

OF MACEO.

Thus, a year of his inhuman rule closed with no more effective results to the Spanish cause than the decoying of General Maceo into an ambush by professed friends, who assassinated him. When the heroic general fell there was great rejoicing throughout Spain, where the opinion prevailed that the strongest arm of the insurgents' cause had been paralyzed, and that the end of the rebellion would quickly follow as a consequence. The Spaniards, however, very soon modified their expectations, for though the loss of Maceo was indeed a severe blow to the patriots, it in no wise embarrassed their movements or served to lessen their resolution, for Maceo's place was promptly taken by Manuel Garcia, whose military skill and adroitness is of the highest order, as was proved during previous revolutions on the island, in which he was a leader.

Weyler's disappointment at the results which he confidently predicted would ensue from Maceo's assassination threw him into the wildest rage, which was further intensified by reports of the landing of American vessels, with arms and supplies for the insurgents, at unprotected and unguarded points on the Cuban coast. These reports had small foundation of fact, but they were eagerly seized upon to form excuses he made to the home authorities for the continuance of the rebellion, without which aid he declared the insurgents could not maintain themselves or continue the struggle.

Weyler's prejudices against Americans became so great that he refused to respect their rights upon the island and ordered their indiscriminate arrest, persecution, and execution. Scores were thrown into filthy prisons and subjected to such

MURDER OF AMERICANS.

abuses and deprivations that many died from the effects. Our Consul-General, Lee, made frequent protests to Weyler of his illegal treatment of American citizens, and reported the outrages to the authorities at Washington, but without obtaining reparation, in consequence of which indifference General

Lee was several times upon the point of sending in his resignation, which he only refrained from doing by promises made by the State Department to give his charges proper attention.

One of the particular outrages perpetrated by Weyler's orders was the unjust imprisonment of Dr. Ruiz, an American citizen, who was seized upon a suspicion that he had been giving aid to insurgents. Not content with the punishment that incarceration inflicted, he would glut his savagery by subjecting the doctor to the acutest torture. His brutal guards accordingly beat him with clubs, denied him food and water, and otherwise so maltreated the poor man that he died from the effects. When report of this barbarous outrage was made in the American press, and through General Lee's communications, indignation became unbounded, and the whole country was ready to take up arms to avenge the crime. The widow of Dr. Ruiz escaped with her two children to the United States and made a personal appeal to the State Department, reciting at length the particulars of her husband's murder. Promises were made that led her to believe the Spanish Government would be held to accountability and that indemnity would be promptly demanded. The poor woman had been left penniless, and would have suffered the pangs of severest poverty but for the charity extended to her by the *New York Journal*, which provided for her wants, and at this writing continues to do so. Six months after the murder of Dr. Ruiz demand was made upon the government at Madrid, through Minister Woodford, for immediate indemnity and reparation, which demand, however, was treated with the same indifference that characterized the Spanish authorities upon the submission of previous requests by our government, and no pressure has since been brought to bear to enforce it.

Abuses however flagrant, crimes however monstrous, and indignities however humiliating, are soon forgotten by the peace-loving people of our country, and so the Ruiz outrage presently passed out of mind as do all things filed at the State Department. The next popular agitation in America over Cuban affairs was created by a much simpler incident than many others that never came to public notice, but the manner of its exploiting was such as caused immense excitement. The report was made through the metropolitan press that a young girl named Cisneros, seventeen years of age, had been ravaged from her home, which a short time before had been devastated by the cruel Spaniards, and her father sent into exile. In reality the girl voluntarily accompanied her father into exile, but it was declared that she had been taken without warrant or right, deported to the Isle of Pines, and there kept as a convict and made to perform menial labor for a brutal and lustful commandant named Berriez. The report also recited that the instigation of this outrage was not political or military, but entirely sensual, having been made by order of a monster whose libidinous advances to the girl had been resented, and who took this means to get her within his



CUBANS DESTROYING A VILLAGE.

THE RESCUE OF MISS CISNEROS.

power. It was proved she was subjected to the most infamous persecutions to compel compliance with the lecherous demands; but neither threats nor promises availed this devil-faced officer, who, finding it impossible to overcome the impregnable virtue of the girl, sent her to the Recojidas prison, in Havana, where she was for several weeks confined in a noisome cell with about twenty other female prisoners, a majority of whom were depraved negresses. The condition of this unfortunate girl, and the declared purpose of Weyler to send her to the hell of Cueta, created the most profound excitement among sympathetic Americans, which took the form of a memorial to the Queen Regent of Spain, giving a history of the girl and petitioning for her pardon. This memorial was signed by thousands of women in America, and afterwards successfully circulated for signatures in England and France, but when finally presented it served no other purpose than to obtain the Queen's promise to have the case inquired into, which was equivalent to destroying the huge petition.

Finding at length how vain is the hope of depending upon Spanish authorities to punish abuses or to right wrongs, a plan was formed to accomplish Miss Cisneros' rescue. A correspondent, named Karl Decker, was accordingly sent to Havana by the *New York Journal*, amply provided with money to bribe, and with courage to execute the most desperate undertaking. This correspondent, at imminent risk to his life, succeeded in his heroic and chivalrous purpose, by forcing the bars of the fair prisoner's cell at midnight, and brought his beautiful charge to America, where she was received with great demonstrations, and was soon afterward adopted by Mrs. John A. Logan, of Washington City.

An incident followed a few weeks later, which brought as vividly to mind Spanish abuses, while at the same time it served to emphasize the supineness of our government.

Very early in the year 1897 a small vessel, called "The Competitor," was seized off the coast of Cuba, and being towed to Matanzas as a prize, the crew were sent as prisoners to Havana, where, for no less than nine months, they were confined in El Moro Castle. All of these men were American citizens, and though they were charged with piracy, in smuggling arms and provisions to the insurgents, the proofs were never established, while the burden of evidence seemed to support the declarations of the crew, that they were engaged in legitimate commerce. General Lee promptly reported the case to our authorities, and representations were made to the Madrid government by the Department of State, but no action was taken until Weyler had the men court-martialed, and, despite the utter absence of proof of guilt, they were sentenced to death. Execution, however, was delayed, because of the fear that such barbarity and murder might lead to a declaration of war by the United States. In the meantime, the prisoners were denied the necessities of life, and were kept so closely confined in damp and foetid cells that disease seized upon the suffering crew, from which ten of them died, and the remainder were reduced to skeletons. At last, after many months of inhuman inactivity upon the part of our authorities, after the recall of Weyler and the succession of the Sagasta ministry, the five survivors received a pardon and returned to America, but as shadows of their former selves, and with constitutions broken beyond repair. Nor has demand been made for reparation for this infamous outrage, and the sufferers must endure their wrongs without hope of redress.

CUBA'S PASSIONATE APPEAL FOR HELP.

appeal addressed to the American people by Salvador Cisneros Betan-court, president of the proclaimed republic, February 1, 1897, occurs the following language:

" . . . The world knows the noble yet fearful history. Spain knows it, and when her representative in the capital of the United States says the Cuban rebellion is a negro

movement entirely, he not only falsifies, but he insults the memory of the grand army of the dead. We are proud to have our colored brothers with us in this glorious struggle for freedom; for Cuba, when free, will be like the land of Washington, where every man worthy of citizenship will be accorded the full rights of civil and religious liberty.

"We ask the American people to grant us, through their President and Congress, those rights of belligerency to which, according to the laws of all nations and of war we are entitled. Our armies have marched whither they might throughout the entire island, and have for weeks threatened the stronghold of Spain's power in Cuba. Must we capture Havana and drive Spain's hirelings across the sea before we are given the right as men to fight for that priceless gift which God destined should be universally divided among His



AN INSURGENT RENDEZVOUS IN PINAR DEL RIO.

children? Must we gain our independence before we are accorded the sanction of the world to labor for it?

* * * * *

"On all grounds of diplomatic and international usage the Cuban Republic is entitled not alone to recognition of belligerent rights for its armies now in the field, but to actual independence. Still, we do not ask that the latter be accorded us at present. All we wish now is to be looked upon by the Government of the United States as men and soldiers, battling for their birthright. We do not wish to appear in the eyes of the world like bandits and a rabble.

* * * * *

"People of the free and glorious United States, Cuba appeals to you! She asks that you raise your voice in her behalf. She asks that you announce to the world that at least as against the tyrant she be given an equal chance. Cuba, the bleeding, appeals to her American sisters. She does it in the name of God, of justice, of civilization and of America."

In the Senate of the United States, during the session of 1896-97, a resolution was introduced by Senator Morgan, of Alabama, according belligerent rights to Cuban insurgents; Senator Sherman, who is at this writing Secretary of State, led the discussion in favor of its adoption. The speech which he delivered (in February) upon that occasion, following the appeal by President Betancourt, was not only a lengthy one but was marked by force and eloquent

descriptions of the condition of the suffering people and the world-shocking barbarities of Weyler. Some extracts from this speech deserve to be reproduced in this work, not alone for the information which is thus conveyed, but as showing the feelings of Senator Sherman, and enabling us to compare his declarations as senator with his astounding lukewarmness as Secretary of State:

"The whole movement of the military force in Cuba is Spanish in its character. They have more troops now in Cuba than England ever had in the American Colonies during our American Revolution. The force that has been brought to bear has been unable to check the movement of these wandering brigands, as they are called, in their triumphal march from one end of the island to another. Sometimes it is said that the local government has no habitation; that it has no place which it can hold to pass laws. In this respect they are like our Revolutionary Fathers, who assembled at Philadelphia, adjourned to Baltimore, fled to Lancaster, and convened at Yorktown."

Senator Sherman referred to an identical resolution introduced by himself in 1870, recognizing the Cubans as belligerents in the ten-years' war, and explained the cause of the defeat of the resolution as follows: "The conditions under which it was introduced were rather peculiar. At that time General Grant was understood to be strongly in favor of taking determined measures to put an end to Spanish rule in Cuba. . . . But Mr. Hamilton Fish, his Secretary of State, was no doubt largely controlled by the commercial interests of the city of New York. He was very much opposed to Grant's policy, and resisted it to the utmost. Finally General Grant yielded. . . . The strongest possible statement of the objections to our interfering in the issue and to our recognition of Cuban belligerency is stated in the message of President Grant in 1875, and I think every one who is familiar with the writings of Mr. Fish will see that it was practically his work. Therefore it was that we did then as we are doing now—we let the thing run along."

In the course of his speech, after presenting statistics to prove the immense commercial interests that the United States has in Cuba, Senator Sherman read from a book written by a Spaniard named Donderio, descriptions of some of the astounding barbarities inflicted by Weyler during the war of 1868-78, as follows:

**WEYLER'S HORRIBLE
AMUSEMENTS.**

"It was not alone that he carried out the brutal orders of Valmesada (Captain-General at the time). Had he done only that the Cubans of to-day would fix the blame upon Valmesada instead of upon him (Weyler). But he went much further; he took it upon himself to cause the outrage and murder of scores of women in the small towns and villages. His favorite amusement was entering a village with a regiment of soldiers and collecting all the women to be found in the dwellings. If

there happened to be any men left in the village at the time they would be shot down. The women huddled together in a frightened group, while Weyler would form his troops in a hollow square facing inward and then having three or four of the women, and even little girls of the age of ten and twelve years, stripped absolutely naked, he would drive them into the square at the point of the bayonet, and make them dance until exhausted, the double file of sensual Spaniards gazing on with delight. When one set had fallen panting to the ground, he would deliver them over to the soldiers for their gratification and bring out others, until every woman in the village, stripped, had been forced to submit to these terrible indignities. Finally, the tortured creatures would be put out of their misery by being hacked literally to pieces with swift strokes of Cuban machetes."



A WAR CORRESPONDENT'S VISIT TO GOMEZ.

Many other equally horrible incidents Senator Sherman read from Donderio's book, and then quoted facts reported by eye-witnesses of Weyler's infernality as follows:

"Weyler came to a country place called Levado, which belonged to Maguilara, then vice-president of the republic of Cuba. Here he found in bed and almost dying Eugenio Tomagno and his brother. They were almost dead of consumption and in a state of ulceration, but Weyler had them dragged through the hallway and out of doors to a wood where they were cut to pieces. The wife of the manager of the estate, who was there with her little daughter, eight or nine years old, was taken out of the house, deprived of her clothing, and made to dance, with her little daughter. Both were afterwards outraged and cut to pieces."

**VIOLATION AND MURDER
OF WOMEN.**

At this point in his speech of denunciation Senator Sherman said: "In Donderio's book, mentioned above, the writer (who it must be remembered was a Spaniard and not a Cuban, and who would certainly not have told falsehoods against his countrymen) gives these thrilling little dramas of horror, taken from the reign of Weyler at this period: 'As we approached the village of Boire, we saw coming toward us the guerillas of a Spanish column, who, in a reconnoitering expedition in the woods thereabouts, had found a small colony of Cuban families whose male individuals they had all assassinated and whose ears they were bringing, strung on their bayonets, so as to show the number they had killed and claim the reward.'

"In one of the camps one could contemplate the troops looking with almost the satisfaction of tigers upon four women whom they had captured. Three of them were from sixteen to twenty years of age, and the other more advanced in years and was accompanied by two small girls from seven to nine years old, whose mother she was. The lady thus referred to belonged to the wealthy family of Los Penos. She thought to soften the hearts of the soldiers by presenting to them her two little daughters, who were besides rather sickly, and praying that they might not be condemned to an act, which would, without doubt, cause their immediate death. But all her supplications were in vain. The soldiers were finally given authority to do with the women as they pleased, and next morning they were all dead.

"I once witnessed the arrival of a column at a small Cuban settlement with thirteen families. The women were separated from the men, and were then compelled to gather the wood with which their relatives were to be reduced to ashes, after being butchered. The women were, of course, according to the usual custom, ravished a little later. We have witnessed with our own eyes what we have described.'

**CRIMES THAT WOULD
SHAME SATAN.**

"These," declared Senator Sherman, "are excerpts picked out at random from Donderio's book, and the stories are unconnected. They are translated literally from the original Spanish, and the peculiar idioms are kept." After so stating, the Senator proceeded to quote several other atrocities perpetrated by Weyler. The fact of the Senator so using Donderio's statements, is equivalent to his endorsement of them, and he thus makes himself to an extent responsible. Continuing the quotation:

"With fiendish delight Weyler took captive a middle-aged father, mother, and their two daughters and two sons, whom he had overlooked upon a previous visit. He marched them along until coming to a chosen spot he bound the father and mother firmly to trees near each other. Then having the daughters held tightly by the guards, he proceeded to order several of his soldiers to hack the young boys to pieces with machetes. The boys now lying dead, the butcher signaled to his soldiers to bring forward the two girls. They were pretty, dainty señoritas, in the first flush of womanhood, and Weyler's smile grew more sardonic as they were brought before him. Then and there, in full sight of the father and mother, he had his soldiers strip the young girls of every article of clothing and for half an hour compelled them to dance with all the soldiers looking on. But Weyler was not through yet. It sounds absolutely impossible to say that any man could be possessed of such cruelty, but facts are facts, and it is the sober truth, vouched for by several Cubans in this city, that immediately following the dancing, with the father and mother still looking on, the butcher gave instructions to have the girls violated before their eyes. It proved the death of both of them, and left the father and mother—whose lives Weyler spared—hopelessly insane.'"

These are only a few of the atrocious, hellish acts committed by Weyler which Senator Sherman used to illustrate the inhumanities of the Spanish in their damnable efforts to suppress the cry of liberty in Cuba, and he closed his speech with the following words: "We will not shield ourselves behind the position taken by the British Government in the case of Armenia, that Armenia was so far away and beyond her power that Great Britain could not help those people when they were being murdered. That was no doubt a true position, and it was difficult under the circumstances for Great Britain to interfere. I do not say this as a criticism. But Cuba lies right at our shore. A few hours suffices to carry us across to Havana, the capital of that beautiful island, which is rich in production, which contains the best sugar lands in the world, a country capable of holding 5,000,000 people and giving them active and prosperous employment—people of a gentle and kindly race, not disposed to warfare, unless it be to resent intrusion and tyranny.

**SHERMAN'S APPEAL TO
GOD AND JUSTICE.**

"Whatever may be the result of the adoption of this measure, I desire to take my share of the responsibility in connection with it, and with a confidence in the judgment of the Almighty Ruler of the universe, I believe it will be wise if we can assist, and all the other nations of America concur, in securing to the people of Cuba the same liberties that we now enjoy."

This really powerful speech, one of the best, it was said at the time, that Senator Sherman ever delivered, had great influence and the belligerency resolution was adopted in the Senate by a large majority, but went to the House so late in the session that insufficient time was given for full discussion and was never brought to a vote. Thus the question of recognition stood when President McKinley was inaugurated and Senator Sherman accepted the portfolio of Secretary of State. But the friends of Cuba were most hopeful, as they had reason to be, for not only had their champion in the Senate succeeded to the highest cabinet position, where his ability to aid them was now the greatest, but the platform of the Republican party, upon which President McKinley was elected and to which he had pledged himself, contained an emphatic pronouncement committing the party to a recognition of the Cuban insurgents.

Notwithstanding the well-based expectations of the patriots their hopes were destined to be long deferred. The hard struggle for liberty went on in Cuba, and Weyler's crimes continued in all their former horrific phases. Americans were placed under his especial ban of hate; the consulate was stoned by mobs, and it was almost certain death for a citizen of the United States to venture himself upon the streets of Havana. So desperate became the condition of Americans on the island that, to prevent their actual starving, upon the representations of Consul-General Lee the sum of \$50,000 was subscribed by Congress for their relief, distribution of which was made through the Consul, by which assistance several hundred were enabled to leave the island and to return to the United States.

Finally, in October, 1897, the charges against Weyler's inhumanities, and his speculations as well, became so numerous and loud, preferred not only by Americans but by the press of London and Paris also, and the proofs were so conclusive, that a change became imperative. The Canovas ministry had failed miserably in its attempt to suppress the rebellion; more than \$100,000,000 had been squandered, and of the 200,000 soldiers sent to Cuba from Spain, more than half had died or were become unfit for service, because of sickness or wounds. The Spanish treasury was empty, the soldiers were unpaid, and the Carlists were growing so bold as to seriously threaten an uprising at home.

**CAUSES LEADING TO THE
RECALL OF WEYLER.**

Under circumstances so desperate, which the assassination of Canovas in September intensified, the ministry was dissolved and Sagasta was called to form a new one. The task was a critical one, but he obeyed the summons, and to placate, or, rather, to deceive, both Americans and Cubans, his first act was to recall Weyler and appoint in his place General Blanco, who was advertised as a humane and influential commander. Captain-General Blanco arrived in Cuba the last day of October and brought with him a scheme of autonomy as a conciliatory measure, which the Cubans were expected to receive with thankfulness.



A SPANISH ADVANCE POST IN CUBA.

If either Spain or the United States sincerely believed that promises of autonomy would satisfy the patriotic Cubans, the disappointment must have been as great as the expectation was puerile. It is possible to deceive once, or even twice, by the same means, but it is impossible to continue such delusions except by the use of new expedients, and this autonomy gold brick had been sold to the Cubans twice before. They know the cunning, the cruelty, the insincerity of Spanish statecraft, and by bitter experience have been taught that whatever the promises made, the purpose is to persuade them to lie down and have the manacles, which are now half broken, repaired and riveted more firmly. The Cubans therefore not only rejected the coated pill of autonomy, but repeated in louder voice their determination to win independence or to die in the struggle. To emphasize their decision they threatened to execute any emissary of the Spanish Government who should come to them with the promise of autonomy, and in fact Gomez did order the summary shooting of two government agents who had the temerity to pass the insurgent lines to urge acceptance of Sagasta's proposals. And here the matter stands, without change of condition or resolution, the Cubans battling for their homes and independence, and their oppressors striving to devastate the island and to annihilate the suffering patriots. Wall street and the

**REJECTION OF SAGASTA'S
OFFER OF AUTONOMY.**

so-called commercial interests of New York are paramount, and exert the same influence now they used so effectively in 1870, when Hamilton Fish, as their representative, persuaded President Grant to withhold his pre-determined intention to lend the Cubans aid to drive the Spanish wolf out of the island.

In closing this necessarily brief historical résumé of events in Cuba during the present rebellion, and of the policy of our government under both a Democratic and Republican administration, I ask no excuse for appending an extraordinary statement made by the *New York Journal* in its issue of December 9, 1897, as follows :

At a date subsequent to the time when President McKinley began penning his annual message to Congress, an important document arrived at the State Department. It was no less than the secret report which President McKinley had requested as to the actual situation in the island of Cuba since the advent of Blanco.

This paper states in absolute terms that the statistics of mortality in the "Cinco Villas," that is, the towns of Cienfuegos, Sagua La Grande, Santa Clara, Sancti Spiritu and Trinidad, amounted to 100,000 poor, unarmed wretches, who were starved to death.

The administration has been assured upon the faith of its consular agents that the number of those who have died in the island since January 1, 1897, until October 1 last, has reached the appalling total of 600,000.

When the rebellion began the population of the island was 1,631,687. It will be seen, therefore, that more than one-third of the original population have been ruthlessly and cruelly swept from the face of the earth.

The Spanish officers have freely given the information, for a price, that, although Blanco has ordered the distribution of rations to the starving wretches there is no food to give them; that the Spanish soldiers themselves are starving. As late as the last week of November the Administration was notified that the Spanish Commissary at one of the interior towns was ordered to distribute 500 rations to the dying people. He showed the order to the American Consul and said : "How am I to give out this food? I have not got it. The Spanish soldiers are starving. When I get food it will have to be distributed to them first."

**THE SPANISH
TROOPS STARVING, TOO.**

Startling as these facts may seem, it is absolutely certain that the State Department had this report in its possession before the message was completed. Add to this that this same report goes on to say that the island of Cuba is absolutely lost to Spain. Information also comes that the effective Cuban forces now operating in the field are as follows: In Pinar del Rio, 4000; Havana, 2500; Matanzas, 1500; Santa Clara, 4000; Santiago de Cuba and Puerto Principe, 10,000; a total of 22,000. The Cubans admit a loss of ten thousand men by wounds and disease since the beginning of the rebellion; and since for each Cuban lost at least ten Spaniards have bitten the dust the mortality among the royalist troops and volunteers may be estimated. The effective Spanish force now in the field, exclusive of guerrillas, does not exceed 60,000.

According to the report submitted by General Blanco to the Madrid government January 1, 1898, the losses to the Spanish army in Cuba amount to 103,000 men from the beginning of the war, 40,000 of them being now sick in the Spanish hospitals. Of the 192,000 regular troops received by General Weyler only 89,000 men fit for duty remain.

This is the humane side of the account. The commercial side is equally deplorable. The first year of the Cuban war cost our American commerce upward of \$60,000,000. During the past year trade with Cuba has gone down to less than \$20,000,000, as compared with \$102,864,204 in 1893, the year preceding the breaking out of the war.

To say that this country has no business to meddle with such a situation is absurd. But still this evil and barbarous condition is permitted to continue, under the shallow excuse that time should be given in which to ascertain the results of Sagasta's scheme, of offering autonomy to the insurgents. The people cannot themselves declare war, however great their sympathies, but the universal feeling outside of Wall street, is manifested by the generous response made to President McKinley's appeal to the country for contributions to save the Cubans from starvation. This appeal, made early in January, 1898, brought forth in less than one month the sum of \$100,000, in addition to an enormous quantity of food supplies. But the Spanish octopus still has its coils about poor starving Cuba, which nothing but a cutting of her horrid tentacles will unloose.

DESTRUCTION OF THE BATTLESHIP "MAINE."

The rebellion which at this writing (April 4, 1898) is distracting and destroying the island of Cuba had its beginning on the twentieth of February, 1895, during all of which time it was unaccompanied by sensational episodes beyond ordinary events incident to a desultory war. Spain had sustained a loss of nearly three hundred million dollars and one hundred thousand men in a vain effort to capture or destroy forty thousand insurgents; by an inhuman system, as futile as it was Satanic, she had desolated every plantation and butchered and starved more than half a million non-combatants, filling the land with death and wailing, but to no other purpose than to excite the world's horror at such unspeakable savagery, and to make the patriots more determined to die on the field, grasping a bloody machete, or drive the Spanish devils from the shores they had polluted for four centuries.

Three years of dearth, famine, murder, and agony in Cuba; with a treasury exhausted, a prime minister assassinated, and rebellious factions at home threatening the throne, Spain was finally prompted to the adoption of desperate expedients, and to bring to her assistance the employment of a treachery for which, as a nation, she is distinguished above all others. To increase existing complications, or precipitate a crisis that might open the way to an escape from her dreadful besetments, her minister to the United States, Dupuy De Lome, had the audacity to severely criticise President McKinley, and when brought to answer, attempted to excuse his conduct by claiming that his accusations were not properly subjects for official inquiry, because they were made in a private correspondence. The particular

**DE LOME'S ASSAULT
ON PRESIDENT McKINLEY.**

letter which contained De Lome's offensive animadversions upon the President was written in January (1898), to Senor Canalejas, a personal friend, and editor of the Madrid *Heraldo*, who had recently been on a visit to America and to Cuba, investigating the outlook of the rebellion. While not serving in a strictly official capacity, his position as a member of the Spanish Congress, as well also his public prominence and the purpose of his visit to Cuba, combined to give Canalejas recognition as a confidant if not a member of the Spanish court. Disregarding the delicacy of his position and the significance that must attach to his declaration upon such a subject, De Lome sent a letter of a quasi-official character to Canalejas in which the following language is used:

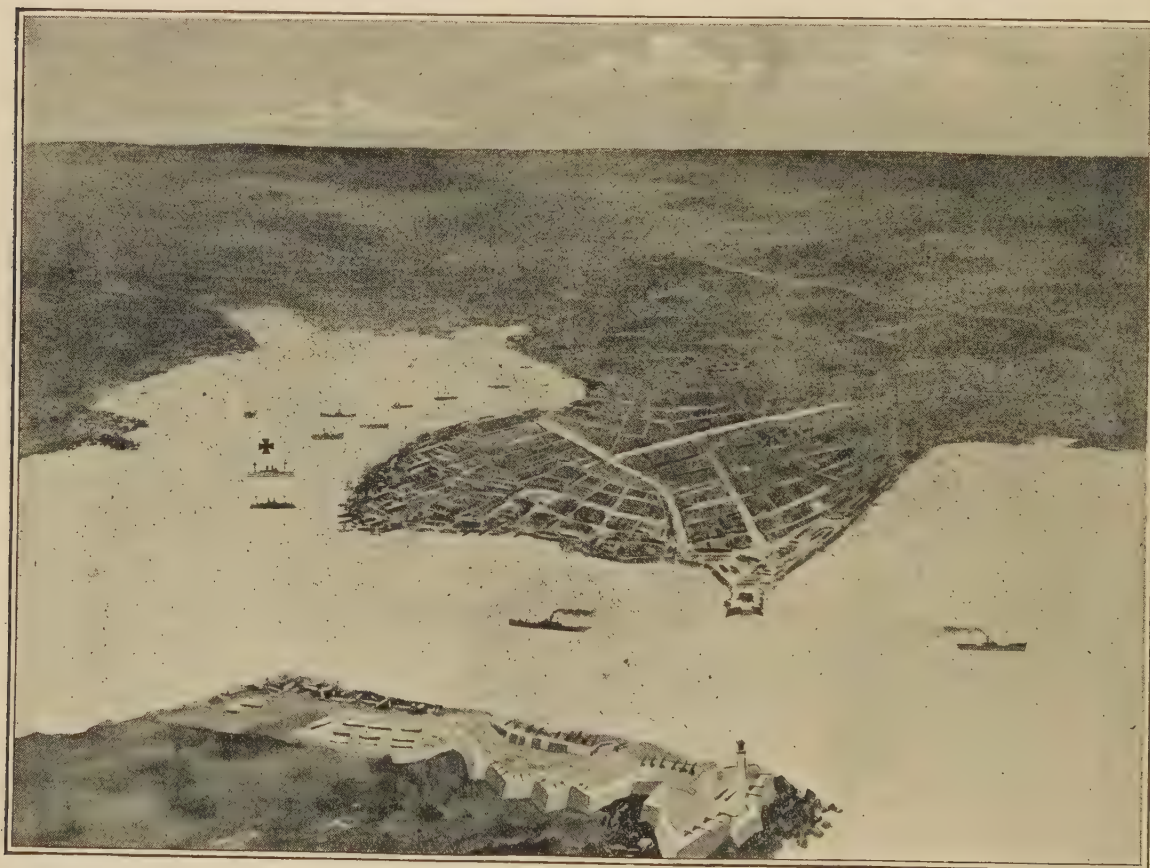
"Besides the natural and inevitable coarseness with which he (McKinley) repeats all that the press and public opinion of Spain has said of Weyler, it shows once more what McKinley is: weak, and catering to the rabble, and, besides, a low politician, who desires to leave a door open to me and to stand well with the Jingoës of his party."

This brutal aspersion of the President's sincerity was followed by the most impolitic of ministerial acts, viz., a suggestion that agitation of a commercial treaty between Spain and the United States, which has been pending for some time, should be begun for political effect, his language, which formed a part of the same letter, being as follows:

"It would be most important that you should agitate the question of commercial relations, even though it would be only for effect, and that you should send here a man of importance, in order that I might use him to make a propaganda among the senators and others in opposition to the Junta, and to win over exiles."

This paragraph exposes the insincerity of the Spanish government in all its overtures to the United States, and incidentally strips the disguise from her tenders of autonomy, which are manifestly with no beneficent intent, but to gain time, and avert the immediate danger of the United States recognizing the independence of Cuba. This letter, by some happy accident, fell into the hands of the Cuban Junta, by whom it was given to the public February 9. When De Lome was charged with the authorship, he dissembled, until

being confronted by the letter itself he acknowledged his indiscretion and immediately cabled his resignation as minister to the Spanish Premier. Without loss of time it was laid before the cabinet and accepted with precipitate haste so as to forestall an act of expulsion, which the President had the justification to enforce. But while thus protecting De Lome from the merited disgrace of being recalled, the Spanish ministry sought to placate American indignation by disclaiming responsibility for the opinions and declarations privately expressed by the government's representatives. This, however, had small effect in repairing the mischief that had been done, for besides the insult of maligning the President's character, was the even greater cause for anger contained in De Lome's



Town of Regla.

+Battle-ship "Maine."
Cruiser "Alfonso XII."City Wharf.
La Cabanas Fortress.La Punta Fortress.
Morro Castle.

HARBOR AND CITY OF HAVANA AT THE TIME OF THE DESTRUCTION OF THE "MAINE."

intimation that the overtures made by Spain were intended solely as an expedient, to delude the American people.

The De Lome incident produced great excitement throughout the United States and served to intensify the flames of public passion against the treacherous Spanish nation, which outbursts were met by counter demonstrations in Havana, where the American consulate was stoned and the lives of our citizens temporarily living in the city were put in extreme jeopardy. To give protection to the Americans whose lives had been threatened and made almost unendurable by constant insult, the Secretary of our Navy had dispatched

**THE BATTLESHIP "MAINE"
SENT TO HAVANA.**

one of our finest ships, the second-class battle-ship *Maine*, to the harbor of Havana, her captain (Sigsbee) being given secret instructions which have not since been made public, but which no doubt contained specific directions as to what his action should be in case hostilities upon the part of the Spaniards, or jeopardy of the lives of American citizens in Havana, rendered his assistance and protection necessary.

The *Maine* reached Havana harbor on the afternoon of January 25, where she was taken in charge by a Spanish pilot and under direction of the harbor master was anchored to buoy No. 4, at the spot where she met her destruction. It was subsequently shown that no vessel had been previously anchored at this buoy for several years, and that the position was an especially unusual one for a visiting war vessel, which it had been the custom on all former occasions to assign to that part of the bay where it spreads toward the west. It will be seen by reference to the accompanying illustration that the position of the *Maine* was midway between the city and a point of land upon which the village of Regla is situated, most convenient for the locating of a submarine mine with least suspicion of its presence.

The terrible results are described by Julian Hawthorne, an American correspondent, who was in the harbor of Havana at the time of the explosion and had visited the *Maine* on the afternoon of its occurrence, thus being almost an eye-witness of the fearful disaster; his story is as follows:

The night of Tuesday (fifteenth of February) came on as calm and peaceful as the rising moon. I do not know whether any premonitions of their fate visited the minds of the 266 men who were to die before daylight; all we know or ever can know now is that most of them were asleep in their bunks by 9.30. At that hour a blow struck on the deck by a sentry's weapon could have been distinctly heard 200 yards away, such was the stillness.

The officers of the ship were still awake. The captain was in his handsomely appointed cabin, writing a letter to his wife. The other officers were lounging or undressing in their quarters. The sentries and watches were at their posts. At eight bells the usual rounds of the ship had been made, and all reported right. At twenty minutes before ten one of the larboard watch, looking down at the dark, gleaming surface below the side of the ship, fancied he saw a black object approaching silently toward her. It seemed to him that smoke issued from one end of this object, and that there was a glow as of flame. It was already so near that there was no opportunity to examine it closely, but the man's mind had probably been set on edge by the gossip of his mates and he was quick to scent danger. He immediately turned to give warning to his officer, but the time for warnings had gone by. Before he could voice his apprehension the calamity had taken place.

The heaven of peace and repose was suddenly transformed into a hell of destruction and human agony. There was a dull, resonant roar, partly muffled, as though coming through a heavy veil of intervening substance. Simultaneously the whole forward part of the ponderous ship was partly lifted from the water. Then followed a sharper explosion, with outflamings of fire.

The crash was so portentous as to deprive some who heard it of their reason, to stun others, to astound many; but for 266 gallant seamen it was, if they heard it at all, the last sound that was to ring in their ears in this world. The portholes of nearby ships were smashed in, as were the windows of houses facing the harbor; the lights on the water front were extinguished; the water of the harbor itself was rent as by the upheaval of a volcano. With a majestic movement the doomed ship reared herself aloft and then sank back into a wild boiling of maddened waves. Great masses of her iron deckings were torn from her and sent hurtling aloft and afar; fresh explosions of titanic energy, though slight in comparison with that first stupendous cataclysm, rived her shattered hulk asunder and twisted the plates of steel into tortuous fragments; the awful voices of her dying agony appalled and beat down the power of human senses to apprehend them. Down she came, mountain-like, sending huge waves across the bay, and as she settled to her place other voices, feeble, yet more harrowing, became audible; the groans and outcries of dying men, murdered in their sleep, smothering between the iron decks, drowning in the foul water, crushed and pierced and torn to pieces. These cries soon ceased for the most part, and many and many a victim never spoke at all, for death came to them before they were fairly conscious of the catastrophe.

It was the forward part of the ship, containing the sleeping quarters of the crew, that had felt the direct force of the explosion. The stern portion, where the officers had their abode, was left comparatively uninjured, though structurally involved in the general ruin.

Captain Sigsbee, struck on the head by some flying missile, and plunged in sudden darkness by the extinction of the electric lights, groped his way to the poop deck, where he was met by William Anthony, officer of the watch, who saluted as if on parade, and reported that the vessel had been blown up and

was sinking. The captain, whatever may have been his inward feelings, observed from the first the composed and stoic demeanor which brave men always wear in the presence of what should most quell human courage. He gave the necessary orders with no appearance of agitation, and his subordinates obeyed them with a spirit caught from him. Mortal experience can show no sublimer spectacle.

Ten minutes had hardly elapsed before it had become plain that the great ship was a total wreck. Directions to abandon her were issued, and the few boats left available were employed. But by this time assistance was on its way from the Ward liner *City of Washington*, moored near the *Maine*, and from the Spanish cruiser *Alfonso XII.* on the other side, whose efforts were directed to rescuing the victims who had been hurled into the water. Numbers were picked up by the various boats and conveyed, some to the Ward liner, some to the Spanish ship, some to the wharves, toward which an excited crowd from the city was beginning to pour. Grievously wounded most of this human flotsam and jetsam was. They were rescued only to die, or to live lifelong cripples. But they, too, were upborne by the strange force of manly courage, and complained little, or



WAR MAP OF CUBA.

not at all. They knew that an enemy had done this, and were grimly resolved to show no signs of weakness which might gratify his hatred. They believed that their country would avenge them, and had faith that they would not die wholly in vain. Meanwhile flocks of boats from the shore were crowding toward the scene of disaster, and the distant wharves were now so thronged that they seemed crowned with a solid mass of men, uttering a confused uproar, and beside themselves with excitement. Nothing could be conceived in greater contrast with the silence and quiet which had reigned everywhere so short a while before. Then nature was hushing herself to slumber, now man was frantically active in a pandemonium of tragic confusion. And in the midst of it all one more episode stands out in relief—that of the officer of the *Maine*, who, after rowing round and round the remains of his ship in search of victims, at last uplifted his voice, and called aloud in tones that all might hear: "Are there any left alive? If so, for God's sake speak!" But no answer came from the wreck and the boat was reluctantly turned away from that ghastly silence. At this juncture the wreck caught fire, and, half submerged as it was, began to send a roar of flames toward the blackness of the sky, lighting up all the harbor and replacing the extinguished lights on shore. By this illumination

THE LAST CALL FOR THE LIVING.

such further operations of relief as could be effected were conducted, and the crowd on shore were enabled to watch the drama. They gazed and made their comments, and it is firmly maintained that not a few of those comments betrayed pleasure at the catastrophe and hatred of its victims.

The fire soon reached the ammunition stores, and there ensued a dropping fire of missiles, some of which committed havoc among the neighboring boats and shipping. Mixed with the fragments of iron and steel torn from the ship and hurled far and wide, were also masses of cement, one of which, at least, knocked over a man on board the *Maine*, and the origin of which is not explained by anything known to be on that vessel.

The next scene of the drama is the solemn one of the funeral, which took place on the afternoon of the seventeenth. So far as official manifestations and expressions of regret and sympathy are concerned, little has been lacking on the part of the Spanish authorities, and the funeral services and procession were as superb as Spanish taste could make them. The scene in the great city hall, with its portraits of generals looking down from the lofty walls, and on the floor its crowd of brilliant uniforms and priestly vestments, and the sombre black of civilian garb, was impressive enough, and there in the midst of them were set forth the plain coffins, with their silver crosses, each covering all that was mortal of a Yankee seaman. Without, in the great plaza, was an enormous crowd of all sorts and conditions, with regiments in uniform, and banners, and all the splendor of naval and military display. The cortege was over a mile in length, and moved to the sound of martial music, and the bodies of the dead were duly and reverently buried in the ground of the Christopher Colon Cemetery, set apart for them by the city. But the crime which slew these victims could not be buried there, or forgotten in the chorus of courteous protestations; for that an accounting is still to come, and it is to be hoped, for the sake of the internal peace of this country, that it will be a just and stern one.

The *Maine's* full complement of seamen was 370, and 34 officers, but at the time of the disaster only 378 souls were on board. The force of the explosion was exerted on the port side of the forward quarters in which the seamen were sleeping, and as the officers were in the ward-room, in the afterpart of the ship, only two of these were lost, viz.: Lieutenant F. W. Jenkins and Engineer D. R. Merritt, both of whom were on duty at the time and chanced to be in the fore cabin.

The *Maine* was a sister ship to the *Texas*, both being second-class battleships, the construction of which were authorized by Congress in 1886. The *Maine* was built at the Brooklyn Navy Yards, after designs by Chief Constructor T. D. Wilson.

DESCRIPTION OF THE MAINE. Her keel was laid November 11, 1888, and she was launched on November 18, 1890, but not completed until five years later, at a total cost of \$2,500,000, while her equipment involved an expense of \$2,000,000 more. Her displacement was 6648 tons, and her armament was as follows: One main battery of four ten-inch guns mounted in pairs in twin turrets, and six six-inch guns, two being placed on the bow, two on the stern, and two amidship on the main deck; in addition to these she carried eight seven pounders, four machine guns, seven torpedo tubes, and two torpedo boats. Her protection consisted of twelve-inch armor plates on the water line belt and on the barbettes of the turrets, and ten-inch plates on the turrets proper. Her machinery was all below the water line, protected by a steel deck two inches thick, and four inches thick on the slope. Her dimensions were: Length at loadwater line, 318 feet; beam, 57 feet; draught, 21 ½ feet, and her coaling capacity was sufficient to enable her to steam 7000 miles at a ten-knot speed. Though she was driven by twin screws, and was supplied with triple-expansion engines of 9000 horse power, she had a speed under forced draught of less than eighteen knots.

The horror of the catastrophe and the suspicion that it was caused by Spanish perfidy prompted the government to make an immediate investigation with a view to determining the responsibility, and a Board of Inquiry was accordingly appointed

INVESTIGATION OF THE DISASTER. by Rear-Admiral Sicard for the purpose composed of the following Naval officers: Captain William T. Sampson, of the *Iowa*, president of the Board; Lieutenant Commander William R. Potter, executive officer of the *New York*; Captain F. E. Chadwick, of the cruiser *New York*, and Lieutenant



DESTRUCTION OF THE "MAINE" IN THE HARBOR OF HAVANA, FEBRUARY 15, 1898.

Commander Adolph Marix, executive officer of the training ship *Vermont*, the latter acting as judge advocate. These appointees proceeded directly to Havana, where they at once began hearing evidence of all the survivors of the *Maine*, and of others whose testimony had any bearing upon the case. Divers were also engaged to make a thorough examination of the wreck and these added their evidence, as did experts who were called to examine the ship's position and to render opinions upon the effects of magazine explosions within and of torpedo and mine explosions without. The Board continued its sessions of inquiry for three weeks, returning to Key West on the seventeenth of March, where they completed the report of their findings and forwarded it to the President at Washington, by whom it was received on the twenty-fourth inst.

Though the verdict of the investigating court had been anticipated, and opinion was universal that the explosion had been caused by diabolical design, the country was on a terrible strain while waiting for its actual submission, and Congress manifested such an inflammatory disposition as to give serious apprehension that it could not be restrained by the President's appeal for patience.

The long and feverishly expected report was finally transmitted to Congress on March 28 accompanied by a brief message from the President, the reading of which was attended by extraordinary interest. The crowd in both houses of Congress was **THE PRESIDENT'S** unprecedentedly large and there was an unmistakable though quiet **MESSAGE.** undertone of intense feeling pervading Congressmen, Senators, and spectators alike. The message was a dignified recapitulation of the findings of the court rather than a declaration of policy, and though pronouncing the destruction of the *Maine* as being due to the explosion of a submarine mine, the President closed his communication in the following language:

"I have directed that the finding of the Court of Inquiry and the views of this government thereon be communicated to the government of Her Majesty the Queen Regent, and I do not permit myself to doubt that the sense of justice of the Spanish nation will dictate a course of action suggested by honor and the friendly relations of the two governments. It will be the duty of the Executive to advise the Congress of the result, and in the meantime deliberate consideration is invoked."

The public was prepared for the submission of a very lengthy report from the Board of Inquiry, but there was an agreeable disappointment, for the findings, presented separately from the evidence, was quite brief and presented the following conclusions:

CONCLUSIONS OF THE **INQUIRY BOARD.** That the loss of the *Maine* was not in any respect due to fault or negligence on the part of any officers or members of her crew. That the ship was destroyed by the explosion of a submarine mine, which caused the partial explosion of two or more of her forward magazines. That no evidence had been obtained fixing the responsibility for the destruction of the *Maine* upon any person or persons.

On the same day of the presentation of the report of the Inquiry Board, there was telegraphed to this country a synopsis of the findings of the Spanish Naval Commission, wherein was set forth with some amplitude the opinion that from the evidence presented to its members there was an utter absence of all those attendant circumstances which are invariably present on the occasion of the firing of a mine or torpedo; that only one detonation was heard, which threw no water into the air nor were any fish destroyed, as would have been the case had there been an external explosion of mine or torpedo, and presented other more

immaterial evidence to fortify the judgment of the commission that the vessel's destruction was caused by an accidental explosion of the boilers or magazines.

The anger and excitement manifested by the general public throughout the United States was transferred directly to members of the House and Senate upon the reading before those bodies of the President's message and Inquiry Board report. All restraint was thrown off and the most violent measures were proposed by Republicans and Democrats alike. Senator Rawlins, of Utah, offered a resolution declaring war against Spain, and Congressman Marsh, of Illinois, submitted a like resolution in the House, while several resolutions were proposed recognizing the independence of Cuba, all of which, of course, were referred. A revolt against the President's policy was so imminent that to avert such action he found it



Chadwick.

Sampson.

Potter.

Ensign Powelson.

Marix.

Secretary.

BOARD OF INQUIRY IN SESSION ON THE LIGHTHOUSE TENDER "MANGROVE."

necessary to take into his confidence not only the leaders, but a majority of the members of both branches of the Congress and to personally explain to them his plans for securing the independence of Cuba and reparation from Spain for the destruction of the *Maine*. The President, while apparently pursuing a conciliatory, if not a dilatory course, was in fact moved by a resolute purpose, though disguised by diplomatic courtesy, to exact a just retribution from Spain, in pursuance of which stern intent his demands were conveyed to Sagasta through Minister Woodford at Madrid, and the delay which so angered Congress was caused by waiting the Spanish Premier's reply. When the President's action was explained the threatened revolt subsided, and Congress took on its former attitude of dispassionate consideration.

While seeking to avoid war by a delicate application of diplomacy, and bearing with almost unexampled fortitude the dilatoriness and evasiveness of Spain to the courteously worded requests of the President, Congress lost no time in placing the country in a state of preparedness for eventualities. Fifty million dollars was unanimously voted for war supplies, to be expended in the discretion of the President, cruisers and auxiliary vessels were purchased abroad, and our navy yards were crowded with workmen getting vessels ready for active service.

This was the condition that prevailed April 1, but the patience thus renewed was of short duration, for while there was a disposition to believe in the patriotic spirit of the President, restlessness was betrayed not only by the people at large but even by the Committee on Foreign Relations who, on April 4, agreed to favorably report the resolution declaring the independence of Cuba and for armed intervention if necessary. The President appealed for time in which to submit an ultimatum to Spain and to prepare a message to Congress fully setting forth his views and recommendations, which communication he intimated would be ready not later than the sixth. In the meantime Spain had dispatched a powerful flotilla of cruisers and torpedo boats to Porto Rico, which fortunately were compelled by bad weather to seek harborage at the Cape de Verde Islands, by which accident additional time was allowed for negotiations, as the appearance of the fleet near Cuban waters would have precipitated a crisis that would have quickly ultimated in hostilities. A part of the North Atlantic squadron of the American navy was ordered to assemble in Hampton Roads under Commodore Schley, while the powerful fleet at Key West was placed in charge of Captain Sampson, whose instructions were to clear the decks for action and hold his fleet ready to move upon Havana at an hour's notice.

CHAPTER II.

OUR WAR WITH SPAIN.

It is well to know our enemies, being next in importance to appreciating our friends. The present is the first time in our national history that we have become involved in a quarrel with a woman. Americans are a chivalrous people, whose respect for the gentler sex is deferential to the point almost of reverence; yet circumstances compel us to make war upon the titled head of a fair-faced representative, who by sad lot is mother of an infantile king, for whom she is the queenly vicar. It is interesting to review briefly the life of this woman, as we shall thereby gain a better comprehension of the events that are described in subsequent pages, and learn some important facts of Spain's modern history.

Dona Maria Christina, queen regent of Spain, was born in Vienna in the year 1858, so that she is now in the flush of womanhood, though cares of state have given her an aged and melancholy appearance. She was married in Madrid in November, 1879, and was then, as she is now, one of the quietest royal personages in Europe.

To understand the life and character of Maria Christiana it is necessary to go back to her courtship, which was far from being a happy one. Alphonso XII., invited to the throne in 1874, was a monarch idolized by one-half of the subjects and detested by the other half. Senor Sagasta, then the leading statesman of Spain, loved him and was influential in having him put upon the throne to replace the liberal constitutional government. Accordingly

Alphonso XII. was proclaimed king in 1874, and almost immediately it became of the utmost consequence that he should marry. Sagasta and the people surrounding him wished him to take for a bride a woman from Germany or Austria, but Alphonso had conceived a great attachment for Maria de las Mercedes, who was the daughter of the Duke of Montpensier. The duke was unpopular in Spain and it was undesirable that they should wed,

but Alphonso's deep love for Mercedes triumphed and he led her to the altar in January, 1878. Their life together was far more than ideal for five months, but at the close of that period Mercedes fell ill of gastric fever and died, leaving her husband inconsolable.

The Spanish people mourned deeply with their beloved sovereign and allowed him to devote himself to the memory of his wife for a year, but at the end of that time they demanded that he should marry again, and impressed by the importance of choosing another wife, he sent an envoy to Austria-Hungary with that object. This envoy selected the Archduchess Maria Christina, who was a niece of Emperor Francis Joseph, of Austria-Hungary, to be the Spanish king's next bride. In pursuance of marriage contracts and agreements they were betrothed in the summer of 1879 and on November twenty-ninth, the wedding was celebrated in Madrid with great pomp.

The bride, Dona Maria Christina, was described as a very slight blonde with an impassive countenance. Her features were thin and cold, with the exception of her mouth, which pouted out in unattractive fashion. Her eyes were pale, sparsely veiled by thin lashes, and her hair was of the ashen blonde type, without a suspicion of gold. The King Alphonso did not pretend to love his wife for her beauty, but was attracted to her by her many virtues, and her life was happy from a royal standpoint, which does not mean a great deal to an American. Two daughters were born to them. The first was named Mercedes by the king, with a touching reference to his first wife; the second was named Maria Christina, after her mother. The king did not long survive this marriage and died in Madrid in 1885, six years after espousing the Austrian princess.

When Alphonso died Maria mourned sincerely for him. He had not been a wholly faithful husband, that she knew, but he was kind, and never flagrantly violated his marriage vows. He had made frequent visits to Paris and the gay centres of Spain unaccompanied by herself, and news of his conduct there reached her ears, but these were received by Maria Christina with cold silence, and it was a question among her ladies if she as much as ever mentioned them to the king. She was wrapped up in her children and though she did not love Alphonso well enough to be jealous of him, she loved him well enough to devote herself entirely to the little girls he left.

Immediately upon the death of the king, the Liberal government wished to elect a president, and the conservatives of the Liberal Constitutional party all agreed that it was the only hope of tranquillity for poor Spain. But Sagasta thought differently. Through his influence the queen was chosen regent and the little girl, Mercedes, was proclaimed queen. The Salic law, which does not permit of female succession, was in force in Spain, but this was set aside and the little girl Mercedes was made queen while her mother acted as regent. But the queen was not liked and she felt her position keenly. She was in a strange land, speaking a foreign tongue, trusting to counsellors almost unknown to her and defied by the people; but one day six months after the death of Alphonso, Senor Sagasta issued a report of the approaching accouchment of the queen regent. Its effect was such upon the Spanish people that they quieted down and watched events. When the poor little posthumous child was born, three months later, Senor Sagasta stood upon the royal steps



THE QUEEN REGENT AND KING OF SPAIN.

and cried, "Now it's Alphonso" and the watching populace knew that a little king was born in the palace.

The queen regent began to train her boy before he had passed his third year, notwithstanding the unnatural rules which prohibit even a mother from being the familiar of a king child. Well versed in the rigidity of the laws of the Spanish court, she studied them all and followed them out with an exactness never before equaled. According to the strict Spanish discipline she was not allowed to sit at the table with the king; and the boy, as soon as the little fellow could be supported upon his pillows, dined by himself with his suite. The queen mother and his aunts sit at another table, and at the third sit his sisters and their governesses. This is the custom day in and day out, year in and year out, in the grand palace at Madrid.

For her son's sake the queen forgot her native tongue and learned Spanish. She speaks it perfectly, with the best of accent, although Spaniards say "with a difference." She has as nearly renounced her own country as any person can, and has given up herself and her work entirely to the little Alphonso and to Spain.

The queen has never been a happy woman. She has had so many things with which to contend. Not the least of her troubles has been that of being a foreigner, and it was not until the present crisis that she overcame the last of the objections that were held out against her in respect to her nationality.

Declaration of War!

Diplomacy is the slow process, not of unravelment, but of entanglement, a tedious profusion of courteous recrimination, a rhetorical disingeniousness, a golden mask of platitude behind which is the hideous face of banter and anger. All nations employ it because conciliatory language, when used by negotiators, really means nothing, while it tends to hide true intentions and is a cloak to cover real designs. The purpose of Congress was plainly understood, the spirit and determination of our people to save Cuba from her murderous persecutors, the resolution to destroy Spanish power in the western hemisphere, was declared in the hearts of our people, but there was a hesitancy to use plain speech, or to present an ultimatum distinctly presenting to Spain the alternative of a withdrawal from Cuba or answering for her crimes to the outraged sentiment of American sympathy and sense of justice. The masses petitioned for action, Congress was insistent, but the President, with rare optimism, remained so hopeful that Spain would recede from her expressed determination to retain Cuba, and to continue her inhuman and futile policy of pacification by starvation and execution, that he resisted the pressure of the whole nation, even to the extent of incurring the severest censure from his own party and dissensions in his Cabinet, until circumstances finally compelled a relinquishment of his hopes of a peaceful settlement. For more than a week Congress was restrained by promises made by the President to submit a message, and though announcement of the date of its submission was made four several times, they were followed by as many disappointments, yet the patience of the people was sustained by their confidence in the patriotism of Mr. McKinley the man, as well as of McKinley the president. Perhaps never before in American history has the forbearance of our people and their loyal reliance upon the executive been so strikingly and patriotically manifested as was the resignation they showed to the President's wishes that additional time should be given him to test the determination of the Spanish

government. Every peaceful overture, every approach to settlement made by the Department of State, was treated with disdain by the Sagasta ministry, who regarded our interference with Cuban affairs as unpardonable insolence, that had so wounded national pride nothing but war could heal it. Notwithstanding Spain's arrogance and her feeling of affront at our proposals, she secretly hoped that Cuba might become detached from her colonial possessions, for the island had been so long a battle ground of revolution, that the mother country realized she was wasting her revenues in an effort to subdue her incorrigible child

**HASTENING
TOWARDS WAR.**

with no hope of suppressing the discontent or of restoring the island to a prosperous condition. Spain's resistance to our requests was therefore based entirely upon the assumption that to withdraw her army from Cuba in obedience to what she considered a threat would be an act of cowardice, leaving an ineradicable stain upon her honor. Precedent was disregarded; other countries had surrendered parts of their possessions under identical circumstances, but Spain chose to set her pride upon a loftier pinnacle, notwithstanding her escutcheon is defaced with the blood of innocence. Hers has ever been the punctiliousness of the inquisitor, the imbecility of the fanatic, and the mercilessness of the prosecutor. From these ideals of the bigoted savage she was resolved never to depart. It was this insane conception of what Spain calls *pride*, arrayed as it was against her material interests and a sagacious policy that



ROOSEVELT'S CAVALRY REGIMENT OF COWBOYS.

led her into opposing the humane demands of our government, though the justice of our position was recognized by every nation of Europe.

Realizing at length, with much loss of advantage which prompt action would have insured, that Spain would not recede from her expressed determination to relinquish none of her claims upon Cuba, nor abate the policy, of desolating that unhappy land with torch

and sword, under which half a million of her subjects had been murdered or starved to death, President McKinley on April 8 selected Major-General John M. Schofield, retired, to act as his military adviser, and on the 11th he sent a

DEBATE OVER THE PRESIDENT'S MESSAGE. Cuba. The paper was not so vigorous in its recommendations as the more belligerently inclined members desired, and division of party followed over resolutions introduced recognizing the independence of Cuba and recommending armed intervention to accomplish that purpose. The President, while declaring that the war in Cuba must cease, asked Congress to place in his hands the power to act, and combatted the cry for independence with the argument that such recognition would be inadvisable before the insurgents had established a stable government which could command international respect. A long and exciting debate followed over the President's recommendations. On the 13th of April the House passed by an almost unanimous vote a resolution authorizing and directing the President to immediately intervene to stop the war in Cuba, and empowering him to use the land and naval forces of the United States to execute the purpose of the resolution. On the same day the Senate Foreign Relations Committee submitted a preamble and resolution declaring that the people of Cuba *are and of right ought to be free and independent*, which, carrying with it a declaration of independence, was strongly opposed in a bitter debate that kept the Senate in continuous session for two days and was not finally concluded until the 18th, when upon a vote the recognition section was rejected, the deadlock having been all this time over the two words, "*are and.*" The lower house of Congress had forced the Senate to yield, and the concurrent resolution which finally passed was substantially the one that had been adopted by the House.

SUBMISSION OF AN ULTIMATUM TO SPAIN. Acting upon authority that had been conferred upon him by the joint resolutions of Congress, the President directed his Secretary of State to draft an ultimatum to Spain and to order the same presented to Premier Sagasta through our Minister at Madrid, General Stewart L. Woodford.

The language of this communication was as follows :

"APRIL 20, 1898.

"WOODFORD, MINISTER, Madrid :

"You have been furnished with the text of a joint resolution voted by the Congress of the United States on the 19th inst., approved to-day, in relation to the pacification of the island of Cuba. In obedience to that act, the President directs you to immediately communicate to the government of Spain said resolution, with the formal demand of the government of the United States that the government of Spain at once relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters. In taking this step, the United States hereby disclaims any disposition or intention to exercise sovereignty, jurisdiction or control over said island except for the pacification thereof, and asserts its determination when that is accomplished to leave the government and control of the island to its people under such free and independent government as they may establish.

"If by the hour of noon on Saturday next, the 23d day of April, instant, there be not communicated to this government by that of Spain a full and satisfactory response to this demand and reason whereby the ends of peace in Cuba shall be assured, the President will proceed without further notice to use the power and authority enjoined

and conferred upon him by the said joint resolution to such an extent as may be necessary to carry the same into effect.

(Signed) "SHERMAN."

To this dispatch the American Minister at Madrid cabled the following reply :

(Received 9.02 A. M.)

"MADRID, April 21, 1898.

"SHERMAN, Washington:—Early this (Thursday) morning, immediately after the receipt of your open telegram and before I had communicated same to Spanish government, Spanish Minister for Foreign Affairs notified me that diplomatic relations are broken



THE QUEEN-REGENT OF SPAIN READING THE SPEECH FROM THE THRONE TO THE CORTES.

between the two countries, and that all official communication between their respective representatives has ceased. I accordingly asked for safe passports. Turn legation over to British Embassy and leave for Paris this afternoon. Have notified consuls.

"WOODFORD."

A communication of similar purport was handed to the Spanish Minister at Washington, to which was attached a copy of the instructions sent to Woodford. Minister Polo promptly cabled his government, and therefore before Woodford had an opportunity to present the ultimatum, he received the following note from Spanish Minister of Foreign Affairs :

"DEAR SIR :—In compliance with a painful duty I have thus to inform you, that there has been sanctioned by the President of the Republic a resolution of both chambers of the United States which denies the legitimate sovereignty of Spain and threatens armed intervention in Cuba, which is equivalent to a declaration of war.

"The government of her Majesty have ordered her Minister to return without loss of time from North American territory, together with all the personnel of the legation.

"By this act the diplomatic relations hitherto existing between the two countries and all official communications between their respective representatives cease.

"I am obliged thus to inform you, so that you may make such arrangements as you think fit. I beg your Excellency to acknowledge receipt of this note at which time you think proper. Taking this opportunity to reiterate to you the assurances of my distinguished consideration.

(Signed) "P. GULLON."

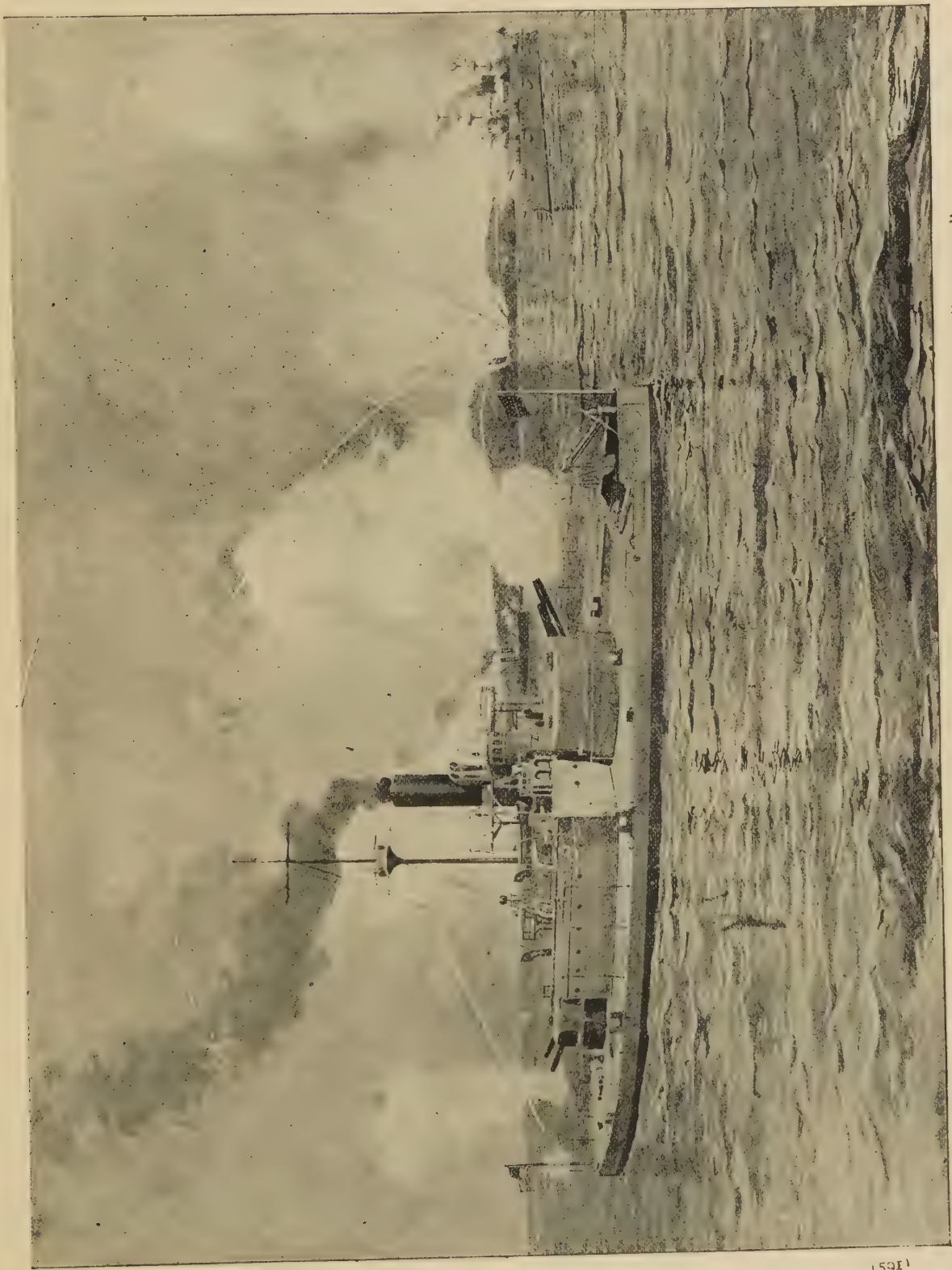
On the same day Minister Polo asked for and received his passport, and all diplomatic relations of the two governments were thus suspended. No actual declaration of war was required, as Spain had anticipated this act by her defiant dismissal of our Minister and the withdrawal of her own, so that both America and Spain at once began hurried preparations for the conflict that was now inevitable.

THE PASSING OF SIGNIFICANT EVENTS.

It was long before regarded, by those who had studied the effects of the revolution in Cuba, that a war between Spain and America was an unavoidable conclusion, the result of an intolerable condition, the natural culmination of a relationship which for thirty years had been strained to the point of threatening rupture. The wonder is that it was not sooner precipitated by the infamous outrages perpetrated by Spain upon our citizens, and her obstinate refusal to make reparation for any of her flagrant violations of comity and for the confiscation of property and imprisonment and execution of Americans which she so frequently committed.

Conditions became so acute between the two governments that, as has already been described, the "Maine" was sent to Havana as a measure of precaution against the threats of Spaniards. The destruction—assassination, we may pronounce it—of this splendid vessel, accentuated the hatred of Spaniards for all Americans, and served to emphasize the necessity of hostile proceedings to enforce our rights and protect American property in Cuban waters. As a precaution against the early need of action, foreshadowing the clash of arms, a squadron of warships was assembled off Key West on February 23, and on March 9 President McKinley addressed a request to Congress for an emergency appropriation of \$50,000,000, which it was understood was to be used at the President's discretion for the purchase of vessels and of munitions of war as occasion might require. The unanimity of public sentiment, the universal justification of a war declaration, was proved by the eagerness with which the President's request was granted. Political differences were immediately healed, and for the first time since the Civil War a common danger had brought all sections of our country into a perfect fraternity, moving with a single purpose and actuated with but one aim, viz: to sustain the government, to defend the flag that happily, under God's providence, now represents a reunited nation.

When the Court of Inquiry made its report, asserting the official opinion that the "Maine" had been destroyed by the force of an explosion from without—thus indirectly charging the disaster to the result of a perfidious act—it was remarkable how the American people were able to restrain the impulse to immediately avenge the monstrous crime. But



BOMBARDMENT OF MATANZAS BY THE "NEW YORK," "CINCINNATI" AND MONITOR "PURITAN."

in the supreme moment, when anger might be expected to stifle discretion, the people were so trustful of the President that they stood like veterans before a hail of death, waiting the command to charge or retreat, muttering, but no less resolute to follow where the Executive should lead them. While exercising extraordinary patience in the face of unspeakable outrages, a forbearance that excited the amazement of the world, preparations for war were stimulated, the masses being sustained by their resolution to avenge Spanish crimes as quickly as the country could be made ready for hostilities.

General Lee, who bravely refused to leave Havana before all Americans **FIRST PRIZE OF THE WAR.** in Cuba had received notice and had time to quit the island, turned over the affairs of his office to England's consul-general, and took passage for home April 9, two days before the President delivered his message to Congress on the Cuban situation. On April 22, or the day following the rupture of diplomatic relations between the two governments, the President directed Acting Rear Admiral Sampson, commanding the squadron before Key West, to blockade the port of Havana, with the view to starving the city into a surrender. On the same day the first prize of the war was made by the gunboat "Nashville" which captured the Spanish merchantman "Buena Ventura" (a name which signifies *good luck*), loaded with lumber.

The policy of sending the North Atlantic squadron to blockade the ports of Cuba, and of assembling the South Atlantic fleet at Hampton Roads, thus assigning it to a station of inactivity, was adversely criticised by army and navy officers as affording the enemy time in which to strengthen their defenses and concert their measures looking to European intervention. It became manifest that the President was still hopeful of Spain receding from her defiant attitude and accepting the conditions which we were able to enforce, and it was evidently his opinion that a naval display before the ports of Cuba would cause Spain to yield. Thus for some time the war was conducted on a peace footing, a fleet of fourteen powerful ships being held in Cuban waters, with no diversion except an occasional capture of small merchantmen, when, had the order been given, Havana, Matanzas, Cienfuegos and Santiago de Cuba, the principal Cuban ports, might have been easily taken one after another, and San Juan, Porto Rico, would likewise have capitulated with small show of resistance. With these posts in our possession, or turned over to the insurgents to be garrisoned, Spanish power in the West Indies would have been effectually destroyed and our squadrons released to meet her fleets in other countries, if Spain still persisted in continuing a hopeless war. These were strictures very generally made upon the President's initial policy of conducting the war, and that they were not merely captious, but based upon more or less good reasons, is shown by the fact that the President himself, being finally convinced that Spain meant to bitterly contest, with blood and might, the demands we had preferred, came presently to adopt a vigorous policy, the application of which was soon seen in the important events that succeeded.

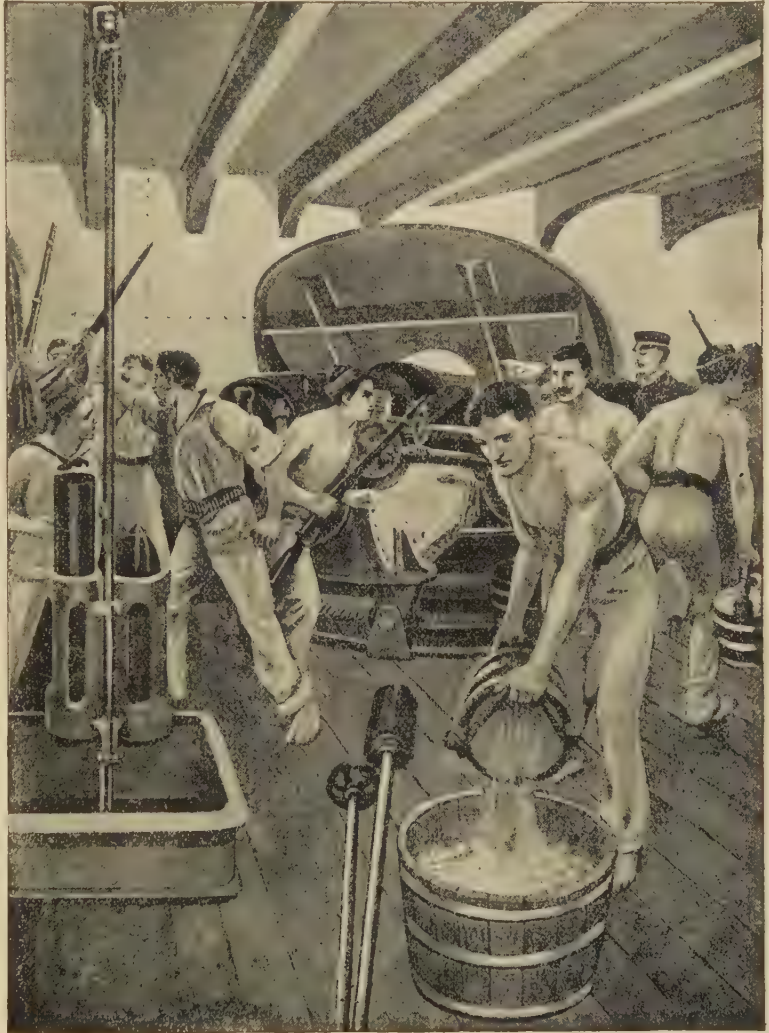
**A CALL
FOR VOLUNTEERS**

On April 23, the President called for 125,000 volunteers to be apportioned from the several States, which was immediately followed by Spain issuing a royal decree declaring that a state of war existed with America. On the twenty-third also, the Spanish freighter "Pedro" was taken by Sampson's flagship, the "New York," and two other small vessels belonging to the enemy capitulated to the "Helena" and the torpedo-boat "Dupont." The "New York" ventured within four miles of the Havana harbor entrance and drew the fire of Morro's heavy guns, but without damage. On the 24th, four more Spanish vessels were taken, and some of the venturesome American warships were again fired on by heavy guns

of the Cojimar batteries. Further events of the war preceding the date of May 1 were unimportant, and may be thus briefly described: April 25, Secretary Sherman, broken in health and infirm from old age, surrendered the portfolio of Secretary of State and was succeeded by Judge William R. Day, who had held the post of Assistant Secretary. On the same day, Congress, by resolution, declared that a state of war existed, and the Spanish steamer "Panama" was made captive by the armed light-house tender "Mangrove."

April 26, Commodore Dewey, pursuant to orders given him to seek and destroy the Spanish fleet in Manila harbor, left Hong-Kong, China. Another incident of this date was the capture of a Spanish sloop and schooner very near Havana.

On April 27 a more exciting event took place which gave some of our sailors an opportunity to put into effect the science of gunnery which they have learned so well by years of target practice. Having learned that the Spanish were strengthening the fortifications that command the harbor of Matanzas, Sampson detached three of his vessels, the "New York," "Puritan" and "Cincinnati," from the Havana blockading fleet and steamed away to Matanzas, a city on the north shore of Cuba, sixty-five miles east of Havana, and second in point of population on the island. Advancing to a point in front of the harbor entrance, the three warships took positions in triangular formation, with the view to reconnoitering and ascertaining the strength of the batteries on the two points of land, known as Forts Maya and Rubal Cava. From the latter a big twelve-inch gun boomed a challenge to combat, which was promptly answered by an eight-inch shot from the "New York," and a few minutes later the action became spirited on both sides and continued for the space of twenty minutes, at the end of which time the earth works were entirely destroyed, without casualty to the Americans. The Spaniards fired so wildly that only two of their shots fell near our



SCENE IN A BATTLESHIP'S TURRET DURING AN ENGAGEMENT.

ships, one of which burst fifty feet above the "New York's" spar deck, doing no damage, and the other plunged into the water a hundred feet to the right of that vessel. The last shell thrown at the Matanzas batteries was fired from one of the monitor "Puritan's" thirteen-inch guns, which was sent with deadly accuracy into the very centre of Rubal Cava, and exploding, completely destroyed that portion of the fortifications.

Notwithstanding the war which Spain had been waging for three years against her rebellious colonies in Cuba and the Philippine Islands, she was poorly prepared to oppose, with hostile acts, the movements of the American fleet. At no previous time in her history were her financial resources at so low an ebb; corruption existed to an amazing extent in every part of her military as well as in her civil service. Her national indebtedness had grown to extraordinary proportions, aggregating nearly two billion dollars; her foreign commerce had declined to the lowest ebb; dissension was rife, the confidence of her people was destroyed, and there remained for constant contemplation and dread a threatened invasion of Don Carlos, pretender and contestant of the throne. Her credit was exhausted by borrowing beyond ability to repay, and the revenues upon which she had to depend were hypothecated without prospect of redemption. Yet, desperate as was their situation, so blindly fatuous were the Spanish people,—a fatuity born of ignorance and religious bigotry,—that with one voice they challenged the United States to a combat which could have no other result than to complete their misery. Whatever may have been the wishes and anticipations of the queen regent and her ministers, who must have realized the futility of resistance, they were coerced into waging an unjust war by the fear that revolution would follow refusal to obey the insane will of the populace.

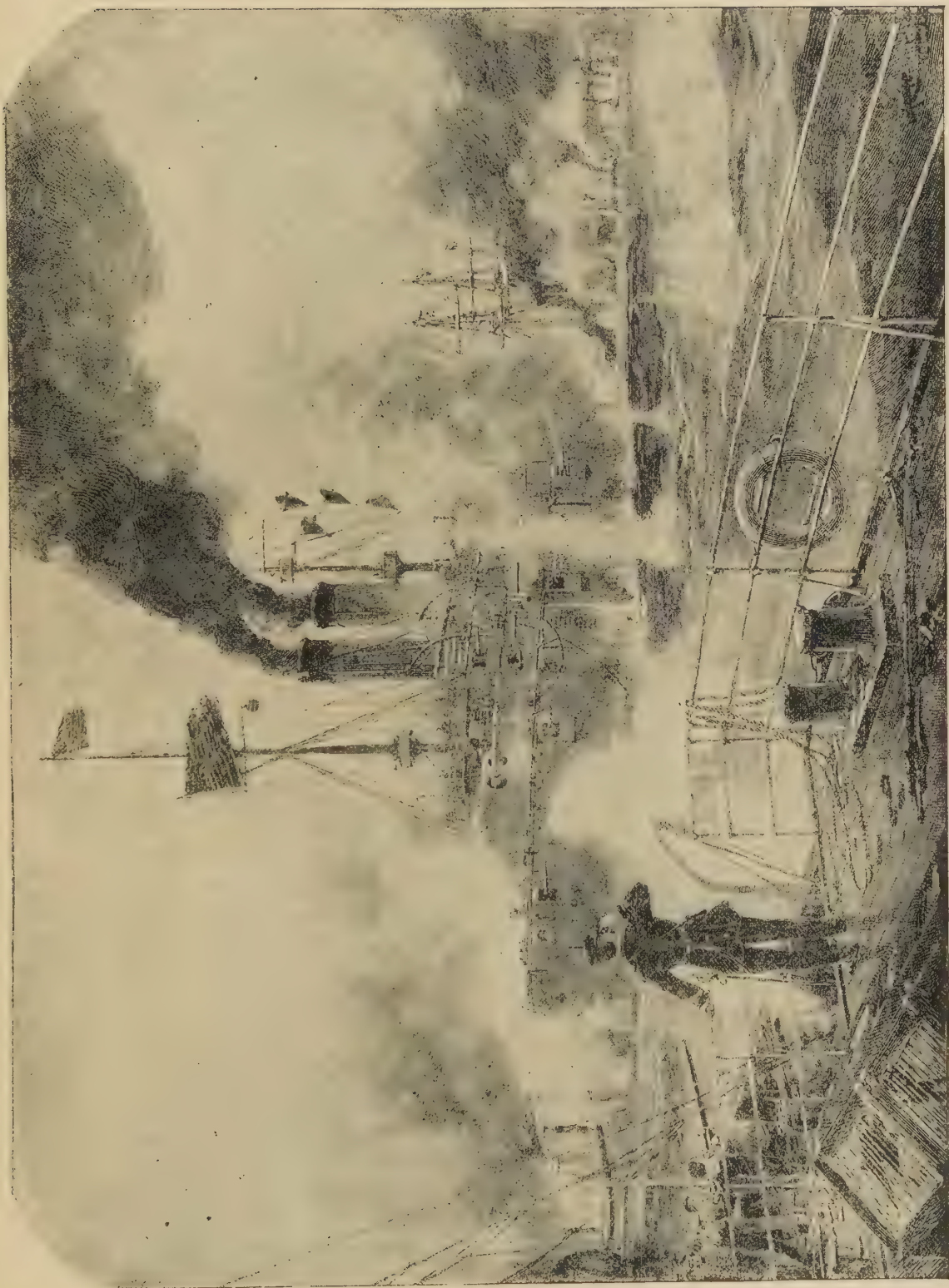
The Spanish sense of honor is the same to-day that it was when Don Quixote charged up and down the land on Rosinante seeking whom he might engage, eager to fight windmills in the absence of a more worthy enemy. Less than a third of the population are able to read or write, and ignorance of geography, strengthened by legendary history recited in tale and song, leads the masses to believe the nation to be invincible in war and mighty as the romances of the Cid Campeador has described them. The people of Spain, more than of any other country, exist in the past. They have not yet outlived the days of chivalry; the Moorish expulsion, which in reality destroyed the best blood, the virility and the civilization of the nation, is still to their infantile comprehension the apotheosis of glorious achievement, which remains an inspiration to further conquest. The bull-fight, with its attendant horrors of unspeakable suffering, has taken the place of torturing heretics; not because it is a perfect substitute, but for the single reason that other nations refuse to allow the Spanish to indulge their tastes for more cruel amusement. The people are blood-thirsty, instinctively inhuman, besotted of desire to witness the torment of man and beast, and being possessed of such ignoble impulses, it is little surprising that they should regard American interference to abolish the reign of terror in Cuba as an act of impertinence, as an assault upon their *honor*, conspicuous because of its gory suggestiveness.

As a counter-movement opposing the blockade of Cuban ports, the Spanish Cortes was hastily convened to receive the queen regent's message, which exhorted to the most vigorous measures of resistance, following which action a Spanish fleet was ordered to the Cape Verde Islands, there to recoal and outfit for an expedition to Cuban waters. The greatest enthusiasm was provoked by the stand so boldly taken by the tottering government. A wave of

SPAIN'S PREPARATION FOR WAR.

ROMANCES OF THE NATION.

ASSEMBLING THE SPANISH FLEET.



BATTLE OF MANILA—CAPTAIN OF THE GUNBOAT "PETREL" DIRECTING THE FIRING OF HIS GUNNERS FROM THE SPAR DECK OF HIS VESSEL.

patriotic sentiment swept over the whole land, which in some places took the form of violence, and destruction of the property of Americans, and in others zeal and loyalty were manifested by large contributions of money to the famished treasury.

For three days nothing occurred to intensify popular excitement, a lull following the events just described as if to prepare both nations for the thrilling stroke that was about to be given. Cable advices from Hong Kong had reported the departure of Commodore George Dewey's squadron for Manila on April 26, and as the distance is only 628 miles, news were expected by May 1 that he had met the enemy. Although he had been ordered to seek and destroy the Spanish fleet, and if possible to capture the Philippine port of Manila, there was much solicitude felt as to the hazards of such an undertaking, and not a few doubted the expediency of making the attempt. The harbor of Manila is one of the finest in the world, similar in many respects to that of Havana, and it was known to be protected by heavy batteries, one of which was on Corregidor Island, at the mouth. No exact knowledge of the strength of the defenses, or of the Spanish fleet there assembled, was possessed by our authorities, nor to what extent the harbor had been mined, but the opinion was expressed by those best informed that a successful attack might be made upon the place if the stroke was promptly given by a capable commandant like Dewey was known to be. This confidence was not misplaced, as subsequent events showed.

Commodore Dewey's fleet consisted of the protected cruisers "Olympia" (his flagship), "Baltimore," "Boston," "Raleigh," and the gunboats "Concord" and "Petrel"; the dispatch boat "McCulloch" also accompanied the squadron.

This formidable fleet arrived at the entrance to Manila Bay Saturday night, April 30, and without pausing moved past the Corregidor Island batteries to a position well within the bay. When daylight revealed to him his surroundings, Commodore Dewey saw the strong fortifications of Cavite looming up before him in frowning prominence, before which lay the enemy's fleet of thirteen vessels, commanded by Admiral Montijo, ready to give him battle. At five o'clock the first gun boomed out its sullen, deep-mouthed challenge, and a terrific conflict was immediately begun. The enemy's fleet comprised the following: Flagship "Reina Maria Cristina," "Don Antonio de Ulloa," "Don Juan de Austria," "Castillo," "Velasco," "Isla de Luzon," "Isla de Cuba," "Isla de Mindanao," "Marquis del Duero," "General Lezo," "El Cano," and three torpedo-boats. The number of men and officers on the American vessels was 1756, and the Spanish seamen numbered 1872. Though the guns and ships of our fleet were heavier than were those of the enemy, Dewey was opposed by strong fortifications, mounting many high-power Krupp and Armstrong rifles, besides having to fight in the Spanish waters, which were known to be planted with mines and torpedoes. The attempt to reduce the enemy's stronghold under such circumstances was perilous in the extreme, but disregarding the dangers that seemed to threaten him, Commodore Dewey heroically faced the odds, and to the amazement of the whole world, in an engagement that lasted less than two hours of actual fighting, destroyed every vessel of the enemy's fleet, silenced all of their nine batteries, killed or wounded 400 Spaniards and held Manila at his mercy. More remarkable still is the astounding fact that Dewey accomplished this result with no other casualties than the wounding of eight men, none fatally, and a damage to his vessels that an expenditure of less than \$5000 repaired, while the loss in money value to the Spaniards exceeded \$5,000,000. Admiral Montijo made his escape in an open boat from the burning "Reina Maria Cristina," taking refuge on the "Don Antonio de Ulloa," which a few moments later was struck and exploded

by a shell fired from the "Boston." The admiral seemed to possess a charmed life, for though his men were falling like leaves in autumn, and his vessels were on fire or sinking he managed to escape from one to another, and finally reached the shore without injury to his person. In grateful recognition of the heroism of Commodore Dewey and his valiant officers and men, and to voice the nation's appreciation of their incomparable achievement, President McKinley sent a message to Congress on the ninth, recommending a vote of thanks be given them. In addition to these honors, a bill passed Congress on the same date raising the number of rear-admirals from six to seven, and providing for Dewey's promotion to this high position; and the sum of \$10,000 was also appropriated to purchase a sword for the great commander, and for medals to be bestowed upon the officers and men who so gallantly distinguished themselves.

When Dewey entered the harbor he cut the cable, probably to prevent receipt of orders from the home government which might circumvent his plans, and it was not therefore until the eighth that official news of the battle was received in Washington, report having been carried by the McCulloch to Hong Kong, and thence cabled to the President.

When full report of the battle was made and all the attending circumstances came to be fully known, the opinion was universal among naval experts, and by them freely expressed, that Dewey's achievement was the most remarkable in the annals of sea fighting.

It appeared incredible that with a fleet little superior in fighting strength to that of the enemy, and having to brave the perils of strange waters that were known to be sowed with mines and torpedoes, and to engage nine heavy shore batteries, Dewey could utterly destroy all the forces opposed to him without great loss himself. More marvelous was the long doubted fact that he had achieved this result without a single sailor of his fleet being killed or a vessel seriously damaged. The Spaniards had three torpedo-boats, two of which made a courageous effort to approach within launching distance of the "Olympia," but they were perforated by shots fired from one and three-pound rapid-firing guns, and destroyed, while the third was beached to avoid a like fate. This single result of a torpedo-boat attack is not conclusive, but it reinforces the opinion entertained by many that this style of war craft will be of small value in a battle with modern ships armed with rapid-fire guns, the



SPANIARDS OF MADRID READING REPORTS OF DEWEY'S VICTORY.

most expected of them being a successful launching of their sea-going weapons only when darkness renders detection of their proximity uncertain.

The news of Dewey's great victory was receiving throughout America with demonstrations of unrestrainable joy; his name was pronounced with universal acclaim; the whole nation went into celebration, and no one was able to conceive an honor great enough to fit him. Experienced naval officers compared his achievement with Perry on Lake Erie, Nelson at Trafalgar, Decatur at Tripoli, Farragut at Mobile and New Orleans, Paul Jones in many daring and desperate encounters, but no one has been able to recall a circumstance that fully rivals Dewey's victory at Manila.

**SPAIN ENTHUSED
BY FALSE REPORTS.**

Singular to relate, the official report of the fight made by Minister of Marine Bernego to the Spanish people represented that a crushing defeat had been administered to our fleet, whereupon Spain went into a passion of exultation quite as great as our own, and Blanco, to inspire his dispirited troops, designated a day of thanksgiving for the divine favor shown in giving victory to Montijo's broken ships. Nor was this false report corrected for a considerable time, the ignorance of the Spanish people rendering it an easy matter for ministerial officers to keep them long deceived. The fact is worthy to be noted in this connection, that Spain has few newspapers, and the largest circulation of any journal in the kingdom does not exceed 5000 copies per day. It must be understood also that newspapers in Spain are not free to print all news, but are censored, and thus they confine their reports largely to matters ecclesiastical and provincial. It was policy also to turn defeat into a victory on paper, as the temper of the people was ripe for revolution, and needed only the excitement of disaster to precipitate a civil conflict, an approach to which has long been noted.

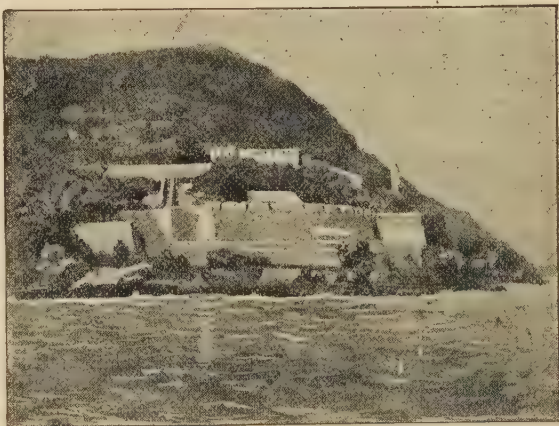
The material effects of the victory were wide reaching, as helpful to America as they were hurtful to Spain. European nations had viewed with much concern and jealousy our interference in the war in Cuba, and were several times upon the point of concerting means for intervening in the struggle. Austria was particularly interested in the Spanish throne by reason of the queen regent being a niece of Emperor Francis Joseph, and France was concerned because her people hold the principal part of the Spanish bonds, or certainly half of the total issue. Germany has been in a bad spirit since the adoption of our new tariff that virtually excluded several of her products, notably sugar, from our markets. Russia had become suspicious of our relations to Great Britain, which she construed as designs against her selfish policy in the East, and Italy, being a member of the *dreibund*, was influenced by the sentiments of Austria and Germany.

Under such conditions it was not unreasonable to suppose that European sympathies were with Spain, nor was there lacking evidence in abundance of a disposition to peacefully intervene in the interest of Spain. Indeed, an effort was made by the European ministerial agents at Washington to perfect a concert of the powers, and to present a *representation* to President McKinley, the spirit of which it is easy to judge. This combination failed of its purpose, but for no other reason than that England positively refused to join such a movement, foreseeing the probability of grave results following such an effort. More than this refusal, was England's cordial approval of America's humane interference, which she took no pains to conceal. After the battle of Manila there was a decided change of opinion favorable to this country, and neutrality was declared by all countries except Germany, which made plausible excuses for not adopting such a measure. Had Dewey sustained a defeat, it may well be believed that the sentiment of Europe would

have been more pronounced against us, if, indeed, it had not assumed an attitude of armed intervention.

After destroying the Spanish fleet and silencing the battery defenses of Manila, Dewey was compelled to suspend further action on account of lack of men to garrison the captured posts. He accordingly made his position as strong as possible with the forces at his command, and awaited reinforcements from America before attempting to take the city. The Philippine insurgents were known to be of such savage nature, and withal so insubordinate, that had Dewey reduced the city by a bombardment, these cruel hordes would have massacred the inhabitants; therefore, humane considerations prompted Dewey to wait such time as troops were at hand to enable him to occupy the city without precipitating any act of cruelty.

The news of disaster to their fleet at length reached Spanish ears and the result was what had been anticipated, and which the government had wisely prepared for. Riots took place in Madrid, Barcelona, Cadiz and other large cities of Spain, which would have developed into revolution had not the authorities in their respective cities been prompt to use the military in suppressing demonstrations. Martial law had been declared throughout Spain May 4, three days in advance of the news of Dewey's victory, which fact alone prevented the country from being swept by an irresistible uprising, and even with this powerful arm of suppression, great damage was done by rioters on the 5th in Carthagena, Uviedo and Leon, in which several persons were killed and scores were wounded.



PORT AT THE HARBOR ENTRANCE TO SANTIAGO
DE CUBA.

On May 3 a skirmish took place between a force of eight hundred Spanish cavalry, near the Cojimar batteries, on the Cuban coast, and the torpedo boat "Ericsson," which had ventured dangerously near the shore. The "Ericsson" escaped unhurt, and the "Wilmington" ran near enough the coast to shell the enemy, but the casualties were not ascertained. On the 5th instant the French line steamship "Lafayette" was captured while making her way into Havana, which promised to lead to complications with the French government, but the act of arrest was soon proved to be the result of a misunderstanding, which was cleared by a release of the vessel on the following day.

SKIRMISHES ON THE CUBAN COAST.

The incidents following the triumph of Admiral Dewey in Manila Bay were unimportant until May 11, on which day the first tragedy on the American side occurred in Cardenas Bay. The torpedo boat "Winslow," accompanied by the gunboats "Wilmington" and "Hudson," approached Cardenas to explore the bay and to test the batteries at that point. The "Winslow," being of light draught, was lured into the harbor by three light boats which she attempted to destroy, and was fired upon by the shore batteries. So accurate was the shooting that she was hit no less than eighteen times, and so disabled as to be at the mercy of the enemy. The "Hudson" went to her relief, and while adjusting a tow-line to the wounded craft a shell burst in the face of the "Winslow's" crew that were on the deck of their vessel, killing five members, one of whom was Ensign Worth Bagley, who thus became

the first sacrifice of the war on the American side. Notwithstanding the rain of shells that tore through the vessels, the "Hudson" towed the "Winslow" out of further danger, and with her dead was taken to Key West.

On the same date (11th) an expedition was sent to Cienfuegos, on the south coast of Cuba, to cut the cable extending from that point to Santiago de Cuba. The vessels despatched on this dangerous mission were the "Nashville," "Marblehead" and "Windom." While men in small boats were grappling the cable they were fired on by a large force of Spanish troops, one of our men being killed and three wounded. The gunboats shelled the heavy woods on shore, and are supposed to have killed several of the enemy, but the results were not ascertained. On the following day the Spanish fleet, consisting of the fast cruisers "Vizcaya," "Almirante Oquendo," "Infanta Maria Theresa," and "Christobal Colon," and three torpedo boat destroyers, the "Terror," "Furor," and "Pluton," that had been laying off

Mindello, Cape Verde Islands, for three weeks, appeared at Fort de France, Martinique, where, after coaling, they departed for Curacao, Dutch Guinea.

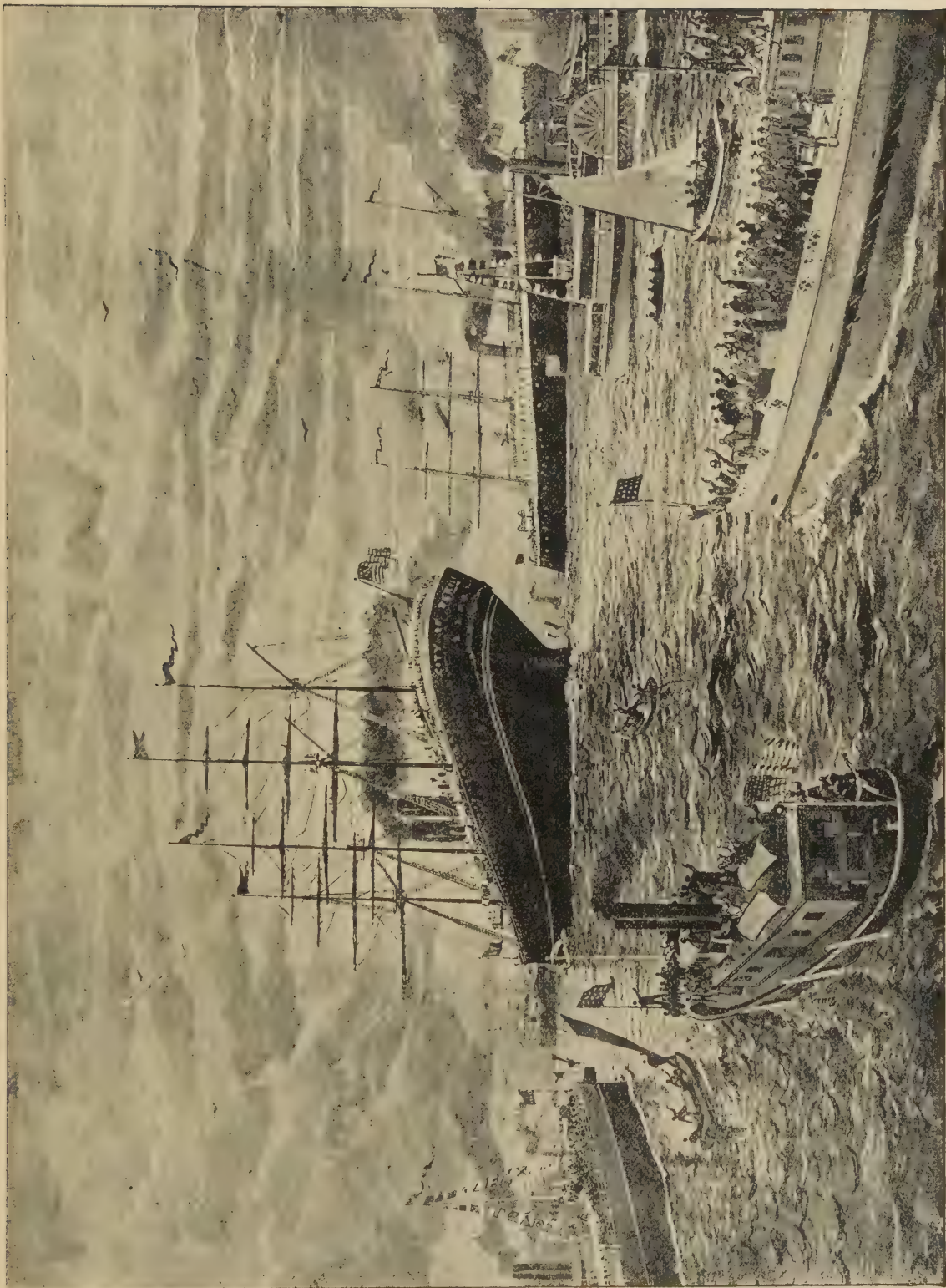


ADMIRAL, CERVERA Y TOPETE,
Commander-in-Chief of the Spanish Navy.

On the morning of the 12th, Admiral Sampson, who had left Key West, May 4, with his squadron of eight vessels, appeared off San Juan, Porto Rico, and began a vigorous bombardment of the place, and was replied to by the heavy batteries of Morro Castle. The action continued for three hours, at the end of which time the fortifications were in ruins, and many of the enemy killed, while the loss on our side was two killed and seven wounded. The vessels engaged were the "New York," Sampson's flagship, the "Iowa," "Indiana," "Montgomery," "Detroit," and the monitors "Terror" and "Amphitrite." On the same date Major-General Wesley Merritt was appointed military governor of the Philippines, and on the following day the Flying Squadron, commanded by Commodore Schley, left Hampton Roads for Key

West, to act in conjunction with Sampson.

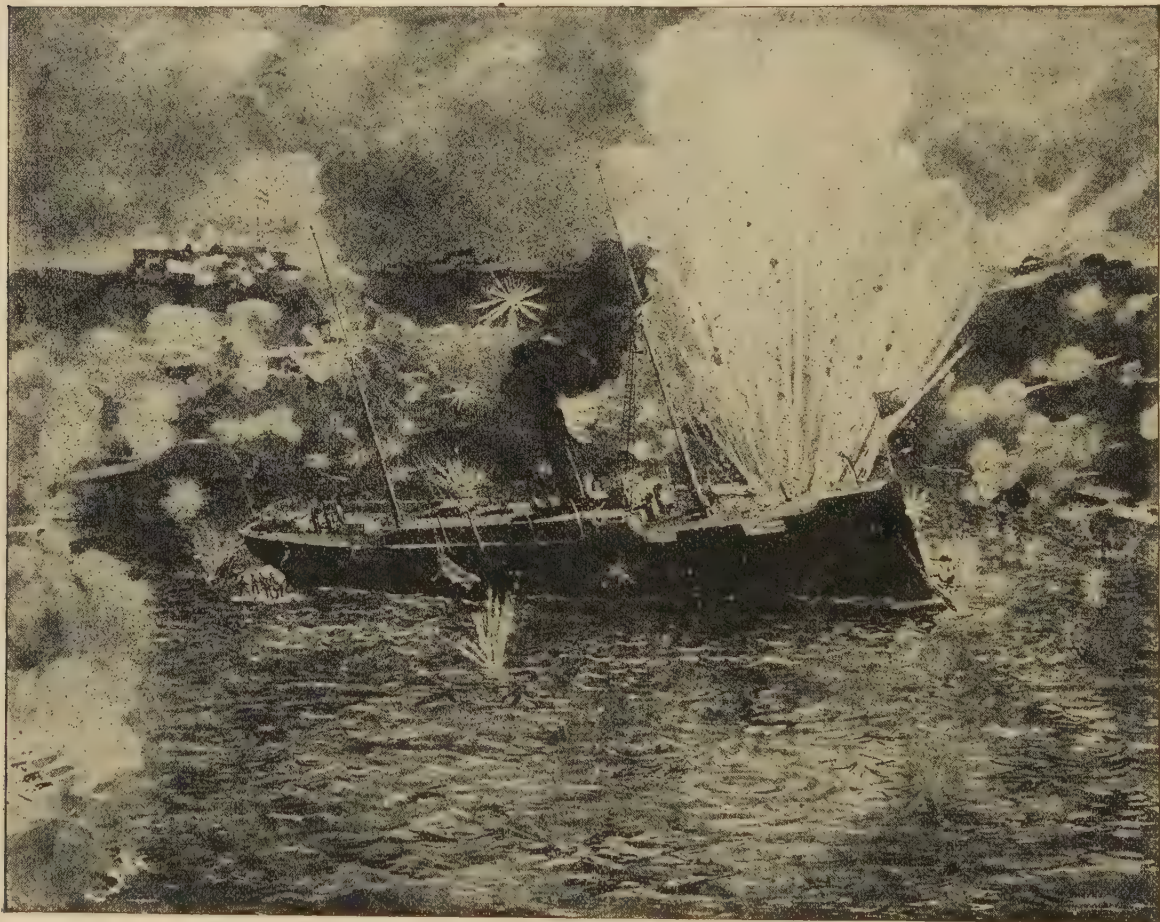
Subsequent events, of little consequence, was the resignation of the Spanish cabinet on the 15th and the formation of a new one, of Sagasta's selecting, which was pledged to a continuance of the war. On the same day the cable was cut near Cienfuegos, but one wire was left so that communication was not wholly destroyed. On the 16th the Spanish gunboat "Calloa" was captured in Manila Bay, her captain having been long at sea, not being advised of the beginning of hostilities. On the 18th the battleship "Alabama" was launched from Cramp's ship-yard, and Morro Castle, at Santiago de Cuba, was bombarded by three vessels, to cover an effort to cut the cable, but little damage was done. On the following day Admiral Cervera's fleet was reported arrived at Santiago, having come up from Curacao, presumably to land supplies for the Spanish, but he skilfully evaded Sampson's squadron, which he had been apprised was seeking him. Indeed, for a long while the game was one of hide and seek, the Spaniards, having the fleetier vessels, being easily able to keep out of reach of both Sampson and Schley. On the 22d the monitor "Monterey" was ordered to get ready to join Admiral Dewey's fleet in Manila Bay, and on the same day the protected cruiser "Charleston" sailed from San Francisco for that far



TRANSPORT SHIPS LEAVING SAN FRANCISCO WITH TROOPS FOR MANILA.

away port, followed on the 25th by three transport vessels that carried 2500 men to aid in the capture and garrisoning of Manila.

The first prizes of the war, of four merchant vessels, were legally condemned and sold at Key West on the 27th. Three days later a detachment of 5000 troops embarked from Tampa on a fleet of transports, by which they were landed at points in Cuba previously designated by the insurgents with whom a junction was formed. On the 30th Commodore Schley notified the navy department that he had succeeded in chasing Cervera's fleet into the harbor of Santiago de Cuba, where he would hold them against every chance of escape.



LIEUTENANT HOBSON BLOWING UP THE "MERRIMAC" IN SANTIAGO HARBOR.

On the following day Schley opened fire upon Morro Castle, of Santiago, but with no object except to unmask the enemy's batteries, and thereby be able to judge of the strength and location of their guns, which purpose he accomplished without sustaining any loss.

War is the most terrible of alternatives, but a sense of compensation, if not satisfaction, is derivable from the heroism which it calls forth. Our conflict with Spain has been marked by several daring exploits, but history fails to record a more remarkable act of bravery than that displayed by Assistant Naval Constructor Richmond P. Hobson, of the flag-ship "New York," and seven equally courageous companions. While our fleet was lying

**HEROISM OF
LIEUTENANT HOBSON.**

before the harbor entrance of Santiago de Cuba, blockading Cervera's flotilla, which was known to be within, Hobson conceived the idea of confining the enemy's ships by planting an obstruction in the narrow channel of the harbor entrance. His suggestion was so well received that he was permitted to carry out his plans without interference. Accordingly on June 3d Hobson took the old collier ship "Merrimac," whose machinery was almost unserviceable, and, calling for volunteers, accepted seven out of 400 that offered, barely sufficient to navigate the vessel, which he then turned and made for the harbor. The ship went resolutely forward into the very face of the Morro's guns that poured their shots into her, but she stood the fire until brought far within the harbor entrance, when seven torpedos that had been laid along the side of the vessel were exploded by Hobson's own hands, which tore out her keel and sent her head first to the bottom. Hobson and his companions jumped onto a catamaran raft, the small dingy having been shot to pieces, by which they contrived to reach the shore, where they gave themselves up to the amazed Spaniards as prisoners of war. Cervera, astounded by such wondrous bravery, sent an officer (Oveido) to the flagship "New York" with a message of admiration, and assurance that the prisoners would be accorded the most kindly treatment, as brave men deserve.

CHAPTER III.

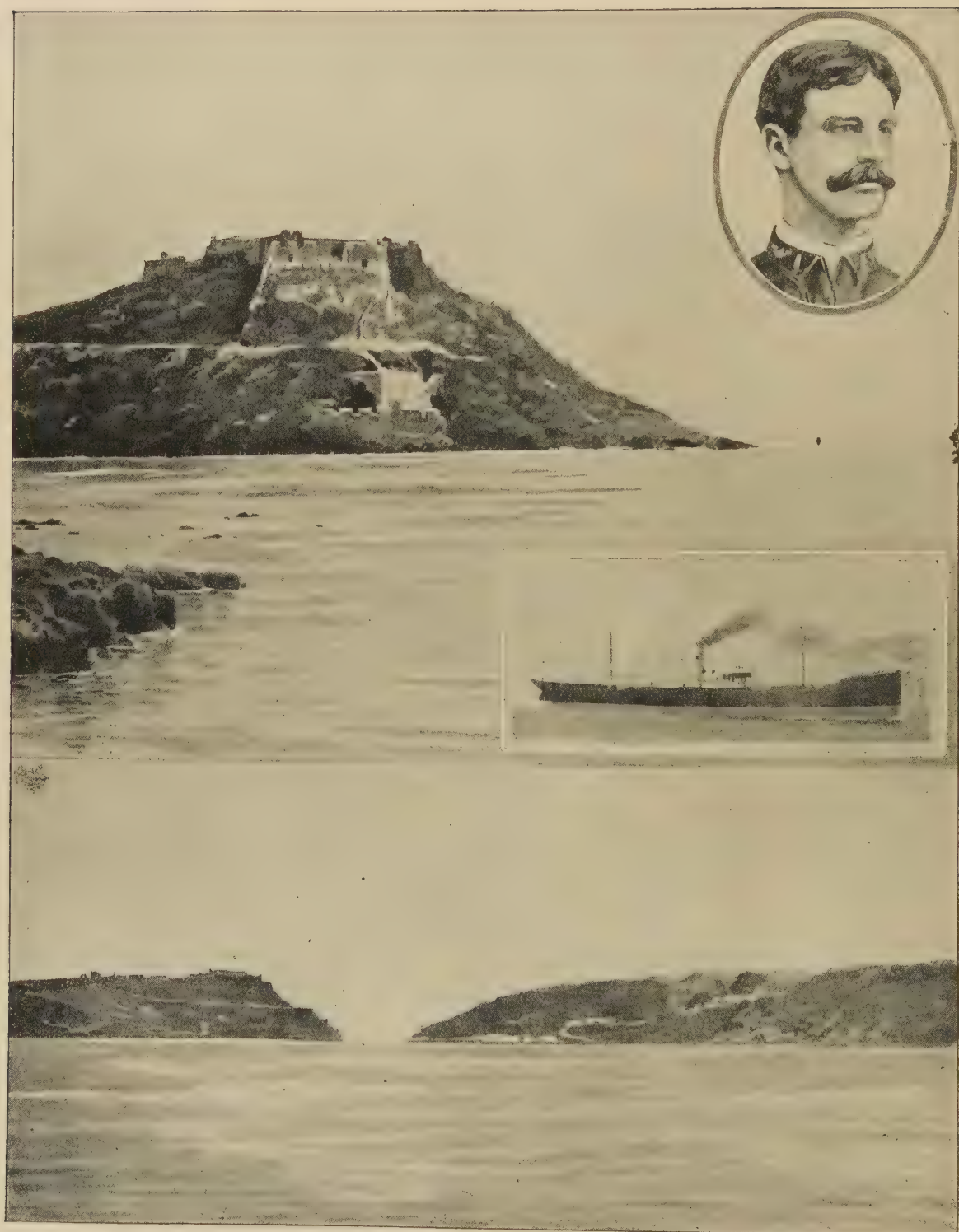
BATTLES IN CUBA, PORTO RICO, AND THE PHILIPPINES.

The heroic act of Hobson, of which there are few parallels in history, had a tremendous moral effect, mightily stimulating to the American arms, and correspondingly depressing to the Spanish people. The result was even more far-reaching, for, as the world loves a hero, this intrepid feat of Hobson's, following so soon after the astounding victory achieved by Dewey, brought all Europe to a sudden recognition of the bravery, as well as of the naval power, of the United States, and this realization caused a quick change of sympathy that took from Spain her last hope of receiving either moral or substantial assistance from any of the European powers.

On the same day (June 3) that Hobson and his valorous band drove their old ship upon the mines of Santiago harbor, the Senate voted for an issuance of \$300,000,000 war bonds with which to push the conflict to a decisive end. On the sixth Sampson bombarded Morro Castle, at the entrance of Santiago harbor, though because of the elevation of the fortifications he inflicted small injury. Indeed, it was afterwards shown by the military experts that the bombardments of San Juan and Santiago, in which \$2,000,000 worth of projectiles were thrown, had caused so little damage to the enemy's works or guns that their efficiency was scarcely lessened, notwithstanding boastful claims made at the time that the fortifications had been practically destroyed.

The first actual invasion of Cuba by American troops took place June 11, when after a spirited attack from the sea upon the fort defending Guantanamo, on the south shore of the island, the town and defences surrendered to the Americans, and a body of 800 marines were sent on shore to take possession. Three days later 15,000 men under the command of General Shafter left Tampa on a flotilla of thirty transports, convoyed by a dozen war vessels, for Santiago de Cuba, a landing being made at the town of Baiquiri, twenty miles from Santiago, on the twenty-second instant, where in two days our troops and munitions were debarked with expedition and without casualty.

**FIRST INVASION
OF CUBA.**



ENTRANCE TO THE HARBOR OF SANTIAGO—THE COLLIER "MERRIMAC"—LIEUTENANT HOBSON.

The war, which had engaged Congress and occupied the almost undivided interests of the people from the moment of its declaration, or, rather from the time of the destruction of the "Maine," was, on July 6, for the moment dismissed from public consideration by the action of the Senate, which, after an exhaustive debate, often tinged with acrimony, voted to annex Hawaii, which act was promptly confirmed (July 7) by the President's official sanction and the islands, so long in contention and so long an applicant for admission to the Union, became a part of the republic. The act of annexation seemed to reverse the policy of the government, which had in theory, if not in fact, opposed territorial expansion. But while generally endorsing the policy of home development, and condemning the idea of acquisition, the majority of Americans heartily approved the act



TROOPS EMBARKING AT TAMPA FOR SANTIAGO.

that added Hawaii to our possessions; for aside from the fertility and wealth of the Sandwich group of islands, they were regarded as being especially valuable for their commanding position in the Pacific in case we should become engaged in war with any great power. As a matter of public exigency, rather than of government policy, the acquisition was unquestionably justified, but the act carries with it the danger of creating a sentiment favorable to further expansion, leading to many difficulties, not the least of which will be the breaking of the solidarity of our people, the abandonment of the Monroe Doctrine, and the maintenance of a large army and navy. These considerations caused a temporary abatement of interest in the war, notwithstanding fierce fighting had been begun July 1 on the defences of Santiago de Cuba, which for some time remained in a state of siege.

Soon after effecting a landing at Baiquiri the American troops were pushed forward to complete the investment of Santiago, meeting with little resistance until they reached El

Caney, where, on July 1, Generals Lawton and Wheeler, commanding the advance, assisted by General Garcia, with 3000 Cuban soldiers, making a combined force of 12,000 men, engaged the enemy of equal strength and fought what must be regarded as the fiercest battle of the war. The eagerness of the Americans was so great that it was impossible to restrain them, nor did barbed wire lines check their advance. This impetuosity caused the death of hundreds who might have escaped, but it covered American arms with the glory of a great victory, notwithstanding it was dearly purchased. The Spanish were driven into their intrenchments, where, well protected and armed with Mauser rifles firing smokeless powder, they slaughtered our advancing and unprotected troops. Any soldiers less brave than wounded tigers at bay would have broken in panic under such withering fire, but the desperation of their situation lent fresh courage to the Americans, who, after eight hours spent in a very hell of battle, drove the Spaniards from their intrenchments and sent them flying in rout into the city behind their strongest fortifications. The loss in this fiery engagement upon the American side was 500 killed and 1300 wounded, which was probably exceeded on the Spanish side, though no reports were given by the Spaniards.

The capture of El Caney, Siboney and other strong outposts, left the Spaniards in a hopeless condition, for this permitted of such a complete investment that supplies were shut off entirely from Santiago, and also afforded the Americans opportunity to mount heavy siege guns, throw up breastworks and otherwise to prepare a siege that must compel a surrender of the city, through starvation if not by assault. The only hope now left the defenders of Santiago was in Cervera's fleet, which Linares, the commander, who was wounded in the arm at El Caney, was vain enough to believe it possible to break the cordon of warships outside and bring succor to the besieged. The disability of Linares had caused the command of the Spanish forces to devolve upon General Toral, a brave man, but a wise one as well, who, realizing the hopelessness of his position, favored a conditional surrender of Santiago as the means of averting a greater calamity to the Spanish arms. To this proposal Linares vigorously objected, and his conclusion to continue the defence, which was also in pursuance of advices from Blanco, and from Madrid, caused the death of hundreds and property loss of millions.

Report which was first made that Cervera's fleet had taken refuge in Santiago harbor, was received with openly expressed doubts, nor did subsequent confirmation suffice to wholly allay public suspicions. Discovery of his position within

DESTRUCTION OF CERVERA'S FLEET. the harbor was made May 19, by Commodore Schley, who had been ordered to proceed to Santiago with his flying squadron either to hold the enemy's fleet or find and destroy it. Sampson was off the coast of Cuba with a powerful fleet of warships also watching for Cervera, but it was Schley's fortune to first confirm the report that the enemy's fleet was anchored in Santiago harbor. This information brought the combined squadrons of Schley and Sampson before Santiago June 11, where the waiting and watching was begun, upon the results of which the duration of the war was believed to rest. Cervera's fleet consisted of the fast and heavily armored cruisers "Infanta Maria Teresa" (flagship), "Vizcaya," "Almirante Oquendo," "Cristobal Colon," "Reina Mercedes" and the torpedo-boat destroyers "Furor" and "Pluton." Opposed to this fleet, stretched in a line twenty miles long in front of Santiago and the coast adjacent, but afraid to enter the harbor because of the narrow channel planted thickly with mines and protected by heavy shore batteries, was the flower of the American navy, comprising the "New York" (Sampson's flagship), "Brooklyn" (Schley's flagship), the "Indiana," "Iowa," "Oregon," "Texas," "Massachusetts" and a

dozen smaller vessels, among which was the torpedo-boat destroyer "Gloucester," which before the war was J. Pierpont Morgan's yacht "Corsair." This small vessel was commanded by Richard Wainwright, who held the position of executive officer of the "Maine" at the time of her destruction, whose bravery and skill were so well proven on the ever memorable July 3, that his name has been enrolled in the list of heroes of the American Navy.

The events which occurred during the interval of waiting before the mouth of Santiago harbor may be briefly stated as follows: Directly after the landing of Shafter at



CHARGE OF THE ROUGH RIDERS UP SAN JUAN HILL.

Baiquiri, June 22, a junction was formed with the Cuban General Garcia who, with 5000 men, had been hovering on the north and west sides of Santiago, harassing the enemy and seriously interrupting the sources of supplies. On June 23 the double-turreted monitor "Monadnock" sailed for Manila, accompanied by the collier "Nero," and on the same day report was received that Camara, with what was known as the Cadiz fleet, had started for the Philippines with the boastful intent of destroying Dewey's squadron and recapturing Manila. On June 23 also the battleship "Texas" attacked Socapa battery, at the mouth of Santiago harbor, and almost entirely destroyed the fortifications, but not without sustaining some injury

herself, for she was struck near her stern by an eight inch Hontoria shell that pierced her armor and burst in the centre of the berth-deck killing one man and badly wounding six others. On June 24 the Rough Riders, under Colonels Wood and Roosevelt, were ambushed at Sibony about eight miles from Santiago and the most heroic struggle of the war resulted. Though largely outnumbered by the enemy, which had the further

THE SIEGE OF SANTIAGO. advantage of making the attack without warning and from ambush, the Rough Riders charged the Spaniards and by unexampled courage drove them back upon the city, leaving forty of their dead upon the field, and abandoning a well fortified block house, which the Rough Riders promptly occupied. The American loss was ten killed and fifty wounded. On June 26 the American troops engaged the Spaniards at Sevilla, which, after a hot engagement lasting two hours, resulted in driving the enemy six miles back upon Santiago, and the advancement of our position to within four miles of the city, where the Americans intrenched themselves and waited the coming of siege guns that were being brought from Baiquiri.

It was on Sunday, May 1, that Dewey fought and destroyed the Spanish fleet in Manila Bay. The whole world was still sounding his praise and declaring his was a feat so remarkable that in no probability would the like occur again. Some **DESPERATE SITUATION OF THE SPANIARDS.** there were who regarded his accomplishment, so complete and without the loss of a single man, as being little short of a miracle. Yet astounding as was the results of that great sea fight, fate decreed that it should be practically repeated before Santiago, and the god of battles decreed, too, that Sunday should be the day of performance.

There had been heavy fighting before Santiago on July 1 and 2, in which the Spanish had been driven from their intrenchments and compelled to take refuge within the town. Provisions were becoming so scarce that starvation was threatened; the water supply of the city had been shot off; General Linares was on a bed of suffering with a shattered arm, and the Spaniards were almost exhausted. Prando was hastening to the relief of the beleaguered city, but his advance was so harassed by Garcia's Cubans that the 8000 men with which he started were reduced to less than 6000, and when these at length broke through the Cuban lines and gained Santiago, they were without supplies and rather increased than relieved the gravity of the Spanish situation. The order had twice been given to Cervera to make an attempt to escape from the harbor, and on Sunday morning, July 3, he prepared to execute the desperate undertaking, his only hope of success being in the fortunes of war, and in surprising the blockading squadron which might not be in readiness to engage him.

The evening before, Sampson had proceeded on the New York to Aguadores, to hold a conference with General Shafter, and was lying off the shore, some fifteen miles from the mouth of Santiago harbor, when, at nine o'clock, discovery was made **BEGINNING OF THE GREAT SEA BATTLE.** of a large vessel steaming rapidly out of the harbor. Though such a daring undertaking had not been anticipated by the officers of the American fleet, their readiness for any emergency was attested by the promptness with which the ships were prepared for battle. Within less than five minutes after the first Spanish cruiser was sighted approaching the harbor mouth every man on the "Oregon," "Brooklyn," "Texas," and "Indiana" was at his post and the engines were at work driving the great war vessels towards their prey. The order of advance of the enemy's ships was as follows: The "Cristobal Colon," swiftest of the fleet, led the procession through the narrow channel, followed closely by Cervera's flagship, the "Oquendo," "Vircaya," and the



SHIPPING SIEGE GUNS FROM TAMPA FOR THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST SANTIAGO.

herself, for she was struck near her stern by an eight inch Hontoria shell that pierced her armor and burst in the centre of the berth-deck killing one man and badly wounding six others. On June 24 the Rough Riders, under Colonels Wood and Roosevelt, were ambushed at Sibony about eight miles from Santiago and the most heroic struggle of the war resulted. Though largely outnumbered by the enemy, which had the further

THE SIEGE OF advantage of making the attack without warning and from ambush, the
SANTIAGO. Rough Riders charged the Spaniards and by unexampled courage drove them back upon the city, leaving forty of their dead upon the field, and abandoning a well fortified block house, which the Rough Riders promptly occupied. The American loss was ten killed and fifty wounded. On June 26 the American troops engaged the Spaniards at Sevilla, which, after a hot engagement lasting two hours, resulted in driving the enemy six miles back upon Santiago, and the advancement of our position to within four miles of the city, where the Americans intrenched themselves and waited the coming of siege guns that were being brought from Baiquiri.

It was on Sunday, May 1, that Dewey fought and destroyed the Spanish fleet in Manila Bay. The whole world was still sounding his praise and declaring his was a feat so remarkable that in no probability would the like occur again. Some
DESPERATE SITUATION there were who regarded his accomplishment, so complete and without
OF THE SPANIARDS. the loss of a single man, as being little short of a miracle. Yet astounding as was the results of that great sea fight, fate decreed that it should be practically repeated before Santiago, and the god of battles decreed, too, that Sunday should be the day of performance.

There had been heavy fighting before Santiago on July 1 and 2, in which the Spanish had been driven from their intrenchments and compelled to take refuge within the town. Provisions were becoming so scarce that starvation was threatened; the water supply of the city had been shut off; General Linares was on a bed of suffering with a shattered arm, and the Spaniards were almost exhausted. Prando was hastening to the relief of the beleaguered city, but his advance was so harassed by Garcia's Cubans that the 8000 men with which he started were reduced to less than 6000, and when these at length broke through the Cuban lines and gained Santiago, they were without supplies and rather increased than relieved the gravity of the Spanish situation. The order had twice been given to Cervera to make an attempt to escape from the harbor, and on Sunday morning, July 3, he prepared to execute the desperate undertaking, his only hope of success being in the fortunes of war, and in surprising the blockading squadron which might not be in readiness to engage him.

The evening before, Sampson had proceeded on the New York to Aguadores, to hold a conference with General Shafter, and was lying off the shore, some fifteen miles from the mouth of Santiago harbor, when, at nine o'clock, discovery was made
BEGINNING OF THE of a large vessel steaming rapidly out of the harbor. Though such a
GREAT SEA BATTLE. daring undertaking had not been anticipated by the officers of the American fleet, their readiness for any emergency was attested by the promptness with which the ships were prepared for battle. Within less than five minutes after the first Spanish cruiser was sighted approaching the harbor mouth every man on the "Oregon," "Brooklyn," "Texas," and "Indiana" was at his post and the engines were at work driving the great war vessels towards their prey. The order of advance of the enemy's ships was as follows: The "Cristobal Colon," swiftest of the fleet, led the procession through the narrow channel, followed closely by Cervera's flagship, the "Oquendo," "Vizcaya," and the



SHIPPING SIEGE GUNS FROM TAMPA FOR THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST SANTIAGO.

two torpedo-boat destroyers, the latter hugging the shore, and evidently hoping to escape discovery, hidden by the shadows and smoke of the big cruisers. In the absence of Sampson, Schley assumed command of the blockading ships and quickly the flags went up on the "Brooklyn" signaling orders to the several vessels, while his own vessel went at top speed to head off the "Colon," which had now turned westward. The "Massachusetts" and "Oregon" followed the "Brooklyn," while the "Indiana," "Iowa," and "Texas" rushed toward the harbor mouth to intercept the other vessels of Cervera's fleet. The "Indiana" being closest was first to draw the fire of the "Colon," which discharged an 11-inch Honoria, the shell from which struck so near the bow of the "Indiana" that the fountain of water thrown up wet her deck. A moment later the "Indiana" let go one of her 13-inch guns, followed by a broadside, which however did little damage to the "Colon," because of the long range, and then turned her attention to the "Oquendo," which was just coming

into view, regardless of the Morro battery, whose gunners tried to protect the escaping vessels. The battle grew rapidly in fierceness as the Spanish ships joined in the action one after another, and there was heroism on both sides such as the world has seldom seen. Schley proved himself to be a second Dewey, intrepid, cool, sagacious. He felt his responsibility, as did every other man, officer and jackie in the fleet, and scorning the danger, rushed upon his much more powerful antagonist, receiving a rain of shells and pouring a storm of shot in return. All the ships became as fiery furnaces, as from their sides blazed, thundered, and smoked great and smaller guns, while down below in the boiler rooms men were stirring the fires to the fiercest intensity, and the air above hung heavy with clouds of battle smoke.

The "Iowa" steamed for a time forward with the "Oquendo," and the "Indiana" did the same with the "Vizcaya," but as the fight thus moved westward it became clear that the Americans were willing that the Spanish ships should run far enough from the Morro to lose the aid of the guns there and in twenty minutes this was done. This was a bit of strategy which was developed under fire and which was accepted at once by all the American ships without orders. In fact, the smoke often made it impossible to see the signals which Commodore Schley was making from the "Brooklyn," so tremendous was the firing all along the line.

Both the "Oquendo" and the "Vizcaya" were sometimes within a thousand yards of the "Indiana." The range varied, but as a rule it was short and extremely deadly. Nevertheless, the high speed and thick armor of their crafts stood the Spanish in good stead as they followed in the path of honor marked out by Admiral Cervera.

Three-quarters of an hour after the action began it was evident that the Spanish had many guns disabled and would have to surrender. As the smoke cleared a little one could see the "Cristobal Colon," her port broadside spouting smoke, still holding on to the westward.

The "Texas" and the "Massachusetts" joined the "Indiana" and the "Iowa." The "Oquendo" and the "Vizcaya" hugged the shore and steamed after the "Colon," which was gaining on the pursuers. Shells burst on the decks of the Spanish cruisers at short intervals. Often they were on fire, but again and again the crews extinguished the flames and manned again and again the guns from which they had been driven. The green coast on their starboard smoked with the shells which flew over them, and crashing sounds heard amid the thunder of great rifles told of armor-piercing shells driven into and through their protected sides.

When the two torpedo boat destroyers, the "Furor" and the "Pluton," emerged from the harbor, they ran so close to the shore, under the guns of Morro that the big "Indiana" and

"Iowa" did not discover them until the "Gloucester" gave the warning by firing a gun, and then opened up with her six-pounders. This attack, by an unprotected vessel, appeared to be rash in the extreme, for it immediately drew upon her the fire not only of the destroyers but of the "Vizcaya" also, and it was only by a miracle that she escaped destruction. The two destroyers soon left the "Gloucester" astern, but as they encountered the deadly rain of missiles from the battleships beyond, their commanders quickly came to the conclusion that discretion was the better part of valor, and turned back in the hope of

**DESTRUCTION OF
THE TORPEDO BOATS.**



THE "GLOUCESTER" FIGHTING THE SPANISH TORPEDO-BOAT DESTROYERS.

saving themselves in the harbor. They reckoned without the "Gloucester." She was waiting for them and renewed the engagement as soon as they came within range of her small guns. They replied as before, and the "Gloucester" as before sustained their fire without flinching. This duel between two of Spain's most dreaded craft on one side, and the converted American yacht on the other, was the most thrilling feature of the entire engagement. The "Gloucester" was apparently damaged by the shot poured into her by the destroyers, but with marvelous bravery she gave them shot for shot, doggedly determined to prevent their escape. The courage of her commander in the face of such tremendous odds was finally rewarded. The terrible fire of the destroyers slackened and a cheer went up from

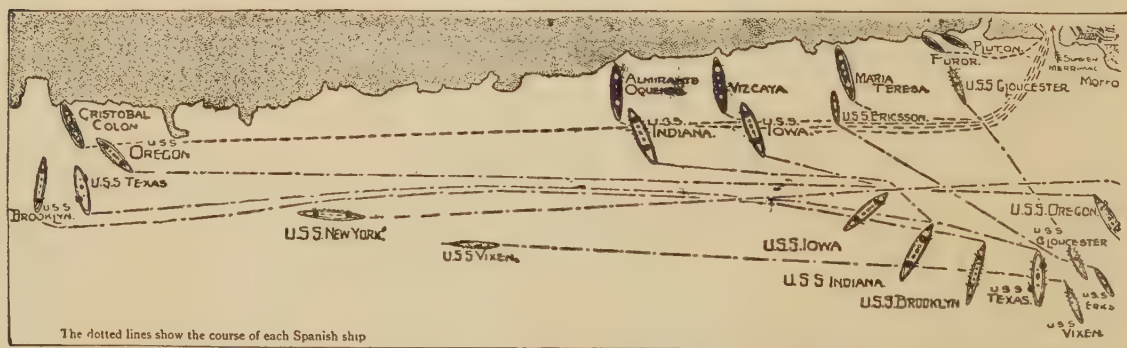
the "Gloucester" as it was seen that they were on fire. Both turned their noses to the shore and crowded on steam. They had need of haste, for one of them blew up as her crew plunged into the surf. The other was beached and her men scrambled ashore.

The battle continued furiously between the pursued and pursuers, the Spaniards fighting valorously, but though their shots struck frequently the damage was never considerable. The "Brooklyn" kept the advance until she was almost

THE "OREGON" TO THE FRONT.

alone, when the four vessels concentrated such a terrible fire of heavy guns upon her that her destruction appeared inevitable. In the meantime, too, the "Cristobal Colon" had gone almost out of reach of

her pursuers, and was in a fair way of escaping entirely, when the greatest of our warships, the mighty and speedy "Oregon," was seen rushing to the rescue of Schley and determined to overtake the fleeing vessel. The "Vizcaya" had been raked, set on fire, and run upon the beach twenty miles from Morro Castle, and the "Oquendo," beached and burning, lay less than one mile beyond, while the "Maria Teresa" was on the shore ten miles from the Morro, so that only the "Colon" remained, but though often hit she sped on as if uninjured, with the "Oregon" in pursuit. The race was one of extraordinary interest, as it was of tragedy.

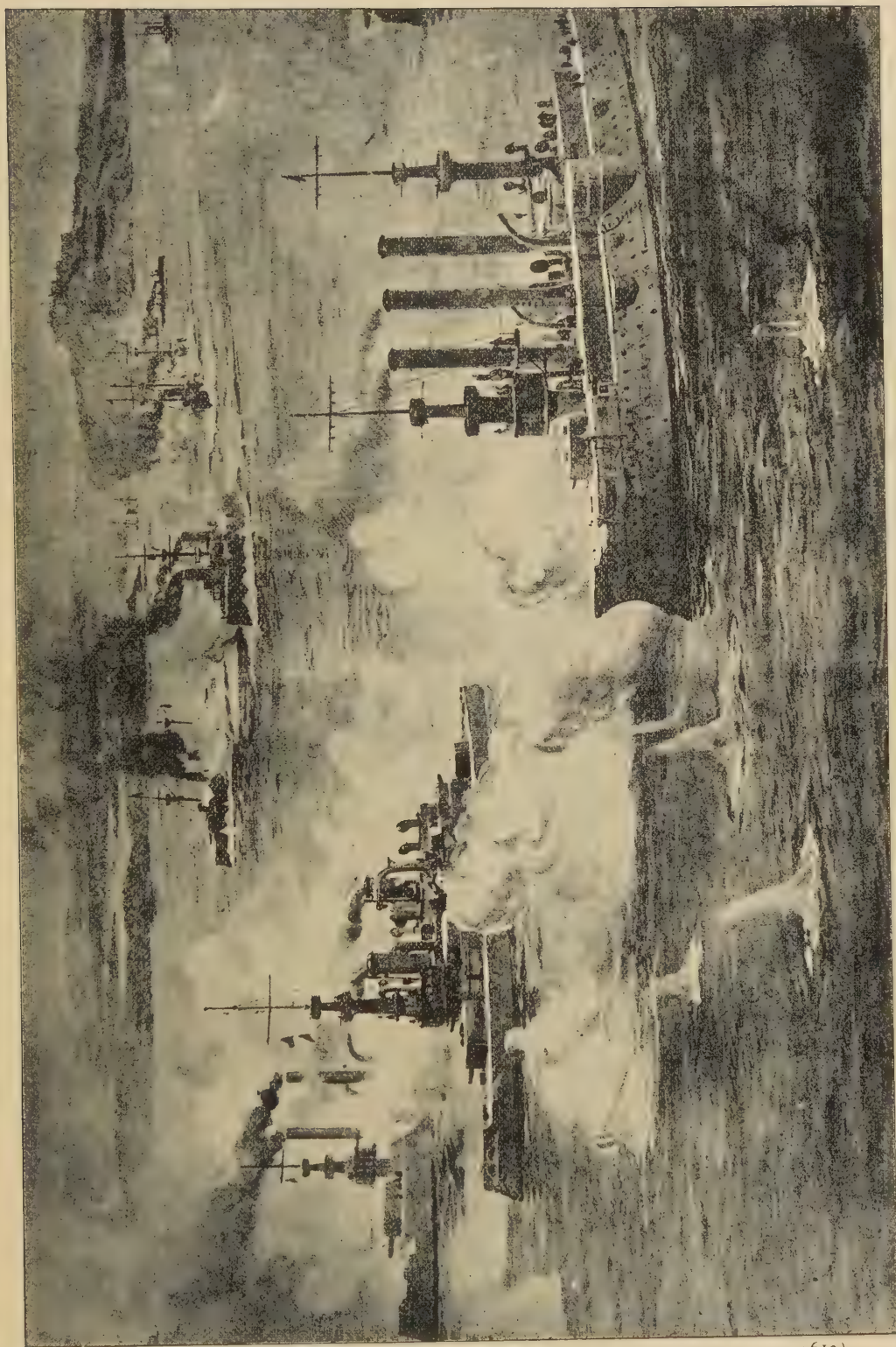


PLAN OF THE GREAT SEA FIGHT OFF SANTIAGO.

Under favorable conditions the "Colon's" speed was twenty knots, but her bottom was so fouled with barnacles that she was incapable of making more than sixteen knots per hour at the time of the battle. The "Brooklyn" was her match in speed but not in armor, while the "Oregon," though a first-class battleship, was able to develop a speed of quite seventeen knots. This gave a decided advantage to the latter, which she so thoroughly improved that after a race of three hours' duration, the "Oregon" had come within effective firing range of the "Colon," and in a few minutes afterward Captain Clark's splendid gunners had reduced her to a helpless condition and run her ashore sixty miles from the harbor mouth.

The Spanish ships surrendered one after another, when they were so badly shattered as to be unable to offer further resistance, but the captain of the "Oquendo," to avoid the humiliation of capitulation, shot himself to death, after first oiling and setting fire to the decks of his vessel, to insure her destruction. Captain Wainwright, with the "Gloucester," was nearest the "Maria Teresa" at the time of her surrender, and received Admiral Cervera on board, who was soon taken to the "New York" to submit his sword to Acting Admiral Sampson.

When the battle was concluded, examination of the wrecked Spanish vessels, by those sent to receive the prisoners and give assistance to the wounded, disclosed the fact that more



DESTRUCTION OF CERVERA'S FLEET BEFORE THE HARBOR OF SANTIAGO.

than one-half of the crews had been killed or wounded, and hundreds had jumped into the water to avoid the more dreadful fate of perishing in the flames that now enveloped the vessels. The results of the fight are comparable with those accomplished by Dewey at Manila, for the Spanish fleet was entirely destroyed, with the killed and wounded numbering 1800, and 2000 prisoners taken. Our total loss was one killed, yeoman Ellis, of the "Brooklyn," and one wounded, not seriously. The "Brooklyn" was struck thirty-three times, the "Indiana" thirteen times, the "Texas" five times, and the "Oregon" six times. The "Iowa" was hit once by an eleven-inch Hontoria shell, which embedded itself in her side but failed to explode. The "Vizcaya" and "Oquendo" were so badly injured that they resembled the "Maine" after the explosion, but experts were sent to raise and repair the "Colon" and "Teresa," which, while badly damaged, were not beyond restoration.

The credit for destroying Cervera's fleet must in justice be given to Commodore Schley, upon whom devolved the sole command in the absence of Sampson, and whose skill and bravery entitle him to rank with Dewey in the affections of the people, who, understanding official favoritism have, despite all reports to the contrary, from whatever source, created Dewey, Schley and Hobson as the three naval heroes of the Spanish-American war.

**SCHLEY AND DEWEY
AND HOBSON.**

On the day following the destruction of Cervera's four cruisers and two torpedo-boat destroyers, the Spaniards made an effort to block the channel to Santiago harbor by running the "Reina Mercedes" to the spot where the "Merrimac" lay, and sinking her beside the wreck of that vessel. Her appearance was quickly detected, though the hour was midnight, and almost instantly a storm of shells was thrown by the blockading ships that quickly sent her to the bottom. The shore batteries replied vigorously to the fire of the American ships and a six-inch shell was thrown upon the forward deck of the "Indiana," which exploded in the men's sleeping room below, but as all were at quarters no one was hurt. The "Reina Mercedes" was the last of the splendid squadron that Cervera had brought to West Indian waters with the expectation, boastingly expressed, that it would not only break the Cuban blockade and open the port of Havana, but would easily destroy any vessels of the American navy that might have the temerity to oppose the swift and heavily armored Spanish cruisers. On July 6 the armored cruiser "Alfonso II," that was lying in Havana harbor near the "Maine" at the time of the destruction of that vessel, and had continued there ever since, made an attempt to escape, but was overtaken off St. Marial by some of Watson's gunboats and sunk, without casualty to the attacking ships, by which last act Cuban waters were practically freed of all Spanish men-of-war. On the same day Hobson and his seven brave comrades were exchanged and returned to the cruiser "New York."

The first hard fight before Santiago, known as the battle of El Caney, resulted in a loss of 1806 men, killed and wounded, on the American side, and though General Linares was dislodged from his intrenchments and driven six miles back to the main fortifications of the city, the victory was not sufficiently great to warrant an immediate advance. There was also the menace of Cervera's fleet lying in the harbor with guns trained upon the roads over which the Americans must pass in making an assault, so that the obstacles were considered sufficiently great to justify a halt to strengthen the position that had been gained at such immense sacrifice.

**THE FIGHT FOR
SANTIAGO.**

A demand to surrender had been sent by General Shafter on July 2, to which General Linares gave a defiant reply, and reckoning that the resistance would be a desperate one, Shafter set about the work of investment with a grim and steady resolution to draw the lines so tightly about the city that all supplies, of both food and water, should be entirely

cut off and the city be forced to capitulate through starvation. The plans were well conceived, but execution proved to be a more difficult thing than had been contemplated. Landing of the heavy guns from the transport vessels had been extremely slow and tedious, but greater trouble was encountered in the effort to convey them to points where they could be used effectively in shelling the city. The rainy season now set in, which made the always bad roads almost impassable, besides it was necessary to drag the large guns up very steep hills, and in many cases roads had to be made by cutting the thick growth and bridging the way at frequent intervals. This labor Garcia's Cuban soldiers were called to assist in, but they contemptuously refused, so that the work devolved entirely upon the



HEROIC ASSAULT OF THE 71ST NEW YORK VOLUNTEERS AT SANTIAGO.

unacclimated American troops. The result was that exposure to the incessant rains, the drinking of foul water, and the inhaling of noxious airs, produced so much sickness that almost one-half the besieging force became incapacitated through illness. But there was no complaining of the hardships, and only restlessness was exhibited by the soldiers because not permitted to make an attack.

On Sunday, July 10, a joint attack by the army and navy was made upon Santiago, a number of shells being thrown by our vessels—the "Brooklyn," "Massachusetts" and "Indiana"—that had taken positions off Aguadores, but the distance was so great, quite five

miles, that though a few shells landed in the city small damage was wrought. The land attack was also made with little spirit, and met with a feeble resistance, so that there were few casualties on either side, but Shafter accomplished his purpose, which was not to force conclusions at once with General Toral, who had succeeded General Linares, but to feel the enemy and locate the strongest defences, and also to relieve the eagerness of his troops, who had become almost insubordinate through suffering entailed by lying so long inactive in their trenches.

**BOMBARDMENT OF
SANTIAGO.**

General Shafter made a second demand upon Toral to surrender, July 7, giving him until the ninth to make reply, but at the expiration of the date named the answer came back as before, rejecting all proposals to that end and declaring he would defend Santiago as long



THE U. S. FIFTH ARTILLERY SHELLING SANTIAGO.

as a soldier remained able to fire a gun. Firing was therefore resumed July 11 by several batteries, which opened briskly at daylight, and three hours later the "New York," "Brooklyn," and "Texas" drew near the shore off Aguadores and joined in the attack, throwing many shells into the city that did considerable damage. In the afternoon General Wheeler entered Santiago under a flag of truce to meet General Toral, to whom he represented the hopelessness of further resistance and his ability to destroy the city, which might easily be accomplished by either the army or the navy without the aid of the other, and pleaded with Toral to surrender upon the grounds of humanity. Toral requested that three

hours be allowed him to make reply, which was granted; but the expiration of that time brought no definite answer, and the attack was renewed. There was so little response that the impression obtained very generally among the besieging forces that Toral had utilized the suspension to get his troops out of the city, with the purpose of quietly evacuating the place after removing his stores, but when further delay was asked for General Shafter allowed it, a policy which, though condemned at the time, proved to be eminently wise. A letter from General Toral explained his request by reminding General Shafter that he was unable to act upon his own responsibility, and that he was compelled to await answer from General Blanco, his immediate superior, who in turn was waiting instructions from Madrid. Hostilities were therefore suspended until July 14, when a communication was received from General Toral indicating his willingness to surrender the city, upon condition that his army be allowed to retain their small arms, to march out of the city with the honors of war, and that all the troops surrendered should be paroled and returned to Spain at the expense of the American government. Some modification of these terms was made in that the troops thus surrendered should include all those in that part of the province of Santiago lying east of the line from Sagua, which should include those at Guantanamo, Caimanera, and Sagua, which comprised the Fourth Corps of the Spanish army. The total number of Spaniards who thus surrendered was about 24,000, together with a like number of Mauser rifles, and a correspondingly large amount of ammunition.

Although agreement to surrender was made on the fourteenth, there was a contention over the retention of arms, and the actual surrender did not take place until the seventeenth, upon which date the American flag was raised, with much ceremony, over the City Hall. The capitulation of Santiago brought with it a responsibility that could only be met by the energetic employment of every possible means at the government's command to relieve suffering. It was found that the Spanish soldiers had been for nearly two weeks subsisting on rice, and that the citizens were upon the very brink of starvation. The American army of occupation was therefore hailed as a deliverer. The humility of surrendering an army which was really larger than that of the besieging force was tempered, if not entirely relieved, by the fact that the Spanish soldiers were emaciated by hunger and exhausted by long exposure until they were incapable of effective resistance. It accordingly devolved upon the captors to relieve, so far as possible, this flood of distress that had been thus suddenly let loose upon them. Never before was such sympathy and magnanimity manifested by conquerors as the Americans displayed toward the Spaniards, save that similar humane regard and chivalrous sentiment were shown to Cervera and his men. There were indeed the evidences of fellowship, rather than of exultation, for nothing was omitted, that lay within the means of our commanders, to minister bountifully to the needs of both the Spanish citizens and soldiers, by which kindly acts the most confidential relations were established between captor and captive, and proved to the world the generous spirit that animates the great heart of the American people.

The Cuban soldiers had counted certainly upon the largest recognition following the successes of the American arms, and Garcia expected that the surrender of Santiago would result in his succeeding to the command of the city, but consideration of the rights of property and of the citizens, which might be imperiled by becoming subject to the disposition of the Cubans, whose vengeful hatred of all Spaniards was unrestrainable, influenced our government to the magnanimous policy of refusing to disturb the regular

**THE SURRENDER OF
SANTIAGO.**

**DEPLORABLE CONDITION OF
CITIZENS AND SOLDIERS.**

order, and of continuing generally the Spanish civil officers, being content with appointing General Wood military commander. This action so displeased, as it disappointed, General Garcia and his followers, that he withdrew from Santiago and proceeded westward to join Gomez and to continue the war independently of the Americans.

General Miles arrived in Santiago July 11, not to take personal command of the army there, or to interfere in any wise with the plans of the officers, but to inform himself upon conditions that would enable him to assume direction and to plan future movements as they might appear necessary. The surrender of Santiago left all of Eastern Cuba practically free, besides giving an excellent base for subsequent operations of the army on the island, but the climate is a deadly one in summer time, besides having no rail communication with Havana, so it was wisely decided to hold Santiago and the territory included in the terms of surrender, but

**THE INVASION OF
PORTO RICO.**



SPANIARDS DEFENDING THE FORTIFICATIONS AT EL CANEY.

to suspend further movement in Cuba until the close of the rainy season. But it would have destroyed the spirit of the army to allow it to remain inactive so long a time, so General Miles planned a campaign against Porto Rico. This island, though lying only four hundred miles east of Cuba, and within the same latitude, is generally mountainous and salubrious, is rarely visited by yellow fever and is singularly free of malaria, so that no great dangers of sickness might be anticipated to attend an invasion by our troops.

In pursuance of the plans perfected by General Miles, the first expedition, comprising 4000 men, under Major-General Wilson, left Charleston July 20, and on the following day

General Miles with a somewhat larger body left Guantanamo for Porto Rico, convoyed by the "New Orleans," "Massachusetts," "Cincinnati," "Columbia," "Yale" and "Dixie." In addition to these forces, an expedition of 6200 men was dispatched from Tampa, and on the twenty-fifth a landing of the troops under General Miles was effected without resistance at Guanica, on the south coast of Porto Rico, near the city of Ponce, which latter is a place of considerable commercial importance, with a population of nearly fifty thousand souls, the largest on the island.

The removal of 3500 men from Santiago was fortunate, for humane reasons as well as from a military point of view, as the congestion had grown so great and provisions so few that terrible privations and sickness were shockingly prevalent. On the day of General Miles' landing in Porto Rico, General Shafter reported 500 cases of yellow fever, and the situation thereafter became constantly worse until two-thirds of the army remaining became invalided and the death list was appallingly large. There was also an insufficiency of hospital supplies, and the number of physicians was inadequate to the needs. Complaints increased and finally became so loud that the government was compelled to take action toward securing relief. Two hospital ships were loaded with sick and wounded and sent North, but such small provisions had been made to care for the invalids that the suffering was indescribable, and many died en route through lack of attention. Criticisms of the severest nature were heaped upon the war department for its indifference and inefficiency, which was not wholly undeserved, and it had the beneficent effect of stimulating the government to energetic measures, through which all the soldiers, not immunes, were removed from Santiago, chiefly to Montauk, Long Island, and to other points; but this removal was not completed before the middle of August.

On July 26 M. Cambon, Ambassador to the United States from France, called upon President McKinley and on behalf of the Madrid government submitted a peace proposal, being the initial step taken by Spain to end the war, but the discussion which followed was of an indefinite character, that resulted in no action, so that the peace overtures had no effect upon the advance movement against Porto Rico, though negotiations being thus opened they continued in a diplomatic way until a conclusion was reached, as will presently be related.

On July 28 General Miles marched upon Ponce, but instead of meeting a stubborn resistance he was received by the inhabitants with demonstrations of the wildest joy. Finding the people so anxious to welcome the Americans as deliverers from the Spanish yoke, Generals Miles and Wilson were driven to the Casa Del Ray, where they were cordially welcomed by the mayor and presented to the people, who shouted themselves hoarse with cries of "Vive los Americanos!" General Miles, finding the Port Ricans so favorable to the American occupation, issued a proclamation expressing the loftiest sentiments of appreciation and declaring the purpose of his government to give peace to the island, to encourage industry, to foster commerce, and to relieve the people from those oppressions which Spain had for nearly four centuries imposed upon them. His proclamation had the most salutary effect, which was further increased by continuing in their several positions those Spanish officials who had administered the city affairs with satisfaction, and also by releasing a number of political prisoners, many of whom had been confined for years, and not a few were under sentence of death. Perfect order was promptly established and such tranquillity succeeded that every indication of war completely disappeared. Ponce was therefore made the base for the invading army's supplies, and collection of the revenues

**YELLOW FEVER
AT SANTIAGO.**

**THE MOVEMENT
AGAINST PORTO RICO.**

from duties and other forms of government tax was begun by the officers continued or appointed by General Miles.

On July 31 the capture of Juan Diaz was made after a brief skirmish, and on the same day occurred the first land fight between the Americans and Spanish forces at Manila.

General Merritt landed at Manila with a force of 6000 men on the twenty-
ENGAGEMENT AT fifth, and immediately set about the work of fortifying a shore position,
MANILA. but made no hostile demonstration, preferring to await the arrival of other troops that had been dispatched from San Francisco, and the two monitors, "Monterey" and "Monadnock," though the second detachment under General Greene had been disembarked at Manila on the twentieth. Considerable friction had taken place



RAISING THE AMERICAN FLAG OVER THE SPANISH INTRENCHMENTS AT SANTIAGO.

between the Americans and insurgents, and threats to disarm the Filipinos had been made to avoid a threatened rupture. Aguinaldos, the insurgent leader, gave many promises of assistance and professed the highest admiration for the Americans, but his acts betrayed intense jealousy, and there was reason to fear his open hostility if occasion were presented. The position was therefore regarded as being serious, for which reason General Merritt requested a force of not less than 25,000 men, which, on account of the scarcity of transports, would require several months to convey. During this period of waiting a line had been thrown around Manila, part of which was composed of insurgents who had been armed by Admiral Dewey, and the city was thus so completely cut off from communication that supplies could not enter. A demand to surrender was made upon General Augusti, the

Spanish commandant, but though confessing his precarious situation and reporting to Madrid his inability to hold out against the besieging force, he defiantly refused to consider any terms looking to his capitulation. This was the situation of the respective armies on July 31, one waiting reinforcements, the other stubbornly standing upon the defensive.

On July 29 a body of American troops threw up a line of breastworks extending from the Manila road to the beach, which brought them within 750 yards of the Spanish shore batteries of Malate. The troops were not molested while performing this labor, but on Sunday night (31st) heavy firing began all along the Spanish line, to which a vigorous reply was made. There were in the trenches at the time about 1000 men, supported by the Utah battery of four pieces, to which was opposed 3000 of the enemy, who selected the darkness, during the downpour of a torrential rain, to make the attack. The early part of the action favored the Spaniards, who secured the right range and attempted to turn the left flank of our army, which for a short while they were upon the point of accomplishing. The volunteers fought desperately, holding in check a force three times greater than their own, and performing individual acts of wonderful heroism, until their ammunition was exhausted. At the most critical moment Lieutenants Krayenbuhl and Kessler arrived with a fresh supply, and two companies of regulars, which happy relief turned the tide of battle, and after four hours of fighting the Spanish were driven back with a loss of 350 dead. The American loss was thirteen killed and forty wounded. During all the action the insurgents remained neutral, though their line joined that of our intrenchments, thus giving indisputable proof of their jealous hatred of foreigners, and especially of the American army, which Aguinaldo has regarded as an obstacle to his ambitious designs of becoming the dictator of his people. Indeed, in July he issued a manifesto to the Filipinos, and declared the founding of a republic, of which he became the head, intending no doubt to follow the recognition of independence with the establishing of another form of government that will place him in a more autocratic position. It is with this growing ambition of Aguinaldo that the American forces had to contend, and which gives promise of serious complications.

A NIGHT ATTACK ON THE AMERICANS.

AGUINALDO'S AMBITIONS.

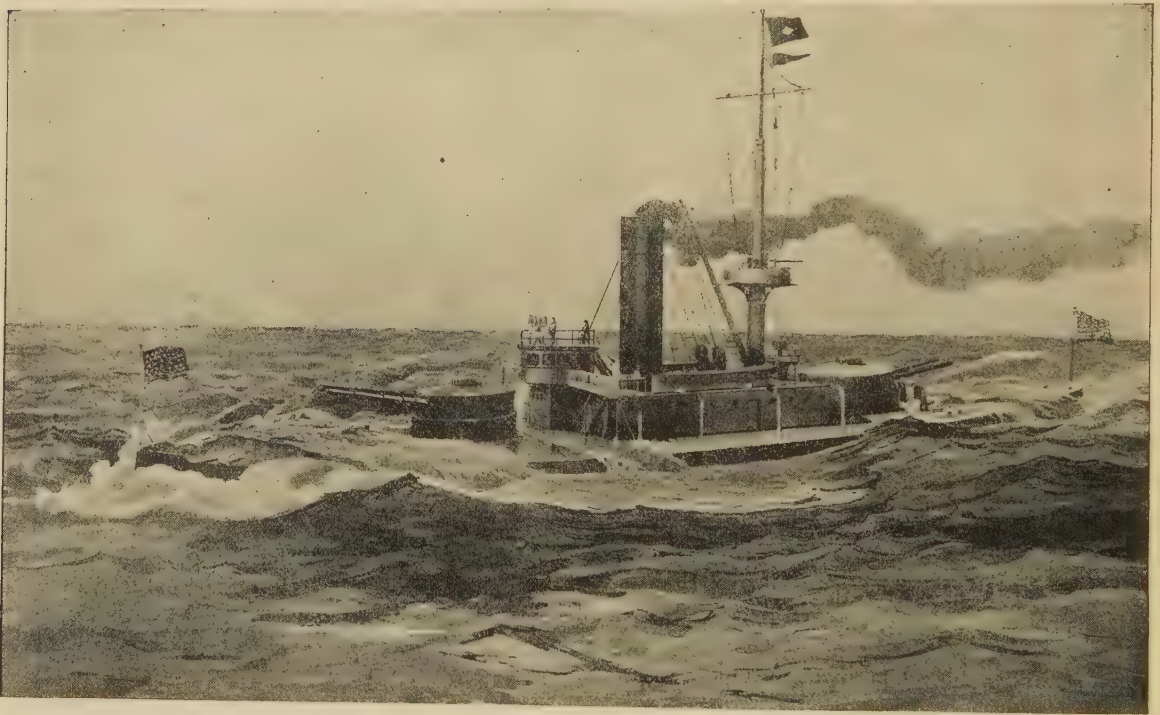
On August 2 the State Department made public a summary of the American peace terms offered to Spain, and on the following day M. Cambon made his reply to the President, which contained a request from the Madrid government for a reasonable time in which to consider the proposals. While the Spanish court were debating the peace terms submitted as an ultimatum, a vigorous prosecution of hostilities was continued in Porto Rico. The advance from Ponce toward San Juan, the capital, was pushed by General Miles, who met with no resistance until August 9, when General Wilson's staff, with the Sixteenth Pennsylvania Volunteers, while making a detour with the view of entering the town of Coamo, were met by a strong Spanish force and a sharp engagement ensued. The Americans were taken by surprise and almost overwhelmed by a terrific fusillade from superior numbers, but after the first shock they heroically rallied and held the enemy at bay until reinforcements arrived, which brought with them a dynamite gun, and then making a gallant charge drove the Spaniards pell-mell through and beyond the town, of which possession was taken, and also 180 prisoners. The American casualties were seven wounded, two mortally, while of the Spaniards nine

PEACE NEGOTIATIONS.

were killed and thirty-five wounded. On the same day Garcia was reported as having defeated a force of 500 Spanish troops at Gibara, and following up his success with 8000 men laid siege to Holguin, whose commander, General Lague, had been called upon to surrender.

On August 11 General Miles' advance, under General Schwan, while reconnoitering met a force of 1200 Spaniards near the village of Hormigueros, Porto Rico, and an engagement followed in which two men of the Eleventh Infantry were killed and fourteen wounded. The loss of the enemy was not reported, but believed to be much greater than our own, for the Spaniards were driven from their positions and the advance towards Mayaguez was continued, which post the enemy evacuated.

On August 10 the reply from Madrid was received at Washington, accepting the terms of peace submitted by the President, and two days later (12th) a protocol was drafted,



THE "MONTEREY" EN ROUTE FOR MANILA.

agreed to and signed by Secretary of State Day for the United States, and by M. Cambon, authorized to sign for Spain, the terms of which included the following conditions:

THE WAR.

The cession of Porto Rico to the United States, together with other Spanish West Indian Islands, not including Cuba.

The relinquishment of all claim and sovereignty over and to Cuba.

The cession of an island in the Ladrones.

Recognition that the United States shall temporarily occupy the city and harbor of Manila, until the final decision as to the disposition of the Philippines is reached.

The appointment of a commission to determine the final disposition of the Philippines.

The constitution of a peace commission to arrange the future of the Philippines, with the time and place of meeting.

A suspension of hostilities to follow the formal signing of the protocol.

Cuba, Porto Rico and other Spanish islands in the West Indies shall be evacuated, and commissioners, to be appointed within ten days, shall, within thirty days from the signing of the protocol, meet at Havana and San Juan, respectively, to arrange and execute the details of the evacuation.

The disposition of the Spanish warships now in blockaded Cuban ports to be settled by the commission of capitulation.

Raising of the blockade against Cuba.

Certain fortified points, such as Morro Castle and Fort Cabanas, to be occupied by United States troops at the discretion of the President.

Spanish soldiers shall remain in Cuba until the end of the rainy season to perform police duty and preserve order.

A special commissioner to be appointed to co-operate with Captain-General Blanco in the direction of affairs.

The Spanish municipal governments to be continued, as was done at Santiago, until such time as the evacuation shall have been completed.

Spanish officials to be permitted to collect revenues, with the exception of those imposed upon the importation of food products.

Arrangements to be made for feeding, if not compensating, such Spanish soldiers as shall be employed in police duty.

Mines in the harbor of Havana to be removed by the Spanish authorities.

All minor details regarding the evacuation of Cuba and Porto Rico will be left to the commission of capitulation.

Signing of the protocol was followed by prompt issuance of orders by both governments to suspend hostilities, but because of slow transmission of the news by cable to Manila, vigorous operations which were begun by Dewey and Merritt against that city on the sixth instant were continued until capitulation was forced by an assault and a bombardment on the thirteenth. Demand was made upon Augusti by Dewey and Merritt on the seventh to surrender, which being refused, time was given for the removal of non-combatants, and early on the morning of the thirteenth the American squadron formed in line off Malate and opened a bombardment. The land forces, acting in conjunction with the navy, stormed the Spanish outer trenches with great gallantry and in fifteen minutes drove out the enemy, who took refuge behind the city walls. Two hours later a white flag was raised and Manila was ours with a loss of eight killed and forty wounded, while the casualties of the Spaniards were reported 160 killed and 600 wounded, and 7000 prisoners surrendered. Augusti escaped on a German cruiser and proceeded to Spain, leaving General Jaudenes Alvarez to complete the terms of surrender. The Insurgents were not permitted to take part in the assault, and after the capitulation were forbidden to enter the city except unarmed, as it was feared a flush of victory would prompt them to deeds of violence upon the Spaniards.

BOMBARDMENT AND CAPTURE OF MANILA.

It is not difficult to prognosticate the results of the war, so far as territorial acquisition is concerned, but the issues involved in the establishment of peace in Cuba, and the disposition of the Philippine Islands remain to be settled. The war, counting from the date of declaration, April 21, had continued for a period of 111 days, the expense of which to America was approximately \$110,000,000, or \$1,000,000 per day, while to Spain the cost, besides the loss of some of her colonies, is estimated to exceed \$500,000,000. The expense to this government was more than compensated by the gain of territory, so that no indemnity was demanded, which Spain, in her impoverished condition, would have been unable to pay. The Cuban indebtedness, of \$550,000,000, naturally fell upon Spain, which, added to her other bonded obligations, makes the government debt \$2,200,000,000, which is about equal to the United States debt at the close of the rebellion, 1865.

RECAPITULATION OF THE RESULTS OF THE WAR.

Porto Rico, which becomes a colony of America, has an area of 3670 square miles, or three times greater than that of the State of Rhode Island. Its topography is mountainous in

the centre, with a narrow level coast belt, where the heat at times is intense and the climate unhealthy, but the interior is equable and salubrious. The principal productions are sugar, tobacco, coffee and molasses, of which the annual export is about \$17,000,000 in value. Development of the country has been slow, but there are 175 miles of railroad, completed and under construction, and 470 miles of telegraph lines. The population is nearly one million, one-half of which are whites, one-third creoles, and one-sixth negroes. The chief towns are San Juan, the capital, having 24,000 inhabitants; Ponce, 40,000; Mayaguez, 27,000, and Maguabo, 18,000. It has 1300 streams, of which forty-seven are navigable, and the mountain region, penetrated by these rivers, is rich in gold, copper, salt and coal, but the great mineral wealth is undeveloped. Its distance from New York is 1500 miles, or five days' sail.

The Philippine Islands are described particularly in another division of this work, but briefly it may be said the group of 1200 islands contains about 115,000 square miles, of which Luzon is the largest and most developed. The land is extremely fertile and the climate mild and generally healthful. The chief productions are hemp, sugar, copra, coffee, tobacco, teak, fruits and spices, while of minerals there is gold, copper, coal, iron and sulphur. The value of exports approximates \$25,000,000 annually, of which \$12,000,000 worth were shipped to Spain. The chief city is Manila, that has an estimated population of 300,000.

Cuba, which may become annexed to the United States by petition of her people, has an area of 43,220 square miles, which is 3000 square miles greater than the State of Ohio. It is traversed its extreme length by a mountain chain, but toward the coast the land is low and swampy and extremely unhealthy. The productions are tobacco, sugar, coffee, cotton, rice and fruits, the annual exports to the United States being estimated at \$80,000,000 in value. Cuba has about 1000 miles of railroads, but they are poorly built and wretchedly managed. Up to the time of the war Spain received about \$20,000,000 annually from Cuba in the way of revenue, but it is estimated that the cost of maintaining her sovereignty over the island exceeded \$120,000,000 annually. The largest city is Havana, with a population of 230,000, other important places being Matanzas, 90,000; Santiago de Cuba, 75,000; Cienfuegos, 65,000; Puerto Principe, 48,000; Santo Espiritu, 35,000; Cardenas, 25,000. Cuba is scantily watered, there being only one navigable stream, the Cauto, in "island. The population at the close of the war probably did not exceed 1,200,000.

The immediate gain by the United States, as an offset to the expense of conducting the war, was not confined to the insular territory acquired, and the accomplishment of our humane ends in freeing Cuba from the thrall of Spanish tyranny. A greater benefit than these was found in the re-establishment of fraternal feeling and a perfect unification between the long-alienated North and South, which emerged from the conflict as reunited brothers prompted by identical patriotic ambitions. "Yankee Doodle" and "Dixie" has become blended in the air of "The Star-Spangled Banner."

Another and quite as distinct gain for the country was found in the effect produced upon the sympathies and estimation of European powers, which had come to regard our government as being feebly upheld by shopkeepers who would not fight, and for lack of a large standing army was unprepared and unable to defend the national honor. The war with Spain disabused the European mind of such false impressions, and raised the American republic to a position of respect and fear that will give us an advantage for all time to come. We are now acknowledged, at last, as being "The land of the free and the home of the brave."

